

CAMBRIDGE

THE WORLD'S BEST-SELLING GRAMMAR BOOK

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE

A self-study reference and
practice book for intermediate
learners of English

with answers

Fifth Edition

Raymond Murphy

Teacher.com's

Experience
Better
Learning

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE

A self-study reference and
practice book for intermediate
learners of English

with answers

Fifth Edition

Raymond Murphy

Teachercom's Library



CAMBRIDGE

UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom
One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
314–321, 3rd Floor, Plot 3, Splendor Forum, Jasola District Centre, New Delhi – 110025, India
79 Anson Road, #06-04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of
education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781108457651

© Cambridge University Press 1985, 1994, 2004, 2012, 2019

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1985

Second edition 1994

Third edition 2004

Fourth edition 2012

Fifth edition 2019

20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Printed in Malaysia by Vivar Printing

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-108-45765-1 Student's Book with answers

ISBN 978-1-108-58662-7 Student's Book with answers and ebook

ISBN 978-1-108-45768-2 Student's Book without answers

ISBN 978-1-108-45771-2 Interactive ebook

ISBN 978-1-108-45773-6 Supplementary Exercises

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy
of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication,
and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain,
accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other
factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but
Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information
thereafter.

Contents

- Thanks vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present and past

- 1 Present continuous (**I am doing**)
- 2 Present simple (**I do**)
- 3 Present continuous and present simple 1 (**I am doing** and **I do**)
- 4 Present continuous and present simple 2 (**I am doing** and **I do**)
- 5 Past simple (**I did**)
- 6 Past continuous (**I was doing**)

Present perfect and past

- 7 Present perfect 1 (**I have done**)
- 8 Present perfect 2 (**I have done**)
- 9 Present perfect continuous (**I have been doing**)
- 10 Present perfect continuous and simple (**I have been doing** and **I have done**)
- 11 **how long have you (been) ... ?**
- 12 **for and since when ... ?** and **how long ... ?**
- 13 Present perfect and past 1 (**I have done** and **I did**)
- 14 Present perfect and past 2 (**I have done** and **I did**)
- 15 Past perfect (**I had done**)
- 16 Past perfect continuous (**I had been doing**)
- 17 **have and have got**
- 18 **used to (do)**

Future

- 19 Present tenses (**I am doing / I do**) for the future
- 20 **I'm going to (do)**
- 21 **will and shall** 1
- 22 **will and shall** 2
- 23 **I will and I'm going to**
- 24 **will be doing and will have done**
- 25 **when I do and when I've done if and when**

Modals

- 26 **can, could** and (**be**) **able to**
- 27 **could (do)** and **could have (done)**
- 28 **must** and **can't**
- 29 **may** and **might** 1
- 30 **may** and **might** 2
- 31 **have to** and **must**
- 32 **must mustn't needn't**
- 33 **should** 1
- 34 **should** 2
- 35 **I'd better ... it's time ...**
- 36 **would**
- 37 **can/could/would you ... ?** etc. (Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

if and wish

- 38 **if I do ... and if I did ...**
- 39 **if I knew ... I wish I knew ...**
- 40 **if I had known ... I wish I had known ...**
- 41 **wish**

Passive

- 42 Passive 1 (**is done / was done**)
- 43 Passive 2 (**be done / been done / being done**)
- 44 Passive 3
- 45 **it is said that ... he is said to ... he is supposed to ...**
- 46 **have something done**

Reported speech

- 47 Reported speech 1 (**he said that ...**)
- 48 Reported speech 2

Questions and auxiliary verbs

- 49 Questions 1
- 50 Questions 2 (**do you know where ... ? / he asked me where ...**)
- 51 Auxiliary verbs (**have/do/can** etc.) **I think so / I hope so** etc.
- 52 Question tags (**do you? isn't it?** etc.)

-ing and to ...

- 53 Verb + -ing (**enjoy doing / stop doing** etc.)
- 54 Verb + **to** ... (**decide to ... / forget to ...** etc.)
- 55 Verb (+ object) + **to** ... (**I want you to ...**)
- 56 Verb + -ing or **to** ... 1 (**remember, regret** etc.)
- 57 Verb + -ing or **to** ... 2 (**try, need, help**)
- 58 Verb + -ing or **to** ... 3 (**like / would like** etc.)
- 59 **prefer** and **would rather**
- 60 Preposition (**in/for/about** etc.) + -ing
- 61 **be/get used to ... (I'm used to ...)**
- 62 Verb + preposition + -ing (**succeed in -ing / insist on -ing** etc.)
- 63 **there's no point in -ing, it's worth -ing** etc.
- 64 **to ... , for ... and so that ...**
- 65 Adjective + **to** ...
- 66 **to ... (afraid to do)** and preposition + -ing (**afraid of -ing**)
- 67 **see somebody do** and **see somebody doing**
- 68 -ing clauses (He hurt his knee **playing football.**)

Articles and nouns

- 69 Countable and uncountable 1
- 70 Countable and uncountable 2
- 71 Countable nouns with **a/an** and **some**
- 72 **a/an** and **the**
- 73 **the** 1
- 74 **the** 2 (**school / the school** etc.)
- 75 **the** 3 (**children / the children**)
- 76 **the** 4 (**the giraffe / the telephone / the old** etc.)
- 77 Names with and without **the** 1

- 78 Names with and without **the** 2
- 79 Singular and plural
- 80 Noun + noun (a **bus driver** / a **headache**)
- 81 -'s (**your sister's** name) and **of** ... (the name **of the book**)

Pronouns and determiners

- 82 **myself/yourself/themselves** etc.
- 83 a friend **of mine** **my own** house **on my own / by myself**
- 84 **there** ... and **it** ...
- 85 **some** and **any**
- 86 **no/none/any nothing/nobody** etc.
- 87 **much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty**
- 88 **all / all of most / most of no / none of** etc.
- 89 **both / both of neither / neither of either / either of**
- 90 **all every whole**
- 91 **each** and **every**

Relative clauses

- 92 Relative clauses 1: clauses with **who/that/which**
- 93 Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without **who/that/which**
- 94 Relative clauses 3: **whose/whom/where**
- 95 Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)
- 96 Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)
- 97 -**ing** and -**ed** clauses (the woman **talking to Tom**, the boy **injured in the accident**)

Adjectives and adverbs

- 98 Adjectives ending in -**ing** and -**ed** (**boring/bored** etc.)
- 99 Adjectives: a **nice new** house, you look **tired**
- 100 Adjectives and adverbs 1 (**quick/quickly**)
- 101 Adjectives and adverbs 2 (**well, fast, late, hard/hardly**)
- 102 **so** and **such**
- 103 **enough** and **too**
- 104 **quite, pretty, rather** and **fairly**
- 105 Comparative 1 (**cheaper, more expensive** etc.)
- 106 Comparative 2 (**much better / any better** etc.)
- 107 Comparative 3 (**as ... as / than**)
- 108 Superlative (**the longest, the most enjoyable** etc.)
- 109 Word order 1: verb + object; place and time
- 110 Word order 2: adverbs with the verb
- 111 **still any more yet already**
- 112 **even**

Conjunctions and prepositions

- 113 **although though even though in spite of despite**
- 114 **in case**
- 115 **unless as long as provided**
- 116 **as (as I walked ... / as I was ... etc.)**
- 117 **like and as**
- 118 **like as if**
- 119 **during for while**
- 120 **by and until by the time ...**

Prepositions

- 121 **at/on/in** (time)
- 122 **on time** and **in time** **at the end** and **in the end**
- 123 **in/at/on** (position) 1
- 124 **in/at/on** (position) 2
- 125 **in/at/on** (position) 3
- 126 **to, at, in** and **into**
- 127 **in/on/at** (other uses)
- 128 **by**
- 129 Noun + preposition (**reason for, cause of** etc.)
- 130 Adjective + preposition 1
- 131 Adjective + preposition 2
- 132 Verb + preposition 1 **to** and **at**
- 133 Verb + preposition 2 **about/for/of/after**
- 134 Verb + preposition 3 **about** and **of**
- 135 Verb + preposition 4 **of/for/from/on**
- 136 Verb + preposition 5 **in/into/with/to/on**

Phrasal verbs

- 137 Phrasal verbs 1 Introduction
- 138 Phrasal verbs 2 **in/out**
- 139 Phrasal verbs 3 **out**
- 140 Phrasal verbs 4 **on/off** (1)
- 141 Phrasal verbs 5 **on/off** (2)
- 142 Phrasal verbs 6 **up/down**
- 143 Phrasal verbs 7 **up** (1)
- 144 Phrasal verbs 8 **up** (2)
- 145 Phrasal verbs 9 **away/back**

- Appendix 1 Regular and irregular verbs 292
- Appendix 2 Present and past tenses 294
- Appendix 3 The future 295
- Appendix 4 Modal verbs (**can/could/will/would** etc.) 296
- Appendix 5 Short forms (**I'm / you've / didn't** etc.) 297
- Appendix 6 Spelling 298
- Appendix 7 American English 300

Additional exercises 302

Study guide 326

- Key to Exercises 336
- Key to Additional exercises 368
- Key to Study guide 372

Index 373

Thanks

This is the fifth edition of *English Grammar in Use*. I wrote the original edition when I was a teacher at the Swan School of English, Oxford. I would like to repeat my thanks to my former colleagues and students at the school for their help, encouragement and interest at that time.

Regarding the production of this fifth edition, I would like to thank Rebecca Winthrop and Chris Capper.

Design & Illustrations

Q2A Media Services Pvt. Ltd.

To the student

This book is for students who want help with English grammar. It is written for you to use without a teacher.

The book will be useful for you if you are not sure of the answers to questions like these:

- What is the difference between *I did* and *I have done*?
- When do we use *will* for the future?
- What is the structure after *I wish*?
- When do we say *used to do* and when do we say *used to doing*?
- When do we use *the*?
- What is the difference between *like* and *as*?

These and many other points of English grammar are explained in the book, and there are exercises on each point.

Level

The book is intended mainly for *intermediate* students (students who have already studied the basic grammar of English). It concentrates on those structures that intermediate students want to use, but that often cause difficulty. Some advanced students who have problems with grammar will also find the book useful.

The book is *not* suitable for elementary learners.

How the book is organised

There are 145 units in the book. Each unit concentrates on a particular point of grammar. Some problems (for example, the present perfect or the use of *the*) are covered in more than one unit. For a list of units, see the *Contents* at the beginning of the book.

Each unit consists of two facing pages. On the left there are explanations and examples; on the right there are exercises. At the back of the book there is an Answer Key for you to check your answers to the exercises (page 336).

There are also seven *Appendices* at the back of the book (pages 292–301). These include irregular verbs, summaries of verb forms, spelling, and American English.

Finally, there is a detailed *Index* at the back of the book (page 373).

How to use the book

The units are not in order of difficulty, so it is not intended that you work through the book from beginning to end. Every learner has different problems, and you should use this book to help you with the grammar that *you* find difficult.

It is suggested that you work in this way:

- Use the *Contents* and/or *Index* to find which unit deals with the point you are interested in.
- If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study guide* on page 326.
- Study the explanations and examples on the left-hand page of the unit you have chosen.
- Do the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Check your answers with the *Key*.
- If your answers are not correct, study the left-hand page again to see what went wrong.

You can, of course, use the book simply as a reference book without doing the exercises.

Additional exercises

At the back of the book there are *Additional exercises* (pages 302–325). These exercises bring together some of the grammar points from a number of different units. For example, Exercise 16 brings together grammar points from Units 26–36. You can use these exercises for extra practice after you have studied and practised the grammar in the units concerned.

ebook

An ebook version of *English Grammar in Use* is also available to buy.

To the teacher

English Grammar in Use was written as a self-study grammar book, but teachers may also find it useful as additional course material in cases where further work on grammar is necessary.

The book will probably be most useful at middle- and upper-intermediate levels (where all or nearly all of the material will be relevant), and can serve both as a basis for revision and as a means for practising new structures. It will also be useful for some more advanced students who have problems with grammar and need a book for reference and practice. The book is not intended to be used by elementary learners.

The units are organised in grammatical categories (*Present and past, Articles and nouns, Prepositions etc.*). They are not ordered according to level of difficulty, so the book should not be worked through from beginning to end. It should be used selectively and flexibly in accordance with the grammar syllabus being used and the difficulties students are having.

The book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help. The left-hand pages (explanations and examples) are written for the student to use individually, but they may of course be used by the teacher as a source of ideas and information on which to base a lesson. The student then has the left-hand page as a record of what has been taught and can refer to it in the future. The exercises can be done individually, in class or as homework. Alternatively (and additionally), individual students can be directed to study certain units of the book by themselves if they have particular difficulties not shared by other students in their class. Don't forget the *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (see **To the student**).

English Grammar in Use Fifth Edition

This is a new edition of English Grammar in Use. The differences between this edition and the fourth edition are:

- Much of the material has been revised or reorganised, and in most units there are changes in the examples, explanations and exercises.
- The book has been redesigned with new, updated illustrations.
- There is a new ebook available with all the contents of the book as well as audio, access to a dictionary and more.

An edition of English Grammar in Use without the Key is also available. Some teachers may prefer to use this with their students.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE



Present continuous (I am doing)

A

Study this example situation:

Sarah is in her car. She is on her way to work.
She's **driving** to work. (= She **is driving** ...)

This means: she is driving *now*, at the time of speaking.
The action is not finished.

am/is/are + -ing is the *present continuous*:

I	am	(= I'm)	driving
he/she/it	is	(= he's etc.)	working
we/you/they	are	(= we're etc.)	doing etc.

**B**

I am doing something = I started doing it and I haven't finished; I'm in the middle of doing it.

- Please don't make so much noise. I'm **trying** to work. (*not* I try)
- 'Where's Mark?' 'He's **having** a shower.' (*not* He has a shower)
- Let's go out now. It **isn't raining** any more. (*not* It doesn't rain)
- How's your new job? **Are** you **enjoying** it?
- What's all that noise? **What's going** on? or **What's happening**?

Sometimes the action is not happening at the time of speaking. For example:

Steve is talking to a friend on the phone. He says:



I'm reading a really good book at the moment.
It's about a man who ...

Steve says '**I'm reading** ...' but he is *not* reading the book at the time of speaking.

He means that he has started reading the book, but has not finished it yet. He is in the middle of reading it.

Some more examples:

- Kate wants to work in Italy, so she's **learning** Italian.
(but perhaps she isn't learning Italian at the time of speaking)
- Some friends of mine **are building** their own house. They hope to finish it next summer.

C

You can use the present continuous with **today / this week / this year** etc. (periods around now):

- A: You're **working** hard **today**. (*not* You work hard today)
- B: Yes, I have a lot to do.
- The company I work for **isn't doing** so well **this year**.

D

We use the present continuous when we talk about a change that has started to happen. We often use these verbs in this way:

getting, becoming
starting, beginning

changing, improving
increasing, rising, falling, growing

- Is your English **getting** better? (*not* Does your English get better)
- The population of the world **is increasing** very fast. (*not* increases)
- At first I didn't like my job, but I'm **starting** to enjoy it now. (*not* I start)

Exercises

1.1 What's happening in the pictures? Choose from these verbs:

cross **hide** **scratch** **take** **tie** **wave**



- 1 She's **taking** a picture.
 2 He his head.
 3 He behind a tree.
 4 He to somebody.
- 5 He the road.
 6 She's **waving** to him.

1.2 The sentences on the right follow those on the left. Which sentence goes with which?

- 1 Please don't make so much noise.
 2 We need to leave soon.
 3 I don't have anywhere to live right now.
 4 I need to eat something soon.
 5 They don't need their car any more.
 6 Things are not so good at work.
 7 It isn't true what they say.
 8 We're going to get wet.

- a I'm getting hungry.
 b They're lying.
 c It's starting to rain.
 d They're trying to sell it.
 e It's getting late.
 f I'm trying to work.
 g I'm staying with friends.
 h The company is losing money.

- 1
 2
 3
 4
 5
 6
 7
 8

1.3 Write questions. Use the present continuous.

- 1 What's all that noise? **What's happening?** (what / happen?)
 2 What's the matter? (why / you / cry?)
 3 Where's your mother? (she / work / today?)
 4 I haven't seen you for ages. (what / you / do / these days?)
 5 Amy is a student. (what / she / study?)
 6 Who are those people? (what / they / do?)
 7 I heard you started a new job. (you / enjoy / it?)
 8 We're not in a hurry. (why / you / walk / so fast?)

1.4 Put the verb into the correct form, positive (**I'm doing** etc.) or negative (**I'm not doing** etc.).

- 1 Please don't make so much noise. **I'm trying** (I / try) to work.
 2 Let's go out now. **It isn't raining** (it / rain) any more.
 3 You can turn off the radio. (I / listen) to it.
 4 Kate phoned last night. She's on holiday with friends. (She / have) a great time and doesn't want to come back.
 5 Andrew started evening classes recently. (He / learn) Japanese.
 6 Paul and Sarah have had an argument and now (they / speak) to one another.
 7 The situation is already very bad and now (it / get) worse.
 8 Tim (work) today. He's taken the day off.
 9 (I / look) for Sophie. Do you know where she is?
 10 The washing machine has been repaired. (It / work) now.
 11 (They / build) a new hospital. It will be finished next year.
 12 Ben is a student, but he's not very happy. (He / enjoy) his course.
 13 (The weather / change). Look at those clouds.
 I think it's going to rain.
 14 Dan has been in the same job for a long time. (He / start) to get bored with it.

Present simple (I do)

A

Study this example situation:



Alex is a bus driver, but now he is in bed asleep.
He is not driving a bus. (He is asleep.)

but He **drives** a bus. He is a bus driver.

drive(s), work(s), do(es) etc. is the *present simple*:

I/we/you/they	drive/work/do etc.
---------------	---------------------------

he/she/it	drives/works/does etc.
-----------	-------------------------------

B

We use the present simple to talk about things in general. We use it to say that something happens all the time or repeatedly, or that something is true in general:

- Nurses **look** after patients in hospitals.
- I usually **go** away at weekends.
- The earth **goes** round the sun.
- The cafe **opens** at 7.30 in the morning.

We say:

I work	<i>but</i>	he works
they teach	<i>but</i>	my sister teaches

you go	<i>but</i>	it goes
I have	<i>but</i>	he has

For spelling (-s or -es), see Appendix 6.

C

We use **do/does** to make questions and negative sentences:

do	I/we/you/they	work?	drive?	do?	
does	he/she/it				

I/we/you/they	don't	drive	work
he/she/it	doesn't		

- I come from Canada. Where **do** you **come** from?
- I **don't go** away very often.
- What **does** this word **mean**? (*not* What means this word?)
- Rice **doesn't grow** in cold climates.

In the following examples, **do** is also the main verb (do you **do** / doesn't **do** etc.):

- 'What **do** you **do**?' 'I work in a shop.'
- He's always so lazy. He **doesn't do** anything to help.

D

We use the present simple to say how often we do things:

- I **get up** at 8 o'clock **every morning**.
- How often** **do** you **go** to the dentist?
- Julie **doesn't drink** tea **very often**.
- Robert usually **goes** away **two or three times a year**.

E

I promise / I apologise etc.

Sometimes we do things by saying something. For example, when you promise to do something, you can say '**I promise** ...'; when you suggest something, you can say '**I suggest** ...':

- I promise** I won't be late. (*not* I'm promising)
- 'What do **you suggest** I do?' 'I **suggest** that you ...'

In the same way we say: **I apologise** ... / **I advise** ... / **I insist** ... / **I agree** ... / **I refuse** ... etc.

Exercises

2.1 Complete the sentences using the following verbs:

cause(s) close(s) connect(s) go(es) live(s) speak(s) take(s)

- 1 Tanya speaks German very well.
- 2 Ben and Jack to the same school.
- 3 Bad driving many accidents.
- 4 The museum at 4 o'clock on Sundays.
- 5 My parents in a very small flat.
- 6 The Olympic Games place every four years.
- 7 The Panama Canal the Atlantic and Pacific oceans.

2.2 Put the verb into the correct form.

- 1 Julia doesn't drink (not / drink) tea very often.
- 2 What time (the banks / close) here?
- 3 I have a car, but I (not / use) it much.
- 4 Where (Maria / come) from? Is she Spanish?
- 5 'What (you / do)?' 'I'm an electrician.'
- 6 Look at this sentence. What (this word / mean)?
- 7 David isn't very fit. He (not / do) any sport.
- 8 It (take) me an hour to get to work in the morning. How long (it / take) you?

2.3 Complete the sentences using these verbs. Sometimes you need the negative.

believe eat flow go grow make rise tell translate

- 1 The earth goes round the sun.
- 2 Rice doesn't grow in cold climates.
- 3 The sun in the east.
- 4 Bees honey.
- 5 Vegetarians meat.
- 6 An atheist in God.
- 7 An interpreter from one language into another.
- 8 Liars are people who the truth.
- 9 The River Amazon into the Atlantic Ocean.

2.4 You ask Lisa questions about herself and her family. Write the questions.

- 1 You know that Lisa plays tennis. You want to know how often. Ask her.
How often do you play tennis ?
- 2 Perhaps Lisa's sister plays tennis too. You want to know. Ask Lisa.
..... your sister ?
- 3 You know that Lisa goes to the cinema a lot. You want to know how often. Ask her.
..... ?
- 4 You know that Lisa's brother works. You want to know what he does. Ask Lisa.
..... ?
- 5 You're not sure whether Lisa speaks Spanish. You want to know. Ask her.
..... ?
- 6 You don't know where Lisa's grandparents live. You want to know. Ask Lisa.
..... ?

2.5 Complete using the following:

I agree I apologise I insist I promise I recommend I suggest

- 1 Mr Evans is not in the office today. I suggest you try calling him tomorrow.
- 2 I won't tell anybody what you said.
- 3 (in a restaurant) You must let me pay for the meal.
- 4 for what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
- 5 The new restaurant in Baker Street is very good. it.
- 6 I think you're absolutely right. with you.

Present continuous and present simple 1 (I am doing and I do)

A

Compare:

present continuous (I am doing)

We use the continuous for things happening at or around the time of speaking.
The action is not complete.

I am doing		
past	now	future
<input type="checkbox"/> The water is boiling . Be careful.		
<input type="checkbox"/> Listen to those people. What language are they speaking?		
<input type="checkbox"/> Let's go out. It isn't raining now.		
<input type="checkbox"/> 'I'm busy.' 'What are you doing? '		
<input type="checkbox"/> I'm getting hungry. Let's go and eat.		
<input type="checkbox"/> Kate wants to work in Italy, so she's learning Italian.		
<input type="checkbox"/> The population of the world is increasing very fast.		

We use the continuous for *temporary* situations (things that continue for a short time):

- I'm **living** with some friends until I find a place of my own.
- A: You're **working** hard today.
B: Yes, I have a lot to do.

See Unit 1 for more information.

present simple (I do)

We use the simple for things in general or things that happen repeatedly.

I do		
past	now	future

- Water **boils** at 100 degrees Celsius.
- Excuse me, **do** you **speak** English?
- It **doesn't rain** very much in summer.
- What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?
- I always **get** hungry in the afternoon.
- Most people **learn** to swim when they are children.
- Every day the population of the world **increases** by about 200,000 people.

We use the simple for *permanent* situations (things that continue for a long time):

- My parents **live** in London. They have lived there all their lives.
- Joe isn't lazy. He **works** hard most of the time.

See Unit 2 for more information.

B

I always do and I'm always doing

I **always do** something = I do it every time:

- I **always go** to work by car. (not I'm always going)

I'm **always doing** something = I do it too often or more often than normal.

For example:



I'm **always losing** them = I lose them too often, or more often than normal.

- Paul is never satisfied. He's **always complaining**. (= he complains too much)
- You're **always looking** at your phone. Don't you have anything else to do?

Exercises

3.1 Are the underlined verbs OK? Correct them where necessary.

- 1 Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.
- 2 How often are you going to the cinema?
- 3 Ben tries to find a job, but he hasn't had any luck yet.
- 4 Martina is phoning her mother every day.
- 5 The moon goes round the earth in about 27 days.
- 6 Can you hear those people? What do they talk about?
- 7 What do you do in your spare time?
- 8 Sarah is a vegetarian. She doesn't eat meat.
- 9 I must go now. It gets late.
- 10 'Come on! It's time to leave.' 'OK, I come.'
- 11 Paul is never late. He's always starting work on time.
- 12 They don't get on well. They're always arguing.

OK
do you go

3.2 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

- 1 a I usually get (I / usually / get) hungry in the afternoon.
b I'm getting (I / get) hungry. Let's go and eat something.
- 2 a '..... (you / listen) to the radio?' 'No, you can turn it off.'
b '..... (you / listen) to the radio a lot?' 'No, not very often.'
- 3 a The River Nile (flow) into the Mediterranean.
b The river (flow) very fast today – much faster than usual.
- 4 a I'm not very active. (I / not / do) any sport.
b What (you / usually / do) at weekends?
- 5 a Rachel is in New York right now. (She / stay) at the Park Hotel.
b (She / always / stay) there when she's in New York.

3.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

- 1 Why are all these people here? What's happening (What / happen)?
- 2 Julia is good at languages. (She / speak) four languages very well.
- 3 Are you ready yet? (Everybody / wait) for you.
- 4 I've never heard this word. How (you / pronounce) it?
- 5 Kate (not / work) this week. She's on holiday.
- 6 I think my English (improve) slowly. It's better than it was.
- 7 Nicola (live) in Manchester. She has never lived anywhere else.
- 8 Can we stop walking soon? (I / start) to get tired.
- 9 Sam and Tina are in Madrid right now. (They / visit) a friend of theirs.
- 10 'What (your father / do)?' 'He's an architect.'
- 11 It took me an hour to get to work this morning. Most days (it / not / take) so long.
- 12 I (I / learn) to drive. My driving test is next month. My father (teach) me.

3.4 Finish B's sentences. Use **always -ing**.

- 1 A: I've lost my keys again.
B: Not again! You're always losing your keys
- 2 A: The car has broken down again.
B: That car is useless. It
- 3 A: Look! You've made the same mistake again.
B: Oh no, not again! I
- 4 A: Oh, I've left my phone at home again.
B: Typical!

Present continuous and present simple 2 (I am doing and I do)

A

We use continuous forms (I'm **waiting**, it's **raining** etc.) for actions and happenings that have started but not finished.

Some verbs (for example, **know** and **like**) are not normally used in this way. We don't say 'I am knowing', 'they are liking'. We say 'I **know**', 'they **like**'.

The following verbs are not normally used in the present continuous:

like	want	need	prefer
know	realise	understand	recognise
believe	suppose	remember	mean
belong	fit	contain	consist
			seem

- I'm hungry. I **want** something to eat. (not I'm wanting)
- Do** you **understand** what I **mean**?
- Anna **doesn't seem** very happy right now.

B**think**

When **think** means 'believe' or 'have an opinion', we do not use the continuous:

- I **think** Mary is Canadian, but I'm not sure. (not I'm thinking)
- What **do** you **think** of my idea? (= what is your opinion?)

When **think** means 'consider', the continuous is possible:

- I'm **thinking** about what happened. I often **think** about it.
- Nicky **is thinking** of giving up her job. (= she is considering it)

C**see hear smell taste look feel**

We normally use the present simple (not continuous) with **see/hear/smell/taste**:

- Do** you **see** that man over there? (not are you seeing)
- The room **smells**. Let's open a window.
- This soup **doesn't taste** very good.

You can use the present simple or continuous to say how somebody **looks** or **feels** now:

- You **look** well today. or You're **looking** well today.
- How **do** you **feel** now? or How **are** you **feeling** now?

but

- I usually **feel** tired in the morning. (not I'm usually feeling)

D**am/is/are being**

You can say **he's being ...**, **you're being ...** etc. to say how somebody is behaving now:

- I can't understand why **he's being** so selfish. He isn't usually like that.
(**being** selfish = behaving selfishly now)
- 'The path is icy. Don't slip.' 'Don't worry. I'm **being** very careful.'

Compare:

- He never thinks about other people. He's very selfish.
(= he is selfish generally, not only now)
- I don't like to take risks. I'm a very careful person.

We use **am/is/are being** to say how a person is *behaving* (= doing something they can control) now.

It is not usually possible in other situations:

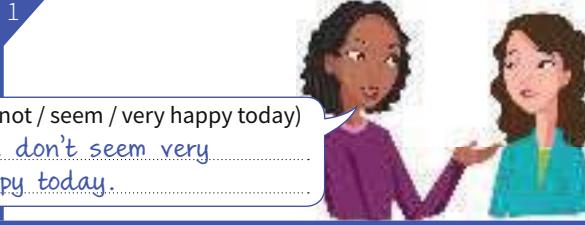
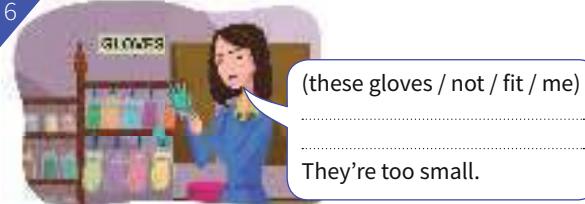
- Sam **is** ill. (not is being ill)
- Are** you tired? (not are you being tired)

Exercises

4.1 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

- 1 Are you hungry? Do you want (you / want) something to eat?
- 2 Alan says he's 90 years old, but nobody (believe) him.
- 3 She told me her name, but (I / not / remember) it now.
- 4 Don't put the dictionary away. (I / use) it.
- 5 Don't put the dictionary away. (I / need) it.
- 6 Air (consist) mainly of nitrogen and oxygen.
- 7 Who is that man? What (he / want)?
- 8 Who is that man? Why (he / look) at us?
- 9 Who is that man? (you / recognise) him?
- 10 (I / think) of selling my car. Would you be interested in buying it?
- 11 I can't make up my mind. What (you / think) I should do?
- 12 Gary wasn't well earlier, but (he / seem) OK now.

4.2 Use the words in brackets to make sentences.

<p>1</p>  <p>(you / not / seem / very happy today) <u>You don't seem very happy today.</u></p>	<p>2</p>  <p>Are you OK? You look worried. (I / think)</p>
<p>3</p>  <p>(who / this umbrella / belong to?) I've no idea.</p>	<p>4</p>  <p>(this / smell / good) </p>
<p>5</p>  <p>Excuse me. (anybody / sit / there?) No, it's free.</p>	<p>6</p>  <p>(these gloves / not / fit / me) They're too small.</p>

4.3 Are the underlined verbs OK? Correct them where necessary.

- 1 Nicky is thinking of giving up her job.
- 2 It's not true. I'm not believing it.
- 3 I'm feeling hungry. Is there anything to eat?
- 4 I've never eaten that fruit. What is it tasting like?
- 5 I'm not sure what she does. I think she works in a shop.
- 6 Look over there. What are you seeing?
- 7 You're very quiet. What are you thinking about?

OK

I don't believe it.

4.4 Complete the sentences. Use **is/are being** (continuous) or **is/are** (simple).

- 1 I can't understand why he's being so selfish. He isn't usually like that.
- 2 You'll like Sophie when you meet her. She very nice.
- 3 Sarah very nice to me at the moment. I wonder why.
- 4 They very happy. They've just got married.
- 5 You're normally very patient, so why so unreasonable about waiting ten more minutes?
- 6 Would you like something to eat? hungry?

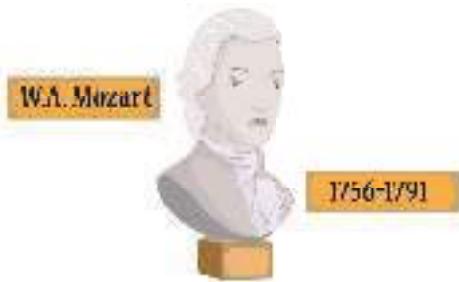
Past simple (I did)

A

Study this example:

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart **was** an Austrian musician and composer. He **lived** from 1756 to 1791. He **started** composing at the age of five and **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music. He **was** only 35 years old when he **died**.

lived/started/wrote/was/died are all *past simple*

**B**

Very often the past simple ends in **-ed** (*regular verbs*):

- I work in a travel agency now. Before that I **worked** in a department store.
- They **invited** us to their party, but we **decided** not to go.
- The police **stopped** me on my way home last night.
- Laura **passed** her exam because she **studied** very hard.

For spelling (**stopped**, **studied** etc.), see Appendix 6.

But many verbs are *irregular*. The past simple does *not* end in **-ed**. For example:

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| write → wrote | <input type="checkbox"/> Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music. |
| see → saw | <input type="checkbox"/> We saw Alice in town a few days ago. |
| go → went | <input type="checkbox"/> I went to the cinema three times last week. |
| shut → shut | <input type="checkbox"/> It was cold, so I shut the window. |

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

C

In questions and negative sentences we use **did/didn't** + infinitive (**enjoy/see/go** etc.):

I she they	enjoyed	did	you she they	enjoy?	I she they	didn't	enjoy
	saw			see?		see	
	went			go?		go	

- I enjoyed the party a lot. **Did** you **enjoy** it?
- How many people **did** they **invite** to the wedding?
- I **didn't buy** anything because I **didn't have** any money.
- 'Did you **go** out?' 'No, I **didn't**'

Sometimes **do** is the main verb in the sentence (did you **do**?, I didn't **do**):

- What **did** you **do** at the weekend? (not What did you at the weekend?)
- I **didn't do** anything. (not I didn't anything)

D

The past of **be** (**am/is/are**) is **was/were**:

I/he/she/it	was/wasn't	was	I/he/she/it?
we/you/they	were/weren't	were	we/you/they?

- I **was** annoyed because **they were** late.
- Was the weather** good when **you were** on holiday?
- They weren't** able to come because **they were** so busy.
- I **wasn't** hungry, so I didn't eat anything.
- Did you go out last night or **were you** too tired?

Exercises

5.1 Read what Laura says about a typical working day:



LAURA

I usually get up at 7 o'clock and have a big breakfast. I walk to work, which takes me about half an hour. I start work at 8.45. I never have lunch. I finish work at 5 o'clock. I'm always tired when I get home. I usually cook a meal in the evening. I don't usually go out. I go to bed at about 11 o'clock, and I always sleep well.

Yesterday was a typical working day for Laura. Write what she did or didn't do yesterday.

- | | | | | |
|---|------------|------------------------|----|---------------------------------|
| 1 | She got up | at 7 o'clock. | 7 | at 5 o'clock. |
| 2 | She | a big breakfast. | 8 | tired when |
| 3 | She | | 9 | a meal yesterday evening. |
| 4 | It | to get to work. | 10 | out yesterday evening. |
| 5 | | at 8.45. | 11 | at 11 o'clock. |
| 6 | | lunch. | 12 | well last night. |

5.2 Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:

buy catch cost fall hurt sell spend teach throw write

- 1 Mozart **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.
- 2 'How did you learn to drive?' 'My father me.'
- 3 We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we it.
- 4 Dave down the stairs this morning and his leg.
- 5 Joe the ball to Sue, who it.
- 6 Kate a lot of money yesterday. She a dress which £100.

5.3 You ask James about his holiday in the US. Write your questions.

- 1 YOU: Where **did you go**
- 2 JAMES: To the US. We went on a trip from San Francisco to Denver.
- 3 YOU: How ? By car?
- 4 JAMES: Yes, we hired a car in San Francisco.
- 5 YOU: It's a long way to drive. How long ?
- 6 JAMES: Two weeks. We stopped at a lot of places along the way.
- 7 YOU: Where ? In hotels?
- 8 JAMES: Yes, small hotels or motels.
- 9 YOU: good?
- 10 JAMES: Yes, but it was very hot – sometimes too hot.
- 11 YOU: the Grand Canyon?
- 12 JAMES: Of course. It was wonderful.

5.4 Complete the sentences. Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

- 1 It was warm, so I **took** off my coat. (take)
- 2 The film wasn't very good. I **didn't enjoy** it much. (enjoy)
- 3 I knew Sarah was busy, so I her. (disturb)
- 4 We were very tired, so we the party early. (leave)
- 5 It was hard carrying the bags. They really heavy. (be)
- 6 The bed was very uncomfortable. I well. (sleep)
- 7 This watch wasn't expensive. It much. (cost)
- 8 The window was open and a bird into the room. (fly)
- 9 I was in a hurry, so I time to call you. (have)
- 10 I didn't like the hotel. The room very clean. (be)

Past continuous (I was doing)

A

Study this example situation:



Yesterday Karen and Joe played tennis. They started at 10 o'clock and finished at 11.30.
So, at 10.30 they **were playing** tennis.

they **were playing** =
they were in the middle of playing, they had not finished

was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

he/she/it	was	playing
we/you/they	were	doing working etc.

B

I **was doing** something = I was in the middle of doing it at a certain time. The action or situation started before this time, but had not finished:



- This time last year I **was living** in Hong Kong.
- What **were** you **doing** at 10 o'clock last night?
- I waved to Helen, but she **wasn't looking**.

CCompare I **was doing** (past continuous) and I **did** (past simple):

I was doing (= in the middle of an action)

- We **were walking** home when I met Dan. (in the middle of walking home)
- Kate **was watching** TV when we arrived.

I did (= complete action)

- We **walked** home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely)
- Kate **watched** TV a lot when she was ill last year.

DYou can say that something **happened** (past simple) in the middle of something else (past continuous):

- Matt **phoned** while we **were having** dinner.
- It **was raining** when I **got** up.
- I **saw** you in the park yesterday. You **were sitting** on the grass and **reading** a book.
- I **hurt** my back while I **was working** in the garden.

But we use the past simple to say that one thing happened *after* another:

- I **was walking** along the road when I **saw** Dan. So I **stopped**, and we **talked** for a while.

Compare:

- When Karen arrived, we **were having** dinner. (= we had already started before she arrived)

- When Karen arrived, we **had** dinner. (= Karen arrived, and then we had dinner)

E

Some verbs (for example, **know** and **want**) are not normally used in continuous forms (**is + -ing**, **was + -ing** etc.). See Unit 4A for a list of these verbs.

- We **were** good friends. We **knew** each other well. (not we were knowing)
- I **was** enjoying the party, but Chris **wanted** to go home. (not was wanting)

Exercises

6.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

was looking	was wearing	wasn't listening	weren't looking
was snowing	was working	were sitting	were you going

- 1 Today Helen is wearing a skirt. Yesterday she trousers.
- 2 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I'
- 3 We at the back of the theatre. We couldn't hear very well.
- 4 This time last year Steve on a farm.
- 5 They didn't see me. They in my direction.
- 6 The weather was bad. It was very cold and it
- 7 I saw you in your car. Where ?
- 8 I saw Kate a few minutes ago. She for you.

6.2 Which goes with which?

- 1 When I got to the cafe
- 2 We fell asleep
- 3 Amy learnt Italian
- 4 Tom didn't come out with us
- 5 The car began to make a strange noise
- 6 The TV was on
- 7 When I first met Jessica

- a when she was living in Rome.
- b she was working in a clothes shop.
- c when I was driving home.
- d but nobody was watching it.
- e while we were watching a film.
- f my friends were waiting for me.
- g because he wasn't feeling well.

- 1 f.....
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

6.3 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.



I (see) Sue in town yesterday, but she (not/see) me. She (look) the other way.



I (cycle) home yesterday when a man (step) out into the road in front of me. I (go) quite fast, but luckily I (manage) to stop in time, and I (not/hit) him.

6.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

- 1 Jenny (wait) for me when I (arrive) (arrive).
- 2 'What (you / do) at this time yesterday?' 'I was asleep.'
- 3 ' (you / go) out last night?' 'No, I was too tired.'
- 4 How fast (you / drive) when the accident (happen)?
- 5 Sam (take) a picture of me while I (not / look).
- 6 We were in a very difficult position. We (not / know) what to do, so we (do) nothing.
- 7 I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last (see) him, he (try) to find a job.
- 8 I (walk) along the street when suddenly I (hear) something behind me. Somebody (follow) me. I was scared and I (start) to run.
- 9 When I was young, I (want) to be a pilot. Later I (change) my mind.
- 10 Last night I (drop) a plate when I (do) the washing up. Fortunately it (not / break).

Present perfect 1 (I have done)

A

Study this example situation:



Tom can't find his key.
He's **lost** his key. (= He **has lost** ...)

he **has lost** his key =
he lost it and he doesn't have it now

have lost / has lost is the *present perfect simple*:

I/we/they/you **have** (= I've etc.)

finished

lost

done

been etc.

he/she/it **has** (= he's etc.)

The present perfect simple is **have/has + past participle**. The past participle often ends in **-ed** (**finished/decided** etc.), but many verbs are *irregular* (**lost/done/written** etc.).

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

B

When we say 'something **has happened**', this is usually new information:

- Owl! I've **cut** my finger.
- The road is closed. There's **been** an accident. (= There **has been** ...)
- Police **have arrested** two men in connection with the robbery.

When we use the present perfect, there is a connection with *now*. The action in the past has a result *now*:

- Tom **has lost** his key. (= he doesn't have it *now*)
- He told me his name, but I've **forgotten** it. (= I can't remember it *now*)
- Sally is still here. She **hasn't gone** out. (= she is here *now*)
- I can't find my bag. **Have** you **seen** it? (= do you know where it is *now*?)

Compare **gone (to)** and **been (to)**:

- James is on holiday. He **has gone to** Italy. (= he is there now or on his way there)
- Amy is back home now. She **has been** to Italy. (= she has now come back)

C

You can use the present perfect with **just, already** and **yet**.

Just = a short time ago:

- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I've **just had** lunch.'
- Hello. **Have** you **just arrived**?

Already = sooner than expected:

- 'Don't forget to pay the bill.' 'I've **already paid** it.'
- 'What time is Mark leaving?' 'He's **already left**.'

Yet = until now. We use **yet** to show that we are expecting something to happen.

We use **yet** in questions and negative sentences:

- Has** it **stopped** raining **yet**?
- I've written the email, but I **haven't sent** it **yet**.

D

You can also use the past simple (**did, went, had** etc.) in the examples on this page. So you can say:

- Ben isn't here. He's **gone** out. or He **went** out.
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I've just **had** lunch.' or 'No, I just **had** lunch.'

Exercises

7.1 Read the situations and complete the sentences using the present perfect. Choose from these verbs:

break disappear go up grow improve lose shrink stop

- 1 Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it.
- 2 Maria's English wasn't very good. Now it is better.
- 3 My bag was here, but it isn't here any more.
- 4 Lisa can't walk and her leg is in plaster.
- 5 Last week the bus fare was £1.80. Now it is £2.
- 6 Dan didn't have a beard before. Now he has a beard.
- 7 It was raining ten minutes ago. It isn't raining now.
- 8 I washed my sweater, and now it's too small for me.

Tom ... has lost his key.....
 Her English
 My bag
 Lisa
 The bus fare
 Dan
 It
 My sweater

7.2 Put in **been** or **gone**.

- 1 My parents are on holiday. They've gone to Italy.
- 2 Hello! I've just to the shops. I've bought lots of things.
- 3 Tom has just out. He'll be back in about an hour.
- 4 Alice isn't here at the moment. I don't know where she's
- 5 You're very late. Where have you?

7.3 Complete the sentences using the present perfect.

- 1 Sally is still here. She hasn't gone (she / not / go) out.
- 2 I can't find my bag. (you / see / it) anywhere?
- 3 I can't log on to the website. (I / forget) my password.
- 4 I sent Joe an email this morning, but (he / not / reply).
- 5 Is the meeting still going on, or (it / finish)?
- 6 (the weather / change). It's colder now.
- 7 (you / not / sign) the form. Could you sign it now, please?
- 8 Are your friends still here, or (they / go) home?
- 9 Paul doesn't know what he's going to do. (he / not / decide / yet).
- 10 'Do you know where Julia is?' 'Yes, (I / just / see / her).'
- 11 'When is David going away?' ' (he / already / go).'
- 12 A: (your course / start / yet)?
 B: Not yet. It starts next week.

7.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **just**, **already** or **yet**.

- 1 After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says, 'Would you like something to eat?' You say: No thank you. I've just had lunch.... (have lunch)
- 2 Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says, 'Can I speak to Joe?' You say: I'm afraid (go out)
- 3 You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away. You say: Wait a minute! (not / finish)
- 4 You plan to eat at a restaurant tonight. You phone to reserve a table. Later your friend says, 'Shall I phone to reserve a table?' You say: No, (do it)
- 5 You know that Lisa is looking for a place to live. Perhaps she has been successful. You ask her: ? (find)
- 6 You are still thinking about where to go for your holiday. A friend asks, 'Where are you going for your holiday?' You say: (not / decide)
- 7 Laura went out, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks, 'Is Laura still out?' You say: No, (come back)

Present perfect 2 (I have done)

A

Study this example conversation:

- DAVE: Have you **travelled** a lot, Jane?
 JANE: Yes, I've **been** to lots of places.
 DAVE: Really? Have you ever **been** to China?
 JANE: Yes, I've **been** to China twice.
 DAVE: What about India?
 JANE: No, I **haven't been** to India.



When we talk about a period of time that continues from the past until now, we use the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have travelled** etc.). Here, Dave and Jane are talking about the places Jane **has visited** in her life, which is a period that continues until now.

In the same way we say:

- Have you ever eaten** caviar?
- We've never **had** a car.
- I don't know what the film is about. I **haven't seen** it.
- Susan really loves that book. She's **read** it three times. (She's = She **has**)
- It's a really boring movie. It's the most boring movie I've **ever seen**.

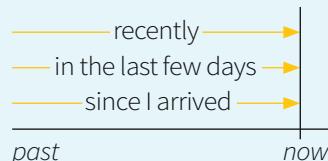
been (to) = visited:

- I've never **been to** Canada. Have you **been** there?

B

In the following examples too, the speakers are talking about a period that continues until now (**recently**, **in the last few days**, **so far**, **since I arrived** etc.):

- Have you heard** anything from Ben **recently**?
- I've **met** a lot of people **in the last few days**.
- Everything is going well. There **haven't been** any problems **so far**.
- The weather is bad here. It's (=It **has**) **rained** every day **since I arrived**. (=from when I arrived until now)
- It's good to see you again. We **haven't seen** each other **for a long time**.



In the same way we use the present perfect with **today**, **this evening**, **this year** etc. when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking:

- I've **drunk** four cups of coffee **today**.
- Have you **had** a holiday **this year**?
- I **haven't seen** Tom **this morning**. Have you?



C

We say 'It's the (first) time something **has happened**'. For example:

Don is having a driving lesson. It's his first lesson.

We can say:

- It's the first time he **has driven** a car. (*not drives*)
or He **hasn't driven** a car **before**.
or He **has never driven** a car **before**.

This is the first time
I've **driven** a car.



In the same way we say:

- Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this **has happened**. (*not happens*)
- Andy is phoning his girlfriend again. It's the third time he's **phoned** her **this evening**.

Exercises

8.1 You ask people about things they have done. Write questions with ever.

- 1 (ride / horse?) Have you ever ridden a horse?
- 2 (be / California?) Have
- 3 (run / marathon?)
- 4 (speak / famous person?)
- 5 (most beautiful place / visit?) What's

8.2 Complete B's answers. Some sentences are positive and some negative. Use these verbs:

be be eat happen have have meet play read see try

A

- 1 What's Mark's sister like?
- 2 Is everything going well?
- 3 Are you hungry?
- 4 Can you play chess?
- 5 Are you enjoying your holiday?
- 6 What's that book about?
- 7 Is Brussels an interesting place?
- 8 I hear your car broke down again yesterday.
- 9 Do you like caviar?
- 10 Mike was late for work again today.
- 11 Who's that woman by the door?

B

- I've no idea. I've never met her.
 Yes, we haven't had any problems so far.
 Yes, I much today.
 Yes, but for ages.
 Yes, it's the best holiday for a long time.
 I don't know. it.
 I've no idea. there.
 Yes, it's the second time this month.
 I don't know. it.
 Again? He late every day this week.
 I don't know. her before.

8.3 Write four sentences about yourself. Use I haven't and choose from the boxes.

used a computer	travelled by bus	eaten any fruit
been to the cinema	read a book	lost anything

- 1 I haven't used a computer today.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5

today
 this week
 recently
 for ages
 since ...
 this year

8.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

- 1 Jack is driving a car for the first time. He's very nervous and not sure what to do.
 It's the first time he's driven a car.
- 2 Some children at the zoo are looking at a giraffe. They've never seen one before.
 It's the first time a giraffe.
- 3 Sue is riding a horse. She doesn't look very confident or comfortable.
 She before.
- 4 Joe and Lisa are on holiday in Japan. They've been to Japan once before.
 This is the second time
- 5 Emily is staying at the Prince Hotel. She stayed there a few years ago.
 It's not the first this hotel.
- 6 Ben is playing tennis for the first time. He's a complete beginner.
 before.

Present perfect continuous (I have been doing)

A It's been raining.

Study this example situation:



Is it raining?
No, but the ground is wet.

It's been raining. (=It **has** been ...)

have/has been + -ing is the *present perfect continuous*:

I/we/they/you he/she/it	have has	(= I've etc.) (= he's etc.)	been	doing working learning etc.
----------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------------	-------------	--

We use the present perfect continuous for an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped:

- Why are you out of breath? **Have you been running?**
- Paul is very tired. **He's been working** hard.
- Why are you so tired? What **have you been doing?**
- I've **been talking** to Amanda and she agrees with me.
- Where have you been? I've **been looking** for you.

have/has been + -ing
present perfect continuous

now

B It's been raining for two hours.

Study this example situation:



It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

How long **has it been raining?**
It's been raining for two hours. (=It **has** been ...)

We use the present perfect continuous in this way, especially with **how long**, **for** ... and **since** The activity is still happening (as in this example) or has just stopped.

- How long have** you **been learning** English? (=you're still learning English)
- Ben is watching TV. **He's been watching TV all day.**
- Where have you been? I've **been looking** for you **for the last half hour**.
- Chris **hasn't been feeling** well recently.

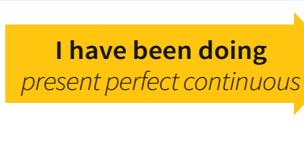
You can use the present perfect continuous for repeated actions:

- Silvia is a very good tennis player. She's **been playing since she was eight.**
- Every morning they meet in the same cafe. They've **been going** there **for years**.

C Compare I am doing and I have been doing:



- Don't disturb me now. I'm **working**.
- We need an umbrella. It's **raining**.
- Hurry up! We're **waiting**.



- I've **been working** hard. Now I'm going to have a break.
- The ground is wet. It's **been raining**.
- We've **been waiting** for an hour.

Exercises

9.1 What have these people been doing or what has been happening?

1		2		3		4	
	<i>earlier</i>		<i>earlier</i>		<i>earlier</i>		<i>earlier</i>
	<i>now</i>		<i>now</i>		<i>now</i>		<i>now</i>
<i>It's been raining.</i>		<i>She</i>		<i>They</i>		<i>He</i>	

9.2 Write a question for each situation.

- You meet Kate as she is leaving the swimming pool. You say:
Hi, Kate. (you / swim?) Have you been swimming?
- You have arrived a little late to meet Ben who is waiting for you. You say:
I'm sorry I'm late, Ben. (you / wait / long?)
- Jane's little boy comes into the house with a very dirty face and dirty hands. His mother says:
Why are you so dirty? (what / you / do?)
- You are in a shop and see Anna. You didn't know she worked there. You say:
Hi, Anna. (how long / you / work / here?)
- A friend tells you about his job – he sells phones. You say:
You sell phones? (how long / you / do / that?)

9.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

- It's raining. The rain started two hours ago.
It 's been raining for two hours.
- We are waiting for the bus. We started waiting 20 minutes ago.
We for 20 minutes.
- I'm learning Japanese. I started classes in December.
I since December.
- Jessica is working in a hotel. She started working there on 18 January.
..... since 18 January.
- Our friends always go to Italy for their holidays. The first time was years ago.
..... for years.

9.4 Put the verb into the present continuous (**am/is/are + -ing**) or present perfect continuous (**have/has been + -ing**).

- Maria has been learning.... (Maria / learn) English for two years.
- Hi, Tom. (I / look) for you. I need to ask you something.
- Why (you / look) at me like that? Stop it!
- Rachel is a teacher. (she / teach) for ten years.
- (I / think) about what you said and I've decided to take your advice.
- 'Is Paul on holiday this week?' 'No, (he / work)'
- Sarah is very tired. (she / work) very hard recently.
- It's dangerous to use your phone when (you / drive).
- Laura (travel) in South America for the last three months.

Present perfect continuous and simple (I have been doing and I have done)

A

Compare these two situations:



There is paint on Kate's clothes.
She **has been painting** her bedroom.

has been painting is the *present perfect continuous*.

We are thinking of the activity. It does not matter whether it has been finished or not. In this example, the activity (painting the bedroom) has not been finished.



The bedroom was green. Now it is yellow.
She **has painted** her bedroom.

has painted is the *present perfect simple*.

Here, the important thing is that something has been finished. 'She **has painted**' is a completed action. We are thinking about the *result* of the activity (the painted bedroom), not the activity itself.

B

Compare these examples:

- My hands are very dirty. **I've been repairing** my bike.
- Joe **has been eating** too much recently. He should eat less.
- It's nice to see you again. What **have** you **been doing** since we last met?
- Where have you been? **Have** you **been playing** tennis?

- My bike is OK again now. **I've repaired** it. (=I've finished repairing it)
- Somebody **has eaten** all the chocolates. The box is empty.
- Where's the book I gave you? What **have** you **done** with it?
- Have** you ever **played** tennis?

C

We use the continuous to say *how long* (for something that is still happening):

- How long **have** you **been reading** that book?
- Amy is writing emails. She's **been writing** emails all morning.
- They've **been playing** tennis since 2 o'clock.
- I'm learning Arabic, but I **haven't been learning** it very long.

We use the simple to say *how much*, *how many* or *how many times* (for completed actions):

- How many pages of that book **have** you **read**?
- Amy **has sent** lots of emails this morning.
- They've **played** tennis three times this week.
- I'm learning Arabic, but I **haven't learnt** very much yet.

D

Some verbs (for example, **know**) are not normally used in continuous forms (**be + -ing**):

- I've **known** about the problem for a long time. (*not* I've been knowing)
- How long **have** you **had** that camera? (*not* have you been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For **have**, see Unit 17.

But note that you *can* use **want** and **mean** in the present perfect continuous (**have/has been + -ing**):

- I've been **meaning** to phone Anna, but I keep forgetting.

Exercises

10.1 Read the situation and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it and now he is on page 53.
 for two hours. (read)
 53 pages so far. (read)
- 2 Rachel is from Australia. She is travelling round Europe. She began her trip three months ago.
 She for three months. (travel)
 six countries so far. (visit)
- 3 Patrick is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was 10 years old. This year he won the national championship again – for the fourth time.
 the national championship four times. (win)
 since he was ten. (play)
- 4 When they left college, Lisa and Sue started making films together. They still make films.
 They films since they left college. (make)
 five films since they left college. (make)

10.2 Ask questions using the words in brackets. Use the present perfect simple (have/has done) or continuous (have/has been doing).

- 1 You have a friend who is learning Arabic. You ask:
 (how long / learn / Arabic?) **How long have you been learning Arabic?**
- 2 You have just arrived to meet a friend. She is waiting for you. You ask:
 (wait / long?) Have
- 3 You see somebody fishing by the river. You ask:
 (catch / any fish?)
- 4 Some friends of yours are having a party next week. You ask:
 (how many people / invite?)
- 5 A friend of yours is a teacher. You ask:
 (how long / teach?)
- 6 You meet somebody who is a writer. You ask:
 (how many books / write?)
- 7 A friend of yours is saving money to go on a world trip. You ask:
 (how long / save?)
- 8 (how much money / save?)

10.3 Put the verb into the present perfect simple or continuous.

- 1 Where have you been? **Have you been playing** (you / play) tennis?
- 2 Look! (somebody / break) that window.
- 3 You look tired. (you / work) hard?
- 4 ‘..... (you / ever / work) in a factory?’ ‘No, never.’
- 5 Where's Lisa? Where (she / go)?
- 6 This is a very old book. (I / have) it since I was a child.
- 7 ‘Have you been busy?’ ‘No, (I / watch) TV.’
- 8 My brother is an actor. (he / appear) in several films.
- 9 ‘Sorry I'm late.’ ‘That's all right. (I / not / wait) long.’
- 10 Are you OK? You look as if (you / cry).
- 11 ‘Is it still raining?’ ‘No, (it / stop).’
- 12 The children are tired now. (they / play) in the garden.
- 13 (I / lose) my phone. (you / see) it?
- 14 (I / read) the book you lent me, but (I / not / finish) it yet. It's really interesting.
- 15 (I / read) the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

how long have you (been) ... ?

A

Study this example situation:



Dan and Kate are married. They got married exactly 20 years ago, so today is their 20th wedding anniversary.

They **have been** married **for 20 years**.

We say: They **are** married. (*present*)

but How long have they **been** married?
(*not* How long are they married?)

They **have been** married **for 20 years**.
(*not* They are married for 20 years)

(*present perfect*)

We use the *present perfect* to talk about something that began in the past and still continues now.

Compare the *present* and *present perfect*:

- Paul is in hospital.
but He's **been** in hospital **since Monday**. (= He **has** been ...)
(*not* Paul is in hospital since Monday)
- We **know** each other very well.
but We've **known** each other **for a long time**.
(*not* We know)
- Do they **have** a car?
but How long have they **had** their car?
- She's **waiting** for somebody.
but She **hasn't been waiting** **very long**.

present
he is
we know
do they have
she is waiting

present perfect
he has been
we have known
have they had
she has been waiting

past now

B

I've **known** / I've **had** / I've **lived** etc. is the *present perfect simple*.

I've **been learning** / I've **been waiting** etc. is the *present perfect continuous*.

When we ask or say 'how long', the continuous is more usual (see Unit 10):

- I've **been learning** English **since January**.
- It's **been raining all morning**.
- Richard **has been doing** the same job **for 20 years**.
- 'How long have you **been driving**?' 'Since I was 17.'

Some verbs (for example, **know** and **like**) are not normally used in the continuous:

- How long **have** you **known** Jane? (*not* have you been knowing)
- I've **had** these shoes for ages. (*not* I've been having)

See also Units 4A and 10C. For **have**, see Unit 17.

C

You can use either the continuous or simple with **live** and **work**:

- Julia **has been living** in this house for a long time. *or* Julia **has lived** ...
- How long **have** you **been working** here? *or* How long **have** you **worked** here?

But we use the simple (**have lived** etc.) with **always**:

- I've **always lived** in the country. (*not* always been living)

D

We say '**I haven't** (done something) **since/for** ...' (*present perfect simple*):

- I **haven't seen** Tom since Monday. (= Monday was the last time I saw him)
- Sarah **hasn't phoned** for ages. (= the last time she phoned was ages ago)

Exercises

11.1 Which is right?

- 1 Ben is a friend of mine. I know / I've known him very well. (I know is correct)
- 2 I like your house. How long do you live / have you lived here?
- 3 You'll need an umbrella if you go out now. It's raining / It's been raining.
- 4 The weather is / has been awful since I arrived here.
- 5 I'm sorry I'm late. Are you waiting / Have you been waiting long?
- 6 We've moved. We're living / We've been living in New Street now.
- 7 I met Maria only recently. I don't know / I haven't known her very long.
- 8 Lisa is in Germany. She's / She's been there on a business trip.
- 9 That's a very old bike. How long do you have / have you had it?
- 10 I'm not feeling good. I'm feeling / I've been feeling ill all day.

11.2 Read the situations and write questions using the words in brackets.

- 1 A friend tells you that Paul is in hospital. You ask him:
(how long / Paul / hospital?) How long has Paul been in hospital?
- 2 You know that Jane is a good friend of Katherine's. You ask Jane:
(how long / you / know / Katherine?)
- 3 Your friend's sister went to Australia some time ago and she's still there. You ask your friend:
(how long / sister / in Australia?)
- 4 You meet a woman who tells you that she teaches English. You ask her:
(how long / you / teach / English?)
- 5 Tom always wears the same jacket. It's very old. You ask him:
(how long / you / have / that jacket?)
- 6 You are talking to a friend about Joe, who now works at the airport. You ask your friend:
(how long / Joe / work / airport?)
- 7 You meet somebody on a plane. She says that she lives in Chicago. You ask her:
(you / always / live / in Chicago?)

11.3 Complete B's answers to A's questions.

A

- 1 Paul is in hospital, isn't he?
- 2 Do you see Lisa very often?
- 3 Is Paul married?
- 4 Is Amy married?
- 5 Do you still play tennis?
- 6 Are you waiting for the bus?
- 7 You know Mel, don't you?
- 8 Jack is never ill, is he?
- 9 Martin lives in Italy, doesn't he?
- 10 Sue lives in Berlin, doesn't she?
- 11 Is Joe watching TV?
- 12 Do you watch TV a lot?
- 13 Do you have a headache?
- 14 Do you go to the cinema a lot?
- 15 Would you like to go to New York one day?

B

- Yes, he has been in hospital since Monday.
 No, I haven't seen her for three months.
 Yes, he married for ten years.
 Yes, she married to a German guy.
 No, I tennis for years.
 Yes, I for about 20 minutes.
 Yes, we each other a long time.
 No, he ill since I've known him.
 Yes, he in Milan.
 Yes, she in Berlin for many years.
 Yes, he TV all evening.
 No, I TV since last weekend.
 Yes, I a headache all morning.
 No, I to the cinema for ages.
 Yes, I to go to New York.
 (use **always** / **want**)

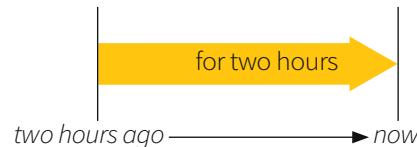
for and since when ... ? and how long ... ?

A

We use **for** and **since** to say how long something has been happening.

We use **for** + a period of time:

- We've been waiting **for two hours**.



for		
two hours	a long time	a week
20 minutes	six months	ages
five days	50 years	years

- Sally has been working here **for six months**. (*not* since six months)
- I haven't seen Tom **for three days**.

We use **since** + the start of a period:

- We've been waiting **since 8 o'clock**.



since		
8 o'clock	April	lunchtime
Monday	2001	we arrived
12 May	Christmas	I got up

- Sally has been working here **since April**. (=from April until now)
- I haven't seen Tom **since Monday**.

B

We often leave out **for** (but not usually in negative sentences):

- They've been married **for ten years**. or They've been married **ten years**.
- They **haven't had** a holiday **for** ten years. (you need **for**)

You can use **in** instead of **for** in negative sentences (**I haven't** ... etc.):

- They **haven't had** a holiday **in** ten years. (=**for** ten years)

We do *not* use **for + all** ... (**all day / all my life** etc.):

- I've lived here **all my life**. (*not* for all my life)

C

Compare **when ... ?** (+ past simple) and **how long ... ?** (+ present perfect):



- A: **When** did it start raining?
 B: It started raining **an hour ago / at 1 o'clock**.
- A: **How long** has it been raining?
 B: It's been raining **for an hour / since 1 o'clock**.



- A: **When** did Joe and Kate first meet?
 B: They first met **{ a long time ago.
when they were at school}**.
- A: **How long** have they known each other?
 B: They've known each other **{ for a long time.
since they were at school}**.

D

We say:

it's or it's been	(= it is) (= it has been)	a long time six months (etc.)	since something happened
------------------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------

- It's two years since** I last saw Joe. or **It's been two years since** ...
(= I **haven't seen** Joe for two years)
- It's ages since** we went to the cinema. or **It's been ages since** ...
(= We **haven't been** to the cinema for ages)
- How long is it since** Mrs Hill died? or **How long has it been since** ...
(= when did she die?)

Exercises

12.1 Write for or since.

- 1 It's been raining since ... lunchtime.
- 2 Paul has lived in Brazil ten years.
- 3 I'm tired of waiting. We've been sitting here an hour.
- 4 Kevin has been looking for a job he left school.
- 5 I haven't been to a party ages.
- 6 I wonder where Joe is. I haven't seen him last week.
- 7 Jane is away on holiday. She's been away Friday.
- 8 The weather is dry. It hasn't rained a few weeks.

12.2 Look at each answer and choose the right question.

- 1 How long have they been married?
When did they get married? Ten years ago.
(When did they get married? *is correct*)
- 2 How long have you had this car?
When did you buy this car? About five years.
- 3 How long have you been waiting?
When did you get here? Only a few minutes.
- 4 How long have you been doing your course?
When did your course start? September.
- 5 How long has Anna been in London?
When did Anna arrive in London? Last week.
- 6 How long have you known each other?
When did you first meet each other? A long time.

12.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

- 1 It's raining. It's been raining since lunchtime. It started raining at lunchtime.
- 2 Ann and Jess are friends. They first met years ago. They've known each other for years.
- 3 Mark is unwell. He became ill on Sunday. He has Sunday.
- 4 Sarah is married. She's been married for a year. She got
- 5 You have a headache. It started when you woke up.
I've I woke up.
- 6 Sue is in a meeting at work. It's been going on since 9 o'clock.
The meeting at 9 o'clock.
- 7 You're working in a hotel. You started working there six months ago.
I've been
- 8 Kate is learning Japanese. She's been doing this for a long time.
Kate started

12.4 Complete B's sentences.

- A
- 1 Do you often go on holiday?
Have you seen Lisa recently?
 - 2 Do you still go swimming regularly?
Do you still ride a bike these days?
- B
- 1 No, I haven't had a holiday for five years.
 - 2 No, I about a month.
 - 3 No, I a long time.
 - 4 No, I ages.

Now write B's answers again. This time use **It's... since...**

- 5 (1) No, it's five years since I last had a holiday.
- 6 (2) No, it's
- 7 (3) No,
- 8 (4)

Present perfect and past 1 (I have done and I did)

A

Study this example situation:



Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it.

He **has lost** his key. (*present perfect*)

This means that he doesn't have his key *now*.

Ten minutes later:



Now Tom **has found** his key. He has it now.

Has he lost his key? No, he **has found** it.

Did he lose his key? Yes, he **did**.

He **lost** his key (*past simple*)

but now he **has found** it. (*present perfect*)

The *present perfect* (something **has happened**) is a *present* tense. It tells us about the situation *now*. 'Tom **has lost** his key' = he doesn't have his key *now* (see Unit 7).

The *past simple* (something **happened**) tells us only about the *past*. If somebody says 'Tom **lost** his key', we don't know whether he has the key *now* or not. We know only that he lost it at some time in the past.

Compare *present perfect* and *past simple*:

- They've **gone** away. They'll be back on Friday. (they are away *now*)
- They **went** away, but I think they're back at home now. (not They've gone away)
- It **has stopped** raining now, so we don't need the umbrella. (it isn't raining *now*)
- It **stopped** raining for a while, but now it's raining again. (not It has stopped)

B

You can use the present perfect for new or recent happenings:

- I've **repaired** the washing machine. It's working OK now.
- 'Hannah **has had** a baby! It's a boy.' 'That's great news.'

Usually, you can also use the past simple:

- I **repaired** the washing machine. It's working OK now.

Use the past simple (not the present perfect) for things that are not recent or new:

- Mozart **was** a composer. He **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.
(not has been ... has written)
- My mother **grew** up in Italy. (not has grown)

Compare:

Somebody **has invented** a new type of washing machine.

Who **invented** the telephone? (not has invented)

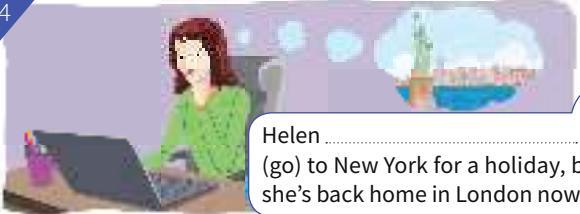
C

We use the present perfect to give new information (see Unit 7). But if we continue to talk about it, we normally use the past simple:

- A: Ow! I've **burnt** myself.
B: How **did** you **do** that? (not have you done)
- A: I **picked** up a hot dish. (not have picked)
- A: Look! Somebody **has spilt** something on the sofa.
B: Well, it **wasn't** me. I **didn't do** it. (not hasn't been ... haven't done)

Exercises

13.1 Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect where possible. Otherwise use the past simple.

 <p>1 I can't get in. I <u>'ve lost</u> (lose) my key.</p>	 <p>2 The office is empty now. Everybody <u>...go</u> home.</p>
 <p>3 I meant to call you last night, but I <u>...forget</u>. (forget)</p>	 <p>4 Helen <u>...go</u> to New York for a holiday, but she's back home in London now.</p>
 <p>5 Are you OK? Yes, I <u>...have</u> (have) a headache, but it's OK now.</p>	 <p>6 Can you help us? Our car <u>...break</u> down.</p>

13.2 Are the underlined parts of these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

- 1 Did you hear about Sophie? She's given up her job.
- 2 My mother has grown up in Italy.
- 3 How many plays has William Shakespeare written?
- 4 I've forgotten his name. Is it Joe or Jack?
- 5 Who has invented paper?
- 6 Drugs have become a big problem everywhere.
- 7 We've washed the car, but now it's dirty again.
- 8 Where have you been born?
- 9 Ellie has gone shopping. She'll be back in about an hour.
- 10 Albert Einstein has been the scientist who has developed the theory of relativity.

OK
My mother grew up

13.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

- 1 It stopped raining for a while, but now it's raining again. (it / stop)
- 2 The town where I live is very different now. It has changed a lot. (it / change)
- 3 I studied German at school, but ...most of it now. (I / forget)
- 4 The police ...three people, but later they let them go. (arrest)
- 5 What do you think of my English? Do you think ...? (it / improve)?
- 6 Are you ready to go? ...your coffee? (you / finish)
- 7 ...for a job as a tour guide, but I wasn't successful. (I / apply)
- 8 Where's my bike? ...outside the house, but it's not there now. (it / be)
- 9 Quick! We need to call an ambulance. ...an accident. (there / be)
- 10 A: I've found my phone.
 B: Oh, good. Where ...it? (you / find)
 A: ...at the bottom of my bag. (It / be)
- 11 A: Ben won't be able to play tennis for a while. ...his arm. (He / break)
 B: Oh. How ...? (that / happen)
 A: ...off a ladder. (He / fall)

Present perfect and past 2 (I have done and I did)

A

We do not use the present perfect (**I have done**) when we talk about a *finished* time (for example, **yesterday / last year / ten minutes ago** etc.). We use a past tense:

- It **was** very cold **yesterday**. (*not has been*)
- Paul and Lucy **arrived ten minutes ago**. (*not have arrived*)
- Did you eat** a lot of sweets **when you were a child**? (*not have you eaten*)
- I **got** home late **last night**. I **was** very tired and **went** straight to bed.

Use the past to ask **When ...?** or **What time ...?**:

- When did** your friends **arrive**? (*not have ... arrived*)
- What time did** you **finish** work?

Compare:

Present perfect

- Tom **has lost** his key. He can't get into the house.
- Is Carla here or **has** she **left**?

Past simple

- Tom **lost** his key **yesterday**.
He couldn't get into the house.
- When did** Carla **leave**?

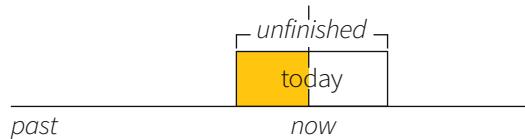
B

Compare:

Present perfect (have done)

- I've **done** a lot of work **today**.

We use the present perfect for a period of time that continues *until now*. For example:
today / this week / since 2010.

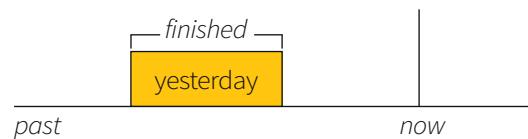


- It **hasn't rained** **this week**.
- Have you seen** Anna **this morning**?
(it is still morning now)
- Have you seen** Ben **recently**?
(in the last few days or weeks)
- I've **been working** here **since 2010**.
(I still work here now)
- I don't know where Lisa is. I **haven't seen** her.
(= I haven't seen her recently)
- We've **been waiting** for an hour.
(we are still waiting now)
- Jack lives in Los Angeles. He **has lived** there for seven years.
- I've **never ridden** a horse. (in my life)
- It's the last day of your holiday. You say:
It's **been** a really good holiday. I've really **enjoyed** it.

Past simple (did)

- I **did** a lot of work **yesterday**.

We use the past simple for a *finished* time in the past. For example:
yesterday / last week / from 2010 to 2014.



- It **didn't rain** **last week**.
- Did you see** Anna **this morning**?
(it is now afternoon or evening)
- Did you see** Ben **on Sunday**?
- I **worked** here **from 2010 to 2014**.
(I don't work here now)
- A: **Was** Lisa at the party **on Sunday**?
B: I don't think so. I **didn't see** her.
- We **waited** (or **were waiting**) for an hour. (we are no longer waiting)
- Jack **lived** in New York for ten years.
Now he lives in Los Angeles.
- I **never rode** a bike **when I was a child**.
- After you come back from holiday you say:
It **was** a really good holiday. I really **enjoyed** it.



Exercises

14.1 Are the underlined parts of these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

- 1 I've lost my key. I can't find it anywhere.
- 2 Have you eaten a lot of sweets when you were a child?
- 3 I've bought a new car. You must come and see it.
- 4 I've bought a new car last week.
- 5 Where have you been yesterday evening?
- 6 Maria has left school in 1999.
- 7 I'm looking for Mike. Have you seen him?
- 8 'Have you been to Paris?' 'Yes, many times.'
- 9 I'm very hungry. I haven't eaten much today.
- 10 When has this bridge been built?

OK

Did you eat

14.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use the present perfect or past simple.

- 1 (it / not / rain / this week) It hasn't rained this week.
- 2 (the weather / be / cold / recently) The weather
- 3 (it / cold / last week) It
- 4 (I / not / eat / any fruit yesterday) I
- 5 (I / not / eat / any fruit today)
- 6 (Emily / earn / a lot of money / this year)
- 7 (she / not / earn / so much / last year)
- 8 (you / have / a holiday recently?)

14.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

- 1 I haven't been (I / not / be) to Canada, but I'd like to go there.
- 2 Paul and Lucy ... arrived (arrive) about ten minutes ago.
- 3 I'm tired. (I / not / sleep) well last night.
- 4 (There / be) a bus drivers' strike last week, so (there / be) no buses.
- 5 Edward (work) in a bank for 15 years. Then (he / give) it up. Now he works as a gardener.
- 6 Mary lives in Dublin. (She / live) there all her life.
- 7 My grandfather (die) before I was born. (I / never / meet) him.
- 8 I don't know Karen's husband. (I / never / meet) him.
- 9 It's nearly lunchtime, and (I / not / see) Martin all morning. I wonder where he is.
- 10 A: (you / go) to the cinema last night?
B: Yes, but the movie (be) awful.
- 11 A: (It / be) very warm here since we arrived.
B: Yes, (it / be) 35 degrees yesterday.
- 12 A: Where do you live?
A: How long (you / live) there?
A: Where (you / live) before that?
A: And how long (you / live) in Chicago?
B: In Boston.
B: Five years.
B: In Chicago.
B: Two years.

14.4 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

- 1 (something you haven't done today) I haven't eaten any fruit today.
- 2 (something you haven't done today)
- 3 (something you didn't do yesterday)
- 4 (something you did yesterday evening)
- 5 (something you haven't done recently)
- 6 (something you've done a lot recently)

Past perfect (I had done)

A

Study this example situation:



Sarah and Paul went to the same party last week, but they didn't see each other. Paul left the party at 10.30 and Sarah arrived at 11 o'clock.

So when Sarah arrived at the party, Paul wasn't there.

He **had gone** home.

had gone is the *past perfect*:

I/we/they/you he/she/it	had	(= I'd etc.) (= he'd etc.)	gone seen finished etc.
----------------------------	------------	-------------------------------	--

The past perfect (simple) is **had** + *past participle* (**gone/seen/finished** etc.).

Sometimes we talk about something that happened in the past:

- Sarah **arrived** at the party.

This is the starting point of the story. Then, if we want to talk about things that happened *before* this time, we use the past perfect (**had** ...):

- When Sarah arrived** at the party, Paul **had** already **gone** home.

Some more examples:

- When we got home last night, we found that somebody **had broken** into the flat.
- Karen didn't come to the cinema with us. She'd already **seen** the movie.
- At first I thought I'd **done** the right thing, but I soon realised that I'd **made** a big mistake.
- The people sitting next to me on the plane were nervous. They **hadn't flown** before.
or They'd never **flew** before.

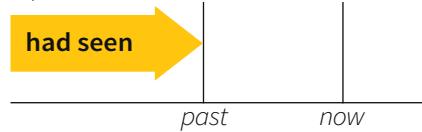
BCompare *present perfect* (**have seen** etc.) and *past perfect* (**had seen** etc.):

Present perfect



- Who is that woman? I've **seen** her before, but I can't remember where.
- We aren't hungry. We've just **had** lunch.
- The house is dirty. They **haven't cleaned** it for weeks.

Past perfect



- I wasn't sure who she was. I'd **seen** her before, but I couldn't remember where.
- We weren't hungry. We'd just **had** lunch.
- The house was dirty. They **hadn't cleaned** it for weeks.

CCompare *past simple* (**left, was** etc.) and *past perfect* (**had left, had been** etc.):

Past simple

- A: Was Tom there when you arrived?
B: Yes, but he **left** soon afterwards.
- Kate **wasn't** at home when I phoned. She **was** at her mother's house.

Past perfect

- A: Was Tom there when you arrived?
B: No, he'd already **left**.
- Kate **had** just **got** home when I phoned. She'd **been** at her mother's house.

Exercises

15.1 Read the situations and write sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 There was a picture lying on the floor.
(It / fall / off the wall) It had fallen off the wall.
- 2 The people sitting next to you on the plane were nervous. It was their first flight.
(They / not / fly / before) They hadn't flown before.
- 3 You went back to your home town recently after many years. It wasn't the same as before.
(It / change / a lot) It ...
- 4 Somebody sang a song. You didn't know it.
(I / not / hear / it / before) I ...
- 5 I invited Rachel to the party, but she couldn't come.
(She / arrange / to do something else) She ...
- 6 You went to the cinema last night. You got to the cinema late.
(The film / already / start) The film ...
- 7 Last year we went to Mexico. It was our first time there.
(We / not / be / there / before) We ...
- 8 I met Daniel last week. It was good to see him again after such a long time.
(I / not / see / him for five years) I ...
- 9 I offered my friends something to eat, but they weren't hungry.
(They / just / have / lunch) They ...
- 10 Sam played tennis yesterday. He wasn't very good at it because it was his first game ever.
(He / never / play / before) He ...

15.2 Use the sentences on the left to complete the paragraphs on the right. These sentences are in the order in which they happened – so (a) happened before (b), (b) before (c) etc. But your paragraph begins with the underlined sentence, so sometimes you need the past perfect.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 (a) Somebody broke into the office during the night.
<u>(b) We arrived at work in the morning.</u>
(c) We called the police. 2 (a) Laura went out this morning.
<u>(b) I rang her doorbell.</u>
(c) There was no answer. 3 (a) Joe came back from holiday a few days ago.
<u>(b) I met him the same day.</u>
(c) He looked very well. 4 (a) James sent Amy lots of emails.
<u>(b) She never replied to them.</u>
(c) <u>Yesterday he got a phone call from her.</u>
(d) He was surprised. | <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>We arrived at work in the morning and found that <u>somebody had broken</u> into the office during the night. So <u>we called</u> the police.</p> </div> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>I went to Laura's house this morning and rang her doorbell, but <u>no answer</u>. <u>.....out.</u></p> </div> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>I met Joe a few days ago. <u>.....just holiday.</u> <u>.....very well.</u></p> </div> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px;"> <p>Yesterday James <u>.....from Amy.</u> <u>.....surprised.</u> <u>.....lots of emails,</u> but <u>.....</u></p> </div> |
|--|--|

15.3 Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (**I had done**) or past simple (**I did**).

- 1 Paul wasn't at the party when I arrived. He'd gone (He / go) home.
- 2 I felt very tired when I got home, so (I / go) straight to bed.
- 3 The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody (go) to bed.
- 4 Mark travels a lot. When I first met him, (he / already / travel) round the world.
- 5 Sorry I'm late. The car (break) down on my way here.
- 6 We were driving along the road when (we / see) a car which (break) down, so (we / stop) to help.

Past perfect continuous (I had been doing)

A

Study this example situation:

yesterday morning



Yesterday morning I got up and looked out of the window. The sun was shining, but the ground was very wet.

It had been raining.

It was *not* raining when I looked out of the window. The sun was shining. But it **had been raining** before.

had been -ing is the *past perfect continuous*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	had	(= I'd etc.) (= he'd etc.)	been	doing working play ing etc.
----------------------------	------------	-------------------------------	-------------	---

Some more examples:

- My hands were dirty because **I'd been repairing** my bike.
- Tom was tired when he got home. **He'd been working** hard all day.
- I went to Madrid a few years ago and stayed with a friend of mine. **She hadn't been living** there very long, but she knew the city very well.

You can say that something **had been happening** before something else happened:

- We'd been playing tennis for about half an hour when it **started** to rain heavily.

B

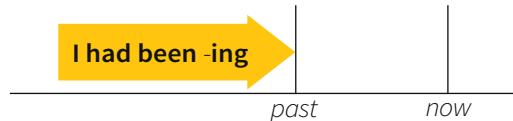
Compare **have been -ing** (*present perfect continuous*) and **had been -ing** (*past perfect continuous*):

Present perfect continuous



- I hope the bus comes soon. I've been **waiting** for 20 minutes. (*before now*)
- James **is** out of breath. He's **been running**. (= he **has** been ...)

Past perfect continuous



- At last the bus came. I'd been **waiting** for 20 minutes. (*before the bus came*)
- James **was** out of breath. He'd **been running**. (= he **had** been ...)

C

Compare **was -ing** (*past continuous*) and **had been -ing**:

- It **wasn't raining** when we went out. The sun **was shining**. But it **had been raining**, so the ground was wet.
- Katherine **was lying** on the sofa. She was tired because she'd **been working** hard.

D

Some verbs (for example, **know**) are not normally used in *continuous* forms (**be + -ing**):

- We were good friends. We **had known** each other for years. (*not had been knowing*)
- A few years ago Lisa cut her hair really short. I was surprised because she'd **always had** long hair. (*not she'd been having*)

For a list of these verbs, see **Unit 4A**. For **have**, see **Unit 17**

Exercises

16.1 Read the situations and make sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 Tom was very tired when he got home.
(He / work / hard all day) He'd been working hard all day.
- 2 The children came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired.
(They / play / football)
- 3 I was disappointed when I had to cancel my holiday.
(I / look / forward to it)
- 4 Anna woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and didn't know where she was.
(She / have / a bad dream)
- 5 When I got home, Mark was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off.
(He / watch / a film)
- 6 The people waiting at the bus stop were getting impatient. The bus was very late.
(They / wait / a long time)

16.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

- 1 We played tennis yesterday. We didn't finish our game.
We'd been playing (We / play) for half an hour when it started (it / start) to rain.
- 2 I had arranged to meet Tom in a restaurant. I arrived and waited for him to come.
.....(I / wait) for 20 minutes when(I / realise) that(I / be) in the wrong restaurant.
- 3 Sarah worked in a company for a long time. The company no longer exists.
At the time the company(go) out of business, Sarah(work) there for twelve years.
- 4 I went to a concert. Soon after the orchestra began playing, something strange happened.
The orchestra(play) for about ten minutes when a man in the audience suddenly(start) shouting.

Now make your own sentence:

- 5 I began walking along the road. Iwhen

16.3 Which is right?

- 1 It was noisy next door last night. Our neighbours were having / had been having a party.
(were having is correct)
- 2 At the end of our journey we were extremely tired. We were travelling / We'd been travelling for more than 24 hours.
- 3 James was on his hands and knees on the floor. He was looking / He'd been looking for his contact lens.
- 4 Sue was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath. She was running / She'd been running.
- 5 John and I went for a walk. He was walking / He'd been walking very fast and I had difficulty keeping up with him.
- 6 I was sad when I sold my car. I've had it / I'd had it for a very long time.
- 7 I was sad when my local cafe closed. I was going / I'd been going there for many years.
- 8 I'm running a marathon next month. I've been training / I'd been training for it every day.
- 9 I had arranged to meet Kate, but I was late. When I finally arrived, she was waiting / she'd been waiting for me. She was annoyed because she was waiting / she'd been waiting such a long time.
- 10a Joe and I work for the same company. He joined the company before me. When I started a few years ago, he was already working / he'd already been working there.
- 10b I started working at the company a few years ago. At the time I started, Joe was already working / had already been working there for two years.
- 10c Joe still works for the company. He's been working / He'd been working there a long time now.

have and have got

A

have and **have got** (=for possession, relationships, illnesses, appointments etc.)

You can use **have** or **have got**. There is no difference in meaning. You can say:

- They **have** a new car. or They've **got** a new car.
- Lisa **has** two brothers. or Lisa **has got** two brothers.
- I **have** a headache. or I've **got** a headache.
- Our house **has** a small garden. or Our house **has got** a small garden.
- He **has** a few problems. or He's **got** a few problems.
- I **have** a driving lesson tomorrow. or I've **got** a driving lesson tomorrow.

With these meanings (possession etc.), we do not use continuous forms (**I'm having** etc.):

- We're enjoying our holiday. We **have** / We've **got** a nice room in the hotel.
(not We're having a nice room)

For the past we use **had** (usually without **got**):

- Lisa **had** long hair when she was a child. (not Lisa had got)

B

In questions and negative sentences there are three possible forms:

Do you have any questions? or Have you got any questions? or Have you any questions? (less usual)	I don't have any questions. or I haven't got any questions. or I haven't any questions. (less usual)
Does she have a car? or Has she got a car? or Has she a car? (less usual)	She doesn't have a car. or She hasn't got a car. or She hasn't a car. (less usual)

In past questions and negative sentences, we use **did/didn't**:

- Did you have** a car when you were living in Paris?
- I **didn't have** my phone, so I couldn't call you.
- Lisa **had** long hair, **didn't** she?

C

have breakfast / have a shower / have a good time etc.

We also use **have** (but not **have got**) for things we do or experience. For example:

have	breakfast / dinner / a cup of coffee / something to eat etc. a bath / a shower / a swim / a break / a rest / a party / a holiday an accident / an experience / a dream a look (at something) a chat / a discussion / a conversation (with somebody) trouble / difficulty / fun / a good time etc. a baby (=give birth to a baby)
-------------	---

Have got is not possible in these expressions. Compare:

- Sometimes I **have** (=eat) a sandwich for my lunch. (not I've got)
- but I've **got** / I **have** some sandwiches. Would you like one?

You can use continuous forms (**I'm having** etc.) with these expressions:

- We're enjoying our holiday. We're **having** a great time.
- 'Where's Mark?' 'He's **having** a shower.'

In questions and negative sentences we use **do/does/did**:

- I **don't** usually **have** a big breakfast. (not I usually haven't)
- Where **does** Chris usually **have** lunch?
- Did** you **have** trouble finding somewhere to stay? (not Had you)

Exercises

17.1 Which goes with which?

- 1 I'm not free tomorrow morning.
- 2 Rachel is an only child.
- 3 We've got plenty of time.
- 4 You've got a really good voice.
- 5 I don't feel very well this morning.
- 6 Laura studied at university.
- 7 I've got a question.
- 8 James has got a lot of experience.

- a She's got a degree in physics.
- b I've got a sore throat.
- c There's no need to hurry.
- d I've got a driving lesson.
- e Maybe you can answer it.
- f I think he should get the job.
- g I wish I could sing as well as you.
- h She's got no brothers or sisters.

- 1 d
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

17.2 Complete the sentences using **have**.

- 1 She couldn't get into the house. She didn't have a key.
- 2 Is there anything you'd like to ask? Do you have any questions?
- 3 They can't pay their bills. They any money.
- 4 We got wet in the rain yesterday. We an umbrella.
- 5 Jack a car. He can't afford one and he can't drive anyway.
- 6 'Excuse me, a pen I could borrow?' 'Yes, sure. Here you are.'
- 7 I was very busy yesterday. I time to go shopping.
- 8 'Tell me about Jack. a job?' 'Yes, he works at the hospital.'
- 9 When you worked in your last job, your own office?
- 10 'Where's the remote control?' 'I don't know. I it.'
- 11 'Tom a motorbike, he?' 'Yes, that's right. A long time ago.'

17.3 Are the underlined words OK? Change them where necessary.

- 1 I'm not free tomorrow morning. I've got a driving lesson.
- 2 Lisa had got long hair when she was a child.
- 3 I couldn't contact you because I hadn't my phone.
- 4 'Are you feeling OK?' 'No, I'm having a cold'.
- 5 I'm not working right now. I'm having a break.
- 6 I felt really tired. I hadn't any energy.
- 7 It's a small town. It doesn't have many shops.
- 8 Was your trip OK? Had you any problems?
- 9 My friend called me when I was having breakfast.
- 10 The last time I saw Steve, he was having a beard.
- 11 We don't need to hurry. We have plenty of time.
- 12 How often have you a shower?

OK

Lisa had long hair

17.4 Complete the sentences. Use an expression with **have** in the correct form. Choose from:

have a baby	have a break	have a chat	have trouble	have a shower
have a look	have lunch	have a party	have a nice time	have a holiday

- 1 I don't eat much during the day. I never have lunch
- 2 David starts work at 8 o'clock and at 10.30.
- 3 We last week. We invited lots of people.
- 4 There's something wrong with my bike. Can you at it for me?
- 5 Joe is away on holiday at the moment. I hope he
- 6 I met some friends in the supermarket yesterday. We stopped and
- 7 ' finding the book you wanted?' 'No, I found it OK.'
- 8 Suzanne a few weeks ago. It's her second child.
- 9 I when the light went out suddenly.
- 10 I'd like to go away somewhere. I for a long time.

used to (do)

A

Study this example situation:

a few years ago

Nicola doesn't travel much these days.
She prefers to stay at home.

But she **used to travel** a lot.
She **used to go** away two or three times a year.

She **used to travel** a lot = she travelled often in the past, but she doesn't do this any more.

*these days*

she used to travel

past

she doesn't travel

*now***B**

I used to do something = I did it often in the past, but not any more:

- I **used to play** tennis a lot, but I don't play very much now.
- David **used to spend** a lot of money on clothes. These days he can't afford it.
- 'Do you go to the cinema much?' 'Not now, but I **used to**' (=I used to go)

We also use **used to** ... for things that were true, but are not true any more:

- This building is now a furniture shop. It **used to be** a cinema.
- I **used to think** Mark was unfriendly, but now I realise he's a very nice person.
- I've started drinking coffee recently. I never **used to like** it before.
- Lisa **used to have** very long hair when she was a child.

C

'**I used to** do something' is past. There is no present. You cannot say 'I use to do'.

To talk about the present, we use the present simple (**I do**).

Compare:

<i>past</i>	he used to play	we used to live	there used to be
<i>present</i>	he plays	we live	there is

- We **used to live** in a small village, but now we **live** in a city.
- There **used to be** four cinemas in the town. Now there **is** only one.

D

The normal question form is **did** (you) **use to** ... :

- Did** you **use to eat** a lot of sweets when you were a child? (= did you do this often?)

The negative form is **didn't use to** ... (**used not to** ... is also possible):

- I **didn't use to like** him. (or I **used not to like** him.)

E

Compare **I used to do** and **I was doing**:

- I **used to watch** TV a lot. (=I watched TV often in the past, but I don't do this any more)
- I **was watching** TV when Rob called. (=I was in the middle of watching TV)

F

Do not confuse **I used to do** and **I am used to doing** (see Unit 61). The structures and meanings are different:

- I **used to live** alone. (=I lived alone in the past, but I no longer live alone.)
- I **am used to living** alone. (=I live alone, and it's not a problem for me because I've lived alone for some time.)

>> Past continuous (**I was doing**) → Unit 6 would (=used to) → Unit 36
be/get used to (**doing** something) → Unit 61

Exercises

18.1 Complete the sentences with **used to** + a suitable verb.

- 1 Nicola used to travel a lot, but she doesn't go away much these days.
- 2 Sophie a motorbike, but last year she sold it and bought a car.
- 3 Our friends moved to Spain a few years ago. They in Paris.
- 4 Jackie my best friend, but we aren't friends any more.
- 5 I rarely eat ice cream now, but I it when I was a child.
- 6 It only takes me about 40 minutes to get to work now that the new road is open.
It more than an hour.
- 7 There a hotel near the airport, but it closed a long time ago.
- 8 I in a factory. It wasn't my favourite job.

18.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 Lisa used to have very long hair when she was a child.
- 2 We to watch TV a lot, but we don't have a TV any more.
- 3 Lisa works in a shop now. She a receptionist in a hotel.
- 4 What games you use to play when you were a child?
- 5 I like big cities, but now I prefer the countryside.
- 6 In your last job, how many hours a day did you to work?
- 7 I don't travel very much these days, but I used
- 8 I used to to run ten kilometres, but I can't run that far now.
- 9 These days I eat more than before. I use to eat as much.

**did
didn't
to
use
used
used to
used to be
used to have
be able**

18.3 Compare what Karen said ten years ago and what she says today:



Now write about how Karen has changed. Use **used to / didn't use to / never used to** in the first part of your sentence.

- 1 She used to travel a lot, but she doesn't go away much these days.
- 2 She used but
- 3 but
- 4 but
- 5 but
- 6 but

18.4 Write sentences about yourself. Begin **I used to ...** (**I used to be/work/like/play** etc.)

- 1 I used to live in a small village, but now I live in a city.
- 2 I used to play tennis a lot, but I don't play any more.
- 3 I used , but
- 4 I
- 5

Now begin with **I didn't use to ...**.

- 6 I didn't use to read a lot, but I do now.
- 7 I didn't
- 8

Present tenses (**I am doing / I do**) for the future

A

Present continuous (I am doing) with a future meaning



This is Ben's diary for next week.

He **is playing** tennis on Monday afternoon.
He **is going** to the dentist on Tuesday morning.
He **is meeting** Kate on Friday.

In all these examples, Ben has already decided and arranged to do these things.

I'm doing something (tomorrow etc.) = I have already decided and arranged to do it:

- A: What **are** you **doing** on Saturday evening? (*not* What do you do)
- B: **I'm going** to the cinema. (*not* I go)
- A: What time **is** Katherine **arriving** tomorrow?
B: Half past ten. We're **meeting** her at the station.
- I'm not working** tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
- Steve **isn't playing** football next Saturday. He's hurt his leg.

We do not normally use **will** to talk about what we have arranged to do:

- What **are** you **doing** tonight? (*not* What will you do)
- Alex **is getting** married next month. (*not* will get)

We also use the present continuous for an action *just before you start to do it*. This happens especially with verbs of movement (**go/come/leave** etc.):

- I'm tired. **I'm going** to bed now. Goodnight. (*not* I go to bed now)
- 'Tina, are you ready yet?' 'Yes, **I'm coming**' (*not* I come)

B

Present simple (I do) with a future meaning

We use the present simple when we talk about timetables and programmes (for example, transport or cinema times):

- I have to go. My train **leaves** at 11.30.
- What time **does** the film **start** tonight?
- The meeting **is** at nine o'clock tomorrow.

You can use the present simple to talk about people if their plans are fixed like a timetable:

- I **start** my new job on Monday.
- What time **do** you **finish** work tomorrow?

But the continuous is more usual for other personal arrangements:

- What time **are** you **meeting** Kate tomorrow? (*not* do you meet)

Compare:

Present continuous

- What time **are** you **arriving**?
- I'm going** to the cinema this evening.

Present simple

- What time **does** the train **arrive**?
- The film **starts** at 8.15.

When you talk about appointments, lessons, exams etc., you can use **I have** or **I've got**:

- I have** an exam next week. *or* **I've got** an exam next week.

Exercises

19.1 Ask Anna about her holiday plans.



ANNA

- 1 (where / go?) Where are you going?
- 2 (how long / go for?)
- 3 (when / leave?)
- 4 (go / alone?)
- 5 (travel / by car?)
- 6 (where / stay?)

Scotland.
Ten days.
Next Friday.
No, with a friend.
No, by train.
In a hotel.

19.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Steve isn't playing (not / play) football on Saturday. He's hurt his leg.
- 2 (We / have) a party next week. We've invited all our friends.
- 3 (I / not / work) tomorrow. It's a public holiday.
- 4 (I / leave) now. I've come to say goodbye.
- 5 'What time (you / go) out this evening?' 'Seven o'clock.'
- 6 (Laura / not / come) to the party tomorrow. She isn't well.
- 7 I love New York. (I / go) there soon.
- 8 Ben can't meet us on Monday. (He / work) late.

19.3 Have you arranged to do anything at these times? Write sentences about yourself.

- 1 (this evening) I'm not doing anything this evening.
- 2 (tomorrow morning) I
- 3 (tomorrow evening) I
- 4 (next Sunday) I
- 5 (another day or time)

19.4 Complete the sentences. Use the present continuous or present simple.

- 1 A: Tina, are you ready yet?
B: Yes, I'm coming. (I / come).
- 2 A: (you / go) to Sam's party on Saturday?
B: No, I haven't been invited.
- 3 A: Has Jack moved into his new apartment yet?
B: Not yet, but (he / move) soon – probably at the end of the month.
- 4 A: (I / go) to a concert tonight.
B: That's nice. What time (it / start)?
- 5 A: Have you seen Chris recently?
B: No, but (we / meet) for lunch next week.
- 6 A: (you / do) anything tomorrow morning?
B: No, I'm free. Why?
- 7 A: When (this term / end)?
B: Next Friday. And next term (start) four weeks after that.
- 8 A: (We / go) to a wedding at the weekend.
B: Really? (Who / get) married?
- 9 A: There's football on TV later tonight. (you / watch) it?
B: No, I'm not interested.
- 10 A: What time is your train tomorrow?
B: It (leave) at 9.35 and (arrive) at 12.47.
- 11 A: I'd like to go and see the exhibition at the museum. How long is it on for?
B: (It / finish) next week.
- 12 A: Do you need the car this evening?
B: No, you can have it. (I / not / use) it.

I'm going to (do)

A

I am going to do something = I have already decided to do it, I intend to do it:

- 'Are you **going to eat** anything?' 'No, I'm not hungry.'
- A: I hear Sarah won the lottery. What **is** she **going to do** with the money?
B: She's **going to buy** a new car.
- I'm just **going to make** a quick phone call. Can you wait for me?
- This cheese smells horrible. I'm **not going to eat** it.

B

I am doing and **I am going to do**

I am doing = it is *already fixed or arranged*. For example, you have arranged to go somewhere or meet somebody:

- I'm **leaving** next week. I've booked my flight.
- What time **are** you **meeting** Emily this evening?

I am going to do something = I've decided to do it. Maybe I've arranged to do it, maybe not.

- A: Your shoes are dirty.
B: Yes, I know. I'm **going to clean** them.
(= I've *decided* to clean them, but I haven't arranged this with anybody)
- I don't want to stay here. Tomorrow I'm **going to look** for somewhere else to stay.

Compare:

- I don't know what I'm **doing** tomorrow. (= I don't know my schedule or plans)
- I don't know what I'm **going to do** about the problem. (=I haven't decided what to do)

Often the difference is small and either form is possible.

C

You can also say that 'something **is going to happen**' in the future. For example:



The man isn't looking where he is going.

He **is going to walk** into the wall.

When we say that 'something **is going to happen**', the situation *now* makes this clear.

The man is walking towards the wall now, so we can see that he **is going to walk** into it.



going to →



Some more examples:

- Look at those black clouds! It's **going to rain**. (we can see the clouds *now*)
- I feel terrible. I think I'm **going to be** sick. (I feel terrible *now*)
- The economic situation is bad now and things **are going to get** worse.

D

I was going to do something = I intended to do it, but didn't do it:

- We **were going to travel** by train, but then we decided to drive instead.
- I **was just going to cross** the road when somebody shouted 'Stop!'

You can say that 'something **was going to happen**' (but didn't happen):

- I thought it **was going to rain**, but it didn't.

Exercises

20.1 Write questions with **going to**.

- 1 Your friend has won some money. You ask:
(what / do?) **What are you going to do with it?**
- 2 Your friend is going to a wedding next week. You ask:
(what / wear?)
- 3 Your friend has just bought a new table. You ask:
(where / put?)
- 4 Your friend has decided to have a party. You ask:
(who / invite?)
- 5 Your friend has bought some fish for dinner. You ask:
(how / cook?)

20.2 Complete the sentences using **I'm going to ... / I'm not going to ...**. Choose from:

complain learn run say try wash not/accept not/eat not/tell

- 1 This cheese smells horrible. **I'm not going to eat** it.
- 2 I haven't been trying hard enough. From now on harder.
- 3 I have to make a speech tomorrow, but I don't know what
- 4 'The car is very dirty.' 'I know. it.'
- 5 I've been offered a job, but it. The pay is too low.
- 6 a language, but I haven't decided yet which one.
- 7 One day in a marathon. It's my ambition.
- 8 The food in this restaurant is awful.
- 9 Ben doesn't need to know what happened, so him.

20.3 What is going to happen in these situations? Use the words in brackets.

- 1 There are a lot of black clouds in the sky.
(rain) **It's going to rain.**
- 2 It is 8.30. Tom is leaving home. He has to be at work at 8.45, but the journey takes 30 minutes.
(late) He
- 3 There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. A lot of water is coming in through the hole.
(sink) The boat
- 4 Amy and Ben are driving. The tank is nearly empty. It's a long way to the nearest petrol station.
(run out) They
- 5 Sarah's car was badly damaged in an accident. Now it has to be repaired.
(cost a lot) It to repair the car.

20.4 Complete the sentences with **was/were going to**. Choose from:

be buy give up phone play say travel

- 1 We **were going to travel** by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.
- 2 I some new clothes yesterday, but I didn't have time to go to the shops.
- 3 Tom and I tennis last week, but he'd hurt his knee and had to cancel.
- 4 I Jane, but I sent her an email instead.
- 5 I thought the exam hard, but it was easier than I expected.
- 6 Peter his job, but in the end he decided to stay where he was.
- 7 I'm sorry I interrupted you. What you ?

will and shall 1

A

We use **I'll ... (=I will)** when we've just decided to do something. When we say '**I'll** do something', we announce our decision:

- Oh, I left the door open. **I'll go** and shut it.
- 'What would you like to drink?' '**I'll have** orange juice, please.'
- 'Did you call Max?' 'Oh no, I forgot. **I'll call** him now.'

We do not use the *present simple* (**I do / I go** etc.) in these sentences:

- I'll phone** him now. (*not I phone him now*)

We often use **I think I'll ... / I don't think I'll ...**:

- I'm a little hungry. **I think I'll have** something to eat.
- I don't think I'll go** out tonight. I'm too tired.

In spoken English **will not** is usually **won't**:

- I can see you're busy, so **I won't stay** long. (=I will not stay long)

B

We often use **I'll** in these situations:

Offering to do something

- That bag looks heavy. **I'll help** you with it. (*not I help*)



Agreeing to do something

- A: Can you give Tom this book?
- B: Sure, **I'll give** it to him when I see him this afternoon.

Promising to do something

- Thanks for lending me the money. **I'll pay** you back on Friday.
- I won't tell** anyone what happened. I promise.



We use **won't** to say that somebody refuses to do something:

- I've tried to give her advice, but she **won't listen**.
- The car **won't start**. (=the car 'refuses' to start)

Will you (do something)? = please do it:

- Will you** please turn the music down? It's too loud.

C

We do *not* use **will** to talk about what has been decided or arranged before:

- I'm going** on holiday next Saturday. (*not I'll go*)

Compare:

- I'm meeting** Kate tomorrow morning. (decided before)
- A: **I'll meet** you at half past ten, OK?
B: Fine. See you then. (decided now)

D

We use **shall** mostly in the questions **shall I ... ? / shall we ... ?**

We use **shall I ... ? / shall we ... ?** to ask if it's OK to do something or to ask for a suggestion:

- Shall I** open the window? (=do you want me to open it?)
- I've got no money. **What shall I** do? (=what do you suggest?)
- 'Shall we go?' 'Just a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
- 'Where **shall we** have lunch?' 'Let's go to Marino's.'

Compare **shall I ... ?** and **will you ... ?**:

- Shall I** shut the door? (=do you want me to shut it?)
- Will you** shut the door? (=I want you to shut it)

Exercises

21.1 Complete the sentences with I'll + a suitable verb.

- 1 ‘How are you going to get home?’ ‘I think I'll take a taxi.’
- 2 ‘It's cold in this room.’ ‘Is it? on the heating then.’
- 3 ‘Are you free next Friday?’ ‘Let me see. my diary.’
- 4 ‘Shall I do the washing-up?’ ‘No, it's all right. it later.’
- 5 ‘I don't know how to use this phone.’ ‘OK, you.’
- 6 ‘Would you like tea or coffee?’ ‘..... coffee, please.’
- 7 ‘Are you coming with us?’ ‘No, I think here.’
- 8 ‘Can you finish this report today?’ ‘Well,, but I can't promise.’

21.2 Read the situations and write sentences with I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll

- 1 It's a bit cold. The window is open and you decide to close it. You say:
It's cold with the window open. I think I'll close it.
- 2 You are feeling tired and it's getting late. You decide to go to bed. You say:
I'm tired, so Goodnight!
- 3 The weather is nice and you need some exercise. You decide to go for a walk. You say:
It's a lovely morning. Do you want to come too?
- 4 You were going to have lunch. Now you decide you don't want to eat anything. You say:
I don't feel hungry any more. lunch.
- 5 You planned to go swimming today. Now you decide not to go. You say:
I've got a lot to do, so today.

21.3 Which is correct?

- 1 ‘Did you call Max?’ ‘Oh no, I forgot. I call / I'll call him now.’ (I'll call is correct)
- 2 I can't meet you tomorrow morning. I'm playing / I'll play tennis. (I'm playing is correct)
- 3 ‘I meet / I'll meet you outside the hotel at 10.30, OK?’ ‘Yes, that's fine.’
- 4 ‘Please don't go yet.’ ‘OK, I'm staying / I'll stay a little longer, but I have to go soon.’
- 5 I'm having / I'll have a party next Saturday. I hope you can come.
- 6 ‘Remember to lock the door when you go out.’ ‘OK. I don't forget / I won't forget’
- 7 ‘Do you have any plans for the weekend?’ ‘Yes, we're going / we'll go to a wedding.’
- 8 ‘Are you doing / Will you do anything tomorrow evening?’ ‘No, I'm free. Why?’
- 9 ‘Do you do / Will you do something for me?’ ‘It depends. What do you want me to do?’
- 10 ‘Do you go / Will you go to work by car?’ ‘Not usually. I prefer to walk.’
- 11 I asked Sue what happened, but she doesn't tell / won't tell me.
- 12 I don't know if I can win the race tomorrow, but I'm doing / I'll do my best.

21.4 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with shall I ... ? or shall we ... ?

- 1 You and a friend want to do something this evening, but you don't know what.
You say: What shall we do this evening? Do you want to go somewhere?
- 2 You and a friend are going on holiday together, but you have to decide where.
You ask your friend:
- 3 You try on a jacket in a shop. You are not sure whether to buy it or not.
You ask a friend for advice: ? What do you think?
- 4 You and a friend are going out. You have to decide whether to get a taxi or to walk.
You ask your friend: or ?
- 5 It's Helen's birthday soon. You want to give her a present, but what?
You ask a friend: What ? Any ideas?
- 6 You're meeting a friend tomorrow, but you have to decide what time.
You say: ? Is 10.30 OK for you?

will and shall 2

A

We do *not* use **will** to say what somebody has *already arranged or decided to do*:

- Lisa **is working** next week. (*not* Lisa will work)
- Are you going to watch** TV this evening? (*not* will you watch)

See Units 19–20.

We use **will** to say what we know or believe about the future (not what someone has already decided). For example:

Kate has her driving test next week.
Chris and Joe are talking about it.

Do you think
Kate **will pass**?

Yes, she's a good driver.
She'll pass easily.



Joe believes that Kate **will pass** the driving test.
He is *predicting* the future.

When we predict a future happening or situation, we use **will/won't**.

Some more examples:

- They've been away a long time. When they return, they'll **find** a lot of changes here.
- 'Where **will** you **be** this time next year?' 'I'll **be** in Japan.'
- That plate is hot. If you touch it, you'll **burn** yourself.
- Anna looks completely different now. You **won't recognise** her.
- When **will** you **get** your exam results?

Compare:

- I think James **is going** to the party on Friday. (=I think he has already decided to go)
- I think James **will go** to the party on Friday. (=I think he will decide to go)

B

We often use **will** ('ll) with:

probably

I'll **probably** be home late tonight.

I'm sure

Don't worry about the exam. **I'm sure** you'll pass.

I think

Do you **think** Sarah **will** like the present we bought her?

I don't think

I **don't think** the exam **will** be very difficult.

I wonder

I **wonder** what **will** happen.

After **I hope**, we generally use the present:

- I hope Kate **passes** the driving test.
- I hope it **doesn't rain** tomorrow.

C

Generally we use **will** to talk about *the future*, but sometimes we use **will** to talk about *now*:

- Don't phone Amy now. She'll **be** busy. (=she'll be busy *now*)

D

Normally we use **shall** only with **I** and **we**. You can say:

I shall or **I will** ('ll) **we shall** or **we will** ('we'll)

- I shall** be late this evening. (*or* **I will** be)
- We shall** probably go to France in June. (*or* **We will** probably go)

In spoken English we normally use **I'll** and **we'll**:

- We'll** probably go to France.

The negative of **shall** is **shall not** or **shan't**:

- I **shan't** be here tomorrow. (*or* I **won't** be)

We do not normally use **shall** with **he/she/it/you/they**:

- She **will** be very angry. (*not* She shall be)

Exercises

22.1 Put in **will** ('ll) or **won't**.

- 1 Can you wait for me? I won't be long.
- 2 There's no point in asking Amanda for advice. She know what to do.
- 3 I'm glad I'm meeting Emma tomorrow. It be good to see her again.
- 4 I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. It happen again.
- 5 You don't need to take an umbrella with you. I don't think it rain.
- 6 I've got some incredible news! You believe it.

22.2 Complete the sentences using **will** ('ll). Choose from the following:

it/be	she/come	you/get	you/like	you/enjoy
people/live	it/look	we/meet	you/pass	she/mind

- 1 Don't worry about your exam. I'm sure you'll pass
- 2 Why don't you try on this jacket? nice on you.
- 3 You must meet Max sometime. I think him.
- 4 It's a very nice hotel. your stay there.
- 5 It's raining hard. Don't go out. very wet.
- 6 Do you think longer in the future?
- 7 Goodbye! I'm sure again before long.
- 8 I've invited Anna to the party, but I don't think
- 9 You can borrow Amy's umbrella. I don't think
- 10 It takes me an hour to get to work at the moment. When the new road is finished, much quicker.

22.3 Write questions using **do you think ... will ... ? + the following:**

be back	cost	end	get married	happen	like	rain
----------------	-------------	------------	--------------------	---------------	-------------	-------------

- 1 I've bought this picture for Karen. Do you think she'll like it ?
- 2 The weather doesn't look very good. Do you ?
- 3 The meeting is still going on. When do you ?
- 4 My car needs to be repaired. How much ?
- 5 Sally and David are in love. Do ?
- 6 'I'm going out now.' 'OK. What time ?'
- 7 The future situation is uncertain. What ?

22.4 Where do you think you will be at these times? Write sentences about yourself. Use:

I'll be ... or **I'll probably be ...** or **I don't know where ...**

- 1 (next Monday evening at 7.45) I'll probably be at home.
- 2 (at 3 am tomorrow)
- 3 (at 10.30 tomorrow morning)
- 4 (next Friday afternoon at 4.15)
- 5 (this time next year)

22.5 Which is better in these sentences?

- 1 Lisa isn't free on Saturday. She'll work / She's working. (She's working is correct)
- 2 It was an amazing experience. I never forget it. / I'll never forget it.
- 3 Something very funny happened. You're laughing / You'll laugh when I tell you about it.
- 4 I'll go / I'm going to a party tomorrow night. Would you like to come too?
- 5 Who do you think will win / is winning the game tomorrow?
- 6 I can't meet you this evening. A friend of mine will come / is coming to see me.
- 7 Don't be afraid of the dog. It won't hurt / It isn't hurting you.
- 8 What's happening / What will happen if I press this button?
- 9 A: Have you decided where to go for your holidays?
B: Yes, we'll go / we're going to Italy.

I will and I'm going to

A

Future actions

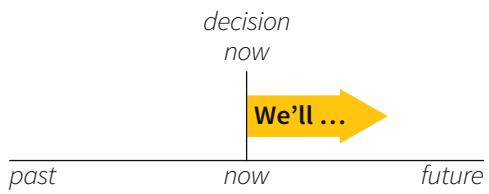
Compare **will** and **(be) going to**:

Sarah is talking to Helen:



will (We'll invite ...)

We use **will** (We'll invite ...) to announce a new decision. The party is a new idea.

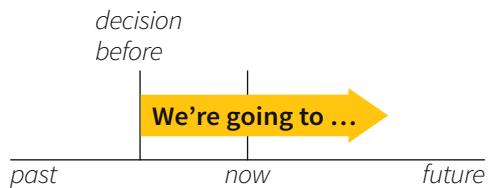


Later that day, Helen meets Max:



(be) going to (We're going to invite ...)

We use **(be) going to** when we have *already decided* to do something. Helen had already decided to invite lots of people *before* she spoke to Max.



Compare:

- 'Gary has been trying to contact you.' 'Has he? OK, I'll call him.'
- 'Gary has been trying to contact you.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to call him.'
- 'Anna is in hospital.' 'Really? I didn't know. I'll go and visit her.'
- 'Anna is in hospital.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to visit her this evening.'

B

Future happenings and situations (predicting the future)

We use both **will** and **going to** for future happenings and situations. So you can say:

- I think the weather **will be** nice later. or
I think the weather **is going to be** nice later.
- Those shoes are well-made. They'll **last** a long time. or
Those shoes are well-made. They're **going to last** a long time.

When we say something **is going to** happen, we believe this because of the situation *now*. What is happening *now* shows that something **is going to** happen in the future. For example:

- Look at those black clouds. It's **going to rain**. (*not* it will rain)
(we can see that it **is going to rain** – the black clouds are in the sky *now*)

Compare:

- We're **going to be** late. The meeting starts in five minutes and it takes 15 minutes to get there.
(it is clear *now* that we don't have enough time to get there)
- Jane **will be** late for the meeting. She's always late.
(I believe this because I know what Jane is like)

Exercises

23.1 Complete the sentences using **will ('ll)** or **(be) going to**.

- 1 A: Why are you turning on the TV?
B: I'm going to watch ... the news. (I / watch)
- 2 A: I forgot my wallet. I don't have any money.
B: Not to worry. you some. (I / lend)
- 3 A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?
B: the car. (I / wash)
- 4 A: I don't know how to use the washing machine.
B: It's easy. you. (I / show)
- 5 A: I've decided to paint this room.
B: That's nice. What colour it? (you / paint)
- 6 A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?
B: Yes, some things for dinner tonight. (I / buy)
- 7 A: What would you like to eat?
B: a pizza, please. (I / have)
- 8 A: This food doesn't taste very good, does it?
B: No, it's horrible. it. (I / not / finish)
- 9 A: Tom is starting an evening class next month.
B: Is he? What? (he / study)
- 10 A: Did you call Lisa?
B: Oh, no. I completely forgot. her now. (I / call)
- 11 A: Has Dan decided what to do when he leaves school?
B: Yes. Everything is planned.
First a holiday for a few weeks. (he / have)
Then a management training course. (he / do)

23.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using **will ('ll)** or **(be) going to**.

- 1 You want some coffee. You go to the kitchen to make some.
You say (to your friend): I'm going to make ... some coffee. Would you like some?
- 2 You're speaking to a friend and arranging to meet. You suggest a time and place.
You say: you at 10.30 in the hotel lobby, OK? (I/see)
- 3 You have decided to sell your car. You tell a friend of yours.
You say: I don't need my car any more. it. (I/sell)
- 4 Your friend is worried because she has lost her driving licence.
You say: Don't worry. I'm sure it. (you/find)
- 5a You have an old camera that is broken. You have decided to throw it away. You tell your friend.
You say: This camera is broken. it away. (I/throw)
- 5b Your friend loves and collects old cameras. He doesn't want you to throw it away.
He says: Don't throw it away! it. (I/have)
- 6a Joe has to go to the airport tomorrow. He doesn't know how to get there. Amy offers to take him.
Amy says: Don't worry about getting to the airport, Joe. you. (I/take)
- 6b Later that day, Paul offers to take Joe to the airport. Joe tells him that it's not necessary.
Joe says: Thanks, Paul, but me. (Amy/take)

23.3 Which goes with which?

- 1 Why don't you come to the party with us?
- 2 That ceiling looks dangerous.
- 3 He's looking very tired.
- 4 This table is too big.
- 5 The weather forecast is good.
- 6 Jack is very determined.
- 7 They are building a new skyscraper here.
- 8 I haven't seen Ben for ages.

- a He'll get what he wants.
- b He probably won't remember me.
- c It's going to be a nice day.
- d It looks as if it's going to fall down.
- e It's going to be 200 metres high.
- f You'll enjoy it.
- g I don't think it will fit in the room.
- h I think he's going to fall asleep.

- 1 f
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

will be doing and will have done

A

Study this example situation:

These people are standing in a queue to get into the cinema.



now

Half an hour from now, the cinema will be full. Everyone **will be watching** the film.



half an hour from now

Three hours from now, the cinema will be empty. The film **will have finished**. Everyone **will have gone** home.



three hours from now

B

I will be doing something (*future continuous*) = I will be in the middle of doing it:

- This time next week I'll be on holiday. I'll be lying on the beach or swimming in the sea.
- You have no chance of getting the job. You'll be wasting your time if you apply.

Compare **will be (do)ing** and **will (do)**:

- Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'll be eating.
- Let's wait for Liz to arrive and then we'll eat.

Compare:

- At 10 o'clock yesterday, Tina was in her office. She was working. (*past continuous*)
- It's 10 o'clock now. She is in her office. She is working. (*present continuous*)
- At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She will be working. (*future continuous*)

C

We also use **will be -ing** to talk about complete actions in the future.

For example:

- The government will be making a statement about the crisis later today.
- Later in the programme, I'll be talking to the Minister of Education.
- The team's star player is injured and won't be playing in the game on Saturday.

Later in the programme,
I'll be talking to ...



When we use it in this way, **will be (doing)** is similar to **will (do)** and **going to (do)**.

D

I will have done something (*future perfect*) = it will be complete before a time in the future. For example:

- Sally always leaves for work at 8.30 in the morning. She won't be at home at 9 o'clock – she'll have gone to work.
- We're late. The film will already have started by the time we get to the cinema.

Compare:

- Ted and Amy have been married for 24 years. (*present perfect*)
Next year they will have been married for 25 years. (*future perfect*)
When their son was born, they had been married for three years. (*past perfect*)

Exercises

24.1 Read about Andy. Then tick (✓) the sentences which are true. In each group of sentences at least one is true.

Andy goes to work every day. He leaves home at 8 o'clock and arrives at work at about 8.45. He starts work immediately and continues until 12.30 when he has lunch (which takes about half an hour). He starts work again at 1.15 and goes home at exactly 4.30. Every day he follows the same routine and tomorrow will be no exception.

1

**At 7.45**

- a he'll be leaving the house
- b he'll have left the house
- c he'll be at home ✓
- d he'll be having breakfast ✓

4

**At 12.45**

- a he'll have lunch
- b he'll be having lunch
- c he'll have finished his lunch
- d he'll have started his lunch

2

**At 8.15**

- a he'll be leaving the house
- b he'll have left the house
- c he'll have arrived at work
- d he'll be arriving at work

5

**At 4 o'clock**

- a he'll have finished work
- b he'll finish work
- c he'll be working
- d he won't have finished work

3

**At 9.15**

- a he'll be working
- b he'll start work
- c he'll have started work
- d he'll be arriving at work

6

**At 4.45**

- a he'll leave work
- b he'll be leaving work
- c he'll have left work
- d he'll have arrived home

24.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 There's an election next week. Who will you be voting for?
- 2 I'll shopping later. Can I get you anything?
- 3 Emily is not well, so she volleyball tomorrow.
- 4 Little Emma school soon. She's growing up fast.
- 5 The match is on TV tonight. Will you it?
- 6 What in your new job? The same as before?
- 7 I to the wedding. I'll be away on holiday.
- 8 Please fasten your seat belts. The plane in ten minutes.

be watching
will be landing
won't be playing
will be starting
will you be voting
won't be going
be going
will you be doing

24.3 Put the verb into the correct form, **will be (do)ing** or **will have (done)**.

- 1 Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'll be eating then. (we / eat)
- 2 Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, tennis. (we / play)
- 3 Sarah will meet you at the station. for you when you arrive. (she / wait)
- 4 The meeting starts at 9.30 and won't last longer than an hour. You can be sure that by 11 o'clock. (it / finish)
- 5 Do you think in the same place in ten years' time? (you / still / live)
- 6 Lisa is travelling in Europe and so far she has travelled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, more than 3,000 miles. (she / travel)
- 7 If you need to contact me, at the Lion Hotel until Friday. (I / stay)
- 8 Ben is on holiday and is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this, all his money before the end of his holiday. (he / spend)
- 9 I'm fed up with my job. I hope it much longer. (I / not / do)

when I do and when I've done if and when

A

Study this example:

Amy is on a train. She's calling a friend.

I'll call you again later when I arrive.



'I'll call you again later when I arrive' is a sentence with two parts:

the main part: I'll call you again later
and **when** ...: when I arrive

The time is *future* ('later'), but Amy says:

... **when I arrive** (*not* when I will arrive)

We say

when I do something (*not* will do)

when something **happens** (*not* will happen)

Some more examples:

- We'll go out **when** it **stops** raining. (*not* when it will stop)
- When** you **are** here again, you must come and see us. (*not* When you will be)
- Don't forget to lock the door **when** you **go** out. (*not* will go)

The same thing happens after **while** / **before** / **after** / **as soon as** / **until**:

- What are you going to do **while** I'm away? (*not* while I will be)
- Before** you **go**, there's something I want to ask you.
- Wait here **until** I **come** back. or ... **till** I **come** back.

B

You can also use the *present perfect* (**have done**) after **when** / **after** / **until** / **as soon as**:

- Can I have the newspaper **when** you've **finished** with it?
- Don't say anything while Ian is here. Wait **until** he **has gone**.

We use the present perfect to show that one thing is complete *before* the other. The two things do *not* happen together:

- When I've phoned** Kate, we can go out.
(= first I'll phone Kate and *after that* we can go out)

Do not use the present perfect if the two things happen together:

- When I phone** Kate, I'll ask her about the party. (*not* when I've phoned)

It is often possible to use either the present simple or the present perfect:

- I'll come **as soon as I finish**. or I'll come **as soon as I've finished**.
- You'll feel better **after** you **have** something to eat. or You'll feel better **after** you've **had** something to eat.

C

if and when

After **if**, we normally use the present (**if I do** / **if I see** etc.) for the future:

- I'll be angry **if** it **happens** again. (*not* if it will happen)
- Hurry up! **If** we **don't** hurry, we'll be late.

We use **if** (*not* when) for things that will *possibly* happen (or not happen):

- If** it is raining this evening, I won't go out. (*not* when it is raining)
- Don't worry **if** I'm late tonight. (*not* when I'm late)
- If** they don't come soon, I'm not going to wait for them.

We use **when** for things which are *sure* to happen. Compare:

- I might go out later. (*it's possible*) **If** I go out, I'll get some bread.
- I'm going out later. (*for sure*) **When** I go out, I'll get some bread.

Exercises

25.1 Which is correct?

- 1 Don't forget to lock the door when you go out / you'll go out. (you go out is correct)
- 2 As soon as we get any more information, we let / we'll let you know.
- 3 I want to get to the cinema before the film starts / will start.
- 4 Don't drive through a red light. Wait until it changes / it will change to green.
- 5 Sarah will be here soon. I make / I'll make some coffee when she comes.
- 6 I'm 20 now. I wonder where I'll be when I'm 40 / I'll be 40.
- 7 I wait / I'll wait for you until you're ready, but don't be long.
- 8 Oliver is five years old. He wants to be a TV presenter when he grows up / he'll grow up.
- 9 We could meet for coffee tomorrow morning if you're / you will be free.
- 10 If the weather is / will be nice tomorrow, we're going to the beach.
- 11 Vicky is / will be very disappointed if she doesn't get a place at university.
- 12 You'll feel better after you've had / you'll have something to eat.

25.2 Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. Use **will/won't** or the present (see/plays/are etc.).

- 1 When you are (you / be) here again, you must come and see us.
- 2 I want to see Sophie before (she / go) away next week.
- 3 Call me when (you / know) what time you're going to get here.
- 4 There's no need to hurry. (I / wait) for you until (you / be) ready.
- 5 I'm going out for about an hour. (you / still / be) here when (I / get) back?
- 6 I think everything will be fine, but if (there / be) any problems, (I / let) you know, OK?
- 7 Kate looks completely different now. (you / not / recognise) her when (you / see) her again.
- 8 I'm going to be away for a few days. If (you / need) to contact me while (I / be) away, you can call me.

25.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

- 1 You and a friend want to go out, but it's raining hard. You don't want to get wet.
You say: Let's wait until it stops raining
- 2 You're visiting a friend. It's going to get dark soon, and you want to leave before that.
You ask: I'd better go now before
- 3 You want to sell your car. Mark is interested in buying it, but he hasn't decided yet.
You ask: Let me know as soon as
- 4 Your friends are going to Hong Kong soon. You want to know where they're going to stay.
You ask: Where are you going to stay when ?
- 5 The traffic is bad in your town, but they are going to build a new road.
You say: I think things will be better when they
- 6 Someone you know has been very rude to you. You want her to apologise.
You say (to someone else): I won't speak to her until

25.4 Put in **when** or **if**.

- 1 Don't worry if I'm late tonight.
- 2 Be careful. You'll hurt yourself you fall.
- 3 I'm going shopping. you want anything, I can get it for you.
- 4 I'm going away for a few days. I'll call you I get back.
- 5 I don't see you tomorrow, when will I see you again?
- 6 I'm watching a programme on TV right now. it finishes, I'm going to bed.
- 7 We can eat at home or, you prefer, we can go to a restaurant.
- 8 I hope Sarah can come to the party. It will be a shame she can't come.

can, could and (be) able to

A

We use **can** to say that something is possible or allowed, or that somebody has the ability to do something. We use **can + infinitive** (**can do / can see** etc.):

- We **can see** the lake from our hotel.
- 'I don't have a pen.' 'You **can use** mine.'
- Can you speak** any foreign languages?
- I **can come** and see you tomorrow if you like.
- The word 'dream' **can be** a noun or a verb.

The negative is **can't (=cannot)**:

- I'm afraid I **can't come** to the party on Friday.

B

You can say that somebody **is able to** do something, but **can** is more usual:

- We **are able to see** the lake from our hotel.

But **can** has only two forms: **can** (*present*) and **could** (*past*). So sometimes it is necessary to use **(be) able to**. Compare:

- I **can't sleep.**
- Tom **can** come tomorrow.
- Maria **can** speak French, Spanish and English.

- I **haven't been able to** sleep recently.
- Tom **might be able to** come tomorrow.
- Applicants for the job **must be able to** speak two foreign languages.

C

Sometimes **could** is the past of **can**. We use **could** especially with:

see hear smell taste feel remember understand

- We had a lovely room in the hotel. We **could see** the lake.
- As soon as I walked into the room, I **could smell** gas.
- I was sitting at the back of the theatre and **couldn't hear** very well.

We also use **could** to say that somebody had the ability to do something, or was allowed to do something:

- My grandfather **could speak** five languages.
- We were totally free. We **could do** what we wanted. (=we were allowed to do)

D

could and was able to

We use **could** for *general* ability and with **see, hear** etc.:

- My grandfather **could speak** five languages.
- I **could see** them, but not very clearly.

But to say that somebody succeeded in doing something in a specific situation, we normally use **was/were able to** or **managed to** (*not could*):

- The fire spread quickly, but everybody **was able to escape**. (*not could escape*)
- I didn't know where Max was, but I **managed to find** him in the end. (*not could find*)

Compare:

- Jack was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He **could beat** anybody.
(= he was good enough to beat anybody, he had the ability)
- but Jack and Andy played a match yesterday. Andy played well, but Jack **managed to beat** him.
(= he succeeded in beating him this time)

The negative **couldn't (could not)** is possible in all situations:

- My grandfather **couldn't swim**.
- I looked for Max everywhere, but I **couldn't find** him.
- Andy played well, but he **couldn't beat** Jack.

Exercises

26.1 Complete the sentences using **can** or **(be) able to**. If **can** is not possible, use **(be) able to**.

- 1 Gary has travelled a lot. He can speak five languages.
- 2 I haven't been able to sleep very well recently.
- 3 Nicole drive, but she doesn't have a car.
- 4 I used to stand on my head, but I can't do it any more.
- 5 I can't understand Mark. I've never understand him.
- 6 I can't see you on Friday, but I meet you on Saturday morning.
- 7 Ask Katherine about your problem. She might help you.
- 8 You have to be careful in this part of the city. It be dangerous.
- 9 Michael has lived in Italy a long time, so he should speak Italian.

26.2 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

- 1 (something you used to be able to do)
I used to be able to sing well.
- 2 (something you used to be able to do)
I used
- 3 (something you would like to be able to do)
I'd
- 4 (something you have never been able to do)
I've

26.3 Complete the sentences with **can/can't/could/couldn't + the following:**

believe come hear run sleep wait

- 1 I'm afraid I can't come to your party next week.
- 2 When Dan was 16, he 100 metres in 11 seconds.
- 3 'Are you in a hurry?' 'No, I've got plenty of time. I
- 4 I don't feel good this morning. I last night.
- 5 Can you speak a little louder? I you very well.
- 6 I was amazed when I heard the news. I it.

26.4 Complete the answers to the questions with **was/were able to ...**

- 1 A: Did everybody escape from the fire?
B: Yes. The fire spread quickly, but everybody was able to escape
- 2 A: Did you finish your work this afternoon?
B: Yes, there was nobody to disturb me, so I
- 3 A: Did you solve the problem?
B: Yes, we did. It wasn't easy, but we
- 4 A: Did the thief get away?
B: Yes. No-one realised what was happening and the thief

26.5 Complete the sentences using **could, couldn't or managed to**.

- 1 My grandfather travelled a lot. He could speak five languages.
- 2 I looked everywhere for the book, but I couldn't find it.
- 3 They didn't want to come with us at first, but we managed to persuade them.
- 4 Jessica had hurt her foot and walk very well.
- 5 There was a small fire in the kitchen, but fortunately I put it out.
- 6 The walls were thin and I hear people talking in the next room.
- 7 I ran my first marathon recently. It was very hard, but I finish.
- 8 My grandmother loved music. She play the piano very well.
- 9 We wanted to go to the concert, but we get tickets.
- 10 A girl fell into the river, but some people pull her out. She's all right now.

could (do) and could have (done)

A

Sometimes **could** is the past of **can** (see Unit 26):

- Listen. I **can hear** something. (now)
- I listened. I **could hear** something. (past)

But **could** is not always past. We also use **could** for possible actions now or in the future, especially to make suggestions. For example:

- A: What shall we do tonight?
B: We **could go** to the cinema.
- A: When you go to Paris next month,
you **could stay** with Sarah.
B: Yes, I suppose I **could**.

Can is also possible in these sentences ('We can go to the cinema.' etc.). **Could** is less sure than **can**.

**B**

We also use **could** (*not can*) for actions that are not realistic. For example:

- I'm so tired, I **could sleep** for a week. (*not I can sleep for a week*)

Compare **can** and **could**:

- I **can stay** with Sarah when I go to Paris. (realistic)
- Maybe I **could stay** with Sarah when I go to Paris. (possible, but less sure)
- This is a wonderful place. I **could stay** here for ever. (unrealistic)

C

We also use **could** (*not can*) to say that something is possible now or in the future:

- The story **could be** true, but I don't think it is. (*not can be true*)
- I don't know what time Lisa is coming. She **could get** here at any time.

Compare **can** and **could**:

- The weather **can** change very quickly in the mountains. (in general)
- The weather is nice now, but it **could** change later. (the weather now, not in general)

D

We use **could have** (done) to talk about the past. Compare:

- I'm so tired, I **could sleep** for a week. (now)
I was so tired, I **could have slept** for a week. (past)
- The situation is bad, but it **could be** worse. (now)
The situation was bad, but it **could have been** worse. (past)

Something **could have** happened = it was possible, but did *not* happen:

- Why did you stay at a hotel? You **could have stayed** with me.
- David was lucky. He **could have hurt** himself when he fell, but he's all right.

E

I couldn't do something = it would not be possible:

- I **couldn't live** in a big city. I'd hate it. (= it wouldn't be possible for me)
- Everything is fine right now. Things **couldn't be** better.

For the past we use **couldn't have** ... (= would not have been possible):

- We had a really good holiday. It **couldn't have been** better.

Note that 'I **couldn't do** something' has two meanings:

- (1) I **couldn't** = it would not be possible now, I would not be able:
 - I **couldn't run** ten kilometres now. I'm not fit enough. (= I would not be able)
- (2) I **couldn't** = I was not able (past)
 - I **couldn't run** yesterday because I'd hurt my leg. (= I was not able)

Exercises

27.1 Which goes with which?

- 1 What shall we eat tonight?
- 2 I need to phone Vicky sometime.
- 3 What shall I get Ann for her birthday?
- 4 Where shall we put this picture?
- 5 What would you like to do at the weekend?
- 6 I don't know what to wear to the wedding.

- a We could go away somewhere.
- b You could give her a book.
- c We could have fish.
- d You could wear your brown suit.
- e You could do it now.
- f We could hang it in the kitchen.

- 1 c
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

27.2 Put in can or could.

- 1 This is a wonderful place. I could stay here forever.
- 2 I'm so angry with him. I kill him!
- 3 I hear a strange noise. What is it?
- 4 It's so nice here. I sit here all day but unfortunately I have to go.
- 5 I understand your point of view, but I don't agree with you.
- 6 Peter is a keen musician. He plays the flute and he also play the piano.
- 7 The company Amy works for isn't doing well. She lose her job.
- 8 Some people are unlucky. Life be very unfair.
- 9 I've been really stupid. I kick myself.
- 10 Be careful climbing that tree. You fall.

27.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

gone	could be	could come	-could sleep-
have moved	could have	could have come	could have been

- 1 A: Are you tired?
B: Yes, very tired. I feel as if I could sleep for a week.
- 2 A: I spent a very boring evening at home yesterday.
B: Why did you stay at home? You out with us.
- 3 A: Shall I open this letter?
B: Yes. It important.
- 4 A: How was your exam? Was it difficult?
B: It wasn't so bad. It worse.
- 5 A: I got very wet walking home in the rain.
B: Why did you walk? You taken a taxi.
- 6 A: Where shall we meet tomorrow?
B: Well, I to your office if you like.
- 7 A: Does Tom still live in the same place?
B: I'm not sure. He could
- 8 A: Did you go to university?
B: No. I could have , but I didn't want to.

27.4 Complete the sentences. Use couldn't or couldn't have + these verbs (in the correct form):

afford	be	be	live	manage	stand	study	wear
---------------	-----------	-----------	-------------	---------------	--------------	--------------	-------------

- 1 I couldn't live in a big city. I'd hate it.
- 2 We had a really good holiday. It couldn't have been better.
- 3 I that hat. People would laugh at me.
- 4 You helped me a lot. I without you.
- 5 The staff at the hotel were really good. They more helpful.
- 6 There's no way we could buy a car now. We it.
- 7 Jack prepared for the exam as well as he could. He harder.
- 8 I wouldn't like to live near the motorway. I the noise of the traffic.

must and can't

A

Study this example:

My house is very near the motorway.



It **must be** very noisy.



We use **must** to say that we believe something is certain:

- You've been travelling all day. You **must be** tired.
(travelling is tiring and you've been travelling all day, so you **must** be tired)
- 'Joe is a hard worker.' 'Joe? You **must be joking**. He doesn't do anything.'
- Louise **must get** very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.

We use **can't** to say that we believe something is not possible:

- You've just had lunch. You **can't be** hungry already.
(we don't expect people to be hungry immediately after a meal)
- They haven't lived here for very long. They **can't know** many people.

The structure is:

you/she/they (etc.)

must
can't

be (tired / hungry / at work etc.)
be -ing (doing / going / joking etc.)
get / know / have etc.

B

Study this example:

There's nobody at home. They **must have gone out**.



Martin and Lucy expected their friends to be at home.

They rang the doorbell twice, but nobody has answered. Lucy says:

They **must have gone** out.
(= there is no other possibility)

For the past we use **must have** ... and **can't have** ...:

- I lost one of my gloves. I **must have dropped** it somewhere.
(that's the only explanation I can think of)
- 'We used to live very near the motorway.' 'Did you? It **must have been** noisy.'
- Sarah hasn't contacted me. She **can't have got** my message.
- Max walked into a wall. He **can't have been looking** where he was going.

The structure is:

I/you/he (etc.)

must
can't

have

been (asleep / at work etc.)
been -ing (doing / looking etc.)
gone / got / known etc.

You can use **couldn't have** instead of **can't have**:

- Sarah **couldn't have got** my message.
- Max **couldn't have been looking** where he was going.

Exercises

28.1 Put in must or can't.

- 1 You've been travelling all day. You ... **must** ... be tired.
- 2 That restaurant be very good. It's always full of people.
- 3 That restaurant be very good. It's always empty.
- 4 I'm sure Kate gave me her address. I have it somewhere.
- 5 I often see that man in this street. He live near here.
- 6 It rained every day during their holiday. It have been very nice for them.
- 7 Congratulations on passing your exam. You be very pleased.
- 8 This bill be correct. It's much too high.
- 9 You got here very quickly. You have driven very fast.
- 10 Bill and Sue always stay at five-star hotels. They be short of money.
- 11 Karen hasn't left the office yet. She be working late tonight.

28.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (one or two words).

- 1 I've lost one of my gloves. I must **have dropped** it somewhere.
- 2 Their house is very near the motorway. It must **be** very noisy.
- 3 You've lived in this village a long time. You must everybody who lives here.
- 4 I don't seem to have my wallet with me. I must it at home.
- 5 'How old is Ed?' 'He's older than me. He must at least 40.'
- 6 I didn't hear my phone. I must asleep.
- 7 'You're going on holiday soon. You must forward to it.' 'Yes, I am.'
- 8 I'm sure you know this song. You must it before.
- 9 The road is closed, so we have to go another way. There must an accident.
- 10 'Do you have a car?' 'You must ! How could I afford to have a car?'
- 11 David is the managing director of a large company, so he must quite a high salary.

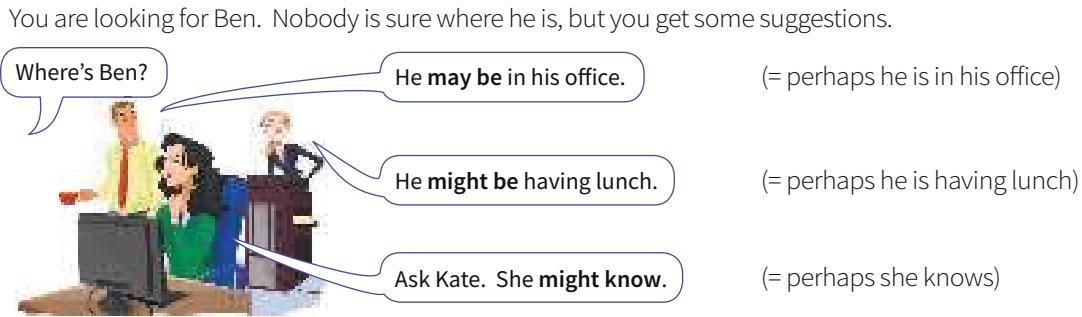
28.3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences with must have and can't have.

- 1 We went to our friends' house and rang the doorbell, but nobody answered. (they / go out)
They must have gone out.
- 2 Sarah hasn't contacted me. (she / get / my message)
She can't have got my message.
- 3 The jacket you bought is very good quality. (it / be / very expensive)
- 4 I haven't seen our neighbours for the last few days. (they / go away)
- 5 I can't find my umbrella. (I / leave / it in the restaurant last night)
- 6 Amy was in a very difficult situation when she lost her job. (it / be / easy for her)
- 7 There was a man standing outside the cafe. He was there a long time. (he / wait / for somebody)
- 8 Rachel did the opposite of what I asked her to do. (she / understand / what I said)
- 9 When I got back to my car, it was unlocked. (I / forget / to lock it)
- 10 My neighbours were making a lot of noise in the night. It woke me up. (they / have / a party)
- 11 The light was red, but the car didn't stop. (the driver / see / the red light)
- 12 Paul has had these shoes for years, but they still look new. (he / wear / them much)

may and might 1

A

Study this example situation:



We use **may** or **might** to say that something is possible. You can use **may** or **might**:

- It **may** be true. or It **might** be true. (= perhaps it is true)
- She **might** know. or She **may** know.

The negative forms are **may not** and **might not**:

- It **may not** be true. (= perhaps it isn't true)
- She **might not** know. (= perhaps she doesn't know)

I/you/he (etc.)	may might	(not)	be (true / in his office etc.) be -ing (doing / working / having etc.) know / work / want etc.
-----------------	----------------------------	-------	---

Note the difference between **may be** (2 words) and **maybe** (1 word):

- It **may be** true. (**may** + verb)
- 'Is it true?' '**Maybe**. I'm not sure.' (**maybe** = it's possible, perhaps)

B

For the past we use **may have** ... or **might have** ...:

- A: I wonder why Kate didn't answer her phone.
B: She **may have been** asleep. (= perhaps she was asleep)
- A: I can't find my phone anywhere.
B: You **might have left** it at work. (= perhaps you left it at work)
- A: Why wasn't Amy at the meeting yesterday?
B: She **might not have known** about it. (= perhaps she didn't know)
- A: I wonder why David was in such a bad mood yesterday.
B: He **may not have been feeling** well. (= perhaps he wasn't feeling well)

I/you/he (etc.)	may might	(not) have	been (asleep / at home etc.) been -ing (doing / working / feeling etc.) known / had / wanted / left etc.
-----------------	----------------------------	-------------------	---

C

could is similar to **may** and **might**:

- It's a strange story, but it **could be** true. (= it is possible that it's true)
- You **could have left** your phone at work. (= it's possible that you left it there)

But **couldn't** (negative) is different from **may not** and **might not**. Compare:

- Sarah **couldn't have received** my message. Otherwise she would have replied.
(= it is not possible that she got my message)
- Why hasn't Sarah replied to my message? I suppose she **might not have received** it.
(= it's possible that she didn't receive it – perhaps she did, perhaps she didn't)

Exercises

29.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 A: Do you know where Helen is?
B: I'm not sure. She might be in her room.
- 2 A: Is there a bookshop near here?
B: I'm not sure, but ask Anna. She
- 3 A: Where are those people from?
B: I don't know. They
- 4 A: I hope you can help me.
B: I'll try, but it
- 5 A: Whose phone is this?
B: It's not mine. It
- 6 A: Why doesn't George answer his phone?
B: He
- 7 A: Do you know anyone who has a key to this cupboard?
B: Rachel, but I'm not sure.
- 8 A: Gary is in a strange mood today.
B: Yes, he is. He

**may be Tom's
may not be feeling well
may not be possible
might be in her room
might be Brazilian
might be driving
might have one
might know**

29.2 Complete each sentence using the verb in brackets.

- 1 A: Where's Ben?
B: I'm not sure. He might be having lunch. (have)
- 2 A: Who was the guy we saw with Anna yesterday?
B: I'm not sure. It may her brother. (be)
- 3 A: Is Ellie here?
B: I can't see her. She may not yet. (arrive)
- 4 A: Gary said he would meet us in the cafe, but he isn't here.
B: He might outside. I'll go and look. (wait)
- 5 A: How did John know that I'd lost my job?
B: I don't know. I suppose Sam may him. (tell)
- 6 A: Do you know where Jeff is? Is he still in the office?
B: He was here earlier, but he might home. (go)
- 7 A: Where's Emma? What's she doing?
B: I'm not sure. She might TV. (watch)
- 8 A: Does Max have any brothers or sisters?
B: I'm not sure. I think he may a younger sister. (have)
- 9 A: I can't find my umbrella. Have you seen it?
B: You may it in the restaurant last night. (leave)
- 10 A: I rang Dan's doorbell, but he didn't answer. I'm sure he was there.
B: He might not the doorbell. (hear)
- 11 A: Hannah is supposed to meet us here, and she's already 20 minutes late.
B: She may She's always forgetting things. (forget)

29.3 Complete the sentences using **might not have ...** or **couldn't have ...**.

- 1 A: I was surprised Amy wasn't at the meeting. Perhaps she didn't know about it.
B: Maybe. She might not have known about it.
- 2 A: I wonder why Tom didn't come to the party. Perhaps he didn't want to come.
B: It's possible. He to come.
- 3 A: I wonder how the fire started. Was it an accident?
B: No, the police say it an accident. It was deliberate.
- 4 A: Mike says he needs to see you. He tried to find you yesterday.
B: Well, he very hard. I was in my office all day.
- 5 A: The man you spoke to – are you sure he was American?
B: No, I'm not sure. He

may and might 2

A

We use **may** and **might** to talk about possible actions or happenings in the future:

- I haven't decided where to go on holiday. I **may go** to Ireland. (= perhaps I will go there)
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain** later. (= perhaps it will rain)
- The bus isn't always on time. We **might have** to wait a few minutes.
(= perhaps we will have to wait)

The negative forms are **may not** and **might not** (**mightn't**):

- Amy **may not go** out tonight. She isn't feeling well. (= perhaps she will not go out)
- There **might not be** enough time to discuss everything at the meeting.
(= perhaps there will not be enough time)

Compare:

- I'm going** to buy a car. (for sure)
- I may buy** a car. *or* **I might buy** a car. (possible)

B

Usually you can use **may** or **might**. So you can say:

- I may go** to Ireland. *or* **I might go** to Ireland.
- Jane **might be** able to help you. *or* Jane **may be** able to help you.

But we use **might** (*not* **may**) when the situation is *not real*:

- If they paid me better, I **might** work harder. (*not* I may work)

This situation (**If they paid** me better) is not real. They do *not* pay me well, so I'm not going to work harder.

C

Compare **may/might be -ing** and **will be -ing**:

- Don't phone at 8.30. I'll **be watching** the football on TV.
- Don't phone at 8.30. I **might be watching** the football on TV. (= perhaps I'll be watching it)

We also use **may/might be -ing** for possible plans. Compare:

- I'm going** to Ireland soon. (for sure)
- I might be going** (*or* **I may be going**) to Ireland soon. (possible)

D

might as well

Helen and Clare have just missed the bus.

The buses run every hour.

What shall we do? Shall we walk?

We **might as well**. It's a nice day and I don't want to wait here for an hour.



We **might as well** do something = we should do it because there is no better alternative. There is no reason not to do it.

You can also use **may as well**.

- A: What time are you going out?
B: Well, I'm ready, so I **might as well go** now. *or* ... **I may as well go** now.
- Buses are so expensive these days, you **might as well get** a taxi.
(= taxis are as good, no more expensive than buses)

Exercises

30.1 Which alternative makes sense?

- 1 A: Where are you going for your holidays?
B: I haven't decided yet. I might go / I'm going to Ireland. (I might go makes sense)
- 2 A: Have you decided what sort of car you want to buy?
B: Yes, I might get / I'm going to get a sports car.
- 3 A: When is Tom coming to see us?
B: He hasn't said yet. He might come / He's coming on Sunday.
- 4 A: Where are you going to put that picture?
B: I don't know yet. I might hang / I'm going to hang it in the bedroom.
- 5 A: What's Tanya going to do when she leaves school? Does she know yet?
B: Yes, she's decided. She might go / She's going to university.
- 6 A: Do you have plans for the weekend?
B: Nothing fixed. I might go away / I'm going away.

30.2 Complete the sentences using **might** + a verb from the box:

- 1 Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It might rain later.
- 2 Don't make too much noise. You the baby.
- 3 Be careful with your coffee. You it.
- 4 Don't forget your phone. You it.
- 5 It's better if we don't talk so loud. Somebody us.
- 6 Be careful. This footpath is icy. You

hear
need
rain
slip
spill
wake

30.3 Complete the sentences. Use **might be able to** or **might have to** + one of these verbs:

fix help leave meet pay wait

- 1 Tell me about your problem. I might be able to help you.
- 2 I can come to the meeting, but I before the end.
- 3 I'm not free this evening, but I you tomorrow evening.
- 4 I'm not sure whether this car park is free or not. We
- 5 There's a long queue. We a long time.
- 6 'I've got a problem with my bike.' 'Let me have a look. I it.'

30.4 Write sentences with **might not**.

- 1 Lisa's not feeling very well. I'm not sure that she will go to the party.
Lisa might not come to the party.
- 2 I haven't seen him for a long time. I don't know if I will recognise him or not.
I might him.
- 3 We want to go to the game, but I don't know whether we'll be able to get tickets.
We for the game.
- 4 I said I'd do the shopping, but it's possible I won't have time.
I to do the shopping.
- 5 I've been invited to the wedding, but I'm not sure that I'll be able to go.
I

30.5 Read the situations and write sentences with **might as well**.

- 1 You and a friend have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.
You say: We'll have to wait an hour for the next bus. We might as well walk
- 2 Your computer doesn't work any more. It will cost a lot to repair.
You say: It's not worth repairing. I a new one.
- 3 You've painted the kitchen. You still have a lot of paint, so why not paint the bathroom too?
You say: I too. There's plenty of paint left.
- 4 You and a friend are at home. You're bored. There's a film on TV starting in a few minutes.
You say: We it. There's nothing else to do.

have to and must

A

I **have to** do something = it is necessary to do it, I am obliged to do it:

- You can't turn right here. You **have to turn** left.
- I **have to wear** glasses for reading.
- Robert can't come out with us this evening.
He **has to work** late.
- Last week Tina broke her arm and **had to go** to hospital.
- I haven't **had to go** to the doctor for ages.

We use **do/does/did** in questions and negative sentences (for the present and past simple):

- What **do I have to do** to get a new driving licence? (*not* What have I to do?)
- Karen **doesn't have to work** Saturdays. (*not* Karen hasn't to)
- 'Did you **have to wait** a long time for a bus?' 'No, only ten minutes.'



You can say **I'll have to ...**, **I'm going to have to ...**, **I might have to ...**, **I may have to ...**:

- They can't repair my computer, so **I'll have to buy** a new one. *or*
... **I'm going to have to buy** a new one.
- We **might have to change** our plans. *or* We **may have to change** ...
(= it's possible that we will have to change them)

B

Must is similar to **have to**. You can say:

- It's later than I thought. I **must go**. *or* I **have to go**.

You can use **must** or **have to** when you give your own opinion (for example, to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):

- I haven't spoken to Sue for ages. I **must phone** her. / I **have to phone** her.
(= I say this is necessary)
- Mark is a really nice person. You **must meet** him. / You **have to meet** him.
(= I recommend this)

We use **have to** (*not usually must*) to say what someone is *obliged* to do. This is a *fact*, not the speaker's own opinion:

- I **have to work** from 8.30 to 5.30 every day. (a fact, not an opinion)
- Jane **has to travel** a lot for her work.



But we use **must** in written rules and instructions:

- Applications for the job **must be received** by 18 May.
- Seat belts **must be worn**.

We use **had to** (*not must*) to talk about the past:

- I went to the meeting yesterday, but I **had** to leave early. (*not* I **must**)

C

Mustn't and **don't have to** are completely different:

You **mustn't** do something = *don't* do it:

- You **must keep** this a secret. You **mustn't tell** anyone. (= don't tell anyone)
- I promised I would be on time. I **mustn't be** late. (= I must be on time)

You **don't have to** do something = you don't need to do it (but you can if you want):

- You **don't have to come** with me. I can go alone.
- I **don't have to be** at the meeting, but I'm going anyway.

D

You can use **have got to** instead of **have to**. You can say:

- I've **got to** work tomorrow. *or* I **have to** work tomorrow.
- When **has** Helen **got to** go? *or* When **does** Helen **have to** go?

Exercises

31.1 Complete the sentences using **have/has/had to ...**. Use the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Robert can't come out with us this evening. He has to work late. (he / work)
- 2 'The bus was late this morning.' 'How long did you have to wait ?' (you / wait)
- 3 I don't have much time. in ten minutes. (I / go)
- 4 'I'm afraid I can't stay long.' 'What time ?' (you / go)
- 5 Joe starts work at 5 am every day, which means at four. (he / get up)
- 6 We nearly missed the bus this morning. to catch it. (we / run)
- 7 Is Lisa usually free on Saturdays or ? (she / work)
- 8 There was nobody to help me. everything by myself. (I / do)
- 9 How old to have a driving licence? (you / be)
- 10 There was a lot of noise from the street. the window. (we / close)
- 11 Was the exhibition free, or to go in? (you / pay)

31.2 Complete the sentences using **have/has/had to + the verbs in the list**. Some sentences are negative (**I don't have to ... etc.**):

ask decide drive get up go make make pay show stand

- 1 I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
- 2 Steve didn't know how to change the settings on his phone. I had to show him.
- 3 Excuse me a moment – I a phone call. I won't be long.
- 4 You can let me know later what you want to do. You now.
- 5 I couldn't find the street I wanted. I somebody for directions.
- 6 This car park is free. You
- 7 A man was slightly injured in the accident, but he to hospital.
- 8 Jane has a senior position in the company. She important decisions.
- 9 The train was very full and there were no seats free. We all the way.
- 10 When Patrick starts his new job next month, he 50 miles to work every day.

31.3 In some of these sentences, **must** is wrong or unnatural. Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 It's later than I thought. I must go.
- 2 I must start work every day at 8.30.
- 3 I must remember to call Sarah tomorrow.
- 4 I couldn't get a taxi last night. I must walk home.
- 5 You must come and see us again soon.
- 6 Tom isn't going out this evening. He must study for his exam.
- 7 We can't go the usual way because the road is closed. We must go another way.
- 8 Julia wears glasses. She must wear glasses since she was very young.

OK (I have to go is also correct)

I have to start work

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

31.4 Complete the sentences with **mustn't, don't have to** or **doesn't have to**.

- 1 I don't want anyone to know about our plan. You mustn't tell anyone.
- 2 Richard doesn't have to wear a suit to work, but he usually does.
- 3 There's a lift in the building, so we climb the stairs.
- 4 I promised Kate I'd call her tomorrow. I forget.
- 5 I'm not very busy. I have a few things to do, but I do them now.
- 6 Sophie likes weekends because she get up early.
- 7 You be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.
- 8 You should keep trying to find a job. You give up.
- 9 I eat too much. I'm supposed to be on a diet.
- 10 We have plenty of time before our flight. We check in yet.

must mustn't needn't

A must and mustn't

You **must** do something = it is necessary that you do it:

- Don't tell anybody what I said. You **must keep** it a secret.
- We don't have much time. We **must hurry**.

You **mustn't** do something = don't do it:

- You **must** keep it a secret. You **mustn't** tell anyone. (=don't tell anyone)
- We **must** be very quiet. We **mustn't** make any noise.

B needn't and don't need to

You **needn't** do something = it's not necessary to do it (but you can if you want):

- We have plenty of time. We **needn't hurry**. (=it is not necessary to hurry)
- Joe can stay here. He **needn't come** with us. (=it is not necessary for him to come)

You can also use **don't/doesn't need to**:

- We **don't need to** hurry.

Note that we say '**don't need to** do', but '**needn't do**' (*without to*).

Compare **needn't** and **mustn't**:

- You **needn't** tell Steve. I can tell him myself. (=it is not necessary)
- You **mustn't** tell Steve. I don't want him to know. (=don't tell him)

C needn't have (done)

Study this example situation:



Paul and Sarah reserved a table at a restaurant.

But when they went to the restaurant, it was almost empty.

They **needn't have reserved** a table.

This means: they reserved a table, but now they know this was not necessary.

Compare **needn't** (do) and **needn't have** (done):

- Everything will be OK. You **needn't worry**. (it is not necessary)
- Everything was OK. You **needn't have worried**. (you worried, but it was not necessary)

D needn't have (done) and didn't need to (do)

He **needn't have done** something = he did it, but now we know that it was not necessary:

- Why did he get up at 5 o'clock? He **needn't have got** up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.

He **didn't need to do** something = it was not necessary to do it. It doesn't matter whether he did it or not:

- He **didn't need to get** up early, so he didn't.
- He **didn't need to get** up early, but it was a beautiful morning, so he did.

You can also say 'He **didn't have to** get up' in these examples.

Exercises

32.1 Which goes with which? Find the sentences with a similar meaning.

- 1 You must be very quiet.
- 2 You must remember your password.
- 3 You must be brave.
- 4 You must be on time.
- 5 You must leave the furniture as it is.
- 6 You must go away.
- 7 You must forget what happened.

- a You mustn't stay here.
- b You mustn't be afraid.
- c You mustn't think about it.
- d You mustn't forget it.
- e You mustn't be late.
- f You mustn't make any noise.
- g You mustn't move anything.

1 f
2
3
4
5
6
7

32.2 Which is correct?

- 1 We have plenty of time. We mustn't / needn't hurry. (needn't is correct)
- 2 I have to talk to Gary. I must / mustn't remember to call him.
- 3 I have to talk to Gary. I mustn't / needn't forget to call him.
- 4 There's plenty of time for you to decide. You mustn't / don't need to decide now.
- 5 These are important documents. We mustn't / needn't lose them.
- 6 You mustn't / needn't wait for me. You go on and I'll join you later.
- 7 This is a dangerous situation and we need to be careful. We mustn't / needn't do anything stupid.
- 8 I understand the situation perfectly. You mustn't / don't need to explain further.
- 9 A: What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?
B: It mustn't / needn't be big – that's not so important. But it must / mustn't have a nice garden.

32.3 Complete the sentences. Use **needn't** + verb. Choose from:

come keep leave walk worry

- 1 We have plenty of time. We needn't leave yet.
- 2 I can manage the shopping alone. You with me.
- 3 We all the way home. We can get a taxi.
- 4 You can delete these emails. You them.
- 5 I'll be all right. You about me.

32.4 Write two sentences for each situation. Use **needn't have** in the first sentence and **could have** in the second (as in the example). For **could have**, see Unit 27.

- 1 Why did you rush? Why didn't you take your time?
You needn't have rushed. You could have taken your time.
- 2 Why did you walk home? Why didn't you take a taxi?
.....
- 3 Why did they stay at a hotel? Why didn't they stay with us?
.....
- 4 Why did she phone me at 3 am? Why didn't she wait until the morning?
.....
- 5 Why did you shout at me? Why weren't you more patient?
.....

32.5 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

- 1 We have plenty of time. We don't need hurry.
- 2 Keep it a secret. You mustn't tell anybody.
- 3 You needn't to shout. I can hear you perfectly.
- 4 I needn't have gone out, so I stayed at home.
- 5 This train is direct. You don't need to change.
- 6 You mustn't lock the door. It's OK to leave it unlocked.
- 7 I needn't have said anything, so I kept quiet.
- 8 I needn't have said anything. I should have kept quiet.

We don't need to hurry
OK
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

should 1

A

You **should do** something = it is a good thing to do or the right thing to do.

You can use **should** to give advice or to give an opinion:

- You look tired. You **should go** to bed.
- The government **should do** more to improve schools.
- A: **Should** we **invite** Stephanie to the party?
B: Yes, I think we **should**.
- The man on the motorbike **should be wearing** a helmet.



You **shouldn't** do something = it isn't a good thing to do:

- You **shouldn't believe** everything you read in newspapers.

We often use **should** with **I think / I don't think / Do you think ... ?**:

- I think** the government **should do** more to improve schools.
- I don't think** you **should work** so hard.
- A: **Do you think I should apply** for this job?
B: Yes, **I think** you **should**.

Should is not as strong as **must** or **have to**:

- You **should** apologise. (= it would be a good thing to do)
- You **must** apologise. / You **have to** apologise. (=you have no alternative)

B

We use **should** when something is not right or what we expect:

- Where's Tina? She **should be** here by now.
(= she isn't here yet, and this is not normal)
- The price on this packet is wrong. It **should be** £2.50, not £3.50.

We also use **should** to say that we expect something to happen:

- Helen has been studying hard for the exam, so she **should pass**.
(= I expect her to pass)
- There are plenty of hotels in the town. It **shouldn't be** hard to find a place to stay.
(= I don't expect it to be hard)

C

You **should have done** something = you didn't do it, but it would have been a good thing to do:

- You missed a great party last night. You **should have come**. Why didn't you?
(= you didn't come, but it would have been good to come)
- I wonder why they're so late. They **should have been** here long ago.

You **shouldn't have done** something = you did it, but it wasn't a good thing to do:

- I'm feeling sick. I **shouldn't have eaten** so much. (= I ate too much)
- She **shouldn't have been listening** to our conversation. It was private.
(= she was listening)

Compare **should** (do) and **should have** (done):

- You look tired. You **should go** to bed now.
- You went to bed very late last night. You **should have gone** to bed earlier.

D

ought to ...

You can use **ought to** instead of **should** in the sentences on this page.

We say 'ought to do' (with **to**):

- Do you think I **ought to apply** for this job? (= Do you think I **should apply** ... ?)
- Jack **ought not to go** to bed so late. (= Jack **shouldn't go** ...)
- It was a great party last night. You **ought to have come**. (= You **should have come**)

Exercises

33.1 For each situation, write a sentence with **should** or **shouldn't** + one of the following:

go away for a few days
put some pictures on the walls

stay up so late
take a picture

look for another job
worry so much

- 1 Anna needs a change.
- 2 Your salary is very low.
- 3 Jack always finds it hard to get up.
- 4 What a beautiful view!
- 5 Laura is always anxious.
- 6 Dan's room isn't very nice.

She should go away for a few days.
You
He
You
She
.....

33.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

should solve
should receive

should be working OK
-should pass the exam

shouldn't cost more
should be much warmer

shouldn't take long
should be here soon

- 1 Helen has been studying hard, so she should pass the exam.
- 2 Joe hasn't arrived yet, but he
- 3 The TV has been repaired. It now.
- 4 It to get to the hotel. About 20 minutes.
- 5 I sent the documents to you today, so you them tomorrow.
- 6 The weather is unusually cold. It at this time of year.
- 7 The best way to get to the airport is by taxi. It than ten pounds.
- 8 If you have a problem with the computer, try restarting it. That the problem.

33.3 Complete the sentences. Use **should ...** or **should have ...** + the verb in brackets.

- 1 You look tired. You should go to bed. (go)
- 2 You missed a great party last night. You should have come (come)
- 3 I'm in a difficult position. What do you think I now? (do)
- 4 I'm sorry that I didn't take your advice. I what you said. (do)
- 5 We lost the game, but we were the better team. We (win)
- 6 We don't see you enough. You and see us more often. (come)
- 7 We went the wrong way and got lost. We right, not left. (turn)
- 8 My exam results weren't good. I better. (do)

33.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **should** / **should have** / **shouldn't** / **shouldn't have**.

- 1 I'm feeling sick. I ate too much.
I shouldn't have eaten so much.
- 2 When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn't reserved one.
We
- 3 Laura told me her address, but I didn't write it down. Now I can't remember the house number.
I
- 4 The shop is open every day from 8.30. It is 9 o'clock now, but the shop isn't open yet.
.....
- 5 I was looking at my phone. I wasn't looking where I was going. I walked into a wall.
.....
- 6 Kate is driving. The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Kate is doing 50.
She
- 7 I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I went to work. That was a mistake. Now I feel worse.
.....
- 8 Tomorrow there is a football match between Team A and Team B. Team A are much better.
.....
- 9 I was driving. The car in front stopped suddenly and I drove into it. It wasn't my fault.
The driver in front

should 2

AYou can use **should** after:

insist demand recommend suggest propose

- I insisted that he **should apologise**.
- Doctors **recommend** that everyone **should eat** plenty of fruit.
- What do you **suggest** we **should do**?
- Many people are **demanding** that something **should be done** about the problem.

also

It's important/vital/necessary/essential that ... **should** ... :

- It's **essential** that everyone **should be** here on time.

BYou can also leave out **should** in the sentences in section A. So you can say:

- It's **essential** that everyone **be** here on time. (= ... that everyone **should be** here ...)
- I insisted that he **apologise**. (= ... that he **should apologise**)
- What do you **suggest** we **do**?
- Many people are **demanding** that something **be done** about the problem.

This form (**be/do/apologise** etc.) is called the *subjunctive*. It is the same as the *infinitive* (without **to**).

You can also use normal present and past forms:

- It's **essential** that everyone **is** here on time.
- I insisted that he **apologised**.

CWe do not use **to** ... with **suggest**. You can say:

- What do you **suggest we should do**?
- or What do you **suggest we do**? (but not What do you suggest us to do?)
- Jane won the lottery.
I **suggested** that she **should buy** a car with the money she won.
- or I **suggested** that she **buy** a car.
- or I **suggested** that she **bought** a car. (but not I suggested her to buy)

You can also use -ing after **suggest** (What do you **suggest doing**?). See Unit 53.**D**You can use **should** after some adjectives, especially:

strange odd funny typical natural interesting surprised surprising

- It's **strange** that he **should be** late. He's usually on time.
- I was **surprised** that he **should say** such a thing.

EYou can say 'if something **should** happen ...'. For example:

- We have no jobs at present, but if the situation **should change**, we will contact you.

You can also begin with **should** (**Should** something happen ...):

- Should** the situation **change**, we will contact you.

This means the same as 'If the situation **changes**, ...'. With **should**, the speaker feels that the possibility is smaller.**F**You can use **I should ... / I shouldn't ...** to give advice. For example:

- 'Shall I leave now?' 'No, I **should wait** a bit.' (= I advise you to wait)

Here, **I should** ... = 'I would ... if I were you', 'I advise you to ...'. Two more examples:

- 'I'm going out now. Is it cold outside?' 'Yes, I **should wear** a coat.'
- I **shouldn't stay** up too late. You have to be up early tomorrow.

Exercises

34.1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 'It would be a good idea to eat more fruit,' the doctor said to me.
The doctor recommended that I should eat more fruit.
- 2 'You really must stay a little longer,' she said to me.
She insisted that I
- 3 'Why don't you visit the museum after lunch?' I said to them.
I suggested that
- 4 'You must pay the rent by Friday,' the landlord said to us.
The landlord demanded that
- 5 'Let's go to the cinema,' Chris said to me.
Chris suggested that

34.2 Two of these sentences are not correct. Change the two that are not correct.

- 1 Tom suggested that I look for another job. OK
- 2 I called Tina and suggested that we meet for coffee.
- 3 What do you suggest me to do?
- 4 What sort of car do you suggest I should buy?
- 5 I suggest you to read this book.
- 6 I suggested that Anna learn to drive.

34.3 Complete the sentences using **should + verb. Choose from:**

ask -be- be done leave say vote worry

- 1 It's strange that he should be late. He's usually on time.
- 2 It's funny that you that. I was thinking the same thing.
- 3 It's only natural that parents about their children.
- 4 Isn't it typical of Joe that he without saying goodbye to anybody?
- 5 I was surprised that they me for advice. What advice could I give them?
- 6 This is a democratic election, and it's important that you
- 7 The bridge needs to be repaired. It's essential that the work as soon as possible.

34.4 Complete the sentences using **If ... should Choose from:**

anyone / ask -the situation / change- it / rain there / any problems

- 1 We have no jobs at present. If the situation should change, we'll let you know.
- 2 I've hung out the washing to dry on the balcony. If, can you bring it inside?
- 3 I think everything will be OK., I'm sure we'll be able to solve them.
- 4 I don't want anyone to know where I'm going., say you don't know.

Now complete the same sentences beginning with **Should**

- 5 Should the situation change, we'll let you know.
- 6, can you bring the washing inside?
- 7, I'm sure we'll be able to solve them.
- 8, where I'm going, say you don't know.

34.5 Complete the sentences using **I should. Choose from:**

call get keep -wait-

- 1 'Shall I leave now?' 'No, ... I should wait a bit.'
- 2 'Shall I throw these things away?' 'No, them. You may need them.'
- 3 'Shall I go and see Paul?' 'Yes, but him first.'
- 4 'Is it worth getting this computer repaired?' 'No, a new one.'

I'd better ... it's time ...

A had better (I'd better / you'd better etc.)

I'd better do something = it is advisable to do it. If I don't do it, there will be a problem or a danger:

- I have to meet Amy in ten minutes. **I'd better go** now or I'll be late.
- 'Shall I take an umbrella?' 'Yes, **you'd better**. It might rain.'
- We'd better stop** for petrol soon. The tank is almost empty.

The negative is **I'd better not** (= I **had** better not):

- A: That jacket looks good on you. Are you going to buy it?
- B: **I'd better not**. It's very expensive.
- You don't look very well. **You'd better not go** out tonight.

Remember that:

I'd better = **I had** better, **you'd** better = **you had** better etc.

- I'd better** phone Chris, **hadn't** I?
- We **had better** go now.

Had is normally past, but we use **had better** for the present or future, *not* past.

- I'd better go **now / tomorrow**.

We say 'I'd better **do**' (*not* to do).

- It might rain. We'd better **take** an umbrella. (*not* We'd better to take)

B had better and should

Had better is similar to **should** but not exactly the same. We use **had better** only for a specific situation, not for things in general. You can use **should** in all types of situations to give an opinion or give advice:

- It's late. You'd better go. or You **should go**. (a specific situation)
- You're always at home. You **should go** out more often. (in general – *not* 'had better go')

Also, with **had better**, there is always a danger or a problem if you don't follow the advice.

Should means only 'it is a good thing to do'. Compare:

- It's a great film. You **should** go and see it. (but no problem if you don't)
- The film starts at 8.30. You'd better go now or you'll miss the beginning.

C it's time ...

You can say **It's time** (for somebody) **to** ...:

- It's time **to go** home. / It's time for us **to go** home.

But you can also say:

- It's late. It's time **we went** home.

When we use **it's time** + past ('it's time we **went**' etc.), the meaning is present, *not* past:

- It's time** they **were** here. Why are they so late? (*not* It's time they are here)

It's time somebody **did** something = they should have already done it or started it.

We often use this structure to criticise or to complain:

- This situation can't continue. **It's time** you **did** something about it.
- He's very selfish. **It's time** he **realised** that he isn't the most important person in the world.

You can also say **It's about time** ...:

- Jack is a great talker, but **it's about time** he **did** something instead of just talking.

Exercises

35.1 Read the situations and write sentences with 'd better or 'd better not. Choose a verb from:

check disturb go put reserve take

- 1 You're going out for a walk with a friend. It looks as if it might rain.
You say: We'd better take an umbrella.
- 2 You and Kate plan to go to a restaurant tonight. It will be busy.
You say to Kate: We a table.
- 3 Oliver has just cut himself. It's bleeding and he'll need a plaster on it.
You say to him: You on it.
- 4 Rebecca doesn't look well this morning – not well enough to go to work.
You say to her: this morning.
- 5 You're going to the cinema, but you're not sure what time the film starts.
You say: the film starts.
- 6 You need to talk to your boss, but she's very busy right now.
You say to a colleague: right now.

35.2 Is had better OK in these sentences? Change to should where necessary.

- 1 I have an appointment in ten minutes. I'd better go now or I'll be late.
- 2 You'd better set your alarm. You have to get up early tomorrow.
- 3 I'm glad you came to see us. You'd better come more often.
- 4 She'll be sad if we don't invite her to the party, so we'd better invite her.
- 5 It's nearly time to go out. I'd better get ready.
- 6 I think everybody had better learn a foreign language.
- 7 We've just missed the last bus. We'd better get a taxi.

OK
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

35.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 It might rain. We'd better an umbrella.
- 2 Ben needs to know what happened. Somebody better tell him.
- 3 We'd better park the car here. The road is too narrow.
- 4 You brush your teeth at least twice a day.
- 5 What are we going to do? It's time decide.
- 6 better not be late. It's an important meeting.
- 7 It's time they here. They promised they wouldn't be late.
- 8 The window is open. You'd close it before you go out.
- 9 We'd better leave as soon as possible, we?
- 10 The government should something about the problem.
- 11 It's time the government something about the problem.
- 12 It's time something done about the problem.

better
do
did
had
hadn't
I'd
not
to
take
should
was
were

35.4 Read the situations and write sentences with It's time (somebody did something).

- 1 You're at a friend's house. You planned to go home at 11 o'clock. It's already 11 o'clock now.
(I / go) It's time I went home.
- 2 You haven't had a holiday for a very long time. You need one now.
(I / holiday) It's time
- 3 It's 10 o'clock. It's after the children's bedtime. You think they should be in bed.
(children / bed)
- 4 You didn't realise it was so late. You need to start cooking dinner.
(start / cook) dinner.
- 5 Kate is always complaining about everything. You think she complains too much.
(stop / complaining) about everything.
- 6 The company you work for has been badly managed for a long time. You think some changes should be made.
(changes / make) in the way the company is run.

would

A

We use **would** ('d) / **wouldn't** when we *imagine* a situation or action (= we think of something that is not real):

- It **would be** nice to buy a new car, but we can't afford it.
- I'd **love** to live by the sea.
- A: Shall I tell Chris what happened?
B: No, I **wouldn't say** anything.
(= I wouldn't say anything in your situation)



We use **would have (done)** when we imagine something that didn't happen in the past:

- They helped us a lot. I don't know what we'd **have done** without their help.
(we'd have done = we **would** have done)
- It's a shame you didn't see the film. You **would have liked** it.
- I didn't tell Sam what happened. He **wouldn't have been** pleased.

Compare **would (do)** and **would have (done)**:

- I **would call** Lisa, but I don't have her number. (*now*)
I **would have called** Lisa, but I didn't have her number. (*past*)
- I'm not going to invite them to the party. They **wouldn't come** anyway.
I didn't invite them to the party. They **wouldn't have come** anyway.

We often use **would** in sentences with **if** (see Units 38–40):

- I **would call** Lisa **if** I had her number.
- I **would have called** Lisa **if** I'd had her number.

B

Compare **will ('ll)** and **would ('d)**:

- I'll **stay** a little longer. I've got plenty of time.
I'd **stay** a little longer, but I really have to go now. (so I can't stay longer)
- I'll **call** Lisa. I have her number.
I'd **call** Lisa, but I don't have her number. (so I can't call her)

Sometimes **would/wouldn't** is the past of **will/won't**.

Compare:

present	past
<input type="checkbox"/> TOM: I'll call you on Sunday.	→ Tom said he'd call me on Sunday.
<input type="checkbox"/> AMY: I promise I won't be late.	→ Amy promised that she wouldn't be late.
<input type="checkbox"/> LISA: Oh, no! The car won't start .	→ Lisa was annoyed because her car wouldn't start .

Somebody **wouldn't do** something = he/she refused to do it:

- I tried to warn him, but he **wouldn't listen** to me. (= he refused to listen)
- The car **wouldn't start**. (=it 'refused' to start)

C

You can also use **would** to talk about things that happened regularly in the past:

- When we were children, we lived by the sea. In summer, if the weather was fine, we **would** all get up early and go for a swim. (=we did this regularly)
- Whenever Richard was angry, he **would** walk out of the room.

With this meaning, **would** is similar to **used to** (see Unit 18):

- Whenever Richard was angry, he **used to walk** out of the room.

Exercises

36.1 Write sentences about yourself. Imagine things you would like or wouldn't like.

- 1 (a place you'd love to live) *I'd love to live by the sea.*
- 2 (a job you wouldn't like to do)
- 3 (something you would love to do)
- 4 (something that would be nice to have)
- 5 (a place you'd like to go to)

36.2 Complete the sentences using **would** + the following verbs (in the correct form):

be be do do enjoy enjoy have stop

- 1 They helped us a lot. I don't know what we *would have done* without their help.
- 2 You should go and see the film. I think you *it.*
- 3 It's a pity you couldn't come to the party last night. You *it.*
- 4 Shall I apply for the job or not? What *you* in my position?
- 5 I was in a hurry when I saw you. Otherwise I *to talk.*
- 6 We took a taxi home last night, but got stuck in the traffic. It *quicker to walk.*
- 7 Why don't you go and see Clare? She *very pleased to see you.*
- 8 In an ideal world, everybody *enough to eat.*

36.3 Each sentence on the right follows a sentence on the left. Which follows which?

- 1 I'd like to go to Australia one day.
- 2 I wouldn't like to live on a busy road.
- 3 I'm sorry your trip was cancelled.
- 4 I'm looking forward to going out tonight.
- 5 I'm glad we didn't go out in the rain.
- 6 I'm not looking forward to the trip.

- a It wouldn't have been very nice.
- b It would have been fun.
- c ~~It would be nice.~~
- d It won't be much fun.
- e It wouldn't be very nice.
- f It will be fun.

- 1 c
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

36.4 Write sentences using **promised** + **would/wouldn't**.

- 1 I wonder why Laura is late. *She promised she wouldn't be late.*
- 2 I wonder why Steve hasn't called me. He promised
- 3 Why did you tell Amy what I said? You
- 4 I'm surprised they didn't wait for us. They

36.5 Complete the sentences. Use **wouldn't** + a suitable verb.

- 1 I tried to warn him, but he *wouldn't listen* to me.
- 2 I asked Amanda what had happened, but she *me.*
- 3 Paul was angry about what I'd said and he *to me for two weeks.*
- 4 Martina insisted on carrying all her luggage. She *me help her.*

36.6 Complete the sentences using **would** (section C). Choose from these verbs:

forget shake share smile stay -walk

- 1 Whenever Richard was angry, he *would walk* out of the room.
- 2 We used to live next to a railway line. Every time a train went past, the house
- 3 Katherine was always very generous. She didn't have much, but she *what she had with everyone else.*
- 4 You could never rely on Joe. It didn't matter how many times you reminded him to do something, he *always*
- 5 When we were children, we used to go to the beach a lot. We *there all day playing in the sand and swimming in the sea.*
- 6 Lucy was always friendly. Whenever I saw her, she *always* and say hello.

can/could/would you ... ? etc.

(Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

A Asking people to do things (requests)

We use **can** or **could** to ask people to do things:

- Can you** wait a moment, please?
- Could you** wait a moment, please?
- or
- Helen, **can you** do me a favour?
- Excuse me, **could you** tell me how to get to the bus station?

You can say **Do you think** you **could** ... :

- Do you think you could** take me to the airport?
(not Do you think you can)

Could you open the door, please?



B Asking for things

To ask for something, we use **Can (I) have ... ?** / **Could (I) have ... ?** or **Can (I) get ... ?**:

- (in a shop)
Can I have these postcards, please? or **Can I get** these postcards, please?
- (in a restaurant)
Could we have the menu, please? or **Can we have** the menu, please?

May I have ... ? is also possible:

- May I have** these postcards, please?

C Asking to do things

We use **can I** or **could I** to ask to do something:

- (on the phone) Hello, **can I** speak to Steve, please?
- ‘**Could I** use your phone charger?’ ‘Sure.’
- Do you think I could** borrow your bike?

May is also possible:

- May I ask you a question?**

May is more formal than **can** or **could**.

You can also say:

- Do you mind if I ... ?**
- Is it all right if I ... ? / Is it OK if I ... ?**
- Do you mind if I** use your phone charger?
- ‘**Is it all right if I** sit here?’ ‘Yes, of course.’

Could I use your phone charger?



D Offering and inviting

You can use **Can I ... ?** to offer to do something:

- ‘**Can I** help you?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I can manage, thanks.’
- ‘**Can I** get you some coffee?’ ‘That would be nice.’

To offer or to invite, we use **Would you like ... ?** (not **Do you like**):

- ‘**Would you like** some coffee?’ ‘No, thanks.’
- ‘**Would you like** to eat with us tonight?’ ‘That would be great.’

I’d like ... (= I would like) is a polite way to say what you want:

- (at a tourist information office) **I’d like** some information about hotels, please.
- (in a shop) **I’d like** to try on this jacket, please.

Exercises

37.1 Which goes with which?

- 1 Could you pass the sugar?
- 2 Would you like to go to the cinema?
- 3 Can I use your toilet?
- 4 Do you mind if I leave work early?
- 5 Can you do me a favour?
- 6 Would you like something to eat?
- 7 Can I give you a hand?
- 8 I'd like some fresh air.

- a It depends what you want me to do.
- b No, that's fine.
- c Me too. Let's go out for a walk.
- d Sure. It's the door on the left.
- e Yes, here you are.
- f No, it's all right. I can manage, thanks.
- g Maybe. What's on?
- h No, thanks. I'm not hungry.

1 e
 2
 3
 4
 5
 6
 7
 8

37.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

I'd like	Would you like to try	Do you mind	Can I take
Can I give	Would you like to come	Would you like	I'd like to

- 1 You're driving and you see a friend walking along the road. You stop and say:
Hi Joe. **Can I give** you a lift?
- 2 You're making a cold drink for your friend. Perhaps he wants ice. You ask:
..... ice in your drink?
- 3 You're ordering something to eat in a cafe. You say:
..... a chicken salad, please.
- 4 You have an extra ticket for a concert. Maybe your friend will come. You ask:
..... to a concert tomorrow night?
- 5 You answer the phone. The caller wants to speak to Lisa. You say:
Lisa's not here. a message?
- 6 You need to see a dentist. You phone for an appointment. You say:
Hello. make an appointment, please.
- 7 You work in a shoe shop. A customer asks you about some shoes. You ask:
..... them on?
- 8 You go into a cafe and see some people you know. You ask:
..... if I join you?

37.3 What would you say in these situations?

- 1 You're carrying a lot of things. You can't open the door yourself. There's a man near the door.
You say to him: **Could you open the door, please?**
- 2 You've finished your meal in a restaurant and now you want the bill.
You ask the waiter:
- 3 You've filled in some forms in English. You want your friend to check them for you.
You ask your friend:
- 4 The woman in the next room is playing music. It's very loud. You want her to turn it down.
You say to her:
- 5 You're on a train. The window is open and you're cold. You'd like to close it.
You ask the man next to you:
- 6 You're on a bus. You have a seat, but an elderly man is standing. You offer him your seat.
You say to him:
- 7 You're a tourist. You want to go to the station, but you don't know how to get there.
You ask at your hotel:
- 8 You are in a clothes shop. You see some trousers you like and you want to try them on.
You say to the shop assistant:
- 9 You meet a very famous person. You want to get his/her autograph.
You ask:

if I do ... and if I did ...

A

Compare these examples:

- (1) LISA: Shall we take the bus or the train?
 JESS: **If we take** the bus, it **will** be cheaper.

For Jess, it is possible that they will take the bus, so she says:

If we take the bus, it **will** be ...



- (2) Lisa and Jess decide to take the train.

Later, Jess talks to Joe.

JOE: How are you going to travel?

JESS: We're going to take the train. **If we took** the bus, it **would** be cheaper, but the train is quicker.

Now Jess knows they are *not* going to take the bus, so she says:

If we took the bus, it **would** be ...

If we took the bus, it would be cheaper.

**B**

When we talk about something that will not happen, or we don't expect that it will happen, we use **if + past** (**if we went** / **if there was** etc.).

But the meaning is *not* past:

- What would you do **if you won** a lot of money?
 (I don't really expect this to happen)
- If there was** an election tomorrow, who would you vote for?
 (there will not be an election tomorrow)
- I'd be surprised **if they didn't come** to the party.
 (I expect them to come)



If I won a lot of money ...

Compare **if I find** and **if I found**:

- I think I left my watch at your house. **If you find** it, can you call me?
 but
- If you found** a wallet in the street, what would you do with it?

C

We do not normally use **would** in the **if**-part of the sentence:

- I'd be very scared **if somebody pointed** a gun at me. (*not* if somebody would point)
- If we went** by bus, it would be cheaper. (*not* If we would go)

In the other part of the sentence (not the **if**-part) we use **would ('d) / wouldn't**:

- I'd be** (= **I would** be) scared if somebody pointed a gun at me.
- I'm not going to bed yet. I'm not tired. If I went to bed now, I **wouldn't sleep**.
- What **would** you **do** if you were bitten by a snake?

Could and **might** are also possible:

- If I won a lot of money, I **might** buy a house.
 (= it is possible that I would buy a house)
- If it stopped raining, we **could go** out.
 (= we would be able to go out)

Exercises

38.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

did dropped found happened lost was went

- 1 If you **found** a wallet in the street, what would you do with it?
- 2 Be careful with that vase. If you it, it would break into small pieces.
- 3 This notebook is very important to me. I'd be very upset if I it.
- 4 I don't expect to lose my job but if that , I'd have to find another one.
- 5 We're thinking about our holiday for next year. If we to Italy, would you come with us?
- 6 I don't think he'll fail the exam. I'd be very surprised if he
- 7 If there a fire in the building, would you know how to put the fire out?

38.2 What do you say in these situations?

- 1 Of course you don't expect to win the lottery. Which do you say?
 a If I win the lottery, I'll buy a big house.
 b If I won the lottery, I'd buy a big house. (b is correct)
- 2 You're not going to sell your car because it's old and not worth much. Which do you say?
 a If I sell my car, I won't get much money for it.
 b If I sold my car, I wouldn't get much money for it.
- 3 You often see Sarah. A friend of yours wants to contact her. Which do you say?
 a If I see Sarah, I'll tell her to call you.
 b If I saw Sarah, I'd tell her to call you.
- 4 You don't expect that there will be a fire in the building. Which do you say?
 a What will you do if there is a fire in the building?
 b What would you do if there was a fire in the building?
- 5 You've never lost your passport. You can only imagine it.
 a I don't know what I'll do if I lose my passport.
 b I don't know what I'd do if I lost my passport.
- 6 Somebody stops you and asks the way to a bank. Which do you say?
 a If you go right at the end of this street, you'll see a bank on your left.
 b If you went right at the end of this street, you'd see a bank on your left.
- 7 You're in a lift. There is an emergency button. Nobody is going to press it. Which do you say?
 a What will happen if somebody presses that button?
 b What would happen if somebody pressed that button?

38.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'd be very scared if **somebody pointed** (somebody / point) a gun at me.
- 2 I can't afford to buy a car. If (I / buy) a car, I'd have to borrow the money.
- 3 If you had a party, who (you / invite)?
- 4 Don't lend James your car. If (he / ask) me, I wouldn't lend him mine.
- 5 I don't think Gary and Emma will get married. (I / be) amazed if they did.
- 6 If (somebody / give) me \$20,000, (I / have) a long holiday.
- 7 (you / be) nervous if (you / meet) a famous person?
- 8 What (you / do) if (you / be) in a lift and (it / stop) between floors?

38.4 Write sentences beginning **If ...**.

- 1 We're not going to take the 10.30 train. (we / arrive too early)
 If **we took the 10.30 train, we'd arrive too early.**.....
- 2 We're not going to stay at a hotel. (it / cost too much)
 If we , it
- 3 There's no point in telling you what happened. (you / not / believe)
 If I
- 4 Sally has no plans to leave her job. (it / hard to find another one)
 If she
- 5 Kevin is not going to apply for the job. (he / not / get it).

if I knew ... I wish I knew ...

A

Study this example situation:

Sarah wants to phone Paul, but she can't do this because she doesn't know his number. She says:

I'd phone him if I knew his number.
(I'd phone = I **would** phone)

Sarah *doesn't* know Paul's number, so she says '*if I knew*'. She *imagines* what she **would** do **if** she **knew** his number.



When we imagine a situation like this, we use **if + past** (**if I knew** / **if you were** / **if we didn't** etc.). But the meaning is present, *not* past:

- There are many things I'd like to do **if I had** more time. (but I don't have time)
- If I didn't** want to go to the party, I wouldn't go. (but I want to go)
- If you were** in my position, what would you do?
- It's a pity he can't drive. It would be useful **if he could**.

B

We use the past in the same way after **wish** (**I wish I knew** / **I wish you were** etc.).

We use **wish** to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it to be:

- I wish I knew** Paul's phone number.
(= I don't know it and I regret this)
- Do you ever **wish** you **could** fly?
(you can't fly)
- It's very crowded here. **I wish** there **weren't** so many people. (there are a lot of people)
- I wish I didn't** have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.

Compare:

- I'm glad I live** here. (I live here and that's good)
- I wish I lived** here. (I don't live here unfortunately)

**C**

After **if** and **wish**, you can use **were** instead of **was** (**if I were** / **I wish it were** etc.).

You can also use **was**. So you can say:

- | | | |
|--|-----------|----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> If I were you, I wouldn't buy that coat. | or | If I was you, ... |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I'd go for a walk if it weren't so cold. | or | ... if it wasn't so cold. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I wish Anna were here. | or | I wish Anna was here. |

D

We do not usually say '*if ... would*'. We use **would** ('d) in the other part of the sentence:

- If I were** rich, I **would** travel a lot. (*not* If I would be rich)
- Who **would** you ask **if you needed** help? (*not* if you would need)

In the same way we say:

- I wish I had** something to read. (*not* I wish I would have)
- I wish she were** here now. (*not* I wish she would be)

For '**I wish ... would** ...' see Unit 41.

E

Could sometimes means 'would be able to' and sometimes 'was/were able to':

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> She could get a better job
if she could speak another language. | (she could get = she would be able to get)
(if she could speak = if she was able to speak) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I wish I could help you. | (I wish I could = I wish I was able) |

Exercises

39.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

- 1 If (I / know) his number, I would phone him.
- 2 (I / wouldn't buy) (I / not / buy) that coat if I were you.
- 3 (I / help) you if I could, but I'm afraid I can't.
- 4 This soup isn't very nice. (it / taste) better if it wasn't so salty.
- 5 We live in a city and don't need a car, but we would need one if (we / live) in the country.
- 6 If we had the choice, (we / live) in the country.
- 7 I'd make a lot of changes if (I / be) the manager of the company.
- 8 I wouldn't call someone in the middle of the night if (it / not / be) important.
- 9 If I were you, (I / not / wait). (I / go) now.
- 10 You're always tired because you go to bed so late. If (you / not / go) to bed so late every night, (you / not / be) tired all the time.
- 11 I think there are too many cars. If (there / not / be) so many cars, (there / not / be) so much pollution.
- 12 We all need jobs and money, but what (you / do) if (you / not / have) to work?

39.2 Write a sentence with **if ...** for each situation.

- 1 We don't see you very often because you live so far away.
.....
- 2 I like these shoes but they're too expensive, so I'm not going to buy them.
I them if so
- 3 We'd like to go on holiday, but we can't afford it.
We if
- 4 It would be nice to have lunch outside but it's raining, so we can't.
We
- 5 I don't want his advice, and that's why I'm not going to ask for it.
If

39.3 Write sentences beginning **I wish ...**.

- 1 I don't know many people (and I'm lonely). **I wish I knew more people.**
- 2 I don't have much free time (and I need more). I wish
- 3 Helen isn't here (and I need to see her).
- 4 It's cold (and I hate cold weather).
- 5 I live in a big city (and I don't like it).
- 6 I can't find my phone (which is a problem).
- 7 I'm not feeling well (which isn't good).
- 8 I have to get up early tomorrow (but I'd prefer to sleep late).
.....
- 9 I don't know much about science (and I should know more).
.....

39.4 Write your own sentences beginning **I wish ...**.

- 1 (somewhere you'd like to be now – on the beach, in New York, in bed etc.)
I wish I
- 2 (something you'd like to have – a motorbike, more friends, lots of money etc.)
.....
- 3 (something you'd like to be able to do – sing, travel more, cook etc.)
.....
- 4 (something you'd like to be – famous, more intelligent, good at sport etc.)
.....

if I had known ... I wish I had known ...

A

Study this example situation:

Last month Gary was in hospital for a few days. Rachel didn't know this. A few days ago they met by chance. Rachel said:

If I'd known you were in hospital, **I would have gone** to visit you.
(= I didn't know, so I didn't go to visit you)

If I'd known = If I **had** known. This tells us that she *didn't* know before.

We use **if + had ('d)** ... to talk about the past (**if I'd known / if you'd done** etc.):

- I didn't see you when you passed me in the street. **If I'd seen** you, I would have said hello.
- They didn't go out last night. They would have gone out **if they hadn't been** so tired.
(but they were tired)
- If you'd been looking** where you were going, you wouldn't have walked into the wall.
(but you weren't looking)
- The view was wonderful. I would have taken some pictures **if I'd had** (= if I **had had**) a camera with me. (but I didn't have a camera)

Compare:

- I'm not hungry. **If I was** hungry, I would eat something. (now)
- I wasn't hungry. **If I had been** hungry, I would have eaten something. (past)

B

We do *not* say 'if something would have happened'. We use **would** in the other part of the sentence:

- If I had seen** you, **I would have said** hello. (not If I would have seen you)

The short form '**'d**' can be **would** or **had**:

- If I **'d seen** you, (I'd seen = I **had** seen)
- I **'d have said** hello. (I'd have said = I **would** have said)

C

We use **had done/known/been** etc. in the same way after **wish**.

I wish something **had happened** = I am sorry that it didn't happen

I wish something **hadn't happened** = I am sorry that it happened

- I wish I'd known** that Gary was ill. I would have gone to see him. (but I didn't know)
- I feel sick. **I wish I hadn't eaten** so much. (I ate too much)
- Do you **wish you'd studied** science instead of languages? (you didn't study science)

Compare:

- I'm glad I saw** him. (= I **saw** him)
- I wish I'd seen** him. (= I **didn't see** him)

We do *not* say 'wish ... would have ...'.

- The weather was cold. I wish it **had been** warmer. (not I wish it would have been)

D

Compare **would (do)** and **would have (done)**:

- If I'd gone to the party last night, I **would be** tired now. (I am not tired now – *present*)
- If I'd gone to the party last night, I **would have met** lots of people. (I didn't meet lots of people – *past*)

Compare **would have**, **could have** and **might have**:

- If the weather hadn't been so bad,

we **would have gone** out.
we **could have gone** out.
(= we would have been able to go out)
we **might have gone** out.
(= maybe we would have gone out)

Exercises

40.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

- 1 I didn't see you. If (I / see) you, I would have said (I / say) hello.
- 2 Sarah got to the station just in time to catch her train to the airport. If (she / miss) the train, (she / miss) her flight too.
- 3 Thanks for reminding me about Lisa's birthday. (I / forget) if (you / not / remind) me.
- 4 I didn't have your email address, so I couldn't contact you. If (I / have) your email address, (I / send) you an email.
- 5 Their trip was OK, but (they / enjoy) it more if the weather (be) better.
- 6 Sorry we're late. Our taxi got stuck in the traffic. (it / be) quicker if (we / walk).
- 7 Why didn't you tell me about your problem? If (you / tell) me, (I / try) to help you.
- 8 I'm not tired. If (I / be) tired, I'd go home now.
- 9 I wasn't tired last night. If (I / be) tired, I would have gone home earlier.

40.2 For each situation, write a sentence beginning with **If**.

- 1 I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat anything.
If I'd been hungry, I would have eaten something.
- 2 The accident happened because the road was icy.
If the road
- 3 I didn't know that you had to get up early, so I didn't wake you up.
If I
- 4 Unfortunately I lost my phone, so I couldn't call you.
.....
- 5 Karen wasn't injured in the crash, because fortunately she was wearing a seat belt.
.....
- 6 You didn't have any breakfast – that's why you're hungry now.
.....
- 7 I didn't get a taxi because I didn't have enough money.
.....
- 8 Dan didn't do well at school, so he couldn't go to university.
.....

40.3 Imagine that you are in these situations. For each situation, write a sentence with **I wish**.

- 1 You've eaten too much and now you feel sick.
You say: I wish I hadn't eaten so much.
- 2 When you were younger, you never learned to play a musical instrument. Now you regret this.
You say:
- 3 You've painted the gate red. Now you think it doesn't look good. Red was the wrong colour.
You say:
- 4 You decided to travel by car, but the journey was long and tiring. Going by train would have been better.
You say: I wish we
- 5 Last year you went to New York with a friend. You didn't have time to do all the things you wanted to do.
You say:
- 6 You moved to a new flat a few months ago. Now you don't like your new flat. You think that moving was a bad idea.
You say:

A

We say 'wish somebody **luck / all the best / success**' etc.:

- I **wish you all the best** in the future.
- I saw Mark before the exam and **he wished me luck**.

We say 'wish somebody *something*' (**luck, happiness** etc.), but we do not say 'I wish something *happens*'.

We use **hope** in this situation:

- I'm sorry you're not well. I **hope** you **feel** better soon. (*not I wish you feel*)

Compare **I wish** and **I hope**:

- I **wish** you **a pleasant stay** at this hotel.
- I **hope** you **enjoy** your stay at this hotel. (*not I wish you enjoy*)

B

We also use **wish** to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it.

When we use **wish** in this way, we use the *past* (**knew/lived** etc.), but the meaning is *present*:

- I **wish I knew** what to do about the problem. (but I don't know)
- I **wish you didn't** have to go so soon. (but you have to go)
- Do you **wish you lived** near the sea? (you don't live near the sea)
- Jack's going on a trip to Mexico soon. I **wish I was** going too. (but I'm not going)

To say that we regret something that happened before, we use **wish + had** known / **had** said etc.:

- I **wish I'd known** about the party. I'd have gone if I'd known. (but I didn't know)
- It was a stupid thing to say. I **wish I hadn't said** it. (but I said it)

See also Units 39 and 40.

C

I wish I could (do something) = I regret that I cannot do it:

- I'm sorry you have to go. I **wish you could stay** longer. (but you can't)
- I've met that man before. I **wish I could remember** his name. (but I can't)

I wish I could have (done something) = I regret that I could not do it:

- I hear the party was great. I **wish I could have gone**. (but I couldn't go)

D

You can say '**I wish** something **would** happen'. For example:

I **wish it would stop raining**.



It's been raining all day. Tanya doesn't like it. She says:

I wish it would stop raining.

Tanya would like the rain to stop, but this will probably not happen.

We use **I wish ... would** when we would like something to happen or change.

We often use **I wish ... would** to complain about a situation:

- The phone has been ringing for five minutes. I **wish** somebody **would answer** it.
- I **wish you'd do** (=you **would** do) something instead of just sitting and doing nothing.

You can use **I wish ... wouldn't** ... to complain about things that people do repeatedly:

- I **wish you wouldn't keep** interrupting me. (=please stop interrupting me)

E

We use **I wish ... would** ... to say that we want something *to happen*. We do not use **I wish ... would** ... to say how we would like things *to be*. Compare:

- I **wish** Sarah **would** come. (=I want her to come)
but I **wish** Sarah **was** (*or were*) here now. (*not I wish Sarah would be*)
- I **wish** somebody **would buy** me a car.
but I **wish I had** a car. (*not I wish I would have*)

Exercises

41.1 Put in **wish(ed)** or **hope(d)**.

- 1 I **wish** you a pleasant stay at this hotel.
- 2 Enjoy your holiday. I you have a great time.
- 3 Goodbye. I you all the best for the future.
- 4 We said goodbye to each other and each other luck.
- 5 We're going to have a picnic tomorrow, so I the weather is nice.
- 6 Congratulations on your new job. I you every success.
- 7 Good luck in your new job. I it works out well for you.

41.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Jack is going on a trip to Mexico soon. I wish I **was going** too.
- 2 I'm very tired and I have so much to do. I wish I so tired.
- 3 You didn't tell me you were ill. Why not? I wish you me.
- 4 I don't have enough free time. I wish I more free time.
- 5 I can't make up my mind what to do. I wish I decide.
- 6 I bought these shoes, but now I don't like them. I wish I them.
- 7 We have to go out now and I don't want to go. I wish we to go out now.
- 8 Unfortunately I couldn't go to the wedding last month. I wish I could

41.3 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with **I wish ... would ...**.

- 1 It's raining. You want to go out, but not in the rain.
You say: **I wish it would stop raining.**
- 2 You're waiting for Jane. She's late and you're getting impatient.
You say to yourself: I wish she
- 3 You're looking for a job – so far without success. Nobody will give you a job.
You say: I wish somebody
- 4 You can hear a dog barking. It's been barking a long time and you're trying to study.
You say:

For the following situations, write sentences with **I wish ... wouldn't ...**.

- 5 Your friend is driving very fast. She always drives fast and you don't like this.
You say to her: I wish you
- 6 Joe leaves the door open all the time. This annoys you.
You say to Joe:
- 7 A lot of people drop litter in the street. You don't like this.
You say: I wish people

41.4 Put the verb into the correct form.

- 1 It was a stupid thing to say. I wish **I hadn't said** it. (I / not / say)
- 2 I'm fed up with this rain. I wish **it would stop** (it / stop)
- 3 It's a difficult question. I wish the answer. (I / know)
- 4 I really didn't enjoy the party. I wish (we / not / go)
- 5 I wish We've been waiting for 20 minutes. (the bus / come)
- 6 You're lucky to be going away. I wish with you. (I / can / come)
- 7 Our flat is rather small. I wish a bit bigger. (it / be)
- 8 I should have listened to you. I wish your advice. (I / take)
- 9 You keep interrupting me! I wish (you / listen)
- 10 You're always complaining. I wish all the time.
(you / not / complain)
- 11 It's freezing today. I wish so cold. I hate cold weather. (it / not / be)
- 12 I wish It's horrible! (the weather / change)
- 13 I wish a piano. I'd love to have one. (I / have)
- 14 When we were in London last year, we didn't have time to see all the things we wanted to see.
I wish there longer. (we / can / stay)

Exercises

42.1 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs in the correct form, present or past:

cause	damage	find	hold	injure	invite
make	overtake	own	send	show	surround

- 1 Many accidents by careless driving.
- 2 Cheese from milk.
- 3 The roof of the building in a storm a few days ago.
- 4 A cinema is a place where films
- 5 You to the party. Why didn't you go?
- 6 This plant is very rare. It in very few places.
- 7 Although we were driving fast, we by a lot of other cars.
- 8 In the US, elections for president every four years.
- 9 There was an accident last night, but fortunately nobody
- 10 You can't see the house from the road. It by trees.
- 11 I never received the letter. It to the wrong address.
- 12 The company I work for by a much larger company.

42.2 Write questions using the passive. Some are present and some are past.

- 1 Ask about glass. (how / make?) **How is glass made?**
- 2 Ask about television. (when / invent?) When
- 3 Ask about mountains. (how / form?)
- 4 Ask about DNA. (when / discover?)
- 5 Ask about silver. (what / use for?)

42.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present or past, active or passive.

- 1 a Two hundred people (employ) by the company.
b The company (employ) 200 people.
- 2 a Water (cover) most of the earth's surface.
b How much of the earth's surface (cover) by water?
- 3 a While I was on holiday, my camera (steal) from my hotel room.
b While I was on holiday, my camera (disappear) from my hotel room.
- 4 a Robert's parents (die) when he was very young.
b Robert and his sister (bring up) by their grandparents.
- 5 a The boat hit a rock and (sink) quickly.
b Fortunately everybody (rescue).
- 6 a Bill (fire) from his job. He wasn't very good at it.
b Sue (resign) from her job because she didn't enjoy it any more.
- 7 a It can be noisy living here, but it (not / bother) me.
b It can be noisy living here, but I (not / bother) by it.
- 8 a Maria had an accident. She (knock) off her bike.
b Maria had an accident. She (fall) off her bike.
- 9 a I haven't seen these flowers before. What (they / call)?
b I haven't seen these flowers before. What (you / call) them?

42.4 Instead of using **somebody**, **they**, **people** etc., write a passive sentence.

- 1 Somebody cleans the room every day. **The room is cleaned every day**
- 2 They cancelled all flights because of fog. All money.
- 3 Somebody accused me of stealing money.
- 4 How do you use this word? How used?
- 5 The price includes all taxes. All in the price.
- 6 People warned us not to go out alone. We
- 7 We don't use this office any more. This
- 8 They invited five hundred people to the wedding. Five hundred

Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)

A*Infinitive*active: (to) **do/clean/see** etc.Somebody **will clean** **this room** later.passive: (to) **be + done/cleaned/seen** etc.**This room** **will be cleaned** later.

- The situation is serious. Something must **be done** before it's too late.
- A mystery is something that can't **be explained**.
- The music was very loud and could **be heard** from a long way away.
- A new supermarket is going **to be built** next year.
- Please go away. I want **to be left** alone.

B*Perfect infinitive*active: (to) **have + done/cleaned/seen** etc.Somebody **should have cleaned** **the room**.passive: (to) **have been + done/cleaned/seen** etc.**The room** **should have been cleaned**.

- I haven't received the letter yet. It might **have been sent** to the wrong address.
- If you had locked the car, it wouldn't **have been stolen**.
- There were some problems at first, but they seem **to have been solved**.

C*Present perfect*active: **have/has + done** etc.The room looks nice. Somebody **has cleaned** **it**.passive: **have/has been + done** etc.The room looks nice. **It** **has been cleaned**.

- Have you heard? The trip **has been cancelled**.
- Have** you ever **been bitten** by a dog?
- 'Are you going to the party?' 'No, I **haven't been invited**'

*Past perfect*active: **had + done** etc.The room looked nice. Somebody **had cleaned** **it**.passive: **had been + done** etc.The room looked nice. **It** **had been cleaned**.

- The vegetables didn't taste good. They **had been cooked** too long.
- The car was three years old, but **hadn't been used** very much.

D*Present continuous*active: **am/is/are + (do)ing**Somebody **is cleaning** **the room** at the moment.passive: **am/is/are + being (done)****The room** **is being cleaned** at the moment.

- There's somebody walking behind us. I think we **are being followed**.
- A new bridge **is being built** across the river. It will be finished next year.

*Past continuous*active: **was/were + (do)ing**Somebody **was cleaning** **the room** when I arrived.passive: **was/were + being (done)****The room** **was being cleaned** when I arrived.

- There was somebody walking behind us. I think we **were being followed**.

Exercises

43.1 Complete these sentences. Use the following verbs in the passive:

arrest carry cause delay do forget keep knock know make repair send

Sometimes you need **have** (**might have**, **would have** etc.).

- 1 The situation is serious. Something must before it's too late.
- 2 I haven't received the letter yet. It might to the wrong address.
- 3 A decision will not until the next meeting.
- 4 These documents are important. They should always in a safe place.
- 5 This road is in bad condition. It should a long time ago.
- 6 The injured man couldn't walk and had to
- 7 If you hadn't shouted at the policeman, you wouldn't
- 8 I'm not sure what time I'll arrive tomorrow. I may
- 9 It's not certain how the fire started. It might by an electrical fault.
- 10 A new school is being built. The old one is going to down.
- 11 The election is next Sunday. The full results will on Tuesday.
- 12 Last week they weren't speaking to one another. Now they're happy again. The problem seems to

43.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Sometimes the verb is active, sometimes passive.

- 1 There's somebody behind us. (We / follow) **We're being followed.**
- 2 This door is a different colour, isn't it? (you / paint?) **Have you painted it?**
- 3 My bike has disappeared. (It / steal!) It
- 4 My umbrella has disappeared. (Somebody / take) Somebody
- 5 A neighbour of mine disappeared six months ago.
(He / not / see / since then) He
- 6 I wonder how Jessica is these days.
(I / not / see / for ages) I
- 7 A friend of mine was stung by a bee recently.
(you / ever / sting / bee?) you
- 8 The bridge was damaged recently.
(It / repair / at the moment) It
- 9 Tom's car was stolen recently.
(It / not / find / yet)
- 10 I went into the room and saw that the table and chairs were not in the same place.
(The furniture / move) The

43.3 Instead of using 'somebody', 'they' etc., write a passive sentence.

- 1 Somebody has cleaned the room. The **room has been cleaned**
- 2 They are building a new road around the city.
A around the city.
- 3 They have built two new hotels near the airport.
Two near the airport.
- 4 When I last visited, they were building some new houses here.
When I last visited, some
- 5 The meeting is now on 15 April. They have changed the date.
The date of
- 6 I didn't know that somebody was recording our conversation.
I didn't know that our
- 7 Is anyone doing anything about the problem?
..... anything the problem?
- 8 The windows were very dirty. Nobody had cleaned them for ages.
The windows were very dirty. They

A I was offered ... / we were given ... etc.

Some verbs can have two objects. For example, **give**:

- My grandfather gave me this watch.
object 1 object 2

It is possible to make two passive sentences:

- I was given this watch (by my grandfather). or
This watch was given to me (by my grandfather).

Other verbs which can have two objects are:

ask offer pay show tell



When we use these verbs in the passive, most often we begin with the *person*:

- I've been offered** the job, but I don't think I want it. (=somebody has offered me the job)
 - You will be given** plenty of time to decide. (=we will give you plenty of time)
 - I didn't see the original document, but **I was shown** a copy. (=somebody showed me a copy)
 - Tim has an easy job – **he's paid a lot of money** to do very little. (=somebody pays him a lot)

B I don't like being ...

The passive of **doing/seeing** etc. is **being done / being seen** etc. Compare:

active: I don't like **people telling me** what to do.

passive: I don't like **being told** what to do.

- I remember **being taken** to the zoo when I was a child.
(=I remember **somebody taking** me to the zoo)
 - Steve hates **being kept** waiting. (=he hates **people keeping** him waiting)
 - We climbed over the wall without **being seen**. (=without **anybody seeing us**)

C I was born ...

We say '**I was** born ...' (*not I am born*):

- I was born in Chicago.
 - Where **were** you **born**? (*not* Where are you born?) } past
 - How many babies **are born** every day? present

D get

You can use **get** for the passive:

- There was a fight, but nobody **got hurt**. (= nobody **was** hurt)
 - I don't **get invited** to many parties. (= I'm not invited)
 - I'm surprised Liz **didn't get offered** the job. (= Liz **wasn't offered** the job)

We use **get** only when things *happen*. For example, you cannot use **get** in these sentences:

- Jessica **is liked** by everybody. (*not gets liked – this is not a ‘happening’*)
 - Peter was a mystery man. Very little **was known** about him. (*not got known*)

We use **get** mainly in informal spoken English. You can use **be** in all situations.

We also use **get** in the following expressions (which are not passive in meaning):

get married, get divorced
get lost (= not know where you are)

get dressed (= put on your clothes)
get changed (= change your clothes)

Exercises

44.1 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb.

- 1 I tried to contact Tom.
I called his office but I **was told** (tell) that he was in a meeting.
- 2 Amy retired from her job recently.
She (give) a present by her colleagues.
- 3 I didn't know there was a meeting yesterday.
I (not / tell) about it.
- 4 Sarah's salary is very low.
I don't understand why she (pay) so little.
- 5 You will need to use this machine.
Have you (show) how it works?
- 6 I had an interview for a job recently. It wasn't easy.
I (ask) some questions that were very hard for me to answer.
- 7 They didn't tell us much about the project.
We (not / give) enough information.
- 8 I was surprised to get the job I applied for.
I didn't expect (offer) it.

44.2 Complete the sentences using **being** + the following verbs (in the correct form):

bite give invite keep knock down stick treat

- 1 Steve hates **being kept** waiting.
- 2 We went to the wedding without
- 3 I like giving presents and I also like them.
- 4 It's a busy road and I don't like crossing it. I'm afraid of
- 5 How do you avoid by mosquitoes?
- 6 I'm an adult. I don't like like a child.
- 7 You can't do anything about in a traffic jam.

44.3 Complete the sentences using **get or got** + the following verbs (in the correct form):

ask break hurt pay steal sting stop use

- 1 There was a fight, but nobody **got hurt**
- 2 Alex by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.
- 3 These tennis courts don't very often. Not many people want to play here.
- 4 I used to have a bike, but it a few months ago.
- 5 Rachel works hard, but she doesn't very much.
- 6 Please pack these things very carefully. I don't want anything to
- 7 People often want to know what my job is. I that question a lot.
- 8 Last night I by the police as I was driving home. One of the lights on my car wasn't working.

44.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I've been **offered** the job, but I don't think I'll accept it.
- 2 I **don't** get invited to many parties.
- 3 Which year you born in?
- 4 I haven't been any information yet.
- 5 I didn't know the way, so I got
- 6 He doesn't like interrupted when he's speaking.
- 7 How did the window broken? What happened?
- 8 She's a voluntary worker. She get paid.
- 9 I born in a small town in the north of the country.
- 10 We had to do what we did. We given any choice.

it is said that ... he is said to ... he is supposed to ...

A

Study this example situation:



George is very old. Nobody knows exactly how old he is, but:

It is said that **he** is 108 years old.

or **He** **is said to be** 108 years old.

Both these sentences mean: 'People say that he is 108 years old.'

You can use these structures with a number of other verbs, especially:

alleged believed considered expected known reported thought understood

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cathy loves running.
It is said that she runs 10 miles a day. | or She is said to run 10 miles a day. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The police are looking for a missing boy.
It is believed that the boy is wearing a white sweater and blue jeans. | or The boy is believed to be wearing a white sweater and blue jeans. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The strike started three weeks ago.
It is expected that it will end soon. | or The strike is expected to end soon. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> A friend of mine has been arrested.
It is alleged that he stole a car. | or He is alleged to have stolen a car. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The two houses belong to the same family.
It is said that there is a secret tunnel between them. | or There is said to be a secret tunnel between them. |

These structures are often used in news reports. For example, in a report about an accident:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> It is reported that two people were injured in the explosion. | or Two people are reported to have been injured in the explosion. |
|---|--|

B **supposed to ...**

You can use **supposed to ...** in the same way as **said to ...**:

- I want to see that film. **It's supposed to be** good. (= people say it's good)
- There are many stories about Joe. **He's supposed to have robbed** a bank many years ago.
- Fireworks **are supposed to have been invented** in China. Is it true?

Sometimes **supposed to ...** has a different meaning. We use **supposed to** to say what is intended, arranged or expected. Often this is different from the real situation:

- The plan **is supposed to be** a secret, but everybody seems to know about it. (= the plan is intended to be a secret)
- What are you doing at work? You're **supposed to be** on holiday. (= you arranged to be on holiday)
- Our guests **were supposed to come** at 7.30, but they were late.
- Jane **was supposed to phone** me last night, but she didn't.
- I'd better hurry. I'm **supposed to be meeting** Chris in ten minutes.

You're not supposed to do something = it is not allowed or advised:

- You're not supposed to park** your car here. It's private parking only.
- Joe is much better after his illness, but **he's not supposed to exercise** too hard.

Exercises

45.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown. Use the underlined word each time.

- 1 It is expected that the strike will end soon.
The strike
.....
- 2 It is reported that many people are homeless after the floods.
Many people
- 3 It is thought that the thieves got in through a window in the roof.
The thieves
- 4 It is alleged that the driver of the car was driving at 110 miles an hour.
The driver
- 5 It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire.
The building
- 6 It is said that the company is losing a lot of money.
The company
- 7 It is believed that the company lost a lot of money last year.
The company
- 8 It is expected that the company will make a loss this year.
The company

45.2 Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets and any other necessary words.

- 1 A: What's the City Hotel like? Can you recommend it?
B: I've never stayed there, but it's supposed to be (it / supposed) very good.
- 2 A: How much are these paintings worth?
B: I'm not sure, but (they / supposed) very valuable.
- 3 A: This looks an interesting building.
B: Yes, (it / supposed) a prison a long time ago.
- 4 A: Is it true that your neighbours were lucky in the lottery?
B: Yes, (they / supposed / win) a lot of money.
- 5 A: Is it possible to climb to the top of the tower?
B: Yes, (the view / supposed) very nice.
- 6 A: I heard that Laura has gone away.
B: Yes, (she / supposed / living) in London now.

45.3 Write sentences using **supposed to be** + the following:

on a diet a flower my friend a joke open every day -a secret working

- 1 How is it that everybody knows about the plan? It's supposed to be a secret
- 2 You shouldn't criticise me all the time. You
- 3 I shouldn't be eating this cake really. I
- 4 I'm sorry for what I said. I was trying to be funny. It
- 5 What's this drawing? Is it a tree? Or maybe it
- 6 You shouldn't be playing a game now.
- 7 That's strange. The museum seems to be closed.

45.4 Write sentences with **supposed to ...** or **not supposed to ...**. Choose from the following verbs:

depart lift -park phone put start

- 1 You 're not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.
- 2 We work at 8.15, but we rarely do anything before 8.30.
- 3 I Helen last night, but I completely forgot.
- 4 This door is a fire exit. We anything in front of it.
- 5 My flight at 10.15, but it didn't leave until 11.30.
- 6 Jonathan has a problem with his back. He anything heavy.

have something done

A

Study this example situation:



The roof of Lisa's house was damaged. So she called a builder, and yesterday he came and repaired it.

Lisa **had** the roof **repaired** yesterday.

This means: Lisa arranged for somebody else to repair the roof. She didn't repair it herself.

If you **have something done**, you arrange for somebody to do it for you.

Compare:

- Lisa **repaired** the roof. (= she repaired it herself)
- Lisa **had** the roof **repaired**. (= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)
- A: Did you **make** those curtains yourself?
B: Yes, I like making things.
- A: Did you **have** those curtains **made**?
B: No, I made them myself.

B

Study the word order:

have	<i>object</i>	<i>past participle</i>
Lisa had	the roof	repaired.
Where did you have	your hair	cut?
We are having	the house	painted.
I think you should have	that coat	cleaned.
I don't like having	my picture	taken.

We say:

- How often do you **have your car serviced**? (*not have serviced your car*)
- Our neighbour is **having a garage built**. (*not having built a garage*)
- Your hair looks nice. Did you **have it cut**?

C

get something done

You can say '**get** something done' instead of '**have** something done':

- When are you going to **get the roof repaired**? (= have the roof repaired)
- I think you should **get your hair cut** really short.

D

We also use **have something done** with a different meaning. For example:

- Paul and Karen **had their bags stolen** while they were travelling.

This does not mean that they arranged for somebody to steal their bags. 'They **had their bags stolen**' means only: 'Their bags were stolen'.

With this meaning, we use **have something done** to say that something happens to somebody or their belongings:

- Gary **had** his nose **broken** in a fight. (= his nose was broken)
- Have you ever **had** your bike **stolen**?

Exercises

46.1 Tick (✓) the correct sentence, (a) or (b), for each picture.


SARAH

- (a) Sarah is cutting her hair.
(b) Sarah is having her hair cut.



DAN

- (a) Dan is cutting his hair.
(b) Dan is having his hair cut.



KATE

- (a) Kate is painting the gate.
(b) Kate is having the gate painted.



SUE

- (a) Sue is taking a picture.
(b) Sue is having her picture taken.

46.2 Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 (painted / had / a few weeks ago / the house)

We ... had the house painted a few weeks ago.

- 2 (serviced / car / once a year / her / has)

Sarah

- 3 (had / your / recently / tested / eyes / you?)

Have

- 4 (like / cut / my / having / don't / hair)

I

- 5 (fifteen pounds / have / cleaned / my suit / cost / to)

It

- 6 (as soon as possible / need / translated / to get / this document)

You

46.3 Write sentences in the way shown.

- 1 Lisa didn't repair the roof herself. She ... had it repaired.

- 2 I didn't cut my hair myself. I

- 3 We didn't clean the carpets ourselves. We

- 4 Ben didn't build that wall himself. He

- 5 I didn't deliver the flowers myself. I

- 6 Sarah didn't repair her shoes herself. She

46.4 Which goes with which?

- 1 My hair is getting long.
2 I really like this picture.
3 The washing machine is broken.
4 I want to wear earrings.
5 Can you recommend a dentist?
6 I've lost my key.

- a I need to get it fixed.
b I'll have to get a new one made.
c I need to get my teeth checked.
d I should get it cut.
e I'm going to get my ears pierced.
f I'm going to get it framed.

- 1 d
2
3
4
5
6

46.5 Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences.

- 1 Did I tell you about Paul and Karen?

(They / their bags / steal) ... They had their bags stolen.

- 2 Security at the airport was strict.

(We / our bags / search)

- 3 I've had some good news!

(I / my salary / increase) I

- 4 Joe can't get a visa.

(He / his application / refuse)

Reported speech 1 (he said that ...)

A

Study this example situation:



You saw Paul yesterday and you want to tell somebody what he said.

There are two ways of doing this:

You can repeat Paul's words (direct speech):
Paul said, '**I'm feeling ill.**'

Or you can use reported speech:
Paul said **that he was feeling ill.**

Compare:

direct

Paul said, 'I am feeling ill.'

reported

Paul said that **he was** feeling ill.

In writing we use these quotation marks to show direct speech.

B

When we use reported speech, the main verb of the sentence is usually past (Paul **said** that ... / I **told** her that ... etc.). The rest of the sentence is usually past too:

- Paul **said** that he **was feeling ill.**
- I **told** Lisa that I **didn't have** any money.

You can leave out **that**. So you can say:

- Paul **said** **that** he was feeling ill. or Paul **said** he was feeling ill.

In general, the *present* in direct speech changes to the *past* in reported speech:

am/is → was	do/does → did	will → would
are → were	have/has → had	can → could
want/like/know/go etc. → wanted/liked/knew/went etc.		

See also Unit 48A.

Compare direct and reported speech:

You met Anna. Here are some of the things she said in *direct* speech:

- I've lost my phone.
- I want to buy a car.
- I can't come to the party on Friday.
- I don't have much free time.
- My parents are fine.
- I'm going away for a few days.
- I'll phone you when I get back.



Later you tell somebody what Anna said. You use *reported* speech:

- Anna said that she **had** lost her phone.
- She said that she **wanted** to buy a car.
- She said that she **couldn't** come to the party on Friday.
- She said that she **didn't** have much free time.
- She said that her parents **were** fine.
- She said that she **was** going away for a few days and **would** phone me when she **got** back.

C

The *past simple* (**did/saw/knew** etc.) can stay the same in reported speech, or you can change it to the *past perfect* (**had done / had seen / had known** etc.):

- direct Paul said: 'I **woke** up feeling ill, so I **didn't go** to work.'
- reported Paul said (that) he **woke** up feeling ill, so he **didn't go** to work. or
 Paul said (that) he **had woken** up feeling ill, so he **hadn't gone** to work.

Exercises

47.1 You talked to some friends of yours (Paul, Tom, Anna etc.). Read what they said on the left (direct speech). Later (the same day) you tell another friend what they said (reported speech). Complete the sentences.

	direct speech	reported speech
1	You: Are you going to work today, Paul? ~~~~~ PAUL: No, I'm feeling ill.	Paul didn't go to work today. He said <u>he was feeling</u> ill.
2	You: Shall we walk to the station? ~~~~~ TOM: No, it's too far. Let's get a taxi.	I wanted to walk to the station, but Tom said far.
3	You: Have you been invited to the party? ~~~~~ ANNA: Yes, but I don't want to go.	Anna has been invited to the party but she told me to go.
4	You: When are you going away, Dan? ~~~~~ DAN: I'll let you know next week.	I asked Dan about his travel plans. He said next week.
5	You: Do you ever see Rachel these days? ~~~~~ BEN: I haven't seen her for a while.	I asked Ben about Rachel, but he told me for a while.
6	You: Where can I borrow a guitar? ~~~~~ KATE: You can borrow mine.	I needed to borrow a guitar and Kate said
7	You: How's your job, Sue? ~~~~~ SUE: I'm not enjoying it very much.	I asked Sue about her job. She said very much.
8	You: Do you still have your car? ~~~~~ JAMES: No, I sold it a few months ago.	I asked James about his car. He told me a few months ago.
9	You: What's the name of the cafe we went to? ~~~~~ SARAH: I don't know.	I asked Sarah the name of the cafe we went to but she said
10	You: How many students are there in your class, Amy? ~~~~~ AMY: Twenty.	I asked Amy about her school and she told me class.

47.2 Somebody says something to you which is not what you expected. Use your own ideas to complete your answers.

- 1 A: It's quite a long way from the hotel to the city centre.
B: Is it? The man on the reception desk said it was only five minutes' walk.
- 2 A: Sue is coming to the party tonight.
B: Is she? I saw her a few days ago and she said she
- 3 A: Sarah gets on fine with Paul.
B: Does she? Last week you said each other.
- 4 A: Joe knows lots of people.
B: That's not what he told me. He said anyone.
- 5 A: Jane will be here next week.
B: Oh, really? When I spoke to her, she said away.
- 6 A: I'm going out tonight.
B: Are you? I thought you said at home.
- 7 A: I speak French quite well.
B: Do you? But earlier you said
- 8 A: I haven't seen Ben recently.
B: That's strange. He told me last weekend.

Reported speech 2

A

We do not always change the verb in reported speech. If the situation *is still the same*, it is not necessary to change the verb to the past. For example:

- direct* Paul said, '**My** new job **is** boring.'
- reported* Paul said that **his** new job **is** boring.
(The situation is still the same. His job is still boring now.)
- direct* Helen said, '**I want** to go to Canada next year.'
- reported* Helen told me that **she wants** to go to Canada next year.
(Helen still wants to go to Canada next year.)

You can also change the verb to the past:

- Paul said that his new job **was** boring.
- Helen told me that she **wanted** to go to Canada next year.

But if the situation has *changed or finished*, you need to use a past verb. Compare:

- Paul left the room suddenly. He said '**I have to go.**' (*direct speech*)
Paul left the room suddenly. He said (that) **he had to go.** (*not has to go*)

B

You need to use the past in reported speech when what was said is different from what is really true. For example:

You met Rachel a few days ago. She said:

- Have you heard? **Joe is in hospital.**

Later that day you meet Joe in the street. You say:

- Joe, this is a surprise. Rachel said you **were** in hospital.
(*not 'you are in hospital'* – it's clear that he isn't)

**C****say and tell**

If you say *who* somebody is talking to, use **tell**:

- Rachel **told me** that you were in hospital. (*not Rachel said me*)
- What did you **tell the police?** (*not say the police*)



Otherwise use **say**:

- Rachel **said** that you were in hospital.
(*not Rachel told that ...*)
- What did you **say?**

You can 'say something **to** somebody':

- Anna **said** goodbye **to** me and left. (*not Anna said me goodbye*)
- What did you **say to** the police?

D

We say '**tell** somebody **to ...**' and '**ask** somebody **to ...**'.

Compare direct and reported speech:

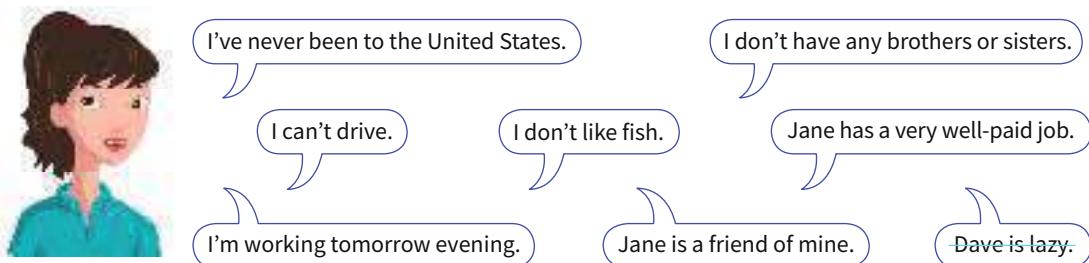
- direct* 'Drink plenty of water,' the doctor said to me.
- reported* The doctor **told me to drink** plenty of water.
- direct* 'Don't work too hard,' I said to Joe.
- reported* I **told Joe not to work** too hard.
- direct* 'Can you help me, please,' Jackie said to me.
- reported* Jackie **asked me to help** her.

You can also say 'Somebody **said (not) to** do something':

- Paul **said not to worry** about him. (*but not Paul said me*)

Exercises

48.1 Here are some things that Sarah said to you earlier:



But later Sarah says something different to you. What do you say?

Sarah	You
1 Dave works very hard. 2 Let's have fish for dinner. 3 I'm going to buy a car. 4 Jane is always short of money. 5 My sister lives in Paris. 6 I think New York is a great place. 7 Let's go out tomorrow evening. 8 I've never spoken to Jane.	<p><i>But you said he was lazy.</i></p> <p>But</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>

48.2 Complete the sentences with **say** or **tell** (in the correct form). Use only one word each time.

- 1 Anna said goodbye to me and left.
- 2 us about your holiday. Did you have a nice time?
- 3 Don't just stand there! something!
- 4 I wonder where Sue is. She she would be here at 8 o'clock.
- 5 Dan me that he was bored with his job.
- 6 The doctor that I should rest for at least a week.
- 7 Gary couldn't help me. He me to ask Chris.
- 8 Gary couldn't help me. He to ask Chris.
- 9 Don't anybody what I It's a secret just between us.
- 10 'Did Kate you what happened?' 'No, she didn't anything to me.'

48.3 The following sentences are direct speech:



Now choose one of these to complete each of the sentences below. Use reported speech.

- 1 Will was taking a long time to get ready, so I told him to hurry up ..
- 2 Sarah was driving too fast, so I asked
- 3 Sue was nervous about the situation. I told
- 4 I couldn't move the piano alone, so I
- 5 The security guard looked at me suspiciously and
- 6 The man started asking me personal questions, so I
- 7 Carl was in love with Maria, so he
- 8 I didn't want to delay Helen, so I

Questions 1

A

In questions the subject is usually after the first verb:

subject + verb verb + subject

Tom	will	→	will	Tom?
you	have	→	have	you?
the house	was	→	was	the house?

- Will Tom** be here tomorrow?
- Have you** been working hard?
- When **was the house** built?

The subject is after the *first* verb:

- Is Katherine** working today? (*not Is working Katherine*)

B

In *present simple* questions, we use **do/does**:

you	live	→	do	you live ?
the film	starts	→	does	the film start ?

- Do** you **live** near here?
- What time **does** the film **start**?

In *past simple* questions, we use **did**:

you	sold	→	did	you sell ?
the train	stopped	→	did	the train stop ?

- Did** you **sell** your car?
- Why **did** the train **stop**?

But do not use **do/does/did** if **who/what** etc. is the subject of the sentence. Compare:

who object

Emma phoned **somebody**.

Who did Emma phone?

who subject

Somebody phoned Emma.

Who phoned Emma?

In these examples, **who/what** etc. is the **subject**:

- Who wants** something to eat? (*not Who does want*)
- What happened** to you last night? (*not What did happen*)
- How many people came** to the party? (*not did come*)
- Which bus goes** to the centre? (*not does go*)

C

In questions beginning **who/what/which/where**, prepositions (**in, for** etc.) usually go at the end:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Where are you from ? | <input type="checkbox"/> What was the weather like ? |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Who do you want to speak to ? | <input type="checkbox"/> Which job has Tina applied for ? |

You can use *preposition + whom* in formal style:

- To whom** do you wish to speak?

D

isn't it ...? / didn't you ...? etc. (negative questions)

We use negative questions especially to show surprise:

- Didn't you** hear the doorbell? I rang it three times.
- or when we expect the listener to agree with us:
- 'Haven't we' met before?' 'Yes, I think we have.'

Note the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answers to negative questions:

- 'Don't you want to go?' { 'Yes.' (=Yes, I want to go)
 'No.' (=No, I don't want to go)}

We often use negative questions with **Why ...?**:

- Why don't we** eat out tonight? (*not Why we don't eat*)
- Why wasn't Emma** at work yesterday? (*not Why Emma wasn't*)

Exercises



49.1 Ask Joe questions.

- 1 (where / live) Where do you live?
- 2 (born there?)
- 3 (married?)
- 4 (how long?)
- 5 (what / do?)
- 6 (what wife / do?)
- 7 (children?)
- 8 (how old?)

In Manchester.
No, I was born in London.
Yes.
17 years.
I'm a journalist.
She's a doctor.
Yes, two boys.
12 and 15.

49.2 Make questions with **who** or **what**.

- 1 Somebody hit me.
- 2 I hit somebody.
- 3 Somebody paid the bill.
- 4 I'm worried about something.
- 5 Something happened.
- 6 Diane said something.
- 7 This book belongs to somebody.
- 8 Somebody lives in that house.
- 9 I fell over something.
- 10 Something fell off the shelf.
- 11 This word means something.
- 12 Sarah was with somebody.
- 13 I'm looking for something.
- 14 Emma reminds me of somebody.

Who hit you?
Who did you hit?

- Who
- What
-
-
-
-
-
-

49.3 Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

- 1 (when / was / built / this house?) When was this house built?
- 2 (how / cheese / is / made?)
- 3 (why / Sue / working / isn't / today?)
- 4 (what time / arriving / your friends / are?)
- 5 (why / was / cancelled / the meeting?)
- 6 (when / invented / paper / was?)
- 7 (where / your parents / were / born?)
- 8 (why / you / to the party / didn't / come?)
- 9 (how / the accident / did / happen?)
- 10 (why / happy / you / aren't?)
- 11 (how many / speak / can / languages / you?)

49.4 Write negative questions from the words in brackets. In each situation you are surprised.

- 1 A: We won't see Lisa this evening.
B: Why not? (she / not / come / out with us?) Isn't she coming out with us?
- 2 A: I hope we don't meet Luke tonight.
B: Why? (you / not / like / him?)
- 3 A: Don't go and see that film.
B: Why not? (it / not / good?)
- 4 A: I'll have to borrow some money.
B: Why? (you / not / have / any?)

Questions 2 (do you know where ... ? / he asked me where ...)

A

Do you **know where** ...? / I **don't know why** ... / Could you tell me **what** ...? etc.

We say: Where ~~has Tom~~ gone?

but **Do you know** where ~~Tom has~~ gone? (*not has Tom gone*)

When the question (**Where has Tom gone?**) is part of a longer sentence (**Do you know ... ? / I don't know ... / Can you tell me ... ?** etc.), the word order changes. We say:

- What time **is it**?
- Who **are those people**?
- Where **can I find Louise**?
- How much **will it cost**?

but **Do you know** what time **it is**?
I don't know who **those people are**.
Can you tell me where **I can** find Louise?
Do you have any idea how much **it will** cost?

Be careful with **do/does/did** questions. We say:

- What time **does the film start**? but **Do you know** what time **the film starts**?
(not does the film start)
Please explain what you mean.
I wonder why **she left** early.
- What **do you mean**?
 Why **did she leave** early?

Use **if** or **whether** where there is no other question word (**what, why** etc.):

- Did anybody see you? but I don't know **if** anybody saw me.
or ... whether anybody saw me.

B

He asked me where ...

The same changes in word order happen in questions in reported speech. Compare:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> direct | The police officer said to us 'Where are you going ?' |
| <input type="checkbox"/> reported | The police officer asked us where we were going . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> direct | Clare asked 'What time do the shops close ?' |
| <input type="checkbox"/> reported | Clare wanted to know what time the shops closed . |

In reported speech the verb usually changes to the past (**were, closed** etc.). See Unit 47.

Study these examples. You had a job interview and the interviewer asked you these questions:



- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Are you willing to travel?</p> <p>What do you do in your spare time?</p> <p>How long have you been working in your present job?</p> | <p>Why did you apply for the job?</p> <p>Can you speak any other languages?</p> <p>Do you have a driving licence?</p> |
|---|--|

Later you tell a friend what the interviewer asked you. You use *reported speech*:

- She asked if (or whether) **I was** willing to travel.
- She wanted to know what **I did** in my spare time.
- She asked how long **I had been working** in my present job.
- She asked why **I had applied** for the job. or ... why **I applied** ...
- She wanted to know if (or whether) **I could** speak any other languages.
- She asked if (or whether) **I had** a driving licence.

Exercises

50.1 Which is right? Tick (✓) the correct alternative.

- 1 a Do you know what time the film starts? ✓
b Do you know what time does the film start?
c Do you know what time starts the film?
 - 2 a Why Amy does get up so early every day?
b Why Amy gets up so early every day?
c Why does Amy get up so early every day?
 - 3 a I want to know what this word means.
b I want to know what does this word mean.
c I want to know what means this word.
 - 4 a I can't remember where did I park the car.
b I can't remember where I parked the car.
c I can't remember where I did park the car.
- 5 a Why you didn't phone me yesterday?
b Why didn't you phone me yesterday?
c Why you not phoned me yesterday?
 - 6 a Do you know where does Helen work?
b Do you know where Helen does work?
c Do you know where Helen works?
 - 7 a How much it costs to park here?
b How much does it cost to park here?
c How much it does cost to park here?
 - 8 a Tell me what you want.
b Tell me what you do want.
c Tell me what do you want.

50.2 Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 (it / you / what time / know / is) Do *you know what time it is*
- 2 (is / to the airport / far / it) How
- 3 (wonder / is / how / old / Tom) I
- 4 (they / married / been / have) How long
- 5 (they / married / how long / been / have / know)
Do you
- 6 (tell / the station / you / me / is / where)
Could
- 7 (in the accident / injured / anyone / don't / whether / know / was)
I
- 8 (what / tomorrow / know / time / will / arrive / you / you)
Do

50.3 You were visiting London. You met a lot of people who asked you a lot of questions:

1		Where are you from?	5		Where are you staying?
2		How long have you been in London?	6		How long are you going to stay?
3		Have you been to London before?	7		Do you think London is expensive?
4		Do you like London?	8		Why did you come to London?

Now you tell a friend what people asked you. Use reported speech.

- 1 He asked me where I was from.
- 2 She asked me
- 3 They
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

Auxiliary verbs (**have/do/can** etc.)

I think so / I hope so etc.

A

In these sentences there is an *auxiliary verb* and a *main verb*:

	<i>auxiliary</i>	<i>main</i>	
I	have	lost	my keys.
She	can't	come	to the party.
The hotel	was	built	ten years ago.
Why	do you	want	to go home?

In these examples **have/can't/was/do** are *auxiliary* (= helping) verbs.

You can use an auxiliary verb when you don't want to repeat something:

- 'Have you locked the door?' 'Yes, I **have**.' (=I have *locked the door*)
- Gary wasn't working, but Laura **was**. (=Laura was *working*)
- Jessica could lend me the money, but she **won't**. (=she won't *lend me the money*)

We use **do/does/did** for the present and past simple:

- 'Do you like onions?' 'Yes, I **do**.' (=I *like onions*)
- 'Does Simon live in London?' 'He **did**, but he **doesn't** any more.'

You can use auxiliary verbs to deny what somebody says (= say it is not true):

- 'You're sitting in my place.' 'No, I'm **not**.' (=I'm not *sitting in your place*)
- 'You didn't lock the door before you left.' 'Yes, I **did**.' (=I *locked the door*)

B

We use **have you? / isn't she? / are they?** etc. to show that we are interested in what somebody has said, or to show surprise:

- 'I've just seen Steven.' 'Oh, **have you?** How is he?'
- Lisa isn't very well today.' '**Isn't she?** What's wrong with her?'
- It rained every day during our holiday.' '**Did it?** What a shame!'
- James and Tanya are getting married.' '**Are they?** Really?'

C

We use auxiliary verbs with **so** and **neither**:

- 'I'm tired.' '**So am I!**' (=I'm tired too)
- I never read newspapers.' '**Neither do I!**' (=I never read newspapers either)
- Sarah can't drive and **neither can Mark**.

Note the word order after **so** and **neither** (verb before subject):

- I passed the exam and **so did Paul**. (not so Paul did)

Instead of **neither**, you can use **nor**. You can also use **not ... either**:

- 'I don't know.' '**Neither do I!**' or '**Nor do I!**' or '**I don't either**'

D

I think so / I suppose so etc.

You can say **I think so / I suppose so** etc. when we don't want to repeat something:

- 'Are those people Korean?' '**I think so.**' (=I think *they are Korean*)
- 'Is Kate working tomorrow?' '**I suppose so.**' (=I suppose *she is working tomorrow*)
- 'Will you be at home this evening?' '**I expect so.**' (=I expect *I'll be at home ...*)

In the same way we say: **I hope so, I guess so** and **I'm afraid so**.

The usual negative forms are:

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| I think so / I expect so | → | I don't think so / I don't expect so |
| I hope so / I'm afraid so | → | I hope not / I'm afraid not |
| I guess so / I suppose so | → | I guess not / I suppose not |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 'Is that woman American?' ' I think so. / I don't think so. ' | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 'Do you think it will rain?' ' I hope so. / I hope not. ' (not I don't hope so) | | |

Exercises

51.1 Complete each sentence with an auxiliary verb (**do/was/could/might** etc.). Sometimes the verb must be negative (**don't/wasn't** etc.).

- 1 I wasn't tired, but my friends **were**.
- 2 I like hot weather, but Ann
- 3 'Is Andy here?' 'He five minutes ago, but I think he's gone home now.'
- 4 I haven't travelled much, but Gary
- 5 Lisa said she might come and see us tomorrow, but I don't think she
- 6 I don't know whether to apply for the job or not. Do you think I?
- 7 'Please don't tell anybody what happened.' 'Don't worry. I'
- 8 'You never listen to me.' 'Yes, I!'
- 9 I usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday I
- 10 'Do you think it's going to rain?' 'It Take an umbrella in case.'
- 11 'Are you and Chris going to the party?' 'I , but Chris
- 12 'Please help me.' 'I'm sorry. I if I , but I

51.2 You never agree with Amy. Answer in the way shown.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1 | I'm hungry. |
| 2 | I don't like driving. |
| 3 | I like football. |
| 4 | I didn't enjoy the film. |
| 5 | I'm not tired. |
| 6 | I thought the exam was easy. |
- AMY**

Are you? I'm not.
Don't you? I do.

.....

YOU

51.3 Tina tells you something. If the same is true for you, answer with **So ...** or **Neither ...** (as in the first example). Otherwise, ask Tina questions (as in the second example).

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 | I'm not tired. |
| 2 | I work hard. |
| 3 | I watched TV last night. |
| 4 | TINA I won't be at home tomorrow. |
| 5 | I like reading. |
| 6 | I'd like to live somewhere else. |
| 7 | I can't go out tonight. |
| 8 | I'm looking forward to the weekend. |

Neither am I.
Do you? What do you do?

.....

YOU

51.4 What do you say to Sam? Use **I think so**, **I hope not** etc.

<p>1 (You don't like rain.) SAM: Is it going to rain? YOU: I hope not. (hope)</p>	<p>5 (Jane has lived in Italy for many years.) SAM: Does Jane speak Italian? YOU: (suppose)</p>
<p>2 (You need more money.) SAM: Do you think you'll get a pay rise? YOU: (hope)</p>	<p>6 (You have to leave Sam's party early.) SAM: Do you have to leave already? YOU: (afraid)</p>
<p>3 (You're going to a party. You can't stand John.) SAM: Will John be at the party? YOU: (hope)</p>	<p>7 (You're not sure what time the film begins, but it's probably 7.30.) SAM: What time is the film? 7.30? YOU: (think)</p>
<p>4 (You're not sure whether Amy is married, but she probably isn't.) SAM: Is Amy married? YOU: (think)</p>	<p>8 (You are the receptionist at a hotel. The hotel is full.) SAM: Do you have a room for tonight? YOU: (afraid)</p>

Exercises

52.1 Complete these sentences with a question tag.

- | | | | |
|----|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| 1 | Kate won't be late, | <i>will she</i> | ? |
| 2 | You're tired, | <i>aren't you</i> | ? |
| 3 | You travel a lot, | | ? |
| 4 | You weren't listening, | | ? |
| 5 | Sarah doesn't know Ann, | | ? |
| 6 | Jack's on holiday, | | ? |
| 7 | It didn't take long to get here, | | ? |
| 8 | You can speak German, | | ? |
| 9 | They won't mind if I take a picture, | | ? |
| 10 | There are a lot of people here, | | ? |
| 11 | Let's go and have coffee, | | ? |
| 12 | This isn't very interesting | | ? |
| 13 | I'm too impatient | | ? |
| 14 | You wouldn't tell anyone, | | ? |
| 15 | Helen has lived here a long time, | | ? |
| 16 | I shouldn't have lost my temper, | | ? |
| 17 | He'd never met her before, | | ? |
| 18 | Don't forget to call me, | | ? |

- No, she's never late.
Yes, a little.
Yes, I love travelling.
Yes, I was!
No, they've never met.
Yes, he's in Australia.
No, just ten minutes.
Yes, but not fluently.
No, of course they won't.
Yes, more than I expected.
Yes, let's do that.
No, not really.
Yes, you are sometimes.
No, of course not.
Yes, 20 years.
No, but that's all right.
No, that was the first time.
No, I won't forget.

52.2 In these situations you expect your friend to agree with you. Use a question tag in your sentences.

- 1 You look out of the window. The sky is blue and the sun is shining. You say to your friend:
(beautiful day) *It's a beautiful day, isn't it?*
- 2 You're with a friend outside a restaurant. You're looking at the prices, which are very high. You say: (expensive) It
- 3 You and a colleague have just finished a training course. You really enjoyed it. You say to your colleague: (great) The course
- 4 Your friend's hair is much shorter than when you last met. You say to her/him:
(have / your hair / cut) You
- 5 You're listening to a woman singing. You like her voice very much. You say to your friend:
(a good voice) She
- 6 You're trying on a jacket in a shop. You look in the mirror and you don't like what you see. You say to your friend:
(not / look / right) It
- 7 You and a friend are walking over a small wooden bridge. The bridge is old and some parts are broken. You say:
(not / very safe) This bridge

52.3 In these situations you are asking for information, asking people to do things etc.

- 1 You need a pen. Perhaps Jane has one. Ask her.
Jane, you don't have a pen I could borrow, do you?
- 2 You have to move a heavy table. You want Joe to help you with it. Ask him.
Joe, you
- 3 You're looking for Sarah. Perhaps Lisa knows where she is. Ask her.
Lisa, you
- 4 You want to borrow a tennis racket. Perhaps Helen has one. Ask her.
Helen,
- 5 Anna has a car and you need a lift to the station. Perhaps she'll take you. Ask her.
Anna,
- 6 You're looking for your keys. Perhaps Robert has seen them. Ask him.
Robert,

Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing etc.)

A

We say:

- I **enjoy reading**. (not I enjoy to read)
- Would you **mind closing** the door?
(not mind to close)
- Chris **suggested going** to the cinema.
(not suggested to go)

After **enjoy**, **mind** and **suggest**, we use **-ing** (not **to ...**).Some more verbs that are followed by **-ing**:

stop	recommend	admit	avoid	imagine
finish	consider	deny	risk	fancy

- Suddenly everybody **stopped talking**. There was silence.
- I'll do the shopping when I've **finished cleaning** the flat.
- He tried to **avoid answering** my question.
- I don't **fancy going** out this evening. (=I'm not enthusiastic about it)
- Have you ever **considered going** to live in another country?
- They said they were innocent. They **denied doing** anything wrong.

The negative form is **not -ing**:

- When I'm on holiday, I enjoy **not having** to get up early.

B

We also use **-ing** after:

give up (= stop)
put off (= delay until later)
go on or carry on (= continue)
keep or keep on (=do something continuously or repeatedly)

- I've **given up buying** newspapers. I don't read them any more.
- You shouldn't **put off telling** him what happened. You need to tell him now.
- Katherine doesn't want to retire. She wants to **go on working**. or ... to **carry on working**.
- You **keep interrupting** when I'm talking. or You **keep on interrupting** ...

C

With some verbs you can use the structure **verb + somebody + -ing**:

- You can't **stop people doing** what they want.
- I can't **imagine George riding** a motorbike.
- Did she really say that? I don't **remember her saying** that.
- Sorry to **keep you waiting** so long.

D

When you talk about finished actions, you can say **having done/stolen/said** etc.:

- They admitted **having stolen** the money.

But it is not necessary to use **having** (done). You can say:

- They admitted **stealing** the money.
- I now regret **saying** that. or I now regret **having said** that.

E

Other structures are possible with **admit**, **deny**, **suggest** and **recommend**. For example, you can say:

- They **denied** (that) **they had done** anything wrong. (=They **denied doing** ...)
- Chris **suggested** (that) **we go** to the cinema. (=Chris **suggested going** ...)
- I **recommend** (that) **you travel** by train. (=I **recommend travelling** ...)

Exercises

53.1 Complete the sentences for each situation. Use -ing.

1

What shall we do?  We could go to the zoo.

She suggested going to the zoo.

2

Do you want to play tennis?  No, not really.

He didn't fancy

3

Let's go for a walk.  Good idea!

She suggested

4

You caused the accident.  No, I didn't.

He denied

5

Can you wait a few minutes?  Sure, no problem.

They didn't mind

6

You didn't tell the truth.  That's right. I didn't.

She admitted

53.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from these verbs (in the correct form):

answer	apply	forget	interrupt	listen	live
lose	make	pay	read	travel	try

- 1 He tried to avoid answering my question.
- 2 I'm trying to concentrate. Please stop so much noise!
- 3 I enjoy to music.
- 4 I considered for the job, but in the end I decided against it.
- 5 Have you finished the newspaper yet?
- 6 We need to change our routine. We can't go on like this.
- 7 It's better to avoid during the rush hour.
- 8 My memory is getting worse. I keep things.
- 9 I've put off this bill so many times. I really must do it today.
- 10 I've given up to learn Japanese. I was making no progress.
- 11 If you gamble, you risk your money.
- 12 Would you mind not me all the time? Let me speak!

53.3 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 Did she really say that? I (that / remember / her / saying / don't).

I don't remember her saying that.

- 2 It's OK if you want to drive my car. I (driving / don't / it / you / mind).

I

- 3 What a stupid thing to do! Can (imagine / so stupid / being / you / anybody)?

Can

- 4 We can't control the weather. We (raining / stop / it / can't).

We

- 5 I'll be as quick as I can. I (waiting / want / keep / you / don't / to).

I

53.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use -ing.

- 1 She's a very interesting person. I always enjoy talking to her
- 2 I'm not feeling very well. I don't fancy
- 3 I'm afraid there aren't any chairs. I hope you don't mind
- 4 It was a beautiful day, so I suggested
- 5 The movie was very funny. I couldn't stop
- 6 My car is unreliable. It keeps

Verb + to ... (decide to ... / forget to ... etc.)

A

After these verbs you can use **to** ... (*infinitive*):

offer	plan	manage	deserve
agree	arrange	fail	afford
refuse	hope	promise	learn
decide	forget	threaten	tend



- It was a long way to walk, so we **decided to take** a taxi home.
- Simon was in a difficult situation, so I **agreed to help** him.
- I waved to Karen, but **failed to attract** her attention.
- I like Dan, but I think he **tends to talk** too much.
- How old were you when you **learnt to drive**?
or ... learnt **how** to drive?

Dan **tends to talk** too much.

The negative is **not to** ...:

- We **decided not to go** out because of the weather.
- I **promised not to be** late.

After some verbs, we use **-ing** (*not to* ...). For example, **enjoy/think/suggest**:

- I **enjoy reading**. (*not enjoy to read*)
- Andy **suggested meeting** for coffee. (*not suggested to meet*)
- Are you **thinking of buying** a car? (*not thinking to buy*)

For verb + **-ing**, see Units 53 and 62.

B

After **dare** you can use the infinitive with or without **to**:

- I didn't **dare to tell** him. or I didn't **dare tell** him.

But after **dare not** (*or daren't*), we do not use **to**:

- I **daren't tell** him what happened. (*not I daren't to tell him*)

C

We also use **to** ... after **seem, appear, pretend** and **claim**. For example:

- They **seem to have** plenty of money.
- Ann **pretended not to see** me when she passed me in the street.

You can also use **to be -ing** (*continuous infinitive*) and **to have (done)** (*perfect infinitive*):

- I **pretended to be reading** the newspaper. (=I pretended that I **was reading**)
- Have you seen my keys? I **seem to have lost** them. (=it seems that I **have lost** them)
- She **claimed not to have seen** me. (=she claimed that she **hadn't seen** me)

D

After these verbs you can use a question word (**what/how** etc.) + **to**

ask know decide remember forget learn explain understand wonder

For example:

We asked	how	to get	to the station.
Have you decided	where	to go	on holiday?
I don't know	whether	to apply	for the job or not.
Do you understand	what	to do?	

also

show/tell/ask/advise/teach somebody **what/how/where** to do something:

- Can somebody **show me how to use** this camera?
- Ask Jack. He'll **tell you what to do**.

Exercises

54.1 Complete the sentences for these situations.

- 1 Shall we get married?  Yes, let's. 

They decided to get married.

- 2 Please help me.  OK. 

She agreed

- 3 Can I carry your bag for you?  No, thanks. I can manage. 

He offered

- 4 Let's meet at 8 o'clock.  OK, fine. 

They arranged

- 5 What's your name?  I'm not going to tell you. 

She refused

- 6 Please don't tell anyone.  I won't. I promise. 

She promised

54.2 Complete the sentences. Use a suitable verb.

- 1 Don't forget to lock the door when you go out.
- 2 There was a lot of traffic, but we managed to the airport in time.
- 3 We couldn't afford in London. It's too expensive.
- 4 I can't play a musical instrument, but I'd like to learn the guitar.
- 5 I don't want Mark to know what happened. I decided not him.
- 6 We were all afraid to speak. Nobody dared anything.

54.3 Put the verb into the correct form, **to ... or -ing**. (See Unit 53 for verbs + -ing.)

- 1 When I'm tired, I enjoy watching TV. It's relaxing. (watch)
- 2 I've decided for another job. I need a change. (look)
- 3 I'm not going anywhere! I refuse (move)
- 4 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind (wait)
- 5 Tina ran in a marathon last week, but she failed (finish)
- 6 I wish that dog would stop It's driving me crazy. (bark)
- 7 They didn't know I was listening to them. I pretended asleep. (be)
- 8 We were hungry, so I suggested dinner early. (have)
- 9 Hurry up! I don't want to risk the train. (miss)
- 10 David is very quiet. He tends not much. (say)

54.4 Make a new sentence using the verb in brackets.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 I've lost my keys. | (seem) | I <u>seem to have lost my keys</u> . |
| 2 Tom is worried about something. | (appear) | Tom appears |
| 3 You know a lot of people. | (seem) | You |
| 4 My English is getting better. | (seem) | |
| 5 That car has broken down. | (appear) | |
| 6 Rachel is enjoying her job. | (seem) | |
| 7 They have solved the problem. | (claim) | |

54.5 Complete each sentence using **what/how/where/whether + these verbs:**

do get go put ride use

- 1 Do you know how to get to the airport from here?
- 2 Would you know if there was a fire in the building?
- 3 You'll never forget a bike once you've learnt.
- 4 I've been invited to the party, but I haven't decided or not.
- 5 My room is very untidy. I've got so many things and I don't know them.
- 6 I have some clothes to wash. Can you show me the washing machine?

Verb (+ object) + **to** ... (I want you to ...)

A

We say:

verb + to ...	verb + object + to ...
want expect ask help would like would prefer	to go to be to work etc.

and

want expect ask help would like would prefer	somebody something	to go to be to work etc.
---	-----------------------	-----------------------------------

- We **expected to be** late.
- Would you **like to go** now?
- He doesn't **want to know**.

- We expected **Dan to be** late.
- Would you like **me to go** now?
- He doesn't want **anybody to know**.

We do not usually say 'want that':

- Do you **want me to come** with you? (*not want that I come*)

You can use **help** with or without **to**. You can say:

- Can you help me **to move** this table? *or* Can you help me **move** this table?

BThese verbs have the structure *verb + object + to ...*:

verb + object + to ...
tell advise remind warn invite encourage persuade get force teach allow enable

somebody

to do to be to work etc.

- It's not a nice hotel. I wouldn't **advise you to stay** there.
- Can you **remind me to call** Sam tomorrow?
- Joe said the switch was dangerous and **warned me not to touch** it.
- I didn't move the piano by myself. I **got somebody to help** me.
- Who **taught you to drive**?
- They don't **allow people to park** in front of the building.

In these examples, the verb is *passive* (**I was warned / we are allowed** etc.):

- I was warned not to touch** the switch.
- Are we allowed to park** here?

We do not use **suggest** with **to** ...:

- Jane **suggested that I ask** you for advice. (*not Jane suggested me to ask*)

CWe say '**make** somebody **do** something', '**let** somebody **do** something' (without **to**):

- I made him promise** that he wouldn't tell anybody what happened.
(*not made him to promise*)
- Hot weather **makes me feel** tired. (= causes me to feel tired)
- Her parents wouldn't **let her go** out alone. (= wouldn't allow her to go out)
- Let me carry** your bag for you.

We say '**make** somebody **do**', but in the *passive* we say '(be) **made to do**' (with **to**):

- We were made to wait** for two hours. (=They **made us wait** ...)

Exercises

55.1 Complete the questions. Use **do you want me to ... ?** or **would you like me to ... ?** with these verbs (and any other necessary words):

come lend repeat show shut wait

- 1 Do you want to go alone, or *do you want me to come with you* ?
- 2 Do you have enough money, or do you want
- 3 Shall I leave the window open, or would you
- 4 Do you know how to use the printer, or would
- 5 Did you hear what I said, or do
- 6 Can I go now, or do

55.2 Complete the sentences for these situations.

- 1 Meet me at the station.  OK.

She told *him to meet her at the station*

- 2 Why don't you come and stay with us?  That would be nice.

They invited him

- 3 Don't forget to call Joe.  No, I won't forget.

He reminded her

- 4 Be careful.  Don't worry. I will.

She warned

- 5 Can you give me a hand?  Sure.

He asked

55.3 Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence.

- 1 My father said I could use his car.
- 2 I was surprised that it rained.
- 3 Don't stop him doing what he wants.
- 4 Tom looks older when he wears glasses.
- 5 I think you should know the truth.
- 6 At first I didn't want to apply for the job, but Sarah persuaded me.
- 7 My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police.
- 8 I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says.
- 9 If you've got a car, you are able to get around more easily.

My father allowed *me to use his car*.

I didn't expect

Let

Tom's glasses make

I want

Sarah persuaded

My lawyer advised

I was warned

Having a car enables

55.4 Which is right?

- 1 You aren't allowed take / to take pictures here. (to take is correct)
- 2 I'm in a difficult position. What do you advise me do / to do?
- 3 The film was very sad. It made me cry / to cry.
- 4 Lisa's parents always encouraged her study / to study hard at school.
- 5 Please don't interrupt me. Let me finish / to finish.
- 6 You can't make people do / to do things they don't want to do.
- 7 You can't force people do / to do things they don't want to do.
- 8 Sarah won't let me drive / to drive her car. She doesn't trust me.
- 9 Why did you change your decision? What made you change / to change your mind?
- 10 If you enter a country with a tourist visa, you are not allowed work / to work there.

Verb + -ing or to ... 1 (remember, regret etc.)

A

Some verbs are followed by **-ing** and some are followed by **to**

Verbs that you can use with **-ing** (*not to* ...):

admit	fancy	postpone
avoid	finish	risk
consider	imagine	stop
deny	keep (on)	suggest
enjoy	mind	

For examples, see Unit 53.

Verbs that you can use with **to** ...:

afford	fail	offer
agree	forget	plan
arrange	hope	promise
decide	learn	refuse
deserve	manage	tend

For examples, see Unit 54.

B

Some verbs can be followed by **-ing** or **to** ... with a difference of meaning:

remember

I **remember doing** something = I did it and now I remember this.

You **remember doing** something *after* you have done it.

- I know I locked the door. I clearly **remember locking** it.
(= I locked it, and now I remember this)
- He could **remember driving** along the road just before the accident, but he couldn't remember the accident itself.

I **remembered to do** something =

I remembered that I had to do it, so I did it.

You **remember to do** something *before* you do it.

- I **remembered to lock** the door, but I forgot to shut the windows.
(= I remembered that I had to lock it, and so I locked it)
- Remember to buy** some bananas.
(= Don't forget to buy them)

regret

I **regret doing** something = I did it and now I am sorry about it:

- I now **regret saying** what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
- Do you **regret not** going to college?

I **regret to say / to tell** you / **to inform** you = I am sorry that I have to say:

- (*from a formal letter*) I **regret to say** that we are unable to accept your offer.

go on

go on doing something = continue doing the same thing:

- The president paused for a moment and then **went on talking**.
- We need to change. We can't **go on living** like this.

go on to do something = do or say something new:

- After discussing the economy, the president **went on to talk** about foreign policy.

C

We use the following verbs with **-ing** or **to** ... with no difference of meaning:

begin **start** **continue** **intend** **bother**

So you can say:

- It **started raining**. or It **started to rain**.
- Andy **intends buying** a house. or Andy **intends to buy** ...
- Don't **bother locking** the door. or Don't **bother to lock** ...

Normally we do not use **-ing** after **-ing**:

- It's **starting to rain**. (*not usually* It's starting raining)

Exercises

56.1 Put the verb into the correct form, -ing or to

- 1 They denied **stealing** the money. (steal)
- 2 I don't enjoy very much. (drive)
- 3 I can't afford away. I don't have enough money. (go)
- 4 Have you ever considered to live in another country? (go)
- 5 We were unlucky to lose the game. We played well and deserved (win)
- 6 Why do you keep me questions? Leave me alone! (ask)
- 7 Please stop me questions! (ask)
- 8 I refuse any more questions. (answer)
- 9 The driver of one of the cars admitted the accident. (cause)
- 10 Mark needed our help, and we promised what we could. (do)
- 11 I don't mind alone, but I'd rather be with other people. (be)
- 12 The wall was quite high, but I managed over it. (climb)
- 13 Sarah doesn't know about the meeting. I forgot her. (tell)
- 14 I've enjoyed to you. I hope you again soon. (talk, see)

56.2 Tom can remember some things about his childhood, but he can't remember others. Write sentences with He remembers ... or He doesn't remember

- 1 He was in hospital when he was a small child. He can still remember this.
..... **He remembers being in hospital** when he was a small child.
- 2 He cried on his first day at school. He doesn't remember this.
He doesn't on his first day at school.
- 3 Once he fell into the river. He remembers this.
He
- 4 He said he wanted to be a doctor. He doesn't remember this.
..... to be a doctor.
- 5 Once he was bitten by a dog. He doesn't remember this.
..... a dog.
- 6 His sister was born when he was four. He remembers this.
.....

56.3 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb in the correct form, -ing or to

- 1 a Please remember **to lock** the door when you go out.
b He says we've met before, but I don't remember him.
c Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember it by the window and now it isn't there.
d When you see Steve, remember hello to him from me.
e A: You lent me some money a few months ago.
B: Did I? Are you sure? I don't remember you any money.
f A: Did you remember your sister?
B: No, I forgot. I'll phone her tomorrow.
- 2 a The course I did wasn't very good, but I don't regret it.
b I knew they were in trouble, but I regret I did nothing to help them.
c It started to get cold, and he regretted not his coat.
d I now regret my job. It was a big mistake.
- 3 a Ben joined the company nine years ago. He became assistant manager after two years, and a few years later he went on manager of the company.
b I can't go on here any more. I want a different job.
c When I came into the room, Lisa was reading a book. She looked up and said hello, and then went on her book.
d Food prices have gone up again. How are we going to manage if prices go on ?

Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try, need, help)

A

try to ... and try -ing

try to do = attempt to do, make an effort to do:

- I was very tired. I **tried to keep** my eyes open, but I couldn't.
- Please **try to be** quiet when you come home. Everyone will be asleep.

try something or **try doing something** = do it as an experiment or test:

- These cakes are delicious. You should **try one**. (= have one to see if you like it)
- We couldn't find anywhere to stay. We **tried every hotel** in the town, but they were all full. (= we went to every hotel to see if they had a room)
- A: The photocopier doesn't seem to be working.
B: **Try pressing** the green button.
(= press the green button – perhaps this will help to solve the problem)

Compare:

- I **tried to move** the table, but it was too heavy. (so I couldn't move it)
- I didn't like the way the furniture was arranged, so I **tried moving** the table to the other side of the room. But it didn't look right, so I moved it back again.
(I **tried moving** it = I moved it to see if it looked better)

B

need to ... and need -ing

I need to do something = it is necessary for me to do it:

- He **needs to work** harder if he wants to make progress.
- I don't **need to come** to the meeting, do I?

You can say that something **needs -ing**:

- My phone **needs charging**. (= it **needs to be charged**)
- Does your suit **need cleaning**? (= ... **need to be cleaned**)
- It's a difficult problem. It **needs thinking about** carefully.
(= it **needs to be thought about** carefully)

Compare:

- I need **to charge** my phone.
but **My phone** needs **charging**.

**C**

help and can't help

You can say **help to do** or **help do** (with or without **to**):

- Everybody **helped to clean** up after the party. or
Everybody **helped clean** up ...
- Can you **help me move** this table? or
Can you **help me to move** ...

I can't help doing something = I can't stop myself doing it:

- I don't like him, but he has a lot of problems.
I **can't help feeling** sorry for him.
- She tried to be serious, but she **couldn't help laughing**.
(= she couldn't stop herself laughing)
- I'm sorry I'm so nervous. I **can't help it**.
(= I can't help **being** nervous)



She **couldn't help laughing**.

Exercises

57.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

- 1 I was very tired. I tried to keep my eyes open, but I couldn't. (keep)
- 2 I tried the shelf, but I wasn't tall enough. (reach)
- 3 I rang the doorbell, but there was no answer. Then I tried on the window, but there was still no answer. (knock)
- 4 We tried the fire out, but without success. We had to call the fire brigade. (put)
- 5 Please leave me alone. I'm trying (concentrate)
- 6 Sue needed to borrow some money. She tried Carl, but he didn't have any. (ask)
- 7 Mr Bennett isn't here right now. Please try later. (call)
- 8 The woman's face was familiar. I tried where I'd seen her before. (remember)
- 9 If you have a problem with the computer, try it. (restart)

57.2 For each picture, write a sentence with **need(s)** + one of the following verbs:

clean cut empty paint tighten



- 1 This room isn't very nice. It needs painting
- 2 The grass is very long. It
- 3 The windows are dirty. They
- 4 The screws are loose.
- 5 The bin is full.

57.3 Which is right?

- 1 We spend too much time sitting down. We need getting / to get more exercise.
(to get is correct)
- 2 These clothes are dirty. They all need washing / to wash.
- 3 My grandmother isn't able to look after herself any more. She needs looking / to look after.
- 4 I can't make a decision right now. I need thinking / to think about it.
- 5 Your hair is getting very long. It will need cutting / to cut soon.
- 6 I need a change. I need going / to go away for a while.
- 7 That shirt looks fine. You don't need ironing / to iron it.
- 8 That shirt looks fine. It doesn't need ironing / to iron.

57.4 Put the verb into the correct form.

- 1 I don't like him, but I can't help feeling sorry for him. (feel)
- 2 I've lost my phone. Can you help me for it? (look)
- 3 They were talking very loudly. We couldn't help what they said. (overhear)
- 4 He looks so funny. Whenever I see him, I can't help (smile)
- 5 The fine weather helped it a really nice holiday. (make)
- 6 Did you help the meeting? (organise)
- 7 I think about what happened all the time. I can't help about it. (think)
- 8 I can't help you a job. You have to find one yourself. (get)

A like / love / hate

When you talk about repeated actions, you can use **-ing** or **to** ... after these verbs. So you can say:

- Do you **like getting** up early? or Do you **like to get** up early?
- Stephanie **hates flying**. or Stephanie **hates to fly**.
- I **love meeting** people. or I **love to meet** people.
- I don't **like being** kept waiting. or ... **like to be** kept waiting.
- I don't **like friends calling** me at work. or ... friends **to call** me at work.

but

(1) We use **-ing** (**not to** ...) when we talk about a situation that already exists (or existed).

For example:

- Paul lives in Berlin now. He **likes living** there.
(he lives there now and he likes it)
- Do you **like being** a student? (you are a student – do you like it?)
- The office I worked in was horrible. I **hated working** there. (I worked there and I hated it)

(2) There is sometimes a difference between **I like to do** and **I like doing**:

I like doing something = I do it and I enjoy it:
 I **like cleaning** the kitchen. (= I enjoy it.)

I like to do something = I choose to do it (but maybe I don't enjoy it):

- It's not my favourite job, but I **like to clean** the kitchen as often as possible.

Note that we use **-ing** (**not to** ...) with **enjoy** and **mind**:

- I **enjoy cleaning** the kitchen. (not I enjoy to clean)
- I **don't mind cleaning** the kitchen. (not I don't mind to clean)

B would like / would love / would hate / would prefer

Would like / would love etc. are usually followed by **to** ...:

- I'd **like** (= I **would like**) to go away for a few days.
- What **would you like to do** this evening?
- I **wouldn't like to go** on holiday alone.
- I'd **love to meet** your family.
- Would you prefer to eat** now or later?

Compare **I like** and **I would like** (**I'd like**):

- I **like playing** tennis. / I **like to play** tennis. (= I like it in general)
- I'd **like to play** tennis today. (= I want to play today)

Would mind is followed by **-ing**:

- Would you mind closing** the door, please? (not mind to close)

C I would like to have (done something)

I would like **to have done** something = I regret now that I didn't or couldn't do it:

- It's a shame we didn't see Anna. I **would like to have seen** her again.
- We'd **like to have gone** away, but we were too busy at home.

We use the same structure after **would love / would hate / would prefer**:

- Poor David! I **would hate to have been** in his position.
- I'd **love to have gone** to the party, but it was impossible.

Exercises

58.1 Write sentences about yourself. Do you like these activities? Choose from these verbs:

like / don't like love hate enjoy don't mind

- 1 (flying) I don't like flying. or I don't like to fly.
- 2 (playing cards)
- 3 (being alone)
- 4 (going to museums)
- 5 (cooking)
- 6 (getting up early)

58.2 Make sentences using -ing or to Sometimes either form is possible.

- 1 Paul lives in Berlin now. It's nice. He likes it.
(He / like / live / there) He likes living there.
- 2 Jane is a biology teacher. She likes her job
(She / like / teach / biology) She
- 3 Joe always has his camera with him and takes a lot of pictures.
(He / like / take / pictures)
- 4 I used to work in a supermarket. I didn't like it much.
(I / not / like / work / there)
- 5 Rachel is studying medicine. She likes it.
(She / like / study / medicine)
- 6 Dan is famous, but he doesn't like it.
(He / not / like / be / famous)
- 7 Jennifer is a very careful person. She doesn't take many risks.
(She / not / like / take / risks)
- 8 I don't like surprises.
(I / like / know / things / in advance)

58.3 Complete the sentences with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to In two sentences either form is possible.

- 1 It's fun to go to new places – I enjoy travelling.
- 2 'Would you like down?' 'No, thanks. I'll stand.'
- 3 The music is very loud. Would you mind it down?
- 4 How do you relax? What do you like in your spare time?
- 5 When I have to take a train, I'm always worried that I'll miss it. So I like to the station in plenty of time.
- 6 I enjoy busy. I don't like it when there's nothing to do.
- 7 I would love to your wedding, but I'm afraid I'll be away.
- 8 I don't like in this part of town. I want to move somewhere else.
- 9 Do you have a minute? I'd like to you about something.
- 10 If there's bad news and good news, I like the bad news first.
- 11 Shall we leave now, or would you prefer a little?
- 12 Steve wants to win every time. He hates

58.4 Write sentences using would ... to have (done). Use the verbs in brackets.

- 1 It's a shame I couldn't go to the party. (like) I would like to have gone to the party.
- 2 It's a shame I didn't see the programme. (like)
- 3 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate)
- 4 It's too bad I didn't meet your parents. (love)
- 5 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not / like)
- 6 We should have travelled by train. (prefer)

prefer and would rather

A prefer to ... and prefer -ing

When you say what you prefer in general, you can use **prefer to ...** or **prefer -ing**:

- I don't like cities. I **prefer to live** in the country. *or* I **prefer living** in the country.

You can say:

prefer something	to something else
prefer doing something	to doing something else rather than (doing) something else
prefer to do something	rather than (do) something else

- I **prefer** this coat **to** the other one.
- I **prefer driving to travelling** by train. *or*
I **prefer driving rather than travelling** by train.
- I **prefer to drive rather than travel** by train.
- Sarah **prefers to live** in the country **rather than** in a city.

B would prefer (I'd prefer ...)

We use **would prefer** to say what somebody wants in a specific situation (not in general):

- 'Would you **prefer** tea or coffee?' 'Coffee, please.'

We say 'would prefer **to do** something' (*not usually* would prefer doing):

- 'Shall we go by train?' '**I'd prefer to drive.**' (=I **would** prefer ...)
- '**I'd prefer to stay** at home tonight **rather than go** to the cinema.

C would rather (I'd rather ...)

I'd rather = I **would** rather. **I'd rather do** something = **I'd prefer to do** it.

We say **I'd rather** do (*not* to do). Compare:

- 'Shall we go by train?' { '**I'd rather drive.**' (*not* to drive)
 { '**I'd prefer to drive.**' }
- Which **would** you **rather do**, { Which **would** you **prefer to do**, } go to the cinema or go shopping?

The negative is '**I'd rather not ...**':

- I'm tired. I'd **rather not go** out this evening, if you don't mind.
- 'Do you want to go out this evening?' '**I'd rather not.**'

We say '**I'd rather do** one thing **than do** another':

- '**I'd rather stay** at home tonight **than go** to the cinema.

D I'd rather somebody did something

We say '**I'd rather** you **did** something' (*not* I'd rather you do):

- 'Who's going to drive, you or me?' '**I'd rather** you **drove.**' (=I would prefer this)
- 'Jack says he'll repair your bike tomorrow, OK?' '**I'd rather** he **did** it today.'
- Are you going to tell Anna what happened, or **would** you **rather** I **told** her?

We use the past (**drove**, **did** etc.) here, but the meaning is present *not* past. Compare:

- I'd rather **make** dinner now.
I'd rather **you made** dinner now. (*not* I'd rather you make)

I'd rather **you didn't** (do something) = I'd prefer you not to do it:

- '**I'd rather you didn't tell** anyone what I said.'
- 'Shall I tell Anna what happened?' '**I'd rather you didn't.**'
- 'Are you going to tell Anna what happened?' 'No. I'd **rather** she **didn't** know.'

Exercises

59.1 Which do you prefer? Write sentences using 'I prefer (something) to (something else)'.

- 1 (driving / travelling by train)

I prefer driving to travelling by train.

- 2 (basketball / football)

I prefer

- 3 (going to the cinema / watching movies at home)

I to

- 4 (being very busy / having nothing to do)

I

Now rewrite sentences 3 and 4 using rather than:

- 5 (1) I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.

or I prefer driving rather than travelling by train.

- 6 (3) I prefer

- 7 (4)

59.2 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need one word, sometimes more.

A

1 Shall we walk home?

2 Do you want to eat now?

3 Would you like to watch TV?

4 Do you want to go to a restaurant?

5 Let's go now.

6 What about a game of tennis?

7 I think we should decide now.

8 Would you like to sit down?

9 Do you want me to come with you?

B

I'd rather get a taxi.

I'd prefer to wait till later.

I'd to listen to some music.

I'd rather at home.

..... wait a few minutes.

I'd prefer for a swim.

I'd think about it for a while.

..... to stand.

I'd rather alone.

Now use the same ideas to complete these sentences using than and rather than.

- 10 (1) I'd rather get a taxi than wait for a bus.

- 11 (3) I'd rather some music

- 12 (4) I'd prefer at home

- 13 (6) I'd rather for a swim

- 14 (7) I'd prefer about it for a while

59.3 Complete the sentences using would you rather I

- 1 Are you going to make dinner or would you rather I made it ?

- 2 Are you going to pay the bill or would you rather ?

- 3 Are you going to do the shopping or ?

- 4 Are you going to phone Tina or ?

59.4 Use your own ideas (one or two words) to complete these sentences.

- 1 'Shall I tell Anna what happened?' 'No, I'd rather she didn't know.'

- 2 You can stay here if you want to, but I'd rather you with us.

- 3 I don't like this programme. I'd rather not it.

- 4 I'd rather work outdoors work in an office.

- 5 This is a private matter. I'd rather you tell anybody else.

- 6 The weather here isn't bad, but I'd rather it a little warmer.

- 7 I don't want to go to the match. I'd prefer it on TV.

- 8 'Do you mind if I open the window?' 'I'd rather you I'm feeling cold.'

- 9 I hate doing the shopping. I'd rather somebody else it.

- 10 I'd prefer to go to the beach go shopping.

Preposition (**in/for/about** etc.) + -ing

A

If a preposition (**in/for/about** etc.) is followed by a verb, the verb ends in **-ing**:

Are you interested I'm not good Kate must be fed up What are the advantages Thanks very much How Why don't you go out Amy went to work	preposition in at with of for about instead of in spite of	verb (-ing) working learning studying having inviting meeting sitting feeling	for us? languages. a car? me to your party. for lunch tomorrow? at home all the time? ill.
---	---	--	--

You can also say 'instead of **somebody** doing something', 'fed up with **people** doing something' etc.:

- I'm fed up with **people** telling me what to do.

B

We say:

before -ing, after -ing:

- Before going** out, I phoned Sarah. (not Before to go out)
- What did you do **after leaving** school?

You can also say '**Before I went** out ...' and '... **after you left** school'.

by -ing (to say *how* something happens):

- You can improve your English **by reading** more.
- She made herself ill **by** not **eating** properly.
- Many accidents are caused **by** people **driving** too fast.
- The burglars got into the house **by breaking** a window and **climbing** in.

without -ing:

- We ran ten kilometres **without stopping**.
- It was a stupid thing to say. I said it **without thinking**.
- She needs to work **without** people **disturbing** her. or ... **without being** disturbed.
- I have enough problems of my own **without having** to worry about yours.

C

to + -ing (look forward **to doing** something etc.)

We often use **to + infinitive** (**to do / to see** etc.):

- We decided **to travel** by train.
- Would you like **to meet** for lunch tomorrow?

But **to** is also a **preposition** (like **in/for/about/with** etc.). For example:

- We went from Paris **to Geneva**.
- I prefer tea **to coffee**.
- Are you looking forward **to the weekend**?

If we use a **preposition + verb**, the verb ends in **-ing**:

- I'm fed up **with travelling** by train.
- How **about going** away this weekend?

So, when **to** is a preposition and it is followed by a verb, we use **to -ing**:

- I prefer driving **to travelling** by train. (not to travel)
- Are you looking forward **to going** on holiday? (not looking forward to go)

Exercises

60.1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 Why is it useful to have a car?
What are the advantages of?
- 2 I don't intend to apply for the job.
I have no intention of
- 3 Helen has a good memory for names.
Helen is good at
- 4 You probably won't win the lottery. You have little chance.
You have little chance of
- 5 Did you get into trouble because you were late?
Did you get into trouble for
- 6 We didn't eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead.
We went to a restaurant instead of
- 7 We got into the exhibition. We didn't have to queue.
We got into the exhibition without
- 8 Amy is 90 years old, but she's fit and healthy.
Amy is fit and healthy despite

60.2 Complete the sentences using **by -ing**. Choose from these verbs:

borrow break drive press put stand

- 1 The burglars got into the house a window.
- 2 I was able to reach the top shelf on a chair.
- 3 You turn on the computer the button at the back.
- 4 Kevin got himself into financial trouble too much money.
- 5 You can put people's lives in danger too fast.
- 6 We made the room look nicer some pictures on the walls.

60.3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word. Use only one word each time.

- 1 We ran ten kilometres without
- 2 Dan left the hotel without his bill.
- 3 It's a nice morning. How about for a walk?
- 4 You need to think carefully before an important decision.
- 5 It was a long trip. We were tired after on a train for 36 hours.
- 6 I'm not looking forward to away. I'd prefer to stay here.
- 7 I was annoyed because the decision was made without anybody me.
- 8 After the same job for ten years, Ellie felt she needed a change.
- 9 We got lost because we went straight on instead of left.
- 10 I like these pictures you took. You're good at pictures.
- 11 Can you touch your toes without your knees?
- 12 We've decided to sell our car. Are you interested in it?

60.4 For each situation, write a sentence with **I'm (not) looking forward to**.

- 1 You are going on holiday next week. How do you feel?
I'm
I'm looking forward to going on holiday.
- 2 A good friend of yours is coming to visit you soon. It will be good to see her again. How do you feel?
I'm
- 3 You're going to the dentist tomorrow. You don't enjoy visits to the dentist. How do you feel?
I'm not
- 4 Rachel doesn't like school, but she's leaving next summer. How does she feel?
.....
- 5 Joe and Helen are moving to a new apartment soon. It's much nicer than where they live now. How do they feel?

be/get used to ... (I'm used to ...)

A

Study this example situation:



Lisa is American, but she lives in Britain. When she first drove a car in Britain, driving on the left was a problem for her because:

She **wasn't used to it**.

She **wasn't used to driving** on the left.
(because Americans drive on the right)

But after some time, driving on the left became easier. She **got used to driving** on the left.

Now it's no problem for Lisa:
She **is used to driving** on the left.

B**I'm used to** something = it is not new or strange for me

You can say:

be	used to	something or doing something
-----------	----------------	---

- Paul lives alone. He has lived alone for a long time, so it is not strange for him. He's **used to it**.
He **is used to living** alone.
- I bought some new shoes. They felt a little strange at first because I **wasn't used to them**.
- Our new apartment is on a busy street. I expect we'll **get used to the noise**, but at the moment it's very disturbing.
- Helen has a new job. She has to get up much earlier now than before – at 6.30. She finds this difficult because she **isn't used to getting** up so early.
- Katherine's husband is often away from home. She doesn't mind this. She's **used to him being** away.

CWe say 'be/get used to **doing** something' (*not* I'm used to do).

- Lisa is used to **driving** on the left. (*not* is used to drive)
- I'm used to **living** alone. (*not* I'm used to live)

When we say '**I am used to ...**', **to** is a preposition:

- We're not used **to** { **the noise**.
it.
living here. (*not* live here)}

Compare **to + infinitive** (**to do**, **to live** etc.):

- We don't want **to live** here.

DCompare **I am used to doing** and **I used to do**:**I am used to (doing) something** = it isn't strange or new for me:

- I'm used to **the weather** here.
- I'm used to **driving** on the left because I've lived in Britain a long time.

I used to do something = I did it regularly in the past but no longer do it. We use this only for the past (**I used ...**), not for the present. See Unit 18.

- I **used to drive** to work every day, but these days I usually go by bike.
- We **used to live** just outside the town, but now we live near the centre.

Exercises

61.1 Complete the sentences using **used to** + a suitable verb.

- 1 I'm not lonely. I don't need other people. I'm **used to being** on my own.
- 2 I don't feel good. I stayed up until 3 am. I'm not to bed so late.
- 3 Tomorrow I start a new job. I'll have to get with new people.
- 4 My feet hurt. I can't go any further. I'm not so far.
- 5 I like this part of town. I've been here a long time, so I'm here.

61.2 Read about Sarah and Jack. Complete the sentences using **used to**.

- 1 Sarah is a nurse. A year ago she started working nights. At first it was hard for her.
Sarah **wasn't used to working** nights. It took her a few months to it.
Now, after a year, it's normal for her. She nights.
- 2 Jack has to drive two hours to work every morning. Many years ago, when he first had to do this, it was hard for him and he didn't like it.
When Jack started working in this job, he driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he it. Now it's no problem for him. He two hours every morning.

61.3 What do you say in these situations? Use **I'm (not) used to ...**.

- 1 You live alone. You don't mind this. You have always lived alone.
FRIEND: Do you get lonely sometimes?
YOU: No, **I'm used to living alone**.
- 2 You sleep on the floor. It's OK for you. You have always slept on the floor.
FRIEND: Wouldn't you prefer to sleep in a bed?
YOU: No, I
- 3 You have to work long hours in your job. This is not a problem. You have always done this.
FRIEND: You have to work long hours in your job, don't you?
YOU: Yes, but I don't mind that. I
- 4 You've just moved from a village to a big city. It's busy and you don't like the crowds of people.
FRIEND: How do you like living here now?
YOU: It's different from living in a village. I

61.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences using **get/got used to**.

- 1 Some friends of yours have just moved into an apartment on a busy street. It is very noisy. They'll have to **get used to the noise**
- 2 The children got a new teacher. She was different from the teacher before her, but this wasn't a problem for the children. They soon
- 3 Kate moved from a big house to a much smaller one. She found it strange at first. She had to in a much smaller house.
- 4 Anna has lived in Britain for ten years. She didn't like the weather when she first came, and she still doesn't like it. She can't
- 5 Lee got a new job, but his new salary was much less. So he had less money. He had to

61.5 Complete the sentences using only one word each time.

- 1 Lisa had to get used to **driving** on the left.
- 2 Daniel used to a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.
- 3 I feel very full after that meal. I'm not used to so much.
- 4 I wouldn't like to share a room. I'm used to my own room.
- 5 I used to a car, but I sold it a few months ago.
- 6 When we were children, we used to swimming very often.
- 7 There used to a school here, but it was knocked down a few years ago.
- 8 I'm the boss here! I'm not used to told what to do.

Verb + preposition + -ing (succeed in -ing / insist on -ing etc.)

A

We use some verbs + preposition + object. For example:

verb + preposition + object

We talked I apologised	about for	the problem. what I said.
---	----------------------------	------------------------------

If the object is another verb, we use -ing:

verb + preposition + -ing

We talked You should apologise	about for	going to South America. not telling the truth.
---	----------------------------	---

You can use these verbs in the same way:

approve of
decide against
dream of
feel like
insist on
look forward to
succeed in
think of/about

He doesn't approve We have decided I wouldn't dream I don't feel They insisted Are you looking forward Has Paul succeeded I'm thinking	of against of like on to in of/about	swearing. moving to London. asking them for money. going out tonight. paying for the meal. going away? finding a job yet? buying a house.
--	---	--

You can also say 'approve of **somebody** doing something', 'look forward to **somebody** doing something' etc.:

- I don't approve **of people killing** animals as a sport.
- We are all looking forward **to Andy coming** home next week.

B

Some verbs can have the structure verb + object + preposition + -ing.

For example:

verb + object + preposition + -ing

accuse ... of
congratulate ... on
prevent ... from
stop ... from
suspect ... of
thank ... for

He accused We congratulated What prevented The rain didn't stop Nobody suspected I thanked	me Lisa you us the general everyone	of on from from of for	telling lies. winning the first prize. coming to see us? enjoying our holiday. being a spy. helping me.
---	--	---	--

You can say 'stop somebody **doing**' or 'stop somebody **from doing**':

- You can't **stop** me **doing** what I want. or You can't **stop** me **from doing** ...

Note this example with **not -ing**:

- He accused me of **not telling** the truth.

Some of these verbs are often used in the passive. For example:

- We **were accused of telling** lies. (or ... **accused of lying**.)
- The general **was suspected of being** a spy.

Note that we say '**apologise to somebody** for ...':

- I **apologised to them** for keeping them waiting. (not I **apologised them**)

Exercises

62.1 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

- 1 Our neighbours apologised for **making** so much noise.
- 2 I feel lazy. I don't feel like any work.
- 3 I wanted to go out alone, but Joe insisted on with me.
- 4 I'm fed up with my job. I'm thinking of something else.
- 5 We can't afford a car right now, so we've decided against one.
- 6 It took us a long time, but we finally succeeded in the problem.
- 7 I've always dreamed of a small house by the sea.
- 8 It's great that Amy and Sam are coming to visit us. I'm looking forward to them again.

62.2 Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + one of these verbs (in the correct form):

be	eat	get	go out	invite	steal
take off	tell	try	use	walk	

- 1 I don't feel **like going out** this evening. I'm too tired.
- 2 The police stopped the car because they suspected the driver it.
- 3 Our flight was delayed. Bad weather prevented the plane
- 4 My phone is very old. I'm thinking a new one.
- 5 I didn't want to hear the story but Dan insisted me anyway.
- 6 I'm getting hungry. I'm really looking forward something.
- 7 I think you should apologise to Sarah so rude.
- 8 There's a fence around the lawn to stop people on the grass.
- 9 I'm sorry I can't come to your party, but thank you very much me.
- 10 The man who has been arrested is suspected a false passport.
- 11 I did my best. Nobody can accuse me not

62.3 Complete the sentences on the right.

1



It was nice of you to help me. Thanks very much.

Kevin thanked **me for helping him**

2



I'll take you to the station. I insist.

Tom insisted Ann

3



I hear you got married. Congratulations!

Dan congratulated me

4



It was nice of you to come to see me. Thank you.

Jen thanked

5



Sorry I'm late.

Kate apologised

6



You don't care about other people.

Jane accused

there's no point in -ing, it's worth -ing etc.

A

We say:

there's no point in	it's no use	doing something
it's no good		

- There's no point in having** a car if you never use it.
- There was no point in waiting** any longer, so we left.
- It's no use worrying** about what happened. There's nothing you can do about it.
- It's no good trying** to persuade me. You won't succeed.

We say '**no point in ...**' but '**the point of ...**':

- There's **no point in** having a car.
- What's **the point of** having a car if you never use it?

B

We say:

it's worth	doing something
it's not worth	

- It's a nice town. **It's worth spending** a few days there.
- Our flight was very early in the morning, so **it wasn't worth going** to bed.

You can say that something is **worth it** or **not worth it**:

- You should spend a couple of days here. **It's worth it.**
- We didn't go to bed. **It wasn't worth it.**

You can also say that something is **worth doing**, a movie is **worth seeing** etc.:

- It's a great movie. It's **worth seeing**.
- Thieves broke into the house, but didn't take anything. There was nothing **worth stealing**.
- It's an interesting idea. It's **worth thinking** about.

C

We say:

have	trouble	doing something
	difficulty	
	a problem	

- I had no **trouble finding** a place to stay. (*not trouble to find*)
- Did you have a **problem getting** a visa?
- People sometimes have **difficulty reading** my writing.

D

We say:

spend	(time)	doing something
waste		

- He **spent** hours **trying** to repair the clock.
- I **waste** a lot of time **doing** nothing.

We also say '(be) **busy doing** something':

- She said she couldn't meet me. She was too **busy doing** other things.

EWe use **go -ing** for sports and other activities. For example:

go sailing	go swimming	go fishing	go riding	go hiking
go surfing	go scuba diving	go skiing	go jogging	go camping

- How often do you **go swimming**?
- We **went skiing** last year.
- Tom isn't here. He's **gone shopping**.
- I've never **been sailing**.

Exercises

63.1 Which goes with which?

- 1 It's a nice town.
- 2 It's an interesting idea.
- 3 It's no use standing here talking.
- 4 It's not important.
- 5 There's no point in looking for him.
- 6 It's no good apologising to me.
- 7 It's not worth arguing with him.
- 8 The hotel is a short walk from here.

- a I don't believe you're sorry.
- b We'll never find him.
- c It's not worth getting a taxi.
- d We have to do something.
- e He won't change his opinion.
- f ~~It's worth spending a few days here.~~
- g It's not worth worrying about.
- h It's worth considering.

1 f.....
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

63.2 Write sentences beginning **There's no point ...**

- 1 Why have a car if you never use it?
There's no point in having a car if you never use it.
- 2 Why work if you don't need money?
.....
- 3 Don't try to study if you feel tired.
.....
- 4 Why hurry if you have plenty of time?
.....

63.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I managed to get a visa, but it was difficult.
I had a problem *getting a visa*
- 2 I find it hard to remember people's names.
I have a problem
- 3 Lucy found a job easily. It wasn't a problem.
She had no trouble
- 4 It will be easy to get a ticket for the game.
You won't have any problems
- 5 It was easy for us to understand one another.
We had no difficulty

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

- 1 I waste a lot of time *doing* nothing.
- 2 How much time do you spend to and from work every day?
- 3 Karen is going on holiday tomorrow, so she's busy her things ready.
- 4 I waste too much time TV.
- 5 There was a beautiful view from the hill. It was worth to the top.
- 6 We need to stay calm. There's no point in angry.
- 7 Amy is learning to play the guitar. She spends a lot of time
- 8 Gary is enjoying his new job. He's busy on a new project.
- 9 I decided it wasn't worth for the job. I had no chance of getting it.
- 10 It's no good to escape. You won't be able to get out of here.

63.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from the following and put the verb in the correct form.

go riding go sailing go shopping go skiing go swimming

- 1 Ben lives by the sea and he's got a boat, so he often *goes sailing*
- 2 It was a very hot day, so we in the lake.
- 3 There's plenty of snow in the mountains, so we'll be able to
- 4 Helen has two horses. She regularly.
- 5 Dan isn't here. He There were a few things he needed to buy.

to ... , for ... and so that ...

A

We say:

- I called the restaurant **to reserve** a table.
- What do you need **to make** bread?
- We shouted **to warn** everybody of the danger.
- This letter is **to confirm** the decisions we made at our meeting last week.
- The president has a team of bodyguards **to protect** him.

In these examples **to ... (to reserve ... / to make ... etc.)** tells us the *purpose* of something: why somebody does something, has something, needs something etc., or why something exists.

B

We say 'a place **to park**', 'something **to eat**', 'work **to do**' etc. :

- It's hard to find **a place to park** in the city centre. (= a place where you can park)
- Would you like **something to eat**? (= something that you can eat)
- Do you have **much work to do**? (= work that you must do)

Sometimes there is a preposition (**on**, **with** etc.) after the verb:

- Is there **a chair to sit on**? (= a chair that I can sit on)
- I get lonely if there's **nobody to talk to**.
- I need **something to open** this bottle **with**.

We also say **money/time/chance/opportunity/energy/courage** (etc.) **to** do something:

- They gave us **money to buy** food.
- Do you have **much opportunity to practise** your English?
- I need **a few days to think** about your proposal.

C

Compare **for** ... and **to** ...

for + noun

- We stopped **for petrol**.
- I had to run **for the bus**.

to + verb

- We stopped **to get** petrol.
- I had to run **to catch the bus**.

You can say '**for** somebody **to do** something':

- There weren't any chairs **for us to sit on**, so we sat on the floor.

We use **for (do)ing** to say what something is used for:

- This brush is **for washing** the dishes.

But we do not use **for -ing** to say why somebody does something:

- I went into the kitchen **to wash** the dishes. (*not for washing*)

You can use **What ... for?** to ask about purpose:

- What** is this switch **for**? (= what is it used for?)
- What** did you do that **for**? (= why did you do that?)

D**so that**

We use **so that** (*not to ...*) especially with **can/could** and **will/would**:

- She's learning English **so that** she **can** study in Canada.
- We moved to London **so that** we **could** see our friends more often.
- I hurried **so that I wouldn't** be late.
(= because I didn't want to be late)

You can leave out **that**. So you can say:

- I hurried **so that** I wouldn't be late. *or* I hurried **so** I wouldn't be late.

Exercises

64.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make sentences with **to ...**.

A

- 1** I shouted
- 2** I opened the box
- 3** I moved to a new apartment
- 4** I couldn't find a knife
- 5** I called the police
- 6** I called the hotel
- 7** I employed an assistant

B

- I wanted to be nearer my friends
- I wanted someone to help me with my work
- I wanted to report the accident
- I wanted to warn people of the danger
- I wanted to see what was in it
- I wanted to chop the onions
- I wanted to find out if they had any rooms free

1 I shouted to warn people of the danger.

2 I opened the box.

3 I

4

5

6

7

64.2 Complete these sentences using **to + a suitable verb**.

- The president has a team of bodyguards **to protect** him.
- I don't have enough time all the things I have to do.
- I came home by taxi. I didn't have the energy
- Would you like something ? Coffee? Tea?
- Can you give me a bag these things in?
- There will be a meeting next week the problem.
- Do you need a visa to the United States?
- I saw Helen at the party, but I didn't have a chance to her.
- I need some new clothes. I don't have anything nice
- They've passed their exams. They're going to have a party
- I can't do all this work alone. I need somebody me.
- Why are you so scared? There's nothing afraid of.

64.3 Put in **to or for**.

- We stopped **for** petrol.
- We'll need time make a decision.
- I went to the dentist a check-up.
- He's very old. He needs somebody take care of him.

- 5 Can you lend me money a taxi?
- 6 Do you wear glasses reading?
- 7 I put on my glasses read the letter.
- 8 I wish we had a garden the children play in.

64.4 Make one sentence from two, using **so that**.

- I hurried. I didn't want to be late.
I hurried **so that I wouldn't be late**.
- I wore warm clothes. I didn't want to get cold.
I wore warm clothes
- I gave Mark my phone number. I wanted him to be able to contact me.
I gave Mark my phone number
- We spoke very quietly. We didn't want anybody else to hear us.
We spoke very quietly nobody else
- Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
Please arrive early
- We made a list of things to do. We didn't want to forget anything.
We made a list of things to do
- I slowed down. I wanted the car behind me to be able to overtake.
I slowed down

Adjective + to ...

A

hard to understand, interesting to talk to etc.

Compare sentences (a) and (b):

- James doesn't speak clearly.

(a) It is hard to understand **him**.
(b) **He** is hard to understand.

Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Note that we say:

- He is hard **to understand**. (not He is hard to understand him)

We use other adjectives in the same way. For example:

easy	nice	safe	cheap	exciting	impossible
difficult	good	dangerous	expensive	interesting	

- Do you think it is **safe to drink this water**?
Do you think this water is **safe to drink**? (not to drink it)
- The exam questions were very hard. It was **impossible to answer them**.
The exam questions were very hard. They were **impossible to answer**.
(not to answer them)
- Nicola has lots of interesting ideas. It's **interesting to talk** to her.
Nicola is **interesting to talk to**. (not to talk to her)

We also use this structure with *adjective + noun*:

- This is a **difficult question to answer**. (not to answer it)

B

nice of (you) to ...

We say 'It's **nice of** somebody **to ...**':

- It was **nice of** you **to take** me to the airport. Thank you very much.

We use other adjectives in the same way. For example:

kind	generous	careless	silly	stupid	inconsiderate	unfair	typical
------	----------	----------	-------	--------	---------------	--------	---------

- It's **silly of Ruth to give** up her job when she needs the money.
- I think it was **unfair of him to criticise** me.

C

sorry to ... / surprised to ... etc.

You can use *adjective + to ...* to say how somebody reacts to something:

- I'm **sorry to hear** that your mother isn't well.

We use other adjectives in the same way. For example:

glad	pleased	relieved	surprised	amazed	sad	disappointed
------	---------	----------	-----------	--------	-----	--------------

- Was Julia **surprised to see** you?
- It was a long and tiring journey. We were **glad to get** home.

D

You can use **to ...** after **the next / the last / the only / the first / the second** (etc.):

- The next train to arrive** at platform 4 will be the 10.50 to Liverpool.
- Everybody was late except me. I was **the only one to arrive** on time.
- If I have any more news, you will be **the first to know**. (= the first person to know.)

E

You can say that something is **sure/likely/bound to** happen:

- Carla is a very good student. She's **bound to pass** the exam. (= she is sure to pass)
- It's possible I'll win the lottery one day, but it's not **likely to happen**. (= it's not probable)

Exercises

65.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 It's hard to understand some things. | Some things <i>are hard to understand</i> |
| 2 It was difficult to open the window. | The window |
| 3 It's impossible to translate some words. | Some words |
| 4 It's expensive to maintain a car. | A |
| 5 It's not safe to eat this meat. | This |
| 6 It's easy to get to my house from here. | My |

65.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 I couldn't answer the question.
(difficult question / answer) | <i>It was a difficult question to answer</i> |
| 2 It's a very common mistake.
(easy mistake / make) | It's |
| 3 I like living in this town.
(great place / live) | |
| 4 I wonder why she said that.
(strange thing / say) | |

65.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 It's nice of Dan and Kate *to invite* me to their party.
- 2 I've been travelling a long time. Now I'm to be back home.
- 3 I heard about Tom's accident. I was relieved that he's OK.
- 4 It was nice to remember my birthday.
- 5 Let me know if you need any assistance. I'd be very pleased you.
- 6 I thought James was about 25. I was to discover he was 40.
- 7 It was inconsiderate of our neighbours so much noise.
- 8 My interview went well. I was disappointed to be offered the job.
- 9 It's of me to worry so much about things that are not important.

**to hear
to help
to invite
to make
not
of you
silly
amazed
glad**

65.4 Complete the sentences. Use: **the first the second the last the only**

- 1 Nobody spoke before me. I was *the first person to speak*
- 2 Everybody else arrived before Paul.
Paul was
- 3 Emily passed the exam. All the other students failed.
Emily
- 4 I complained to the manager. Another customer had already complained.
I
- 5 Neil Armstrong walked on the moon in 1969. Nobody had done this before him.
Neil Armstrong

65.5 Complete the sentences using the words in brackets and a suitable verb.

- 1 Carla is a very good student.
(she / bound / pass) *She's bound to pass* the exam.
- 2 I'm not surprised you're tired after your trip.
(you / bound / tired) after such a long journey.
- 3 Andy has a very bad memory.
(he / sure / forget) anything you tell him.
- 4 I don't think you'll need an umbrella.
(it / not / likely / rain)
- 5 The holidays begin this weekend.
(there / sure / be) a lot of traffic on the roads.

to ... (afraid to do) and preposition + -ing (afraid of -ing)

A afraid to (do) and afraid of (do)ing

I am **afraid to do** something =

I don't want to do it because it is dangerous or the result could be bad.

- This part of town is dangerous. People are **afraid to walk** here at night.
(= they don't walk here at night because it is dangerous)
- James was **afraid to tell** his parents what had happened.
(= he didn't tell them because he thought they would be angry)

I am **afraid of** something **happening** =

I am afraid that something bad will happen.

- The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were **afraid of falling**.
(= we were afraid that we would fall – *not* afraid to fall)
- I don't like dogs. I'm always **afraid of being** bitten.
(= I'm afraid that I will be bitten – *not* afraid to be bitten)

So, you are **afraid to do something** because you are **afraid of something happening** as a result:

- I was **afraid to go** near the dog because I was **afraid of being** bitten.

B interested in (do)ing and interested to (do)

I'm **interested in doing** something = I'm thinking of doing it, I would like to do it:

- Let me know if you're **interested in joining** the club. (*not* to join)
- I tried to sell my car, but nobody was **interested in buying** it. (*not* to buy)

I was **interested to hear/see/know** something = it was interesting for me. For example:

- I was **interested to hear** that Tanya left her job.
(= I heard this and it was interesting for me)
- I'll ask Mike for his opinion. I would be **interested to know** what he thinks.
(= it would be interesting for me to know what he thinks)

This structure is the same as **surprised to ... / glad to ...** etc. (see Unit 65C):

- I was **surprised to hear** that Tanya left her job.

C sorry for ... and sorry to ...

We use **sorry for** (doing) to apologise for something:

- I'm **sorry for shouting** at you yesterday. (*not* sorry to shout)

You can also say:

- I'm **sorry I shouted** at you yesterday.

We use **sorry to** ... to say that we regret something that happens:

- I'm **sorry to hear** that Nicky lost her job. (*not* sorry for)
- I've enjoyed my stay here. I'll be **sorry to leave**.

We also say '**I'm sorry to** ...' to apologise at the time we do something:

- I'm **sorry to bother** you, but I need to ask you a question.

D

We say:

I want to (do), I'd like to (do)	but	I'm thinking of (do)ing
I hope to (do)		I dream of (do)ing
I failed to (do)		I succeeded in (do)ing
I allowed them to (do)		I prevented them from (do)ing
I plan to (do)		I'm looking forward to (do)ing
I promised to (do)		I insisted on (do)ing



Verb + **to** ... → Units 54–55 Verb + preposition + **-ing** → Unit 62 **sorry to** ... → Unit 65C
 Adjective + preposition → Units 130–131 **sorry about/for** → Unit 130

Exercises

66.1 Write sentences using **afraid to ... or afraid of -ing**.

- 1 The streets here are not safe at night.
(a lot of people / afraid / go / out) **A lot of people are afraid to go out.**.....
- 2 We walked very carefully along the icy path.
(we / afraid / fall) **We were afraid of falling.**.....
- 3 I don't usually carry my passport with me.
(I / afraid / lose / it)
- 4 I thought she would be angry if I told her what had happened.
(I / afraid / tell / her)
- 5 We ran to the station.
(we / afraid / miss / our train)
- 6 In the middle of the film there was a very horrifying scene.
(we / afraid / look)
- 7 The vase was very valuable, so I held it carefully.
(I / afraid / drop / it)
- 8 If there's anything you want to know, you can ask me.
(don't / afraid / ask)
- 9 I was worried because we didn't have much petrol.
(I / afraid / run out of petrol)

66.2 Complete the sentences using **interested in ... or interested to ...**. Choose from these verbs:

buy hear know look start study

- 1 I'm trying to sell my car, but nobody is **interested in buying** it.
- 2 Nicola is her own business.
- 3 I saw Joe recently. You'll be that he's getting married soon.
- 4 I didn't enjoy school. I wasn't
- 5 I went to a public meeting to discuss the plans for a new road. I was how people felt about the project.
- 6 Paul doesn't enjoy sightseeing. He's not at old buildings.

66.3 Complete the sentences using **sorry for ... or sorry to ...**. Use the verb in brackets.

- 1 I'm **sorry to bother** you, but I need to ask you something. (bother)
- 2 We were that you can't come to the wedding. (hear)
- 3 I'm bad things about you. I didn't mean what I said. (say)
- 4 It's a shame Alan is leaving the company. I'll be him go. (see)
- 5 I'm so much noise last night. (make)

66.4 Complete the sentences in each group using the verb in brackets.

- | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---------|
| 1 | a | We wanted to leave the building. | } | (leave) |
| | b | We weren't allowed the building. | | |
| | c | We were prevented the building. | | |
| 2 | a | Sam and Chris hoped the problem. | } | (solve) |
| | b | Sam failed the problem. | | |
| | c | Chris succeeded the problem. | | |
| 3 | a | I'm thinking away next week. | } | (go) |
| | b | I'm planning away next week. | | |
| | c | I'd like away next week. | | |
| | d | I'm looking forward away next week. | | |
| 4 | a | Helen wanted me lunch. | } | (buy) |
| | b | Helen insisted me lunch. | | |
| | c | Helen promised me lunch. | | |
| | d | Helen wouldn't dream me lunch. | | |

see somebody do and see somebody doing

A

Study this example situation:

Tom got into his car and drove off. You saw this.
You can say:

- I saw Tom **get** into his car and **drive** off.

We say 'I saw him **do** something' (= he did it and I saw this). In the same way, you can say:



hear listen to watch feel	somebody do something something happen
------------------------------------	---

- I didn't **hear** you **come** in. (you came in – I didn't hear this)
- Lisa suddenly **felt** somebody **touch** her on the shoulder.

B

Study this example situation:

Yesterday you saw Kate. She was waiting for a bus.
You can say:

- I saw Kate **waiting** for a bus.

We say 'I saw her **doing** something' (= she was doing it and I saw this). In the same way, you can say:



hear listen to watch feel smell find	somebody doing something something happening
---	---

- I could **hear** it **raining**. (it was raining – I could hear it)
- Listen to the birds **singing**!
- Can you **smell** something **burning**?
- We looked for Paul and finally we **found** him **sitting** under a tree **eating** an apple.

C

Study the difference in meaning:

I **saw him do** something = he **did** something and I saw this.

I saw the complete action from start to finish:

- He **jumped** over the wall and **ran** away. I saw this.
→ I **saw** him **jump** over the wall and **run** away.
- They **went** out. I heard this. → I **heard** them **go** out.

I **saw him doing** something = he **was doing** something and I saw this.

I saw him *in the middle* of doing something (not from start to finish):

- I saw Tom as I drove past in my car. He **was walking** along the street.
→ I **saw** Tom **walking** along the street.
- I heard them. They **were talking**. → I **heard** them **talking**.

Sometimes the difference is not important and you can use either form:

- I've never seen her **dance**. or I've never seen her **dancing**.

Exercises

67.1 Complete the sentences with the verb in the correct form:

- 1 a Tom doesn't have the keys. He them to Lisa. (give)
b Tom doesn't have the keys. I saw him them to Lisa. (give)
- 2 a A car outside our house, and then it drove off again. (stop)
b We heard a car outside our house, and then it drove off again. (stop)
- 3 a Ben gave me the envelope and watched me it. (open)
b Ben gave me the envelope and I it. (open)
- 4 a Sarah is Canadian. I heard her she's from Toronto. (say)
b Sarah is Canadian. She she's from Toronto. (say)
- 5 a A man over in the street, so we went to help him. (fall)
b We saw a man over in the street, so we went to help him. (fall)

67.2 You and a friend saw, heard or smelt something. Complete the sentences.


- 1 We saw Kate waiting for a bus
- 2 We saw Clare in a restaurant.
- 3 We saw David and Helen
- 4 We could smell something
- 5 We could hear.....
- 6

67.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs (in the correct form):

crawl cry explode get happen lie put ride say slam stand tell

- 1 The bus stopped at the bus stop but I didn't see anybody off.
- 2 I saw two people outside your house. I don't know who they were.
- 3 I thought I heard somebody 'Hi', so I turned round.
- 4 There was an accident outside my house, but I didn't see it
- 5 Listen. Can you hear a baby ?
- 6 I know you took the key. I saw you it in your pocket.
- 7 We listened to the old man his story from beginning to end.
- 8 Everybody heard the bomb It was a tremendous noise.
- 9 Oh! I can feel something up my leg. It must be an insect.
- 10 I looked out of the window and saw Dan his bike along the road.
- 11 I heard somebody a door in the middle of the night. It woke me up.
- 12 When I got home, I found a cat on the kitchen table.

-ing clauses (He hurt his knee **playing football.**)

A

Study this example:

Kate is in the kitchen. She's making coffee.

You can say:

- Kate is in the kitchen **making coffee.**
- ing clause



You can use -ing in this way when two things happen at the same time:

- A man ran out of the house **shouting.**
(= he ran out of the house *and* he was shouting)
- Do something! Don't just stand there **doing nothing!**
- Be careful **crossing the road.**

We also use -ing when one action happens during another action:

- Joe hurt his knee **playing football.** (= while he was playing)
- Did you cut yourself **shaving?** (= while you were shaving)

You can also say '**while doing** something' and '**when doing** something':

- Joe hurt his knee **while playing** football.
- Be careful **when crossing** the road. (= when you are crossing)

B

When one action happens before something else, we use **having (done)** for the first action:

- Having found** a hotel, we looked for somewhere to eat.
- Having finished** her work, she went home.

You can also say **after -ing**:

- After finishing** her work, she went home.

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.

When we begin a sentence with '**Having** (done something)' or '**After** (doing something)', we write a comma (,) after this part of the sentence:

- Having finished her work**, she went home.

↑
comma

C

You can also use -ing to explain something, or to say why somebody does something.

The sentence usually begins with -ing:

- Feeling tired**, I went to bed early. (= because I felt tired)
- Being unemployed**, he doesn't have much money. (= because he is unemployed)
- Not having** a car, she finds it difficult to get around.
(= because she doesn't have a car)

We use **having (done)** for something that is complete before something else:

- Having seen** the film twice, I didn't want to see it again.
(= because I had seen it twice)

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.

When we begin a sentence with **-ing (Feeling tired ... / Not knowing ... / Having seen ... etc.)**, we write a comma (,) after this part of the sentence.

- Not knowing what to do**, I called my friend to ask her advice.

Exercises

68.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make sentences. Use -ing.

- A
- 1 Kate was in the kitchen.
 - 2 Amy was sitting in an armchair.
 - 3 Nicola opened the door carefully.
 - 4 Sarah went out.
 - 5 Lisa worked in Rome for two years.
 - 6 Anna walked around the town.

- B
- She was trying not to make a noise.
 - She looked at the sights and took pictures.
 - She said she would be back in an hour.
 - She was reading a book.
 - ~~She was making coffee.~~
 - She was teaching English.

- 1 Kate was in the kitchen making coffee.
- 2 Amy was sitting in an armchair
- 3 Nicola
- 4
- 5
- 6

68.2 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 Joe (knee / football / his / hurt / playing) Joe hurt his knee playing football.
- 2 I (in the rain / wet / got / very / walking)
I
- 3 Laura (to work / had / driving / an accident)
Laura
- 4 My friend (off / slipped / a bus / getting / and fell)
My friend
- 5 Emily (trying / her back / a heavy box / to lift / hurt)
Emily
- 6 Two people were (to put out / by smoke / the fire / overcome / trying)
Two people were

68.3 Complete the sentences. Use Having + a suitable verb.

- 1 Having finished her work, Katherine left the office and went home.
- 2 our tickets, we went into the theatre and took our seats.
- 3 the problem, I think we'll be able to find a solution.
- 4 he was hungry, Joe now says he doesn't want to eat anything.
- 5 his job recently, James is now unemployed.
- 6 most of his life in London, Sam has now gone to live in a small village in the country.

68.4 Make one sentence from two. Begin with -ing or Not -ing. Sometimes you need to begin with Having Don't forget the comma (,).

- 1 I felt tired. So I went to bed early.
Feeling tired, I went to bed early.
- 2 I thought they might be hungry. So I offered them something to eat.
..... I offered them something to eat.
- 3 Robert is a vegetarian. So he doesn't eat any kind of meat.
..... Robert doesn't eat any kind of meat.
- 4 I didn't have a phone. So I had no way of contacting anyone.
..... I had no way of contacting anyone.
- 5 Sarah has travelled a lot. So she knows a lot about other countries.
..... Sarah knows a lot about other countries.
- 6 I wasn't able to speak the local language. So I had trouble communicating.
..... I had trouble communicating.
- 7 We had spent nearly all our money. So we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel.
..... we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel.

Countable and uncountable 1

A

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*:

Countable

- I eat **a banana** every day.
- I like **bananas**.



Banana is a *countable* noun.

A countable noun can be singular (**banana**) or plural (**bananas**).

We can use numbers with countable nouns. So we can say **one banana**, **two bananas** etc.

Examples of nouns usually countable:

- Kate was singing **a song**.
- There's **a nice beach** near here.
- Do you have **a ten-pound note**?
- It wasn't your fault. It was **an accident**.
- There are **no batteries** in the radio.
- We don't have enough **cups**.

Uncountable

- I eat **rice** every day.
- I like **rice**.



Rice is an *uncountable* noun.

An uncountable noun has only one form (**rice**). There is no plural.

We cannot use numbers with uncountable nouns. We cannot say 'one rice', 'two rices' etc.

Examples of nouns usually uncountable:

- Kate was listening to **music**.
- There's **sand** in my shoes.
- Do you have any **money**?
- It wasn't your fault. It was bad **luck**.
- There is **no electricity** in this house.
- We don't have enough **water**.

B

You can use **a/an** with singular countable nouns:

a beach **a student** **an umbrella**

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without **a/the/my** etc.):

- Do you want **a banana**?
(not want banana)
- There's been **an accident**.
(not There's been accident)

You can use *plural* countable nouns alone:

- I like **bananas**. (= bananas in general)
- Accidents** can be prevented.

We do not use **a/an** with uncountable nouns. We do not say 'a sand', 'a music', 'a rice'.

But you can often use **a ... of**. For example:
a bowl / a packet / a grain of rice

You can use uncountable nouns alone (without **the/my/some** etc.):

- I eat **rice** every day.
- There's **blood** on your shirt.
- Can you hear **music**?

C

You can use **some** and **any** with plural countable nouns:

- We sang **some songs**.
- Did you buy **any apples**?

We use **many** and **few** with plural countable nouns:

- We didn't take **many pictures**.
- I have a **few things** to do.

You can use **some** and **any** with uncountable nouns:

- We listened to **some music**.
- Did you buy **any apple juice**?

We use **much** and **little** with uncountable nouns:

- We didn't do **much shopping**.
- I have a **little work** to do.

Exercises

69.1 Some of these sentences need **a/an**. Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 Joe goes everywhere by bike. He doesn't have car. He doesn't have a car.
OK.....
- 2 Helen was listening to music when I arrived.
- 3 We went to very nice restaurant last weekend.
- 4 I brush my teeth with toothpaste.
- 5 I use toothbrush to brush my teeth.
- 6 Can you tell me if there's bank near here?
- 7 My brother works for insurance company.
- 8 I don't like violence.
- 9 When we were in Rome, we stayed in big hotel.
- 10 If you have problem, I'll try and help you.
- 11 I like your suggestion. It's interesting idea.
- 12 Can you smell paint?
- 13 I like volleyball. It's good game.
- 14 Lisa doesn't usually wear jewellery.
- 15 Jane was wearing beautiful necklace.
- 16 Does this city have airport?

69.2 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use **a/an** where necessary.

-accident	biscuit	blood	coat	decision	electricity
ice	interview	key	moment	-music	question

- 1 The road is closed. There's been an accident
- 2 Listen! Can you hear music
- 3 I couldn't get into the house. I didn't have
- 4 It's very warm today. Why are you wearing ?
- 5 Would you like in your drink?
- 6 Are you hungry? Have !
- 7 Our lives would be very difficult without
- 8 Excuse me, can I ask you ?
- 9 I'm not ready yet. Can you wait , please?
- 10 The heart pumps through the body.
- 11 We can't delay much longer. We have to make soon.
- 12 I had for a job yesterday. It went quite well.

69.3 Complete the sentences using the following words:

air	day	friend	joke	language	meat
patience	people	-picture	queue	space	umbrella

Sometimes the word needs to be plural (**-s**), and sometimes you need to use **a/an**.

- 1 I had a camera with me, but I didn't take any pictures
- 2 There are seven in a week.
- 3 A vegetarian is a person who doesn't eat
- 4 Outside the cinema there was of people waiting to see the film.
- 5 I'm not good at telling
- 6 Last night I went out with some of mine.
- 7 There were very few in town today. The streets were almost empty.
- 8 I'm going out for a walk. I need some fresh
- 9 Paul always wants things quickly. He doesn't have much
- 10 I think it's going to rain. Do you have I could borrow?
- 11 How many can you speak?
- 12 Our flat is very small. We don't have much

Countable and uncountable 2

A

Many nouns are sometimes countable, and sometimes uncountable. Usually there is a difference in meaning. Compare:

Countable

- Did you hear **a noise** just now?
(= a specific noise)
- I bought **a paper** to read.
(= a newspaper)
- There's **a hair** in my soup!
(= one single hair)
- This is **a nice room**.
(= a room in a house)
- I had some interesting **experiences** while I was travelling.
(= things that happened to me)
- Enjoy your trip. Have **a great time!**

Uncountable

- I can't work here. There's too much **noise**. (= noise in general)
- I need **some paper** to write on.
(= material for writing on)
- You've got very long **hair**. (not hairs)
(= all the hair on your head)
- You can't sit here. There isn't **room**.
(= space)
- I was offered the job because I had a lot of **experience**. (not experiences)
(= experience of that type of job)
- I can't wait. I don't have **time**.

Coffee/tea/juice/beer etc. (drinks) are normally uncountable:

- I don't like **coffee** very much.

But you can say **a coffee** (= a cup of coffee), **two coffees** (= two cups) etc. :

- Two coffees** and **an orange juice**, please.

B

These nouns are usually uncountable:

accommodation	behaviour	damage	luck	permission	traffic
advice	bread	furniture	luggage	progress	weather
baggage	chaos	information	news	scenery	work

We do not normally use **a/an** with these nouns:

- I'm going to buy **some bread**. or ... **a loaf of bread**. (not a bread)
- Enjoy your holiday! I hope you have good **weather**. (not a good weather)

These nouns are not usually plural (so we do not say 'breads', 'furnitures' etc.):

- Where are you going to put all your **furniture**? (not furnitures)
- Let me know if you need more **information**. (not informations)

News is uncountable, not plural:

- The **news was** unexpected. (not The news were)

Travel (*noun*) means 'travelling in general' (uncountable). We do not say 'a travel' to mean **a trip** or **a journey**:

- They spend a lot of money on **travel**.
- We had a very good **trip/journey**. (not a good travel)

Compare these countable and uncountable nouns:

Countable

- I'm looking for **a job**.
- What **a beautiful view**!
- It's **a nice day** today.
- We had a lot of **bags**.
- These chairs** are mine.
- That's **a good suggestion**.
- There were a lot of **cars**.

Uncountable

- I'm looking for **work**. (not a work)
- What beautiful **scenery**!
- It's nice **weather** today.
- We had a lot of **baggage/luggage**.
- This furniture** is mine.
- That's good **advice**.
- There **was** a lot of **traffic**.

Exercises

70.1 Which is correct?

- 1 a The engine is making strange noise / a strange noise. What is it? (a strange noise is correct)
b We live near a busy road so there's a lot of noise / there are a lot of noises.
- 2 a Light / A light comes from the sun.
b I thought there was somebody in the house because there was light / a light on inside.
- 3 a I was in a hurry this morning. I didn't have time / a time for breakfast.
b We really enjoyed our holiday. We had great time / a great time.
- 4 a Can I have glass of water / a glass of water, please?
b Be careful. The window has been broken and there's broken glass / a broken glass on the floor.
- 5 a We stayed at a hotel. We had very nice room / a very nice room.
b We have a big garage. There's room / a room for two cars.

70.2 Which is correct?

- 1 Did you have nice weather / a nice weather when you were away? (nice weather is correct)
- 2 We were very unfortunate. We had bad luck / a bad luck.
- 3 Our travel / journey from Paris to Moscow by train was very tiring.
- 4 When the fire alarm rang, there was complete chaos / a complete chaos.
- 5 Bad news don't / doesn't make people happy.
- 6 There's some lovely scenery / a lovely scenery in this part of the country.
- 7 I like my job, but it's very hard work / a very hard work.
- 8 I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of paper / papers.
- 9 The trip took a long time. There was heavy traffic / a heavy traffic.
- 10 Your hair is / Your hairs are too long. You should have it / them cut.

70.3 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use the plural (-s) where necessary.

advice	chair	damage	experience	experience
furniture	hair	<u>luggage</u>	permission	progress

- 1 We didn't have much luggage – just two small bags.
- 2 We have no , not even a bed or a table.
- 3 There is room for everybody to sit down. There are plenty of
- 4 Who is that woman with short ? Do you know her?
- 5 Carla's English is better than it was. She's made good
- 6 If you want to take pictures here, you need to ask for
- 7 I didn't know what I should do, so I asked Chris for
- 8 I don't think Dan should get the job. He doesn't have enough
- 9 Kate has done many interesting things. She could write a book about her
- 10 The caused by the storm will cost a lot to repair.

70.4 What do you say in these situations? Use the word in brackets in your sentence.

- 1 Your friends have just arrived at the station. You can't see any cases or bags. You ask:
(luggage) Do you have any luggage ?
- 2 You go to a tourist office. You want to know about places to visit in the town.
(information) I'd like
- 3 You are a student. You want your teacher to advise you about which courses to do. You say:
(advice) Can you give ?
- 4 You applied for a job and you've just heard that you were successful. You call Tom and say:
(good news) Hi, Tom. I I got the job!
- 5 You are at the top of a mountain. You can see a very long way. It's beautiful. You say:
(view) It , isn't it?
- 6 You look out of the window. The weather is horrible: cold, wet and windy. You say:
(weather) What !

Countable nouns with **a/an** and **some**

A

Countable nouns can be *singular* or *plural*:

a dog	a child	the evening	this party	an umbrella
dogs	some children	the evenings	these parties	two umbrellas

Before singular countable nouns you can use **a/an**:

- Bye! Have **a nice evening**.
- Do you need **an umbrella**?

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without **a/the/my** etc.):

- She never wears **a hat**. (*not wears hat*)
- Be careful of **the dog**.
- What **a beautiful day**!
- Did you hurt **your leg**?

B

We use **a/an** ... to say what kind of thing something is, or what kind of person somebody is:

- That's a **nice table**.

In the plural we use the noun alone (*not some* ...):

- Those are **nice chairs**. (*not some nice chairs*)

Compare singular and plural:

- A dog is **an animal**.
- I'm **an optimist**.
- My father is **a doctor**.
- Jane is **a really nice person**.
- What **a lovely dress**!

- Dogs are **animals**.
- We're **optimists**.
- My parents are both **doctors**.
- Jane and Ben are **really nice people**.
- What **awful shoes**!

We say that somebody has **a long nose** / **a nice face** / **blue eyes** / **long fingers** etc. :

- Jack has a long **nose**. (*not the long nose*)

- Jack has **blue eyes**. (*not the blue eyes*)

We use **a/an** when we say what somebody's job is:

- Sandra is **a nurse**. (*not Sandra is nurse*)
- Would you like to be **an English teacher**?

C

You can use **some** with plural countable nouns. We use **some** in two ways.

(1) **some** = a number (of) / a few (of) / a pair (of):

- I've seen **some good movies** recently. (*not I've seen good movies*)
- Some friends** of mine are coming to stay at the weekend.
- I need **some new sunglasses**. (= a new pair of sunglasses)

Often you can say the same thing with or without **some**. For example:

- I need **(some) new clothes**.
- The room was empty apart from a table and **(some) chairs**.

Do not use **some** when you are talking about things in general (see Unit 75):

- I love **bananas**. (*not some bananas*)
- My aunt is a writer. She writes **books**. (*not some books*)

(2) **some** = some but not all:

- Some children** learn very quickly. (but not all children)
- Tomorrow there will be rain in **some places**, but most of the country will be dry.

Exercises

71.1 What are these things? Choose from the box and write a sentence.

- 1 an eagle
- 2 a pigeon, a duck and a penguin
- 3 carrots and onions
- 4 a tulip
- 5 Earth, Mars and Jupiter
- 6 chess
- 7 a hammer, a saw and a screwdriver
- 8 the Nile, the Rhine and the Mekong
- 9 a mosquito
- 10 Hindi, Arabic and Swahili

It's a bird.
They're birds.
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

bird(s)
flower(s)
game(s)
insect(s)
language(s)
planet(s)
river(s)
tool(s)
vegetable(s)

71.2 Read about what these people do. What are their jobs? Choose from:

chef	interpreter	journalist	nurse	plumber	surgeon	tour guide	waiter
-------------	--------------------	-------------------	--------------	----------------	----------------	-------------------	---------------

- 1 Sarah looks after patients in hospital. She's a nurse.
- 2 Gary works in a restaurant. He brings the food to the tables. He's a waiter.
- 3 Jane writes articles for a newspaper. She's a journalist.
- 4 Kevin works in a hospital. He operates on people. He's a surgeon.
- 5 Jonathan cooks in a restaurant. He's a chef.
- 6 Dave installs and repairs water pipes. He's a plumber.
- 7 Anna shows visitors round her city and tells them about it. She's a tour guide.
- 8 Lisa translates what people are saying from one language into another, so that they can understand each other. She's an interpreter.

71.3 Which is right?

- 1 Most of my friends are students / some students. (students is correct)
- 2 Are you careful driver / a careful driver?
- 3 I went to the library and borrowed books / some books.
- 4 Mark works in a bookshop. He sells books / some books.
- 5 I've been walking for hours. I've got sore feet / some sore feet.
- 6 I don't feel very well. I've got sore throat / a sore throat.
- 7 What lovely present / a lovely present? Thank you very much.
- 8 I met students / some students in a cafe yesterday. They were from China.
- 9 It might rain. Don't go out without umbrella / without an umbrella.
- 10 People / Some people learn languages more easily than others.

71.4 Put in **a/an** or **some** where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 I've seen some good movies recently.
- 2 Are you feeling all right? Do you have a headache?
- 3 I know lots of people. Most of them are - students.
- 4 When I was child, I used to be very shy.
- 5 birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.
- 6 Would you like to be actor?
- 7 Questions, questions, questions! You're always asking questions!
- 8 I didn't expect to see you. What surprise!
- 9 Do you like staying in hotels?
- 10 Tomorrow is a holiday. shops will be open, but most of them will be closed.
- 11 Those are nice shoes. Where did you get them?
- 12 You need visa to visit countries, but not all of them.
- 13 Kate is teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
- 14 I don't believe him. He's liar. He's always telling lies.

a/an and the

A

Study this example:

I had **a sandwich** and **an apple** for lunch.

The sandwich wasn't very good, but **the apple** was nice.



JOE

Joe says '**a sandwich**', '**an apple**' because this is the first time he talks about them.

Joe now says '**the sandwich**', '**the apple**' because we know which sandwich and which apple he means – **the sandwich** and **the apple** he had for lunch.

Compare **a** and **the** in these examples:

- A man** and **a woman** were sitting opposite me. **The man** was American, but I think **the woman** was British.
- When we were on holiday, we stayed at **a hotel**. Sometimes we ate at **the hotel** and sometimes we went to **a restaurant**.

BWe use **the** when we are thinking of a specific thing. Compare **a/an** and **the**:

- Tim sat down on **a chair**. (maybe one of many chairs in the room)
- Tim sat down on **the chair nearest the door**. (a specific chair)
- Do you have **a car**? (not a specific car)
- I cleaned **the car** yesterday. (= my car)

We use **a/an** when we say what kind of thing or person we mean. Compare:

- We stayed at **a very cheap hotel**. (a type of hotel)
- The hotel where we stayed** was very cheap. (a specific hotel)

CWe use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example, in a room we talk about **the light / the floor / the ceiling / the door / the carpet** etc.:

- Can you turn off **the light**, please? (= the light in this room)
- I took a taxi to **the station**. (= the station in that town)
- (in a shop) I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please. (= the manager of this shop)

We also say '(go to) **the bank / the post office**':

- I have to go to **the bank** and then I'm going to **the post office**.
(The speaker is usually thinking of a specific bank or post office.)

and '(go to) **the doctor / the dentist**':

- Clare isn't well. She's gone to **the doctor**.
- I don't like going to **the dentist**.

Compare **the** and **a**:

- I have to go to **the bank** today.
Is there **a bank** near here?
- I don't like going to **the dentist**.
My sister is **a dentist**.

DWe say 'once **a week** / three times **a day** / £1.50 **a kilo**' etc.:

- I go to the cinema about once **a month**.
- 'How much are those potatoes?' '£1.50 **a kilo**'
- Helen works eight hours **a day**, six days **a week**.

Exercises

72.1 Put in a/an or the.

- 1 This morning I bought **a** book and magazine. book is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put magazine.
- 2 I saw accident this morning. car crashed into tree. driver of car wasn't hurt, but car was badly damaged.
- 3 There are two cars parked outside: blue one and grey one. blue one belongs to my neighbours. I don't know who owner of grey one is.
- 4 My friends live in old house in small village. There is beautiful garden behind house. I would like to have garden like that.

72.2 Put in a/an or the.

- 1 **a** This house is very nice. Does it have garden?
- b** It's a beautiful day. Let's sit in garden.
- c** I like living in this house, but it's a shame that garden is so small.
- 2 **a** Can you recommend good restaurant?
- b** We had dinner in very nice restaurant.
- c** We had dinner in best restaurant in town.
- 3 **a** What's name of that man we met yesterday?
- b** We stayed at a very nice hotel – I can't remember name now.
- c** My neighbour has French name, but in fact she's English, not French.
- 4 **a** Did Paula get job she applied for?
- b** It's not easy to get job at the moment.
- c** Do you enjoy your work? Is it interesting job?
- 5 **a** 'Are you going away next week?' 'No, week after next.'
- b** I'm going away for week in September.
- c** Gary has a part-time job. He works three mornings week.

72.3 Put in a/an or the where necessary.

- 1 Would you like apple?
- 2 How often do you go to dentist?
- 3 Can you close door, please?
- 4 I have problem. I need your help.
- 5 How far is it from here to station?
- 6 I'm going to post office. I won't be long.
- 7 Paul plays tennis. He's very good player.
- 8 There isn't airport near where I live.
- 9 Nearest airport is 70 miles away.
- 10 There were no chairs, so we sat on floor.
- 11 Have you finished with book I lent you?
- 12 Chris has just got job in bank in Zurich.
- 13 We live in small apartment in city centre.
- 14 There's shop at end of street I live in.

Would you like an apple?

72.4 Answer these questions. Where possible, use once a week / three times a day etc.

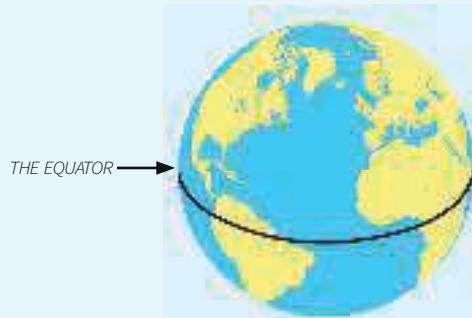
- 1 How often do you go to the cinema? **Three or four times a year.**
- 2 How often do you go to the dentist?
- 3 How often do you go away on holiday?
- 4 How long do you usually sleep?
- 5 How often do you go out in the evening?
- 6 How many hours of TV do you watch (on average)?
- 7 What's the usual speed limit in towns in your country?

the 1

A

We use **the** when there is only one of something:

- Have you ever crossed **the equator**?
(there is only one equator)
- Our apartment is on **the tenth floor**.
- Buenos Aires is **the capital of Argentina**.
- I'm going away at **the end of this month**.



We use **the + superlative** (**best**, **oldest** etc.):

- What's **the longest river in Europe**?

Compare **the** and **a/an** (see also Units 71–72):

- The sun** is **a star**. (=one of many stars)
- The hotel** where we stayed was **a very old hotel**.
- We live in **an apartment** on **the tenth floor**.
- What's **the best way** to learn **a language**?

B

We say '**the same**:

- Your sweater is **the same colour** as mine. (*not* is same colour)
- 'Are these keys **the same**?' 'No, they're different.'

C

We say: **the world** **the universe** **the sun** **the moon** **the earth**
the sky **the sea** **the ground** **the country** (=not a town)

- I love to look at the stars in **the sky**. (*not* in sky)
- Do you live in a town or in **the country**?
- The earth** goes round **the sun**, and **the moon** goes round **the earth**.

We also use **Earth** (without **the**) when we think of it as a planet in space (like **Mars**, **Jupiter** etc.).

- Which is the planet nearest **Earth**?

We say **space** (without **the**) when we mean 'space in the universe'. Compare:

- There are millions of stars **in space**. (*not* in the space)
- I tried to park my car, but **the space** was too small.

D

We say:

(go to) **the cinema, the theatre**

- I go to **the cinema** a lot, but I haven't been to **the theatre** for ages.

TV / television (without **the**), but **the radio**

- I watch **TV** a lot, but I don't listen to **the radio** much.
- but Can you turn off **the television**, please? (**the** television = the TV set)

the internet

- The internet** has changed the way we live.

E

We usually say **breakfast/lunch/dinner** (without **the**):

- What did you have for **breakfast**?
- We had **lunch** in a very nice restaurant.

But we say '**a big lunch**', '**a wonderful dinner**', '**an early breakfast**' etc.

- We had **a very nice lunch**. (*not* We had very nice lunch)

F

We say: **size 43, platform 5** etc. (without **the**)

- Our train leaves from **platform 5**. (*not* the platform 5)
- Do you have these shoes in **size 43**? (*not* the size 43)

In the same way, we say: **room 126, page 29, vitamin A, section B** etc.

Exercises

73.1 Put in **the** or **a** where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 A: Our apartment is on the tenth floor.
B: Is it? I hope there's lift.
- 2 A: Did you have nice holiday?
B: Yes, it was best holiday I've ever had.
- 3 A: Where's nearest shop?
B: There's one at end of this street.
- 4 A: It's lovely day, isn't it?
B: Yes, there isn't cloud in sky.
- 5 A: We spent all our money because we stayed at most expensive hotel in town.
B: Why didn't you stay at cheaper hotel?
- 6 A: Would you like to travel in space?
B: Yes, I'd love to go to moon.
- 7 A: What did you think of movie last night?
B: It was OK, but I thought ending was a bit strange.
- 8 A: What's Jupiter? Is it star?
B: No, it's planet. It's largest planet in solar system.

73.2 Which is right? (For **the**, see also Unit 72.)

- 1 I haven't been to cinema / the cinema for ages. (the cinema is correct)
- 2 Sarah spends most of her free time watching TV / the TV.
- 3 Do you ever listen to radio / the radio?
- 4 Television / The television was on, but nobody was watching it.
- 5 Have you had dinner / the dinner yet?
- 6 It's confusing when two people have same name / the same name.
- 7 What do you want for breakfast / for the breakfast?
- 8 Fruit is an important source of vitamin C / the vitamin C.
- 9 This computer is not connected to internet / the internet.
- 10 I lay down on ground / the ground and looked up at sky / the sky.
- 11 Next train / The next train to London leaves from platform 3 / the platform 3.

73.3 Put in **the** or **a** where necessary. (For **a** and **the** see also Units 71–72.)

- 1 Sun is star. The sun is a star.
- 2 I'm fed up with doing same thing every day.
- 3 Room 25 is on second floor.
- 4 It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year.
- 5 We had lunch in nice restaurant by sea.
- 6 What's on at cinema this week?
- 7 I had big breakfast this morning.
- 8 You'll find information you need at top of page 15.

73.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use **the** where necessary.

breakfast **cinema** **gate** **Gate 24** **lunch** **question** **question 3** **sea**

- 1 I'm hungry. It's time for lunch
- 2 There was no wind, so was very calm.
- 3 Most of the questions in the test were OK, but I couldn't answer
- 4 'I'm going to tonight.' 'Are you? What are you going to see?'
- 5 I'm sorry, but could you repeat , please?
- 6 I didn't have this morning because I was in a hurry.
- 7 (airport announcement) Flight AB123 to Rome is now boarding at
- 8 I forgot to shut Can you shut it for me?

the 2 (school / the school etc.)

ACompare **school** and **the school**:

Ellie is ten years old. Every day she goes **to school**. She's **at school** now. **School** starts at 9 and finishes at 3.

We say a child goes **to school** or is **at school** (as a student). We are not thinking of a specific school. We are thinking of **school** as a *general idea* – children learning in a classroom.



Today Ellie's mother wants to speak to her daughter's teacher. So she has gone to **the school** to see her. She's **at the school** now.

Ellie's mother is not a student. She is not '**at school**', she doesn't '**go to school**'. If she wants to see Ellie's teacher, she goes to **the school** (= Ellie's school, a specific building).

B

We use **prison** (or **jail**), **hospital**, **university**, **college** and **church** in a similar way. We do not use **the** when we are thinking of the general idea of these places and what they are used for.

Compare:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> When I leave school, I plan to go to university / go to college .
(as a student) | <input type="checkbox"/> I went to the university to meet Professor Thomas.
(as a visitor, not as a student) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Joe had an accident last week. He was taken to hospital . He's still in hospital now. (as a patient) | <input type="checkbox"/> Jane has gone to the hospital to visit Joe. She's at the hospital now.
(as a visitor, not as a patient) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Ken's brother is in prison for robbery.
(He is a prisoner. We are not thinking of a specific prison.) | <input type="checkbox"/> Ken went to the prison to visit his brother. (He went as a visitor, not as a prisoner.) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Sarah's father goes to church every Sunday. (for a religious service) | <input type="checkbox"/> Some workmen went to the church to repair the roof. (a specific building) |

With most other places, you need **the**. For example, **the station**, **the cinema** (see Units 72C and 73D).

C

We say **go to bed** / **be in bed** etc. (*not the bed*):

- I'm going **to bed** now. Goodnight.
- Do you ever have breakfast **in bed**?

but

- I sat down on **the bed**. (a specific piece of furniture)

go to work / **be at work** / **start work** / **finish work** etc. (*not the work*):

- Chris didn't go to **work** yesterday.
- What time do you usually finish **work**?

go home / **come home** / **arrive home** / **get home** / **be (at) home** / do something **at home** etc.:

- It's late. Let's **go home**.
- I don't go out to work. I work **at home**.

Exercises

74.1 Complete the sentences with **school** or **the school**.

- 1 Why aren't your children at school today? Are they ill?
- 2 When he was younger, Ben hated , but he enjoys it now.
- 3 There were some parents waiting outside to meet their children.
- 4 What time does start in the morning?
- 5 How do your children get to and from ? Do you take them?
- 6 What was the name of you attended?
- 7 What does Emily want to do when she leaves ?
- 8 My children walk to isn't very far.

74.2 Which is right?

- 1 a Where is university / the university? Is it near here? (the university is correct)
b Neil left school and got a job. He didn't want to go to university / the university.
c In your country, what proportion of the population study at university / the university?
d This is a small town, but university / the university is the biggest in the country.
- 2 a My brother has always been healthy. He's never been in hospital / the hospital.
b When my friend was ill, I went to hospital / the hospital to see her.
c When I was visiting my friend, I met Lisa, who is a nurse at hospital / the hospital.
d I saw an accident. A woman was injured and was taken to hospital / the hospital.
- 3 a Why is she in prison / the prison? What crime did she commit?
b There was a fire at prison / the prison. Firefighters were called to put it out.
c Do you think too many people are sent to prison / the prison?
- 4 a John's mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to church / the church every Sunday.
b John himself doesn't go to church / the church.
c The village is very nice. You should visit church / the church. It's interesting.

74.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 How did you get home after the party?
- 2 How do you usually go in the morning? By bus?
- 3 Sam likes to go to early and get up early.
- 4 I don't have my phone. I left it
- 5 'Have you seen my keys?' 'Yes, they're on '
- 6 Shall we meet tomorrow evening?
- 7 I like to read before going to sleep.
- 8 It was a long tiring journey. We arrived very late.
- 9 Tom usually finishes at five o'clock.
- 10 It's nice to travel around, but there's no place

bed
the bed
in bed
home
home
at home
like home
work
to work
after work

74.4 Complete the sentences. Choose **at/in/to + hospital, school etc.**

bed	home	hospital	hospital	prison	school	university	work
------------	-------------	-----------------	-----------------	---------------	---------------	-------------------	-------------

- 1 Kate's mother has to have an operation. She'll be in hospital for a few days.
- 2 In your country, from what age do children have to go ?
- 3 Mark didn't go out last night. He stayed
- 4 There is a lot of traffic in the morning when people are going
- 5 When Sophie leaves school, she wants to study psychology
- 6 Ben never gets up before 9 o'clock. It's 8.30 now, so he is still
- 7 The accident wasn't serious. Nobody had to go
- 8 If people commit crimes, they may end up

the 3 (children / the children)

A

When we are talking about things or people in general, we do *not* use **the**:

- I'm afraid of **dogs**. (*not* the dogs)
(**dogs** = dogs in general, not a specific group of dogs)
- Doctors** are usually paid more than **teachers**.
- Do you know anybody who collects **stamps**?
- Life** has changed a lot in the last thirty years.
- Do you like **classical music** / **Chinese food** / **fast cars**?
- My favourite sport is **football/skiing/athletics**.
- My favourite subject at school was **history/physics/English**.



We say '**most** people / **most** shops / **most** big cities' etc. (*not* the most ...):

- Most shops** accept credit cards. (*not* The most shops)

B

We use **the** when we mean specific things or people.

Compare:

In general (without **the**)

- Children** learn from playing.
(= children in general)
- I couldn't live without **music**.
- All **cars** have wheels.
- Sugar** isn't very good for you.
- English people** drink a lot of tea.
(= English people in general)

Specific people or things (with **the**)

- We took **the children** to the zoo.
(= a specific group, perhaps the speaker's children)
- The film wasn't very good, but I liked **the music**. (= the music in the film)
- All **the cars in this car park** belong to people who work here.
- Can you pass **the sugar**, please?
(= the sugar on the table)
- The English people I know** drink a lot of tea. (= only the English people I know, not English people in general)

C

The difference between 'something in general' and 'something specific' is not always very clear.
Compare:

In general (without **the**)

- I like working with **people**.
(= people in general)
- I like working with **people who say what they think**.
(not all people, but 'people who say what they think' is still a general idea)
- Do you like **coffee**?
(= coffee in general)
- Do you like **strong black coffee**?
(not all coffee, but 'strong black coffee' is still a general idea)

Specific people or things (with **the**)

- I like **the people I work with**.
(= a specific group of people)
- The coffee we had after dinner** wasn't very good. (= specific coffee)

Exercises

75.1 Choose four of these things and write what you think about them:

bananas	boxing	cats	crowds	fast food	horror movies
hot weather	maths	opera	snow	supermarkets	zoos

Use: I like ... / I don't like ... I think ... is/are ... I don't mind ...
 I love ... / I hate ... I'm (not) interested in ...

1 I don't like hot weather very much.

2

3

4

5

75.2 Which is right?

- 1 a Apples / The apples are good for you. (Apples is correct)
 b Look at apples / the apples on that tree. They're very big.
- 2 a Who are people / the people in this picture?
 b It annoys me when people / the people throw rubbish on the ground.
- 3 a My memory isn't good. I'm not good at remembering names / the names.
 b What were names / the names of those people we met last night?
- 4 a First World War / The First World War began in 1914 and ended in 1918.
 b A pacifist is somebody who is against war / the war.
- 5 a He's lazy. He doesn't like hard work / the hard work.
 b Did you finish work / the work you were doing yesterday?

75.3 Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

(the) basketball	(the) grass	(the) patience	(the) people
(the) questions	(the) meat	(the) information	(the) hotels
(the) biology	(the) water	(the) spiders	(the) lies

- 1 My favourite sport is basketball.
- 2 The information we were given wasn't correct.
- 3 Some people are afraid of
- 4 A vegetarian is somebody who doesn't eat
- 5 The test wasn't hard. I answered without difficulty.
- 6 Do you know who live in the flat next to yours?
- 7 is the study of plants and animals.
- 8 It's better to tell the truth. Telling often causes problems.
- 9 We couldn't find anywhere to stay in the town. were all full.
- 10 Don't swim in this pool. doesn't look very clean.
- 11 Don't sit on It's wet after the rain.
- 12 You need to teach young children.

75.4 Which is right?

- 1 Steve is very good at telling stories / the stories.
- 2 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
- 3 Don't stay in that hotel. It's noisy and rooms / the rooms are very small.
- 4 I don't have a car, so I use public transport / the public transport most of the time.
- 5 All books / All the books on the top shelf belong to me.
- 6 Life / The life is strange sometimes. Some very strange things happen.
- 7 We enjoyed our holiday. Weather / The weather was good.
- 8 Everybody needs water / the water to live.
- 9 I don't like films / the films with unhappy endings.

the 4 (the giraffe / the telephone / the old etc.)

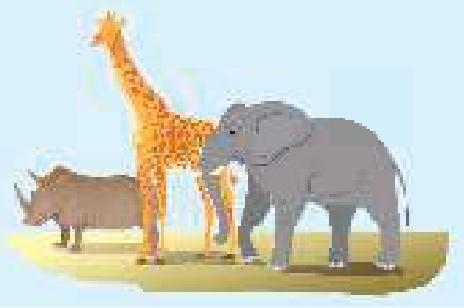
A

Study these sentences:

- The giraffe** is the tallest of all animals.
- The bicycle** is an excellent means of transport.
- When was **the camera** invented?
- The dollar** is the currency of the United States.

In these examples, **the** ... does not mean one specific thing.

The giraffe = a specific type of animal, not a specific giraffe.
We use **the** ... in this way to talk about a type of animal, machine etc.



In the same way we use **the** for musical instruments:

- Can you play **the** guitar?
- The** piano is my favourite instrument.

Compare **a** and **the**:

- I'd like to have **a piano**. *but* I can't play **the piano**.
- We saw **a giraffe** at the zoo. *but* **The giraffe** is my favourite animal.

Note that **man** (without **the**) = human beings in general, the human race:

- What do you know about the origins of **man**? (*not* the man)

B**the old, the rich etc.**

We use **the** + *adjective* (without a noun) to talk about groups of people. For example:

the old	the rich	the homeless	the sick
the elderly	the poor	the unemployed	the injured

the old = old people, **the rich** = rich people etc. :

- Do you think **the rich** should pay higher taxes?
- We need to do more to help **the homeless**.

Note that we say: **the old** (*not* the olds), **the poor** (*not* the poors) etc.

The rich, the homeless etc. are *plural*. For one person, we say:

a rich man (*not* a rich) **a homeless person** (*not* a homeless)

C**the French, the Chinese etc.**

We use **the** + a few nationality adjectives that end in **-ch** or **-sh**. For example:

the French **the Dutch** **the British** **the English** **the Spanish**

The meaning is *plural* – the people of that country.

- The French** are famous for their food. (*not* French are ...)

We do not say 'a French' or 'an English' (*singular*). For example, we say:

- I met **a French woman** / **an English guy**.

We also use **the** + nationality words ending in **-ese** or **-ss**. For example:

the Chinese **the Portuguese** **the Swiss**

These words can also be singular (**a Chinese**, **a Swiss** etc.).

With other nationality words, the plural ends in **-s** (usually without **the**). For example:

an Italian → **Italians** a Mexican → **Mexicans** a Thai → **Thais**

- Italians** / **Mexicans** / **Thais** are very friendly.

In all cases you can use *adjective* + **people**. For example, you can say:

- French** / **Chinese** / **Mexican** people are very friendly.

Exercises

76.1 Answer the questions. Choose the right answer from the box. Don't forget **the**.

1

*animals*tiger elephant
rabbit cheetah
giraffe kangaroo

2

*birds*eagle penguin
swan owl
parrot pigeon

3

*inventions*telephone wheel
telescope laser
helicopter typewriter

4

*currencies*dollar peso
euro rupee
rouble yen

- 1 a Which of the animals is the tallest?
b Which animal can run the fastest?
c Which of these animals is found in Australia?
- 2 a Which of these birds has a long neck?
b Which of these birds cannot fly?
c Which bird flies at night?
- 3 a Which of these inventions is the oldest?
b Which one is the most recent?
c Which one was especially important for astronomy?
- 4 a What is the currency of India?
b What is the currency of Canada?
c And the currency of your country?

the giraffe
76.2 Put in **the** or **a**.

- 1 When was the telephone invented?
- 2 Can you play musical instrument?
- 3 Jessica plays violin in an orchestra.
- 4 There was piano in the corner of the room.
- 5 I wish I could play piano.
- 6 Our society is based on family.
- 7 Martin comes from large family.
- 8 computer has changed the way we live.
- 9 When was bicycle invented?
- 10 Do you have car?

76.3 Complete these sentences. Use **the + adjective**. Choose from:

elderly injured rich sick unemployed young

- 1 The young ... have the future in their hands.
- 2 Helen is a nurse. She's spent her life caring for
- 3 Life is all right if you have a job, but things are hard for
- 4 Ambulances arrived at the scene of the accident and took to hospital.
- 5 More and more people are living longer. How are we going to care for ?
- 6 It's nice to have lots of money, but have their problems too.

76.4 What do you call the people of these countries?

1 Canada

one person (**a/an** ...)*a Canadian*

2 Germany

.....

*the people in general**Canadians*

3 France

.....

4 Russia

.....

5 Japan

.....

6 Brazil

.....

7 England

.....

8 and your country

.....

.....

Names with and without **the** 1

A

We do *not* use **the** with names of people ('Helen', 'Helen Taylor' etc.). In the same way, we do *not* use **the** with most names of places. For example:

continents
countries, states etc.
islands
cities, towns etc.
mountains

Africa (*not* the Africa), **South America**
France (*not* the France), **Japan, Texas**
Sicily, Tasmania
Cairo, Bangkok
Everest, Kilimanjaro



But we normally use **the** in names with **Republic, Kingdom, States** etc.:

the Czech Republic **the United Kingdom (the UK)**
the Dominican Republic **the United States of America (the USA)**

Compare:

Have you been to **Canada** or **the United States**?

B

When we use **Mr/Ms/Captain/Doctor** etc. + a name, we do not use **the**. So we say:

Mr Johnson / Doctor Johnson / Captain Johnson / President Johnson etc. (*not* the ...)
Uncle Robert / Saint Catherine / Queen Catherine etc. (*not* the ...)

Compare:

We called **the doctor**.
We called **Doctor** Johnson. (*not* the Doctor Johnson)

We use **Mount** (=mountain) and **Lake** before a name in the same way (without **the**):

Mount Everest (*not* the ...) **Mount Etna** **Lake Superior** **Lake Victoria**
 They live near **the lake**.
They live near **Lake Superior**. (*not* the Lake Superior)

C

We use **the** with the names of oceans, seas, rivers and canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean)	the Red Sea	the Amazon
the Indian Ocean	the Channel (between	the Nile
the Mediterranean (Sea)	France and Britain)	the Suez Canal

We use **the** with the names of deserts:

the Sahara (Desert) **the Gobi Desert**

D

We use **the** with *plural* names of people and places:

people	the Taylors (= the Taylor family), the Johnsons
countries	the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United States
groups of islands	the Canaries (or the Canary Islands), the Bahamas
mountain ranges	the Andes, the Alps, the Urals

The highest mountain in **the Andes** is (**Mount**) Aconcagua.

E

We say:

the north (of Brazil) *but* **northern** Brazil (*without* the)
the southeast (of Spain) *but* **southeastern** Spain

Compare:

Sweden is in **northern Europe**; Spain is in **the south**.

We also use **north/south** etc. (*without* the) in the names of some regions and countries:

North America **South Africa** **southeast Asia**

Note that on maps, **the** is not usually included in the name.

Exercises

77.1 Which is right?

- 1 Who is Doctor Johnson / the Doctor Johnson? (Doctor Johnson is correct)
- 2 I was ill. Doctor / The doctor told me to rest for a few days.
- 3 Doctor Thomas / The Doctor Thomas is an expert on heart disease.
- 4 I'm looking for Professor Brown / the Professor Brown. Do you know where she is?
- 5 In the United States, President / the President is elected for four years.
- 6 President Kennedy / The President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.
- 7 The officer I spoke to at the police station was Inspector Roberts / the Inspector Roberts.
- 8 Do you know Wilsons / the Wilsons? They're a very nice couple.
- 9 Julia spent three years as a student in United States / the United States.
- 10 France / The France has a population of about 66 million.

77.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need **the** (sometimes more than once).

Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 Everest was first climbed in 1953.
- 2 Milan and Turin are cities in north of Italy.
- 3 Africa is much larger than Europe.
- 4 Last year I visited Mexico and United States.
- 5 Southern England is warmer than north.
- 6 Thailand and Cambodia are in southeast Asia.
- 7 Chicago is on Lake Michigan.
- 8 Next year we're going skiing in Swiss Alps.
- 9 UK consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.
- 10 Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean.
- 11 I've never been to South Africa.
- 12 River Volga flows into Caspian Sea.

OK

in the north of Italy

77.3 Here are some geography questions. Choose the right answer from one of the boxes and use **the** if necessary. You do not need all the names in the boxes.

continents	countries	oceans and seas	mountains	rivers and canals
Africa	Canada	Atlantic	Alps	Amazon Rhine
Asia	Denmark	Indian Ocean	Andes	Danube Thames
Australia	Indonesia	Pacific	Himalayas	Nile Volga
Europe	Sweden	Black Sea	Rockies	Suez Canal
North America	Thailand	Mediterranean	Urals	Panama Canal
South America	United States	Red Sea		

- 1 What do you have to cross to travel from Europe to America? the Atlantic
- 2 Where is Argentina?
- 3 Which is the longest river in Africa?
- 4 Of which country is Stockholm the capital?
- 5 Of which country is Washington the capital?
- 6 What is the name of the mountain range in the west of North America?
- 7 What is the name of the sea between Africa and Europe?
- 8 Which is the smallest continent in the world?
- 9 What is the name of the ocean between North America and Asia?
- 10 What is the name of the ocean between Africa and Australia?
- 11 Which river flows through London?
- 12 Which river flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade?
- 13 Of which country is Bangkok the capital?
- 14 What joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans?
- 15 Which is the longest river in South America?

Names with and without **the** 2

A Names without **the**

We do not use **the** with names of most city streets/roads/squares/parks etc.:

Union Street (*not the ...*) **Fifth Avenue** **Hyde Park**
Abbey Road **Broadway** **Times Square**

Names of many public buildings and institutions (airports, stations, universities etc.), and also some geographical names, are two words:

Manchester Airport Harvard University

The first word is the name of a place ('Manchester') or a person ('Harvard'). These names are usually without **the**. In the same way, we say:

Victoria Station (*not the ...*) **Canterbury Cathedral**
Buckingham Palace **Cambridge University**

Edinburgh Castle
Sydney Harbour

Compare:

Buckingham Palace (*not* the ...) but **the Royal Palace**
(‘Royal’ is an adjective – it is not a name like ‘Buckingham.’)

B Most other buildings have names with **the**. For example:

- hotels* **the** Sheraton Hotel, **the** Holiday Inn
- theatres/cinemas* **the** Palace Theatre, **the** Odeon (cinema)
- museums* **the** Guggenheim Museum, **the** National Gallery
- other buildings* **the** Empire State (Building), **the** White House, **the** Eiffel Tower

We often leave out the noun:

the Sheraton (Hotel) **the Palace** (Theatre) **the Guggenheim** (Museum)

Some names are only **the** + *noun*, for example:

the Acropolis the Kremlin the Pentagon

C Names with **of** usually have **the**. For example:

the Bank of England **the Museum of Modern Art**
the Great Wall of China **the Tower of London**

Note that we say:

the University of Cambridge but **Cambridge University** (*without the*)

D Many shops, restaurants, hotels etc. are named after people. These names end in **'s** or **-s**. We do not use **the** with these names:

McDonald's (not the ...) **Barclays** (bank)
Joe's Diner (restaurant) **Macy's** (department store)

Churches are often named after saints (St = Saint):

St John's Church (not the ...) **St Patrick's Cathedral**

E Most newspapers and many organisations have names with **the**:

the Washington Post **the Financial Times** **the Sun (newspaper)**
the European Union **the BBC** **the Red Cross**

Names of companies, airlines etc. are usually without **the**:

Fiat (*not* the Fiat) **Sony** **Singapore Airlines**
Kodak **IBM** **Yale University Press**

Exercises

- 78.1** Use the map to answer the questions. Write the name of the place and the street it is in.
Use **the** if necessary. (Remember that on maps we do not normally use **the**.)



- 1 Is there a cinema near here?
- 2 Is there a supermarket near here?
- 3 Is there a hotel near here?
- 4 Is there a church near here?
- 5 Is there a museum near here?
- 6 Is there a bookshop near here?
- 7 Is there a restaurant near here?
- 8 Is there a park near here?

- Yes, **the Odeon** ... in **Market Street**.
 Yes, ... in ...
 Yes, ... in ...
 Yes, ...
 Yes, ...
 Yes, ...
 Yes, ...
 Yes, ... at the end of ...

- 78.2** Where are the following? Use **the** where necessary.

Acropolis
Kremlin

Broadway
White House

Buckingham Palace
Gatwick Airport

Eiffel Tower
Times Square

- 1 Times Square ... is in New York.
- 2 is in Paris.
- 3 is in London.
- 4 is in Washington.
- 5 is in Moscow.
- 6 is in New York.
- 7 is in Athens.
- 8 is near London.

- 78.3** Which is right?

- 1 Have you ever been to Science Museum / the Science Museum? (the Science Museum is correct)
- 2 Many tourists in London visit St Paul's Cathedral / the St Paul's Cathedral.
- 3 The biggest park in New York is Central Park / The Central Park.
- 4 I'd like to go to China and see Great Wall / the Great Wall.
- 5 Dublin Airport / The Dublin Airport is situated about 12 kilometres from the city centre.
- 6 'Which cinema are we going to this evening?' 'Classic / The Classic'
- 7 Jack is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University.
- 8 You should go to National Museum / the National Museum. It's very interesting.
- 9 If you're looking for a department store, I would recommend Harrison's / the Harrison's.
- 10 Andy is a flight attendant. He works for Cathay Pacific / the Cathay Pacific.
- 11 'Which newspaper do you want?' 'Morning News / The Morning News'
- 12 We went to Italy and saw Leaning Tower / the Leaning Tower of Pisa.
- 13 This book is published by Cambridge University Press / the Cambridge University Press.
- 14 The building across the street is College of Art / the College of Art.
- 15 Imperial Hotel / The Imperial Hotel is in Baker Street / the Baker Street.
- 16 Statue of Liberty / The Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York Harbor / the New York Harbor.

Singular and plural

A

Sometimes we use a *plural* noun for one thing that has two parts. For example:



trousers (*two legs*)
also **jeans/tights/shorts/pants**



pyjamas
(*top and bottom*)



glasses



binoculars



scissors

These words are plural, so they take a plural verb:

- My trousers **are** too long. (*not My trousers is*)

You can also use **a pair of** + these words:

- Those** **are** nice **jeans**. or That's a nice **pair of** jeans. (*not a nice jeans*)
- I need **some** new **glasses**. or I need **a** new **pair of** glasses.

B

Some nouns end in **-ics**, but are not usually plural. For example:

athletics **gymnastics** **economics** **politics**
physics **electronics** **maths** (= mathematics)
 Gymnastics **is** my favourite sport. (*not Gymnastics are*)

News is not plural (see Unit 70B):

- I have **some news** for you. **It's** good news!

Some words that end in **-s** can be singular or plural. For example:

means	a means of transport	many means of transport
series	a TV series	two TV series
species	a species of fish	200 species of fish

C

Some singular nouns are often used with a plural verb. For example:

audience **committee** **company** **family** **firm** **government** **staff** **team**

These nouns are all groups of people. We often think of them as a number of people (=they), not as one thing (=it). So we often use a plural verb:

- The government** (=they) **have decided** to increase taxes.
- The staff** at the company (=they) **are** not happy with **their** working conditions.

In the same way, we often use a plural verb after the name of a company or a sports team:

- Shell** **have** increased the price of petrol.
- Italy** **are** playing Brazil next Sunday (in a football match).

You can also use a singular verb (The government **wants** ... / Shell **has** ... etc.).

We use a plural verb with **police**:

- The police** **are** investigating the crime, but **haven't** arrested anyone yet.
(*not The police is ... hasn't*)

Note that we say **a police officer** / **a policeman** / **a policewoman** (*not a police*).

D

We do not often use the plural of **person** ('persons'). We normally use **people** (*a plural word*):

- He's **a nice person**. but They are nice **people**. (*not nice persons*)
- Many people** **don't** have enough to eat. (*not Many people doesn't*)

E

We think of a sum of money, a period of time, a distance etc. as *one* thing. So we use a singular verb:

- Fifty thousand pounds** (=it) **was** stolen in the robbery. (*not were stolen*)
- Three years** (=it) **is** a long time to be without a job. (*not Three years are*)
- Two miles** **isn't** very far to walk.

Exercises

79.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 My eyesight is getting worse. I need glasses.
- 2 The trousers you bought for me fit me.
- 3 The jacket you bought for me fit me.
- 4 I need scissors to cut this piece of material.
- 5 I can't find my binoculars. Have you seen?
- 6 I went shopping and bought a of jeans.
- 7 Where my sunglasses?
- 8 I went shopping and bought pair of pyjamas.
- 9 I don't know much about politics. I'm not interested in

a
are
them
doesn't
pair
it
glasses
some
don't

79.2 Complete the sentences. Use a word from section B (news, series etc.).

- 1 'Have you heard the news?' 'No. What's happened?'
- 2 The bicycle is a of transport.
- 3 A lot of American TV are shown in other countries.
- 4 The tiger is an endangered
- 5 There will be a of meetings to discuss the problem.
- 6 Fortunately the wasn't as bad as we expected.
- 7 How many of bird are there in the world?
- 8 I didn't have my phone, so I had no of contacting you.

79.3 Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural. In three sentences either the singular or plural verb is possible.

- 1 Gymnastics is / are my favourite sport. (is is correct)
- 2 My new glasses doesn't / don't fit very well.
- 3 The police want / wants to interview two men about the robbery.
- 4 Physics was / were my favourite subject at school.
- 5 It's a nice place to visit. The people is / are very friendly.
- 6 Germany is / are playing Spain tomorrow night. Are you going to watch it?
- 7 Does / Do the police know how the accident happened?
- 8 Where do / does your family live?
- 9 Most people enjoy / enjoys music.
- 10 I like this cafe. The staff here is / are really friendly and efficient.

79.4 Complete the sentences. Use **is** or **isn't**, and choose from the box.

- 1 Three years is a long time to be without a job.
- 2 Thirty degrees for Tom. He doesn't like hot weather.
- 3 Ten dollars We need more than that.
- 4 Four days for a holiday. You need at least a week.
- 5 Twenty kilos Are you sure you can manage?

a lot to carry
enough money
too hot
long enough
a long time

79.5 Are these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

- 1 Three years are a long time to be without a job.
- 2 The committee want to change the rules of the club.
- 3 Susan was wearing a black jeans.
- 4 I like Martin and Jane. They're very nice persons.
- 5 I'm going to buy some new pyjamas.
- 6 There was a police directing traffic in the street.
- 7 This scissors isn't very sharp.
- 8 The company have decided to open a new factory.
- 9 This plant is very rare species.
- 10 Twelve hours are a long time to be on a plane.

Three years is a long time

OK. (wants is also correct)

Noun + noun (a **bus driver** / a **headache**)

A

You can use two nouns together (*noun + noun*) to mean *one* thing/person/idea etc.:
a **bus driver** **income tax** the **city centre** an **apple tree**

The first noun is like an adjective. It tells us what kind of thing/person/idea etc.:

a **bus driver** = the driver of a bus
income tax = tax that you pay on your income
the **city centre** = the centre of the city
an **apple tree** = a tree that has apples
a **Paris hotel** = a hotel in Paris
my **life story** = the story of my life

So you can say:

a **television** camera a **television** programme a **television** studio a **television** producer
(things or people to do with television)
language **problems** marriage **problems** health **problems** work **problems**
(different kinds of problems)

Sometimes the first word ends in **-ing**:

a **frying** pan (= a pan for frying)
a **washing** machine
a **swimming** pool

B

Sometimes there are more than two nouns together:

- I waited at the **hotel reception desk**.
- We watched the **World Swimming Championships** on TV.
- If you want to play table tennis (= a game), you need a **table tennis table** (= a table).

C

When two nouns are together like this, sometimes we write them as one word and sometimes as two separate words. For example:

a **headache** **toothpaste** a **weekend** a **car park** a **road sign**

There are no clear rules for this. If you are not sure, write two words.

D

Note the difference between:

a **coffee cup** (maybe empty) and a **cup of coffee** (= a cup with coffee in it)
a **shopping bag** (maybe empty) and a **bag of shopping** (= a bag full of shopping)

E

When we use *noun + noun*, the first noun is like an *adjective*. It is normally singular, but the meaning is often plural.

For example: a **car park** is a place to park **cars**, an **apple tree** is a tree that has **apples**.

In the same way we say:

a **three-hour** journey (= a journey that takes three **hours**)
a **ten-pound** note (= a note with the value of ten **pounds**)
a **four-week** course
a **six-mile** walk
two **14-year-old** girls

Compare:

- It was a **four-week** course. (not a four weeks course)
- but The course lasted four **weeks**.

Exercises

80.1 What do we call these things and people?

- 1 Someone who drives a bus is a **bus driver**
- 2 Problems concerning health are **health problems**
- 3 A ticket to travel by train is a
- 4 A machine you use to get a ticket is a
- 5 The staff at a hotel are the
- 6 The results of your exams are your
- 7 A horse that runs in races is a
- 8 A race for horses is a
- 9 Shoes for running are
- 10 A shop that sells shoes is a
- 11 The window of a shop is a
- 12 A person who cleans windows is a
- 13 A scandal involving a construction company is
- 14 Workers at a car factory are
- 15 A scheme for the improvement of a road is a
- 16 A department store in New York is a

80.2 Answer the questions using two of the following words each time:

accident	belt	birthday	card	credit	driver
forecast	machine	number	party	ring	road
room	seat	truck	washing	weather	wedding

- 1 This could be caused by bad driving. a **road accident**
- 2 You should wear this when you're driving. a
- 3 You can use this to pay for things. a
- 4 This will tell you if it's going to rain or not. the
- 5 This is useful if you have a lot of dirty clothes. a
- 6 This is something you might wear if you're married. a
- 7 If you're staying at a hotel, you need to remember this. your
- 8 This is a way to celebrate getting older. a
- 9 This person transports things by road. a

80.3 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 I spilt coffee on the **living room carpet** (room / carpet / living)
- 2 Jack likes sport. He plays for his (team / school / football)
- 3 Anna works for a (company / production / film)
- 4 Many people invest in a (life / policy / insurance)
- 5 You can get a map at the (information / office / tourist)

80.4 Which is correct?

- 1 It's quite a big book. There are more than 500 page / 500 pages. (500 pages is correct)
- 2 It's only a two-hour / two hours flight from London to Madrid.
- 3 It took only two hour / two hours to fly to Madrid.
- 4 I don't have any change. I only have a twenty-pound / twenty pounds note.
- 5 I looked down and there were two ten-pound / ten pounds notes on the ground.
- 6 At work in the morning we usually have a 15-minute / 15 minutes break for coffee.
- 7 There are 60-minute / 60 minutes in an hour.
- 8 My office is on the tenth floor of a twelve-storey / twelve storeys building.
- 9 I work five-day / five days a week. Saturday and Sunday are free.
- 10 Five-star / Five stars hotels are the most expensive.
- 11 Sam's daughter is six-year-old / six years old.
- 12 Sam has a six-year-old / six-years-old daughter.

's (your sister's name) and of ... (the name of the book)

A

We use -'s (apostrophe + s) mostly for people or animals:

- Tom's** computer isn't working. (*not* the computer of Tom)
- How old are **Chris's** children? (*not* the children of Chris)
- What's (=What is) **your sister's** name?
- What's **Tom's sister's** name?
- Be careful. Don't step on **the cat's** tail.

You can use -'s without a noun after it:

- This isn't my book. It's **my sister's**. (= my sister's book)

We do not use -'s after a long group of words. So we say:

my friend's mother

but the mother **of the man we met yesterday** (*not* the man we met yesterday's mother)

Note that we say **a woman's hat** (= a hat for a woman), **a boy's name** (= a name for a boy), **a bird's egg** (= an egg laid by a bird) etc.

B

With a *singular* noun we use -'s:

my sister's room (= **her** room – one sister)

Mr Carter's house (= **his** house)

With a *plural* noun (sisters, friends etc.) we put an apostrophe (') after **s**:

my sisters' room (= **their** room – two or more sisters)

the Carters' house (= **their** house – Mr and Mrs Carter)

If a plural noun does not end in -s (for example **men/women/children/people**) we use -'s:

the **men's** changing room a **children's** book (= a book for children)

You can use -'s after more than one noun:

Jack and Karen's children **Mr and Mrs Carter's** house

C

For things, ideas etc., we normally use **of**:

the temperature **of the water** (*not* the water's temperature)

the name **of the book** the owner **of the restaurant**

We say **the beginning/end/middle of ... / the top/bottom of ... / the front/back/side of ...**:

the beginning of the month (*not* the month's beginning)

the top of the hill **the back of** the car

D

You can usually use -'s or **of** ... for an organisation (= a group of people). So you can say:

the government's decision or the decision **of the government**

the company's success or the success **of the company**

We also use -'s for places. So you can say:

the city's streets **the world's** population **Italy's** prime minister

E

We use -'s with time words (**yesterday** / **next week** etc.):

- Do you still have **yesterday's** newspaper?
- Next week's** meeting has been cancelled.

In the same way, you can say **today's** / **tomorrow's** / **this evening's** / **Monday's** etc.

We also use -'s (or -s' with plural words) with periods of time:

- I've got **a week's holiday** starting on Monday.
- Julia has got **three weeks' holiday**.
- I live near the station – it's only **ten minutes' walk**.



Noun + noun (a **bus driver**) → Unit 80 a **three-hour** journey, a **ten-pound** note → Unit 80E
 -'s (= **is** or **has**) in short forms → Appendix 5.2

Exercises

81.1 In some of these sentences, it is more natural to use **-'s** or **'**. Change the underlined parts where necessary.

- Who is the owner of this restaurant?
 - How old are the children of Chris?
 - Is this the umbrella of your friend?
 - Write your name at the top of the page.
 - I've never met the daughter of James.
 - How old is the son of Helen and Andy?
 - We don't know the cause of the problem.
 - I don't know the words of this song.
 - The friends of your children are here.
 - What is the cost of a new washing machine?
 - The garden of our neighbours is very small.
 - The hair of David is very long.
 - I work on the ground floor of the building.
 - I couldn't go to the party of my best friend.
 - George is the brother of somebody I knew at college.
 - Have you seen the car of the parents of Ben?
 - What is the meaning of this expression?
 - Do you agree with the policy of the government?

OK

Chris's children

81.2 Which is right?

- 1 Don't step on the ... **cat's** ... tail. (cat / cat's / cats')
 - 2 It's my birthday tomorrow. (father / father's / fathers')
 - 3 Those look nice. Shall we buy some? (apples / apple's / apples')
 - 4 clothes are expensive. (Children / Children's / Childrens')
 - 5 Zurich is largest city. (Switzerland / Switzerland's / Switzerlands')
 - 6 Your parents are your grandparents. (parents / parent's / parents')
 - 7 I took a lot of when I was on holiday. (photos / photo's / photos')
 - 8 This isn't my coat. It's (someone else / someone else's / someone elses')
 - 9 Have you read any of poems? (Shakespeare / Shakespeare's / Shakespeares')

81.3 Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underlined words.

- 1 The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.
Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled.
 - 2 The storm last week caused a lot of damage.
Last
 - 3 The only cinema in the town has closed down
The
 - 4 The weather in Britain is very changeable.
.....
 - 5 Tourism is the main industry in the region.

81.4 Use the information given to complete the sentences.

- 1 If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to the airport, I arrive at about 11.
So it's about from my house to the airport. (drive)
 - 2 If I leave my house at 8.40 and walk to the centre, I get there at 9 o'clock.
So it's from my house to the centre. (walk)
 - 3 I'm going on holiday on the 12th. I have to be back at work on the 26th.
So I've got (holiday)
 - 4 I went to sleep at 3 o'clock this morning and woke up an hour later. After that I couldn't sleep.
So last night I only had (sleep)

myself/yourself/themselves etc.

Study this example:

Hi I'm Steve



Steve **introduced himself** to the other guests.

We use **myself/yourself/himself** etc. (reflexive pronouns) when the subject and object are the same:

The reflexive pronouns are:

singular (-self)	myself	yourself (one person)	himself/herself/itself
plural (-selves)	ourselves	yourselves (more than one)	themselves

- I don't want you to pay for me. I'll pay for **myself**. (not I'll pay for me)
 - Amy had a great holiday. **She** really enjoyed **herself**.
 - Do **you** talk to **yourself** sometimes? (*said to one person*)
 - If you want more to eat, help **yourselves**. (*said to more than one person*)

Compare:

- Lisa introduced **me** to the other guests.
 - I introduced **myself** to the other guests.

We do not use **myself** etc. after **feel/relax/concentrate/meet:**

- I feel nervous. I can't **relax**.
 - You need to **concentrate**. (*not concentrate yourself*)
 - What time shall we **meet** tomorrow?

Normally we do not use **myself** etc. after **wash/shave/dress**:

- He got up, **washed**, **shaved** and **dressed**. (*not washed himself etc.*)

You can also say **get dressed** (He **got dressed**).

C Compare -**selves** and **each other**:

- Kate and Joe stood in front of the mirror and looked at **themselves**.
(= *Kate and Joe together looked at Kate and Joe*)
 - Kate looked at Joe, and Joe looked at Kate. They looked at **each other**.



themselves



each other

You can use **one another** instead of **each other**:

- How long have you and Ben known **each other**? or ... known **one another**?
 - Sue and Alice don't like **each other**. or ... don't like **one another**.
 - Do they live near **each other**? or ... near **one another**?

D We also use **myself/yourself** etc. in another way. For example:

- ‘Who repaired your bike?’ ‘I repaired it **myself**.’

I repaired it myself = I repaired it, not another person. Here, **myself** is used to emphasise 'I' (= it makes it stronger). Some more examples:

- I'm not going to do your work for you. **You** can do it **yourself**. (=you, not me)
 - Let's paint the house **ourselves**. It will be much cheaper.
 - The **film itself** wasn't very good, but I loved the music.
 - I don't think Lisa will get the job she applied for. **Lisa** doesn't think so **herself**. or
Lisa herself doesn't think so.

Exercises

82.1 Complete the sentences using **myself/yourself** etc. + these verbs (in the correct form):

blame burn enjoy express hurt introduce put

- 1 Steve ... introduced himself ... to the other guests at the party.
- 2 Ben fell down some steps, but fortunately he didn't ...
- 3 It isn't Sue's fault. She really shouldn't ...
- 4 Please try and understand how I feel. You have to ... in my position.
- 5 The children had a great time at the beach. They really ...
- 6 Be careful! That pan is hot. Don't ...
- 7 Sometimes I can't say exactly what I mean. I wish I could ... better.

82.2 Put in **myself/yourself/ourselves** etc. or **me/you/us** etc.

- 1 Amy had a great holiday. She enjoyed ... herself ...
- 2 It's not my fault. You can't blame ...
- 3 What I did was really bad. I'm ashamed of ...
- 4 We have a problem. I hope you can help ...
- 5 'Can I take another biscuit?' 'Of course. Help ... !'
- 6 I want you to meet Sarah. I'll introduce ... to her.
- 7 Don't worry about us. We can take care of ...
- 8 Don't worry about the children. I'll take care of ...
- 9 I gave them a key to our house so that they could let ... in.

82.3 Complete these sentences. Use **myself/yourself** etc. where necessary. Choose from:

concentrate defend dry enjoy feel meet relax shave

- 1 Neil grew a beard because he was fed up with ... shaving
- 2 Amy had a great holiday. She ... enjoyed herself
- 3 I wasn't very well yesterday, but I ... much better today.
- 4 I climbed out of the swimming pool and ... with a towel.
- 5 I tried to study, but I couldn't ...
- 6 If somebody attacks you, you have the right to ...
- 7 I'm going out with Chris this evening. We're ... at 7.30.
- 8 You're always rushing. Why don't you sit down and ... ?

82.4 Complete the sentences with **ourselves/themselves** or **each other**.

- 1 How long have you and Ben known ... each other ... ?
- 2 If people work too hard, they can make ... ill.
- 3 I need you and you need me. We need ...
- 4 In Britain friends often give ... presents at Christmas.
- 5 Some people are selfish. They only think of ...
- 6 Tracy and I don't see ... very often these days.
- 7 We couldn't get back into the house. We had locked ... out.
- 8 They've had an argument. Now they're not speaking to ...
- 9 We'd never met before, so we introduced ... to ...

82.5 Complete the sentences using **myself/yourself** etc. Use the verb in brackets.

- 1 'Who repaired the bike for you?' 'Nobody. I ... repaired it myself' (repair)
- 2 I didn't buy this cake from a shop. I ... (make)
- 3 'Who told you Laura was going away?' 'Laura' (tell)
- 4 I don't know what they're going to do. I don't think they (know)
- 5 'Who cuts Paul's hair for him?' 'Nobody. He' (cut)
- 6 'Can you phone Sam for me?' 'Why can't you ... ?' (do)

a friend of mine my own house on my own / by myself

A a friend of mine / a friend of yours etc.

We say '(a friend) **of mine/yours/his/hers/ours/theirs'**.

A friend of mine = one of my friends:

- I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. **A friend of mine** is getting married. (*not a friend of me*)
- We went on holiday with **some friends of ours**. (*not some friends of us*)
- Harry had an argument with **a neighbour of his**.
- It was **a good idea of yours** to go to the cinema.

In the same way we say '(a friend) **of my sister's / (a friend) of Tom's**' etc. :

- That woman over there is **a friend of my sister's**. (=one of my sister's friends)
- It was **a good idea of Tom's** to go to the cinema.

B my own ... / your own ... etc.

We say **my own / your own / her own ... etc.**:

my own house **your own** car **her own** room
(*not an own house, an own car etc.*)

my own ... / your own ... etc. = something that is only mine/yours, not shared or borrowed:

- I don't want to share a room with anybody. I want **my own room**.
- Vicky and Gary would like to have **their own house**.
- It's a shame that the apartment hasn't got **its own parking space**.
- It's **my own fault** that I have no money. I buy too many things I don't need.
- Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use **your own?** (=your own car)

You can also say 'a room **of my own**', 'a house **of your own**', 'problems **of his own**' etc. :

- I'd like to have a room **of my own**.
- He won't be able to help you with your problems. He has too many problems **of his own**.

C He cuts **his own** hair

We also use **own** to say that we do something ourselves instead of somebody else doing it for us. For example:

- Paul usually cuts **his own hair**.
(= he cuts it himself)
- I'd like to have a garden so that I could grow **my own vegetables**.
(= grow them myself instead of buying them from shops)



D on my own / by myself

On my own and **by myself** both mean 'alone'. So you can say:

on { my / your
his / her / its
our / their } **own**

or

by { myself / yourself (singular)
himself / herself / itself
ourselves / yourselves (plural) / themselves }

- I like living **on my own**. or I like living **by myself**.
- Some people prefer to live **on their own**. or ... live **by themselves**.
- Jack was sitting **on his own** in a corner of the cafe. or Jack was sitting **by himself** ...
- Did you go on holiday **on your own**? or Did you go on holiday **by yourself**?

Exercises

83.1 Change the underlined words and use the structure ... of mine/yours etc.

- I'm meeting one of my friends tonight.
 - We met one of your relatives.
 - Jason borrowed one of my books.
 - I met Lisa and some of her friends.
 - We had dinner with one of our neighbours.
 - I went on holiday with two of my friends.
 - I met one of Amy's friends at the party.
 - It's always been one of my ambitions to travel round the world.

I'm meeting a friend of mine tonight.

We met a

Jason borrowed

I met Lisa and

We had dinner with

I went on holiday with

I met at the party.

It's always been

to travel round the world.

83.2 Complete the sentences using **my own** / **our own** etc. + the following:

bathroom business opinions private beach words

- I share a kitchen, but I have ... my own bathroom
 - Gary doesn't think like me. He has ...
 - Julia doesn't want to work for other people. She wants to start ...
 - In the test we had to read a story, and then write it in ...
 - We stayed at a luxury hotel by the sea. The hotel had ...

83.3 Complete the sentences using **my own** / **your own** etc.

- 1 Why do you need to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own car ?
 - 2 How can you blame me? It's not my fault. It's .
 - 3 She's always using my ideas. Why can't she use . ?
 - 4 Please don't worry about my problems. I'm sure you have .
 - 5 I can't make his decisions for him. He has to make .

83.4 Complete the sentences using *my own* / *your own* etc. Use the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Paul never goes to a barber. He *cuts his own hair* . (cut)

2 Helen doesn't often buy clothes. She likes to (make)

3 I'm not going to clean your shoes. You can (clean)

4 We don't often buy bread. We usually (bake)

5 Jack and Joe are singers. They sing songs written by other people, but they also (write)

83.5 Complete the sentences using **my own / your own** etc. or **myself/yourself** etc.

- 1 Did you go on holiday on your own ?
 - 2 The box was too heavy for me to lift by
 - 3 We had no help decorating the apartment. We did it completely on
 - 4 Very young children should not go swimming by
 - 5 ‘Who was Tom with when you saw him?’ ‘Nobody. He was by’
 - 6 I don’t like strawberries with cream. I like them on
 - 7 Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by ?
 - 8 I went out with Sally because she didn’t want to go out on

83.6 Are these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1 Katherine would like to have the own house. | to have her own house. |
| 2 Sam and Chris are colleagues of me. | |
| 3 I was scared. I didn't want to go out by my own. | |
| 4 In my last job I had own office. | |
| 5 He must be lonely. He's always with himself. | |
| 6 My parents have gone away with some friends of them. | |
| 7 Are there any countries that produce all own food? | |

there ... and it ...

A

Study this example:

We use **there** ... when we talk about something for the first time, to say that it exists:

- There's** a new restaurant in Hill Street.
- I'm sorry I'm late. **There was** a lot of traffic. (not It was a lot of traffic)
- Things are very expensive now. **There has been** a big rise in the cost of living.

It = a specific thing, place, fact, situation etc. :

- We went to the new restaurant. **It's** very good. (**It** = the restaurant)
- I wasn't expecting her to call me. **It** was a complete surprise. (**It** = that she called)

Compare **there** and **it**:

- I like this town. **There's** a lot to do here. **It's** an interesting place.

There also means 'to/at/in that place':

- The house is unoccupied. There's nobody living **there**. (=in the house)

B

You can say:

there will be	there must have been	there is sure to be	there is likely to be
there must be	there should have been	there is bound to be	there is supposed to be
there might be etc.	there would have been etc.	there is going to be	there used to be

- 'Is **there** a flight to Rome tonight?' '**There might be**. I'll check online.'
- If people drove more carefully, **there wouldn't be** so many accidents.
- I could hear music coming from the house. **There must have been** somebody at home.
- There's bound to be** a cafe somewhere near here. (= There's **sure** to be ...)

Compare **there** and **it**:

- They live on a busy road. **There must be** a lot of noise from the traffic.
- They live on a busy road. **It must be** very noisy. (**It** = living on a busy road)
- There used to be** a cinema here, but it closed a few years ago.
- That building is now a supermarket. **It used to be** a cinema. (**It** = that building)
- There's sure to be** a flight to Rome tonight.
- There's a flight to Rome tonight, but **it's sure to be** full. (**it** = the flight)

C

We say:

- It's dangerous to walk in the road.** (not To walk in the road is dangerous)

Normally we use **It** ... at the beginning of sentences like this. Some more examples:

- It didn't take us long to get** here.
- It's a shame (that) you can't come to the party.**
- It's not worth waiting any longer.** Let's go.

We also use **it** to talk about distance, time and weather:

- How far is it** from here to the airport?
- It's a long time** since we last saw you.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- It was windy.** but **There was a cold wind.**

» **supposed to ...** → Unit 45B **it's worth / it's no use / there's no point** → Unit 63A
sure to / bound to ... etc. → Unit 65E **there is + -ing/-ed** → Unit 97

Exercises

84.1 Put in **there is/was or it is/was**. Some sentences are questions (**is there ... ? / was it ... ? etc.**) and some are negative (**there isn't / it wasn't etc.**).

- 1 The journey took a long time. **There was** a lot of traffic.
- 2 What's the new restaurant like? **Is it** good?
- 3 something wrong with the washing machine. It's not working properly.
- 4 I wanted to visit the museum yesterday, but enough time.
- 5 What's that new building over there? a hotel?
- 6 How can we get across the river? a bridge?
- 7 A few days ago a big storm, which caused a lot of damage.
- 8 I can't find my phone. in my bag – I just looked.
- 9 anything interesting on TV, so I turned it off.
- 10 often very cold here, but much snow.
- 11 I couldn't see anything. completely dark.
- 12 '..... a bookshop near here?' 'Yes, one in Hudson Street.'
- 13 difficult to get a job right now. a lot of unemployment.
- 14 When we got to the cinema, a queue outside. a very long queue, so we decided not to wait.

84.2 Read the first sentence and then write a sentence beginning **There ...**.

- 1 The roads were busy yesterday. **There was a lot of traffic.**
- 2 This soup is very salty. **There** in the soup.
- 3 The box was empty. **There** in the box.
- 4 About 50 people came to the meeting. **There** at the meeting.
- 5 The film is very violent. **There**
- 6 I like this town – it's lively. **There**

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use **there would be, there used to be** etc. Choose from:

won't may -would wouldn't should used to is going to

- 1 If people drove more carefully, **there would be** fewer accidents.
- 2 'Do we have any eggs?' 'I'm not sure. **There** some in the fridge.'
- 3 I think everything will be OK. **There** any problems.
- 4 Look at those clouds. **There** a storm. I'm sure of it.
- 5 There isn't a school in the village. **There** one, but it closed a few years ago.
- 6 People drive too fast on this road. I think **There** a speed limit.
- 7 If people weren't so aggressive, **There** any wars.

84.4 Are these sentences OK? Change **it** to **there** where necessary.

- 1 They live on a busy road. **It must be** a lot of noise.
- 2 It's a long way from my house to the nearest shop.
- 3 After the lecture it will be an opportunity to ask questions.
- 4 Why was she so unfriendly? It must have been a reason.
- 5 I like where I live, but it would be nicer to live by the sea.
- 6 How long is it since you last went to the theatre?
- 7 It used to be a lot of tourists here, but not many come now.
- 8 My phone won't work here. It's no signal.
- 9 It was Ken's birthday yesterday. We had a party.
- 10 We won't have any problem parking the car. It's sure to be a car park somewhere.
- 11 I'm sorry about what happened. It was my fault.
- 12 I was told that it would be somebody to meet me at the station, but it wasn't anybody.

There must be a lot of noise.

OK

some and any

A

In general we use **some** (*also somebody/someone/something*) in positive sentences and **any** (*also anybody* etc.) in negative sentences:

some

- We **bought some** flowers.
- He's busy. He **has some** work to do.
- There's **somebody** at the door.
- I **want something** to eat.

any

- We **didn't buy any** flowers.
- He's lazy. He **never does any** work.
- There **isn't anybody** at the door.
- I **don't want anything** to eat.

We use **any** in the following sentences because the meaning is negative:

- She went out **without any** money. (she **didn't take any** money with her)
- He **refused** to eat **anything**. (he **didn't eat anything**)
- It's a very easy exam. **Hardly anybody** fails. (=almost **nobody** fails)

B

We use both **some** and **any** in questions. We use **some/somebody/something** to talk about a person or thing that we know exists, or we think exists:

- Are you waiting for **somebody**? (I think you are waiting for somebody)

We use **some** in questions when we ask for or offer things:

- Can I have **some** sugar, please? (there is probably some sugar that I can have)
- Would you like **something** to eat? (there is something to eat)

But in most questions, we use **any**. We do not know if the thing or person exists:

- Do you have **any** luggage? (maybe you do, maybe not)
- Is there **anybody** in the house? (maybe there is, maybe not)

C

You can use **if + any**:

- Let me know **if** you need **anything**.
- If anyone** has **any** questions, I'll be pleased to answer them.

The following sentences have the idea of **if**:

- I'm sorry for **any** trouble I've caused. (=**if** I have caused **any** trouble)
- The police want to speak to **anyone** who saw the accident. (=**if** there is **anyone**)

D

We also use **any** with the meaning 'it doesn't matter which':

- You can take **any** bus. They all go to the centre. (=it doesn't matter which bus you take)
- Come and see me **any** time you want.

We use **anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere** in the same way:

- We forgot to lock the door. **Anybody** could have come in.

Compare **some-** and **any-**:

- A: I'm hungry. I want **something** to eat.
B: What would you like?
A: I don't mind. **Anything**. (=it doesn't matter what)
- B: Let's go out **somewhere**.
A: Where shall we go?
B: **Anywhere**. I just want to go out.

E

Somebody/someone/anybody/anyone are singular words:

- Someone** is here to see you.

But we use **they/them/their** after these words:

- Someone** has forgotten **their** umbrella. (=his or her umbrella)
- If **anybody** wants to leave early, **they** can. (=he or she can)

Exercises

85.1 Put in **some** or **any**.

- 1 We didn't buy **any** flowers.
- 2 Tonight I'm going out with friends of mine.
- 3 Have you seen good movies recently?
- 4 I'd like information about what there is to see in this town.
- 5 I didn't have money. I had to borrow
- 6 You can use your card to withdraw money at cash machine.
- 7 Those apples look nice. Shall we get ?
- 8 With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on train you like.
- 9 'Can I have more coffee, please?' 'Sure. Help yourself.'
- 10 If there are words you don't understand, look them up in a dictionary.
- 11 We wanted to buy grapes, but they didn't have in the shop.

85.2 Complete the sentences with **some-** or **any-** + **-body/-thing/-where**.

- 1 I was too surprised to say **anything**
- 2 There's at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
- 3 Does mind if I open the window?
- 4 I can't drive and I don't know about cars.
- 5 You must be hungry. Why don't I get you to eat?
- 6 Emma is very tolerant. She never complains about
- 7 There was hardly on the beach. It was almost deserted.
- 8 Let's go away. Let's go warm and sunny.
- 9 I'm going out now. If asks where I am, tell them you don't know.
- 10 Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost ?
- 11 This is a no-parking area. who parks their car here will have to pay a fine.
- 12 Quick, let's go! There's coming and I don't want to see us.
- 13 They stay at home all the time. They never seem to go
- 14 Jonathan stood up and left the room without saying
- 15 'Can I ask you ?' 'Sure. What do you want to ask?'
- 16 Sarah was upset about and refused to talk to
- 17 I need to translate. Is there here who speaks English?
- 18 Sue is very secretive. She never tells (2 words)

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use **any** (+ noun) or **anybody/anything/anywhere**.

- 1 Which bus do I have to take?
..... **Any bus** They all go to the centre.
- 2 When shall we meet? Monday?
I don't mind. next week will be OK for me.
- 3 What do you want to eat?
..... I don't mind.
Whatever you have.
- 4 Who shall I invite to the party?
It's your party. You can invite you want.
- 5 What sort of job are you looking for?
..... It doesn't matter what it is.
- 6 Where shall I sit?
It's up to you. You can sit you like.
- 7 Is this machine difficult to use?
No, it's easy. can learn to use it very quickly.

no/none/any nothing/nobody etc.**A no and none**

We use **no + noun** (**no bus**, **no shops** etc.).

no = not a or not any:

- We had to walk home. There was **no bus**. (=There **wasn't a** bus.)
- Sarah will have **no trouble** finding a job. (=Sarah **won't** have **any** trouble ...)
- There were **no shops** open. (=There **weren't any** shops open.)

You can use **no + noun** at the beginning of a sentence:

- No reason** was given for the change of plan.

We use **none without a noun**:

- 'How much money do you have?' '**None.**' (=no money)
- All the tickets have been sold. There are **none** left. (=no tickets left)

Or we use **none of ...**:

- This money is all yours. **None of it** is mine.

Compare **no, none** and **any**:

- I have **no luggage**.
- 'How much luggage do you have?' '**None.**' or 'I **don't** have **any**.'

After **none of + plural** (none of **the students**, none of **them** etc.) the verb can be singular or plural:

- None of the students **were** happy. or None of the students **was** happy.

B nothing nobody/no-one nowhere

You can use these words at the beginning of a sentence or alone (as answers to questions):

- 'What's going to happen?' '**Nobody** knows. / **No-one** knows.'
- 'What happened?' '**Nothing**'
- 'Where are you going?' '**Nowhere**. I'm staying here.'

You can also use these words after a verb, especially after **be** and **have**:

- The house is empty. There's **nobody** living there.
- We **had nothing** to eat.

nothing/nobody etc. = **not + anything/anybody** etc. :

- I said **nothing**. = I **didn't say anything**.
- Jane told **nobody** about her plans. = Jane **didn't tell anybody** about her plans.
- They have **nowhere** to live. = They **don't have anywhere** to live.

With **nothing/nobody** etc., we do *not* use a negative verb (**isn't**, **didn't** etc.):

- I **said** nothing. (*not* I didn't say nothing)

C After nobody/no-one you can use **they/them/their** (see also Unit 85E):

- Nobody** is perfect, are **they**? (=is he or she perfect?)
- No-one** did what I asked **them** to do. (=him or her)
- Nobody** in the class did **their** homework. (=his or her homework)

D Sometimes any/anything/anybody etc. means 'it doesn't matter which/what/who' (see Unit 85D).

Compare **no-** and **any**:

- There was **no** bus, so we walked home.
You can take **any** bus. They all go to the centre. (=it doesn't matter which bus)
- 'What do you want to eat?' '**Nothing**. I'm not hungry.'
I'm so hungry. I could eat **anything**. (=it doesn't matter what)
- It's a difficult job. **Nobody** wants to do it.
It's a very easy job. **Anybody** can do it. (=it doesn't matter who)

Exercises

86.1 Complete these sentences with **no, none or any**.

- 1 It was a public holiday, so there were **no** shops open.
- 2 I don't have **any** money. Can you lend me some?
- 3 We had to walk home. There were taxis.
- 4 We had to walk home. There weren't taxis.
- 5 'How many eggs do we have?' '..... Shall I get some?'
- 6 There's nowhere to cross the river. There's bridge.
- 7 We took a few pictures, but of them were very good.
- 8 'Did you take lots of pictures?' 'No, I didn't take'
- 9 I had to do what I did. I had alternative.
- 10 I don't like of this furniture. It's horrible.
- 11 We cancelled the party because of the people we invited were able to come.
- 12 Everyone knows they are getting married. It's secret.
- 13 The two books are exactly the same. There isn't difference.
- 14 'Do you know where Chris is?' 'I'm sorry. I have idea.'

86.2 Answer these questions using **none/nobody/nothing/nowhere**.

- 1 What did you do at the weekend?
- 2 Who are you waiting for?
- 3 How much bread did you buy?
- 4 Where are you going?
- 5 How many books have you read this year?
- 6 How much does it cost to get into the museum?

- Nothing** It was very boring.
 I'm just standing here.
 We already have enough.
 I'm staying here.
 I don't read books.
 It's free.

Now answer the same questions using **any/anybody/anything/anywhere**.

- 7 (1) I **didn't do anything** 10 (4)
- 8 (2) I'm 11 (5)
- 9 (3) I 12 (6)

86.3 Complete these sentences with **no- or any- + -body/-thing/-where**.

- 1 I don't want **anything** to drink. I'm not thirsty.
- 2 The bus was completely empty. There was on it.
- 3 'Where did you go for your holidays?' '..... I didn't go away.'
- 4 'Can you smell gas?' 'No, I can't smell'
- 5 Everybody seemed satisfied. complained.
- 6 Let's go away. We can go you like.
- 7 The town is still the same as it was years ago. has changed.
- 8 'What did you buy?' '..... I couldn't find I wanted.'
- 9 There was complete silence in the room. said

86.4 Which is right?

- 1 She didn't tell nobody / anybody about her plans. (anybody is correct)
- 2 The accident looked bad, but fortunately nobody / anybody was seriously injured.
- 3 I looked out of the window, but I couldn't see no-one / anyone.
- 4 The exam is very easy. Nobody / Anybody can pass it.
- 5 'What's in that box?' 'Nothing / Anything. It's empty.'
- 6 The future is uncertain. Nothing / Anything is possible.
- 7 I don't know nothing / anything about economics.
- 8 I'll try and answer no / any questions you ask me.
- 9 'Who were you talking to just now?' 'No-one / Anyone. I wasn't talking to no-one / anyone'.

much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty

A

We use **much** and **little** with *uncountable nouns*:

much luck **much time** **little energy** **little money**

We use **many** and **few** with *plural nouns*:

many friends **many people** **few cars** **few children**

We use **a lot of / lots of / plenty of** with both *uncountable* and *plural nouns*:

a lot of luck **lots of time** **plenty of money**
a lot of friends **lots of people** **plenty of ideas**

plenty = more than enough:

- There's no need to hurry. We've got **plenty of time**.
- There's **plenty to do** in this town.

B

Much is unusual in positive sentences (especially in spoken English). Compare:

- We **didn't** spend **much** money. *but* We **spent a lot of** money.
- Do you **see** David **much**? *but* I **see** David **a lot**.

But we use **too much / so much / as much** in positive sentences:

- We **spent too much** money.

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all kinds of sentences:

- Many** people drive too fast. or **A lot of** people drive too fast.
- Do you know **many** people? or Do you know **a lot of** people?
- There aren't **many** tourists here. or There aren't **a lot of** tourists here.

Note that we say **many years / many weeks / many days**:

- We've lived here for **many years**. (*not usually* a lot of years)

C

little = not much, **few** = not many:

- Gary is very busy with his job. He has **little time** for other things.
(= not much time, less time than he would like)
- Vicky doesn't like living in London. She has **few friends** there.
(= not many friends, not as many as she would like)

We often use **very little** and **very few**:

- Gary has **very little time** for other things.
- Vicky has **very few friends** in London.

D

a little = some, a small amount:

- Let's go and have coffee. We have **a little** time before the train leaves.
(**a little time** = some time, enough time to have a coffee)
- 'Do you speak English?' '**A little**' (so we can talk a bit)

a few = some, a small number:

- I enjoy my life here. I have **a few friends** and we meet quite often.
(**a few friends** = not many, but enough to have a good time)
- 'When was the last time you saw Clare?' '**A few days** ago.' (= 3 or 4 days ago)

E

Compare **little** and **a little, few** and **a few**:

- He spoke **little English**, so it was difficult to communicate with him.
- He spoke **a little English**, so we were able to communicate with him.
- She's lucky. She has **few problems**. (= not many problems)
- Things are not going so well for her. She has **a few problems**. (= some problems)

We say **only a little** (*not only little*) and **only a few** (*not only few*):

- Hurry! We **only** have **a little** time. (=some, but not much time)
- The village was small. There were **only a few** houses. (=some but not many houses)

Exercises

87.1 In some of these sentences **much** is incorrect or unnatural. Change **much** to **many** or **a lot (of)** where necessary. Write '**OK**' if the sentence is correct.

- 1 We didn't eat much.
- 2 My mother drinks much tea.
- 3 Be quick. We don't have much time.
- 4 It cost much to repair the car.
- 5 Did it cost much to repair the car?
- 6 You have much luggage. Let me help you.
- 7 There wasn't much traffic this morning.
- 8 I don't know much people in this town.
- 9 Do you eat much fruit?
- 10 Mike likes travelling. He travels much.

OK

My mother drinks a lot of tea.

87.2 Complete the sentences using **plenty of ...** or **plenty to ...**. Choose from:

hotels learn money room see time

- 1 There's no need to hurry. There's plenty of time.
- 2 He has no financial problems. He has
- 3 Come and sit with us. There's
- 4 She knows a lot, but she still has
- 5 It's an interesting town to visit. There
- 6 I'm sure we'll find somewhere to stay.

87.3 Put in **much/many/little/few** (one word only).

- 1 She isn't popular. She has few friends.
- 2 Anna is very busy these days. She has free time.
- 3 Did you take pictures at the wedding?
- 4 This is a modern city. There are old buildings.
- 5 The weather has been very dry recently. We've had rain.
- 6 I don't know London well. I haven't been there for years.
- 7 The two cars are similar. There is difference between them.
- 8 I'm not very busy today. I don't have to do.
- 9 It's a wonderful place to live. There are better places to be.

87.4 Which is right?

- 1 She's lucky. She has few problems / a few problems. (few problems is correct)
- 2 Can you lend me few dollars / a few dollars?
- 3 It was the middle of the night, so there was little traffic / a little traffic.
- 4 They got married few years ago / a few years ago.
- 5 I can't give you a decision yet. I need little time / a little time to think.
- 6 I don't know much Russian – only few words / only a few words.
- 7 It was a surprise that he won the game. Few people / A few people expected him to win.

87.5 Put in **little / a little / few / a few**.

- 1 Gary is very busy with his job. He has time for other things.
- 2 Listen carefully. I'm going to give you advice.
- 3 Do you mind if I ask you questions?
- 4 It's not a very interesting place, so tourists visit.
- 5 I don't think Amy would be a good teacher. She has patience.
- 6 'Would you like milk in your coffee?' 'Yes, , please.'
- 7 This is a boring place to live. There's to do.
- 8 I know Hong Kong quite well. I've been there times.
- 9 There were only people at the meeting.
- 10 'Did you do all this work on your own?' 'No, I had help from my friends.'

all / all of most / most of no / none of etc.**A****all some any most much many (a) little (a) few no**

You can use these words with a noun (**some food / few books** etc.):

- All cars** have wheels.
- Some cars** can go faster than others.
- Many people** drive too fast.
- I go away **most weekends**.
- I feel really tired. I've got **no energy**.

We do not say 'all of cars', 'some of people' etc. (see Section B):

- Some people** learn more easily than others. (*not Some of people*)

B**all half some any most much many (a) little (a) few none**

You can use these words with **of** (**some of / most of** etc.):

**some of
most of
none of** etc.

+ **the ... my ...
this ... these ...
that ... those ... etc.**

So you can say:

some of the people, **some of those people** (*but not some of people*)
most of my time, **most of the time** (*but not most of time*)

- Some of the people I work with** are very strange.
- None of this money** is mine.
- Have you read **any of these books**?
- I was ill yesterday. I spent **most of the day** in bed.

You don't need **of** after **all** or **half**. So you can say:

- All my friends** live near here. *or* All **of** my friends ...
- Half this money** is mine. *or* Half **of** this money ...

Compare:

- All flowers** are beautiful. (= all flowers in general)
- All (of) these flowers** are beautiful. (= a specific group of flowers)
- Most problems** have a solution. (= most problems in general)
We were able to solve **most of the problems we had**. (= a specific group of problems)

C

You can use **all of / some of / none of** etc. + **it/us/you/them**:

**all of
some of
any of
most of
none of** etc.

+

**it
us
you
them**

- A: Do you like this music?
B: **Some of it**. Not **all of it**.
- A: How many of these people do you know?
B: **None of them**. / **A few of them**.
- Do **any of you** want to come to a party tonight?
(said to more than 2 people)

We say: **all of us / all of you / half of it / half of them** etc. You need **of** before **it/us/you/them**:

- All of us** were late. (*not all us*)
- I haven't finished the book yet. I've only read **half of it**. (*not half it*)

D

We also use **some/most** etc. alone, *without* a noun:

- Some cars have four doors and **some** have two.
- A few of the shops were open, but **most** (of them) were closed.
- Half this money is mine, and **half** (of it) is yours. (*not the half*)

Exercises

88.1 Put in **of** where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

- 1 All cars have wheels. (*the sentence is already complete*)
- 2 None **of** this money is mine.
- 3 There were problems at the airport and some flights were cancelled.
- 4 Some the films I've seen recently have been very violent.
- 5 Joe never goes to museums. He says that all museums are boring.
- 6 I think some people watch too much TV.
- 7 Do you want any these magazines or can I throw them away?
- 8 Kate has lived in London most her life.
- 9 Joe has lived in Chicago all his life.
- 10 Most days I get up before 7 o'clock.
- 11 I usually have a little sugar in my coffee.
- 12 They won the lottery a few years ago, but they've spent most the money.

88.2 Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use **of** (**some of** / **most of** etc.) where necessary.

accidents	European countries	my dinner	the players
birds	her friends	my spare time	the population
cars	her opinions	the buildings	these books

- 1 I haven't read many **of these books**
- 2 All **cars** have wheels.
- 3 I spend much gardening.
- 4 Many are caused by bad driving.
- 5 It's a historic town. Many are over 400 years old.
- 6 When Emily got married, she kept it a secret. She didn't tell any
- 7 Not many people live in the north of the country. Most live in the south.
- 8 Not all can fly. For example, the penguin can't fly.
- 9 Our team played badly and lost the game. None played well.
- 10 Emma and I have different ideas. I don't agree with many
- 11 Sarah travels a lot in Europe. She has been to most
- 12 I had no appetite. I could only eat half

88.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 The building was damaged in the explosion. All **the windows** were broken.
- 2 We argue sometimes, but get on well most of
- 3 I went to the cinema by myself. None of wanted to come.
- 4 The test was hard. I could only answer half
- 5 Some of you took at the wedding were really good.
- 6 'Did you spend all I gave you?' 'No, there's some left.'

88.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

all of / some of / none of + it/them/us (all of it / some of them etc.)

- 1 These books are all Sarah's. **None of them** belong to me.
- 2 'How many of these books have you read?' ' Every one.'
- 3 We all got wet in the rain because had an umbrella.
- 4 Some of this money is yours and is mine.
- 5 Many of my friends have travelled a lot, but has ever been to Africa.
- 6 Not all the tourists in the group were Spanish. were French.
- 7 I watched most of the film, but not
- 8 He told us his life story, but was true. It was all invented.

both / both of neither / neither of

either / either of

A

We use **both/neither/either** for two things.

You can use these words with a noun (**both books, neither book** etc.).

For example, you are going out to eat. There are two possible restaurants. You say:

- Both restaurants** are good. (*not the both restaurants*)
- Neither restaurant** is expensive.
- We can go to **either restaurant**. I don't mind. (= one or the other, it doesn't matter which)
- I haven't been to **either restaurant** before. (= not one or the other)

You can also use **both/neither/either** without a noun:

- 'Which do you prefer, basketball or tennis?' 'It's hard to say. I like **both**.'
- 'Is your friend British or American?' '**Neither**. She's Australian.'
- 'Do you want tea or coffee?' '**Either**. I don't mind.'

B

both of ... / neither of ... / either of ...

We use **both of / neither of / either of + the/these/my/Tom's** ... etc. So we say 'both of **the** restaurants', 'both of **those** restaurants' etc. (*but not both of restaurants*):

- Both of these** restaurants are good.
- Neither of the** restaurants we went to was expensive.
- I haven't been to **either of those** restaurants.

You don't need **of** after **both**. So you can say:

- Both of these** restaurants are good. *or* **Both these** restaurants are good.

We also use **both of / neither of / either of + us/you/them**:

- (*talking to two people*) Can **either of you** speak Russian?
- I asked two people how to get to the station, but **neither of them** knew.

We say 'both **of** before **us/you/them** (you need to use **of**):

- Both of us** were tired. (*not Both us were ...*)

After **neither of** ... a verb can be singular or plural:

- Neither of them **is** at home. *or* Neither of them **are** at home.

C

You can say:

both ... and ...

- Both** Chris **and** Paul were late.
- I was **both** tired **and** hungry when I arrived home.

neither ... nor ...

- Neither** Chris **nor** Paul came to the party.
- There was an accident outside our house, but we **neither** saw **nor** heard anything.

either ... or ...

- I'm not sure where Maria's from. She's **either** Spanish **or** Italian.
- Either** you apologise, **or** I'll never speak to you again.

D

Compare **either/neither/both** (two things) and **any/none/all** (more than two):

- There are **two** good hotels here.
You could stay at **either** of them.
- We tried **two** hotels.
Neither of them had a room.
Both of them were full.

- There are **many** good hotels here.
You could stay at **any** of them.
- We tried **a lot of** hotels.
None of them had a room.
All of them were full.

Exercises

89.1 Complete the sentences with **both/neither/either**.

- 1 ‘Do you want tea or coffee?’ ‘Either.... I really don’t mind.’
- 2 ‘What day is it today – the 18th or the 19th?’ ‘..... It’s the 20th.’
- 3 A: Where did you go on your trip – Korea or Japan?
B: We went to A week in Korea and a week in Japan.
- 4 ‘Shall we sit in the corner or by the window?’ ‘..... I don’t mind.’
- 5 ‘Where’s Lisa? Is she at work or at home?’ ‘..... She’s away on holiday.’
- 6 ‘Is it true that Kate speaks Spanish and Arabic?’ ‘Yes, she speaks fluently.’

89.2 Complete the sentences with **both/neither/either**. Use of where necessary.

- 1 Both my parents are from Egypt.
- 2 To get to the town centre, you can walk along the river or you can go along the road.
You can go way.
- 3 I went to Carl’s house twice, but times he wasn’t at home.
- 4 Tom’s parents is English. His father is Polish and his mother is Italian.
- 5 I saw an accident this morning. One car drove into the back of another. Fortunately driver was injured, but cars were badly damaged.
- 6 I have two sisters and a brother. My brother is working, but my sisters are still at school.

89.3 Complete the sentences with **both/neither/either + of us / of them**.

- 1 I asked two people how to get to the station, but neither of them knew.
- 2 I was invited to two parties last week, but I couldn’t go to
- 3 There were two windows in the room. It was very warm, so I opened
- 4 Sam and I often play tennis, but we’re not very good. can play well.
- 5 I tried two bookshops for the book I wanted to buy, but had it.

89.4 Write sentences with **both ... and ... / neither ... nor ... / either ... or**

- 1 Chris was late. So was Pat. Both Chris and Pat were late.
- 2 He didn’t say hello, and he didn’t smile. He neither said hello nor smiled.
- 3 It was a boring movie. It was long too.
The movie
- 4 Joe doesn’t have a car. Sam doesn’t have one either.
.....
- 5 Emily speaks German and she speaks Russian too.
.....
- 6 Ben doesn’t watch TV and he doesn’t read newspapers.
Ben
- 7 Is that man’s name Richard? Or is it Robert? It’s one of the two.
That man’s name
- 8 I don’t have time to go on holiday. And I don’t have the money.
I have
- 9 We can leave today or we can leave tomorrow – whichever you prefer.
We

89.5 Complete the sentences with **neither/either/none/any**.

- 1 We tried a lot of hotels, but none of them had a room.
- 2 Sam has two sisters, but I haven’t met of them.
- 3 Emily has four brothers, but I haven’t met of them.
- 4 There were a few shops in the street, but of them was open.
- 5 Spain, Italy, Greece, Turkey – have you been to of these countries?
- 6 I could meet you next Monday or Thursday. Would of those days suit you?
- 7 Mark and I couldn’t get into the house because of us had a key.

all every whole

A everybody/everyone/everything and all

We say:

- Everybody** was happy. or **Everyone** was happy. (*not all were happy*)
- He thinks he knows **everything**. (*not knows all*)
- Our holiday was a disaster. **Everything** went wrong. (*not all went wrong*)

We do not often use **all alone** in this way. We do not say ‘all were happy’, ‘he knows all’ etc.

We use **all** in the following ways:

- all + noun (all cars, all my money etc.)**
- all of + us/you/them**
- we/you/they ... all ...** (see also Unit 110D)
- all about ...**
- all ... = the only thing(s)**

- All my friends** were happy.
- All of us** were happy.
- We** were **all** happy.
- He knows **all about computers**.
- All I've eaten today** is a banana.
(=the only thing I've eaten today)

B whole and all

Whole = complete, entire. We use **whole** mostly with *singular nouns*:

- Did you read **the whole book**? (=all the book, not just a part of it)
- Emily has lived **her whole life** in the same town.
- I was so hungry, I ate **a whole packet** of biscuits. (=a complete packet)

We do not normally use **whole** with *uncountable nouns* (**water, food, money** etc.).

We say:

- Did you spend **all the money** I gave you? (*not the whole money*)
- I read **all the information** carefully. (*not the whole information*)

We use **the/my/a** etc. before **whole**. Compare **whole** and **all**:

- I read **the whole book**. *but* I read **all the information**.

C every day / all day / the whole day

We use **every** to say how often something happens (**every day / every ten minutes** etc.):

- When we were on holiday, we went to the beach **every day**. (*not all days*)
- The bus service is excellent. There's a bus **every ten minutes**.
- We don't see each other very often – about **every six months**.

All day or **the whole day** = the complete day from beginning to end:

- We spent **all day** on the beach. or We spent **the whole day** ...
- Dan was very quiet. He didn't say a word **all evening**. or ... **the whole evening**.

Note that we say **all day** (*not all the day*), **all week** (*not all the week*) etc.

Compare **all the time** and **every time**:

- They never go out. They are at home **all the time**. (=always, continuously)
- Every time** I see you, you look different. (=each time, on every occasion)

D Every/everybody/everyone/everything

are *singular words*, so we use a *singular verb*:

- Every seat** in the theatre **was** taken.
- Everybody has** arrived. (*not have arrived*)

But we use **they/them/their** after **everybody/everyone**:

- Everybody said they enjoyed themselves**. (=everybody enjoyed himself or herself)

Exercises

90.1 Complete these sentences with **all**, **everything** or **everybody/everyone**.

- 1 It was a good party. Everybody had a great time.
- 2 All I've eaten today is a banana.
- 3 has their faults. Nobody is perfect.
- 4 Nothing has changed. is the same as it was.
- 5 Kate told me about her new job. It sounds interesting.
- 6 Can write their names on a piece of paper, please?
- 7 Why are you always thinking about money? Money isn't
- 8 I'm really exhausted. I want to do is sleep.
- 9 When the fire alarm rang, left the building immediately.
- 10 Amy didn't say where she was going. she said was that she was going away.
- 11 We have completely different opinions. I disagree with she says.
- 12 We all did well in the exam. in our class passed.
- 13 We all did well in the exam. of us passed.
- 14 Why are you so lazy? Why do you expect me to do for you?

90.2 Write sentences with **whole**.

- 1 I read the book from beginning to end. I read the whole book.
- 2 Everyone in the team played well.
The
- 3 Paul opened a box of chocolates. He started eating. When he finished, there were no chocolates left in the box. He ate
- 4 The police came to the house. They were looking for something. They searched everywhere, every room. They
- 5 Everyone in Ed and Jane's family plays tennis. Ed and Jane play, and so do all their children.
The
- 6 Sarah worked from early in the morning until late in the evening.
.....
- 7 Jack and Lisa had a week's holiday by the sea. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end of the week. It

Now write sentences 6 and 7 again using **all instead of **whole**.**

- 8 (6) Sarah
- 9 (7)

90.3 Complete these sentences using **every** with the following:

five minutes	ten minutes	four hours	six months	four years
---------------------	--------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------

- 1 The bus service is very good. There's a bus every ten minutes
- 2 Tom is ill. He has some medicine. He has to take it
- 3 The Olympic Games take place
- 4 We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over our house
- 5 Martin goes to the dentist for a check-up

90.4 Which is right?

- 1 Did you spend the whole money / all the money I gave you? (all the money is correct)
- 2 Eve works every day / all days except Sunday.
- 3 I'm tired. I've been working hard all the day / all day.
- 4 It was a terrible fire. Whole building / The whole building was destroyed.
- 5 It's a very sad song. Every time / All the time I hear it, it makes me cry.
- 6 I don't like the weather here. It rains every time / all the time.
- 7 When I was on holiday, all my luggage / my whole luggage was stolen.

each and every

A

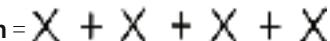
Each and **every** are similar. Often it is possible to use **each** or **every**:

- Each** time I see you, you look different. *or* **Every** time I see you ...

But **each** and **every** are not exactly the same.

We use **each** when we think of things separately, one by one.

- Study **each sentence** carefully.
(= study the sentences one by one)

each = 

Each is more usual for a small number:

- There were four books on the table.
- Each book** was a different colour.
- (in a card game) At the beginning of the game, **each player** has three cards.

Each (but not **every**) can be used for two things:

- In football, **each team** has eleven players. (*not* every team)

We use **every** (not **each**) to say how often something happens:

- 'How often do you use your car?' '**Every day.**' (*not* Each day)
- There's a bus **every ten minutes.** (*not* each ten minutes)

We use **every** when we think of things as a group. The meaning is similar to **all**.

- Every window** in the house was open.
(= all the windows in the house)

every = 

Every is more usual for a large number:

- Kate loves reading. She has read **every book** in the library. (= all the books)
- I'd like to visit **every country** in the world. (= all the countries)

B

Compare the structures we use with **each** and **every**.

We use **each** with or without a noun:

- None of the rooms are the same.
Each room is different. *or*
Each is different.

Or you can use **each one**:

- Each one** is different.

We say **each of (the/these/them) ... etc.**:

- Each of the** books was a different colour. (*not* each of books)
- Each of them** was a different colour.
- Read **each of these** sentences carefully.

We use **every** with a noun:

- She's read **every book** in the library.

We don't use **every** alone, but you can say **every one**:

- A: Have you read all these books?
B: Yes, **every one**.

We say **every one of ... (but not every of):**

- I've read **every one of those** books.
(*not* every of those books)
- I've read **every one of them**.

C

We also use **each** in the middle of a sentence. For example:

- The students were **each** given a book. (= Each student was given a book.)

We say **a dollar each, ten pounds each** etc.:

- These oranges are **40 pence each.** (**each** = for one orange)

D

everyone and **every one**

Everyone (one word) is only for people (= everybody).

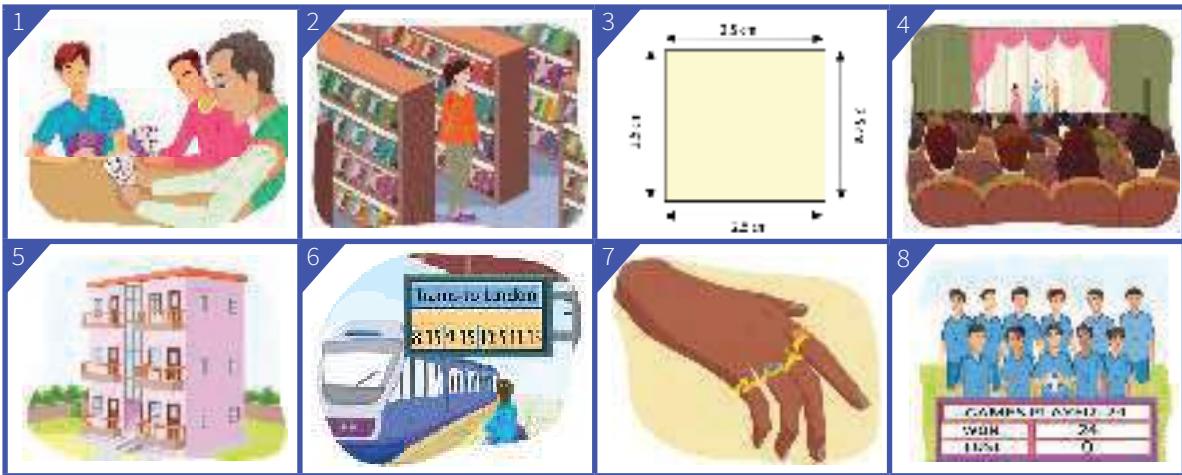
- Everyone** enjoyed the party. (= **Everybody** ...)

Every one (two words) is for things or people:

- Sarah is invited to lots of parties and she goes to **every one**. (= to **every party**)

Exercises

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **each** or **every**.



- 1 **Each** player has three cards.
- 2 Kate has read **every** book in the library.
- 3 side of a square is the same length.
- 4 seat in the theatre was taken.
- 5 There are six apartments in the building. one has a balcony.
- 6 There's a train to London hour.
- 7 She was wearing four rings – one on finger.
- 8 Our football team is playing well. We've won game this season.

91.2 Put in **each**, **each of** or **every**.

- 1 There were four books on the table. **Each** book was a different colour.
- 2 The Olympic Games are held **every** four years.
- 3 parent worries about their children.
- 4 In a game of tennis there are two or four players. player has a racket.
- 5 Nicola plays volleyball Thursday evening.
- 6 I understood most of what they said but not word.
- 7 The book is divided into five parts and these has three sections.
- 8 I get paid four weeks.
- 9 I called the office two or three times, but time it was closed.
- 10 Car seat belts save lives. driver should wear one.
- 11 A friend of mine has three children. I always give them a present at Christmas.
- 12 (from an exam) Answer all five questions. Write your answer to question on a separate sheet of paper.

91.3 Complete the sentences using **each**.

- 1 The price of one of those oranges is 40 pence. **Those oranges are 40 pence each**
- 2 I had ten pounds and so did Sonia. Sonia and I
- 3 One of those postcards costs a pound. Those
- 4 The hotel was expensive. I paid 200 dollars and so did you. We

91.4 Put in **everyone** (1 word) or **every one** (2 words).

- 1 Sarah is invited to a lot of parties and she goes to **every one**
- 2 I remember school very clearly. I remember in my class.
- 3 I asked her lots of questions and she answered correctly.
- 4 Amy is very popular. likes her.
- 5 I dropped a tray of glasses. Unfortunately broke.

Relative clauses 1: clauses with **who/that/which**

A

Study this example situation:

Last week we had a party and a lot of people came. Everybody enjoyed it.

Everybody **who came to the party** enjoyed it.
relative clause

A *clause* is a part of a sentence. A *relative clause* tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

the woman **who lives next door to me**

('who lives next door to me' tells us which woman)

people **who complain all the time**

('who complain all the time' tells us what kind of people)

We use **who** in a relative clause for people (not things):

- The woman who** lives next door to me is a doctor.
- I don't like **people who** complain all the time.
- An architect is **someone who** designs buildings.
- What was the name of **the person who** called?
- Do you know **anyone who** wants to buy a car?

We also use **that** for people, but not **which**:

- The woman **that lives next door to me** is a doctor. (*not the woman which*)

Sometimes you must use **who** (*not that*) for people – see Unit 95.

B

When we are talking about things, we use **that** or **which** (*not who*) in a relative clause:

- I don't like **stories that** have unhappy endings.
 or ... **stories which** have unhappy endings.
- Grace works for **a company that** makes furniture.
 or ... **a company which** makes furniture.
- The machine that** broke down is working again now.
 or **The machine which** broke down ...

In these examples **that** is more usual than **which**, but sometimes you must use **which**. See Unit 95.

C

In relative clauses we use **who/that/which**, not **he/she/they/it**.

Compare:

- I met a Canadian woman at the party. **She** is an English teacher. (2 sentences)
 I met **a Canadian woman who** is an English teacher. (1 sentence)
- I can't find the keys. **They** were on the table.
 Where are **the keys that** were on the table? (*not the keys they were*)

D

What = the thing(s) that

Compare **what** and **that**:

- What happened** was my fault. (= the thing that happened)

but

- Everything **that happened** was my fault.
 (*not Everything what happened*)
- The machine **that broke down** is now working again.
 (*not The machine what broke down*)

Exercises

92.1 What do these words mean? Choose from the box and write sentences with **who**.

steals from a shop	buys something from a shop
designs buildings	pays rent to live somewhere
doesn't tell the truth	breaks into a house to steal things
is not brave	expects the worst to happen

- 1 (an architect) *An architect is someone who designs buildings.*
- 2 (a customer)
- 3 (a burglar)
- 4 (a coward)
- 5 (a tenant)
- 6 (a shoplifter)
- 7 (a liar)
- 8 (a pessimist)

92.2 Make one sentence from two. Use **who/that/which**.

- 1 A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital.

The girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital.

- 2 A waiter served us. He was impolite and impatient.

The waiter who served us was impolite and impatient.

- 3 A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt.

The building which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.

- 4 Some people were arrested. They have now been released.

The people who were arrested have now been released.

- 5 A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour.

The bus which goes to the airport runs every half hour.

92.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use **who/that/which**.

happened in the past	-makes furniture-
runs away from home	can support life
cannot be explained	has stayed there
developed the theory of relativity	were hanging on the wall

- 1 Helen works for a company *that makes furniture*

2 The movie is about a girl

3 What happened to the pictures

4 A mystery is something

5 I've heard it's a good hotel, but I don't know anyone

6 History is the study of things

7 Albert Einstein was the scientist

8 It seems that Earth is the only planet

92.4 Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

- 1 I don't like stories who have unhappy endings.
- 2 What was the name of the person who phoned?
- 3 Where's the nearest shop who sells bread?
- 4 Dan said some things about me they were not true.
- 5 The driver which caused the accident was fined £500.
- 6 Do you know the person that took these pictures?
- 7 We live in a world what is changing all the time.
- 8 Gary apologised for what he said.
- 9 What was the name of the horse what won the race?

stories that have

OK

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without **who/that/which**

A

Look at these example sentences from Unit 92:

- The woman who lives** next door to me is a doctor. (or The woman **that** lives ...)
 The woman lives next door to me **who** (= the woman) is the *subject*
- Where are **the keys that were** on the table? (or ... the keys **which** were ...)
 The keys were on the table **that** (= the keys) is the *subject*

You must use **who/that/which** when it is the *subject* of the relative clause. You cannot leave out **who/that/which** in these examples.

B

Sometimes **who/that/which** is the *object* of the verb. For example:

- The woman who I wanted to see** was away on holiday.
 I wanted to see **the woman** **who** (= the woman) is the *object*
I is the *subject*
- Did you find **the keys that you lost**?
 you lost **the keys** **that** (= the keys) is the *object*
you is the *subject*

When **who/that/which** is the object, you can leave it out. So you can say:

- The woman I wanted to see** was away. or The woman **who** I wanted to see ...
- Did you find **the keys you lost**? or ... the keys **that** you lost?
- The dress Lisa bought** doesn't fit her very well. or The dress **that** Lisa bought ...
- Is there **anything I can do**? or ... anything **that** I can do?

Note that we say:

the keys you lost (not the keys you lost them)
the dress Lisa bought (not the dress Lisa bought it)

C

Note the position of prepositions (**to/in/for** etc.) in relative clauses:

- Tom is **talking to** a woman. Do you know her? (2 sentences)
 - Do you know the woman Tom is **talking to**? (or ... the woman **who/that** Tom is talking to)
- I **slept in** a bed. It wasn't comfortable. (2 sentences)
 - The bed I **slept in** wasn't comfortable. (or The bed **that/which** I slept in ...)

- Are these **the books you were looking for**? or
 Are these the books **that/which** you were ...
- The man I was sitting next to on the plane** talked all the time. or
 The man **who/that** I was sitting next to ...

Note that we say:

the books you were looking for (not the books you were looking for them)
the man I was sitting next to (not the man I was sitting next to him)

D

We say:

- Everything (that) they said** was true. (not Everything what they said)
- I gave her **all the money (that) I had**. (not all the money what I had)

What = the thing(s) that:

- What they said** was true. (=The things that they said)

Exercises

93.1 In some of these sentences you need **who** or **that**. Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 The woman lives next door is a doctor.
- 2 Did you find the keys you lost?
- 3 The people we met last night were very friendly.
- 4 The people work in the office are very friendly.
- 5 I like the people I work with.
- 6 What have you done with the money I gave you?
- 7 What happened to the money was on the table?
- 8 What's the worst film you've ever seen?
- 9 What's the best thing it has ever happened to you?

The woman who lives next door
OK
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

93.2 What do you say in these situations? Complete each sentence with a relative clause.

- 1 Your friend lost some keys. You want to know if he found them. You say:
Did you find the keys you lost ?
- 2 A friend is wearing a dress. You like it. You tell her:
I like the dress
- 3 A friend is going to the cinema. You want to know the name of the film. You say:
What's the name of the film ?
- 4 You wanted to visit a museum, but it was shut. You tell a friend:
The museum was shut.
- 5 You invited people to your party. Some of them couldn't come. You tell someone:
Some of the people couldn't come.
- 6 Your friend had to do some work. You want to know if she has finished. You say:
Have you finished the work ?
- 7 You rented a car. It broke down after a few miles. You tell a friend:
Unfortunately the car broke down after a few miles.

93.3 These sentences all have a relative clause with a preposition. Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 Did you find (looking / for / you / the books / were)?
Did you find the books you were looking for ?
- 2 We couldn't go to (we / invited / to / were / the wedding).
We couldn't go to
- 3 What's the name of (the hotel / about / me / told / you)?
What's the name of ?
- 4 Unfortunately I didn't get (applied / I / the job / for).
Unfortunately I didn't get
- 5 Did you enjoy (you / the concert / to / went)?
Did you enjoy ?
- 6 Gary is a good person to know. He's (on / rely / can / somebody / you).
Gary is a good person to know. He's
- 7 Who were (the people / with / were / you) in the restaurant yesterday?
Who were in the restaurant yesterday?

93.4 Put in **that** or **what** where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

- 1 I gave her all the money I had. (all the money **that** I had is also correct)
- 2 Did you hear **what** they said?
- 3 She gives her children everything they want.
- 4 Tell me you want and I'll try to get it for you.
- 5 Why do you blame me for everything goes wrong?
- 6 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do I can.
- 7 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do the best I can.
- 8 I don't agree with you said.
- 9 I don't trust him. I don't believe anything he says.

Relative clauses 3: whose/whom/where

A whose

Study this example situation:

When we were driving home, we saw some people standing by the road. Their car had broken down, so we stopped to help them.

We helped some people **whose** car had broken down.
(= **their** car had broken down)



We use **whose** mostly for people:

- A widow is a woman **whose husband is dead**.
(**her** husband is dead)
- I met someone **whose brother I went to school with**.
(I went to school with **his/her** brother)

Compare **who** and **whose**:

- I met a man **who** knows you. (**he** knows you)
- I met a man **whose sister** knows you. (**his sister** knows you)

Do not confuse **whose** and **who's**. The pronunciation is the same, but **who's** = who **is** or who **has**:

- I have a friend **who's learning** Arabic. (**who's** = who **is**)
- I have a friend **who's just started** learning Arabic. (**who's** = who **has**)
- I have a friend **whose** sister is learning Arabic.

B whom

Whom is possible instead of **who** when it is the *object* of the verb (see Unit 93B):

- George is a person **whom I admire** very much. (I admire **him**)

You can also use a preposition + **whom** (**to whom** / **from whom** / **with whom** etc.):

- It's important to have friends **with whom** you can relax. (you can relax **with them**)

Whom is a formal word and we do not often use it in spoken English. We usually prefer to say:

- a person I admire** a lot or a person **who/that** I admire a lot
- friends you can relax with** or friends **who/that** you can relax with

C where

We use **where** in a relative clause to talk about a place:

- I recently went back to **the town where** I grew up. (I grew up **there**)
- The restaurant where** we had lunch was near the airport.
- I would like to live in **a place where** there is plenty of sunshine.

D the day, the time, the reason ...

We say '**the day** we got married', '**the year** I was born', '**the last** time they met' etc.:

- I can't meet you on Friday. That's **the day I'm going away**.
- The last time I saw her**, she looked great.

You can also use **that**:

- The last time **that** I saw her, she looked great.

We say '**the reason** I'm calling you', '**the reason** she didn't get the job' etc.

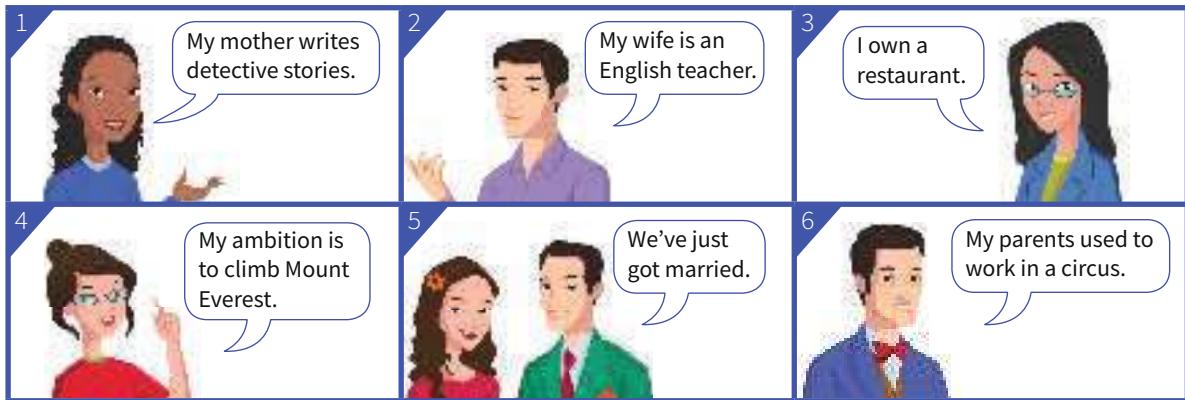
- The reason I'm calling you** is to ask your advice.

You can also use **that**:

- The reason **that** I'm calling you ... or The reason **why** I'm calling you ...

Exercises

94.1 You met these people at a party:



The next day you tell a friend about these people. Complete the sentences using **who** or **whose**.

- I met somebody **whose mother writes detective stories**
- I met a man
- I met a woman
- I met somebody
- I met a couple
- I met somebody

94.2 For each situation write a sentence with **whom** (more formal) and without **whom** (less formal).

- You met a friend. You hadn't seen him for years.
 more formal I met a friend **whom I hadn't seen for years**
 less formal I met a friend **I hadn't seen for years**
- You needed a lawyer. A friend of yours recommended one.
 more formal I went to see a lawyer
- You called your bank with a problem. You spoke to somebody, but he wasn't very helpful.
 more formal The person wasn't very helpful.
 less formal The person
- Tom was in love with a woman, but she wasn't in love with Tom.
 more formal The woman wasn't in love with him.
 less formal The woman wasn't in love with him.

94.3 Complete the sentences using **who/whom/whose/where**.

- We helped some people **whose** car had broken down.
- A cemetery is a place people are buried.
- A pacifist is a person believes that all wars are wrong.
- An orphan is a child parents are dead.
- What's the name of the hotel your parents are staying?
- This school is only for children first language is not English.
- The person from I bought my car is a friend of my father's.
- I live in a friendly village everybody knows everybody else.

94.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day **I'm going away** was that the salary was too low.
- The reason was that the salary was too low.
- I'll never forget the time
- was the year
- The reason is that neither of them can drive.
- The last time I was
- Do you remember the day ?

Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)

A

There are two types of relative clause. In these examples, the relative clauses are underlined. Compare:

Type 1

- The woman who lives next door to me is a doctor.
- Grace works for a company that makes furniture.
- We stayed at the hotel (that) you recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses tell you which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

'The woman **who lives next door to me**' tells us *which* woman.

'A company **that makes furniture**' tells us *what kind* of company.

'The hotel **(that) you recommended**' tells us *which* hotel.

We do not use commas (,) with these clauses:

- We know a lot of people who live in London.

Type 2

- My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.
- Anna told me about her new job, which she's enjoying a lot.
- We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses do not tell you which person or thing the speaker means. We already know which thing or person is meant: 'My brother Ben', 'Anna's new job' and 'the Park Hotel'.

The relative clauses in these sentences give us *extra information* about the person or thing.

We use commas (,) with these clauses:

- My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

B

In both types of relative clause we use **who** for people and **which** for things. But:

Type 1

You can use **that**:

- Do you know anyone **who/that** speaks French and Italian?
- Grace works for a company **which/that** makes furniture.

You can leave out **who/which/that** when it is the object (see Unit 93):

- We stayed at **the hotel** (that/which) **you recommended**.
- This morning I met **somebody** (who/that) **I hadn't seen for ages**.

We do not often use **whom** in this type of clause (see Unit 94B).

Type 2

You cannot use **that**:

- John, **who** speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide. (*not that speaks*)
- Anna told me about her new job, **which** she's enjoying a lot.

You cannot leave out **who** or **which**:

- We stayed at the Park Hotel, **which** a friend of ours recommended.
- This morning I met Chris, **who** I hadn't seen for ages.

You can use **whom** for people (when it is the object):

- This morning I met Chris, **whom** I hadn't seen for ages.

C

In both types of relative clause you can use **whose** and **where**:

- We helped some people **whose** car had broken down.
- What's the name of the place **where** you went on holiday?

- Lisa, **whose** car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.
- Kate has just been to Sweden, **where** her daughter lives.

Exercises

95.1 Make one sentence from two. Use the information in brackets to make a relative clause (Type 2). You will need to use **who/whom/whose/which/where**.

- 1 Catherine is very friendly. (She lives next door to us.)
Catherine, who lives next door to us, is very friendly.
- 2 We stayed at the Park Hotel. (A friend of ours recommended this hotel.)
We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.
- 3 We drove to the airport. (The airport was not far from the city.)
We drove to the airport,
- 4 Kate's husband is an airline pilot. (I have never met Kate's husband.)
Kate's pilot.
- 5 Lisa is away from home a lot. (Lisa's job involves a lot of travelling.)
Lisa
- 6 Paul and Emily have a daughter, Alice. (Alice has just started school.)
Paul and Emily have
- 7 The new stadium will hold 90,000 spectators. (The stadium will be finished next month.)
.....
- 8 My brother lives in Alaska. (Alaska is the largest state in the US.)
.....
- 9 Our teacher was very kind. (I have forgotten her name.)
.....
- 10 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. (We saw a lot of interesting things in the museum.)
.....

95.2 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use a relative clause of Type 1 or Type 2. Use commas where necessary.

- 1 My brother is an architect. (He lives in Hong Kong.)
My brother, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.
- 2 The strike at the factory has now ended. (The strike began ten days ago.)
The strike at the factory
- 3 I was looking for a book this morning. (I've found it now.)
I've found
- 4 I've had my car for 15 years. (This car has never broken down.)
My car
- 5 A lot of people applied for the job. (Few of them had the necessary qualifications.)
Few of
- 6 Amy showed me a picture of her son. (Her son is a police officer.)
Amy showed me

95.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct them (and put in commas) where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write 'OK'.

- 1 Anna told me about her new job that she's enjoying very much.
Anna told me about her new job, which she's enjoying very much.
- 2 My office that is on the second floor is very small.
.....
- 3 The office that I'm using at the moment is very small.
.....
- 4 Sarah's father that used to be in the army now works for a TV company.
.....
- 5 The doctor that examined me couldn't find anything wrong.
.....
- 6 The sun that is one of millions of stars in the universe provides us with heat and light.
.....

Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)

A preposition + whom/which

You can use a preposition + **whom** (for people) and **which** (for things).

So you can say:

to whom	with whom	about whom	<i>etc.</i>
of which	without which	from which	<i>etc.</i>

- Mr Lee, **to whom I spoke** at the meeting, is interested in our proposal.
- Fortunately we had a good map, **without which** we would have got lost.

In spoken English we often keep the preposition after the verb in the relative clause:

- Katherine told me she works for a company called ‘Latoma’, **which** I’d never **heard of** before.

We do not use **whom** when the preposition is in this position:

- Mr Lee, **who I spoke to** at the meeting, is interested in our proposal.
(not Mr Lee, whom I spoke to ...)

For prepositions in relative clauses, see also Unit 93C.

B all of / most of etc. + whom/which

You can say:

- Helen has three brothers, **all of whom** are married.
- They asked me a lot of questions, **most of which** I couldn’t answer.

In the same way you can say:

many of whom	some of whom	neither of whom	<i>etc.</i>	(for people)
none of which	both of which	one of which	<i>etc.</i>	(for things)

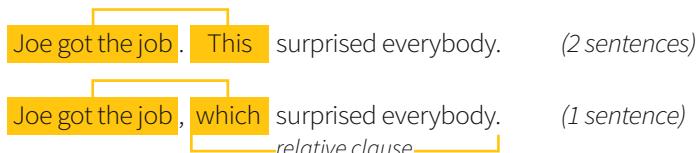
- Martin tried on three jackets, **none of which** fitted him.
- Two men, **neither of whom** I had seen before, came into the office.
- They have three cars, **two of which** they rarely use.
- Sue has a lot of friends, **many of whom** she was at school with.

You can also say:

- | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| the cause of which | the name of which | <i>etc.</i> |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
- The house was damaged in a fire, **the cause of which** was never established.
 - We stayed at a beautiful hotel, **the name of which** I don’t remember now.

C which (not what)

Study this example:



In this example, **which** = ‘the fact that Joe got the job’. We use **which** (not what) in sentences like these:

- Sarah couldn’t meet us, **which** was a shame. (not what was a shame)
- The weather was good, **which** we hadn’t expected. (not what we hadn’t expected)

For **what** and **that**, see Units 92D and 93D.

Exercises

96.1 Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + whom or which. Choose a preposition from:

after for in of of to with without

- 1 Fortunately we had a good map, **without which** we would have got lost.
- 2 The accident, two people were injured, happened late last night.
- 3 I share an office with my boss, I get on really well.
- 4 The wedding, only family members were invited, was a lovely occasion.
- 5 Ben showed me his new car, he's very proud.
- 6 Sarah showed us a picture of her son, she's very proud.
- 7 Laura bought a very nice leather bag, she paid twenty pounds.
- 8 We had lunch, we went for a long walk.

96.2 Use the information in the first sentence to complete the second one. Use all of / most of etc.

- 1 All of Helen's brothers are married.
Helen has three brothers, **all of whom are married**.
- 2 Most of the information we were given was useless.
We were given a lot of information,
- 3 None of the ten people who applied for the job was suitable.
Ten people applied for the job,
- 4 My neighbours have two cars. They never use one of them.
My neighbours have two cars,
- 5 James won a lot of money. He gave half of it to his parents.
James won £100,000,
- 6 Both of Julia's sisters are lawyers.
Julia has two sisters,
- 7 Jane replied to neither of the emails I sent her.
I sent Jane two emails,
- 8 I went to a party – I knew only a few of the people there.
There were a lot of people at the party,

Now use the ... of which

- 9 You stayed in a hotel when you were on holiday but you don't remember the name.
We stayed at a very nice hotel, **the name of which I don't remember**.
- 10 We drove along the road. The sides of the road were lined with trees.
We drove along the road, the
- 11 The aim of the company's new business plan is to save money.
The company has a new business plan,

96.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use which.

This is good news.
This was a shame.
She apologised for this
This was very kind of her.

This makes it hard to contact her.
This means we can't go away tomorrow.
This makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.
This meant I had to wait two hours at the airport.

- 1 Laura couldn't come to the party, **which was a shame.**
- 2 The street I live in is noisy at night,
- 3 Kate let me stay at her house,
- 4 Jane doesn't have a phone,
- 5 Alex passed his exams,
- 6 My flight was delayed,
- 7 Our car has broken down,
- 8 Amy was twenty minutes late,

-ing and -ed clauses (the woman **talking to Tom**, the boy **injured in the accident**)

A

A clause is a part of a sentence. Some clauses begin with **-ing**. For example:

Who is the woman **talking to Tom?**
-ing clause

the woman
talking to Tom



We use **-ing** clauses to say what somebody (or something) is (or was) doing at a particular time:

- Who is the woman **talking to Tom?** (the woman **is talking** to Tom)
- Police **investigating the crime** are looking for three men. (police **are investigating** the crime)
- Who were those people **waiting outside?** (they **were waiting**)
- I was woken up by a bell **ringing.** (a bell **was ringing**)

You can also use an **-ing** clause to say what happens all the time, not just at a particular time:

- The road **connecting the two villages** is very narrow. (the road **connects** the two villages)
- I have a large room **overlooking the garden.** (the room **overlooks** the garden)
- Can you think of the name of a flower **beginning with T?** (the name **begins** with T)

B

Some clauses begin with **-ed** (**injured**, **painted** etc.). For example:

The boy **injured in the accident** was taken to hospital.
-ed clause

the boy injured
in the accident



-ed clauses have a *passive* meaning:

- The boy **injured in the accident** was taken to hospital.
 (he **was injured** in the accident)
- George showed me some pictures **painted by his father.**
 (they **were painted** by his father)
- The gun **used in the robbery** has been found.
 (the gun **was used** in the robbery)

Injured/painted/used are *past participles*. Most past participles end in **-ed**, but many are irregular (**stolen/made/built** etc.):

- The police never found the money **stolen in the robbery.**
- Most of the goods **made in this factory** are exported.

C

You can use **there is / there was** (etc.) + **-ing** and **-ed** clauses:

- There were** some children **swimming** in the river.
- Is there** anybody **waiting?**
- There was** a big red car **parked** outside the house.

We use **left** in this way, with the meaning ‘not used, still there’:

- We've eaten nearly all the chocolates. **There are** only a few **left.**



see/hear somebody **doing** something → **Unit 67** -**ing** clauses → **Unit 68** **there (is)** → **Unit 84**
 Irregular past participles (**made/stolen** etc.) → **Appendix 1**

Exercises

97.1 Make one sentence from two. Complete the sentence using an -ing clause.

- 1 A bell was ringing. I was woken up by it.
I was woken up by *a bell ringing*
- 2 A taxi was taking us to the airport. It broke down.
The broke down.
- 3 There's a path at the end of this street. The path leads to the river.
At the end of the street there's
- 4 A factory has just opened in the town. It employs 500 people.
..... has just opened in the town.
- 5 A man was sitting next to me on the plane. He was asleep most of the time.
The was asleep most of the time.
- 6 The company sent me a brochure. It contained the information I needed.
The company sent me a

97.2 Complete the sentence with an -ed clause. Choose from:

damaged in the storm	made at the meeting	injured in the accident
involved in the project	stolen from the museum	surrounded by trees

- 1 The boy *injured in the accident* was taken to hospital.
- 2 The paintings haven't been found yet.
- 3 We've repaired the gate
- 4 Most of the suggestions were not practical.
- 5 Our friends live in a beautiful house
- 6 Everybody worked very well.

97.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs in the correct form:

blow	call	cause	invite	live	offer	paint	read	ring	sit	study	work
-------------	-------------	--------------	---------------	-------------	--------------	--------------	-------------	-------------	------------	--------------	-------------

- 1 I was woken up by a bell *ringing*
- 2 George showed me some pictures *painted* by his father.
- 3 Some of the people to the party can't come.
- 4 Somebody Jack phoned while you were out.
- 5 Life must be very unpleasant for people near busy airports.
- 6 A few days after the interview, I received an email me the job.
- 7 The building was badly damaged in a fire by an electrical fault.
- 8 Did you see the picture of the trees down in the storm?
- 9 The waiting room was empty except for an old man in the corner a magazine.
- 10 Ian has a brother in a bank in London and a sister economics at university in Manchester.

97.4 Use the words in brackets to make sentences with **There is / There was** etc.

- 1 That house is empty. (nobody / live / in it) *There's nobody living in it.*
- 2 The accident wasn't serious. (nobody / injure) *There was nobody injured.*
- 3 I can hear footsteps. (somebody / come) There
- 4 I've spent all the money I had. (nothing / leave) There
- 5 The train was full. (a lot of people / travel)
.....
- 6 We were the only guests at the hotel. (nobody else / stay there)
.....
- 7 The piece of paper was blank. (nothing / write / on it)
.....
- 8 The college offers English courses in the evening. (a course / begin / next Monday)
.....

Adjectives ending in -ing and -ed (boring/bored etc.)

A

Many adjectives end in **-ing** and **-ed**, for example: **boring** and **bored**.
Study this example situation:



Jane has been doing the same job for a very long time. Every day she does exactly the same thing again and again. She doesn't enjoy her job any more and would like to do something different.

Jane's job is **boring**.

Jane is **bored** with her job.

Somebody is **bored** or gets **bored** if something (or somebody else) is **boring**. If something is **boring**, you get **bored** with it.

So:

- Jane is **bored** because her job is **boring**.
- Jane's job is **boring**, so Jane is **bored**. (*not Jane is boring*)

If a person is **boring**, this means that they make other people **bored**:

- Paul always talks about the same things. He's really **boring**.

B

Compare adjectives ending in **-ing** and **-ed**:

- My job is **boring**
interesting
tiring
satisfying
depressing (etc.)

In these examples, the **-ing** adjective tells you about the job

- I'm **bored** with my job.
- I'm not **interested** in my job any more.
- I get very **tired** doing my job.
- I'm not **satisfied** with my job.
- My job makes me **depressed**. (etc.)

In these examples, the **-ed** adjective tells you how somebody feels (about the job).

Compare these examples:

interesting

- Julia thinks politics is **interesting**.
- Did you meet anyone **interesting** at the party?

surprising

- It was **surprising** that he passed the exam.

disappointing

- The movie was **disappointing**. We expected it to be better.

shocking

- The news was **shocking**.

interested

- Julia is **interested** in politics.
(*not interesting in politics*)
- Are you **interested** in buying a car?
I'm trying to sell mine.

surprised

- Everybody was **surprised** that he passed the exam.

disappointed

- We were **disappointed** with the movie.
We expected it to be better.

shocked

- I was **shocked** when I heard the news.

Exercises

98.1 Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word in brackets + **-ing** or **-ed**.

- 1 The movie wasn't as good as we had expected. (**disappoint...**)
 - a The movie was **disappointing**
 - b We were **disappointed** with the movie.
- 2 Donna teaches young children. It's a very hard job, but she enjoys it. (**exhaust...**)
 - a She enjoys her job, but it's often
 - b At the end of a day's work, she is often
- 3 It's been raining all day. I hate this weather. (**depress...**)
 - a This weather is
 - b This weather makes me
 - c It's silly to get because of the weather.
- 4 Clare is going to Mexico next month. She's never been there before. (**excit...**)
 - a It will be an experience for her.
 - b Going to new places is always
 - c She is really about going to Mexico.

98.2 Choose the correct word.

- 1 I was disappointing / disappointed with the movie. I had expected it to be better.
(disappointed is correct)
- 2 I'm not particularly interesting / interested in football.
- 3 The new project sounds exciting / excited. I'm looking forward to working on it.
- 4 It can be embarrassing / embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.
- 5 Do you easily get embarrassing / embarrassed?
- 6 I'd never expected to get the job. I was amazing / amazed when I was offered it.
- 7 She's learnt very fast. She's made amazing / amazed progress.
- 8 I didn't find the situation funny. I was not amusing / amused.
- 9 I'm interesting / interested in joining the club. How much does it cost?
- 10 It was a really terrifying / terrified experience. Everybody was very shocking / shocked.
- 11 Why do you always look so boring / bored? Is your life really so boring / bored?
- 12 He's one of the most boring / bored people I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything interesting / interested.

98.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box.

amusing/amused	annoying/annoyed	boring/bored
confusing/confused	disgusting/disgusted	exciting/excited
exhausting/exhausted	interesting/interested	surprising/surprised

- 1 You work very hard. It's not **surprising** that you're always tired.
- 2 Some people get very easily. They always need something new.
- 3 The teacher's explanation was Nobody understood it.
- 4 The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really
- 5 I don't go to art galleries very often. I'm not very in art.
- 6 There's no need to get just because I'm a few minutes late.
- 7 The lecture was I fell asleep.
- 8 I've been working very hard all day and now I'm
- 9 I'm starting a new job next week. I'm very about it.
- 10 Steve is good at telling funny stories. He can be very
- 11 Helen is a very person. She knows a lot, she's travelled a lot and she's done lots of different things.

Adjectives: a nice new house, you look tired

A

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together:

- My brother lives in a **nice new** house.
- In the kitchen there was a **beautiful large round wooden** table.

Adjectives like **new/large/round/wooden** are *fact* adjectives. They give us information about age, size, colour etc.

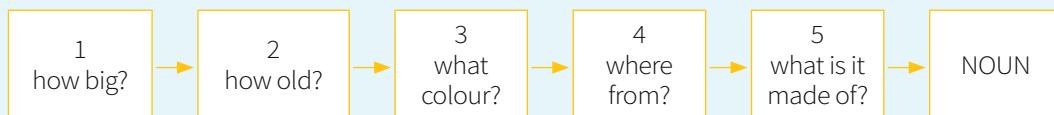
Adjectives like **nice/beautiful** are *opinion* adjectives. They tell us what the speaker thinks of something or somebody.

Opinion adjectives usually go before fact adjectives.

	<i>opinion</i>	<i>fact</i>	
a	nice	long	summer holiday
an	interesting	young	man
	delicious	hot	vegetable soup
a	beautiful	large round wooden	table

B

Sometimes we use two or more fact adjectives together. Usually (not always) we put fact adjectives in this order:



- a **tall young** man (1 → 2)
big blue eyes (1 → 3)
a **small black plastic** bag (1 → 3 → 5)

- a **large wooden** table (1 → 5)
an **old Russian** song (2 → 4)
an **old white cotton** shirt (2 → 3 → 5)

Adjectives of size and length (**big/small/tall/short/long** etc.) usually go before adjectives of shape and width (**round/fat/thin/slim/wide** etc.):

- a **large round** table a **tall thin** girl a **long narrow** street

When there are two or more colour adjectives, we use **and**:

- a **black and white** dress a **red, white and green** flag

This does not usually happen with other adjectives before a noun:

- a **long black** dress (not a long and black dress)

C

We use adjectives after **be/get/become/seem**:

- Be careful!**
- I'm **tired** and I'm **getting hungry**.
- As the film went on, it **became** more and more **boring**.
- Your friend **seems** very **nice**.

We also use adjectives to say how somebody/something looks, feels, sounds, tastes or smells:

- You **look tired**. / I **feel tired**. / She **sounds tired**.
- The dinner **smells good**.
- This tea **tastes a bit strange**.

But to say *how* somebody *does something* you must use an *adverb* (see Units 100–101):

- Drive **carefully**! (not Drive careful)
- Suzanne plays the piano very **well**. (not plays ... very good)

D

We say 'the **first two** days', 'the **next few** weeks', 'the **last ten** minutes' etc.:

- I didn't enjoy the **first two** days of the course. (not the two first days)
- They'll be away for the **next few** weeks. (not the few next weeks)

Exercises

99.1 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.

- 1 a beautiful table (wooden / round)
- 2 an unusual ring (gold)
- 3 an old house (beautiful)
- 4 red gloves (leather)
- 5 an American film (old)
- 6 pink flowers (tiny)
- 7 a long face (thin)
- 8 big clouds (black)
- 9 a sunny day (lovely)
- 10 an ugly dress (yellow)
- 11 a wide avenue (long)
- 12 important ideas (new)
- 13 a new sweater (green / nice)
- 14 a metal box (black / small)
- 15 long hair (black / beautiful)
- 16 an old painting (interesting / French)
- 17 a large umbrella (red / yellow)
- 18 a big cat (black / white / fat)

a beautiful round wooden table

99.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the boxes.

feel	look	seem	awful	nervous	interesting
smell	sound	taste	nice	upset	wet

- 1 Helen seemed upset ... this morning. Do you know what was wrong?
- 2 I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it
- 3 It's normal to before an exam or an interview.
- 4 What beautiful flowers! They too.
- 5 You Have you been out in the rain?
- 6 James told me about his new job. It – much better than his old job.

99.3 Put in the correct word.

- 1 This tea tastes a bit strange.... (strange / strangely)
- 2 I usually feel when the sun is shining. (happy / happily)
- 3 The children were playing in the garden. (happy / happily)
- 4 You look! Are you all right? (terrible / terribly)
- 5 There's no point in doing a job if you don't do it (proper / properly)
- 6 The soup tastes Can you give me the recipe? (good / well)
- 7 Please hurry up! You're always so (slow / slowly)
- 8 A customer in the restaurant was behaving (bad / badly)
- 9 The customer became when the manager asked him to leave. (violent / violently)

99.4 Write the following in another way using **the first ... / the next ... / the last ...**.

- 1 the first day and the second day of the course
- 2 next week and the week after
- 3 yesterday and the day before yesterday
- 4 the first week and the second week of May
- 5 tomorrow and a few days after that
- 6 questions 1, 2 and 3 in the exam
- 7 next year and the year after
- 8 the last day of our holiday and the two days before that

the first two days of the course

the next two weeks

Exercises

100.1 Complete each sentence with an adverb. The first letters of the adverb are given.

- 1 We didn't go out because it was raining he **a**vily.....
- 2 I had no problem finding a place to live. I found a flat quite ea.....
- 3 We had to wait a long time, but we didn't complain. We waited pat.....
- 4 Nobody knew that Simon was coming to see us. He arrived unex.....
- 5 Mike keeps fit by playing tennis reg.....
- 6 I don't speak French very well, but I can understand per..... if people speak sl..... and cl.....

100.2 Put in the correct word.

- 1 Sam drove along the narrow road. (careful / carefully)
- 2 I think you behaved very (selfish / selfishly)
- 3 The weather changed (sudden / suddenly)
- 4 There was a change in the weather. (sudden / suddenly)
- 5 Liz fell and hurt herself really (bad / badly)
- 6 I think I have flu. I feel (awful / awfully)
- 7 Tanya is upset about losing her job. (terrible / terribly)
- 8 I could sit in this chair all day. It's very (comfortable / comfortably)
- 9 I explained everything as as I could. (clear / clearly)
- 10 Be careful on that ladder. It doesn't look very (safe / safely)
- 11 Have a good trip and I hope you have a journey. (safe / safely)
- 12 I'm glad you had a good trip and got home (safe / safely)

100.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box. Sometimes you need the adjective (**careful** etc.) and sometimes the adverb (**carefully** etc.).

careful(ly)	complete(ly)	dangerous(ly)	financial(ly)	fluent(ly)
frequent(ly)	nervous(ly)	perfect(ly)	permanent(ly)	special(ly)

- 1 Sam doesn't take risks when he's driving. He's always **careful**.....
- 2 He's late sometimes, but it doesn't happen
- 3 Maria's English is very although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.
- 4 I cooked this meal for you, so I hope you like it.
- 5 Everything was very quiet. There was silence.
- 6 I tried on the shoes and they fitted me
- 7 I'd like to buy a car, but it's impossible for me at the moment.
- 8 I'm staying here only a few weeks. I won't be living here
- 9 Do you usually feel before exams?
- 10 Dan likes to take risks. He lives

100.4 Choose two words (one from each box) to complete each sentence.

absolutely	badly	completely	changed	cheap-	damaged
happily	reasonably	seriously	enormous	ill	long
slightly	unnecessarily	unusually	married	planned	quiet

- 1 I thought the restaurant would be expensive, but it was **reasonably cheap**.....
- 2 Will's mother is in hospital.
- 3 This house is so big! It's
- 4 It wasn't a serious accident. The car was only
- 5 Our children are normally very lively, but they're today.
- 6 When I returned home after 20 years, everything had
- 7 The movie was It could have been much shorter.
- 8 I'm surprised Amy and Joe have separated. I thought they were
- 9 A lot went wrong during our holiday because it was

Adjectives and adverbs 2

(well, fast, late, hard/hardly)

A good and well

Good is an **adjective**. The **adverb** is **well**:

- Your English is **good**. but You **speak** English **well**.
- Sophie is a **good** pianist. but Sophie **plays** the piano **well**.

We use **well** (*not good*) with *past participles* (**known/educated** etc.). For example:

- well-known well-educated well-paid well-behaved**
- Sophie's father is a **well-known** writer.

Well is also an adjective meaning 'in good health':

- 'How are you today?' 'I'm very **well**, thanks.'

B fast, hard and late

These words are both adjectives and adverbs:

- | <i>adjective</i> | <i>adverb</i> |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Darren is a fast runner . | Darren can run fast . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> It's hard to find a job right now. | Kate works hard . (<i>not works hardly</i>) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Sorry I'm late . | I got up late . |

lately = recently:

- Have you seen Kate **lately**?

C hardly

hardly = very little, almost not:

- Sarah wasn't very friendly at the party. She **hardly** spoke to me.
(= she spoke to me very little)
- We've only met once or twice. We **hardly** know each other.

Compare **hard** and **hardly**:

- He tried **hard** to find a job, but he had no luck. (= he tried a lot, with a lot of effort)
- I'm not surprised he didn't find a job. He **hardly** tried. (= he tried very little)

Hardly goes before the verb:

- We **hardly know** each other. (*not We know each other hardly*)

I **can hardly** do something = it's very difficult for me, almost impossible:

- Your writing is terrible. I **can hardly** read it. (= it is almost impossible to read it)
- My leg was hurting. I **could hardly** walk.

D You can use **hardly + any/anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere**:

- A: How much money do we have?
B: **Hardly any**. (=very little, almost none)
- These two cameras are very similar. There's **hardly any** difference between them.
- The exam results were bad. **Hardly anybody** in our class passed. (=very few students passed)
- She was very quiet. She said **hardly anything**. or
She **hardly** said **anything**.

There's **hardly anything** in the fridge.



hardly ever = almost never:

- I'm nearly always at home in the evenings. I **hardly ever** go out.

Hardly also means 'certainly not'. For example:

- It's **hardly surprising** that you're tired. You haven't slept for three days.
(= it's certainly not surprising)
- The situation is serious, but it's **hardly a crisis**. (=it's certainly not a crisis)

Exercises

101.1 Put in **good** or **well**.

- 1 I play tennis but I'm not very ... good ..
- 2 Joe's exam results were very
- 3 Joe did in his exams.
- 4 I didn't sleep last night.
- 5 I like your hat. It looks on you.
- 6 Can you speak up? I can't hear you very
- 7 I've met her a few times, but I don't know her
- 8 Lucy speaks German She's at languages.

101.2 Complete these sentences using **well** + the following words:

behaved informed kept known paid written

- 1 The children were very good. They were well-behaved ..
- 2 I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She is quite
- 3 Our neighbours' garden is neat and tidy. It is very
- 4 I enjoyed the book. It's a great story and it's very
- 5 Tanya knows about everything. She is very
- 6 Jane works very hard in her job, but she isn't very

101.3 Which is right?

- 1 I'm tired because I've been working hard / hardly. (hard is correct)
- 2 I wasn't in a hurry, so I was walking slow / slowly.
- 3 I haven't been to the cinema late / lately.
- 4 Slow down! You're walking too fast / quick for me.
- 5 I tried hard / hardly to remember her name, but I couldn't.
- 6 This coat is practically unused. I've hard / hardly worn it.
- 7 Laura is a good tennis player. She hits the ball very hard / hardly.
- 8 It's really dark in here. I can hardly see / see hardly.
- 9 Ben is going to run a marathon. He's been training hard / hardly.

101.4 Complete the sentences. Use **hardly** + the following verbs (in the correct form):

change hear know recognise say sleep speak

- 1 Scott and Tracy have only met once before. They hardly know each other.
- 2 You're speaking very quietly. I can you.
- 3 I don't feel good this morning. I last night.
- 4 We were so shocked when we heard the news, we could
- 5 Kate was very quiet this evening. She anything.
- 6 Gary looks just like he looked 15 years ago. He has
- 7 David looked different without his beard. I him.

101.5 Complete these sentences with **hardly** + **any**/**anybody**/**anything**/**anywhere**/**ever**.

- 1 I'll have to go shopping. There's hardly anything to eat.
- 2 It was a very warm day and there was wind.
- 3 'Do you know much about computers?' 'No,
- 4 The hotel was almost empty. There was staying there.
- 5 I listen to the radio a lot, but I watch TV.
- 6 It was very crowded in the room. There was to sit.
- 7 We used to be good friends, but we see each other now.
- 8 We invited lots of people to the party, but came.
- 9 It didn't take us long to drive there. There was traffic.
- 10 There isn't much to do in this town. There's to go.

so and such

A

Compare **so** and **such**:

We use **so** + adjective/adverb:

so stupid **so quick**
so nice **so quickly**

- I didn't like the book. The story was **so stupid**.
- Everything happened **so quickly**.

We use **such** + noun:

such a story **such people**

We also use **such** + adjective + noun:

such a stupid story **such nice people**

- I didn't like the book. It was **such a stupid story**. (*not a so stupid story*)
- I like Liz and Joe. They are **such nice people**. (*not so nice people*)

We say **such a ...** (*not a such*):

such a big dog

B

So and **such** make the meaning stronger:

- I've had a busy day. I'm **so tired**. (= really tired)
- It's difficult to understand him. He talks **so quietly**.

You can use **so ... that**:

- I was **so tired that** I fell asleep in the armchair.

We usually leave out **that**:

- I was **so tired** I fell asleep.

- We had a great trip. We had **such a good time**. (= a really good time)
- You always think good things are going to happen. You're **such an optimist**.

You can use **such ... that**:

- It was **such nice weather that** we spent the whole day on the beach.

We usually leave out **that**:

- It was **such nice weather** we spent ...

C

So and **such** also mean 'like this':

- Somebody told me the house was built 100 years ago. I didn't realise it was **so old**. (= as old as it is)
- I'm tired because I got up at six. I don't usually get up **so early**.
- I expected the weather to be cooler. I'm surprised it is **so warm**.

- I didn't realise it was **such an old house**.
- You know it's not true. How can you say **such a thing**? (= a thing like this)

Note the expression **no such ...**:

- You won't find the word 'blid' in the dictionary. There's **no such word**. (= this word does not exist)

D

Compare:

so long

- I haven't seen her for **so long** I've forgotten what she looks like.

such a long time

- I haven't seen her for **such a long time**. (*not so long time*)

so far

- I didn't know it was **so far**.

such a long way

- I didn't know it was **such a long way**.

so much, so many

- I'm sorry I'm late – there was **so much traffic**.

such a lot (of)

- I'm sorry I'm late – there was **such a lot** of traffic.

Exercises

102.1 Put in **so, such or such a**.

- 1 It was a great holiday. We had **such a** good time.
- 2 Everything is expensive these days, isn't it?
- 3 He always looks good. He wears nice clothes.
- 4 I couldn't believe the news. It was shock.
- 5 What a nice garden! These are lovely flowers.
- 6 The party was great. It was shame you couldn't come.
- 7 I was glad to see that he looked well after his recent illness.
- 8 I have to go. I didn't realise it was late.
- 9 Why does it always take you long time to get ready?
- 10 Everything went wrong. We had bad luck.

102.2 Make one sentence from two. Choose from the box, and then complete the sentences using **so or such**.

The music was loud.
I had a big breakfast.
The bag was heavy.

It was horrible weather.
It was a beautiful day.
I was surprised.

I've got a lot to do.
Her English is good.
The hotel was a long way.

- 1 **It was such a beautiful day**, we decided to go to the beach.
- 2 , she couldn't lift it.
- 3 , I don't know where to begin.
- 4 , I didn't know what to say.
- 5 , it could be heard from miles away.
- 6 , we spent the whole day indoors.
- 7 , you would think it was her native language.
- 8 , it took us ages to get there.
- 9 , I didn't eat anything for the rest of the day.

102.3 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 I got up at six this morning. I **don't usually get up so early**
(get up / early / usually / so / don't)
- 2 Why ? There's plenty of time.
(a / such / hurry / you / in / are)
- 3 It took us an hour to get here. I'm
(long / it / surprised / so / took)
- 4 He said he worked for a company called Elcron, but
(such / there's / company / no)
- 5 I regret what I did. I don't know why
(such / thing / I / did / a / stupid)
- 6 Why ? Can't you drive faster?
(driving / so / you / slowly / are)
- 7 Two months? How did you ?
(English / time / learn / short / a / such / in)
- 8 Why ? You could have got a cheaper one.
(expensive / you / an / phone / did / such / buy)

102.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 We enjoyed our holiday. We had such **a good time**
- 2 I like Kate. She's so
- 3 I like Kate. She's such
- 4 It's good to see you again! I haven't seen you for so
- 5 I thought the airport was near the city. I didn't realise it was such
- 6 The streets were crowded. There were so

enough and too

A enough

Enough goes after adjectives and adverbs:

- I can't run very far. I'm not **fit enough**. (*not enough fit*)
- Let's go. We've waited **long enough**.

Enough normally goes before nouns:

- We have **enough money**. We don't need any more.
- There weren't **enough chairs**. Some of us had to sit on the floor.

We also use **enough** alone (without a noun or adjective):

- We don't need more money. We have **enough**.



B too and enough

Compare **too** ... and **not ... enough**:

- You never stop working. You work **too hard**.
(= more than is necessary)
- You're lazy. You **don't** work **hard enough**.
(= less than is necessary)

Compare **too much/many** and **enough**:

- There's **too much furniture** in this room. There's not **enough space**.
- There were **too many people** and not **enough chairs**.

C enough/too + for ... and to ...

We say **enough/too ... for** somebody/something:

- Does Joe have enough experience **for the job**?
- This bag isn't big enough **for all my clothes**.
- That shirt is too small **for you**. You need a larger size.

We say **enough/too ... to** do something. For example:

- Does Joe have enough experience **to do** the job?
- Let's get a taxi. It's too far **to walk** home from here.
- She's not old enough **to have** a driving licence.

The next example has both **for** ... and **to** ...:

- The bridge is just wide enough **for two cars to pass** one another.

D too hot to eat etc.

We say:

The food was very hot. We couldn't eat **it**.
and

The food was so hot that we couldn't eat **it**.
but

The food was **too hot to eat**. (*not to eat it*)



In the same way we say:

- These boxes are **too heavy to carry**. (*not to carry them*)
- The wallet was **too big to put in my pocket**. (*not to put it*)
- This chair isn't **strong enough to stand on**. (*not to stand on it*)

Exercises

103.1 Complete the sentences using **enough + the following words:**

buses chairs cups hard room tall time vegetables warm wide

- 1 You're lazy. You don't work ... **hard enough**
- 2 Some of us had to sit on the floor. There weren't ... **enough chairs**
- 3 Public transport isn't good here. There aren't
- 4 I can't park the car here. The space isn't
- 5 I always have to rush. There's never
- 6 You need to change your diet. You don't eat
- 7 I'm not good at basketball. I'm not
- 8 The car is quite small. Do you think there's for five of us?
- 9 Are you ? Or shall I switch on the heating?
- 10 We can't all have coffee at the same time. We don't have

103.2 Complete the answers to the questions. Use **too or enough + the word(s) in brackets.**

1	Does Sophie have a driving licence?	(old)	<i>No, she's not old enough to have a driving licence.</i>
2	I need to talk to you about something.	(busy)	<i>Well, I'm afraid I'm to you now.</i>
3	Let's go to the cinema.	(late)	<i>No, it's to the cinema.</i>
4	Why don't we sit outside?	(warm)	<i>It's not outside.</i>
5	Would you like to be a politician?	(shy)	<i>No, I'm a politician.</i>
6	Would you like to be a teacher?	(patience)	<i>No, I don't have a teacher.</i>
7	Did you hear what he was saying?	(far away)	<i>No, we were what he was saying.</i>
8	Can he read a newspaper in English?	(English)	<i>No, he doesn't know a newspaper.</i>

103.3 Make one sentence from two. Complete the new sentence using **too or enough + to**

- 1 We couldn't carry the boxes. They were too heavy.
The boxes were too heavy to carry.
- 2 I can't drink this coffee. It's too hot.
This coffee is
- 3 Nobody could move the piano. It was too heavy.
The piano
- 4 Don't eat these apples. They're not ripe enough.
These apples
- 5 I can't explain the situation. It is too complicated.
The situation
- 6 We couldn't climb over the wall. It was too high.
The wall
- 7 Three people can't sit on this sofa. It isn't big enough.
This sofa
- 8 You can't see some things without a microscope. They are too small.
Some

quite, pretty, rather and fairly

A

Quite and **pretty** are similar in meaning (= less than 'very', but more than 'a little'):

- I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's **quite famous**. or She's **pretty famous**.
(= less than 'very famous', but more than 'a little famous')
- Anna lives **quite near** me, so we see each other **pretty often**.

Pretty is an informal word and is used mainly in spoken English.

Quite goes before **a/an**:

- We live in **quite an old house**. (*not a quite old house*)

Compare:

- Sarah has **quite a** good job.
- Sarah has **a pretty** good job.

You can also use **quite** (but not **pretty**) in the following ways:

quite a/an + noun (without an adjective):

- I didn't expect to see them. It was **quite a surprise**. (= quite a big surprise)

quite a lot (of ...):

- There were **quite a lot of** guests at the wedding.

quite + verb, especially **like** and **enjoy**:

- I **quite like** tennis, but it's not my favourite sport.

B

Rather is similar to **quite** and **pretty**. We often use **rather** for negative ideas (things we think are not good):

- The weather isn't so good. It's **rather cloudy**.
- Paul is **rather shy**. He doesn't talk very much.

Quite is also possible in these examples.

When we use **rather** for positive ideas (**good/nice** etc.), it means 'unusually' or 'surprisingly':

- These oranges are **rather good**. Where did you get them?

C

Fairly is weaker than **quite/rather/pretty**. For example, if something is **fairly good**, it is not very good and it could be better:

- My room is **fairly big**, but I'd prefer a bigger one.
- We see each other **fairly often**, but not as often as we used to.

D

Quite also means 'completely'. For example:

- 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, **quite sure**' (= completely sure)

Quite means 'completely' with a number of adjectives, especially:

sure	right	true	clear	different	incredible	amazing
certain	wrong	safe	obvious	unnecessary	extraordinary	impossible

- She was **quite different** from what I expected. (= completely different)
- Everything they said was **quite true**. (= completely true)

We also use **quite** (= completely) with some verbs. For example:

- I **quite agree** with you. (= I completely agree)

not quite = not completely:

- I **don't quite understand** what you mean.
- 'Are you ready yet?' '**Not quite**' (= not completely)

Compare the two meanings of **quite**:

- The story is **quite interesting**. (= less than 'very interesting')
- The story is **quite true**. (= completely true)

Exercises

104.1 Complete the sentences using **quite Choose from:**

famous hungry late noisy often old surprised

- 1 I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's quite famous.
- 2 I'm Is there anything to eat?
- 3 We go to the cinema – maybe once a month.
- 4 We live near a very busy road, so it's often
- 5 I didn't expect Lisa to contact me. I was when she phoned.
- 6 I went to bed last night, so I'm a bit tired this morning.
- 7 I don't know exactly when this house was built, but it's

104.2 Put the words in the right order to complete the sentences.

- 1 The weather was better than we had expected.
It was (a / nice / quite / day).
- 2 Tom likes to sing.
He has (voice / quite / good / a).
- 3 The bus stop wasn't near the hotel.
We had to walk (quite / way / a / long).
- 4 It's not so warm today.
There's (a / wind / cold / pretty).
- 5 The roads were busy.
There was (lot / traffic / a / of / quite).
- 6 I'm tired.
I've had (pretty / day / a / busy).
- 7 Sarah hasn't been working here long.
She (fairly / started / recently).

104.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use **rather + adjective.**

- 1 The weather isn't so good. It's rather cloudy.
- 2 I enjoyed the film, but it was
- 3 Chris went away without telling anybody, which was
- 4 Lucy doesn't like having to wait. Sometimes she's
- 5 They have some lovely things in this shop, but it's

104.4 What does **quite mean in these sentences? Tick (✓) the right meaning.**

more than 'a little', less than 'very' (Section A)

*'completely'
(Section D)*

- 1 It's quite cold. You need a coat. ✓
- 2 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, quite sure.' ✓
- 3 Anna's English is quite good.
- 4 I couldn't believe it. It was quite incredible.
- 5 My bedroom is quite big.
- 6 I'm quite tired. I think I'll go to bed.
- 7 I quite agree with you.

104.5 Complete these sentences using **quite Choose from:**

different impossible right safe sure true

- 1 I didn't believe her at first, but in fact what she said was quite true.
- 2 You won't fall. The ladder is
- 3 I'm afraid I can't do what you ask. It's
- 4 I completely agree with you. You are
- 5 You can't compare the two things. They are
- 6 I think I saw them go out, but I'm not

Comparative 1 (**cheaper**, **more expensive** etc.)

A

Look at these examples:

How shall we travel? Shall we drive or go by train?

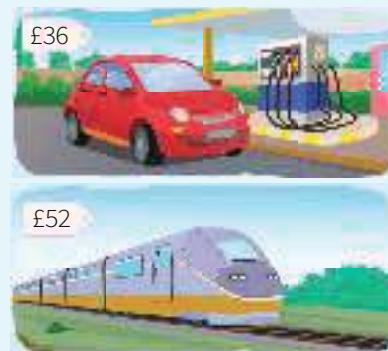
Let's drive. It's **cheaper**.

Don't go by train. It's **more expensive**.

Cheaper and **more expensive** are comparative forms.

After comparatives you can use **than** (see Unit 107):

- It's **cheaper** to drive **than** go by train.
- Going by train is **more expensive than** driving.



B

The comparative form is **-er** or **more**

We use **-er** for short words (one syllable):

cheap → **cheaper** **fast** → **faster**
large → **larger** **thin** → **thinner**

We also use **-er** for two-syllable words that end in **-y** (-y → -ier):

lucky → **luckier** **early** → **earlier**
easy → **easier** **pretty** → **prettier**

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

We use **more** ... for longer words (two syllables or more):

more serious **more expensive**
more often **more comfortable**

We also use **more** ... for adverbs that end in **-ly**:

more slowly **more seriously**
more easily **more quietly**

Compare these examples:

- You're **older** than me.
- The exam was quite easy – **easier** than I expected.
- Can you walk a bit **faster**?
- I'd like to have a **bigger** car.
- Last night I went to bed **earlier** than usual.

- You're **more patient** than me.
- The exam was quite difficult – **more difficult** than I expected.
- Can you walk a bit **more slowly**?
- I'd like to have a **more reliable** car.
- I don't play tennis much these days. I used to play **more often**.

We use both **-er** or **more** ... with some two-syllable adjectives, especially:

clever **narrow** **quiet** **shallow** **simple**

- It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere **quieter**? or ... somewhere **more quiet**?

C

A few adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms:

good/well → **better**

- The garden looks **better** since you tidied it up.
- I know him well – probably **better** than anybody else knows him.

bad/badly → **worse**

- 'How's your headache? Better?' 'No, it's **worse**'.
- He did very badly in the exam – **worse** than expected.

far → **further** (or **farther**)

- It's a long walk from here to the park – **further** than I thought. (or **farther** than)

Note that **further** (but not **farther**) also means 'more' or 'additional':

- Let me know if you hear any **further** news. (= any more news)

Exercises

105.1 Complete the sentences using a comparative form (older / more important** etc.).**

- 1 This restaurant is very expensive. Let's go somewhere **cheaper**
- 2 This coffee is very weak. I like it
- 3 The town was surprisingly big. I expected it to be
- 4 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be
- 5 The weather is too cold here. I'd like to live somewhere
- 6 Sometimes my job is a bit boring. I'd like to do something
- 7 It's a shame you live so far away. I wish you lived
- 8 It was quite easy to find a place to live. I thought it would be
- 9 Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do
- 10 Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be
- 11 You hardly ever call me. Why don't you call me ?
- 12 You're too near the camera. Can you move a bit away?

105.2 Complete the sentences. Use the comparative forms of the words in the box. Use **than where necessary.**

big early high important interested peaceful reliable serious slowly thin

- 1 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed **earlier than** usual.
- 2 I'd like to have a **more reliable** car. The one I have keeps breaking down.
- 3 Unfortunately the problem was we thought at first.
- 4 You look Have you lost weight?
- 5 We don't have enough space here. We need a apartment.
- 6 James doesn't study very hard. He's in having a good time.
- 7 Health and happiness are money.
- 8 I like living in the country. It's living in a town.
- 9 I'm sorry I don't understand. Can you speak , please?
- 10 In some parts of the country, prices are in others.

105.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

than more worse quietly longer better careful frequent

- 1 Getting a visa was complicated. It took **longer** than I expected.
- 2 Sorry about my mistake. I'll try and be more in future.
- 3 Your English has improved. It's than it was.
- 4 You can travel by bus or by train. The buses are more than the trains.
- 5 You can't always have things immediately. You have to be patient.
- 6 I'm a pessimist. I always think things are going to get
- 7 We were busier usual in the office today. It's not usually so busy.
- 8 You're talking very loudly. Can you speak more ?

105.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form (-er or more ...).

- 1 Yesterday the temperature was six degrees. Today it's only three degrees.
It's **colder today than** it was yesterday.
- 2 Dan and I went for a run. I ran ten kilometres. Dan stopped after eight kilometres.
I ran Dan.
- 3 The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.
The journey takes train car.
- 4 I expected my friends to arrive at about 4 o'clock. In fact they arrived at 2.30.
My friends I expected.
- 5 There is always a lot of traffic here, but today the traffic is really bad.
The traffic today usual.

Comparative 2 (**much better / any better** etc.)

A **much / a lot** etc. + comparative

Before comparatives you can use:

much a lot far (= a lot) a bit a little slightly (= a little)

- I felt ill earlier, but I feel **much better** now. (or **a lot better**)
- Don't go by train. It's **a lot more expensive**. (or **much more expensive**)
- Could you speak **a bit more slowly**? (or **a little more slowly**)
- This bag is **slightly heavier** than the other one.
- The problem is **far more serious** than we thought at first.

B **any / no** + comparative

You can use **any** and **no** + comparative (**any longer / no bigger** etc.):

- I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting **any longer**. (= not even a little longer)
- We expected their apartment to be very big, but it's **no bigger** than ours.
or ... it is **not any bigger** than ours. (= not even a little bigger)
- How do you feel now? Do you feel **any better**?
- This hotel is better than the other one, and it's **no more expensive**.

C **better and better, more and more** etc.

We repeat comparatives (**better and better** etc.) to say that something changes continuously:

- Your English is improving. It's getting **better and better**.
- The city has grown fast in recent years. It's got **bigger and bigger**.
- As I listened to his story, I became **more and more convinced** that he was lying.
- More and more tourists** are visiting this part of the country.

D **the ... the ...**

You can say **the sooner the better, the more the better** etc. :

- A: What time shall we leave?
B: **The sooner the better**. (= as soon as possible)
- A: What sort of bag do you want? A big one?
B: Yes, **the bigger the better**. (= as big as possible)
- When you're travelling, **the less luggage** you have **the better**.

We also use **the ... the ...** to say that one thing depends on another thing:

- The sooner** we leave, **the earlier** we'll arrive. (= if we leave sooner, we'll arrive earlier)
- The younger** you are, **the easier** it is to learn.
- The more expensive** the hotel, **the better** the service.
- The more** I thought about the plan, **the less** I liked it.

E **older and elder**

The comparative of **old** is **older**:

- David looks **older** than he really is. (not looks elder)

We use **elder** only when we talk about people in a family (**my elder sister, their elder son** etc.).

You can also use **older**:

- My elder sister** is a TV producer. (or My **older** sister ...)

But we do not say that 'somebody is elder':

- My sister is **older** than me. (not elder than me)



Exercises

106.1 Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use **much / a bit** etc. + a comparative form. Use **than** where necessary.

- 1 The problem is **much more serious than** we thought at first. (much / serious)
- 2 This bag is too small. I need something (much / big)
- 3 I liked the museum. It was I expected. (a lot / interesting)
- 4 It was very hot yesterday. Today it's (a little / cool)
- 5 I'm afraid the problem is it seems. (far / complicated)
- 6 You're driving too fast. Can you drive ? (a bit / slowly)
- 7 I thought he was younger than me, but in fact he's (slightly / old)

106.2 Complete the sentences using **any/no + comparative**. Use **than** where necessary.

- 1 I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting **any longer**
- 2 I'm sorry I'm a bit late, but I couldn't get here
- 3 This shop isn't expensive. The prices are anywhere else.
- 4 I need to stop for a rest. I can't walk
- 5 The traffic isn't especially bad today. It's usual.

106.3 Complete the sentences using **... and ...** (see Section C).

- 1 It's getting **more and more difficult** to find a job. (difficult)
- 2 That hole in your sweater is getting (big)
- 3 I waited for my interview and became (nervous)
- 4 As the day went on, the weather got (bad)
- 5 Health care is becoming (expensive)
- 6 Since Anna went to Canada, her English has got (good)
- 7 These days I travel a lot. I'm spending away from home. (time)

106.4 Complete the sentences using **the ... the**.

- 1 You learn things more easily when you're young.
The **younger you are**, the easier it is to learn.
- 2 It's hard to concentrate when you're tired.
The more tired you are, the
- 3 We should decide what to do as soon as possible.
The , the better.
- 4 I know more, but I understand less.
The , the less I understand.
- 5 If you use more electricity, your bill will be higher.
The more electricity you use,
- 6 Kate had to wait a long time and became more and more impatient.
The , the more

106.5 Use the words on the right to complete the sentences.

- 1 I like to travel light. The **less** luggage, the better.
- 2 The problem is getting and more serious.
- 3 The more time I have, the it takes me to do things.
- 4 I'm walking as fast as I can. I can't walk faster.
- 5 The higher your income, more tax you have to pay.
- 6 I'm surprised Anna is only 25. I thought she was
- 7 Jane's sister is a nurse.
- 8 I was a little late. The journey took longer than I expected.
- 9 Applications for the job must be received later than 15 April.
- 10 Don't tell him anything. The he knows, the

any
better
elder
less
less
longer
more
no
older
slightly
the

Comparative 3 (as ... as / than)

A

Study this example situation:



Sarah, Joe and David are all very rich.
Sarah has \$20 million, Joe has \$15 million and David has \$10 million. So:

Joe is rich.

He is **richer than** David.

But he **isn't as rich as** Sarah.
(=Sarah is **richer than** he is)

Some more examples of **not as ... (as)**:

- Jack **isn't as old as** he looks. (=he looks **older than** he is)
- The town centre **wasn't as crowded as** usual. (=it is usually **more crowded**)
- Lisa **didn't do as well** in the exam **as** she had hoped. (=she had hoped to do **better**)
- The weather is better today. It's **not as cold**. (=yesterday was **colder than** today)
- I **don't know as many** people **as** you do. (=you know **more** people **than** me)
- 'How much was it? Fifty dollars?' 'No, **not as much** as that.' (= **less than** fifty dollars)

You can also say **not so ... (as)**:

- It's not warm, but it's **not so** cold **as** yesterday. (=it's not **as** cold **as** ...)

Less than is similar to **not as ... as**:

- I spent **less** money **than** you. (=I **didn't spend as** much money **as** you)
- The city centre was **less** crowded **than** usual. (=it **wasn't as** crowded **as** usual)
- I play tennis **less than** I used to. (=I **don't play as** much **as** I used to)

B

We also use **as ... as** (*but not so ... as*) in positive sentences and in questions:

- I'm sorry I'm late. I got here **as fast as** I could.
- There's plenty of food. You can have **as much as** you want.
- Can you send me the information **as soon as** possible, please?
- Let's walk. It's just **as quick as** taking the bus.

also **twice as ... as**, **three times as ... as** etc.:

- Petrol is **twice as expensive as** it was a few years ago.
- Their house is about **three times as big as** ours.
(or ... **three times the size of** ours)

C

We say **the same as** (*not the same like*):

- Laura's salary is **the same as** mine. or Laura gets **the same** salary **as** me.
- David is **the same** age **as** James.
- Sarah hasn't changed. She still looks **the same as** she did ten years ago.

D

than me / than I am etc.

You can say:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> You're taller than me .
(not usually You're taller than I!) | or You're taller than I am . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> He's not as clever as her . | or He's not as clever as she is . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> They have more money than us . | or They have more money than we have . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I can't run as fast as him . | or I can't run as fast as he can . |

Exercises

107.1 Complete the sentences using **as ... as**.

- 1 I'm tall, but you are taller. I'm not **as tall as you**
- 2 My salary is high, but yours is higher. My salary isn't
- 3 You know a bit about cars, but I know more.
You don't
- 4 We are busy today, but we were busier yesterday.
We aren't
- 5 I still feel bad, but I felt a lot worse earlier.
I don't
- 6 Our neighbours have lived here for quite a long time, but we've lived here longer.
Our neighbours haven't
- 7 I was a little nervous before the interview, but usually I'm a lot more nervous.
I wasn't

107.2 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

- 1 Jack is younger than he looks. Jack isn't **as old as he looks**
- 2 I didn't spend as much money as you. You **spent more money than me**
- 3 The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't
- 4 The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost
- 5 I watch TV less than I used to. I don't
- 6 Karen's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Karen used to
- 7 I know them better than you do. You don't
- 8 There are fewer students in this class than in the other one.
There aren't

107.3 Complete the sentences using **as ... as**. Choose from:

fast hard long often quietly soon well

- 1 I'm sorry I'm late. I got here **as fast as** I could.
- 2 It was a difficult question. I answered it I could.
- 3 'How long can I stay with you?' 'You can stay you like.'
- 4 I need the information quickly, so let me know possible.
- 5 I like to keep fit, so I go swimming I can.
- 6 I didn't want to wake anybody, so I came in I could.
- 7 You always say how tiring your job is, but I work just you.

107.4 Write sentences using **the same as**.

- 1 David and James are both 22 years old. David **is the same age as** James.
- 2 You and I both have dark brown hair. Your hair mine.
- 3 I arrived at 10.25 and so did you. I arrived you.
- 4 My birthday is 5 April. It's Tom's birthday too. My birthday Tom's.

107.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

as him is less me much soon than twice

- 1 I'll let you know as **soon** as I have any more news.
- 2 My friends arrived earlier I expected.
- 3 I live in the same street Katherine. We're neighbours.
- 4 He doesn't know much. I know more than
- 5 This morning there was traffic than usual.
- 6 I don't watch TV as as I used to.
- 7 Your bag is quite light. Mine is as heavy as yours.
- 8 We were born in the same year. I'm a little older than she
- 9 I was really surprised. Nobody was more surprised than

Superlative (**the longest / the most enjoyable** etc.)

A

Look at these examples:

What is **the longest** river in the world?

What was **the most enjoyable** holiday you've ever had?

Longest and **most enjoyable** are *superlative forms*.

The superlative form is **-est** or **most** . . . In general, we use **-est** for short words and **most** . . . for longer words.

long → long est	hot → hottest	easy → easiest	hard → hardest
but most famous	most boring	most enjoyable	most difficult

A few superlative forms are irregular:

good → best	bad → worst	far → furthest or farthest
---------------------------	---------------------------	---

The rules are the same as those for the comparative – see Unit 105.

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

B

We normally use **the** (or **my/your** etc.) with a superlative:

- Yesterday was **the hottest** day of the year.
- The Louvre in Paris is one of **the most famous** museums in the world.
- She is really nice – one of **the nicest** people I know.
- What's **the best** movie you've ever seen, and what's **the worst**?
- How old is **your youngest** child?

Compare the superlative and the comparative:

- This hotel is **the cheapest** in town. (*superlative*)
It's **cheaper** than all the others in town. (*comparative*)
- He's **the most patient** person I've ever met.
He's much **more patient** than I am.

C

oldest and eldest

The superlative of **old** is **oldest**:

- That church is **the oldest** building in the town. (*not the eldest*)

We use **eldest** only when we talk about people in a family (you can also use **oldest**):

- Their eldest son** is 13 years old. (*or Their oldest son*)
- Are you **the eldest** in your family? (*or the oldest*)

D

After superlatives we normally use **in** with places:

- What's the longest river **in the world**? (*not of the world*)
- We had a nice room. It was one of the best **in the hotel**. (*not of the hotel*)

We also use **in** for organisations and groups of people (a class / a company etc.):

- Who is the youngest student **in the class**? (*not of the class*)

For a period of time (**day, year** etc.), we normally use **of**:

- Yesterday was the hottest day **of the year**.
- What was the happiest day **of your life**?

E

We often use the *present perfect* (**I have done**) after a superlative (see also Unit 8A):

- What's **the most important** decision **you've** ever **made**?
- That was **the best** holiday **I've had** for a long time.

Exercises

108.1 Complete the sentences. Use the superlative forms (-est or most ...) of the words in the box.

bad cheap good honest popular short tall

- 1 We didn't have much money, so we stayed at **the cheapest** hotel in the town.
- 2 This building is 250 metres high, but it's not in the city.
- 3 It was an awful day. It was day of my life.
- 4 What is sport in your country?
- 5 I like the morning. For me it's part of the day.
- 6 Sarah always tells the truth. She's one of people I know.
- 7 A straight line is distance between two points.

108.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) or a comparative (-er or more ...).

- 1 We stayed at **the cheapest** hotel in the town. (cheap)
- 2 Our hotel was **cheaper** than all the others in the town. (cheap)
- 3 I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I feel a bit today. (good)
- 4 What's thing you've ever bought? (expensive)
- 5 I prefer this chair to the other one. It's (comfortable)
- 6 Amy and Ben have three daughters. is 14 years old. (old)
- 7 Who is the person you know? (old)
- 8 What's way to get to the station? (quick)
- 9 Which is – the bus or the train? (quick)
- 10 I can remember when I was three years old. It's memory. (early)
- 11 Everest is mountain in the world. It is than any other mountain. (high)
- 12 A: This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a one?
B: No, it's one I have. (sharp)

108.3 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) + a preposition (of or in).

- 1 It's a very good room. It's **the best room in** the hotel.
- 2 Brazil is a very large country. It's South America.
- 3 It was a very happy day. It was my life.
- 4 This is a very valuable painting. It's the museum.
- 5 Spring is a very busy time for me. It's the year.

In the following sentences use one of + a superlative + a preposition.

- 6 It's a very good room. It's **one of the best rooms in** the hotel.
- 7 He's a very rich man. He's one the country.
- 8 She's a very good student. She's the class.
- 9 It was a very bad experience. It was my life.
- 10 It's a very famous university. It's the world.

108.4 What do you say in these situations? Use a superlative + ever.

- 1 You've just been to the cinema. The movie was extremely boring. You tell your friend:
(boring / movie / ever / see) That's **the most boring movie I've ever seen**
- 2 Someone has just told you a joke which you think is very funny. You say:
(funny / joke / ever / hear) That's
- 3 You're drinking coffee with a friend. It's really good coffee. You say:
(good / coffee / ever / taste) This
- 4 You have just run ten kilometres. You've never run further than this. You say:
(far / ever / run) That
- 5 You gave up your job. Now you think this was a very bad mistake. You say:
(bad / mistake / ever / make) It
- 6 Your friend meets a lot of people, some of them famous. You ask your friend:
(famous / person / ever / meet?) Who

Word order 1: verb + object; place and time

A Verb + object

The *verb* and the *object* normally go together. We do not usually put other words between them:

	verb	object	
I	like	my job	very much. (<i>not I like very much</i>)
Our guide	spoke	English	fluently. (<i>not spoke fluently English</i>)
I didn't	use	my phone	yesterday.
Do you	eat	meat	every day?

Two more examples:

- I lost all my money and I also **lost my passport**.
(*not I lost also my passport*)
- At the end of this street you'll **see a supermarket** on your left.
(*not see on your left a supermarket*)

B Place

The *verb* and *place* (where?) normally go together:

go home **live in a city** **walk to work** etc.

If the verb has an *object*, the order is:

	verb	object	place
We	took	the children	to the zoo . (<i>not took to the zoo the children</i>)
Don't	put	anything	on the table .
Did you	learn	English	at school?

C Time

Normally *time* (when? / how often? / how long?) goes after *place*:

	place	time
Ben walks	to work	every morning . (<i>not every morning to work</i>)
I'm going	to Paris	on Monday .
They've lived	in the same house	for a long time .
We need to be	at the airport	by 8 o'clock .
Sarah gave me a lift	home	after the party .
You really shouldn't go	to bed	so late .

Sometimes we put *time* at the beginning of the sentence:

- On Monday** I'm going to Paris.
- After the party** Sarah gave me a lift home.

Some time words (for example, **always/never/usually**) go with the verb in the middle of the sentence. See Unit 110.

Exercises

109.1 Is the word order OK or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 Did you see your friends yesterday?
- 2 Ben walks every morning to work.
- 3 Joe doesn't like very much football.
- 4 Dan won easily the race.
- 5 Tanya speaks German quite well.
- 6 Have you seen recently Chris?
- 7 I borrowed from a friend some money.
- 8 Please don't ask that question again.
- 9 I ate quickly my breakfast and went out.
- 10 Did you invite to the party a lot of people?
- 11 Sam watches all the time TV.
- 12 Does Kevin play football every weekend?

OK

Ben walks to work every morning.
109.2 Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.

- 1 We (the children / to the zoo / took). We *took the children to the zoo*
- 2 I (a friend of mine / on my way home / met). I
- 3 I (to put / on the envelope / a stamp / forgot). I
- 4 We (a lot of fruit / bought / in the market). We
- 5 They (opposite the park / a new hotel / built). They
- 6 Did you (at school / today / a lot of things / learn)? Did you ?
- 7 We (some interesting books / found / in the library). We
- 8 Please (at the top / write / of the page / your name). Please

109.3 Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.

- 1 They (for a long time / have lived / in the same house). They *have lived in the same house for a long time*
- 2 I (to the supermarket / every Friday / go). I
- 3 Why (home / did you come / so late)? Why ?
- 4 Sarah (her children / takes / every day / to school). Sarah
- 5 I haven't (been / recently / to the cinema). I haven't
- 6 I (her name / after a few minutes / remembered). I
- 7 We (around the town / all morning / walked). We
- 8 My brother (has been / since April / in Canada). My brother
- 9 I (on Saturday night / didn't see you / at the party). I
- 10 Lisa (her umbrella / last night / in a restaurant / left). Lisa
- 11 The moon (round the earth / every 27 days / goes). The moon
- 12 Anna (Italian / for the last three years / has been teaching / in London). Anna

Word order 2: adverbs with the verb

A

Some adverbs (for example, **always**, **also**, **probably**) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- Emily **always drives** to work.
- We were feeling very tired and we **were also** hungry.
- The meeting **will probably be cancelled**.

B

If the verb is one word (**drives/cooked** etc.), the adverb goes *before* the verb:

	adverb	verb	
Emily	always	drives	to work.
I	almost	fell	as I was going down the stairs.

- I cleaned the house and **also cooked** the dinner. (*not cooked also*)
- Laura **hardly ever watches** television and **rarely reads** newspapers.
- ‘Shall I give you my address?’ ‘No, I **already have** it.’

Note that these adverbs (**always/usually/also** etc.) go before **have to** ...:

- Joe never phones me. I **always have to** phone him. (*not I have always to phone*)

But adverbs go *after* **am/is/are/was/were**:

- We were feeling very tired and we **were also** hungry. (*not also were*)
- You’re **always** late. You’re **never** on time.
- The traffic **isn’t usually** as bad as it was this morning.

C

If the verb is two or more words (for example, **can remember / will be cancelled**), the adverb usually goes *after* the first verb (**can/doesn’t/will** etc.):

	verb 1	adverb	verb 2	
I Clare	can doesn’t Are you will	never usually definitely probably	remember drive going be	her name. to work. away next week? cancelled.
The meeting				

- You’ve **always been** very kind to me.
- Jack can’t cook. He **can’t even boil** an egg.
- Do you **still work** for the same company?
- The house **was only built** a year ago and it’s **already falling** down.

Note that **probably** goes before a negative (**isn’t/won’t** etc.). So we say:

- I **probably won’t see** you. *or*
I’ll **probably not** see you. (*but not I won’t probably*)

D

We also use **all** and **both** with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- We **all felt** ill after the meal. (*not felt all ill*)
- My parents **are both** teachers.
- Sarah and Jane **have both applied** for the job.
- My friends **are all going** out tonight.

E

Sometimes we use **is/will/did** etc. instead of repeating part of a sentence (see Unit 51):

- Tom says he isn’t clever, but I think he **is**. (= he **is clever**)

When we do this, we put **always/never** etc. *before* the verb:

- He **always says** he won’t be late, but he **always is**. (= he **is always** late)
- I’ve never done it and I **never will**. (= I **will never** do it)

Exercises

110.1 Is the word order OK or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 Helen drives always to work.
- 2 I cleaned the house and also cooked the dinner.
- 3 I have usually a shower in the morning.
- 4 I'm usually hungry when I get home from work.
- 5 Steve gets hardly ever angry.
- 6 I called him and I sent also an email.
- 7 You don't listen! I have always to repeat things.
- 8 I never have worked in a factory.
- 9 I never have enough time. I'm always busy.
- 10 When I arrived, my friends already were there.

Helen always drives to work.

OK

110.2 Rewrite the sentences to include the word in brackets.

- 1 Clare doesn't drive to work. (usually) *Clare doesn't usually drive to work.*
- 2 Katherine is very generous. (always)
- 3 I don't have to work on Sundays. (usually)
- 4 Do you watch TV in the evenings? (always)
- 5 Martin is learning Spanish, and he is learning Japanese. (also)
Martin is learning Spanish and he
- 6 a We were on holiday in Spain. (all)
- b We were staying at the same hotel. (all)
- c We had a great time. (all)
- 7 a The new hotel is expensive. (probably)
- b It costs a lot to stay there. (probably)
- 8 a I can help you. (probably)
- b I can't help you. (probably)

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets in the correct order.

- 1 What's her name again? ... *I can never remember* (remember / I / never / can) it.
- 2 Our cat (usually / sleeps) under the bed.
- 3 There are plenty of hotels here. (usually / it / easy / is)
to find a place to stay.
- 4 Mark and Amy (both / were / born) in Manchester.
- 5 Lisa is a good pianist. (sing / she / also / can) very well.
- 6 How do you go to work? (usually / you / do / go) by bus?
- 7 I see them every day, but (never / I / have / spoken) to them.
- 8 We haven't moved. (we / still / are / living) in the same place.
- 9 This shop is always busy. (have / you / always / to wait)
a long time to be served.
- 10 This could be the last time I see you. (meet / never / we / might)
again.
- 11 Thanks for the invitation, but (probably / I / be / won't)
able to come to the party.
- 12 I'm going out for an hour. (still / be / you / will) here when
I get back?
- 13 Helen goes away a lot. (is / hardly ever / she) at home.
- 14 If we hadn't taken the same train, (never / met / we / would / have) each other.
- 15 The journey took a long time today. (doesn't / take / it / always)
so long.
- 16 (all / were / we) tired, so (all / we / fell) asleep.
- 17 Tanya (says / always) that she'll phone me, but
..... (does / she / never).

still any more yet already**A**

We use **still** to say that a situation or action is continuing. It hasn't changed or stopped:

- It's ten o'clock and Joe is **still** in bed.
- When I went to bed, Chris was **still** working.
- Do you **still** want to go away or have you changed your mind?

Still also means 'in spite of this'. For example:

- He has everything he needs, but he's **still** unhappy.

Still usually goes in the middle of the sentence with the verb. See Unit 110.

B

We use **not ... any more** or **not ... any longer** to say that a situation has changed.

Any more and **any longer** go at the end of a sentence:

- Lucy **doesn't** work here **any more**. She left last month. *or*
- Lucy **doesn't** work here **any longer**.
- We used to be good friends, but we **aren't any more**. *or* ... we aren't **any longer**.

You can write **any more** (2 words) or **anymore** (1 word).

You can also use **no longer**. **No longer** goes in the middle of the sentence:

- Lucy **no longer** works here.

We do not normally use **no more** in this way:

- We are **no longer** friends. (*not* we are no more friends)

Compare **still** and **not ... any more**:

- Sally **still** works here, but Lucy **doesn't** work here **any more**.

C

We use **yet** mainly in negative sentences (**He isn't here yet**) and questions (**Is he here yet?**).

Yet (= until now) shows that the speaker expects something to happen.

Yet usually goes at the end of a sentence:

- It's 10 o'clock and Joe **isn't** here **yet**.
- Have** you **decided** what to do **yet**?
- 'Where are you going on holiday?' 'We **don't** know **yet**'

We often use **yet** with the **present perfect** ('**Have** you **decided ... yet**?'). See Unit 7C.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- Mike lost his job six months ago and **is still** unemployed.
- Mike lost his job six months ago and **hasn't found** another job **yet**.
- Is it still** raining?
- Has it stopped** raining **yet**?

Still is also possible in **negative** sentences (before the negative):

- She said she would be here an hour ago and she **still hasn't** come.

This is similar to 'she **hasn't come yet**'. But **still ... not** shows a stronger feeling of surprise or impatience. Compare:

- I sent him an invitation last week. He **hasn't** replied **yet**. (but I expect he will reply soon)
- I sent him an invitation weeks ago and he **still hasn't** replied. (he should have replied before now)

D

We use **already** to say that something happened sooner than expected.

- 'What time is Sue leaving?' 'She **has already** left.' (= sooner than you expected)
- Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he **already** know?
- I've just had lunch and I'm **already** hungry.

Already usually goes in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110) or at the end:

- She's **already** left. *or* She's left **already**.

Exercises

111.1 Compare what Paul said a few years ago with what he says now. Some things are the same as before and some things have changed. Write sentences with **still** and **any more**.



Paul a few years ago

I travel a lot.
I work in a shop.
I write poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I'm interested in politics.
I'm single.
I go fishing a lot.



Paul now

I travel a lot.
I work in a hospital.
I gave up writing poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I'm not interested in politics.
I'm single.
I haven't been fishing for years.

- 1 (travel) He still travels a lot.
2 (shop) He doesn't work in a shop any more.
3 (poems) He
4 (teacher)

- 5 (politics)
6 (single)
7 (fishing)
8 (beard)

Now write three sentences about Paul using **no longer.**

- 9 He no longer works in a shop.
10

- 11
12

111.2 For each sentence (with **still**) write a sentence with a similar meaning using **not ... yet**. Choose from these verbs:

decide find finish go stop take off wake up

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1 It's still raining. | <u>It hasn't stopped raining yet.</u> |
| 2 Gary is still here. | He |
| 3 They're still repairing the road. | They |
| 4 The children are still asleep. | They |
| 5 Kate is still looking for a job. | She |
| 6 I'm still wondering what to do. | I |
| 7 The plane is still waiting on the runway. | It |

111.3 Put in **still**, **yet**, **already** or **any more**.

- 1 Mike lost his job a year ago and he is still unemployed.
- 2 Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he already know?
- 3 Do you live in the same place or have you moved?
- 4 I'm hungry. Is dinner ready ?
- 5 I was hungry earlier, but I don't feel hungry
- 6 Can we wait a few minutes? I don't want to go out
- 7 Amy used to work at the airport, but she doesn't work there
- 8 I used to live in Amsterdam. I have a lot of friends there.
- 9 There's no need to introduce me to Joe. We've met.
- 10 John is 80 years old, but he's very fit and healthy.
- 11 Would you like something to eat, or have you eaten?
- 12 'Where's Helen?' 'She's not here She'll be here soon.'
- 13 Mark said he'd be here at 8.30. It's 9 o'clock now and he isn't here.
- 14 Do you want to join the club or are you a member?
- 15 It happened a long time ago, but I remember it very clearly.
- 16 I've put on weight. These trousers don't fit me

A

Study this example situation:

Tina loves watching TV.

She has a television in every room of the house,
even the bathroom.

We use **even** to say that something is unusual or surprising. It is not usual to have a television in the bathroom.



Some more examples:

- These pictures are really awful. **Even I** take better pictures than these.
(and I'm certainly not a good photographer)
- He always wears a coat, **even in hot weather.**
- The print was very small. I couldn't read it, **even with glasses.**
- Nobody would help her, **not even her best friend.** or
Not even her best friend would help her.

B

You can use **even** with the verb in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):

- Laura has travelled all over the world. She's **even** been to the Antarctic.
- They are very rich. They **even** have their own private jet.

You can use **even** with a negative (**not even**, **can't even**, **don't even** etc.):

- I can't cook. I **can't even** boil an egg. (and boiling an egg is very easy)
- They weren't very friendly to us. They **didn't even** say hello.
- Jessica is very fit. She's been running quite fast and she's **not even** out of breath.

C

You can use **even** + comparative (**cheaper** / **more expensive** etc.):

- I got up very early, but Jack got up **even earlier.**
- I knew I didn't have much money, but I have **even less** than I thought.
- We were very surprised to get an email from her. We were **even more surprised** when she came to see us a few days later.

D

even though / even when / even if

We use **even though / even when / even if** + subject + verb:

- Even though** **Tina can't** drive, she has a car.
subject + verb
- He never shouts, **even when he's** angry.
- This river is dangerous. It's dangerous to swim in it, **even if you're** a strong swimmer.

We do not use **even** + subject + verb. We say:

- Even though she can't** drive, she has a car. (*not even* she can't drive)
- I can't reach the shelf **even if I stand** on a chair. (*not even* I stand)

Compare **even if** and **even** (without **if**):

- It's dangerous to swim here **even if you're** a strong swimmer. (*not even* you are)
- The river is dangerous, **even for strong swimmers.**

Compare **even if** and **if**:

- We're going to the beach tomorrow. It doesn't matter what the weather is like.
We're going **even if** the weather is bad.
- We want to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go **if** the weather is bad.

Exercises

112.1 Amy, Kate and Lisa are three friends who went on holiday together. Use the information given about them to complete the sentences using **even** or **not even**.

AMY

is usually happy
is usually on time
likes to get up early
is very interested in art



KATE

isn't very keen on art
is usually miserable
usually hates hotels
doesn't use her camera much



LISA

is almost always late
is a keen photographer
loves staying in hotels
isn't very good at getting up



- 1 They stayed at a hotel. Everybody liked it, **even Kate**
- 2 They arranged to meet. They all arrived on time,
- 3 They went to an art gallery. Nobody enjoyed it,
- 4 Yesterday they had to get up early. They all managed to do this,
- 5 They were together yesterday. They were all in a good mood,
- 6 None of them took any pictures,

112.2 Make sentences with **even**. Use the words in brackets.

- 1 Laura has been all over the world. (the Antarctic) **She has even been to the Antarctic.**
- 2 We painted the whole room. (the floor) We
- 3 Rachel has met lots of famous people. (the prime minister)
She
- 4 You could hear the noise from a long way away. (from the next street)
You

Now make sentences with a negative + even (didn't even, can't even etc.).

- 5 They didn't say anything to us. (hello) **They didn't even say hello.**
- 6 I can't remember anything about her. (her name)
I
- 7 There isn't anything to do in this town. (a cinema)
.....
- 8 He didn't tell anybody where he was going. (his wife)
.....
- 9 I don't know anyone in our street. (my neighbours)
.....

112.3 Complete the sentences using **even** + comparative.

- 1 It was very hot yesterday, but today it's **even hotter**
- 2 The church is 700 years old, but the house next to it is
- 3 That's a very good idea, but I've got an one.
- 4 The first question was very difficult to answer. The second one was
- 5 I did very badly in the exam, but most of my friends did
- 6 Neither of us was hungry. I ate very little and my friend ate

112.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from: **if even even if even though**

- 1 **Even though** she can't drive, she has a car.
- 2 The bus leaves in five minutes, but we can still catch it we run.
- 3 The bus leaves in two minutes. We won't catch it now we run.
- 4 Mark's Spanish isn't very good, after three years in Spain.
- 5 Mark's Spanish isn't very good, he lived in Spain for three years.
- 6 with the heating on, it was cold in the house.
- 7 I couldn't sleep I was very tired.
- 8 I won't forgive them for what they did, they apologise.
- 9 I hadn't eaten anything for 24 hours, I wasn't hungry.

although though even though in spite of despite

A

Study this example situation:



Last year Paul and Sarah had a holiday by the sea. It rained a lot, but they had a good time.

You can say:

Although it rained a lot, they had a good time.
(= It rained a lot, but they ...) or

In spite of } the rain, they had a good time.
Despite }

BAfter **although** we use a *subject + verb*:

- Although it rained** a lot, they had a good time.
- I didn't apply for the job **although I had** the necessary qualifications.

Compare the meaning of **although** and **because**:

- We went out **although** it was raining heavily.
- We didn't go out **because** it was raining heavily.

CAfter **in spite of** or **despite**, we use a *noun*, a *pronoun* (**this/that/what** etc.) or **-ing**:

- In spite of the rain**, we had a good time.
- She wasn't well, but **in spite of this** she continued working.
- In spite of what** I said yesterday, I still love you.
- I didn't apply for the job **in spite of having** the necessary qualifications.

Despite is the same as **in spite of**. We say **in spite of**, but **despite** (*without of*):

- She wasn't well, but **despite this** she continued working. (*not despite of this*)

You can say '**in spite of the fact** (that) ...' and '**despite the fact** (that) ...':

- I didn't apply for the job **{ in spite of the fact (that) } despite the fact (that) }** I had the necessary qualifications.

Compare **in spite of** and **because of**:

- We went out **in spite of the rain**. (*or ... despite the rain*.)
- We didn't go out **because of the rain**.

DCompare **although** and **in spite of / despite**:

- Although the traffic was** bad, **{ In spite of the traffic, }** we arrived on time. (*not in spite of the traffic was bad*)
- I couldn't sleep **{ although I was } despite being** very tired. (*not despite I was tired*)

E**though = although:**

- I didn't apply for the job **though** I had the necessary qualifications.

In spoken English we often use **though** at the end of a sentence:

- The house isn't so nice. I like the garden **though**. (= but I like the garden)
- I see them every day. I've never spoken to them **though**. (= but I've never spoken to them)

Even though (*but not 'even' alone*) is similar to **although**:

- Even though** I was really tired, I couldn't sleep. (*not even I was really tired*)

Exercises

113.1 Complete the sentences. Use **although** + a sentence from the box.

I didn't speak the language well
I had never seen her before
it was quite cold
I'd met her twice before

-she has a very important job-
we don't like them very much
the heating was on
we've known each other a long time

- 1 Although she has a very important job ..., she isn't well-paid.
- 2 , I recognised her from a photo.
- 3 Sarah wasn't wearing a coat
- 4 We decided to invite them to the party
- 5 , I managed to make myself understood.
- 6 , the room wasn't warm.
- 7 I didn't recognise her
- 8 We're not close friends

113.2 Complete the sentences with **although / in spite of / because / because of**.

- 1 Although it rained a lot, we had a good time.
- 2 a all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.
b we'd planned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.
- 3 a I went home early I was feeling unwell.
b I went to work the next day I was still feeling unwell.
- 4 a Chris only accepted the job the salary, which was very high.
b Sam accepted the job the salary, which was rather low.
- 5 a there was a lot of noise, I slept quite well.
b I couldn't get to sleep the noise.

Use your own ideas to complete the following sentences:

- 6 a He passed the exam although
b He passed the exam because
- 7 a I didn't eat much although
b I didn't eat much in spite of

113.3 Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in brackets in your sentences.

- 1 I couldn't sleep. I was very tired. (despite)
I couldn't sleep despite being very tired.
- 2 We played quite well. We lost the game. (in spite of)
In spite
- 3 I'd hurt my foot. I managed to walk home. (although)
.....
- 4 I enjoyed the film. The story was silly. (in spite of)
.....
- 5 We live in the same building. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)
.....
- 6 They came to the party. They hadn't been invited. (even though)
.....

113.4 Use the words in brackets to make a sentence with **though** at the end.

- 1 The house isn't very nice. (like / garden) I like the garden though.
- 2 I enjoyed reading the book. (very long)
- 3 We didn't like the food. (ate)
- 4 Laura is very nice. (don't like / husband) I

in case

A

Study this example situation:



Your car should have a spare wheel **in case** you have a puncture.
(= because it is possible you will have a puncture)

in case something happens =
because it is possible it will happen

Some more examples of **in case**:

- I'd better write down my password **in case I forget it**.
(= because it is possible I will forget it)
- Shall I draw a map for you **in case you have a problem** finding our house?
(= because it is possible you will have problems finding it)
- I'll remind them about the meeting **in case they've forgotten**.
(= because it is possible they have forgotten)

We use **just in case** for a smaller possibility:

- I don't think it will rain, but I'll take an umbrella **just in case**. (= **just in case** it rains)

We do not use **will** after **in case** (see also Unit 25):

- I'll write down my password **in case I forget** it. (not in case I will forget)

B

In case and **if** are not the same. We use **in case** to say *why* somebody does (or doesn't do) something. You do something *now* **in case** something happens *later*.

Compare:

in case

- We'll buy some more food **in case** Tom comes.
(= Maybe Tom will come. We'll buy some more food now, whether he comes or not. Then we'll *already* have the food if he comes.)
- I'll give you my phone number **in case** you need to contact me.
- You should insure your bike **in case** it is stolen.

if

- We'll buy some more food **if** Tom comes.
(= Maybe Tom will come. If he comes, we'll buy some more food. If he doesn't come, we won't buy any more food.)
- You can call me on this number **if** you need to contact me.
- You should inform the police **if** your bike is stolen.

CYou can use **in case** + *past* to say why somebody did something:

- I gave him my phone number **in case he needed** to contact me.
(= because it was possible that he would need to contact me)
- I drew a map for Sarah **in case she had** a problem finding our house.
- We rang the doorbell again **in case they hadn't heard** it the first time.

D**in case of** = if there is ... (especially on notices, instructions etc.):

- In case of fire**, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= if there is a fire)
- In case of emergency**, call this number. (= if there is an emergency)

Exercises

114.1 Sophie is going for a long walk in the country. You're worried about her because:

perhaps she'll be thirsty it's possible she'll get lost	she might need to call somebody perhaps she'll get hungry	maybe she'll get lonely maybe it will rain
--	--	---

You advise her to take some things with her. Complete the sentences using **in case**.

- 1 Take a map *in case you get lost*
- 2 You should take some chocolate
- 3 You'll need an anorak
- 4 Take plenty of water
- 5 Don't forget your phone
- 6 Shall I come with you ?

114.2 What do you say in these situations? Use **in case**.

- 1 It's possible that Jane will need to contact you, so you give her your phone number.
You say: I'll give you my phone number *in case you need to contact me*
- 2 A friend of yours is going away for a long time. Maybe you won't see her again before she goes, so you decide to say goodbye now.
You say: I'll say goodbye now
- 3 You are buying food in a supermarket with a friend. You think you have everything you need, but maybe you've forgotten something. Your friend has the list. You ask her to check it.
You say: Can you ?
- 4 You're shopping with a friend. She's just bought some jeans, but she didn't try them on. Maybe they won't fit her, so you advise her to keep the receipt.
You say: Keep

114.3 Complete the sentences using **in case**.

- 1 It was possible that it would rain, so I took an umbrella.
I took an umbrella *in case it rained*
- 2 I thought that I might forget the name of the book. So I wrote it down.
I wrote down the name of the book
- 3 I thought my parents might be worried about me. So I phoned them.
I phoned my parents
- 4 I sent an email to Lisa, but she didn't reply. So I sent another email because maybe she didn't get the first one.
I sent her another email
- 5 I met some people when I was on holiday in France. They said they might come to London one day. I live in London, so I gave them my phone number.
I gave them my phone number

114.4 Put in **in case** or **if**.

- 1 I'll draw a map for you *in case* you have a problem finding our house.
- 2 You should tell the police *if* you have any information about the crime.
- 3 I hope you'll come to Australia sometime. you come, you must visit us.
- 4 I made a copy of the document something happens to the original.
- 5 This book belongs to Kate. Can you give it to her you see her?
- 6 Write your name and phone number on your bag you lose it.
- 7 Go to the lost property office you lose your bag.
- 8 The burglar alarm will ring somebody tries to break into the house.
- 9 You should lock your bike to something somebody tries to steal it.
- 10 I was advised to get insurance I needed medical treatment while I was abroad.

unless as long as provided**A unless**

Study this example situation:

The club is for members only.

You can't go in **unless you are a member**.

This means:

You can't go in *except if* you are a member.

You can go in *only if* you are a member.

unless = except if



Some more examples of **unless**:

- I'll see you tomorrow **unless I have to work late**.
(= except if I have to work late)
- There are no buses to the beach. **Unless you have a car**, it's difficult to get there.
(= except if you have a car)
- A: Shall I tell Lisa what happened?
B: **Not unless** she asks you. (= tell her only if she asks you)
- Ben hates to complain. He wouldn't complain about something **unless it was really bad**.
(= except if it was really bad)
- We can take a taxi to the restaurant – **unless you'd prefer to walk**. (= except if you'd prefer to walk)

Instead of **unless** it is often possible to say **if ... not**:

- Unless we leave now**, we'll be late. *or* **If we don't leave now**, we'll ...

B as long as / so long as and provided / providing

You can say **as long as** or **so long as** (= if, on condition that):

- You can borrow my car { **as long as** } **so long as** you promise not to drive too fast.
(= You can borrow my car, but you must promise not to drive too fast. This is a condition.)

You can also say **provided (that)** or **providing (that)**:

- Travelling by car is convenient { **provided (that)** } **providing (that)** you have somewhere to park.
(= It's convenient but only if you have somewhere to park.)
- { **Providing (that)** } **Provided (that)** the room is clean, I don't mind which hotel we stay at.
(= The room must be clean, but otherwise I don't mind.)

C unless / as long as etc. for the future

When we are talking about the future, we do *not* use **will** after **unless / as long as / so long as / provided / providing**. We use a *present tense* (see Unit 25):

- I'm not going out **unless it stops** raining. (*not unless it will stop*)
- Providing** the weather **is** good, we're going to have a picnic tomorrow.
(*not providing the weather will be good*)

Exercises

115.1 Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use **unless** in your sentence.

- 1 You must try a bit harder, or you won't pass the exam.

You won't pass the exam unless you try a bit harder.

- 2 Listen carefully, or you won't know what to do.

You won't know what to do

- 3 She must apologise to me, or I'll never speak to her again.

- 4 You have to speak very slowly, or he won't understand you.

- 5 Business must improve soon, or the company will have to close.

- 6 We need to do something soon, or the problem will get worse.

115.2 Write sentences with **unless**.

- 1 The club isn't open to everyone. You're allowed in only if you're a member.

You aren't allowed in the club unless you're a member.

- 2 I don't want to go to the party alone. I'm going only if you go too.

I'm not going

- 3 Don't worry about the dog. It will chase you only if you move suddenly.

The dog

- 4 Ben isn't very talkative. He'll speak to you only if you ask him something.

Ben

- 5 Today is a public holiday. The doctor will see you only if it's an emergency.

The doctor

115.3 Which is correct?

- 1 You can borrow my car unless / as long as you promise not to drive too fast.

(as long as is correct)

- 2 We're going to the beach tomorrow unless / providing the weather is bad.

- 3 We're going to the beach tomorrow unless / providing the weather is good.

- 4 I don't mind if you come home late unless / as long as you come in quietly.

- 5 I'm going now unless / provided you want me to stay.

- 6 I don't watch TV unless / as long as I have nothing else to do.

- 7 Children are allowed to use the swimming pool unless / provided they are with an adult.

- 8 Unless / Provided they are with an adult, children are not allowed to use the swimming pool.

- 9 We can sit here in the corner unless / as long as you'd rather sit by the window.

- 10 A: Our holiday cost a lot of money.

B: Did it? Well, that doesn't matter unless / as long as you enjoyed yourselves.

115.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 We'll be late unless ... we take a taxi.

- 2 I like hot weather as long as ...

- 3 It takes 20 minutes to drive to the airport provided ...

- 4 I don't mind walking home as long as ...

- 5 I like to walk to work in the morning unless ...

- 6 We can meet tomorrow unless ...

- 7 I'll lend you the money providing ...

- 8 I'll tell you a secret as long as ...

- 9 You won't achieve anything unless ...

as (as I walked ... / as I was ... etc.)

A

as = at the same time as

You can use **as** when two things happen together at the same time:

- We all waved goodbye to Liz **as she drove away**.
(we **waved** and she **drove** away at the same time)
- As I walked along the street**, I looked in the shop windows.
- Can you turn off the light **as you go out**, please?



Or you can say that something happened **as you were doing** something else (in the middle of doing something else):

- Kate slipped **as she was getting off the bus**.
- We met Paul **as we were leaving the hotel**.



For the *past continuous* (**was getting** / **were going** etc.), see Unit 6.

You can also use **just as** (= exactly at that moment):

- Just as I sat down**, the doorbell rang.
- I had to leave **just as** the conversation was getting interesting.

We also use **as** when two things happen together in a longer period of time:

- As the day went on**, the weather got worse.
- I began to enjoy the job more **as I got used to it**.

the day went on

the weather got worse

Compare **as** and **when**:

We use **as** only if two things happen at the same time.

- As I drove home**, I listened to music.
(= at the same time)

Use **when** (*not as*) if one thing happens after another.

- When I got home**, I had something to eat.
(*not as I got home*)

B

as = because

As also means ‘because’:

- As I was hungry**, I decided to find somewhere to eat.
(= because I was hungry)
- As it's late and we're tired**, let's get a taxi home. (= because it's late ...)
- We watched TV all evening **as we didn't have anything better to do**.
- As I don't watch TV any more**, I gave my television to a friend of mine.

You can also use **since** in this way:

- Since** it's late and we're tired, let's get a taxi home.

Compare **as** (= because) and **when**:

- David wasn't in the office **as he was on holiday**. (= because he was on holiday)
- As they lived near us**, we used to see them quite often.
(= because they lived near us)

- David lost his passport **when he was on holiday**.
(= during the time he was away)
- When they lived near us**, we used to see them quite often.
(= at the time they lived near us)

Exercises

116.1 In this exercise **as** means ‘at the same time as’. Use **as** to join sentences from the boxes.

- 1 We all waved goodbye to Liz.
- 2 I listened
- 3 I burnt myself
- 4 The spectators cheered
- 5 A dog ran out in front of the car

we were driving along the road.
I was taking a hot dish out of the oven.
she drove away.
she told me her story.
the two teams came onto the field.

1 We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.

2

3

4

5

116.2 In this exercise **as** means ‘because’. Join sentences from the boxes beginning with **as**.

- 1 I was hungry
- 2 today is a public holiday
- 3 I didn’t want to disturb anybody
- 4 I can’t go to the concert
- 5 it was a nice day

we went for a walk by the canal
I tried to be very quiet
I decided to find somewhere to eat
all government offices are shut
you can have my ticket

1 As I was hungry, I decided to find somewhere to eat.

2

3

4

5

116.3 What does **as** mean in these sentences?

- 1 As they lived near us, we used to see them quite often.
- 2 Kate slipped **as** she was getting off the bus.
- 3 As I was tired, I went to bed early.
- 4 Unfortunately, **as** I was parking the car, I hit the car behind me.
- 5 As we climbed the hill, we got more and more tired.
- 6 We decided to go out to eat **as** we had no food at home.
- 7 As we don’t use the car very often, we’ve decided to sell it.

because *at the same time as*

✓

✓

116.4 In some of these sentences, **as** is not correct. Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 Julia got married as she was 22.
- 2 As the day went on, the weather got worse.
- 3 He dropped the glass as he was taking it out of the cupboard.
- 4 I lost my phone as I was in London.
- 5 As I left school, I didn’t know what to do.
- 6 The train slowed down as it approached the station.
- 7 I used to live near the sea as I was a child.
- 8 We can walk to the hotel as it isn’t far from here.

when she was 22

OK

116.5 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 Just as I sat down, the doorbell rang.
- 2 I saw you as
- 3 It started to rain just as
- 4 As she doesn’t have a phone,
- 5 Just as I took the picture,

A

Like = similar to, the same as:

- What a beautiful house! It's **like a palace**. (*not as a palace*)
- Be careful! The floor has been polished. It's **like walking on ice**. (*not as walking*)
- It's raining again. I hate weather **like this**. (*not as this*)
- 'What's that noise?' 'It sounds **like a baby crying**'. (*not as a baby crying*)

In these examples, **like** is a *preposition*. So it is followed by a *noun* (**like a palace**), a *pronoun* (**like this**) or **-ing** (**like walking**).

Sometimes **like** = for example. You can also use **such as**:

- I enjoy water sports, **like** surfing, scuba diving and water-skiing. *or*
- I enjoy water sports, **such as** surfing ...

B

As = in the same way as, in the same condition as.

We use **as** with *subject (S) + verb (V)*:

- I didn't move anything. I left everything **as it was**.
- You should have done it **as I showed** you.

S + V
as it was
as I showed

We also use **like** in this way (+ *subject + verb*):

- I left everything **like it was**.

Compare **as** and **like**. You can say:

- You should have done it **as I showed you**. *or* ... **like I showed you**.
- but* You should have done it **like this**. (*not as this*)

We say **as usual / as always**:

- You're late **as usual**.
- As always**, Nick was the first to complain.

We say **the same as ...**:

- Your phone is **the same as** mine. (*not the same like*)

C

Sometimes **as** (+ *subject + verb*) has other meanings. For example, after **do**:

- You can do **as you like**. (=do what you like)
- They did **as they promised**. (=They did what they promised.)

We also say **as you know / as I said / as she expected / as I thought** etc.:

- As you know**, it's Emma's birthday next week. (=you know this already)
- Andy failed his driving test, **as he expected**. (=he expected this before)

Like is not usual in these expressions, except with **say (like I said)**:

- As I said** yesterday, I'm sure we can solve the problem. *or* **Like I said** yesterday ...

D

As can also be a *preposition* (**as + noun**), but the meaning is different from **like**.

Compare:

- As a taxi driver**, I spend most of my working life in a car.
(I am a taxi driver, it's my job.)

- Everyone in the family wants me to drive them to places. I'm **like a taxi driver**.
(I'm not a taxi driver, but I'm like one.)

As (preposition) = in the position of, in the form of etc.:

- Many years ago I worked **as a photographer**. (I was a photographer)
- Many words, for example 'work' and 'rain', can be used **as verbs or nouns**.
- London is fine **as a place to visit**, but I wouldn't like to live there.
- The news of the tragedy came **as a great shock**.

Exercises

117.1 In some of these sentences, you need **like** (not **as**). Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is correct.

- 1 It's raining again. I hate weather as this.
- 2 You should have done it as I showed you.
- 3 Do you think James looks as his father?
- 4 He gets on my nerves. I can't stand people as him.
- 5 Why didn't you do it as I told you to do it?
- 6 As her mother, Katherine has a very good voice.
- 7 You never listen. Talking to you is as talking to the wall.
- 8 I prefer the room as it was, before we decorated it.
- 9 I'll phone you tomorrow as usual, OK?
- 10 She's a very good swimmer. She swims as a fish.

I hate weather like this.....

OK

117.2 Which goes with which?

- 1 I won't be able to come to the party.
- 2 I like Tom's idea.
- 3 I'm fed up with my job.
- 4 You drive too fast.
- 5 You don't have to take my advice.
- 6 I couldn't get a seat on the train.

- a It was full, as I expected.
- b As I've told you before, it's boring.
- c ~~As you know, I'll be away.~~
- d You can do as you like.
- e Let's do as he suggests.
- f You should take more care, as I keep telling you.

- 1c.....
- 2c.....
- 3c.....
- 4c.....
- 5c.....
- 6c.....

117.3 Complete the sentences using **like** or **as** + the following:

a beginner	blocks of ice	-a palace	a birthday present
a child	a theatre	winter	a tour guide

- 1 This house is beautiful. It's like a palace.
- 2 My feet are really cold. They're like blocks of ice.
- 3 I've been playing tennis for years, but I still play like a beginner.
- 4 Marion once had a part-time job as a child.
- 5 I wonder what that building is. It looks like a palace.
- 6 My brother gave me this watch as a birthday present.
- 7 It's very cold for the middle of summer. It's like winter.
- 8 He's 22 years old, but he sometimes behaves like a child.

a long time ago.

117.4 Put in **like** or **as**. Sometimes either word is possible.

- 1 We heard a noise like a baby crying.
- 2 I wish I had a car as yours.
- 3 Hannah has been working as a waitress for the last two months.
- 4 We saw Kevin last night. He was very cheerful, as always.
- 5 You waste a lot of time doing things like sitting in cafes all day.
- 6 As you can imagine, we were very tired after such a long journey.
- 7 Tom showed me some photos of the city as it was thirty years ago.
- 8 My neighbour's house is full of interesting things. It's like a museum.
- 9 In some countries in Asia, as Japan, Indonesia and Thailand, traffic drives on the left.
- 10 The weather hasn't changed. It's the same as yesterday.
- 11 You're different from the other people I know. I don't know anyone else like you.
- 12 The news that they are getting married came as a complete surprise to me.
- 13 This tea is awful. It tastes like water.
- 14 Suddenly there was a terrible noise. It was as a bomb exploding.
- 15 Right now I'm working in a shop. It's not great, but it's OK as a temporary job.
- 16 Brian is a student as most of his friends.

like as if

A

We use **like** or **as if** to say how somebody/something looks, sounds or feels:

- That house **looks like** it's going to fall down. or
That house **looks as if** it's going to fall down.
- Amy **sounded like** she had a cold, didn't she? or
Amy **sounded as if** she had a cold, didn't she?
- I've just had a holiday, but I feel very tired.
I don't **feel like** I've had a holiday. or
I don't **feel as if** I've had a holiday.

You can also use **as though** in these examples:

- I don't **feel as though** I've had a holiday.

Compare:

- You **look tired**. (**look + adjective**)
- You **look like you haven't slept**. } (**look like / as if + subject + verb**)
You **look as if you haven't slept**.



B

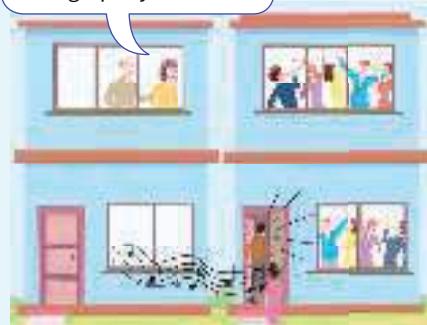
We say: **it looks like ... or it looks as if ...**
it sounds like ... or it sounds as if ...

- Sarah is very late. **It looks like** she isn't coming.
or **It looks as if** she isn't coming.
- It looked like** it was going to rain, so we took an umbrella.
or **It looked as if** it was going to rain ...
- The noise is very loud next door.
It sounds like they're having a party.
or **It sounds as if** they're ...

You can also use **as though**:

- It sounds as though** they're having a party.

It sounds like they're having a party next door.



C

You can use **like / as if / as though** with other verbs to say how somebody does something:

- He ran **like he was running for his life**.
- After the interruption, the speaker went on talking **as if nothing had happened**.
- When I told them my plan, they looked at me **as though I was mad**.

D

After **as if**, we sometimes use the *past* when we are talking about the *present*.

For example:

- I don't like him. He talks **as if** he **knew** everything.

The meaning is not past. We use the past (**as if he knew**) because the idea is not real: he does *not* know everything. We use the past in the same way with **if** and **wish** (see Unit 39).

We do not normally use **like** in this way.

Some more examples:

- She's always asking me to do things for her – **as if I didn't** have enough to do already.
(I *have* enough to do already)
- Joe's only 40. Why do you talk about him **as if he was** an old man? (he *isn't* an old man)

When you use the past in this way, you can use **were** instead of **was**:

- Why do you talk about him **as if he were** an old man?
- They treat me **as if I were** their own son. or ... **as if I was** their own son.
(I'm *not* their son)

Exercises

118.1 What do you say in these situations? Use the words in brackets to make your sentence.

- 1 You meet Bill. He has a black eye and blood on his face. (look / like / be / a fight)

You say to him: *You look like you've been in a fight.*

- 2 Claire comes into the room. She looks absolutely terrified. (look / as if / see / a ghost)

You say to her: What's the matter? You

- 3 You have just run one kilometre, but you are exhausted. (feel / like / run / a marathon)

You say: I

- 4 Joe is on holiday. He's talking to you on the phone and sounds happy.

(sound / as if / have / a good time)

You say to him: You

118.2 Make sentences beginning **It looks like ... or It sounds like ...**.

**you should see a doctor
it's going to rain**

**there's been an accident
she isn't coming**

**they're having an argument
they don't have any**

- 1 Sarah said she would be here an hour ago.

You say: *It looks like she isn't coming.*

- 2 The sky is full of black clouds.

You say: It

- 3 You hear two people shouting at each other next door.

You say:

- 4 You see an ambulance, some policemen and two damaged cars at the side of the road.

You say:

- 5 You and a friend are in a supermarket. You're looking for bananas, but without success.

You say:

- 6 Dave isn't feeling well. He tells you all about it.

You say:

118.3 Complete the sentences with **as if**. Choose from the box, putting the verbs in the correct form.

she / enjoy / it

he / need / a good rest

I / not / exist

I / be / crazy

she / hurt / her leg

she / not / want / come

he / not / eat / for a week

he / mean / what he / say

- 1 Mark looks very tired. He looks *as if he needs a good rest*.

- 2 I don't think Paul was joking. He looked

- 3 What's the matter with Lisa? She's walking

- 4 Paul was extremely hungry and ate his dinner very quickly.

He ate

- 5 I looked at Sarah during the movie. She had a bored expression on her face.

She didn't look

- 6 I told my friends about my plan. They were amazed.

They looked at me

- 7 I phoned Kate and invited her to the party, but she wasn't very enthusiastic.

She sounded

- 8 I went into the office, but nobody spoke to me or looked at me.

Everybody ignored me

118.4 These sentences are like the ones in Section D. Complete each sentence using **as if**.

- 1 Andy is a terrible driver. He drives *as if he were* the only driver on the road.

- 2 I'm 20 years old, so please don't talk to me *as if I were* a child.

- 3 Steve has never met Nicola, but he talks about her *as if she were* his best friend.

- 4 We first met a long time ago, but I remember it *as if it were* yesterday.

during for while

A during

during = at a time between the start and end of something:

- I fell asleep **during the movie**. (=at a time between the start and end of the movie)
- We met some really nice people **during our holiday**.
- The ground is wet. It must have rained **during the night**.

With 'time words' (**the morning, the night, the summer** etc.), you can usually say **in** or **during**:

- It rained **in the night**. or ... **during the night**.
- It's lovely here **during the summer**. or ... **in the summer**.



I fell asleep **during the movie**.

B for and during

We use **for** (+ a period of time) to say how long something goes on:

- We watched TV **for two hours** last night.
- Jess is going away **for a week** in September.
- How are you? I haven't seen you **for ages**.
- Are you going away **for the weekend**?

We do not use **during** to say *how long* something goes on. We do not say 'during two hours', 'during five years' etc.:

- It rained **for** three days without stopping. (*not* during three days)

We use **during** to say *when* something happens (*not* how long). Compare **during** and **for**:

- 'When did you fall asleep?' '**During the movie**'
- 'How long were you asleep?' '**For half an hour**'

C during and while

Compare:

We use **during** + noun:

- I fell asleep **during the movie**. noun
- We met a lot of interesting people **during our holiday**.
- Robert suddenly began to feel ill **during the exam**.

We use **while** + subject + verb:

- I fell asleep **while I was watching** TV. subject + verb
- We met a lot of interesting people **while we were on holiday**.
- Robert suddenly began to feel ill **while he was doing the exam**.

Some more examples of **while**:

- We saw Clare **while we were waiting** for the bus.
- While you were** out, there was a phone call for you.
- Alex read a book **while Amy watched** TV.

When we are talking about the future, we use the present after **while**. Do not use 'will' (see Unit 25):

- I'm going to Moscow next week. I hope the weather will be good **while I'm** there. (*not* while I will be)
- What are you going to do **while you're** waiting? (*not* while you'll be waiting)



Alex read a book **while Amy watched** TV.

Exercises

119.1 Put in **for or **during**.**

- 1 It rained **for** three days without stopping.
- 2 I fell asleep **during** the movie.
- 3 I went to the theatre last night. I met Sue the interval.
- 4 I felt really ill last week. I could hardly eat anything three days.
- 5 The traffic was bad. We were stuck in a traffic jam two hours.
- 6 Production at the factory was seriously affected the strike.
- 7 Sarah was very angry with me. She didn't speak to me a week.
- 8 I don't have much free time the week, but I relax at weekends.
- 9 I need a break. I think I'll go away a few days.
- 10 The president gave a short speech. She spoke only ten minutes.
- 11 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't eaten anything the journey.
- 12 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't eaten anything eight hours.

119.2 Put in **during or **while**.**

- 1 We met a lot of interesting people **while** we were on holiday.
- 2 We met a lot of interesting people **during** our holiday.
- 3 I met Mike I was shopping.
- 4 I was on holiday, I didn't use my phone at all.
- 5 I learnt a lot the course. The teachers were very good.
- 6 There was a lot of noise the night. What was it?
- 7 I'd been away for many years. Many things had changed that time.
- 8 What did they say about me I was out of the room?
- 9 When I fly anywhere, I never eat anything the flight.
- 10 Please don't interrupt me I'm speaking.
- 11 the festival, it's almost impossible to find a hotel room here.
- 12 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't eaten anything we were travelling.

119.3 Put in **during, **for** or **while**.**

- 1 I used to live in Berlin. I lived there five years.
- 2 One of the runners fell the race but managed to get up and continue.
- 3 Nobody came to see me I was in hospital.
- 4 Try to avoid travelling the busy periods of the day.
- 5 I was very tired. I slept ten hours.
- 6 Can you hold my bag I try on this jacket?
- 7 I'm not sure when we'll arrive, but it will be sometime the afternoon.
- 8 I wasn't well last week. I hardly ate anything three days.
- 9 My phone rang we were having dinner.
- 10 Nobody knows how many people were killed the war.

119.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 I fell asleep while **I was watching TV.**
- 2 I fell asleep during **the movie.**
- 3 Can you wait for me while
- 4 Most of the students looked bored during
- 5 I was asked a lot of questions during
- 6 Don't open the car door while
- 7 The lights suddenly went out while
- 8 What are you going to do while
- 9 It started to rain during
- 10 It started to rain while

A

by ... = not later than:

- I sent the documents today, so they should arrive **by Monday**.
(= on or before Monday, not later than Monday)
- We'd better hurry. We have to be home **by 5 o'clock**.
(= at or before 5 o'clock, not later than 5 o'clock)
- Where's Sarah? She should be here **by now**.
(= now or before now – so she should already be here)



This milk has to be used
by 14 August.

B

We use **until** (or **till**) to say *how long* a situation continues:

- A: Shall we go now?
B: No, let's **wait until** it stops raining. *or* ... **till** it stops raining.
- I was very tired this morning. *{* **I stayed in bed until** half past ten.
I didn't get up until half past ten.}

Compare **until** and **by**:

Something *continues until* a time in the future:

- Joe **will be away until** Monday.
(so he'll be back *on* Monday)
- I'll **be working until** 11.30.
(so I'll stop working *at* 11.30)

Something *happens by* a time in the future:

- Joe **will be back by** Monday.
(= not later than Monday)
- I'll **have finished my work by** 11.30.
(= I'll finish it not later than 11.30)

C

You can say '**by the time** something happens':

- It's too late to go to the bank now. **By the time we get there**, it will be closed.
(= it will close between now and the time we get there)
- You'll need plenty of time at the airport. **By the time you check in and go through security**, it will be time for your flight.
(= check-in and security will take a long time)
- Hurry up! **By the time we get to the cinema**, the film will already have started.

You can say '**by the time** something happened' (for the past):

- Karen's car broke down on the way to the party last night. **By the time she arrived**, most of the other guests had left.
(= it took her a long time to get there and most of the guests left during this time)
- I had a lot of work to do yesterday evening. I was very tired **by the time I finished**.
(= it took me a long time to do the work, and I became more and more tired)
- We went to the cinema last night. It took us a long time to find somewhere to park the car. **By the time we got to the cinema**, the film had already started.

You can say **by then** or **by that time**:

- Karen finally got to the party at midnight, but **by then** most of the other guests had left.
or ... **but by that time**, most of the other guests had left.

Exercises

120.1 Complete the sentences with **by.**

- 1 We have to be home not later than 5 o'clock.
We have to be home **by 5 o'clock**
- 2 I have to be at the airport not later than 8.30.
I have to be at the airport
- 3 Let me know not later than Saturday whether you can come to the party.
..... whether you can come to the party.
- 4 Please make sure that you're here not later than 2 o'clock.
Please make sure that
- 5 If we leave now, we should arrive not later than lunchtime.
If we leave now,

120.2 Put in **by or **until**.**

- 1 Steve has gone away. He'll be away **until** Monday.
- 2 Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home 5 o'clock.
- 3 According to the forecast, the bad weather will continue the weekend.
- 4 I don't know whether to apply for the job or not. I have to decide Friday.
- 5 I think I'll wait Thursday before making a decision.
- 6 I'm still waiting for Tom to call me. He should have called me now.
- 7 I need to pay this bill. It has to be paid tomorrow.
- 8 Don't pay the bill today. Wait tomorrow.
- 9 We haven't finished painting the house yet. We hope to finish Tuesday.
- 10 'Will you still be in the office at 6.30?' 'No, I'll have gone home then.'
- 11 I'm moving into my new flat next week. I'm staying with a friend then.
- 12 I've got a lot of work to do. the time I finish, it will be time to go to bed.
- 13 We have plenty of time. The film doesn't start 8.30.
- 14 It is hoped that the new bridge will be completed the end of the year.

120.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use **by or **until**.**

- 1 David is away at the moment. He'll be away **until Monday**
- 2 David is away at the moment. He'll be back **by Monday**
- 3 I'm just going out. I won't be long. Wait here
- 4 I'm just going out. It's 4.30 now. I won't be long. I'll be back
- 5 If you want to apply for the job, your application must be received
- 6 My passport is valid
- 7 I missed the last bus and had to walk home. I didn't get home

120.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences using **By the time**

- 1 I was invited to a party, but I got there much later than I intended.
By the time I got to the party, most of the other guests had left.
- 2 I intended to catch a train, but it took me longer than expected to get to the station.
....., my train had already left.
- 3 I wanted to go shopping after work. But I finished work much later than expected.
....., it was too late to go shopping.
- 4 I saw two men who looked as if they were trying to steal a car. I called the police, but it was some time before they arrived.
....., the two men had disappeared.
- 5 We climbed a mountain and it took us a long time to get to the top. There wasn't much time to enjoy the view.
....., we had to come down again.

at/on/in (time)

A

Compare **at**, **on** and **in**:

- They arrived **at 5 o'clock**.
- They arrived **on Friday**.
- They arrived **in June**. / They arrived **in 2012**.

We use:

at for the time of day**at five o'clock** **at 11.45** **at midnight** **at lunchtime** **at sunset** etc.**on** for days and dates**on Friday** / **on Fridays** **on 16 May 2012** **on New Year's Day** **on my birthday****in** for longer periods (months/years/seasons etc.)**in June** **in 2012** **in the 1990s** **in the 20th century** **in the past** **in winter**

B

We say:

at the moment / **at the minute** / **at present** / **at this time** (= now):

- Can we talk later? I'm busy **at the moment**.

at the same time

- Kate and I arrived **at the same time**.

at the weekends / **at weekends** (or **on the weekend** / **on weekends** in American English):

- Will you be here **at the weekend**? (or ... **on** the weekend)

at Christmas (but **on Christmas Day**)

- Do you give each other presents **at Christmas**?

at night (= during nights in general), **in the night** (= during a particular night):

- I don't like working **at night**. but I was woken up by a noise **in the night**.

C

We say:

in the morning(s)	but
in the afternoon(s)	
in the evening(s)	

on Friday morning(s)
on Sunday afternoon(s)
on Monday evening(s) etc.

- I'll see you **in the morning**.
- Do you work **in the evenings**?

- I'll see you **on Friday morning**.
- Do you work **on Saturday evenings**?

D

We do not use **at/on/in** before **last/next/this/every**:

- I'll see you **next Friday**. (not on next Friday)
- They got married **last June**.

We often leave out **on** before days. So you can say:

- I'll see you **on Friday**. or I'll see you **Friday**.
- I don't work **on Monday mornings**. or I don't work **Monday mornings**.

E

We say that something will happen **in a few minutes** / **in six months** etc.:

- The train will be leaving **in a few minutes**. (= a few minutes from now)
- Andy has gone away. He'll be back **in a week**. (= a week from now)
- They'll be here **in a moment**. (= a moment from now, very soon)

We also use **in** ... to say how long it takes to do something:

- I learnt to drive **in four weeks**. (= it took me four weeks to learn)

Exercises

121.1 Put in **at**, **on** or **in**.

- 1 Mozart was born in Salzburg in 1756.
- 2 I've been invited to a wedding on 14 February.
- 3 Amy's birthday is in May, but I don't know which date.
- 4 This park is popular and gets very busy on weekends.
- 5 I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her on Tuesday.
- 6 Jonathan is 63. He'll be retiring from his job in two years.
- 7 I'm busy right now. I'll be with you in a moment.
- 8 Sam isn't here at the moment, but he'll be here this afternoon.
- 9 There are usually a lot of parties on New Year's Eve.
- 10 I don't like the dark. I try to avoid going out at night.
- 11 It rained very hard on the night. Did you hear it?
- 12 My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready in two hours.
- 13 The bus station was busy. A lot of buses were leaving at the same time.
- 14 Helen and David always go out for dinner on their wedding anniversary.
- 15 It was a short book and easy to read. I read it in a day.
- 16 At midday, the sun is at its highest point in the sky.
- 17 This building is very old. It was built in the fifteenth century.
- 18 The office is closed on Wednesday afternoons.
- 19 In the UK many people go home to see their families on Christmas.
- 20 My flight arrives at 5 o'clock in the morning.
- 21 The course begins on 7 January and ends sometime in April.
- 22 I might not be at home on Tuesday morning, but I'll be there in the afternoon.

121.2 Complete the sentences. Use **at**, **on** or **in** + the following:

the evening	about 20 minutes	1756	the same time	the 1920s
the moment	21 July 1969	night	Saturdays	11 seconds

- 1 Mozart was born in 1756.
- 2 If the sky is clear, you can see the stars at night.
- 3 After working hard during the day, I like to relax in the evening.
- 4 Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon at night.
- 5 It's difficult to listen if everyone is speaking at the same time.
- 6 Jazz became popular in the United States in the 1920s.
- 7 I'm just going out to the shop. I'll be back in about 20 minutes.
- 8 I don't think we need an umbrella. It's not raining at the moment.
- 9 Ben is a very fast runner. He can run 100 metres in 11 seconds.
- 10 Lisa works from Monday to Friday. Sometimes she also works on Saturdays.

121.3 Which is correct: **a**, **b**, or **both** of them?

- | | | | | |
|------|------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 a | I'll see you on Friday. | b | I'll see you Friday. | both |
| 2 a | I'll see you on next Friday. | b | I'll see you next Friday. | b |
| 3 a | Paul got married in April. | b | Paul got married April. | |
| 4 a | I play tennis on Sunday mornings. | b | I play tennis Sunday mornings. | |
| 5 a | We were ill at the same time. | b | We were ill in the same time. | |
| 6 a | What are you doing at the weekend? | b | What are you doing on the weekend? | |
| 7 a | Oliver was born at 10 May 1993. | b | Oliver was born on 10 May 1993. | |
| 8 a | He left school last June. | b | He left school in last June. | |
| 9 a | Will you be here on Tuesday? | b | Will you be here Tuesday? | |
| 10 a | I don't like driving in night. | b | I don't like driving at night. | |

on time and in time at the end and in the end**A on time and in time**

on time = punctual, not late

If something happens **on time**, it happens at the time that was planned:

- The 11.45 train left **on time**. (= it left at 11.45)
- Please be **on time**. Don't be late.
- The conference was well-organised. Everything began and finished **on time**.

in time (for something / to do something) = soon enough

- Will you be home **in time for dinner**? (= soon enough for dinner)
- I sent Amy a birthday present. I hope it arrives **in time**.
(= on or before her birthday)
- I'm in a hurry. I want to get home **in time to watch** the game on TV.
(= soon enough to see the game)

The opposite of **in time** is **too late**:

- I got home **too late** to watch the game on TV.

You can say **just in time** (= almost too late):

- We got to the station **just in time** for our train.
- A child ran into the road in front of the car, but I managed to stop **just in time**.

B at the end and in the end

at the end (of something) = at the time when something ends

For example:

at the end of the month	at the end of January	at the end of the game
at the end of the film	at the end of the course	at the end of the concert

- I'm going away **at the end of January / at the end of the month**.
- At the end of the concert**, everyone applauded.
- The players shook hands **at the end of the game**.

We do not say 'in the end of ...'. For example, we do not say 'in the end of January'.

The opposite of **at the end** is **at the beginning**:

- I'm going away **at the beginning of January**. (not in the beginning)

in the end = finally

We use **in the end** when we say what the final result of a situation was:

- We had a lot of problems with our car. We sold it **in the end**. (= finally we sold it)
- He got more and more angry. **In the end** he just walked out of the room.
- Alan couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He didn't go anywhere **in the end**.
(not at the end)

The opposite of **in the end** is **at first**:

- At first** we didn't get on very well, but **in the end** we became good friends.

Exercises

122.1 Complete the sentences with **on time** or **in time**.

- 1 The bus is usually **on time**, but it was late this morning.
- 2 The film was supposed to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin
- 3 The train service isn't very good. The trains are rarely
- 4 We nearly missed our train. We got to the station just
- 5 We want to start the meeting, so please don't be late.
- 6 I've just washed this shirt. I want to wear it this evening, so I hope it will be dry
- 7 I almost forgot that it was Joe's birthday. Fortunately I remembered
- 8 Why are you never? You always keep everybody waiting.
- 9 It is hoped that the new stadium will be ready for the tournament later this year.

122.2 Read the situations and make sentences using **just in time**.

- 1 A child ran into the road in front of your car. You saw the child at the last moment.
(manage / stop) **I managed to stop just in time**.
- 2 You were walking home. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily.
(get / home) I
- 3 Your friend was going to sit on the chair you had just painted. You said, 'Don't sit on that chair!', so he didn't. (stop / him) I
- 4 You and a friend went to the cinema. You were late, and you thought you would miss the beginning of the film. But the film began just as you sat down in the cinema.
(get / cinema / beginning / film)
We

122.3 Complete the sentences using **at the end** + the following:

the course	the game	the interview	the month	the race
-------------------	-----------------	----------------------	------------------	-----------------

- 1 The players shook hands **at the end of the game**
- 2 I get paid
- 3 The students had a party
- 4 Two of the runners collapsed
- 5 I was surprised when I was offered the job

122.4 Write sentences with **in the end**. Use the verb in brackets.

- 1 We had a lot of problems with our car. (sell) **In the end we sold it**.
- 2 Anna got more and more fed up with her job.
(resign)
- 3 I tried to learn Japanese, but I found it too difficult.
(give up)
- 4 We couldn't decide whether to go to the party or not.
(not / go)

122.5 Put in **at** or **in**.

- 1 I'm going away **at** the end of the month.
- 2 It took Gary a long time to find work. the end he got a job as a bus driver.
- 3 I couldn't decide what to buy Amy for her birthday. I didn't buy her anything the end.
- 4 I'm going away the end of this week.
- 5 We waited ages for a bus. the end we had to get a taxi.
- 6 the end of the lesson, all the students left the classroom.
- 7 We had a few problems at first, but the end everything was OK.
- 8 You were in a difficult position. What did you do the end?
- 9 The journey took a very long time, but we got there the end.
- 10 Are you going away the beginning of August or the end?

in/at/on (position) 1

A in



in a room
in a building
in a box
etc.



in a garden
in a town
in the city centre
etc.



in a pool
in the sea
in a river
etc.

- There's no-one **in the room / in the building / in the garden**.
- What do you have **in your hand / in your mouth**?
- When we were **in Italy**, we spent a few days **in Venice**.
- I have a friend who lives **in a small village in the mountains**.
- There were some people swimming **in the pool / in the sea / in the river**.

B at



at the bus stop



at the door



at the roundabout



at her desk

- Who is that man standing **at the bus stop / at the door / at the window**?
- Turn left **at the traffic lights / at the next junction / at the roundabout / at the church**.
- We have to get off the bus **at the next stop**.
- When you leave the hotel, please leave your key **at reception**. (=at the reception desk)

Compare **in** and **at**:

- There were a lot of people **in the shop**. It was crowded.
Go along this road, then turn left **at the shop**.
- I'll meet you **in the hotel lobby**. (=in the building)
I'll meet you **at the entrance to the hotel**. (=outside the building)

C on



on her nose



on a page



on an island

- I sat **on the floor / on the ground / on the grass / on the beach / on a chair**.
- There's a dirty mark **on the ceiling / on your nose / on your shirt**.
- Did you see the notice **on the wall / on the door**?
- You'll find details of TV programmes **on page seven** of the newspaper.
- The hotel is **on a small island** in the middle of a lake.

Compare **in** and **on**:

- There is some water **in the bottle**.
There is a label **on the bottle**.

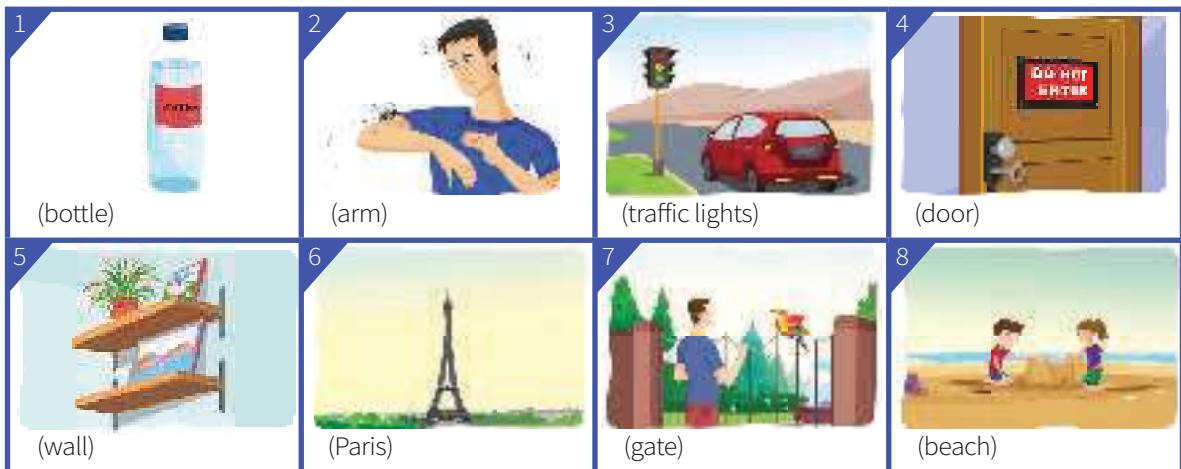


Compare **at** and **on**:

- There is somebody **at the door**. Shall I go and see who it is?
There is a notice **on the door**. It says 'Do not disturb'.

Exercises

123.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use **in**, **at** or **on** with the words below the pictures.



- 1 Where's the label? **On the bottle.**
- 2 Where's the fly?
- 3 Where's the car waiting?
- 4 Where's the notice? Where's the key?
- 5 Where are the shelves?
- 6 Where's the Eiffel Tower?
- 7 Where's the man standing? Where's the bird?
- 8 Where are the children playing?

123.2 Complete the sentences. Use **in**, **at** or **on** + the following:

the window	his hand	the mountains	that tree
my guitar	the river	the island	junction 14

- 1 There were some people swimming **in the river**
- 2 One of the strings is broken.
- 3 Leave the motorway and then turn left.
- 4 He was holding something , but I couldn't see what it was.
- 5 The leaves are a beautiful colour.
- 6 You can go skiing near here. There's plenty of snow.
- 7 There's nobody living It's uninhabited.
- 8 He spends most of the day sitting and looking outside.

123.3 Complete the sentences with **in**, **at** or **on**.

- 1 There was a long queue of people **at** the bus stop.
- 2 Nicola was wearing a silver ring her little finger.
- 3 There was a security guard standing the entrance to the building.
- 4 I wasn't sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name the door.
- 5 There are plenty of shops and restaurants the town centre.
- 6 You'll find the weather forecast the back page of the newspaper.
- 7 The headquarters of the company are California.
- 8 I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting a desk.
- 9 The man the police are looking for has a scar his right cheek.
- 10 If you come here by bus, get off the stop after the traffic lights.
- 11 Have you ever been camping? Have you ever slept a tent?
- 12 Emily was sitting the balcony reading a book.
- 13 My brother lives a small village the south-west of England.
- 14 I like that picture hanging the wall the kitchen.

in/at/on (position) 2

A

We say that somebody/something is:

in a line, in a row, in a queue
in a picture, in a photo(graph)
in a newspaper, in a magazine, in a book

in an office, in a department
in the sky, in the world
in the country (= not in a town)

- When I go to the cinema, I like to sit **in the front row**.
- Amy works **in the sales department**.
- Who is the woman **in that picture**?
- Do you live in a city or **in the country**?
- It's a lovely day. There isn't a cloud **in the sky**.

They're standing **in a row**.**B**

We say that somebody/something is:

on the left, on the right (or **on the left-hand side, on the right-hand side**)

- Do you drive **on the left** or **on the right** in your country?

on the ground floor, on the first floor, on the second floor etc.

- Our apartment is **on the second floor** of the building.

on a map, on a menu, on a list, on a page, on a website

- Here's the shopping list. Don't buy anything that's not **on the list**.
- You'll find the information you need **on our website**.

We say that a place is **on a river / on a road / on the coast**:

- Vienna is **on the** (river) **Danube**.
- The town where you live – is it **on the coast** or is it inland?

We say **on the way** (from one place to another):

- We stopped at a shop **on the way** home.

C

We say:

at the top (of ...), at the bottom (of ...), at the end (of ...)

- Write your name **at the top of the page**.
- Jane lives **at the other end of the street**.

at the top (of the page)**at the bottom** (of the page)**D**

We say:

in the front, in the back of a car

- I was **in the back** (of the car) when we had the accident.

at the back**at the front, at the back** of a building / theatre / group of people etc.

- The garden is **at the back of the house**.
- Let's sit **at the front** (of the cinema).
- We were **at the back**, so we couldn't see very well.

on the front, on the back of an envelope / a piece of paper etc.

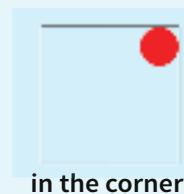
- I wrote the date **on the back of the photo**.

at the front**E**

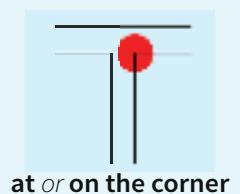
We say:

in the corner of a room

- The TV is **in the corner** of the room.

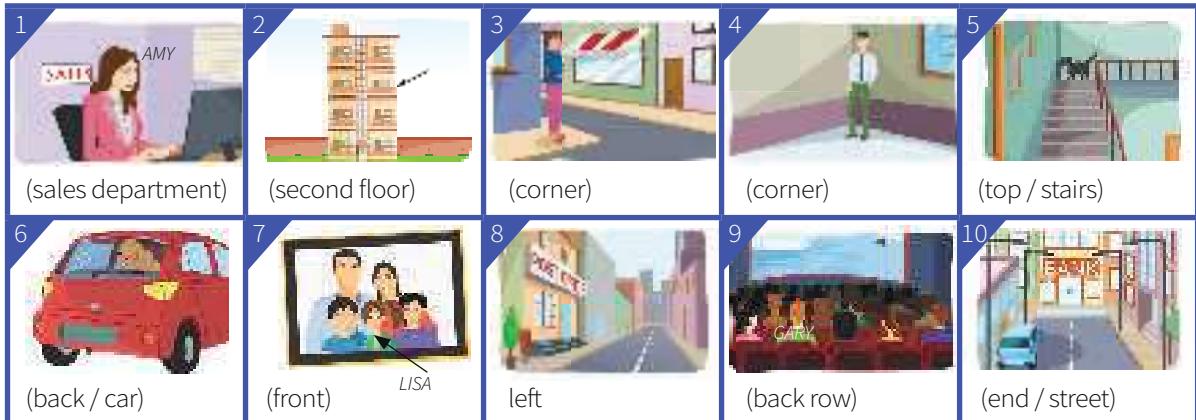
**at the corner or on the corner** of a street

- There is a small shop **at the corner** (of the street).
 or ... **on the corner** (of the street).



Exercises

124.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use **in**, **at** or **on** with the words below the pictures.



- 1 Where does Amy work? ... *In the sales department.*
- 2 Amy lives in this building. Where's her flat exactly?
- 3 Where is the woman standing?
- 4 Where is the man standing?
- 5 Where's the cat?
- 6 Where's the dog?
- 7 Lisa is in this group of people. Where is she?
- 8 Where's the post office?
- 9 Gary is at the cinema. Where is he sitting?
- 10 Where is the bank?

124.2 Complete the sentences. Use **in**, **at** or **on** + the following:

the west coast	the world	the back of the class	the sky
the front row	the right	the back of this card	the way to work

- 1 It's a lovely day. There isn't a cloud ... *in the sky*
- 2 In most countries people drive
- 3 What is the tallest building ?
- 4 I met a friend of mine this morning.
- 5 San Francisco is of the United States.
- 6 We went to the theatre last night. We had seats
- 7 I couldn't hear the teacher. She spoke quietly and I was sitting
- 8 I don't have your address. Could you write it ?

124.3 Complete the sentences with **in**, **at** or **on**.

- 1 Write your name *at* the top of the page.
- 2 Is your sister this photo? I don't recognise her.
- 3 They live in a small house the bottom of the hill.
- 4 We normally use the front entrance to the building, but there's another one the back.
- 5 We had to wait a queue for an hour to check in at the airport.
- 6 There was a list of names, but my name wasn't the list.
- 7 Is there anything interesting today's newspaper?
- 8 I love to look up at the stars the sky at night.
- 9 When I'm a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit the front.
- 10 I live in a very small village. You probably won't find it your map.
- 11 Joe works the furniture department of a large store.
- 12 Paris is the (river) Seine.
- 13 I don't like cities. I'd much prefer to live the country.
- 14 My office is the top floor. It's your left as you come out of the lift.

A **in hospital / at work** etc.

We say that somebody is **in bed / in hospital / in prison**:

- James isn't up yet. He's still **in bed**.
- Anna's mother is **in hospital**.

We say that somebody is **at home / at work / at school / at university / at college**:

- I'll be **at work** until 5.30.
- My sister is **at university**. My brother is still **at school**.

We say **be at home** or **be home** (with or without **at**), but **do something at home** (with **at**):

- I'll **be home** all evening. or I'll **be at home** all evening.
- Shall we go to a restaurant or **eat at home**?

B **at a party / at a concert** etc.

We say that somebody is **at** an event (**at a party, at a conference** etc.):

- Were there many people **at the party / at the meeting / at the wedding**?
- I saw Steve **at a conference / at a concert** on Saturday.

C **in and at** for buildings

You can often use **in** or **at** with buildings. For example, you can eat **in a restaurant** or **at a restaurant**; you can buy food **in a supermarket** or **at a supermarket**.

We usually say **at** when we say where an event takes place (a concert, a party, a meeting etc.):

- We went to a concert **at the National Concert Hall**.
- The meeting took place **at the company's head office** in Frankfurt.
- There was a robbery **at the supermarket**.

We say **at** somebody's house:

- I was **at Helen's house** last night. or I was **at Helen's** last night.

In the same way we say **at the doctor's, at the hairdresser's** etc.

We use **in** when we are thinking about the building itself. Compare **at** and **in**:

- I was **at Helen's** (house) last night.
It's always cold **in Helen's house**. The heating doesn't work well. (*not at Helen's house*)
- We had dinner **at the hotel**.
All the rooms **in the hotel** have air conditioning. (*not at the hotel*)

We say **at the station / at the airport**:

- There's no need to meet me **at the station**. I can get a taxi.

D **in and at** for towns etc.

We normally use **in** with cities, towns and villages:

- The Louvre is a famous art museum **in Paris**. (*not at Paris*)
- Sam's parents live **in a village** in the south of France. (*not at a village*)

We use **at** when we think of the place as a point or station on a journey:

- Does this train stop **at Oxford**? (= at Oxford station)

E **on a bus / in a car** etc.

We usually say **on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship / but in a car / in a taxi**:

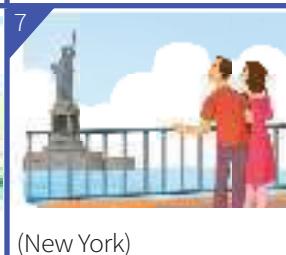
- The bus** was very full. There were too many people **on it**.
- Laura arrived **in a taxi**.

We say **on a bike** (= bicycle) / **on a motorbike / on a horse**:

- Jane passed me **on her bike**.

Exercises

125.1 Complete the sentences about the pictures. Use **in**, **at** or **on** with the words below the pictures.



- 1 You can hire a car at the airport.
- 2 Dave is
- 3 Karen is
- 4 Martin
- 5 Judy is
- 6 I saw Gary
- 7 We spent a few days
- 8 We went to a show

125.2 Complete the sentences. Use **in**, **at** or **on** + the following:

the plane Tokyo	the station school	a taxi prison	the art gallery the sports centre
---------------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------	---

- 1 Some people are in prison for crimes that they did not commit.
- 2 We can get coffee while we're waiting for our train.
- 3 We walked to the restaurant, but we went home
- 4 I play basketball on Friday evenings.
- 5 I enjoyed the flight, but the food was awful.
- 6 Vicky has gone to Japan. She's living
- 7 'Does your sister have a job?' 'No, she's only 16. She's still
- 8 There's a new exhibition of paintings Let's go and see it.

125.3 Complete these sentences with **in**, **at** or **on**.

- 1 We went to a concert at the National Concert Hall.
- 2 There isn't a shop the village where I live. It's very small.
- 3 Joe wasn't the party. I don't know why he didn't go.
- 4 There were about ten tables the restaurant, and four tables outside.
- 5 I don't know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it the bus.
- 6 What do you want to study university?
- 7 I didn't feel well when I woke up, so I stayed bed.
- 8 We were Sarah's house last night. She invited us to dinner.
- 9 It was a very slow train. It stopped every station.
- 10 Shall we travel your car or mine?
- 11 We took a taxi and Ben followed his motorbike.
- 12 I'd like to see a movie. What's on the cinema this week?
- 13 We went to see a movie last night. It was really cold the cinema.
- 14 Two people were injured in the accident and are still hospital.
- 15 Our flight was delayed. We had to wait the airport for three hours.
- 16 I didn't expect you to be home. I thought you'd be work.

to, at, in and into

A

We say **go/come/travel** (etc.) **to** a place or event. For example:

go to China	go to work	come to my house
go back to Italy	go to the bank	drive to the airport
return to London	go to a party	be taken to hospital



- When are your friends **going back to Italy**? (*not going back in Italy*)
- Three people were injured in the accident and **taken to hospital**.

In the same way we say **Welcome to** ..., a **trip to** ..., a **visit to** ..., on **my way to** ... etc.:

- Welcome to our country!** (*not Welcome in*)
- We had to cancel **our trip to Paris**.

Compare **to** (for movement) and **in/at** (for position):

- They are **going to** France. *but* They **live in** France.
- Can you **come to** the party? *but* I'll **see you at** the party.

We say '(I've) **been to**' a place or an event:

- I've **been to Italy** four times, but I've never **been to Rome**.
- Amanda has never **been to a football match** in her life.

B **get and arrive**

We say **get to** a place:

- They **got to the hotel** at midnight.
- What time did you **get to the party**?

We say **arrive in** ... or **arrive at** ... (*not arrive to*).

We say **arrive in** a town or country:

- They **arrived in Madrid / in Spain** a week ago.

For other places (buildings etc.) or events, we say **arrive at**:

- What time did you **arrive at the hotel / at the airport / at the party**?

C **home**

We say: **go home, come home, get home, arrive home, on the way home** etc. (no preposition).

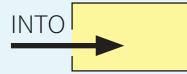
We do not say 'to home':

- What time did you **get home**? (*not get to home*)
- I met Lisa **on my way home**.

D **into**

go into, get into ... etc. = enter (a room / a building / a car etc.):

- I opened the door, **went into the room** and sat down.
- A bird **flew into the kitchen** through the window.
- Every month my salary **is paid directly into my bank account**.



With some verbs (especially **go/get/put**) we often use **in** (instead of **into**):

- She **got in the car** and drove away. *or* She **got into** the car ...
- I read the letter and **put it back in the envelope**.

The opposite of **into** is **out of**:

- She **got out of** the car and **went into** a shop.

For buses, trains and planes, we usually say **get on** and **get off**:

- She **got on the bus** and I never saw her again.
- You need to **get off** (the train) at the next station.

Exercises

126.1 Put in **to/at/in/into** where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 Three people were taken hospital after the accident.
- 2 I'm tired. Let's go home now. (*no preposition*)
- 3 We left our luggage the station and went to find something to eat.
- 4 Shall we take a taxi the station or shall we walk?
- 5 I have to go the bank today. What time does it open?
- 6 The Amazon flows the Atlantic Ocean.
- 7 I missed the bus, so I walked home.
- 8 Have you ever been Canada?
- 9 I lost my key, but I managed to climb the house through a window.
- 10 We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way the airport.
- 11 We had lunch the airport while we were waiting for our plane.
- 12 It took us four hours to get the top of the mountain.
- 13 Welcome the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
- 14 We drove along the main road and then turned a narrow side street.
- 15 Did you enjoy your visit the zoo?
- 16 I did some shopping on my way home.
- 17 Marcel is French. He has just returned France after two years Brazil.
- 18 Carl was born Chicago, but his family moved Boston when he was three.

126.2 Write sentences about places you have been to. Use **I've been to / I've never been to + the words in brackets**.

- 1 (never) ... **I've never been to Egypt.**
- 2 (once)
- 3 (never)
- 4 (a few times)
- 5 (many times)

126.3 Put in **to/at/in** where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 What time does this train get London?
- 2 They arrived Barcelona a few days ago.
- 3 What time did you get home last night?
- 4 What time do you usually arrive work in the morning?
- 5 When we got the cinema, there was a long queue outside.
- 6 We were delayed and arrived home very late.

126.4 Write sentences using **got + into / out of / on / off**.

- 1 You were walking home. A friend passed you in her car. She saw you, stopped and offered you a lift. She opened the door. What did you do? ... **I got into the car.**
- 2 You were waiting at the bus stop. At last your bus came and stopped. The doors opened. What did you do then? I the bus.
- 3 You drove home in your car. You stopped outside your house and parked the car. What did you do then?
- 4 You were travelling by train to Manchester. When the train got to Manchester, what did you do?
- 5 You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then?
- 6 You were travelling by plane. At the end of your flight, your plane landed at the airport and stopped. The doors were opened, you took your bag and stood up. What did you do then?

in/on/at (other uses)

A in

in the rain / in the sun / in the shade / in the dark / in bad weather etc.

- We sat **in the shade**. It was too hot to sit **in the sun**.
- Don't go out **in the rain**. Wait until it stops.

in a language / in a currency etc.

- How do you say 'thank you' **in Russian**?
- How much is a hundred pounds **in dollars**?

(be/fall) **in love (with somebody)**

- They're very happy together. They're **in love**.

in a (good/bad) mood

- You seem to be **in a bad mood**. What's the matter?

in (my) opinion

- In my opinion** the movie wasn't very good.



in the shade

B on

on TV / on television

- I didn't see the news **on TV**.
- I heard the weather forecast **on the radio**.
- I've never met her, but I've spoken to her **on the phone**.
- Look! That car is **on fire**.
- I'm sorry. I didn't mean to hurt you. I didn't do it **on purpose**.
- Sometimes I have problems at work, but **on the whole** I enjoy my job.

on the radio

on the phone

on fire

on purpose (= intentionally)

on the whole (=in general)

C

on holiday / on a trip etc.

(be/go) **on holiday / on vacation**

(be/go) **on a trip / on a tour / on a cruise etc.**

(be/go to a place) **on business**

(be/go) **on strike**

(be/go) **on a diet**

- I'm going **on holiday** next week.
- One day I'd like to go **on a world tour**.
- Emma's away **on business** at the moment.
- There are no trains today. The drivers are **on strike**.
- I've put on weight. I'll have to go **on a diet**.

We also say 'go somewhere **for a holiday**':

- Steve has gone to France **for a holiday**.

D

at the age of ... etc.

at the age of 16 / at 90 miles an hour / at 100 degrees etc.:

- Tracy left school **at 16**. or
Tracy left school **at the age of 16**.
- The train was travelling **at 120 miles an hour**.
- Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

We are now flying **at a speed of**
800 kilometres an hour and **at an altitude** of 9,000 metres.



Exercises

127.1 Complete the sentences using **in** + the following:

the mood	cold weather	love	my opinion
French	the rain	kilometres	the shade

- 1 Don't go out in the rain. Wait until it stops.
- 2 Matt likes to keep warm, so he doesn't go out much
- 3 The movie was with English subtitles.
- 4 They fell almost immediately and were married in a few weeks.
- 5 I don't feel like going to a party tonight. I'm not
- 6 It's too hot here. I'm going to sit under that tree.
- 7 Amanda thought the restaurant was OK, but it wasn't very good.
- 8 Fifty miles? What's that ?

127.2 Complete the sentences using **on** + the following:

business	a cruise	a diet	fire	holiday	her phone
the radio	purpose	strike	TV	a tour	the whole

- 1 I heard the weather forecast on the radio. It's going to get warmer.
- 2 Workers at the company have gone for better pay and conditions.
- 3 Don't go if you don't like being at sea.
- 4 There was panic when people realised that the building was
- 5 Soon after we arrived, we were taken of the city.
- 6 Emma has lots of useful apps
- 7 I feel lazy this evening. Is there anything worth watching ?
- 8 I'm sorry. It was an accident. I didn't do it
- 9 If you are, there are certain things you're not allowed to eat.
- 10 We'll be from Friday. We're going to the mountains.
- 11 Jane's job involves a lot of travelling. She often has to go away
- 12 Some of the exam questions were hard, but it was OK.

127.3 Complete the sentences with **in**, **on** or **at**.

- 1 Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.
- 2 When I was 14, I went a trip to France organised by my school.
- 3 Julia's grandmother died recently the age of 90.
- 4 Can you turn the light on, please? I don't want to sit the dark.
- 5 We didn't go holiday last year. We stayed at home.
- 6 I hate driving fog. You can't see anything.
- 7 Technology has developed great speed.
- 8 David got married 19, which is rather young to get married.
- 9 I listened to an interesting programme the radio this morning.
- 10 I wouldn't like to go a cruise. I think I'd get bored.
- 11 The earth travels round the sun 107,000 kilometres an hour.
- 12 I shouldn't eat too much. I'm supposed to be a diet.
- 13 A lot of houses were damaged the storm last week.
- 14 I won't be here next week. I'll be holiday.
- 15 I wouldn't like his job. He spends most of his time talking the phone.
- 16 'Did you enjoy your holiday?' 'Not every minute, but the whole, yes.'
- 17 your opinion, what should I do?
- 18 Ben is a happy sort of person. He always seems to be a good mood.
- 19 I don't think violent films should be shown TV.
- 20 The museum guidebook is available several languages.

A

You can say that something happens **by mistake / by accident / by chance**:

- We hadn't arranged to meet. We met **by chance**.

But we say 'do something **on purpose**' (= you mean to do it):

- I didn't do it **on purpose**. It was an accident.

Note that we say **by chance, by accident** etc. (*not* by the chance / by an accident).

In these expressions we use **by + noun** without **the** or **a**.

B

We use **by** ... to say how somebody travels. For example, you can travel:

by car / by train / by plane / by boat / by ship / by bus / by bike etc.

- Jess usually goes to work **by bus / by bike / by car**.

We do not use **by** if we say **my car / the train / a taxi** etc. We say:

by car / but in my car (*not* by my car)

by train / but on the train (*not* by the train)

We use **in** for cars and taxis:

- They didn't come **in their car**. They came **in a taxi**.

We use **on** for bikes and public transport (buses, trains etc.):

- We travelled **on the 6.45 train**, which arrived at 8.30.

Note that we usually say **on foot** (*not usually* by foot):

- Did you come here **by car** or **on foot**?

We also use **by** to say how we do other things. For example, you can:

send something **by post** pay **by card / by cheque** do something **by hand**

- Can I pay **by credit card**?

But note that we say **pay cash** or **pay in cash** (*not usually* by cash).

C

We say that 'something is done **by** ...' (*passive*):

- Have you ever been bitten **by a dog**?
- The programme was watched **by millions of people**.

Compare **by** and **with**:

- The door must have been opened **with a key**. (*not* by a key)
(= somebody used a key to open it)
- The door must have been opened **by somebody** with a key.

We say: a play **by Shakespeare**, a painting **by Rembrandt**, a novel **by Tolstoy** etc.

- Have you read any poems **by Shakespeare**?
- 'Who is this painting **by**? Picasso?' 'I have no idea.'

D

By also means 'next to / beside':

- The light switch is **by the door**.
- Come and sit **by me**. (= next to me)

**E**

You can also use **by**... to show the difference between two things:

- Clare's salary has increased **by ten per cent**.
(= it's now ten per cent more than before)
- Carl won the race **by five metres**.
(= he was five metres in front of the other runners)



Exercises

128.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 We don't need cash. We can pay by credit card
- 2 Kate and James keep in touch with one another mainly by hand
- 3 I didn't intend to take your umbrella. I took it by mistake
- 4 I think he arrived late on purpose. He wanted to keep us waiting.
- 5 Some things are planned. Other things happen by chance
- 6 Don't put my sweater in the washing machine. It has to be washed by email

by mistake
by hand
by credit card
by chance
by email
on purpose

128.2 Put in **by**, **in** or **on**.

- 1 Jess usually goes to work by bus.
- 2 I saw Jane this morning. She was the bus.
- 3 How did you get here? Did you come train?
- 4 I couldn't find a seat the train. It was full.
- 5 How much will it cost to the airport taxis?
- 6 Did you come here Sarah's car or yours?
- 7 The injured man was taken to hospital ambulance.
- 8 How long does it take to cross the Atlantic ship?
- 9 He doesn't drive much. He goes everywhere bike or foot.

128.3 Complete these sentences about books, paintings etc. Choose from the box.

- 1 I was woken up in the night by a strange noise
- 2 These pictures were taken by a professional photographer
- 3 I hate getting bitten by mosquitoes
- 4 'Mona Lisa' is a famous painting by Leonardo da Vinci
- 5 We lost the game because of a mistake by lightning
- 6 The plane was damaged by Beethoven, but landed safely.
- 7 This music is by Beethoven, but I can't remember what it's called.

by mosquitoes
by one of our players
by lightning
by Beethoven
by a strange noise
by Leonardo da Vinci
by a professional
photographer

128.4 Put in **by**, **in**, **on** or **with**.

- 1 Have you ever been bitten by a dog?
- 2 We managed to put the fire out a fire extinguisher.
- 3 Who's that man standing the window?
- 4 Do you travel much bus?
- 5 We travelled my friend's car because it is larger and more comfortable than mine.
- 6 It was only accident that I discovered the error.
- 7 These pictures were taken a very good camera.
- 8 My friends live in a beautiful house the sea.
- 9 There were only a few people the plane. It was almost empty.
- 10 The new railway line will reduce the journey time two hours (from five hours to three).
- 11 There was a small table the bed a lamp and a clock it.

128.5 Complete the sentences using **by**.

- 1 Carl won the race. He was five metres in front of the other runners.
Carl won by five metres
- 2 Ten years ago the population of the country was 50 million. Now it is 56 million.
In the last ten years the population has
- 3 There was an election. Helen won. She got 25 votes and James got 23.
Helen won
- 4 I went to Kate's office to see her, but she had left work five minutes before I arrived.
I missed

Noun + preposition (**reason for, cause of etc.**)**A**noun + **for** ...a **demand / a need FOR** ...

- The company went out of business. There was no **demand for** its product any more.
- There's no excuse for behaviour like that. There's no **need for** it.

a **reason FOR** ...

- The train was late, but nobody knew the **reason for** the delay. (*not reason of*)

Bnoun + **of** ...a **cause OF** ...

- The **cause of** the explosion is unknown.

a **picture / a photo / a photograph / a map / a plan / a drawing (etc.) OF** ...

- Rachel showed me some **pictures of** her family.
- I had a **map of** the town, so I was able to find my way around.

an **advantage / a disadvantage OF** ...

- The **advantage of living alone** is that you can do what you like.

but

there is an advantage **IN** doing something or **TO** doing something:

- There are** many advantages **in** living alone. *or ... many advantages **to** living alone.*

Cnoun + **in** ...an **increase / a decrease / a rise / a fall IN** (prices etc.)

- There has been an **increase in** the number of road accidents recently.
- Last year was a bad one for the company. There was a big **fall in** sales.

Dnoun + **to** ...**damage TO** ...

- The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the **damage to** the other car.

an **invitation TO** ... (a party / a wedding etc.)

- Did you get an **invitation to** the wedding?

a **solution TO** a problem / a **key TO** a door / an **answer TO** a question / a **reply TO** a letter /
a **reaction TO** something

- I hope we find a **solution to** the problem. (*not a solution of the problem*)
- I was surprised at her **reaction to** my suggestion.

an **attitude TO** ... or an **attitude TOWARDS** ...

- His **attitude to** his job is very negative. *or* His **attitude towards** his job ...

Enoun + **with** ... / **between** ...a **relationship / a connection / contact WITH** ...

- Do you have a good **relationship with** your parents?
- The police want to question a man in **connection with** the robbery.

a **relationship / a connection / contact / a difference BETWEEN** two things or people

- The police believe that there is no **connection between** the two crimes.
- There are some **differences between** British and American English.

Exercises

129.1 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

- 1 What caused the explosion?
What was the cause of the explosion ?
- 2 We're trying to solve the problem.
We're trying to find a solution
- 3 Sue gets on well with her brother.
Sue has a good relationship
- 4 The cost of living has gone up a lot.
There has been a big increase
- 5 I don't know how to answer your question.
I can't think of an answer
- 6 I don't think that a new road is necessary.
I don't think there is any need
- 7 I think that living in a big city has many advantages.
I think that there are many advantages
- 8 Food prices fell last month.
Last month there was a fall
- 9 Nobody wants shoes like these any more.
There is no demand
- 10 In what way is your job different from mine?
What is the difference

129.2 Complete the sentences using these nouns + a preposition:

cause	connection	contact	damage	invitation
key	map	photos	reason	reply

- 1 On the classroom wall there were some pictures and a map of ... the world.
- 2 Thank you for the your birthday party.
- 3 Anna has little her family these days. She rarely sees them.
- 4 I can't open this door. Do you have a the other door?
- 5 The the fire at the hotel is still unknown.
- 6 Did you get a the email you sent?
- 7 The two companies are separate. There is no them.
- 8 Jane showed me some the city as it looked 100 years ago.
- 9 Emily has decided to give up her job. I don't know her doing this.
- 10 It wasn't a bad accident. The the car wasn't serious.

129.3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- 1 There are some differences British and American English.
- 2 Money isn't the solution every problem.
- 3 There has been an increase the amount of traffic using this road.
- 4 The advantage having a car is that you don't have to rely on public transport.
- 5 There are many advantages being able to speak a foreign language.
- 6 Everything can be explained. There's a reason everything.
- 7 When Paul left home, his attitude many things seemed to change.
- 8 Ben and I used to be good friends, but I don't have much contact him now.
- 9 James did a very good drawing his father. It looks just like him.
- 10 What was Sarah's reaction the news?
- 11 Nicola took a picture me holding the baby.
- 12 The show is very popular and there has been a great demand tickets.
- 13 There has been a lot of debate about the causes climate change.
- 14 The fact that Jane was offered a job in the company has no connection the fact that she is a friend of the managing director.

A**nice of you, nice to me****nice / kind / good / generous / polite / honest / stupid / silly** etc. **OF** somebody (to do something)

- Thank you. It was very **nice of** you to help me.
- It was **stupid of** me to go out without a coat in such cold weather.

(be) **nice / kind / good / generous / polite / rude / friendly / cruel** etc. **TO** somebody

- They have always been very **nice to** me. (*not with me*)
- Why were you so **unfriendly to** Lucy?

B**adjective + about / with****angry / annoyed / furious / upset** { **ABOUT** something
{ **WITH** somebody **FOR** doing something

- There's no point in getting **angry about** things that don't matter.
- Are you **annoyed with** me **for** being late?
- Lisa is **upset about** not being invited to the party.

excited / worried / nervous / happy etc. **ABOUT** something

- Are you **nervous about** the exam?

pleased / satisfied / happy / delighted / disappointed **WITH** something you get or experience

- They were **delighted with** the present I gave them.
- Were you **happy with** your exam results?

C**adjective + at / by / with / of****surprised / shocked / amazed / astonished / upset** **AT / BY** something

- Everybody was **surprised at** the news. *or ... by* the news.
- I hope you weren't **shocked by** what I said. *or ... at* what I said.

impressed WITH / BY somebody/something

- I'm very **impressed with** (*or by*) her English. It's very good.

fed up / bored WITH something

- I don't enjoy my job any more. I'm **fed up with** it. / I'm **bored with** it.

tired OF something

- Come on, let's go! I'm **tired of** waiting.

D**sorry about / for****sorry ABOUT** a situation or something that happened

- I'm **sorry about** the mess. I'll clear it up later.
- Sorry about** last night. (= Sorry about something that happened last night)

sorry FOR / ABOUT something you did or caused

- I'm **sorry for** shouting at you yesterday. (*or sorry about* shouting)
- Sorry for** the delay. (*or Sorry about* the delay)

You can also say 'I'm sorry I (did something)':

- I'm **sorry I shouted** at you yesterday.

feel / be sorry FOR somebody in a bad situation

- I **feel sorry for** Mark. He's had a lot of bad luck. (*not I feel sorry about Mark*)



Exercises

130.1 Complete the sentences using **nice of ...**, **kind of ...** etc.

- 1 Tom offered to drive me to the airport.
- 2 I needed money and Lisa gave me some.
- 3 They didn't invite us to their party.
- 4 Can I help you with your luggage?
- 5 Kevin never says 'thank you'.
- 6 They've had an argument and now they refuse to speak to each other.

(nice)
That was ... **nice of him**.
(generous)
That her.
(not very nice)
That wasn't
(very kind)
That's
(not very polite)
That isn't
(a bit childish)
That's a bit

130.2 Complete the sentences using an adjective + preposition. Choose from:

amazed angry bored careless excited impressed kind nervous

- 1 Are you **nervous about** the exam?
- 2 Thank you for all you've done. You've been very me.
- 3 What have I done wrong? Why are you me?
- 4 You must be very your trip next week. It sounds really great.
- 5 I wasn't the service in the restaurant. We had to wait ages.
- 6 Ben isn't very happy at college. He says he's the course he's doing.
- 7 I'd never seen so many people before. I was the crowds.
- 8 It was you to leave the car unlocked while you were shopping.

130.3 Put in the correct preposition.

- 1 They were delighted **with** the present I gave them.
- 2 It was nice you to come and see me when I was ill.
- 3 Why are you always so rude people? Why can't you be more polite?
- 4 We always have the same food every day. I'm fed up it.
- 5 We had a good holiday, but we were disappointed the hotel.
- 6 I can't understand people who are cruel animals.
- 7 I was surprised the way he behaved. It was completely out of character.
- 8 I've been trying to learn Japanese, but I'm not very satisfied my progress.
- 9 Tanya doesn't look very well. I'm worried her.
- 10 I'm sorry yesterday. I completely forgot we'd arranged to meet.
- 11 There's no point in feeling sorry yourself. It won't help you.
- 12 Are you still upset what I said to you yesterday?
- 13 Some people say Kate is unfriendly, but she's always been very nice me.
- 14 I'm tired doing the same thing every day. I need a change.
- 15 We interviewed ten people for the job, and we weren't impressed any of them.
- 16 Vicky is annoyed me because I didn't agree with her.
- 17 I'm sorry the smell in this room. I've just finished painting it.
- 18 I was shocked what I saw. I'd never seen anything like it before.
- 19 Jack is sorry what he did. He won't do it again.
- 20 The hotel was incredibly expensive. I was amazed the price of a room.
- 21 Paul made the wrong decision. It was honest him to admit it.
- 22 You've been very generous me. You've helped me a lot.
- 23 Our neighbours were very angry the noise we made.
- 24 Our neighbours were furious us making so much noise.

A**adjective + of****afraid / scared / frightened / terrified OF ...**

‘Are you **afraid of** spiders?’ ‘Yes, I’m **terrified of** them.’

fond / proud / ashamed / jealous / envious OF ...

Why is he so **jealous of** other people?

suspicious / critical / tolerant OF ...

They didn’t trust me. They were **suspicious of** my motives.

aware / conscious OF ...

‘Did you know he was married?’ ‘No, I wasn’t **aware of** that.’

capable / incapable OF ...

I’m sure you are **capable of** doing the job well.

full / short OF ...

Amy is a very active person. She’s always **full of** energy.

I’m a bit **short of** money. Can you lend me some?

typical OF ...

He’s late again. It’s **typical of** him to keep everybody waiting.

certain / sure OF or ABOUT ...

I think she’s arriving this evening, but I’m not **sure of** that. *or* ... not **sure about** that.

B**adjective + at / to / from / in / on / with / for****good / bad / brilliant / better / hopeless etc. AT ...**

I’m not very **good at** repairing things. (*not good in* repairing things)

married / engaged TO ...

Louise is **married to** an American. (*not married with*)

but Louise is married **with three children**. (=she is married and has three children)

similar TO ...

Your handwriting is **similar to** mine.

different FROM or different TO ...

The film was **different from** what I’d expected. *or* ... **different to** what I’d expected.

interested IN ...

Are you **interested in** art?

keen ON ...

We stayed at home. Chris wasn’t **keen on** going out.

dependent ON ... (*but independent OF ...*)

I don’t want to be **dependent on** anybody.

crowded WITH (people etc.)

The streets were **crowded with** tourists. (*but ... full of* tourists)

famous FOR ...

The Italian city of Florence is **famous for** its art treasures.

responsible FOR ...

Who was **responsible for** all that noise last night?



Exercises

131.1 Complete the sentences using an adjective + **of**. Choose from:

ashamed aware capable envious proud scared short typical

- 1 I'm a bit short of money. Can you lend me some?
- 2 My children have done very well. I'm them.
- 3 What I did was very bad. I'm myself.
- 4 She always behaves like that. It's her.
- 5 He wouldn't be able to run his own business. He's not it.
- 6 I don't like going up ladders. I'm heights.
- 7 Nobody told me she was ill. I wasn't it.
- 8 I wish I had what Sarah has. I'm her.

131.2 Write sentences about yourself. Are you good at these things or not? You can use:

good pretty good not very good hopeless

- 1 (repairing things) *I'm not very good at repairing things.*
- 2 (telling jokes)
- 3 (maths)
- 4 (remembering names)
- 5 (making decisions)

131.3 Complete the sentences using an adjective + preposition. Choose from:

afraid capable different interested proud responsible similar sure

- 1 I think she's arriving this evening, but I'm not sure of that.
- 2 Your camera is mine, but it isn't exactly the same.
- 3 Don't worry. I'll look after you. There's nothing to be
- 4 I never watch the news on TV. I'm not the news.
- 5 The editor is the person who is what appears in a newspaper.
- 6 Sarah is a keen gardener and is very her garden.
- 7 I was surprised when I first met Tina. She was what I expected.
- 8 Ben could become world champion one day. He's it.

131.4 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 There were lots of tourists in the streets. | The streets were crowded <i>with tourists</i> |
| 2 There was a lot of furniture in the room. | The room was full |
| 3 I don't like sport very much. | I'm not very keen |
| 4 We don't have enough time. | We're short |
| 5 Helen does her job very well | Helen is very good |
| 6 Steven's wife is a doctor. | Steven is married |
| 7 I don't trust Robert. | I'm suspicious |
| 8 My problem is not the same as yours. | My problem is different |

131.5 Put in the correct preposition.

- 1 Amy is always full *of* energy.
- 2 My home town is not a very interesting place. It's not famous anything.
- 3 Kate is very fond her younger brother.
- 4 You look bored. You don't seem interested what I'm saying.
- 5 'Our flight departs at 10.35.' 'Are you sure that?'
- 6 I wanted to go out for a meal, but nobody else was keen the idea.
- 7 These days everybody is aware the dangers of smoking.
- 8 The station platform was crowded people waiting for the train.
- 9 Mark has no money of his own. He's completely dependent his parents.
- 10 We're short staff in our office right now. We need more people to do the work.

Verb + preposition 1 **to** and **at**

A verb + to

talk / speak TO somebody (**talk/speak with** is also possible)

- Who were you **talking to**?

listen TO ...

- When I'm driving, I like to **listen to** the radio. (*not listen the radio*)

apologise TO somebody (for ...)

- They **apologised to me** for their mistake. (*not apologised me*)

explain something TO somebody

- Can you **explain** this word **to me**? (*not explain me this word*)

explain / describe (to) somebody what/how/why ...

- I **explained to them** why I was worried. (*not I explained them*)
- Let me **describe to you** what I saw. (*not Let me describe you*)

B phone somebody, ask somebody etc. (without to)

phone / call / email / text somebody

- I **called the airline** to cancel my flight. (*not called to the airline*)

But we say '**write** (a letter) **to** somebody'.

answer somebody/something

- You didn't **answer my email**. (*not answer to my email*)

But we say **reply to** (an email / a letter etc.).

ask somebody (a question)

- If there's anything you want to know, you can **ask me**. (*not ask to me*)

thank somebody (**for** ...)

- He **thanked me** for helping him. (*not He thanked to me*)

C verb + at

look / stare / glance AT ... , have a look / take a look AT ...

- Why are you **looking at** me like that?

laugh AT ...

- I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will **laugh at** me.

aim / point (something) **AT ... , shoot / fire** (a gun) **AT ...**

- Don't **point** that knife **at** me. It's dangerous.
- We saw someone with a gun **shooting at** birds, but he didn't hit any.

D Some verbs can be followed by **at** or **to**, with a difference in meaning. For example:

shout AT somebody (when you are angry or aggressive)

- He got very angry and started **shouting at** me.

shout TO somebody (so that they can hear you)

- He **shouted to** me from the other side of the street.

throw something **AT** somebody/something (to hit them)

- Somebody **threw** an egg **at** the politician.

throw something **TO** somebody (for somebody to catch)

- Lisa shouted 'Catch!' and **threw** the keys **to** me from the window.



Exercises

132.1 Which is correct?

- 1 a Can you explain this word to me? (a is correct)
b ~~Can you explain me this word?~~
- 2 a I got angry with Mark. Afterwards, I apologised to him.
b I got angry with Mark. Afterwards, I apologised him.
- 3 a Amy won't be able to help you. There's no point in asking to her.
b Amy won't be able to help you. There's no point in asking her.
- 4 a I need somebody to explain me what I have to do.
b I need somebody to explain to me what I have to do.
- 5 a They didn't understand the system, so I explained it to them.
b They didn't understand the system, so I explained it them.
- 6 a I like to sit on the beach and listen to the sound of the sea.
b I like to sit on the beach and listen the sound of the sea.
- 7 a I asked them to describe me exactly what happened.
b I asked them to describe to me exactly what happened.
- 8 a We'd better phone the restaurant to reserve a table.
b We'd better phone to the restaurant to reserve a table.
- 9 a It was a difficult question. I couldn't answer to it.
b It was a difficult question. I couldn't answer it.
- 10 a I explained everybody the reasons for my decision.
b I explained to everybody the reasons for my decision.
- 11 a I thanked everybody for all the help they had given me.
b I thanked to everybody for all the help they had given me.
- 12 a My friend texted to me to let me know she was going to be late.
b My friend texted me to let me know she was going to be late.

132.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs + the correct preposition:

explain laugh listen look point reply speak throw throw

- 1 I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will **laugh at** me.
- 2 I don't understand this. Can you **explain** it **to** me?
- 3 We live in the same building, but we've never one another.
- 4 Be careful with those scissors! Don't them me!
- 5 You shouldn't directly the sun. You'll damage your eyes.
- 6 Please me! I've got something important to tell you.
- 7 Don't stones the birds!
- 8 If you don't want that sandwich, it the birds. They'll eat it.
- 9 I tried to contact Tina, but she didn't my emails.

132.3 Put in **to** or **at**.

- 1 They apologised **to** me for what happened.
- 2 I glanced my watch to see what time it was.
- 3 Please don't shout me! Try to calm down.
- 4 I saw Lisa and shouted her, but she didn't hear me.
- 5 Don't listen what he says. He doesn't know what he's talking about.
- 6 What's so funny? What are you laughing ?
- 7 Is it all right if I have a look your magazine?
- 8 I'm lonely. I need somebody to talk
- 9 She was so angry she threw a book the wall.
- 10 The woman sitting opposite me on the train kept staring me.
- 11 Do you have a moment? I need to speak you.

Verb + preposition 2 **about/for/of/after****A** verb + about**talk / read / know ABOUT ...**

- We **talked about** a lot of things at the meeting.

have a discussion ABOUT something

- We had a **discussion about** what we should do.

But we say 'discuss something' (no preposition):

- We **discussed** what we should do. (not discussed about)

do something/nothing **ABOUT** something = *do something/nothing to improve a situation*

- If you're worried about the problem, you should **do** something **about** it.

B verb + for**ask** (somebody) **FOR** ...

- I sent an email to the company **asking** them **for** more information about the job.

But we say 'ask somebody **the way / the time**' etc. (no preposition):

- I **asked** somebody **the way to the station**.

apply (TO a company etc.) **FOR** a job etc.

- I think you could do this job. Why don't you **apply for** it?

wait FOR somebody, **wait FOR** something (to happen)

- Don't **wait for** me. I'll join you later.

- I'm not going out yet. I'm **waiting for** the rain to stop.

search (a person / a place / a bag etc.) **FOR** ...

- I've **searched** the house **for** my keys, but I still can't find them.

leave (a place) **FOR** another place

- I haven't seen her since she **left** (home) **for** work. (not left to work)

C take care of, care for and care about**take care OF** ... = *look after, keep safe, take responsibility for*

- Don't worry about me. I can **take care of** myself.

- I'll **take care of** the travel arrangements. You don't need to do anything.

care FOR somebody = *take care of them, keep them safe*

- Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to **care for** him.

I don't **care FOR** something = *I don't like it*

- I don't **care for** hot weather. (=I don't like ...)

care ABOUT ... = *think that somebody/something is important*

- He's very selfish. He doesn't **care about** other people.

care what/where/how ... etc. (*without about*)

- You can do what you like. I don't **care what** you do.

D look for and look after**look FOR** ... = *search for, try to find*

- I've lost my keys. Can you help me to **look for** them?

look AFTER ... = *take care of, keep safe or in good condition*

- Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to **look after** him. (not look for)

- You can borrow this book, but please **look after** it.

Exercises

133.1 Which is right?

- 1 We searched everywhere Joe / searched everywhere for Joe, but we couldn't find him.
(searched everywhere for Joe is correct)
- 2 I sent her an email. Now I'm waiting for her to reply / waiting her to reply.
- 3 A security guard searched my bag / searched for my bag as I entered the building.
- 4 I paid the taxi driver and asked him a receipt / asked him for a receipt.
- 5 I wanted to get to the city centre, so I stopped a man to ask the way / to ask for the way.
- 6 We discussed about the problem / discussed the problem, but we didn't reach a decision.
- 7 There are many problems, but the government does nothing for them / nothing about them.
- 8 My flight is at 9.30. What time do I need to leave the hotel to the airport / for the airport?

133.2 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting for the rain to stop.
- 2 I've applied three universities. I hope one of them accepts me.
- 3 If you don't want the job, there's no point in applying it.
- 4 I don't want to talk what happened last night. Let's forget it.
- 5 I don't want to discuss what happened last night. Let's forget it.
- 6 We had an interesting discussion the problem, but we didn't reach a decision.
- 7 My friends are in Italy. They're in Rome now and tomorrow they leave Milan.
- 8 The roof of the house is in bad condition. We need to do something it.

133.3 Put in the correct preposition after **care. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.**

- 1 He's very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.
- 2 Who's going to take care you when you are old?
- 3 She doesn't care the exam. She doesn't care whether she passes or fails.
- 4 I don't like this coat very much. I don't care the colour.
- 5 Don't worry about the shopping. I'll take care that.
- 6 He gave up his job to care his elderly father.
- 7 I want to have a good holiday. I don't care the cost.
- 8 I want to have a good holiday. I don't care how much it costs.

133.4 Complete the sentences with **look for or **look after**. Use the correct form of **look** (**looks**/**looked/looking**).**

- 1 I looked for my keys, but I couldn't find them anywhere.
- 2 Kate is a job. I hope she finds one soon.
- 3 Who you when you were ill?
- 4 The car park was full, so we had to somewhere else to park.
- 5 A child minder is somebody who other people's children.
- 6 I'm Lisa. I need to ask her something. Have you seen her?

133.5 Complete the sentences with these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

apply ask do leave look search talk wait

- 1 Police are searching for a man who escaped from prison.
- 2 Sarah wasn't ready. We had to her.
- 3 I think Amy likes her job, but she doesn't it much.
- 4 Don't me money. I don't have any.
- 5 Ben is unemployed. He has several jobs, but hasn't had any luck.
- 6 If something is wrong, why don't you something it?
- 7 Helen's car is very old, but she it. It's in excellent condition.
- 8 Diane is from Boston, but now she lives in Paris. She Boston Paris when she was 19.

Verb + preposition 3 **about** and **of****A****hear ABOUT** ... = *be told about something*

- Did you **hear about** the fire at the hotel?

hear OF ... = *know that somebody/something exists*

- A: Who is Tom Hart?
B: I have no idea. I've never **heard of** him. (*not heard from him*)

hear FROM ... = *be in contact with somebody*

- A: Have you **heard from** Jane recently?
B: Yes, she called me a few days ago.

B**think ABOUT** something = *consider it, concentrate your mind on it:*

- I've **thought about** what you said and I've decided to take your advice.
 A: Will you lend me the money?
B: I'll **think about** it. (*not think of it*)

think OF something = *produce an idea:*

- It was my idea. I **thought of** it first. (*not thought about it*)
 I felt embarrassed. I couldn't **think of** anything to say. (*not think about anything*)

We also use **think of** when we ask for or give an opinion:

- A: What did you **think of** the movie?
B: I didn't **think** much **of** it. (=I didn't like it much)

Sometimes the difference is very small and you can use **of** or **about**:

- When I'm alone, I often **think of** you. or ... **think about** you.

You can say **think of** or **think about** doing something (for possible future actions):

- My sister is **thinking of** going to Canada. or ... **thinking about** going ...

C**dream ABOUT** ... (when you are asleep)

- I **dreamt about** you last night.

dream OF/ABOUT being something / doing something = *imagine*

- Do you **dream of** being rich and famous? or ... **dream about** being rich ...

I wouldn't dream OF doing something = *I would never do it*

- 'Don't tell anyone what I said.' 'No, I **wouldn't dream of** it.'

D**complain (TO somebody) ABOUT** ... = *say that you are not satisfied*

- We **complained to** the manager of the restaurant **about** the food.

complain OF a pain, an illness etc. = *say that you have a pain etc.*

- We called the doctor because George was **complaining of** a pain in his stomach.

E**remind somebody ABOUT** ... = *tell somebody not to forget*

- It's good you **reminded** me **about** the meeting. I'd completely forgotten about it.

remind somebody OF ... = *cause somebody to remember*

- This house **reminds** me **of** the one I lived in when I was a child.
 Look at this photograph of Richard. Who does he **remind** you **of**?

Exercises

134.1 Complete the sentences using **hear or **heard** + a preposition (**about/of/from**).**

- 1 I'm surprised you haven't **heard of** her. She's quite famous.
- 2 'Did you the accident last night?' 'No, what happened?'
- 3 Sarah used to call me quite often, but I haven't her for a long time now.
- 4 'Have you William Hudson?' 'No. Who is he?'
- 5 Thanks for your email. It was good to you.
- 6 'Do you want to our trip?' 'Not now. Tell me later.'
- 7 I live in a very small town. You've probably never it.

134.2 Complete the sentences using **think about or **think of**. Sometimes both **about** and **of** are possible. Use the correct form of **think** (**think/thinking/thought**).**

- 1 I've **thought about** what you said and I've decided to take your advice.
- 2 I need time to make decisions. I like to things carefully.
- 3 You look serious. What are you ?
- 4 That's a good idea. Why didn't I that?
- 5 I don't really want to meet Tom tonight. I'll have to an excuse.
- 6 I'm buying a new car. What would you advise me to buy?
- 7 When I was offered the job, I didn't accept immediately. I went away and it for a while. In the end I decided to take the job.
- 8 A: I've just finished reading the book you lent me.
B: What did you it? Did you like it?
- 9 A: Will you be able to help me?
B: I'm not sure. I'll it.
- 10 I don't much this coffee. It's like water.
- 11 Katherine is homesick. She's always her family back home.
- 12 A: Do you think I should apply to do the course?
B: I can't any reason why not.

134.3 Put in the correct preposition.

- 1 Did you hear **about** the fire at the hotel yesterday?
- 2 I love living here. I wouldn't dream going anywhere else.
- 3 A: I had a strange dream last night.
B: Did you? What did you dream ?
- 4 I love this music. It reminds me a warm day in spring.
- 5 A: We've got no money. What are we going to do?
B: Don't worry. I'll think something.
- 6 Our neighbours complained us the noise we made.
- 7 Paul was complaining pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor.
- 8 He loves his job. He thinks it all the time, he dreams it, he talks it and I'm fed up with hearing it.

134.4 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

complain	dream	hear	remind	remind	-think-	think
-----------------	--------------	-------------	---------------	---------------	----------------	--------------

- 1 It was my idea. I **thought of** it first.
- 2 Ben is never satisfied. He's always something.
- 3 I can't make a decision yet. I need time to your proposal.
- 4 He's not a well-known singer. Not many people have him.
- 5 A: You wouldn't go away without telling me, would you?
B: Of course not. I wouldn't it.
- 6 I would have forgotten my appointment if you hadn't me it.
- 7 Do you see that man over there? Does he you anybody you know?

Verb + preposition 4 **of/for/from/on**

A verb + of

accuse / suspect somebody **OF** ...

- Tina **accused** me **of** being selfish.
- Some students were **suspected** **of** cheating in the exam.

approve / disapprove **OF** ...

- His parents don't **approve** **of** what he does, but they can't stop him.

die **OF** or **die** **FROM** an illness etc.

- 'What did he **die** **of**?' 'A heart attack.'

consist **OF** ...

- We had an enormous meal. It **consisted** **of** seven courses.

B verb + for

pay (somebody) **FOR** ...

- We didn't have enough money to **pay** **for** the meal. (*not pay the meal*)
But we say '**pay** a bill / a fine / a fee / tax / rent / a sum of money' etc. (no preposition)
- We didn't have enough money to **pay the rent**.

thank / forgive somebody **FOR** ...

- I'll never **forgive** them **for** what they did.

apologise (**TO** somebody) **FOR** ...

- When I realised I was wrong, I **apologised** (**to** them) **for** my mistake.

blame somebody/something **FOR** ..., somebody is **to blame** **FOR** ...

- Everybody **blamed** me **for** the accident.
- Everybody said that I was **to blame** **for** the accident.

blame (a problem etc.) **ON** ...

- It wasn't my fault. Don't **blame** it **on** me.

C verb + from

suffer **FROM** an illness etc.

- There's been an increase in the number of people **suffering** **from** heart disease.

protect somebody/something **FROM** ...

- Sun cream **protects** the skin **from** the sun.

D verb + on

depend **ON** ..., **rely** **ON** ...

- I don't know what time we'll arrive. It **depends** **on** the traffic.
- You can **rely on** Anna. She always keeps her promises.

You can use **depend** + **when/where/how** etc. with or without **on**:

- 'Are you going to buy it?' 'It **depends how much** it is.' (or 'It depends **on** how much ...')

live **ON** money/food

- Michael's salary is very low. It isn't enough to **live** **on**.

congratulate / **compliment** somebody **ON** ...

- I **congratulated** her **on** doing so well in her exams.
- The meal was really good. I **complimented** Mark **on** his cooking skills.

Exercises

135.1 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 Some students were suspected **of** cheating in the exam.
- 2 Are you going to apologise what you did?
- 3 The apartment consists three rooms, a kitchen and bathroom.
- 4 I was accused lying, but I was telling the truth.
- 5 We finished our meal, paid the bill, and left the restaurant.
- 6 The accident was my fault, so I had to pay the repairs.
- 7 Some people are dying hunger, while others eat too much.
- 8 I called Helen to thank her the present she sent me.
- 9 The government is popular. Most people approve its policies.
- 10 Do you blame the government our economic problems?
- 11 When something goes wrong, you always blame it other people.
- 12 Forgive me interrupting, but I'd like to ask you something.

135.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 Sue said that I was selfish.
Sue accused me **of being selfish**
- 2 The misunderstanding was my fault, so I apologised.
I apologised
- 3 Jane won the tournament, so I congratulated her.
I congratulated
- 4 He has enemies, and he has a bodyguard to protect him.
He has a bodyguard to protect
- 5 Sandra eats only bread and eggs.
Sandra lives
- 6 You can't say that the bad weather is my fault.
You can't blame
- 7 The police thought my friend had stolen a car.
The police suspected

135.3 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

accuse apologise approve congratulate depend live pay suffer

- 1 His parents don't **approve of** what he does, but they can't stop him.
- 2 When you went to the theatre with Paul, who the tickets?
- 3 It's not pleasant when you are something you didn't do.
- 4 We hope to go to the beach tomorrow, but it the weather.
- 5 Things are cheap there. You can very little money.
- 6 You were rude to Lisa. I think you should her.
- 7 Alex back pain. He spends too much time working at his desk.
- 8 I called Jack to him passing his driving test.

135.4 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 I'll never forgive them **for** what they did.
- 2 Vaccinations may protect you a number of diseases.
- 3 You know you can always rely me if you need any help.
- 4 Sophie will have to borrow money to pay her college fees.
- 5 She's often unwell. She suffers very bad headaches.
- 6 I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends how I feel.
- 7 Anna doesn't have a job. She depends her parents for money.
- 8 My usual breakfast consists fruit, cereal and coffee.
- 9 I complimented her her English. It was really good.

A verb + in**believe IN ...** = believe that something exists, believe that it's good to do something

- Do you **believe in** God? (= do you believe that God exists?)
 - I **believe in** saying what I think. (= I believe it is right to say what I think)
- but 'believe something' (= believe that it is true), 'believe somebody' (= believe what they say):
- The story can't be true. I don't **believe it**. (*not believe in it*)

specialise IN ...

- Helen is a lawyer. She **specialises in** company law.

succeed IN ...

- I hope you **succeed in** finding the job you want.

B verb + into**break INTO ...**

- Our house was **broken into** a few days ago, but nothing was stolen.

crash / drive / bump / run INTO ...

- He lost control of the car and **crashed into** a wall.

divide / cut / split something **INTO** two or more parts

- The book is **divided into** three parts.

translate a book etc. **FROM** one language **INTO** another

- She's a famous writer. Her books have been **translated into** many languages.

C verb + with**collide WITH ...**

- There was an accident this morning. A bus **collided with** a car.

fill something **WITH** ... (*but full of* – see Unit 131A)

- Take this saucepan and **fill it with** water.

provide / supply somebody **WITH** ...

- The school **provides** all its students **with** books.

D verb + to**happen TO ...**

- What **happened to** that gold watch you used to have? (= where is it now?)

invite somebody **TO** a party / a wedding etc.

- They only **invited** a few people **to** their wedding.

prefer one thing **TO** another

- I **prefer** tea **to** coffee.

E verb + on**concentrate ON ...**

- I tried to **concentrate on** my work, but I kept thinking about other things.

insist ON ...

- I wanted to go alone, but some friends of mine **insisted on** coming with me.

spend (money) **ON ...**

- How much do you **spend on** food each week?

Exercises

136.1 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

believe break concentrate divide drive fill happen insist invite succeed

- 1 I wanted to go alone, but my friends **insisted on** coming with me.
- 2 I haven't seen Mike for ages. I wonder what has him.
- 3 It's a very large house. It's four apartments.
- 4 We've been the party, but unfortunately we can't go.
- 5 I don't ghosts. I think people imagine that they see them.
- 6 Steve gave me an empty bucket and told me to it water.
- 7 A burglar is someone who a house to steal things.
- 8 Don't try and do two things together. one thing at a time.
- 9 It wasn't easy, but in the end we finding a solution to the problem.
- 10 The car in front of me stopped suddenly. Unfortunately I couldn't stop in time and the back of it.

136.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 There was a collision between a bus and a car.
A bus collided **with a car**
- 2 I don't mind big cities, but I prefer small towns.
I prefer
- 3 I got all the information I needed from the company.
The company provided me
- 4 This morning I bought a pair of shoes, which cost eighty pounds.
This morning I spent
- 5 There are ten districts in the city.
The city is divided

136.3 Put in the correct preposition. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

- 1 The school provides all its students **with** books.
- 2 A strange thing happened me a few days ago.
- 3 Mark decided to give up sport to concentrate his studies.
- 4 Money should be used well. I don't believe wasting it.
- 5 My present job isn't wonderful, but I prefer it what I did before.
- 6 I hope you succeed getting what you want.
- 7 Ben was injured playing football when he collided another player.
- 8 There was an awful noise as the car crashed a tree.
- 9 Patrick is a photographer. He specialises sports photography.
- 10 Joe doesn't spend much money clothes.
- 11 I was amazed when I heard the news. I couldn't believe it.
- 12 Somebody broke my car and stole my bag.
- 13 I was quite cold, but Tom insisted having the window open.
- 14 The teacher decided to split the class four groups.
- 15 I filled the tank, but unfortunately I filled it the wrong kind of fuel.
- 16 Some things are difficult to translate one language another.

136.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use a preposition.

- 1 I wanted to go out alone, but my friend insisted **on coming with me**
- 2 I spend a lot of money
- 3 I saw an accident. A car crashed
- 4 Chris prefers basketball
- 5 The restaurant we went to specialises
- 6 Shakespeare's plays have been translated

Exercises

137.1 Complete each sentence using a verb from A (in the correct form) + a word from B.

A **be** **get** **fly** **sit**
break **get** **go** **speak**
come **get** **look** **take**

B **away** **by** **on** **round**
back **down** **off** **up**
back **down** **out** **up**

- 1 Sarah is leaving tomorrow and on Saturday.
- 2 I've been standing a long time. I'm going to for a bit.
- 3 It's a very busy airport. There are planes landing and all the time.
- 4 A cat tried to catch the bird, but it just in time.
- 5 We were trapped in the building. We couldn't
- 6 I can't hear you very well. Can you a little?
- 7 Ben's salary is very low, but it's enough to
- 8 Everything is so expensive now. Prices have a lot.
- 9 I heard a noise behind me, so I to see what it was.
- 10 I'm going out now to do some shopping. I'll in about an hour.
- 11 Our car on the motorway and we had to call for help.
- 12 How is your new job? How are you ?

137.2 Complete each sentence using a word from A and a word from B.

A **away** **in** **up** **back**
out **up** **up** **forward**

B **at** **to** **with** **about**
at **to** **with** **through**

- 1 You're walking too fast. I can't keep you.
- 2 My holidays are nearly over. Next week I'll be work.
- 3 We went the top floor of the building to admire the view.
- 4 The meeting tomorrow is going to be difficult. I'm not looking it.
- 5 There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got £50,000.
- 6 I love to look the stars in the night sky.
- 7 I was sitting in the kitchen when a bird flew the open window.
- 8 How do you know about the plan? How did you find it?

137.3 Complete the sentences. Use these phrasal verbs + **it/them/me**:

get out **give back** **switch on** **take off** **throw away** **wake up**

- 1 I want to keep this box. Don't
- 2 I'm going to bed now. Can you at 6.30?
- 3 I've got something in my eye and I can't
- 4 I don't like it when people borrow things and don't
- 5 I want to use the hair dryer. How do I ?
- 6 My shoes are dirty. I'd better before going into the house.

137.4 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets.

- 1 Don't throw I want to keep it. (away)
- 2 I don't want this newspaper. You can throw (away)
- 3 These books are Lisa's. I have to give to her. (back)
- 4 We can turn Nobody is watching it. (off)
- 5 Shh! My mother is asleep. I don't want to wake (up)
- 6 It's cold today. You should put if you go out. (on)
- 7 It was only a small fire. I was able to put easily. (out)
- 8 It's a bit dark in this room. Shall I turn ? (on)
- 9 A: The hotel is more expensive than when we stayed here last year.
B: Yes, they've put (up)
- 10 A: How did the vase get broken?
B: I'm afraid I knocked while I was cleaning. (over)

Phrasal verbs 2 in/out

A

Compare **in** and **out**:

in = into a room, a building, a car etc.

- How did the thieves **get in**?
- Here's a key, so you can **let yourself in**.
- Lisa walked up to the edge of the pool and **dived in**. (= into the water)
- I've got a new apartment. I'm **moving in** on Friday.
- As soon as I got to the airport, I **checked in**.

In the same way you can say **go in**, **come in**, **walk in**, **break in** etc.

Compare **in** and **into**:

- I'm moving **in** on Friday.
- I'm moving **into my new flat** on Friday

out = out of a room, a building, a car etc.

- Stay in the car. Don't **get out**.
- I had no key, so I was **locked out**.
- She swam up and down the pool, and then **climbed out**.
- Andy opened the window and **looked out**.
- We paid the hotel bill and **checked out**.

In the same way you can say **go out**, **get out**, **move out**, **let somebody out** etc.

Compare **out** and **out of**:

- She climbed **out**.
- She climbed **out of the pool**.

B

Other verbs + **in**

drop in = visit somebody at home without arranging to do this

- I **dropped in** to see Chris on my way home.

join in = take part in something that is already going on

- They were playing cards, so I **joined in**.

plug in an electrical machine = connect it to the electricity supply

- The fridge isn't working because you haven't **plugged it in**.



take somebody **in** = deceive somebody

- The man said he was a policeman and I believed him. I was completely **taken in**.

fill in or **fill out** a form, a questionnaire etc. = write the necessary information on a form

- Please **fill in** the application form and send it to us by 28 February. or
- Please **fill out** the application form ...

C

Other verbs + **out**

eat out = eat at a restaurant, not at home

- There wasn't anything to eat at home, so we decided to **eat out**.

drop out of college / university / a course / a race = stop before you have completely finished

- Gary went to university but **dropped out** after a year.

get out of something that you arranged to do = avoid doing it

- I promised I'd go to the wedding. I don't want to go, but I can't **get out** of it now.

leave something **out** = omit it, not include it

- In the sentence 'She said that she was ill', you can **leave out** the word 'that'.

cross something **out** = write a line through something

- Some of the names on the list had been **crossed out**.

Sarah

CROSS OUT

Exercises

138.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Here's a key so that you can yourself in.
- 2 Lisa doesn't like cooking, so she out a lot.
- 3 If you're in our part of town, you should in and say hello.
- 4 Could you in this questionnaire? It will only take five minutes.
- 5 Amy isn't living in this house any more. She out a few weeks ago.
- 6 After breakfast, we out of the hotel and got a taxi to the airport.
- 7 I wanted to charge my phone, but there was nowhere to the charger in.
- 8 Paul started doing a Spanish course, but he out after a few weeks.
- 9 Be careful! The water isn't very deep here, so don't in.

138.2 Complete the sentences with **in, **into**, **out** or **out of**.**

- 1 I've got a new flat. I'm moving on Friday.
- 2 We arrived at the hotel and checked
- 3 When are you moving your new flat?
- 4 The car stopped and the driver got
- 5 Thieves broke the house and stole some jewellery.
- 6 How did the thieves break? Through a window?
- 7 He opened his wallet and something fell
- 8 Kate was angry and walked the meeting.

138.3 Complete the sentences using a verb + **in or **out** (of).**

- 1 Lisa walked to the edge of the pool, and swam to the other end.
- 2 Not all the runners finished the race. Three of them
- 3 I went to see Joe and Sophie in their new house. They last week.
- 4 I've told you everything you need to know. I don't think I've anything.
- 5 Some people in the crowd started singing. Then a few more people and soon everybody was singing.
- 6 Don't be by him. If I were you, I wouldn't believe anything he says.
- 7 I to see Laura a few days ago. She was fine.

138.4 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets in the correct form.

- 1 A: The fridge isn't working.
B: That's because you haven't (plug)
plugged it in
- 2 A: What do I have to do with these forms?
B: and send them to this address. (fill)
- 3 A: I've made a mistake on this form.
B: That's OK. Just and correct it. (cross)
- 4 A: Have you been to the new club I told you about?
B: No. We went there, but they wouldn't because we weren't
members. (let)
- 5 A: Can we meet tomorrow at ten?
B: Probably. I have another meeting, but I think I can (get)

138.5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use a verb from Sections B or C.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Let's go to a restaurant tonight. 2 Why didn't you finish college? 3 Please complete the application form. 4 I can't avoid going to the party. 5 I thought the email was genuine, but it wasn't. 6 You must come and see us sometime. 7 Steve was upset because he wasn't chosen
for the team. | Let's tonight.
Why did you?
Please form .
I can't to the party.
I was completely the email .
You must sometime.
Steve was upset because he the team. |
|--|--|

Phrasal verbs 3 **out****A****out** = not burning, not shining**go out****put out** a fire / a cigarette / a light**turn out** a light**blow out** a candle

- Suddenly all the lights in the building **went out**.
- I **put** the fire **out** with a fire extinguisher.
- I **turned** the lights **out** before leaving.
- We don't need the candle. You can **blow it out**.

B**work out****work out** = do physical exercises

- Rachel **works out** at the gym three times a week.

work out = develop, progress

- Good luck for the future. I hope everything **works out** well for you.
- A: Why did James leave the company?
B: Things didn't **work out**. (=things didn't work out well)

work out (for calculations):

- The total bill for three people is £97.35. That **works out** at £32.45 each.

work (something) **out** = calculate

- 345×76 ? I need a calculator. I can't **work it out** in my head.

work out or figure out = understand, think about a problem and find an answer

- Investigators are trying to **work out** what caused the accident. or
- Investigators are trying to **figure out** what caused the accident.

COther verbs + **out****carry out** an order / an experiment / a survey / an investigation / a plan etc.

- Soldiers are expected to **carry out** orders.
- An investigation into the accident will be **carried out**.

find out that/what/when (etc.) ... , **find out about** ... = get information about

- The police never **found out** who committed the crime.
- I just **found out** that it's Helen's birthday today.
- I checked a few websites to **find out** about hotels in the town.

give/hand things **out** = give to each person

- At the end of the lecture, the speaker **gave out** information sheets to the audience.

point something **out** (to somebody) = draw attention to it

- As we drove through the city, the tour guide **pointed out** all the sights.
- I didn't realise I'd made a mistake until somebody **pointed it out to** me.

run out (of something)

- We **ran out of** petrol on the motorway. (=we used all our petrol)

sort something **out** = find a solution to, put in order

- There are a few problems we need to **sort out**.
- All these papers are mixed up. I'll have to **sort them out**.

turn out to be ... / **turn out** good/nice etc. / **turn out** that ...

- Nobody believed Paul at first, but he **turned out** to be right. (=it became clear in the end that he was right)
- The weather wasn't so good in the morning, but it **turned out** nice later.
- I thought they knew each other, but it **turned out** that they'd never met.

try out a machine, a system, a new idea etc. = test it to see if it is OK

- The company is **trying out** some new software at the moment.

Exercises

139.1 Which words can go together? Choose from the list.

a candle a fire a light a new product an order a problem

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1 turn out <i>a light</i> | 4 put out |
| 2 blow out | 5 try out |
| 3 carry out | 6 sort out |

139.2 Complete the sentences using a verb + out.

- 1 The company is trying out a new computer system at the moment.
 - 2 Steve is very fit. He does a lot of sport and regularly.
 - 3 The road will be closed for two days while building work is
 - 4 We didn't manage to discuss everything at the meeting. We of time.
 - 5 You have to the problem yourself. I can't do it for you.
 - 6 I need to what happened exactly. It's not clear at the moment.
 - 7 The new drug will be on a small group of patients.
 - 8 I thought the two books were the same until someone the difference.
 - 9 They got married a few years ago, but it didn't and they separated.
 - 10 There was a power cut and all the lights
 - 11 We thought she was American at first, but she to be Swedish.
 - 12 Sometimes it cheaper to eat in a restaurant than to cook at home.
 - 13 How did you about the project? Did somebody tell you?
 - 14 It took firefighters two hours to the fire.
 - 15 I can't how the water is getting into the house.

139.3 For each picture, complete the sentence using a verb + **out**.



They've run out of petrol.



The man with the beard is
..... leaflets.



The weather has



Sally and Kim are
..... at the gym.



Joe has water.



Lisa is trying to
how

139.4 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + **out**.

- 1 A: Was the fire serious?
B: No, we were able to *put it out*
 - 2 A: This recipe looks interesting.
B: Yes, let's
 - 3 A: How much money do I owe you exactly?
B: Just a moment. I'll have to
 - 4 A: What happened about your problem with your bank?
B: It's OK now. I went to see them and we
 - 5 A: You've written the wrong date on this form.
B: Oh, so I have. Thanks for

Phrasal verbs 4 **on/off** (1)

A **on** and **off** for lights, machines etc.

We say:

the light **is on** / **put** the light **on** / **leave** the light **on** etc.
turn the light **on/off** or **switch** the light **on/off**

- Shall I **leave** the lights **on** or **turn** them **off**?
- 'Is the heating **on**?' 'No, I **switched** it **off**'

also

put (music, a song) **on**, **put** the kettle **on**:

- Let's **put** some music **on**. What would you like to hear?
- We need boiling water, so I'll **put** the kettle **on**.

B **on** and **off** for events etc.

go on = *happen*

- What's all that noise? What's **going on**? (= what's happening)

call something **off** = *cancel it*

- The concert in the park had to be **called off** because of the weather.

put something **off**, **put off** doing something = *delay it*

- The election has been **put off** until January.
- We can't **put off** making a decision. We have to decide now.

C **on** and **off** for clothes etc.

put on clothes, glasses, make-up, a seat belt etc.

- My hands were cold, so I **put** my gloves **on**.

put on weight = *get heavier*

- I've **put on** two kilos in the last month.

try on clothes (to see if they fit)

- I **tried on** a jacket in the shop, but it didn't look right.

take off clothes, glasses etc.

- It was warm, so I **took off** my coat.

D **off** = away from a person or place

be off (to a place)

- Tomorrow I'm **off** to Paris. / I'm **off** on holiday.
(= I'm going to Paris / I'm going on holiday)

walk off / **run off** / **drive off** / **ride off** / **go off** (similar to **walk away** / **run away** etc.)

- Anna got on her bike and **rode off**.
- Mark left home at the age of eighteen and **went off** to Canada.

set off = *start a journey*

- We **set off** early to avoid the traffic. (= We left early)

take off = *leave the ground (for planes)*

- After a long delay, the plane finally **took off**.

see somebody **off** = *go with them to the airport/station to say goodbye*

- Helen was going away. We went to the station with her to **see her off**.

Exercises

140.1 Complete the sentences using **put on** + the following:

some music the heating the kettle the light the oven

- 1 It was getting dark, so I **put the light on**
- 2 It was getting cold, so I
- 3 I wanted to bake a cake, so I
- 4 I wanted to make some tea, so I
- 5 I wanted to relax, so I

140.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + **on** or **off**.

- 1 It was hot in the cinema, so I **took off** my jacket.
- 2 What are all these people doing? What's ?
- 3 The weather was too bad for the plane to , so the flight was delayed.
- 4 Rachel got into her car and at high speed.
- 5 Tim is too thin. He needs to weight.
- 6 We spent the whole day walking. We at 8 am and walked for ten hours.
- 7 Don't until tomorrow what you can do today.
- 8 They've changed their minds about getting married. The wedding has been
- 9 Are you cold? Shall I get you a sweater to ?
- 10 I some jeans in the shop, but they were too tight.
- 11 When I go away, I prefer to be alone at the station or airport. I don't like it when people come to me
- 12 I need to make an appointment to see the dentist, but I keep it

140.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.


Her hands were cold, so she **put her gloves on**



The plane at 10.55.



Maria , but it was too big for her.



The match because of the weather.



Mark's parents went to the airport to



He took his sunglasses out of his pocket and

Phrasal verbs 5 on/off (2)

A

verb + on = continue doing something

go on = *continue*

- The party **went on** until 4 o'clock in the morning.

go on / carry on doing something = *continue doing it*

- We can't **go on** spending money like this. We'll have nothing left soon.
- I don't want to **carry on** working here. I'm going to look for another job.

go on with / carry on with something = *continue it*

- Don't let me disturb you. Please **carry on with** what you're doing.

keep on doing (or **keep** doing) something = *do it continuously or repeatedly*

- He **keeps on** criticising me. It's not fair! (or He **keeps** criticising me.)

drive on / walk on / play on = *continue driving/walking/playing etc.*

- Shall we stop at this petrol station or shall we **drive on** to the next one?

B

get on

get on = *progress*

- How are you **getting on** in your new job? (= How is it going?)

get on (with somebody) = *have a good relationship*

- Joanne and Karen don't **get on**. They're always arguing.
- Richard **gets on** well **with** his neighbours. They're all very friendly.

get on with something = *continue something you have to do, usually after an interruption*

- I must **get on with** my work. I have a lot to do.

C

verb + off

doze off / drop off / nod off = *fall asleep*

- I **dozed off** during the lecture. It was very boring.

finish something **off** = *do the last part of it*

- A: Have you finished painting the kitchen?
- B: Nearly. I'll **finish** it **off** tomorrow.

go off = *make an alarm sound*

- Did you hear the alarm **go off**?

put somebody **off** (doing) something so that they don't want it or want to do it any more

- We wanted to go to the exhibition, but we were **put off** by the long queue.
(= we didn't go because of the long queue)
- What **put** you **off** applying for the job? Was the salary too low?

rip somebody **off** / be **ripped off** = *cheat somebody / be cheated*

- Did you really pay £2,000 for that painting? I think you were **ripped off**.
(= you paid too much)

show off = *try to impress people with your ability, your knowledge etc.*

- Look at that boy on the bike riding with no hands. He's just **showing off**.

tell somebody **off** = *speak angrily to somebody because they did something wrong*

- Clare's mother **told** her **off** for wearing dirty shoes in the house.



Exercises

141.1 What do these sentences mean?

- 1 I carried on studying.
a I started studying. b I continued studying. c I put off studying. (b is correct)
- 2 I nodded off.
a I agreed. b I felt sick. c I fell asleep.
- 3 We were ripped off.
a We were attacked. b We paid too much. c Our clothes were torn.
- 4 I told them off.
a I criticised them. b I was satisfied with them. c I told them to go away.
- 5 They don't get on.
a They don't like each other much. b They are lazy. c They don't know each other.
- 6 He was showing off.
a He was joking. b He was trying to impress us. c He wasn't telling the truth.

141.2 Complete each sentence using a verb + on or off.

- 1 We can't spending money like this. We'll have nothing left soon.
- 2 I'm not ready to go home yet. I have a few things to
- 3 'Shall I stop the car here?' 'No, a bit further.'
- 4 Dan paid too much for the car he bought. I think he was
- 5 Emma is enjoying her course at university. She's very well.
- 6 The fire alarm and everybody had to leave the building.
- 7 Ben was by his boss for being late for work repeatedly.
- 8 The meeting has only just finished. It longer than expected.
- 9 I really like working with my colleagues. We all really well together.
- 10 I making the same mistake. It's very frustrating.
- 11 I've just had a coffee break, and now I must with my work.
- 12 Peter likes people to know how clever he is. He's always
- 13 We decided not to go to the concert. We were by the cost of tickets.
- 14 Jack paused for a moment and then with his story.
- 15 I was so tired at work today. I nearly at my desk a couple of times.

141.3 Complete the sentences. Use a verb (in the correct form) + on or off. Sometimes you will need other words as well. Choose from:

carry finish get get go keep rip tell

- 1 A: How in your new job?
B: Fine, thanks. It's going very well.
- 2 A: What's Tanya like?
B: She's very nice and easy-going. She everybody.
- 3 A: Is Gary going to retire soon?
B: No, he likes his job and wants to working.
- 4 A: Have you written the letter you had to write?
B: I've started it. I'll tomorrow.
- 5 A: We took a taxi to the airport. It cost £40.
B: £40! Normally it costs about £20. You
- 6 A: Why were you late for work this morning?
B: I overslept. My alarm clock didn't
- 7 A: Some children at the next table in the restaurant were behaving very badly.
B: Why didn't their parents ?
- 8 A: Is Kate good at making decisions?
B: No, she isn't. changing her mind.

Phrasal verbs 6 up/down

A

Compare **up** and **down**:

put something **up** (on a wall etc.)

- I **put** a picture **up** on the wall.



pick something **up**

- There was a letter on the floor. I **picked it up** and looked at it.

stand up

- Alan **stood up** and walked out.

turn something **up**

- I can't hear the TV. Can you **turn it up** a bit?

take something **down** (from a wall etc.)

- I didn't like the picture, so I **took it down**.



put something **down**

- I stopped writing and **put down** my pen.

sit down / bend down / lie down

- I **bent down** to tie my shoelace.

turn something **down**

- The oven is too hot. **Turn it down** to 150 degrees.

B

knock down, cut down etc.

knock down a building / **blow** something **down** / **cut** something **down** etc.

- Some old houses were **knocked down** to make way for the new shopping centre.
- Why did you **cut down** the tree in your garden?

be **knocked down** (by a car etc.)

- A man was **knocked down** by a car and taken to hospital.

burn down = *be destroyed by fire*

- They were able to put out the fire before the house **burnt down**.

C

down = getting less

slow down = *go more slowly*

- You're driving too fast. **Slow down**.

calm (somebody) **down** = *become calmer, make somebody calmer*

- Calm down**. There's no point in getting angry.

cut down (on something) = *eat, drink or do something less often*

- I'm trying to **cut down on** coffee. I drink too much of it.

D

Other verbs + **down**

break down = *stop working (for machines, cars, relationships etc.)*

- The car **broke down** and I had to phone for help.
- Their marriage **broke down** after only a few months.

close down / shut down = *stop doing business*

- There used to be a shop at the end of the street. It **closed down** a few years ago.

let somebody **down** = *disappoint them because you didn't do what they hoped*

- You can always rely on Paul. He'll never **let you down**.

turn somebody/something **down** = *refuse an application, an offer etc.*

- I applied for several jobs, but I was **turned down** for all of them.
- Rachel was offered the job, but she decided to **turn it down**.

write something **down** = *write something on paper because you may need the information later*

- I can't remember Ben's address. I **wrote it down**, but I can't find it.

Exercises

142.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + up or down.


- 1 There used to be a tree next to the house, but we ***cut it down***
- 2 There used to be some shelves on the wall, but I
- 3 The ceiling was so low, he couldn't straight.
- 4 She couldn't hear the radio very well, so she
- 5 While they were waiting for the bus, they on the ground.
- 6 A few trees in the storm last week.
- 7 We've got some new curtains, but we haven't yet.
- 8 Lisa dropped her keys, so she and

142.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb (in the correct form) + **down**. Choose from:

calm **cut** **let** **take** **turn** **write**

- 1 I don't like this picture on the wall. I'm going to ***take it down***
- 2 The music was too loud, so I
- 3 David was very angry. I tried to
- 4 I promised I would help Anna. I don't want to
- 5 I've forgotten my password. I should have
- 6 Those trees are beautiful. Please don't

142.3 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + **down**.

- 1 I stopped writing and ***put down*** my pen.
- 2 I was really angry. It took me a long time to
- 3 The train as it approached the station.
- 4 Sarah applied to study medicine at university, but she
- 5 Our car is very reliable. It has never
- 6 I spend too much money. I'm going to on things I don't need.
- 7 I didn't play well. I felt that I had the other players in the team.
- 8 The shop because it was losing money.
- 9 It's a very ugly building. Many people would like it to
- 10 I can't understand why you the chance of working in another country for a year. It would have been a great experience for you.
- 11 I didn't see the accident. Someone told me that a boy as he was crossing the road.
- 12 Peter got married when he was 20, but unfortunately the marriage a few years later.

Phrasal verbs 7 up (1)

A

go up, come up, walk up (to ...) = approach

- A man **came up to** me in the street and asked me for money.

catch up (with somebody), catch somebody up = move faster than people in front of you so that you reach them

- I'm not ready to go yet. You go on and I'll **catch up with** you / I'll **catch** you **up**.

keep up (with somebody) = continue at the same speed or level

- You're walking too fast. I can't **keep up (with you)**.
 You're doing well. **Keep it up!**

B

set up an organisation, a company, a business, a system, a website etc. = start it

- The government has **set up** a committee to investigate the problem.

take up a hobby, a sport, an activity etc. = start doing it

- Laura **took up** photography a few years ago. She takes really good pictures.

fix up a meeting etc. = arrange it

- We've **fixed up** a meeting for next Monday.

C

grow up = become an adult

- Amy was born in Hong Kong but **grew up** in Australia.

bring up a child = raise, look after a child

- Her parents died when she was a child and she was **brought up** by her grandparents.

D

clean up, clear up, tidy up = make something clean, tidy etc.

- Look at this mess! Who's going to **tidy up**? (or ... to **tidy it up**)

wash up = wash the plates, dishes etc. after a meal

- I hate **washing up**. (or I hate **doing the washing-up**.)

E

end up somewhere, **end up** doing something etc.

- There was a fight in the street and three men **ended up** in hospital.
(= that's what happened to these men in the end)
 I couldn't find a hotel and **ended up** sleeping on a bench at the station.
(= that's what happened to me in the end)

give up = stop trying, **give** something **up** = stop doing it

- Don't **give up**. Keep trying!
 Sue got bored with her job and decided to **give it up**. (= stop doing it)

make up something, be **made up of** something

- Children under 16 **make up** half the population of the city.
(= half the population are children under 16)
 Air is **made up** mainly **of** nitrogen and oxygen. (= Air consists of ...)

take up space or time = use space or time

- Most of the space in the room was **taken up** by a large table.

turn up, show up = arrive, appear

- We arranged to meet David last night, but he didn't **turn up**.

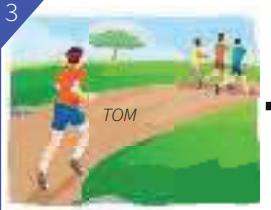
use something **up** = use all of it so that nothing is left

- I'm going to make soup. We have a lot of vegetables and I want to **use them up**.



Exercises

143.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use three words each time, including a verb from Section A.

 Can you tell me ... ?	
<p>A man <u>came up to</u> me in the street and asked me the way to the station.</p>	<p>Kate the front door of the house and rang the doorbell.</p>
 TOM	 TOM PAUL TANYA
<p>Tom was a long way behind the other runners, but he managed to them.</p>	<p>Tanya was running too fast for Paul. He couldn't her.</p>

143.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb (in the correct form) + **up**. Choose from:

end end give give grow make take take turn use wash

- 1 I couldn't find a hotel and ended up sleeping on a bench at the station.
- 2 I'm feeling very tired now. I've all my energy.
- 3 After dinner I and put the dishes away.
- 4 People often ask children what they want to be when they
- 5 We arranged to meet Tom, but he didn't
- 6 Two years ago James his studies to be a professional footballer.
- 7 I don't do any sports right now, but I'm thinking of tennis.
- 8 You don't have enough determination. You too easily.
- 9 Karen travelled a lot for a few years and in Canada, where she still lives.
- 10 I do a lot of gardening. It most of my free time.
- 11 There are two universities in the city. Students 20 per cent of the population.

143.3 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + **up** (with any other necessary words). Choose from:

bring catch fix give give go keep keep make set tidy

- 1 Sue got bored with her job and decided to give it up.
- 2 I'm not ready yet. You go on and I'll catch up with you.
- 3 The room is in a mess. I'd better
- 4 We expect to go away on holiday in July, but we haven't yet.
- 5 Steven is having problems at school. He can't the rest of the class.
- 6 I in the country, but I have always preferred cities.
- 7 Our team lost the game. We started well, but we couldn't
- 8 I saw Mike at the party, so I him and said hello.
- 9 Helen has her own website. A friend of hers helped her to
- 10 Ben was learning to play the guitar, but he found it hard and in the end he
- 11 When I was on holiday, I joined a tour group. The group two Americans, three Japanese, five Germans and myself.

A**bring up** a topic etc. = *introduce it in a conversation*

- I don't want to hear any more about this. Please don't **bring** it **up** again.

come up = *be introduced in a conversation*

- Some interesting things **came up** in our discussion yesterday.

come up with an idea, a suggestion etc. = *produce an idea*

- Sarah is very creative. She's always **coming up with** new ideas.

make something **up** = *invent something that is not true*

- What Kevin told you about himself wasn't true. He **made** it all **up**.

B**cheer up** = *be happier*, **cheer** somebody **up** = *make somebody feel happier*

- You look so sad! **Cheer** up!
- Helen is depressed. What can we do to **cheer** her **up**?

save up for something / to do something = *save money to buy something*

- Dan is **saving up** for a trip to New Zealand.

clear up = *become bright (for weather)*

- It was raining when I got up, but it **cleared up** later.

C**blow up** = *explode*, **blow** something **up** = *destroy it with a bomb etc.*

- The engine caught fire and **blew up**.
- The bridge was **blown up** during the war.

tear something **up** = *tear it into pieces*

- I didn't read the letter. I just **tore** it **up** and threw it away.

beat somebody **up** = *hit someone repeatedly so that they are badly hurt*

- A friend of mine was attacked and **beaten up**. He had to go to hospital.

D**break up, split up** (with somebody) = *separate*

- I'm surprised to hear that Kate and Paul have **split up**. They seemed very happy together.

do up a coat, a shoelace, buttons etc. = *fasten, tie etc.*

- It's quite cold. **Do up** your coat before you go out.

do up a building, a room etc. = *repair and improve it*

- The kitchen looks great now that it has been **done up**.

look something **up** in a dictionary/encyclopaedia etc.

- If you don't know the meaning of a word, you can **look** it **up** (in a dictionary).

put up with something = *tolerate a difficult situation or person*

- We live on a busy road, so we have to **put up with** a lot of noise from the traffic.

hold up a person, a plan etc. = *delay*

- Don't wait for me. I don't want to **hold** you **up**.
- Plans to build a new factory have been **held up** because of financial problems.

mix up people/things, **get** people/things **mixed up** = *you think one is the other*

- The two brothers look very similar. People often **mix** them **up**.
or ... People often **get** them **mixed up**.



Exercises

144.1 Which goes with which?

- 1 He was angry and tore up
- 2 Jane came up with
- 3 Paul is always making up
- 4 I think you should do up
- 5 I don't think you should bring up
- 6 I'm saving up for
- 7 We had to put up with

- a a motorbike
- b a lot of bad weather
- c your jacket
- d a good suggestion
- e excuses
- f the letter
- g that subject

- 1 f.....
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

144.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. You will need two or three words each time.


The weather was horrible this morning, but it's cleared up now.



Lisa was late because she was in the traffic.



They bought an old house and It's really nice now.



Joe was really depressed. We took him out for a meal to

144.3 Complete the sentences using a verb + up. Sometimes you will need other words as well.

- 1 Some interesting things ... came up in our discussion yesterday.
- 2 The ship and sank. The cause of the explosion was never discovered.
- 3 James was attacked and by three men he'd never seen before.
- 4 Robert and Tina aren't together any more. They've
- 5 My hands were so cold, I found it hard to my shoelaces.
- 6 It's been raining all morning. Let's hope it this afternoon.
- 7 I turned up for the party on the wrong day. I got the dates

144.4 Complete the sentences using a verb + up. You will need other words as well.

- 1 Don't wait for me. I don't want to ... hold you up
- 2 I don't know what this word means. I'll have to
- 3 I'm fed up with the way my boss treats me. I don't see why I should it.
- 4 I don't believe the story you're telling me. I think you're
- 5 The problem was complicated, but we managed to a solution.
- 6 Before you throw these documents away, you should
- 7 I'm trying to spend less money at the moment. I'm a holiday.
- 8 Tina doesn't like talking about the accident, so it's better not to
- 9 The words 'there' and 'their' sound the same, so it's easy to

Phrasal verbs 9 away/back

A

Compare **away** and **back**:**away** = away from home

- We're **going away** on holiday today.

away = away from a place, a person etc.

- Sarah got into her car, started the engine and **drove away**.
- I tried to take a picture of the bird, but it **flew away**.
- I dropped the ticket, and it **blew away** in the wind.
- The police searched the house and **took away** a computer.

In the same way you can say:

walk away, run away, look away etc.**back** = back home

- We'll **be back** in three weeks.

back = back to a place, a person etc.

- A: I'm going out now.
B: What time will you **be back**?
- After eating at a restaurant, we **walked back** to our hotel.
- I've still got Jane's keys. I forgot to **give them back** to her.
- When you've finished with that book, can you **put it back** on the shelf?

In the same way you can say:

go back, come back, get back, take something back etc.

B

Other verbs + **away****get away** = escape, leave with difficulty

- We tried to catch the thief, but she **got away**.

get away with something = do something wrong without being caught

- I parked in a no-parking zone, but I **got away with** it. I didn't have to pay a fine.

keep away (from ...) = don't go near

- Keep away from** the edge of the pool. You might fall in.

give something **away** = give it to somebody else because you don't want it any more

- 'Did you sell your bike?' 'No, I **gave it away to a friend**'

put something **away** = put it in the place where it is usually kept

- When the children finished playing with their toys, they **put** them **away**.

throw something **away** = put it in the rubbish

- I kept the letter, but I **threw away** the envelope.

C

Other verbs + **back****wave back / smile back / shout back / hit** somebody **back**

- I waved to her, and she **waved back**.

call/phone/ring (somebody) **back** = return a phone call

- I can't talk to you now. I'll **call** you **back** in ten minutes.

get back to somebody = reply to them by phone etc.

- I sent him an email, but he never **got back to** me.

look back (on) something = think about what happened in the past

- My first job was in a travel agency. I didn't like it much at the time but, **looking back on** it, I learnt a lot and it was a useful experience.

pay back money, **pay** somebody **back**

- If you borrow money, you have to **pay it back**.
- Thanks for lending me the money. I'll **pay** you **back** next week.

Exercises

145.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1		She waved to him and he waved back .
2		It was windy. I dropped a £20 note and it
3		She opened the letter, read it and in the envelope.
4		He tried to talk to her, but she just
5		Ellie threw the ball to Ben and he
6		His shoes were worn out, so he

145.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + **away** or **back**.

- 1 I was away all day yesterday. I **got back** very late.
- 2 I haven't seen our neighbours for a while. I think they must
- 3 'I'm going out now.' 'OK. What time will you ?'
- 4 I saw a man trying to break into a car. When he saw me, he
- 5 If you cheat in the exam, you might with it or you might get caught.
- 6 Be careful! That's an electric fence. Make sure you from it.
- 7 He wasn't very friendly. I smiled at him, but he didn't

145.3 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

- 1 The woman got into her car, started the engine and **drove** away.
- 2 This box could be useful, so I won't it away.
- 3 Jane doesn't do anything at work. I don't know how she away with it.
- 4 I'm going out now. I'll back in about an hour.
- 5 You should think more about the future. Don't back all the time.
- 6 Gary is very generous. He won some money in the lottery and it all away.
- 7 I'll back to you as soon as I have the information you need.
- 8 I washed the dishes, dried them and them away.

145.4 Complete the sentences. Use the verb in brackets + **away** or **back**.

- 1 A: Do you still have my keys?
B: No. Don't you remember? I **gave them back** to you yesterday. (give)
- 2 A: Do you want this magazine?
B: No, I've finished with it. You can (throw)
- 3 A: How are your new jeans? Do they fit you OK?
B: No, they're too tight. I'm going to to the shop. (take)
- 4 A: Here's the money you asked me to lend you.
B: Thanks. I'll as soon as I can. (pay)
- 5 A: What happened to all the books you used to have?
B: I didn't want them any more, so I (give)
- 6 A: Did you phone Sarah?
B: Yes, I left a message for her, but she hasn't (call)

Appendix 1

Regular and irregular verbs

1.1 Regular verbs

If a verb is regular, the past simple and past participle end in **-ed**. For example:

<i>infinitive</i>	clean	finish	use	paint	stop	carry
<i>past simple</i>	{	cleaned	finished	used	painted	stopped
<i>past participle</i>	}					carried

For spelling rules, see Appendix 6.

For the *past simple* (I **cleaned** / they **finished** / she **carried** etc.), see Unit 5.

We use the *past participle* to make the perfect tenses and all the passive forms.

Perfect tenses (**have/has/had** cleaned):

- I **have cleaned** the windows. (*present perfect* – see Units 7–8)
- They were still working. They **hadn't finished**. (*past perfect* – see Unit 15)

Passive (**is cleaned** / **was cleaned** etc.):

- He **was carried** out of the room. (*past simple passive*)
- This gate has just **been painted**. (*present perfect passive*)

} see Units 42–44

1.2 Irregular verbs

When the past simple and past participle do *not* end in **-ed** (for example, I **saw** / I **have seen**), the verb is *irregular*.

With some irregular verbs, all three forms (*infinitive*, *past simple* and *past participle*) are the same.

For example, **hit**:

- Don't **hit** me. (*infinitive*)
- Somebody **hit** me as I came into the room. (*past simple*)
- I've never **hit** anybody in my life. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- George was **hit** on the head by a stone. (*past participle – passive*)

With other irregular verbs, the past simple is the same as the past participle (but different from the infinitive). For example, **tell** → **told**:

- Can you **tell** me what to do? (*infinitive*)
- She **told** me to come back the next day. (*past simple*)
- Have you **told** anybody about your new job? (*past participle – present perfect*)
- I was **told** to come back the next day. (*past participle – passive*)

With other irregular verbs, all three forms are different. For example, **wake** → **woke/woken**:

- I'll **wake** you up. (*infinitive*)
- I **woke** up in the middle of the night. (*past simple*)
- The baby has **woken** up. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- I was **woken** up by a loud noise. (*past participle – passive*)

1.3 The following verbs can be regular or irregular:

burn → burned	or burnt	smell → smelled	or smelt
dream → dreamed	or dreamt [dreɪmt]*	spell → spelled	or spelt
lean → leaned	or leant [lɛnt]*	spill → spilled	or spilt
learn → learned	or learnt	spoil → spoiled	or spoilt

* pronunciation

So you can say:

- I **leant** out of the window. or I **leaned** out of the window.
- The dinner has been **spoiled**. or The dinner has been **spoilt**.

In British English the irregular form (**burnt/learnt** etc.) is more usual. For American English, see Appendix 7.

1.4 List of irregular verbs

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
flee	fled	fled
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbade	forbidden
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got/gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt	knelt
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read [red]*	read [red]*
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewn/sewed
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	Showed	shown/showed
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
spit	spat	spat
split	split	split
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank	stunk
strike	struck	struck
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
weep	wept	wept
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

* pronunciation

Appendix 2

Present and past tenses

	simple	continuous
present	<p>I do <i>present simple</i> (→ Units 2–4)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Anna often plays tennis. <input type="checkbox"/> I work in a bank, but I don't enjoy it much. <input type="checkbox"/> Do you like parties? <input type="checkbox"/> It doesn't rain so much in summer. 	<p>I am doing <i>present continuous</i> (→ Units 1, 3–4)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> ‘Where's Anna?’ ‘She's playing tennis.’ <input type="checkbox"/> Please don't disturb me now. I'm working. <input type="checkbox"/> Hello! Are you enjoying the party? <input type="checkbox"/> It isn't raining at the moment.
present perfect	<p>I have done <i>present perfect simple</i> (→ Units 7–8, 10–14)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Anna has played tennis many times. <input type="checkbox"/> I've lost my key. Have you seen it anywhere? <input type="checkbox"/> How long have you and Sam known each other? <input type="checkbox"/> A: Is it still raining? B: No, it has stopped. <input type="checkbox"/> The house is dirty. I haven't cleaned it for weeks. 	<p>I have been doing <i>present perfect continuous</i> (→ Units 9–11)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Anna is tired. She has been playing tennis. <input type="checkbox"/> You're out of breath. Have you been running? <input type="checkbox"/> How long have you been learning English? <input type="checkbox"/> It's still raining. It has been raining all day. <input type="checkbox"/> I haven't been feeling well recently. Perhaps I should go to the doctor.
past	<p>I did <i>past simple</i> (→ Units 5–6, 13–14)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Anna played tennis yesterday afternoon. <input type="checkbox"/> I lost my key a few days ago. <input type="checkbox"/> There was a film on TV last night, but we didn't watch it. <input type="checkbox"/> What did you do when you finished work yesterday? 	<p>I was doing <i>past continuous</i> (→ Unit 6)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> I saw Anna at the sports centre yesterday. She was playing tennis. <input type="checkbox"/> I dropped my key when I was trying to open the door. <input type="checkbox"/> The TV was on, but we weren't watching it. <input type="checkbox"/> What were you doing at this time yesterday?
past perfect	<p>I had done <i>past perfect</i> (→ Unit 15)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> It wasn't her first game of tennis. She had played many times before. <input type="checkbox"/> They couldn't get into the house because they had lost the key. <input type="checkbox"/> The house was dirty because I hadn't cleaned it for weeks. 	<p>I had been doing <i>past perfect continuous</i> (→ Unit 16)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Anna was tired yesterday evening because she had been playing tennis in the afternoon. <input type="checkbox"/> James decided to go to the doctor because he hadn't been feeling well.

For the passive, see Units 42–44.

Appendix 3

The future

3.1 List of future forms:

<input type="checkbox"/> I'm leaving tomorrow.	<i>present continuous</i>	(→ Unit 19A)
<input type="checkbox"/> My train leaves at 9.30.	<i>present simple</i>	(→ Unit 19B)
<input type="checkbox"/> I'm going to leave tomorrow.	(be) going to	(→ Units 20, 23)
<input type="checkbox"/> I'll leave tomorrow.	will	(→ Units 21–23)
<input type="checkbox"/> I'll be leaving tomorrow.	<i>future continuous</i>	(→ Unit 24)
<input type="checkbox"/> I'll have left by this time tomorrow.	<i>future perfect</i>	(→ Unit 24)
<input type="checkbox"/> I hope to see you before I leave tomorrow.	<i>present simple</i>	(→ Unit 25)

3.2 Future actions

We use the present continuous (**I'm doing**) for arrangements:

- I'm **leaving** tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket. (already planned and arranged)
- 'When **are** they **getting** married?' 'On 24 July.'

We use the present simple (**I leave / it leaves** etc.) for timetables, programmes etc.:

- My train **leaves** at 11.30. (according to the timetable)
- What time **does** the film **begin**?

We use (be) **going to** ... to say what somebody has already decided to do:

- I've decided not to stay here any longer. I'm **going to leave** tomorrow. (or I'm **leaving** tomorrow.)
- 'Your shoes are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm **going to clean** them.'

We use **will** ('ll) when we decide or agree to do something at the time of speaking:

- A: I don't want you to stay here any longer.
- B: OK. I'll **leave** tomorrow. (B decides this at the time of speaking)
- That bag looks heavy. I'll **help** you with it.
- I **won't tell** anybody what happened. I promise. (**won't = will not**)

3.3 Future happenings and situations

Most often we use **will** to talk about future happenings ('something **will happen**') or situations ('something **will be**'):

- I don't think John is happy at work. I think he'll **leave** soon.
- This time next year I'll **be** in Japan. Where **will** you **be**?

We use (be) **going to** when the situation *now* shows what **is going to happen in the future**:

- Look at those black clouds. It's **going to rain**. (you can see the clouds *now*)

3.4 Future continuous and future perfect

Will be (do)ing = will be in the middle of (doing something):

- This time next week I'll be on holiday. I'll **be lying** on a beach or **swimming** in the sea.

We also use **will be -ing** for future actions (see Unit 24C):

- What time **will** you **be leaving** tomorrow?

We use **will have (done)** to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future:

- I won't be here this time tomorrow. I'll **have** already **left**.

3.5 We use the *present (not will)* after **when/if/while/before** etc. (see Unit 25):

- I hope to see you **before I leave** tomorrow. (not before I will leave)
- When** you **are** in London again, come and see us. (not When you will be)
- If we **don't hurry**, we'll be late.

Appendix 4

Modal verbs (**can/could/will/would** etc.)

This appendix is a summary of modal verbs. For more information, see Units 21–41.

4.1 Compare **can/could** etc. for actions:

can	<input type="checkbox"/> I can go out tonight. (=there is nothing to stop me)
could	<input type="checkbox"/> I can't go out tonight.
can or may	<input type="checkbox"/> I could go out tonight, but I'm not very keen. <input type="checkbox"/> I couldn't go out last night. (=I wasn't able)
will/won't	<input type="checkbox"/> Can } I go out tonight? (=do you allow me?) <input type="checkbox"/> May }
would	<input type="checkbox"/> I would go out tonight, but I have too much to do. <input type="checkbox"/> I promised I wouldn't go out.
shall	<input type="checkbox"/> Shall I go out tonight? (=do you think it is a good idea?)
should or ought to	<input type="checkbox"/> I { should } go out tonight. (=it would be a good thing to do)
must	<input type="checkbox"/> I must go out tonight. (=it is necessary) <input type="checkbox"/> I mustn't go out tonight. (=it is necessary that I do <i>not</i> go out)
needn't	<input type="checkbox"/> I needn't go out tonight. (=it is not necessary)

Compare **could have ... / would have ...** etc.:

could	<input type="checkbox"/> I could have gone out last night, but I decided to stay at home.
would	<input type="checkbox"/> I would have gone out last night, but I had too much to do.
should or ought to	<input type="checkbox"/> I { should } have gone out last night. I'm sorry I didn't.
needn't	<input type="checkbox"/> I needn't have gone out last night. (=I went out, but it was not necessary)

4.2 We use **will/would/may** etc. to say whether something is possible, impossible, probable, certain etc.

Compare:

will	<input type="checkbox"/> 'What time will she be here?' 'She'll be here soon.'
would	<input type="checkbox"/> She would be here now, but she's been delayed.
should or ought to	<input type="checkbox"/> She { should } be here soon. (=I expect she will be here soon)
may or might or could	<input type="checkbox"/> She { may } { might } { could } be here now. I'm not sure. (=it's possible that she is here)
must	<input type="checkbox"/> She must be here. I saw her come in.
can't	<input type="checkbox"/> She can't possibly be here. I know for certain that she's away on holiday.

Compare **would have ... / should have ...** etc.:

will	<input type="checkbox"/> She will have arrived by now. (=before now)
would	<input type="checkbox"/> She would have arrived earlier, but she was delayed.
should or ought to	<input type="checkbox"/> I wonder where she is. She { should } { ought to } have arrived by now.
may or might or could	<input type="checkbox"/> She { may } { might } { could } have arrived . I'm not sure. (=it's possible that she has arrived)
must	<input type="checkbox"/> She must have arrived by now. (=I'm sure – there is no other possibility)
can't	<input type="checkbox"/> She can't possibly have arrived yet. It's much too early. (=it's impossible)

Appendix 5

Short forms (**I'm** / **you've** / **didn't** etc.)

5.1 In spoken English we usually say **I'm / you've / didn't** etc. (*short forms or contractions*) rather than **I am / you have / did not** etc. We also use these short forms in informal writing (for example, a letter or message to a friend).

When we write short forms, we use an *apostrophe* ('') for the missing letter(s):

I'm = I am you've = you have didn't = did not

5.2 List of short forms:

'm = am	I'm		he's	she's	it's			
's = is or has						you're	we're	they're
're = are						you've	we've	they've
've = have	I've					you'll	we'll	they'll
'll = will	I'll	he'll	she'll			you'd	we'd	they'd
'd = would or had	I'd	he'd	she'd					

's can be **is** or **has**:

- She's ill. (= She **is** ill.)
 - She's gone away. (= She **has** gone)

but let's = let us

- Let's go now. (= Let us go)

'd can be **would** or **had**:

- I'd see a doctor if I were you. (=I **would** see)
 - I'd never seen her before. (=I **had** never seen)

We use some of these short forms (especially 's) after question words (**who/what** etc.) and after **that/there/here**:

who's what's where's how's that's there's here's who'll there'll who'd

- Who's** that woman over there? (= who **is**)
 - What's** happened? (= what **has**)
 - Do you think **there'll** be many people at the party? (= there **will**)

We also use short forms (especially 's) after a noun:

- Katherine's** going out tonight. (= Katherine **is**)
 - My best friend's** just got married. (= My best friend **has**)

You cannot use **'m** / **'s** / **'re** / **'ve** / **'ll** / **'d** at the end of a sentence (because the verb is stressed in this position):

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**.' (*not Yes, I'm.*)
 - Do you know where she **is**? (*not Do you know where she's?*)

5.3 Negative short forms

isn't (= is not)	don't (= do not)	haven't (= have not)
aren't (= are not)	doesn't (= does not)	hasn't (= has not)
wasn't (= was not)	didn't (= did not)	hadn't (= had not)
weren't (= were not)		
can't (= cannot)	couldn't (= could not)	mustn't (= must not)
won't (= will not)	wouldn't (= would not)	needn't (= need not)
shan't (= shall not)	shouldn't (= should not)	daren't (= dare not)

Negative short forms for **is** and **are** can be:

he **isn't** / she **isn't** / it **isn't** or he's **not** / she's **not** / it's **not**
you **aren't** / we **aren't** / they **aren't** or you're **not** / we're **not** / they're **not**

Appendix 6

Spelling

6.1 Nouns, verbs and adjectives can have the following endings:

noun + -s/-es (<i>plural</i>)	books	ideas	match es
verb + -s/-es (after he/she/it)	works	enjoys	wash es
verb + -ing	work ing	enjoy ing	wash ing
verb + -ed	worked	enjoyed	washed
adjective + -er (<i>comparative</i>)	cheaper	quicker	brighter
adjective + -est (<i>superlative</i>)	cheapest	quickest	brightest
adjective + -ly (<i>adverb</i>)	cheaply	quickly	brightly

When we use these endings, there are sometimes changes in spelling. These changes are listed below.

6.2 Nouns and verbs + **-s/-es**

The ending is **-es** when the word ends in **-s/-ss/-sh/-ch/-x**:

bus/buses	miss/misses	wash/washes
match/matches	search/searches	box/boxes

Note also:

potato/potatoes	tomato/tomatoes
do/does	go/goes

6.3 Words ending in **-y** (*baby, carry, easy* etc.)

If a word ends in a consonant* + **y** (-**by/-ry/-sy/-vy** etc.)

y changes to **ie** before the ending **-s**:

baby/babies	story/stories	country/countries	secretary/secretaries
hurry/hurries	study/studies	apply/applies	try/tries

y changes to **i** before the ending **-ed**:

hurry/hurried	study/studied	apply/applied	try/tried
---------------	---------------	---------------	-----------

y changes to **i** before the endings **-er** and **-est**:

easy/easier/easiest	heavy/heavier/heaviest	lucky/luckier/luckiest
---------------------	------------------------	------------------------

y changes to **i** before the ending **-ly**:

easy/easily	heavy/heavily	temporary/temporarily
-------------	---------------	-----------------------

y does not change before **-ing**:

hurrying	studying	applying	trying
----------	----------	----------	--------

y does not change if the word ends in a vowel* + **y** (-**ay/-ey/-oy/-uy**):

play/plays/played	monkey/monkeys	enjoy/enjoys/enjoyed	buy/buys
-------------------	----------------	----------------------	----------

An exception is: **day/daily**

Note also: **pay/paid** **lay/laid** **say/said**

6.4 Verbs ending in **-ie** (**die, lie, tie**)

If a verb ends in **-ie**, **ie** changes to **y** before the ending **-ing**:

die/dying	lie/lying	tie/tying
-----------	-----------	-----------

* **a e i o u** are vowel letters.

The other letters (**b c d f g** etc.) are consonant letters.

6.5 Words ending in -e (hope, dance, wide etc.)

Verbs

If a verb ends in -e, we leave out e before the ending -ing:

hope/hoping smile/smiling dance/dancing confuse/confusing

Exceptions are **be/being** and verbs ending in -ee:

see/seeing agree/agreeing

If a verb ends in -e, we add -d for the past (of regular verbs):

hope/hoped smile/smiled dance/danced confuse/confused

Adjectives and adverbs

If an adjective ends in -e, we add -r and -st for the comparative and superlative:

wide/wider/widest late/later/latest large/larger/largest

If an adjective ends in -e, we keep e before -ly in the adverb:

polite/politely extreme/extremely absolute/absolutely

If an adjective ends in -le (simple, terrible etc.), the adverb ending is -ply, -bly etc.:

simple/simply terrible/terribly reasonable/reasonably

6.6

Doubling consonants (stop/stopping/stopped, wet/wetter/wettest etc.)

Sometimes a word ends in vowel + consonant. For example:

stop plan rub big wet thin prefer regret

Before the endings -ing/-ed/-er/-est, we double the consonant at the end. So p → pp, n → nn etc.

For example:

stop	p → pp	stopping	stopped
plan	n → nn	planning	planned
rub	b → bb	rubbing	rubbred
big	g → gg	bigger	biggest
wet	t → tt	wetter	wettest
thin	n → nn	thinner	thinnest

If the word has more than one syllable (**prefer, begin** etc.), we double the consonant at the end *only if the final syllable is stressed*:

preFER / preferring / preferred	perMIT / permitting / permitted
reGRET / regretting / regretted	beGIN / beginning

If the final syllable is not stressed, we do *not* double the final consonant:

VISIt / visiting / visited	deVELop / developing / developed
HAPpen / happening / happened	reMEMber / remembering / remembered

In British English, verbs ending in -l have -ll- before -ing and -ed whether the final syllable is stressed or not:

travel / travelling / travelled	cancel / cancelling / cancelled
---------------------------------	---------------------------------

For American spelling, see Appendix 7.

Note that

we do *not* double the final consonant if the word ends in two consonants (-rt, -lp, -ng etc.):

start / starting / started	help / helping / helped	long / longer / longest
----------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

we do *not* double the final consonant if there are two vowel letters before it (-oil, -eed etc.):

boil / boiling / boiled	need / needing / needed	explain / explaining / explained
cheap / cheaper / cheapest	loud / louder / loudest	quiet / quieter / quietest

we do *not* double y or w at the end of words. (At the end of words y and w are not consonants.)

stay / staying / stayed	grow / growing	new / newer / newest
-------------------------	----------------	----------------------

Appendix 7

American English

There are a few grammatical differences between British English and American English:

Unit	BRITISH	AMERICAN
7A–B and 13A	<p>The <i>present perfect</i> is often used for new or recent happenings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> I've lost my key. Have you seen it? <input type="checkbox"/> Sally isn't here. She's gone out. <p>The <i>present perfect</i> is used with just and already:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> I'm not hungry. I've just had lunch. <input type="checkbox"/> A: What time is Mark leaving? B: He's already left. 	<p>The <i>past simple</i> is more common for new or recent happenings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> I lost my key. Did you see it? <input type="checkbox"/> Sally isn't here. She went out. <p>The <i>past simple</i> is more common with just and already:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> I'm not hungry. I just had lunch. <input type="checkbox"/> A: What time is Mark leaving? B: He already left.
17C	have a bath, have a shower have a break, have a holiday	take a bath, take a shower take a break, take a vacation
21D and 22D	<p>Will or shall can be used with I/we:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> I will/shall be late this evening. <p>Shall I ... ? and shall we ... ? are used to ask for advice etc. :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Which way shall we go? 	<p>Shall is unusual:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> I will be late this evening. <p>Should I ... ? and should we ... ? are used to ask for advice etc. :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Which way should we go?
28	British speakers use can't to say they believe something is not probable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> Sarah hasn't contacted me. She can't have got my message.	American speakers use must not in this situation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> Sarah hasn't contacted me. She must not have gotten my message.
32	You can use needn't or don't need to : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> We needn't hurry. or We don't need to hurry.	Needn't is unusual. The usual form is don't need to : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> We don't need to hurry.
34A–B	insist, demand etc. + should <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> I insisted that he should apologise.<input type="checkbox"/> We demanded that something should be done about the problem.	insist, demand etc. + subjunctive (see Unit 34B) <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> I insisted that he apologize.*<input type="checkbox"/> We demanded that something be done about the problem.
51B	Have you? / Isn't she? etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> A: Lisa isn't very well today.B: Isn't she? What's wrong with her?	You have? / She isn't? etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> A: Lisa isn't very well today.B: She isn't? What's wrong with her?
59D	I'd rather you did something <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> Are you going to tell Anna, or would you rather I told her?	I'd rather you do something <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> Are you going to tell Anna, or would you rather I tell her?
70B	Accommodation is usually uncountable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> There is plenty of excellent accommodation in the city.	Accommodation can be countable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> There are plenty of excellent accommodations in the city.
74B	to/in hospital (without the) <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> Joe had an accident and was taken to hospital.	to/in the hospital <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> Joe had an accident and was taken to the hospital.

* Many verbs ending in **-ise** in British English (**apologise**/**organise**/**specialise** etc.) are spelt with **-ize** (**apologize**/**organize**/**specialize** etc.) in American English.

Unit	BRITISH	AMERICAN
79C	Nouns like government/team/family etc. can have a singular or plural verb: <input type="checkbox"/> The team is/are playing well.	These nouns normally take a singular verb in American English: <input type="checkbox"/> The team is playing well.
121B	at the weekend / at weekends <input type="checkbox"/> Will you be here at the weekend?	on the weekend / on weekends <input type="checkbox"/> Will you be here on the weekend?
124D	at the front / at the back (of a group etc.) <input type="checkbox"/> (<i>in a theatre</i>) Let's sit at the front .	in the front / in the back (of a group etc.) <input type="checkbox"/> (<i>in a theater</i>) Let's sit in the front .
131C	different from or different to <input type="checkbox"/> The film was different from/to what I'd expected.	different from or different than <input type="checkbox"/> The movie was different from/than what I'd expected.
137A	round or around <input type="checkbox"/> He turned round . or He turned around .	around (<i>not usually</i> round) <input type="checkbox"/> He turned around .
137C	fill in or fill out (a form etc.) <input type="checkbox"/> Please fill in this form. or Please fill out this form.	fill out (a form) <input type="checkbox"/> Please fill out this form.
141B	get on (with somebody) <input type="checkbox"/> Richard gets on well with his neighbours.	get along (with somebody) <input type="checkbox"/> Richard gets along well with his neighbors.
142B	knock down (a building) <input type="checkbox"/> Some old houses were knocked down to make way for a new shopping centre.	tear down a building <input type="checkbox"/> Some old houses were torn down to make way for a new shopping mall.
144D	do up a house etc. <input type="checkbox"/> That old house looks great now that it has been done up .	fix up a house etc. <input type="checkbox"/> That old house looks great now that it has been fixed up .

Appendix	BRITISH	AMERICAN
1.3	Burn, spell etc. can be regular or irregular (burned or burnt, spelled or spelt etc.). The past participle of get is got : <input type="checkbox"/> Your English has got much better. (= has become much better) Have got is also an alternative to have : <input type="checkbox"/> I've got a car. (= I have a car)	Burn, spell etc. are normally regular (burned, spelled etc.). The past participle of get is gotten : <input type="checkbox"/> Your English has gotten much better. Have got = have (as in British English): <input type="checkbox"/> I've got a car.
6.6	British spelling: travel → travelling / travelled cancel → cancelling / cancelled	American spelling: travel → traveling / traveled cancel → canceled / cancelled

Additional exercises

These exercises are divided into the following sections:

Present and past (Units 1–6)	Exercise 1
Present and past (Units 1–14)	Exercises 2–4
Present and past (Units 1–17)	Exercises 5–8
Past continuous and used to (Units 6, 18)	Exercise 9
The future (Units 19–25)	Exercises 10–13
Past, present and future (Units 1–25)	Exercises 14–15
Modal verbs (can/must/would etc.) (Units 26–36)	Exercises 16–18
if (conditional) (Units 25, 38–40)	Exercises 19–21
Passive (Units 42–45)	Exercises 22–24
Reported speech (Units 47–48, 50)	Exercise 25
-ing and to ... (Units 53–66)	Exercises 26–28
a/an and the (Units 69–78)	Exercise 29
Pronouns and determiners (Units 82–91)	Exercise 30
Adjectives and adverbs (Units 98–108)	Exercise 31
Conjunctions (Units 25, 38, 112–118)	Exercise 32
Prepositions (time) (Units 12, 119–122)	Exercise 33
Prepositions (position etc.) (Units 123–128)	Exercise 34
Noun/adjective + preposition (Units 129–131)	Exercise 35
Verb + preposition (Units 132–136)	Exercise 36
Phrasal verbs (Units 137–145)	Exercises 37–41

Present and past

Units 1–6, Appendix 2

1 Put the verb into the correct form: present simple (**I do**), present continuous (**I am doing**), past simple (**I did**) or past continuous (**I was doing**).

- 1 We can go out now. **It isn't raining**.... (it / not / rain) any more.
- 2 Katherine **was waiting**.... (wait) for me when **I arrived**.... (I / arrive).
- 3 (I / get) hungry. Let's go and have something to eat.
- 4 What (you / do) in your spare time? Do you have any hobbies?
- 5 The weather was horrible when (we / arrive). It was cold and (it / rain) hard.
- 6 Louise usually (phone) me on Fridays, but (she / not / phone) last Friday.
- 7 A: When I last saw you, (you / think) of moving to a new flat.
B: That's right, but in the end (I / decide) to stay where I was.
- 8 Why (you / look) at me like that? What's the matter?
- 9 It's usually dry here at this time of the year. (it / not / rain) much.
- 10 I waved to Ben, but he didn't see me. (he / not / look) in my direction.
- 11 Lisa was busy when (we / go) to see her yesterday. She had an exam today and (she / prepare) for it.
..... (we / not / want) to disturb her, so (we / not / stay) very long.
- 12 When I first (tell) Tom what happened, (he / not / believe) me. (he / think) that (I / joke).

Present and past

Units 1–14, Appendix 2

2 Which is correct?

- 1 Everything is going well. We didn't have / haven't had any problems so far.
(haven't had is correct)
- 2 Lisa didn't go / hasn't gone to work yesterday. She wasn't feeling well.
- 3 Look! That man over there wears / is wearing the same sweater as you.
- 4 I went / have been to New Zealand last year.
- 5 I didn't hear / haven't heard from Jess recently. I hope she's OK.
- 6 I wonder why James is / is being so nice to me today. He isn't usually like that.
- 7 Jane had a book open in front of her, but she didn't read / wasn't reading it.
- 8 I wasn't very busy. I didn't have / wasn't having much to do.
- 9 It begins / It's beginning to get dark. Shall I turn on the light?
- 10 After leaving school, Mark worked / has worked in a hotel for a while.
- 11 When Sue heard the news, she wasn't / hasn't been very pleased.
- 12 This is a nice hotel, isn't it? Is this the first time you stay / you've stayed here?
- 13 I need a new job. I'm doing / I've been doing the same job for too long.
- 14 'Anna has gone out.' 'Oh, has she? What time did she go / has she gone?'
- 15 'You look tired.' 'Yes, I've played / I've been playing basketball.'
- 16 Where are you coming / do you come from? Are you American?
- 17 I'd like to see Tina again. It's a long time since I saw her / that I didn't see her.
- 18 Robert and Maria have been married since 20 years / for 20 years.

3 Complete each question using a suitable verb.

- 1 A: I'm looking for Paul. Have you seen him?
B: Yes, he was here a moment ago.
- 2 A: Why did you go to bed so early last night?
B: I was feeling very tired.
- 3 A: Where ?
B: Just to the shop at the end of the street. I'll only be ten minutes.
- 4 A: TV every day?
B: No, only if there's something special on.
- 5 A: Your house is lovely. How long here?
B: Nearly ten years.
- 6 A: How was your parents' holiday? a nice time?
B: Yes, they really enjoyed it.
- 7 A: Sarah recently?
B: Yes, we had lunch together a few days ago.
- 8 A: Can you describe the woman you saw? What?
B: A red sweater and black jeans.
- 9 A: I'm sorry to keep you waiting. long?
B: No, only about ten minutes.
- 10 A: How long to get from here to the airport?
B: Usually about 45 minutes. It depends on the traffic.
- 11 A: this song before?
B: No, this is the first time. I like it.
- 12 A: to the United States?
B: No, never, but I went to Canada a few years ago.

Additional exercises

4 Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

- 1 A: What's Chicago like? Is it a good place to visit?
B: I've no idea.
I've never been there.
- 2 A: How well do you know Ben?
B: Very well. We since we were children.
- 3 A: Did you enjoy your holiday?
B: Yes, it was really good. It's the best holiday
- 4 A: Is David still here?
B: No, I'm afraid he isn't. about ten minutes ago.
- 5 A: I like your suit. I haven't seen it before.
B: It's new. It's the first time
- 6 A: How did you cut your knee?
B: I slipped and fell when tennis.
- 7 A: Do you ever go swimming?
B: Not these days. I haven't a long time.
- 8 A: How often do you go to the cinema?
B: Very rarely. It's nearly a year to the cinema.
- 9 A: I bought some new shoes. Do you like them?
B: Yes, they're very nice. Where them?

Present and past

Units 1–17, 110, Appendix 2

5 Put the verb into the correct form: past simple (**I did**), past continuous (**I was doing**), past perfect (**I had done**) or past perfect continuous (**I had been doing**).



Yesterday afternoon Sarah **went** (go) to the station to meet Paul. When she (get) there, Paul (already / wait) for her. His train (arrive) early.



When I got home, Ben (lie) on the sofa. The TV was on, but he (not / watch) it. He (fall) asleep and (snore) loudly. I (turn) the TV off and just then he (wake) up.

3



Last night I (just / go) to bed and (read) a book when suddenly I (hear) a noise. I (get) up to see what it was, but I (not / see) anything, so I (go) back to bed.

4



Lisa had to go to New York last week, but she almost (miss) the plane. She (stand) in the queue at the check-in desk when she suddenly (realise) that she (leave) her passport at home. Fortunately she lives near the airport, so she (have) time to take a taxi home to get it. She (get) back to the airport just in time for her flight.

5



I (meet) Peter and Lucy yesterday as I (walk) through the park. They (be) to the Sports Centre where they (play) tennis. They (go) to a cafe and (invite) me to join them, but I (arrange) to meet another friend and (not / have) time.

6

Make sentences from the words in brackets. Put the verb into the correct form: present perfect (I have done**), present perfect continuous (**I have been doing**), past perfect (**I had done**) or past perfect continuous (**I had been doing**).**

1 Amanda is sitting on the ground. She's out of breath.
(she / run) **She has been running.**

2 Where's my bag? I left it under this chair.
(somebody / take / it)

3 We were all surprised when Jess and Nick got married last year.
(they / only / know / each other / a few weeks)

4 It's still raining. I wish it would stop.
(it / rain / all day)

5 Suddenly I woke up. I was confused and didn't know where I was.
(I / dream)

Additional exercises

- 6 It was lunchtime, but I wasn't hungry. I didn't want to eat anything.
(I / have / a big breakfast)
- 7 Every year Robert and Tina spend a few days at the same hotel by the sea.
(they / go / there for years)
- 8 I've got a headache.
(I / have / it / since I got up)
- 9 Next month Gary is going to run in a marathon.
(he / train / very hard for it)

7

Put the verb into the correct form.

Sarah and Joe are old friends. They meet by chance at a train station.



- SARAH: Hello, Joe. (1) (I / not / see) you for ages. How are you?
- JOE: I'm fine. How about you?
(2) (you / look) good.
- SARAH: Thanks. You too.
So, (3) (you / go) somewhere or
(4) (you / meet) somebody?
- JOE: (5) (I / go) to London for a business meeting.
- SARAH: Oh. (6) (you / often / go) away on business?
- JOE: Quite often, yes. And you? Where (7) (you / go)?
- SARAH: Nowhere. (8) (I / meet) a friend. Unfortunately her train (9) (be) delayed –
(10) (I / wait) here for nearly an hour.
- JOE: How are your children?
- SARAH: They're all fine, thanks. The youngest (11) (just / start) school.
- JOE: How (12) (she / get) on?
(13) (she / like) it?
- SARAH: Yes, (14) (she / think) it's great.
- JOE: (15) (you / work) at the moment? The last time I (16) (speak) to you, (17) (you / work) for an insurance company.
- SARAH: That's right. Unfortunately the company (18) (go) out of business a couple of months after (19) (I / start) work there, so (20) (I / lose) my job.
- JOE: And (21) (you / not / have) a job since then?
- SARAH: Not a permanent job. (22) (I / have) a few temporary jobs. By the way, (23) (you / see) Matt recently?
- JOE: Matt? He's in Canada.
- SARAH: Really? How long (24) (he / be) in Canada?
- JOE: About a year now. (25) (I / see) him a few days before (26) (he / go). (27) (he / be) unemployed for months, so (28) (he / decide) to try his luck somewhere else. (29) (he / really / look forward) to going.
- SARAH: So, what (30) (he / do) there?
- JOE: I have no idea. (31) (I / not / hear) from him since (32) (he / leave). Anyway, I have to go and catch my train. It was really good to see you again.
- SARAH: You too. Bye! Have a good trip!
- JOE: Thanks. Bye.

8 Put the verb into the most suitable form.

- 1 Who (invent) the bicycle?
- 2 'Do you still have a headache?' 'No, (it / go). I'm OK now.'
- 3 I was the last to leave the office last night. Everybody else (go) home when I (leave).
- 4 What (you / do) last weekend? (you / go) anywhere?
- 5 I like your car. How long (you / have) it?
- 6 It's a shame the trip was cancelled. I (look) forward to it.
- 7 Jane is an experienced teacher and loves her job. (she / teach) for 15 years.
- 8 Emily (buy) a new dress last week, but (she / not / wear) it yet.
- 9 A few days ago (I / meet) a man at a party whose face (be) very familiar. At first I couldn't think where (I / see) him before. Then suddenly (I / remember) who (he / be).
- 10 (you / hear) of Agatha Christie? (she / be) a writer who (die) in 1976. (she / write) more than 70 detective novels, but (I / not / read) any of them.
- 11 A: What (this word / mean)?
B: I've no idea. (I / never / see) it before. Look it up in the dictionary.
- 12 A: (you / get) to the theatre in time for the play last night?
B: No, we were late. By the time we got there, (it / already / start).
- 13 I went to Sarah's room and (knock) on the door, but there (be) no answer. Either (she / go) out or (she / not / want) to see anyone.
- 14 Dan asked me how to use the photocopier. (he / never / use) it before, so (he / not / know) what to do.
- 15 Lisa (go) for a swim after work yesterday. (she / sit) in an office all day in front of a computer.

Past continuous and used to

Units 6, 18

9 Complete the sentences using the past continuous (was/were -ing**) or **used to ...**. Use the verb in brackets.**

- 1 I haven't been to the cinema for ages now. We **used to go** a lot. (go)
- 2 Ann didn't see me wave to her. She **was looking** in the other direction. (look)
- 3 I a lot, but I don't use my car very much these days. (drive)
- 4 I asked the taxi driver to slow down. She too fast. (drive)
- 5 Rosemary and Jonathan met for the first time when they in the same bank. (work)
- 6 When I was a child, I a lot of bad dreams. (have)
- 7 I wonder what Joe is doing these days. He in Spain when I last heard from him. (live)
- 8 'Where were you yesterday afternoon?' 'I volleyball.' (play)
- 9 'Do you do any sports?' 'Not these days, but I volleyball.' (play)
- 10 George looked very smart at the party. He a very nice suit. (wear)

10 What do you say to Joe in these situations? Use the words given in brackets. Use the present continuous (**I am doing**), going to or will (**I'll**).

1 You have made all your holiday arrangements. Your destination is Jamaica.

JOE: Have you decided where to go for your holiday yet?

YOU: I'm going to Jamaica. (I / go)

2 You have made an appointment with the dentist for Friday morning.

JOE: Shall we meet on Friday morning?

YOU: I can't on Friday. (I / go)

3 You and some friends are planning a holiday in Spain. You have decided to rent a car, but you haven't arranged this yet.

JOE: How do you plan to travel round Spain? By train?

YOU: No, (we / rent)

4 Joe reminds you that you have to call your sister. You completely forgot.

JOE: Did you call your sister?

YOU: No, I forgot. Thanks for reminding me. (I / call / now)

5 You have already arranged to have lunch with Sue tomorrow.

JOE: Are you free at lunchtime tomorrow?

YOU: No, (have lunch)

6 You are in a restaurant. You and Joe are looking at the menu. Maybe Joe has decided what to have. You ask him.

YOU: What ? (you / have)

JOE: I don't know. I can't make up my mind.

7 Joe is reading, but it's getting dark. He's having trouble reading. You turn on the light.

JOE: It's getting dark and it's hard to read.

YOU: Yes, (I / turn on)

8 You and Joe are sitting in a room with the window open. It's getting cold. You decide to close the window. You stand up and walk towards it.

JOE: What are you doing?

YOU: (I / close)

11 Choose the best alternative.

1 'Are you doing anything tomorrow evening?' 'No, why?'

A Do you do **B** Are you doing **C** Will you do (**B** is the best alternative)

2 'I can't open this bottle.' 'Give it to me. it.'

A I open **B** I'll open **C** I'm going to open

3 'Is Emily here yet?' 'Not yet. I'll let you know as soon as'

A she arrives **B** she's arriving **C** she'll arrive

4 'Are you free tomorrow afternoon?' 'No,'

A I work **B** I'm working **C** I'll work

5 'What time is the film tonight?' '.... at 8.40.'

A It starts **B** It's going to start **C** It will start

6 'Are you going to the beach tomorrow?' 'Yes, if the weather good.'

A is going to be **B** will be **C** is

7 'What time tomorrow?' 'How about 8.30?'

A do we meet **B** are we meeting **C** shall we meet

8 'When ?' 'Tomorrow.'

A does the festival finish **B** is the festival finished **C** is the festival finishing

12 Put the verb into the most suitable form. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

1 A has decided to learn a language.

A: I've decided to try and learn a foreign language.

B: Have you? Which language (1) ... *are you going to learn* ... (you / learn)?

A: Spanish.

B: (2) (you / do) a course?

A: Yes, (3) (it / start) next week.

B: That's great. I'm sure (4) (you / enjoy) it.

A: I hope so. But I think (5) (it / be) difficult.

2 A wants to know about B's holiday plans.

A: I hear (1) (you / go) on holiday soon.

B: That's right. (2) (we / go) to Finland.

A: I hope (3) (you / have) a nice time.

B: Thanks. (4) (I / get) in touch with you when

(5) (I / get) back and maybe we can meet sometime.

3 A invites B to a party.

A: (1) (I / have) a party next Saturday. Can you come?

B: On Saturday? I'm not sure. Some friends of mine (2) (come) to

stay with me next week, but I think (3) (they / leave) by

Saturday. But if (4) (they / be) still here,

(5) (I / not / be) able to come to the party.

A: OK. Well, tell me as soon as (6) (you / know).

B: Right. (7) (I / call) you during the week.

4 A and B are two secret agents arranging a meeting. They are talking on the phone.

A: Well, what time (1)

(we / meet)?

B: Come to the cafe by the station at 4 o'clock.

(2) (I / wait) for you

when (3) (you / arrive).

(4) (I / sit) by the window

and (5) (I / wear) a bright green sweater.

A: OK. (6) (Agent 307 / come) too?

B: No, she can't be there.

A: Oh. (7) (I / bring) the documents?

B: Yes. (8) (I / explain) everything when

(9) (I / see) you. And don't be late.

A: OK. (10) (I / try) to be on time.



Additional exercises

13 Put the verb into the correct form. Choose from the following:

present continuous (**I am doing**)

will ('ll) / **won't**

present simple (**I do**)

will be doing

going to (**I'm going to do**)

shall

- 1 I feel a bit hungry. I think (I / have) something to eat.
- 2 Why are you putting on your coat? (you / go) somewhere?
- 3 What time (I / phone) you tomorrow? About 10.30?
- 4 Look! That plane is flying towards the airport. (it / land).
- 5 We must do something soon, before (it / be) too late.
- 6 I'm sorry you've decided to leave the company. (I / miss) you when (you / go).
- 7 (I / give) you my phone number? If (I / give) you my number, (you / call) me?
- 8 Are you still watching that programme? What time (it / finish)?
- 9 (I / go) to a wedding next weekend. My cousin (get) married.
- 10 I'm not ready yet. (I / tell) you when (I / be) ready. I promise (I / not / be) very long.
- 11 (I / have) my hair cut tomorrow. I've just made an appointment.
- 12 She was very rude to me. I won't speak to her again until (she / apologise).
- 13 I wonder where (we / live) ten years from now.
- 14 What are you planning to do when (you / finish) your course at college?

Past, present and future

Units 1–25

14 Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

- 1 A: How did the accident happen?
B: I **was going** too fast and couldn't stop in time.
- 2 A: Is that a new coat?
B: No, I it a long time.
- 3 A: Is that a new phone?
B: Yes, I it a few weeks ago.
- 4 A: I can't talk to you right now. You can see I'm very busy.
B: OK. I back in about half an hour.
- 5 A: This is a nice restaurant. Do you come here often?
B: No, it's the first time I here.
- 6 A: Do you do any sport?
B: No, I football, but I gave it up.
- 7 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: That's OK. I long.
- 8 A: When you went to the US last year, was it your first visit?
B: No, I there twice before.
- 9 A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?
B: Yes, I to a party on Saturday night.
- 10 A: Do you know what Steve's doing these days?
B: No, I him for ages.
- 11 A: Will you still be here by the time I get back?
B: No, I by then.

- 15** Robert is travelling in North America. He sends an email to a friend in Winnipeg (Canada). Put the verb into the most suitable form.



◀ ▶ ⟳ ✖ ↑ 🌐 🔍

Hi

(1) ... I've just arrived (I / just / arrive) in Minneapolis. (2)
 (I / travel) for more than a month now, and (3) (I / begin) to
 think about coming home. Everything (4) (I / see) so far
 (5) (be) really interesting, and (6) (I / meet)
 some really kind people.

(7) (I / leave) Kansas City a week ago. (8)
 (I / stay) there with Emily, the aunt of a friend from college. She was really helpful and
 hospitable and although (9) (I / plan) to stay only a couple of
 days, (10) (I / end up) staying more than a week.
 (11) (I / enjoy) the journey from Kansas City to here.
 (12) (I / take) the Greyhound bus and (13) (meet)
 some really interesting people – everybody was really friendly.

So now I'm here, and (14) (I / stay) here for a few days before
 (15) (I / continue) up to Canada. I'm not sure exactly when
 (16) (I / get) to Winnipeg – it depends what happens while
 (17) (I / be) here. But (18) (I / let) you
 know as soon as (19) (I / know) myself.

(20) (I / stay) with a family here – they're friends of some
 people I know at home. Tomorrow (21) (we / visit) some people
 they know who (22) (build) a house by a lake. It isn't
 finished yet, but (23) (it / be) interesting to see what it's like.
 Anyway, that's all for now. (24) (I / be) in touch again soon.

Robert

Modal verbs (*can/must/would* etc.)

Units 26–36, Appendix 4

- 16** Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two of the alternatives are possible.

- 1 'What time will you be home tonight?' 'I'm not sure. I ... **A or B** ... late.'
A may be **B** might be **C** can be (*both A and B are correct*)
- 2 I can't find the theatre tickets. They out of my pocket.
A must have fallen **B** should have fallen **C** had to fall
- 3 Somebody ran in front of the car as I was driving. Luckily, I just in time.
A could stop **B** could have stopped **C** managed to stop

Additional exercises

- 4 We have plenty of time. We yet.
A mustn't go **B** don't have to go **C** don't need to go
- 5 I didn't go out yesterday. I with my friends, but I didn't feel like it.
A could go **B** could have gone **C** must have gone
- 6 I looked everywhere for Helen, but I her.
A couldn't find **B** couldn't have found **C** wasn't able to find
- 7 'What do you think of my theory?' 'You right, but I'm not sure.'
A could be **B** must be **C** might be
- 8 Our flight was delayed. We for two hours.
A must wait **B** must have waited **C** had to wait
- 9 I'm not sure whether I'll be free on Saturday. I
A must have to work **B** may have to work **C** might have to work
- 10 At first they didn't believe me when I told them what had happened, but in the end I them that I was telling the truth.
A was able to convince **B** managed to convince **C** could convince
- 11 I promised I'd call Amy this evening. I
A mustn't forget **B** needn't forget **C** don't have to forget
- 12 Why did you leave without me? You for me.
A must have waited **B** had to wait **C** should have waited
- 13 Lisa called me this morning. She suggested lunch together.
A we have **B** we should have **C** to have
- 14 That jacket looks good on you. it more often.
A You'd better wear **B** You should wear **C** You ought to wear
- 15 Do you think I should buy a car? What in my position?
A will you do **B** would you do **C** should you do

17

Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 Don't phone them now. (might / have)
They lunch.
- 2 I ate too much and now I feel sick. (shouldn't / eat)
I so much.
- 3 I wonder why Tom didn't call me. (must / forget)
He
- 4 Why did you go home so early? (needn't / go)
You home so early.
- 5 You've signed the contract. (can't / change)
It now.
- 6 I'm not sure where the children are. (may / watch)
They TV.
- 7 I saw Laura standing outside the cinema. (must / wait)
She for somebody.
- 8 He was in prison at the time that the crime was committed. (couldn't / do)
He it.
- 9 Why are you so late? (should / be)
You here an hour ago.
- 10 Why didn't you contact me? (could / phone)
You me.
- 11 I'm surprised you weren't told that the road was dangerous. (should / warn)
You about it.
- 12 We had a great day at the beach yesterday. (ought / come)
You with us.

18 Complete B's sentences using can/could/might/must/should/would + the verb in brackets.

In some sentences you need to use have: must have ... / should have ... etc. In some sentences you need the negative (can't/couldn't etc.).

- 1 A: I'm hungry.
B: But you've just had lunch. You hungry already. (be)
- 2 A: I haven't seen our neighbours for ages.
B: No. They away. (go)
- 3 A: What's the weather like? Is it raining?
B: Not at the moment, but it later. (rain)
- 4 A: Where's Julia?
B: I'm not sure. She out. (go)
- 5 A: I didn't see you at Michael's party last week.
B: No, I had to work that night, so I (go)
- 6 A: I think I saw Ben in town this morning.
B: No, you him this morning. He's away on holiday. (see)
- 7 A: What time will we get to Sue's house?
B: Well, it takes about one and a half hours, so if we leave at 3 o'clock, we there by 4.30. (get)
- 8 A: When was the last time you saw Max?
B: Years ago. I him if I saw him now. (recognise)
- 9 A: Did you hear the explosion?
B: What explosion?
A: There was a loud explosion about an hour ago. You it. (hear)
- 10 A: We weren't sure which way to go. In the end we turned right.
B: You went the wrong way. You left. (turn)

if (conditional)**Units 25, 38–40****19 Put the verb into the correct form.**

- 1 If a wallet in the street, what would you do with it? (you / find)
- 2 I'd better hurry. My friend will be annoyed if on time. (I / not / be)
- 3 I didn't realise that Gary was in hospital. If he was in hospital, I would have gone to visit him. (I / know)
- 4 If the doorbell, don't answer it. (ring)
- 5 I can't decide what to do. What would you do if me? (you / be)
- 6 A: What shall we do tomorrow?
B: Well, if a nice day, we can go to the beach. (it / be)
- 7 A: Let's go to the beach.
B: No, it's not warm enough. If warmer, I'd go. (it / be)
- 8 A: Did you go to the beach yesterday?
B: No, it was too cold. If warmer, we might have gone. (it / be)
- 9 If enough money to go anywhere in the world, where would you go? (you / have)
- 10 I didn't have my phone with me, so I couldn't call you. I would have called you if my phone. (I / have)
- 11 The accident was your fault. If you'd been driving more carefully, (it / not / happen).
- 12 A: Why do you watch the news every day?
B: Well, if it, I wouldn't know what was happening in the world. (I / not / watch)

Additional exercises

20 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Lisa is tired all the time. She shouldn't go to bed so late.
If Lisa **didn't go** to bed so late, she **wouldn't be** tired all the time.
- 2 It's getting late. I don't think Sarah will call me now.
I'd be surprised if Sarah now.
- 3 I'm sorry I disturbed you. I didn't know you were busy.
If **you were busy**, I you.
- 4 There are a lot of accidents on this road. There is no speed limit.
There so many accidents if a speed limit.
- 5 You didn't tell me about the problem, so I didn't try to help you.
If **the problem**, you.
- 6 It started to rain, but fortunately I had an umbrella.
I very wet if an umbrella.
- 7 Mark failed his driving test. He was very nervous and that's why he failed.
If he **so nervous**, he the test.

21 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'd go out tonight if
- 2 I'd have gone out last night if
- 3 If you hadn't reminded me,
- 4 If I had more free time,
- 5 If you give me the camera,
- 6 Who would you phone if ?
- 7 We wouldn't have been late if
- 8 If I'd been able to get a ticket,
- 9 If I'd done better at the interview,
- 10 You wouldn't be hungry now if
- 11 Cities would be nicer places if
- 12 If there was no internet,

Passive

Units 42–45

22 Put the verb into the most suitable passive form.

- 1 There's somebody behind us. I think **we're being followed** (we / follow).
- 2 A mystery is something that **can't be explained** (can't / explain).
- 3 We didn't play football yesterday. The game (cancel).
- 4 The TV (repair). It's working again now.
- 5 The village church (restore) at the moment. The work is almost finished.
- 6 The tower is the oldest part of the church. (it / believe) to be over 600 years old.
- 7 If I didn't do my job properly, (I / would / fire).
- 8 A: I left a newspaper on the desk last night and it isn't there now.
B: (it / might / throw) away.
- 9 Joe learnt to swim when he was very young. (he / teach) by his mother.
- 10 After (arrest), I was taken to the police station.
- 11 ' (you / ever / arrest)?' 'No, never.'
- 12 Two people (report) to (injure) in an accident at a factory in Birmingham early this morning.

23 Put the verb into the correct form, active or passive.

- 1 This house is quite old. It ... was built (build) over 100 years ago.
- 2 My grandfather was a builder. He ... built (build) this house many years ago.
- 3 'Is your car still for sale?' 'No, I (sell) it.'
- 4 A: Is the house at the end of the street still for sale?
B: No, it (sell).
- 5 Sometimes mistakes (make). It's inevitable.
- 6 It's not a good idea to leave your car unlocked. It (might / steal).
- 7 My bag has disappeared. It (must / steal).
- 8 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody (must / take) it by mistake.
- 9 It's a serious problem. I don't know how it (can / solve).
- 10 We didn't leave early enough. We (should / leave) earlier.
- 11 Very often when I travel by plane, my flight (delay).
- 12 A new bridge (build) across the river. Work started last year and the bridge (expect) to open next year.

24 Read these newspaper reports and put the verbs into the most suitable form.

1

Castle Fire

Winton Castle (1) ... was damaged (damage) in a fire last night. The fire, which (2) (discover) at about 9 o'clock, spread very quickly. Nobody (3) (injure), but two people had to (4) (rescue) from an upstairs room. A number of paintings (5) (believe / destroy). It (6) (not / know) how the fire started.

3

Road Delays

Repair work started yesterday on the Paxham–Longworth road. The road (1) (resurface) and there will be long delays. Drivers (2) (ask) to use an alternative route if possible. The work (3) (expect) to last two weeks. Next Sunday the road (4) (close), and traffic (5) (divert).

2

Shop Robbery

In Paxham yesterday a shop assistant (1) (force) to hand over £500 after (2) (threaten) by a man with a knife. The man escaped in a car which (3) (steal) earlier in the day. The car (4) (later / find) in a car park where it (5) (abandon) by the thief. A man (6) (arrest) in connection with the robbery and (7) (still / question) by the police.

4

Accident

A woman (1) (take) to hospital after her car collided with a lorry near Norstock yesterday. She (2) (allow) home later after treatment. The road (3) (block) for an hour after the accident, and traffic had to (4) (divert). A police inspector said afterwards: 'The woman was lucky. She could (5) (kill).'

Reported speech

Units 47–48, 50

25 Complete the sentences using reported speech.

1



Can I speak to Paul, please?

I'll try again later.



Paul has gone out. I don't know when he'll be back.

Do you want to leave a message?

YOU

A woman phoned at lunchtime yesterday and asked if she could speak to Paul. I told
..... and
..... I asked
....., but she said later.
But she never did.

2

We have no record of a reservation in your name.



Do you have any rooms free anyway?

We're sorry, but the hotel is full.

I went to London recently, but my visit didn't begin well. I had reserved a hotel room, but when I got to the hotel they told When I asked they said , but There was nothing I could do. I just had to look for somewhere else to stay.

3

Why are you visiting the country?



We're on holiday.

How long do you intend to stay?

Where will you be staying during your visit?

After getting off the plane, we had to queue for an hour to get through immigration. Finally, it was our turn. The immigration officer asked us , and we told Then he wanted to know and He seemed satisfied with our answers, checked our passports and wished us a pleasant stay.

4

I'll phone you from the airport when I arrive.



Don't come to the airport. I'll take the bus.

A: What time is Sue arriving this afternoon?

B: About three. She said

A: Aren't you going to meet her?

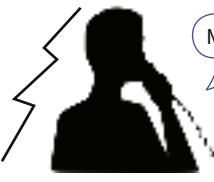
B: No, she said not that She said

5



What's your job?

How much do you earn?



Mind your own business!

A few days ago a man phoned from a marketing company and started asking me questions. He wanted to know and asked
..... I don't like people phoning and asking questions like that, so I told

6



NOW

LOUISE

SARAH

I'll be at the restaurant at 7.30.



PAUL

EARLIER

I know where the restaurant is.



Phone me if there's a problem.

SARAH

Sarah and Louise are in a restaurant waiting for Paul.

SARAH: I wonder where Paul is. He said

LOUISE: Maybe he got lost.

SARAH: I don't think so. He said

And I told

7

I'm not hungry.

I don't like bananas, so don't buy any.



JOE



JANE

Five minutes later

JOE: Is there anything to eat?

JANE: You just said

JOE: Well, I am now. I'd love a banana.

JANE: A banana? But you said

You told

-ing and to ...**Units 53–66****26 Put the verbs into the correct form.**

- 1 How old were you when you learnt to drive ? (drive)
- 2 I don't mind walking home, but I'd rather get a taxi. (walk, get)
- 3 I can't make a decision. I keep my mind. (change)
- 4 He had made his decision and refused his mind. (change)
- 5 Why did you change your decision? What made you your mind? (change)
- 6 It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed by the sea again. (be)

Additional exercises

- 7 Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don't remember that. (say)
- 8 'Remember Tom tomorrow.' 'OK. I won't forget.' (call)
- 9 The water here is not very good. I'd avoid it if I were you. (drink)
- 10 I pretended interested in the conversation, but really it was very boring. (be)
- 11 I got up and looked out of the window what the weather was like. (see)
- 12 I don't have far to go. It's not worth a taxi. (take)
- 13 I have a friend who claims able to speak five languages. (be)
- 14 I like carefully about things before a decision. (think, make)
- 15 I had a flat in the centre of town but I didn't like there, so I decided (live, move)
- 16 Steve used a footballer. He had to stop because of an injury. (be, play)
- 17 After by the police, the man admitted the car but denied at 100 miles an hour. (stop, steal, drive)
- 18 A: How do you make this machine ? (work)
B: I'm not sure. Try that button and see what happens. (press)

27 Make sentences from the words in brackets.

- 1 I can't find the tickets. (I / seem / lose / them)
I seem to have lost them.
- 2 I don't have far to go. (it / not / worth / take / a taxi)
It's not worth taking a taxi.
- 3 I'm feeling a bit tired. (I / not / fancy / go / out)
.....
- 4 James isn't very reliable. (he / tend / forget / things)
.....
- 5 I've got a lot of luggage. (you / mind / help / me?)
.....
- 6 There's nobody at home. (everybody / seem / go out)
.....
- 7 We don't like our apartment. (we / think / move)
.....
- 8 The vase was very valuable. (I / afraid / touch / it)
.....
- 9 I wanted to get to the station in plenty of time. (I / afraid / miss / my train)
.....
- 10 I don't recommend the movie. (it / not / worth / see)
.....
- 11 I'm very tired after that long walk. (I / not / used / walk / so far)
.....
- 12 Sue is on holiday. She called me yesterday and sounded happy. (she / seem / enjoy / herself)
.....
- 13 Dan took lots of pictures while he was on holiday. (he / insist / show / them to me)
.....
- 14 I don't want to do the shopping. (I'd rather / somebody else / do / it)
.....

28 Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first.

- 1 I was surprised I passed the exam.
I didn't expect to pass the exam
- 2 Did you manage to solve the problem?
Did you succeed in solving the problem ?
- 3 I don't read newspapers any more.
I've given up
- 4 I'd prefer not to go out tonight.
I'd rather
- 5 He finds it difficult to sleep at night.
He has trouble
- 6 Shall I phone you this evening?
Do you want ?
- 7 Nobody saw me come in.
I came in without
- 8 Some people said I was a cheat.
I was accused
- 9 It will be good to see them again.
I'm looking forward
- 10 What do you think I should do?
What do you advise me
- 11 It's a pity I couldn't go out with you last night.
I'd like
- 12 I wish I'd taken your advice.
I regret

a/an and the**Units 69–78****29 Put in a/an or the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.**

- 1 I don't usually like staying at hotels, but last summer we spent two weeks at a very nice hotel by the sea.
- 2 If you go to live in foreign country, you should try and learn language.
- 3 Helen is economist. She lives in United States and works for investment company.
- 4 I love sport, especially tennis. I play two or three times week if I can, but I'm not very good player.
- 5 I won't be home for dinner this evening. I'm meeting some friends after work and we're going to cinema.
- 6 When unemployment is high, it's difficult for people to find work. It's big problem.
- 7 There was accident as I was going home last night. Two people were taken to hospital. I think most accidents are caused by people driving too fast.
- 8 A: What's name of hotel where you're staying?
B: Ambassador. It's in Queen Street in city centre. It's near station.
- 9 I have two brothers. older one is training to be pilot. younger one is still at school. When he leaves school, he wants to go to university to study law.

Pronouns and determiners

Units 82–91

30 Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two alternatives are possible.

- 1 I don't remember A about the accident. (A is correct)
A anything B something C nothing
- 2 Chris and I have known for quite a long time.
A us B each other C ourselves
- 3 'How often do the buses run?' ' twenty minutes.'
A All B Each C Every
- 4 I shouted for help, but came.
A nobody B no-one C anybody
- 5 Last night we went out with some friends of
A us B our C ours
- 6 It didn't take us a long time to get here. traffic.
A It wasn't much B There wasn't much C It wasn't a lot
- 7 Can I have milk in my coffee, please?
A a little B any C some
- 8 Sometimes I find it difficult to
A concentrate B concentrate me C concentrate myself
- 9 There's on at the cinema that I want to see, so there's no point in going.
A something B anything C nothing
- 10 I drink water every day.
A much B a lot of C lots of
- 11 in the city centre are open on Sunday.
A Most of shops B Most of the shops C The most of the shops
- 12 There were about twenty people in the photo. I didn't recognise of them.
A any B none C either
- 13 I've been waiting for Sarah to phone.
A all morning B the whole morning C all the morning
- 14 I can't afford to buy anything in this shop. so expensive.
A All is B Everything is C All are

Adjectives and adverbs

Units 98–108

31 There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

- 1 The building was total destroyed in the fire. *totally destroyed*
.....
.....
- 2 I didn't like the book. It was such a stupid story.
.....
- 3 The city is very polluted. It's the more polluted place I've ever been to.
.....
- 4 I was disappointing that I didn't get the job. I was well-qualified and the interview went well.
.....
- 5 It's warm today, but there's quite a strong wind.
.....
- 6 Joe works hardly, but he doesn't get paid very much.
.....
- 7 The company's offices are in a modern large building.
.....

- 8 Dan is a very fast runner. I wish I could run as fast as him.
- 9 I missed the three last days of the course because I was ill.
- 10 You don't look happy. What's the matter?
- 11 The weather has been unusual cold for the time of the year.
- 12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in it.
- 13 I got impatient because we had to wait so long time.
- 14 Is this box big enough or do you need a bigger one?
- 15 This morning I got up more early than usual.

Conjunctions**Units 25, 38, 112–118****32 Which is correct?**

- 1 I'll try to be on time, but don't worry if / when I'm late. (if is correct)
- 2 Don't throw that bag away. If / When you don't want it, I'll have it.
- 3 Please report to reception if / when you arrive at the hotel.
- 4 We've arranged to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go if / when it's raining.
- 5 Tanya is in her final year at school. She still doesn't know what she's going to do if / when she leaves.
- 6 What would you do if / when you lost your keys?
- 7 I hope I'll be able to come to the party, but I'll let you know if / unless I can't.
- 8 I don't want to be disturbed, so don't phone me if / unless it's something important.
- 9 Please sign the contract if / unless you're happy with the conditions.
- 10 I like travelling by ship as long as / unless the sea is not rough.
- 11 You might not remember the name of the hotel, so write it down if / in case you forget it.
- 12 It's not cold now, but take your coat with you if / in case it gets cold later.
- 13 Take your coat with you and then you can put it on if / in case it gets cold later.
- 14 They always have the TV on, even if / if nobody is watching it.
- 15 Even / Although I left home early, I got to work late.
- 16 Despite / Although we've known each other a long time, we're not particularly close friends.
- 17 'When did you leave school?' 'As / When I was 17.'
- 18 I think Amy will be very pleased as / when she hears the news.

Prepositions (time)**Units 12, 119–122****33 Put in one of the following: at on in during for since by until**

- 1 Jack has gone away. He'll be back in a week.
- 2 We're having a party Saturday. Can you come?
- 3 I've got an interview next week. It's Tuesday morning 9.30.
- 4 Sue isn't usually here weekends. She goes away.
- 5 The train service is very good. The trains are nearly always time.
- 6 It was a confusing situation. Many things were happening the same time.
- 7 I couldn't decide whether or not to buy the sweater. the end I decided not to.
- 8 The road is busy all the time, even night.
- 9 I met a lot of nice people my stay in New York.
- 10 I saw Helen Friday, but I haven't seen her then.
- 11 Robert has been doing the same job five years.
- 12 Lisa's birthday is the end of March. I'm not sure exactly which day it is.
- 13 We have friends staying with us the moment. They're staying Friday.
- 14 If you're interested in applying for the job, your application must be received Friday.
- 15 I'm just going out. I won't be long – I'll be back ten minutes.

Prepositions (position and other uses)

Units 123–128

34 Put in the missing preposition.

- 1 I'd love to be able to visit every country the world.
- 2 Jessica White is my favourite author. Have you read anything her?
- 3 There's a small shop the end of this road.
- 4 Tom is away at the moment. He's holiday.
- 5 We live the country, a long way from the nearest town.
- 6 I've got a stain my jacket. I'll have to have it cleaned.
- 7 We went a party Lisa's house on Saturday.
- 8 Boston is the east coast of the United States.
- 9 Look at the leaves that tree. They're a beautiful colour.
- 10 I've never been Japan, but I'd like to go very much.
- 11 Mozart died Vienna in 1791 the age of 35.
- 12 'Are you this photo?' 'Yes, that's me, the left.'
- 13 We went the theatre last night. We had seats the front row.
- 14 If you want to turn the light on, the switch is the wall the door.
- 15 It was late when we arrived the hotel.
- 16 I couldn't decide what to eat. There was nothing the menu that I liked.
- 17 We live a tower block. Our apartment is the fifteenth floor.
- 18 Some parts of the film were a bit stupid, but the whole I enjoyed it.
- 19 'When you paid the restaurant bill, did you pay cash?' 'No, I paid credit card.'
- 20 'How did you get here? Did you come the bus?' 'No, car.'
- 21 I watched a really interesting programme TV last night.
- 22 Helen works for a large company. She works the customer services department.
- 23 Anna spent two years working London before returning Italy.
- 24 How was your trip the beach? Did you have a good day?
- 25 On our first day in Paris, we went a trip round the city.

Noun/adjective + preposition

Units 129–131

35 Put in the missing preposition.

- 1 The plan has been changed, but nobody seems to know the reason this.
- 2 Don't ask me to decide. I'm not very good making decisions.
- 3 Some people say that Sue is unfriendly, but she's always very nice me.
- 4 What do you think is the best solution the problem?
- 5 Recently there has been a big increase the number of tourists visiting the city.
- 6 He lives a rather lonely life. He doesn't have much contact other people.
- 7 Paul is a keen photographer. He likes taking pictures people.
- 8 Michael got married a woman he met when he was studying at college.
- 9 He's very brave. He's not scared anything.
- 10 I'm surprised the traffic today. I didn't think it would be so busy.
- 11 Thank you for lending me the guidebook. It was full useful information.
- 12 I'm afraid I've had to change my plans, so I can't meet you tomorrow. I'm sorry that.

Verb + preposition

Units 132–136

36 Complete each sentence with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 She works quite hard. You can't accuse her being lazy.
- 2 Who's going to look your children while you're at work?
- 3 The problem is becoming serious. We have to discuss it.
- 4 The problem is becoming serious. We have to do something it.
- 5 I prefer this chair the other one. It's more comfortable.
- 6 I need to call the office to tell them I won't be at work today.
- 7 The river divides the city two parts.
- 8 'What do you think your new boss?' 'She's all right, I suppose.'
- 9 Can somebody please explain me what I have to do?
- 10 I said hello to her, but she didn't answer me.
- 11 'Do you like staying at hotels?' 'It depends the hotel.'
- 12 'Have you ever been to Borla?' 'No, I've never heard it. Where is it?'
- 13 You remind me somebody I knew a long time ago. You look just like her.
- 14 This is wonderful news! I can't believe it.
- 15 George is not an idealist – he believes being practical.
- 16 What's funny? What are you laughing ?
- 17 What did you do with all the money you had? What did you spend it ?
- 18 If Alex asks you money, don't give him any.
- 19 I apologised Sarah keeping her waiting so long.
- 20 Lisa was very helpful. I thanked her everything she'd done.

Phrasal verbs

Units 137–145

37 A says something and B replies. Which goes with which?

A

- 1 I've made a mistake on this form.
- 2 I'm too warm with my coat on.
- 3 This jacket looks nice.
- 4 Your reference number is 318044BK.
- 5 This room is in a mess.
- 6 What's 45 euros in dollars?
- 7 How was the mistake discovered?
- 8 I'm not sure whether to accept their offer or not.
- 9 I need a place to stay when I'm in London.
- 10 It's a subject he doesn't like to talk about.
- 11 I don't know what this word means.

B

- a Don't worry. I'll clear it up.
- b That won't be a problem. I can fix it up.
- c Kate pointed it out.
- d That's OK. Cross it out and correct it.
- e Yes, why don't you try it on?
- f OK, I won't bring it up.
- g Just a minute. I'll write it down.
- h Why don't you take it off then?
- i You can look it up.
- j I think you should turn it down.
- k Give me a moment. I'll work it out.

- 1 d
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11

Additional exercises

38 Only one alternative is correct. Which is it?

- 1 Nobody believed Paul at first but he **B** to be right. (**B** is correct)
A came out **B** turned out **C** worked out **D** carried out
- 2 Here's some good news. It will
A turn you up **B** put you up **C** blow you up **D** cheer you up
- 3 The children were behaving badly, so I
A told them up **B** told them off **C** told them out **D** told them over
- 4 The club committee is of the president, the secretary and seven other members.
A set up **B** made up **C** set out **D** made out
- 5 Why did you decide not to apply for the job? What?
A put you off **B** put you out **C** turned you off **D** turned you away
- 6 I had no idea that he was lying to me. I was completely
A taken in **B** taken down **C** taken off **D** taken over
- 7 Helen started a course at college, but she after six months.
A went out **B** fell out **C** turned out **D** dropped out
- 8 You can't predict everything. Often things don't as you expect.
A make out **B** break out **C** turn out **D** get out
- 9 What's all this noise? What's?
A going off **B** getting off **C** going on **D** getting on
- 10 It's a very busy airport. There are planes or landing every few minutes.
A going up **B** taking off **C** getting up **D** driving off
- 11 The road was blocked by a bus that had
A broken down **B** dropped out **C** driven off **D** held up
- 12 How are you in your new job? Are you enjoying it?
A keeping on **B** going on **C** carrying on **D** getting on

39 Complete the sentences. Use two words each time.

- 1 Keep **away from** the edge of the pool. You might fall in.
- 2 I didn't notice that the two pictures were different until Amy pointed it me.
- 3 I asked Max if he had any suggestions about what we should do, but he didn't come anything.
- 4 I'm glad Sarah is coming to the party. I'm really looking seeing her again.
- 5 Things are changing all the time. It's difficult to keep all these changes.
- 6 I don't want to run food for the party. Are you sure we have enough?
- 7 We had a short break and then carried our work.
- 8 I've had enough of being treated like this. I'm not going to put it any more.
- 9 I didn't enjoy the trip very much at the time, but when I look it now, I realise it was a good experience and I'm glad I went on it.
- 10 The wedding was supposed to be a secret, so how did you find it?
Who told you?
- 11 There is a very nice atmosphere in the office where I work. Everybody gets everybody else.

40 Complete each sentence using a phrasal verb that has a similar meaning to the words in brackets.

- 1 The concert in the park had to be **called off** because of the weather. (cancelled)
- 2 The story Kate told wasn't true. She **made it up** (invented it)
- 3 Paul finally an hour late. (arrived)
- 4 Here's an application form. Can you and sign it, please? (complete it)
- 5 Some houses will have to be to make way for the new road. (demolished)
- 6 Be positive! You must never ! (stop trying)
- 7 I was very tired and in front of the TV. (fell asleep)
- 8 After eight years together, they've decided to (separate)
- 9 The noise is terrible. I can't any longer. (tolerate it)
- 10 We don't have a lot of money, but we have enough to (manage)
- 11 I'm sorry I'm late. The meeting longer than I expected. (continued)
- 12 We need to make a decision today at the latest. We can't any longer. (delay it)

41 Complete the sentences. Use one word each time.

- 1 You're driving too fast. Please **slow** down.
- 2 It was only a small fire and I managed to it out with a bucket of water.
- 3 The house is empty right now, but I think the new tenants are in next week.
- 4 I've on weight. My clothes don't fit any more.
- 5 Their house is really nice now. They've it up really well.
- 6 I was talking to the woman next to me on the plane, and it out that she works for the same company as my brother.
- 7 I don't know what happened yet, but I'm going to out.
- 8 There's no need to get angry. down!
- 9 If you're going on a long walk, plan your route carefully before you off.
- 10 Sarah has just phoned to say that she'll be late. She's been up.
- 11 You've written my name wrong. It's Martin, not Marin – you out the T.
- 12 Three days at £45 a day – that out at £135.
- 13 We had a really interesting discussion, but Jane didn't in. She just listened.
- 14 Jonathan is pretty fit. He out in the gym every day.
- 15 Come and see us more often. You can in any time you like.
- 16 We are still discussing the contract. There are still a couple of things to out.
- 17 My alarm clock off in the middle of the night and me up.

Study guide

This guide is to help you decide which units you need to study. The sentences in the guide are grouped together (*Present and past, Articles and nouns etc.*) in the same way as the units in the *Contents* (pages iii–vi).

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C etc.). There are between two and five alternatives each time. IN SOME SENTENCES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS POSSIBLE.

If you don't know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, then you probably need to study the unit(s) in the list on the right. You will also find the correct sentence in this unit. (If two or three units are listed, you will find the correct sentence in the first one.)

There is a key to this study guide on page 372.

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
Present and past	
1.1 At first I didn't like my job, but to enjoy it now. A I'm starting B I start	1, 3
1.2 I don't understand this sentence. What ? A does mean this word B does this word mean C means this word	2, 49
1.3 Robert away two or three times a year. A is going usually B is usually going C usually goes D goes usually	2, 3, 110
1.4 How now? Better than before? A you are feeling B do you feel C are you feeling	4
1.5 It was a boring weekend. anything. A I didn't B I don't do C I didn't do	5
1.6 Matt while we were having dinner. A phoned B was phoning C has phoned	6, 14
Present perfect and past	
2.1 James is on holiday. He to Italy. A is gone B has gone C has been	7
2.2 Everything is going well. There any problems so far. A weren't B have been C haven't been	8
2.3 Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this A has happened B happens C happened D is happening	8
2.4 Why are you out of breath? ? A Are you running B Have you run C Have you been running	9
2.5 Where's the book I gave you? What with it? A have you done B have you been doing C are you doing	10
2.6 'How long Jane?' 'A long time. Since we were at school.' A do you know B have you known C have you been knowing	11, 10
2.7 Sally has been working here A for six months B since six months C six months ago D six months	12

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT				STUDY UNIT
2.8	It's two years Joe.	A that I don't see B that I haven't seen C since I didn't see D since I last saw		12
2.9	It raining for a while, but now it's raining again.	A stopped B has stopped C was stopped		13
2.10	My mother in Italy.	A grew up B has grown up C had grown up		13
2.11 a lot of sweets when you were a child?	A Have you eaten B Had you eaten C Did you eat		14
2.12	Jack in New York for ten years. Now he lives in Los Angeles.	A lived B has lived C has been living		14, 11
2.13	The people sitting next to me on the plane were nervous. before.	A They haven't flown B They didn't fly C They hadn't flown D They'd never flown E They weren't flying		15
2.14	Katherine was lying on the sofa. She was tired because very hard.	A she was working B she's been working C she'd been working		16
2.15 a car when you were living in Paris?	A Had you B Were you having C Have you had D Did you have		17, 14
2.16	I tennis a lot, but I don't play very much now.	A was playing B was used to play C used to play		18
Future				
3.1	I'm tired. to bed now. Goodnight.	A I go B I'm going		19
3.2 tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.	A I'm not working B I don't work C I won't work		19, 21
3.3	That bag looks heavy. you with it.	A I'm helping B I help C I'll help		21
3.4	I think the weather nice later.	A will be B is C is going to be D shall be		23, 22
3.5	'Anna is in hospital.' 'Yes, I know. her this evening.'	A I visit B I'm going to visit C I'll visit		23, 20
3.6	We're late. The film by the time we get to the cinema.	A will already start B will be already started C will already have started		24
3.7	Don't worry late tonight.	A if I'm B when I'm C when I'll be D if I'll be		25

Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT			STUDY UNIT
Modals			
4.1	The fire spread quickly, but everybody from the building. A was able to escape B managed to escape C could escape		26
4.2	I'm so tired I for a week. A can sleep B could sleep C could have slept		27
4.3	The story be true, but I don't think it is. A might B can C could D may		27, 29
4.4	Why did you stay at a hotel? You with me. A can stay B could stay C could have stayed		27
4.5	I lost one of my gloves. I it somewhere. A must drop B must have dropped C must be dropping D must have been dropping		28
4.6	'Why wasn't Amy at the meeting yesterday?' 'She about it.' A might not know B may not know C might not have known D may not have known		29
4.7	What to get a new driving licence? A have I to do B do I have to do C I must do D I have to		31
4.8	We have plenty of time. We hurry. A don't need to B mustn't C needn't		32
4.9	You missed a great party last night. You Why didn't you? A must have come B should have come C ought to have come D had to come		33
4.10	Jane won the lottery. I suggested a car with the money she won. A that she buy B that she should buy C her to buy D that she bought		34
4.11	You're always at home. You out more often. A should go B had better go C had better to go		35
4.12	It's late. It's time home. A we go B we must go C we should go D we went E to go		35
4.13 a little longer, but I really have to go now. A I'd stay B I'll stay C I can stay D I'd have stayed		36
if and wish			
5.1	I'm not tired enough to go to bed. If I to bed now, I wouldn't sleep. A go B went C had gone D would go		38, 39
5.2	If I were rich, a lot. A I'll travel B I can travel C I would travel D I travelled		39
5.3	I wish I have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do. A don't B didn't C wouldn't D won't		39, 41

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
5.4	The view was wonderful. I would have taken some pictures if a camera with me. A I had B I would have C I would have had D I'd had	40
5.5	The weather is horrible. I wish it raining. A would stop B stopped C stops D will stop	41
Passive		
6.1	We by a loud noise during the night. A woke up B are woken up C were woken up D were waking up	42
6.2	A new supermarket is going to next year. A build B be built C be building D building	43
6.3	There's somebody walking behind us. I think A we are following B we are being following C we are followed D we are being followed	43
6.4	'Where?' 'In Chicago.' A were you born B are you born C have you been born D did you born	44
6.5	There was a fight, but nobody A was hurt B got hurt C hurt	44
6.6	Jane to phone me last night, but she didn't. A supposed B is supposed C was supposed	45
6.7	Where? Which hairdresser did you go to? A did you cut your hair B have you cut your hair C did you have cut your hair D did you have your hair cut	46
Reported speech		
7.1	Paul left the room suddenly. He said he to go. A had B has C have	48, 47
7.2	(You meet Joe in the street.) Joe, this is a surprise. Rachel said you in hospital. A are B were C was	48, 47
7.3	Anna and left. A said goodbye to me B said me goodbye C told me goodbye	48
Questions and auxiliary verbs		
8.1	'What time ?' 'At 8.30.' A starts the film B does start the film C does the film start	49
8.2	'Do you know where ?' 'No, he didn't say.' A Tom has gone B has Tom gone C has gone Tom	50
8.3	The police officer stopped us and asked us where A were we going B are we going C we are going D we were going	50

Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT				STUDY UNIT
8.4	'Do you think it will rain?' '.....'	A I hope not B I don't hope C I don't hope so		51
8.5	'You don't know where Karen is,?'	'Sorry, I have no idea.'	A don't you B do you C is she D are you	52
-ing and to ...				
9.1	You can't stop people what they want.	A doing B do C to do D from doing		53, 62
9.2	I'd better go now. I promised late.	A not being B not to be C to not be D I wouldn't be		54, 36
9.3	Do you want with you or do you want to go alone?	A me coming B me to come C that I come D that I will come		55
9.4	I know I locked the door. I clearly remember it.	A locking B to lock C to have locked		56
9.5	She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help	A laughing B to laugh C that she laughed D laugh		57
9.6	Paul lives in Berlin now. He likes there.	A living B to live		58
9.7	It's not my favourite job, but I like the kitchen as often as possible.	A cleaning B clean C to clean D that I clean		58
9.8	I'm tired. I'd rather out this evening, if you don't mind.	A not going B not to go C don't go D not go		59
9.9	I'd rather anyone what I said.	A you don't tell B not you tell C you didn't tell D you wouldn't tell		59
9.10	Are you looking forward on holiday?	A going B to go C to going D that you go		60, 62
9.11	When Lisa first came to Britain, she wasn't used on the left.	A driving B to driving C to drive D drive		61
9.12	I'm thinking a house. Do you think that's a good idea?	A to buy B of to buy C of buying D about buying		62, 66
9.13	I had no trouble a place to stay. In fact it was surprisingly easy.	A find B found C to find D finding		63
9.14	I called the restaurant a table.	A for reserve B to reserve C for reserving D for to reserve		64
9.15	James doesn't speak clearly.	A It is hard to understand him B He is hard to understand C He is hard to understand him		65

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
9.16	The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid A of falling B from falling C to fall D to falling	66
9.17	I didn't hear you in. You must have been very quiet. A come B to come C came	67
9.18 a hotel, we looked for somewhere to eat. A Finding B After finding C Having found D We found	68
Articles and nouns		
10.1	It wasn't your fault. It was A accident B an accident C some accident	69
10.2	Where are you going to put all your ? A furniture B furnitures	70
10.3	'Where are you going?' 'I'm going to buy' A a bread B some bread C a loaf of bread	70
10.4	Sandra is She works at a large hospital. A nurse B a nurse C the nurse	71, 72
10.5	Helen works six days week. A in B for C a D the	72
10.6	There are millions of stars in A space B a space C the space	73
10.7	Every day starts at 9 and finishes at 3. A school B a school C the school	74
10.8 changed a lot in the last thirty years. A Life has B The life has C The lives have	75
10.9	When invented? A was camera B were cameras C were the cameras D was the camera	76
10.10	Have you been to ? A Canada or United States B the Canada or the United States C Canada or the United States D the Canada or United States	77
10.11	On our first day in Moscow, we visited A Kremlin B a Kremlin C the Kremlin	78
10.12	I have some news for you. A It's good news B They are good news C It's a good news	79, 80
10.13	It took us quite a long time to get here. It was journey. A three hour B a three-hours C a three-hour	80
10.14	This isn't my book. It's A my sister B my sister's C from my sister D of my sister E of my sister's	81

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT			STUDY UNIT
Pronouns and determiners			
11.1	What time shall we tomorrow? A meet B meet us C meet ourselves		82
11.2	I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. is getting married. A A friend of me B A friend of mine C One my friends		83
11.3	They live on a busy road. a lot of noise from the traffic. A It must be B It must have C There must have D There must be		84
11.4	He's lazy. He never does work. A some B any C no		85
11.5	'What would you like to eat?' 'I don't mind. – whatever you have.' A Something B Anything C Nothing		85
11.6	The course didn't go well. of the students were happy. A All B No-one C None D Nobody		86
11.7	We went shopping and spent money. A a lot of B much C lots of D many		87
11.8	I was ill yesterday. I spent in bed. A the most of day B most of day C the most of the day D most of the day		88
11.9	I asked two people how to get to the station, but of them knew. A none B either C both D neither		89
11.10	Our holiday was a disaster. went wrong. A Everything B All C All things D All of things		90
11.11	The bus service is excellent. There's a bus ten minutes. A each B every C all		90, 91
11.12	There were four books on the table. a different colour. A Each of books was B Each of the books was C Each book was		91
Relative clauses			
12.1	I don't like stories have unhappy endings. A that B they C which D who		92
12.2	I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything was true. A they said B that they said C what they said		93
12.3	We helped some people A their car had broken down B which car had broken down C whose car had broken down D that their car had broken down		94
12.4	Anna told me about her new job, a lot. A that she's enjoying B which she's enjoying C she's enjoying D she's enjoying it		95
12.5	Sarah couldn't meet us, was a shame. A that B it C what D which		96
12.6	George showed me some pictures by his father. A painting B painted C that were painted D they were painted		97, 92

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
Adjectives and adverbs		
13.1 Jane doesn't enjoy her job any more. She's because every day she does exactly the same thing. A boring B bored	because every day she does exactly the same thing. A boring B bored	98
13.2 Lisa was carrying a bag. A black small plastic B small and black plastic C small black plastic D plastic small black	Lisa was carrying a bag.	99
13.3 Maria's English is excellent. She speaks A perfectly English B English perfectly C perfect English D English perfect	Maria's English is excellent. She speaks	100
13.4 He to find a job, but he had no luck. A tried hard B tried hardly C hardly tried	He to find a job, but he had no luck.	101
13.5 I haven't seen her for , I've forgotten what she looks like. A so long B so long time C a such long time D such a long time	I haven't seen her for	102
13.6 Don't stand on that chair. It isn't A enough strong to stand on B strong enough to stand on it C strong enough to stand on D strong enough for stand on	Don't stand on that chair. It isn't	103
13.7 Sarah is doing OK at the moment. She has..... A a quite good job B quite a good job C a pretty good job	Sarah is doing OK at the moment. She has.....	104
13.8 The exam was quite easy – I expected. A more easy than B more easy than C easier than D easier as	The exam was quite easy –	105
13.9 The more expensive the hotel, A the service will be better B will be better the service C the better the service D better the service will be	The more expensive the hotel,	106
13.10 Patrick is a fast runner. I can't run as fast as A he B him C he can	Patrick is a fast runner. I can't run as fast as	107
13.11 What's you've ever made? A most important decision B the more important decision C the decision more important D the most important decision	What's you've ever made?	108
13.12 Ben likes walking. A Every morning he walks to work B He walks to work every morning C He walks every morning to work D He every morning walks to work	Ben likes walking.	109
13.13 Joe never phones me. A Always I have to phone him B I always have to phone him C I have always to phone him D I have to phone always him	Joe never phones me.	110
13.14 Lucy She left last month. A still doesn't work here B doesn't still work here C no more works here D doesn't work here any more E no longer works here	Lucy She left last month.	111
13.15 she can't drive, she has a car. A Even B Even when C Even if D Even though she can't drive, she has a car.	112, 113

Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT				STUDY UNIT
Conjunctions and prepositions				
14.1	I couldn't sleep	very tired.	A although I was B despite I was C despite of being D in spite of being	113
14.2	You should insure your bike	stolen.	A in case it will be B if it will be C in case it is D if it is	114
14.3	The club is for members only. You	you're a member.	A can't go in if B can go in only if C can't go in unless D can go in unless	115
14.4	Yesterday we watched TV all evening	we didn't have anything better to do.	A when B as C while D since	116
14.5	'What's that noise?' 'It sounds	a baby crying.'	A as B like C as if D as though	117, 118
14.6	They are very kind to me. They treat me	their own son.	A like I'm B as if I'm C as if I was D as if I were	118
14.7	I'm going to be in Moscow next week. I hope the weather will be good		A while I'll be there B while I'm there C during my visit D during I'm there	119
14.8	Joe is away at the moment. I don't know exactly when he's coming back, but I'm sure he'll be back	Monday.	A by B until	120
Prepositions				
15.1	Bye! I'll see you		A at Friday morning B on Friday morning C in Friday morning D Friday morning	121
15.2	I'm going away	the end of January.	A at B on C in	122
15.3	When we were in Italy, we spent a few days	Venice.	A at B to C in	123, 125
15.4	Our apartment is	the second floor of the building.	A at B on C in D to	124
15.5	I saw Steve	a conference on Saturday.	A at B on C in D to	125
15.6	What time did you	the hotel?	A arrive to B arrive at C arrive in D get to E get in	126
15.7	I'm going	holiday next week. I'll be away for two weeks.	A at B on C in D for	127
15.8	We travelled	6.45 train, which arrived at 8.30.	A in the B on the C by the D by	128
15.9	'Who is this painting	? Picasso?' 'I have no idea.'	A of B from C by	128

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
15.10	The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage the other car. A of B for C to D on E at	129
15.11	I like them very much. They have always been very nice me. A of B for C to D with	130
15.12	I'm not very good repairing things. A at B for C in D about	131
15.13	I don't understand this sentence. Can you ? A explain to me this word B explain me this word C explain this word to me	132
15.14	If you're worried about the problem, you should do something it. A for B about C against D with	133
15.15	'Who is Tom Hart?' 'I have no idea. I've never heard him.' A about B from C after D of	134
15.16	I don't know what time we'll arrive. It depends the traffic. A of B for C from D on	135
15.17	I prefer tea coffee. A to B than C against D over	136, 59
Phrasal verbs		
16.1	These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to A take off B take them off C take off them	137
16.2	They were playing cards, so I A joined in B came in C got in D broke in	138
16.3	Nobody believed Paul at first, but he to be right. A worked out B came out C found out D turned out	139
16.4	We can't making a decision. We have to decide now. A put away B put over C put off D put out	140
16.5	'Have you finished painting the kitchen?' 'Nearly. I'll tomorrow.' A finish it up B finish it over C finish it off	141
16.6	You can always rely on Paul. He'll never A put you up B let you down C take you over D see you off	142
16.7	Children under 16 half the population of the city. A make up B put up C take up D bring up	143
16.8	I'm surprised to hear that Kate and Paul have They seemed very happy together. A broken up B ended up C finished up D split up	144
16.9	I parked in a no-parking zone, but I it. A came up with B got away with C made off with D got on with	145

Key to Exercises

In some of the exercises you have to use your own ideas to write sentences. Example answers are given in the Key. If possible, check your answers with somebody who speaks English well.

UNIT 1

1.1

- 2 He's tying / He is tying
- 3 They're crossing / They are crossing
- 4 He's scratching / He is scratching
- 5 She's hiding / She is hiding
- 6 They're waving / They are waving

1.2

- 2 e 6 h
- 3 g 7 b
- 4 a 8 c
- 5 d

1.3

- 2 Why are you crying?
- 3 Is she working today?
- 4 What are you doing these days?
- 5 What is she studying? / What's she studying?
- 6 What are they doing?
- 7 Are you enjoying it?
- 8 Why are you walking so fast?

1.4

- 3 I'm not listening / I am not listening
- 4 She's having / She is having
- 5 He's learning / He is learning
- 6 they aren't speaking / they're not speaking / they are not speaking
- 7 it's getting / it is getting
- 8 isn't working / 's not working / is not working
- 9 I'm looking / I am looking
- 10 It's working / It is working
- 11 They're building / They are building
- 12 He's not enjoying / He is not enjoying
- 13 The weather's changing / The weather is changing
- 14 He's starting / He is starting

UNIT 2

2.1

- 2 go
- 3 causes
- 4 closes
- 5 live
- 6 take
- 7 connects

2.2

- 2 do the banks close
- 3 don't use
- 4 does Maria come
- 5 do you do
- 6 does this word mean
- 7 doesn't do
- 8 takes ... does it take

2.3

- 3 rises 7 translates
- 4 make 8 don't tell
- 5 don't eat 9 flows
- 6 doesn't believe

2.4

- 2 Does your sister play tennis?
- 3 How often do you go to the cinema?
- 4 What does your brother do?
- 5 Do you speak Spanish?
- 6 Where do your grandparents live?

2.5

- 2 I promise
- 3 I insist
- 4 I apologise
- 5 I recommend
- 6 I agree

UNIT 3

3.1

- 3 is trying
- 4 phones
- 5 OK
- 6 are they talking
- 7 OK
- 8 OK
- 9 It's getting / It is getting
- 10 I'm coming / I am coming
- 11 He always starts
- 12 OK

3.2

- 2 a Are you listening
b Do you listen
- 3 a flows
b is flowing / 's flowing
- 4 a I don't do
b do you usually do
- 5 a She's staying / She is staying
b She always stays

3.3

- 2 She speaks
- 3 Everybody's waiting / Everybody is waiting
- 4 do you pronounce
- 5 isn't working / is not working / 's not working
- 6 is improving
- 7 lives
- 8 I'm starting / I am starting
- 9 They're visiting / They are visiting
- 10 does your father do
- 11 it doesn't take
- 12 I'm learning / I am learning ...
is teaching / 's teaching

3.4

- 2 It's always breaking down.
- 3 I'm always making the same mistake. / ... that mistake.
- 4 You're always leaving your phone at home.

UNIT 4

4.1

- 2 believes
- 3 I don't remember / I do not remember or I can't remember
- 4 I'm using / I am using
- 5 I need
- 6 consists
- 7 does he want
- 8 is he looking
- 9 Do you recognise
- 10 I'm thinking / I am thinking
- 11 do you think
- 12 he seems

4.2

- 2 I'm thinking.
- 3 Who does this umbrella belong to?
- 4 This smells good.
- 5 Is anybody sitting there?
- 6 These gloves don't fit me.

4.3

- 3 OK (I feel is also correct)
- 4 does it taste
- 5 OK
- 6 do you see
- 7 OK

4.4

- 2 's / is
- 3 's being / is being
- 4 're / are
- 5 are you being
- 6 Are you

UNIT 5

5.1

- 2 had
- 3 She walked to work
- 4 It took her (about) half an hour
- 5 She started work
- 6 She didn't have (any) lunch. / ... eat (any) lunch.
- 7 She finished work
- 8 She was tired when she got home.
- 9 She cooked / She made
- 10 She didn't go
- 11 She went to bed
- 12 She slept

5.2

- 2 taught
3 sold
4 fell ... hurt
5 threw ... caught
6 spent ... bought ... cost

5.3

- 2 did you travel / did you go
3 did it take (you) / was your trip / were you there
4 did you stay
5 Was the weather
6 Did you go to / Did you see / Did you visit

5.4

- 3 didn't disturb
4 left
5 were
6 didn't sleep
7 didn't cost
8 flew
9 didn't have
10 wasn't

UNIT 6**6.1**

- 2 wasn't listening
3 were sitting
4 was working
5 weren't looking
6 was snowing
7 were you going
8 was looking

6.2

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 2 e | 5 c |
| 3 a | 6 d |
| 4 g | 7 b |

6.3

- 1 didn't see ... was looking
2 was cycling ... stepped ...
was going ... managed ...
didn't hit

6.4

- 2 were you doing
3 Did you go
4 were you driving ... happened
5 took ... wasn't looking
6 didn't know ... did
7 saw ... was trying
8 was walking ... heard ... was following ... started
9 wanted ... changed
10 dropped ... was doing ... didn't break

UNIT 7**7.1**

- 2 Her English has improved.
3 My bag has disappeared.
4 Lisa has broken her leg.
5 The bus fare has gone up.
6 Dan has grown a beard.
7 It's stopped raining. / It has stopped raining.
8 My sweater has shrunk. / My sweater's shrunk.

7.2

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 2 been | 4 gone |
| 3 gone | 5 been |

7.3

- 2 Have you seen it
3 I've forgotten / I have forgotten
4 he hasn't replied
5 has it finished
6 The weather has changed
7 You haven't signed
8 have they gone
9 He hasn't decided yet
10 I've just seen her / I have just seen her
11 He's already gone / He has already gone
12 Has your course started yet
You can also use the past simple (Did you see, he didn't reply etc.) in this exercise.

7.4

- 2 he's just gone out / he has just gone out or he just went out
3 I haven't finished yet. or I didn't finish yet.
4 I've already done it. / I have already done it. or I already did it. / I did it already.
5 Have you found a place to live yet? or Did you find a place ...?
6 I haven't decided yet. or I didn't decide yet.
7 she's just come back / she has just come back or she just came back

UNIT 8**8.1**

- 2 Have you ever been to California?
3 Have you ever run a marathon?
4 Have you ever spoken to a famous person?
5 What's the most beautiful place you've ever visited? / ... you have ever visited?

8.2

- 3 haven't eaten
4 I haven't played (it)
5 I've had / I have had
6 I haven't read
7 I've never been / I haven't been
8 it's happened / it has happened or that's happened / that has happened
9 I've never tried / I haven't tried or I've never eaten / I haven't eaten
10 's been / has been
11 I've never seen / I haven't seen

8.3

Example answers:

- 2 I haven't travelled by bus this week.
3 I haven't been to the cinema recently.
4 I haven't read a book for ages.
5 I haven't lost anything today.

8.4

- 2 It's the first time they've seen a giraffe. / ... they have seen ...
3 She's / She has never ridden a horse before.
4 This is the second time they've been to Japan. / ... they have been to Japan.
5 It's not the first time she's / she has / Emily has stayed at this hotel.
6 He's / He has / Ben has never played tennis before. or He/Ben hasn't played tennis before.

UNIT 9**9.1**

- 2 's been watching TV / has been watching TV or ... watching television
3 've been playing tennis / have been playing tennis
4 's been running / has been running

9.2

- 2 Have you been waiting long?
3 What have you been doing?
4 How long have you been working here?
5 How long have you been doing that?

9.3

- 2 've been waiting / have been waiting
3 've been learning Japanese / have been learning Japanese
4 She's been working there / She has been working there
5 They've been going there / They have been going there or ... going to Italy

Key to Exercises

9.4

- 2 I've been looking / I have been looking
- 3 are you looking
- 4 She's been teaching / She has been teaching
- 5 I've been thinking / I have been thinking
- 6 he's working / he is working
- 7 She's been working / She has been working
- 8 you're driving / you are driving
- 9 has been travelling

UNIT 10

10.1

- 2 She's been travelling / She has been travelling ...
She's visited / She has visited ...
- 3 He's won / He has won ...
He's been playing tennis / He has been playing ...
- 4 They've been making / They have been making ...
They've made / They have made ...

10.2

- 2 Have you been waiting long?
- 3 Have you caught any fish?
- 4 How many people have you invited?
- 5 How long have you been teaching?
- 6 How many books have you written?
How long have you been writing books?
- 7 How long have you been saving (money)?
How much money have you saved?

10.3

- 2 Somebody's broken /
Somebody has broken
- 3 Have you been working
- 4 Have you ever worked
- 5 has she gone
- 6 I've had / I have had
- 7 I've been watching / I have been watching
- 8 He's appeared / He has appeared
- 9 I haven't been waiting
- 10 you've been crying / you have been crying
- 11 it's stopped / it has stopped
- 12 They've been playing / They have been playing
- 13 I've lost / I have lost ... Have you seen
- 14 I've been reading / I have been reading ... I haven't finished
- 15 I've read / I have read

UNIT 11

11.1

- 2 have you lived
- 3 It's raining
- 4 has been
- 5 Have you been waiting
- 6 We're living
- 7 I haven't known
- 8 She's
- 9 have you had
- 10 I've been feeling

11.2

- 2 How long have you known Katherine?
- 3 How long has your sister been in Australia?
- 4 How long have you been teaching English? / How long have you taught English?
- 5 How long have you had that jacket?
- 6 How long has Joe been working at the airport? / How long has Joe worked at the airport?
- 7 Have you always lived in Chicago?

11.3

- 3 's been / has been
- 4 's / is
- 5 haven't played
- 6 've been waiting / have been waiting
- 7 've known / have known
- 8 hasn't been
- 9 lives or 's living / is living
- 10 's lived / has lived or 's been living / has been living
- 11 's been watching / has been watching
- 12 haven't watched
- 13 've had / have had
- 14 haven't been
- 15 've always wanted / have always wanted

UNIT 12

12.1

- 2 for (also correct without for)
- 3 for (also correct without for)
- 4 since
- 5 for
- 6 since
- 7 since
- 8 for

12.2

- 2 How long have you had this car?
- 3 How long have you been waiting?
- 4 When did your course start?
- 5 When did Anna arrive in London?
- 6 How long have you known each other?

12.3

- 3 He has been ill/unwell since Sunday.
- 4 She got married a year ago.
- 5 I've had a headache since I woke up.
- 6 The meeting started/began at 9 o'clock.
- 7 I've been working in a hotel for six months. / I've been working there ...
- 8 Kate started learning Japanese a long time ago.

12.4

- 2 No, I haven't seen Lisa/her for about a month.
- 3 No, I haven't been swimming for a long time.
- 4 No, I haven't ridden a bike for ages.
- 6 No, it's about a month since I (last) saw Lisa/her. or
No, it's been about a month since ...
- 7 No, it's a long time since I (last) went swimming. or
No, it's been a long time since ...
- 8 No, it's ages since I (last) rode a bike.
or No, it's been ages since ...

UNIT 13

13.1

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 2 has gone | 5 had |
| 3 forgot | 6 has broken |
| 4 went | |

13.2

- 3 did William Shakespeare write
- 4 OK
- 5 Who invented
- 6 OK
- 7 We washed
- 8 Where were you born?
- 9 OK
- 10 Albert Einstein was the scientist who developed

13.3

- 3 I've forgotten / I have forgotten
- 4 arrested
- 5 it's improved / it has improved
- 6 Have you finished
- 7 I applied
- 8 It was
- 9 There's been / There has been
- 10 did you find ... It was
- 11 He's / He has broken ... or He broke ... did that happen ... He fell

UNIT 14

14.1

- 3 OK
- 4 I bought
- 5 Where were you
- 6 Maria left school
- 7 OK
- 8 OK
- 9 OK
- 10 When was this bridge built?

14.2

- 2 The weather has been cold recently.
 3 It was cold last week.
 4 I didn't eat any fruit yesterday.
 5 I haven't eaten any fruit today.
 6 Emily has earned a lot of money this year.
 7 She didn't earn so much last year.
 8 Have you had a holiday recently?

14.3

- 3 I didn't sleep
 4 There was ... there were
 5 worked ... he gave
 6 She's lived / She has lived
 7 died ... I never met
 8 I've never met / I have never met
 9 I haven't seen
 10 Did you go ... was
 11 It's been / It has been ... it was
 12 have you lived / have you been living ... did you live ... did you live

14.4

Example answers:

- 2 I haven't bought anything today.
 3 I didn't watch TV yesterday.
 4 I went out with some friends yesterday evening.
 5 I haven't been to the cinema recently.
 6 I've read a lot of books recently.

UNIT 15**15.1**

- 3 It had changed a lot.
 4 I hadn't heard it before.
 5 She'd arranged to do something else. / She had arranged ...
 6 The film had already started.
 7 We hadn't been there before.
 8 I hadn't seen him for five years.
 9 They'd just had lunch. / They had just had ...
 10 He'd never played before. / He had never played ...

15.2

- 2 there was ...
 She'd gone / She had gone
 3 He'd just come back from / He had just come back from ... He looked
 4 got a phone call
 He was
 He'd sent her / He had sent her ... she'd never replied (to them) / she had never replied (to them)

15.3

- 2 I went
 3 had gone
 4 he'd already travelled / he had already travelled
 5 broke
 6 we saw ... had broken ... we stopped

UNIT 16**16.1**

- 2 They'd been playing football.. / They had been playing ...
 3 I'd been looking forward to it. / I had been looking forward ...
 4 She'd been having a bad dream.. / She had been having ...
 5 He'd been watching a film. / He had been watching ...
 6 They'd been waiting a long time. / They had been waiting ...

16.2

- 2 I'd been waiting / I had been waiting ... I realised (that) I was (in ...)
 3 went ... had been working or had worked
 4 had been playing ... started
 5 *Example answer:*
 I'd been walking for about ten minutes when a car suddenly stopped just behind me.

16.3

- 2 We'd been travelling
 3 He was looking
 4 She'd been running
 5 He was walking
 6 I'd had it
 7 I'd been going
 8 I've been training
 9 (When I finally arrived,) she was waiting ... she'd been waiting (such a long time)
 10 a he was already working
 b had already been working
 c He's been working

UNIT 17**17.1**

- 2 h
 3 c
 4 g
 5 b
 6 a
 7 e
 8 f

17.2

- 3 don't have / haven't got (haven't is less usual)
 4 didn't have
 5 doesn't have / hasn't got (hasn't is less usual)
 6 do you have / have you got (have you is less usual)
 7 didn't have
 8 Does he have / Has he got (Has he is less usual)
 9 did you have
 10 don't have / haven't got
 11 had ... didn't

17.3

- 3 I didn't have / hadn't got my phone
 4 I have a cold or I've got a cold
 5 OK
 6 I didn't have any energy
 7 OK (or It hasn't got many shops.)
 8 Did you have (Had you is unusual)
 9 OK
 10 he had a beard
 11 OK (or We've got plenty of time.)
 12 do you have a shower

17.4

- 2 has a break
 3 had a party
 4 have a look
 5 's having / is having a nice time
 6 had a chat
 7 Did you have trouble
 8 had a baby
 9 was having a shower
 10 haven't had a holiday / haven't had a break

UNIT 18**18.1**

- 2 used to have/ride
 3 used to live
 4 used to be
 5 used to eat/like/love
 6 used to take
 7 used to be
 8 used to work

18.2

- 2 used
 3 used to be
 4 did
 5 used to
 6 use
 7 to
 8 be able
 9 didn't

18.3

2–6

- She used to be very lazy, but she works very hard these days.
- She didn't use to like cheese, but she eats lots of cheese now. or She used not to like cheese, but ...
- She used to play the piano, but she hasn't played the piano for a long time. / ... played it for a long time.
- She didn't use to drink tea, but she likes it now. or She used not to drink tea, but ...
- She used to have a dog, but it died two years ago.

Key to Exercises

18.4

Example answers:

- 3 I used to be a vegetarian, but now I eat meat sometimes.
- 4 I used to watch TV a lot, but I don't watch it much now.
- 5 I used to hate getting up early, but now it's no problem.
- 7 I didn't use to drink coffee, but I drink it every day now.
- 8 I didn't use to like hot weather, but now I love it.

UNIT 19

19.1

- 2 How long are you going for?
- 3 When are you leaving?
- 4 Are you going alone?
- 5 Are you travelling by car?
- 6 Where are you staying?

19.2

- 2 We're having
- 3 I'm not working
- 4 I'm leaving
- 5 are you going
- 6 Laura isn't coming / Laura's not coming
- 7 I'm going
- 8 He's working / He is working

19.3

Example answers:

- 2 I'm working tomorrow morning.
- 3 I'm not doing anything tomorrow evening.
- 4 I'm going swimming next Sunday.
- 5 I'm going to a party this evening.

19.4

- 2 Are you going
- 3 he's moving / he is moving
- 4 I'm going / I am going ... does it start
- 5 we're meeting / we are meeting
- 6 Are you doing
- 7 does this term end ... starts
- 8 We're going / We are going ... Who's getting / Who is getting
- 9 Are you watching
- 10 leaves ... arrives
- 11 It finishes
- 12 I'm not using / I am not using

UNIT 20

20.1

- 2 What are you going to wear?
- 3 Where are you going to put it?
- 4 Who are you going to invite?
- 5 How are you going to cook it?

20.2

- 2 I'm going to try
- 3 I'm going to say
- 4 I'm going to wash
- 5 I'm not going to accept
- 6 I'm going to learn
- 7 I'm going to run
- 8 I'm going to complain
- 9 I'm not going to tell

20.3

- 2 He's going to be late.
- 3 The boat is going to sink.
- 4 They're going to run out of petrol.
- 5 It's going to cost a lot (of money) to repair the car.

20.4

- 2 was going to buy
- 3 were going to play
- 4 was going to phone
- 5 was going to be
- 6 was going to give up
- 7 were you going to say

UNIT 21

21.1

- 2 I'll turn / I'll switch / I'll put
- 3 I'll check
- 4 I'll do
- 5 I'll show
- 6 I'll have
- 7 I'll stay / I'll wait
- 8 I'll try

21.2

- 2 I think I'll go to bed.
- 3 I think I'll go for a walk.
- 4 I don't think I'll have (any) lunch.
- 5 I don't think I'll go swimming today.

21.3

- 3 I'll meet
- 4 I'll stay
- 5 I'm having
- 6 I won't forget
- 7 we're going
- 8 Are you doing
- 9 Will you do
- 10 Do you go
- 11 won't tell
- 12 I'll do

21.4

- 2 Where shall we go (on holiday)?
- 3 Shall I buy it?
- 4 Shall we get a taxi (or) (shall we) walk?
- 5 What shall I give/buy/get Helen (for her birthday)?
- 6 What time shall we meet?

UNIT 22

22.1

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 2 won't | 5 'll / will |
| 3 'll / will | 6 won't |
| 4 won't | |

22.2

- 2 It will look
- 3 you'll like / you will like
- 4 You'll enjoy / You will enjoy
- 5 You'll get / You will get
- 6 people will live
- 7 we'll meet / we will meet
- 8 she'll come / she will come
- 9 she'll mind
- 10 it will be

22.3

- 2 Do you think it will rain?
- 3 When do you think it will end?
- 4 How much do you think it will cost?
- 5 Do you think they'll get married? / ... they will get married?
- 6 What time do you think you'll be back? / ... you will be back?
- 7 What do you think will happen?

22.4

Example answers:

- 2 I'll be in bed.
- 3 I'll be at work.
- 4 I'll probably be at home.
- 5 I don't know where I'll be.

22.5

- 2 I'll never forget it.
- 3 You'll laugh
- 4 I'm going
- 5 will win
- 6 is coming
- 7 It won't hurt
- 8 What will happen
- 9 we're going

UNIT 23

23.1

- 2 I'll lend
- 3 I'm going to wash
- 4 I'll show
- 5 are you going to paint
- 6 I'm going to buy
- 7 I'll have
- 8 I'm not going to finish
- 9 (What) is he going to study / (What) is he going to study
- 10 I'll call
- 11 he's going to have ... he's going to do

23.2

- 2 I'll see
- 3 I'm going to sell
- 4 you'll find (you're going to find is also possible)
- 5 a I'm going to throw
- 5 b I'll have it.
- 6 a I'll take
- 6 b Amy is going to take (or Amy is taking)

23.3

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 2 d | 6 a |
| 3 h | 7 e |
| 4 g | 8 b |
| 5 c | |

UNIT 24**24.1**

- 2 *b* is true
3 *a* and *c* are true
4 *b* and *d* are true
5 *c* and *d* are true
6 *c* is true

24.2

- 2 be going
3 won't be playing
4 will be starting
5 be watching
6 will you be doing
7 won't be going
8 will be landing

24.3

- 2 we'll be playing / we will be playing
3 She'll be waiting / She will be waiting
4 it will have finished (or it will be finished)
5 you'll still be living / you will still be living
6 she'll have travelled / she will have travelled
7 I'll be staying / I will be staying
8 he'll have spent / he will have spent
9 I won't be doing / I will not be doing

UNIT 25**25.1**

- 2 we'll let
3 starts
4 it changes
5 I'll make
6 I'm 40
7 I'll wait
8 he grows up
9 you're
10 is
11 will be
12 you've had

25.2

- 2 she goes
3 you know
4 I'll wait / I will wait ... you're / you are
5 Will you still be ... I get
6 there are ... I'll let / I will let
7 You won't recognise / You will not recognise ... you see
8 you need ... I'm / I am

25.3

- 2 it gets dark
3 you decide or you've decided / you have decided
4 you're in Hong Kong / you go to Hong Kong
5 build the new road or 've built the new road / have built the new road
6 she apologises or she's apologised / she has apologised

25.4

- 2 if 6 When
3 If 7 if
4 when 8 if
5 If

UNIT 26**26.1**

- 3 can
4 be able to
5 been able to
6 can (or will be able to)
7 be able to
8 can
9 be able to

26.2

Example answers:

- 2 I used to be able to run fast.
3 I'd like to be able to play the piano.
4 I've never been able to get up early.

26.3

- 2 could run
3 can wait
4 couldn't sleep
5 can't hear
6 couldn't believe

26.4

- 2 was able to finish it
3 were able to solve it
4 was able to get away

26.5

- 4 couldn't
5 managed to
6 could
7 managed to
8 could
9 couldn't
10 managed to

UNIT 27**27.1**

- 2 e
3 b
4 f
5 a
6 d

27.2

- 2 could 7 could
3 can 8 can
4 could 9 could
5 can 10 could
6 can

27.3

- 2 could have come
3 could be
4 could have been
5 could have
6 could come
7 have moved
8 gone

27.4

- 3 couldn't wear
4 couldn't have managed
5 couldn't have been
6 couldn't afford (or couldn't manage)
7 couldn't have studied
8 couldn't stand

UNIT 28**28.1**

- 2 must
3 can't
4 must
5 must
6 can't
7 must
8 can't
9 must
10 can't
11 must

28.2

- 3 know
4 have left
5 be
6 have been
7 be looking
8 have heard
9 have been
10 be joking
11 get / be getting or have

28.3

- 3 It must have been very expensive.
4 They must have gone away.
5 I must have left it in the restaurant last night.
6 It can't have been easy for her.
7 He must have been waiting for somebody.
8 She can't have understood what I said. or She couldn't have understood what I said.
9 I must have forgotten to lock it.
10 They must have been having a party.
11 The driver can't have seen the red light. or The driver couldn't have seen ...
12 He can't have worn them much.

UNIT 29**29.1**

- 2 might know
3 might be Brazilian
4 may not be possible
5 may be Tom's
6 might be driving
7 might have one
8 may not be feeling well

Key to Exercises

29.2

- 2 have been
- 3 have arrived
- 4 be waiting
- 5 have told
- 6 have gone
- 7 be watching
- 8 have
- 9 have left
- 10 have heard
- 11 have forgotten

29.3

- 2 might not have wanted
- 3 couldn't have been
- 4 couldn't have tried
- 5 might not have been American

UNIT 30

30.1

- 2 I'm going to get
- 3 He might come
- 4 I might hang
- 5 She's going
- 6 I might go away

30.2

- 2 might wake
- 3 might spill
- 4 might need
- 5 might hear
- 6 might slip

30.3

- 2 might have to leave
- 3 might be able to meet
- 4 might have to pay
- 5 might have to wait
- 6 might be able to fix

30.4

- 2 I might not recognise him.
- 3 We might not be able to get tickets for the game.
- 4 I might not have time to do the shopping.
- 5 I might not be able to go to the wedding.

30.5

- 2 I might as well buy a new one.
- 3 I might as well paint the bathroom too.
- 4 We might as well watch it.

UNIT 31

31.1

- 3 I have to go / I'll have to go
- 4 do you have to go / will you have to go
- 5 he has to get up
- 6 We had to run
- 7 does she have to work
- 8 I had to do
- 9 do you have to be
- 10 We had to close
- 11 did you have to pay

31.2

- 3 have to make
- 4 don't have to decide
- 5 had to ask
- 6 don't have to pay
- 7 didn't have to go
- 8 has to make
- 9 had to stand
- 10 will have to drive / I'll have to drive / is going to have to drive

31.3

- 3 OK (I have to remember is also correct)
- 4 I had to walk home.
- 5 OK (You have to come is also correct)
- 6 He has to study
- 7 We have to go
- 8 She has had to wear glasses since ...
For the present perfect (has had) with since, see Units 11–12.

31.4

- 3 don't have to
- 4 mustn't
- 5 don't have to
- 6 doesn't have to
- 7 don't have to
- 8 mustn't
- 9 mustn't
- 10 don't have to

UNIT 32

32.1

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 2 d | 5 g |
| 3 b | 6 a |
| 4 e | 7 c |

32.2

- 2 must
- 3 mustn't
- 4 don't need to
- 5 mustn't
- 6 needn't
- 7 mustn't
- 8 don't need to
- 9 needn't ... must

32.3

- 2 needn't come
- 3 needn't walk
- 4 needn't keep
- 5 needn't worry

32.4

- 2 You needn't have walked home. You could have taken a taxi.
- 3 They needn't have stayed at a hotel. They could have stayed with us.
- 4 She needn't have phoned me at 3 am. She could have waited until the morning.
- 5 You needn't have shouted at me. You could have been more patient.

32.5

- 3 You needn't shout. / You don't need to shout. / You don't have to shout.
- 4 I didn't need to go out. / I didn't have to go out.
- 5 OK
- 6 You needn't lock the door. / You don't need to lock the door. / You don't have to lock the door.
- 7 I didn't need to say anything. / I didn't have to say anything.
- 8 OK

UNIT 33

33.1

- 2 You should look for another job.
- 3 He shouldn't stay up so late.
- 4 You should take a picture.
- 5 She shouldn't worry so much.
- 6 He should put some pictures on the walls.

33.2

- 2 should be here soon
- 3 should be working OK
- 4 shouldn't take long
- 5 should receive
- 6 should be much warmer
- 7 shouldn't cost more
- 8 should solve

33.3

- 3 should do
- 4 should have done
- 5 should have won
- 6 should come
- 7 should have turned
- 8 should have done

33.4

- 2 We should have reserved a table.
- 3 I should have written down her address. / I should have written her address down. or I should have written it down.
- 4 The shop should be open (now / by now). / The shop should have opened by now. or It should ...
- 5 I shouldn't have been looking at my phone. or I should have looked / been looking where I was going.
- 6 She shouldn't be doing 50. / She shouldn't be driving so fast. / She should be driving more slowly.
- 7 I shouldn't have gone to work (yesterday).
- 8 Team A should win (the match).
- 9 The driver in front shouldn't have stopped without warning. / ... shouldn't have stopped so suddenly.

UNIT 34**34.1**

- 2 I should stay / I stay / I stayed a little longer
 3 they should visit / they visit / they visited the museum after lunch
 4 we should pay / we pay / we paid the rent by Friday
 5 we should go / we go / we went to the cinema

34.2

- 2 OK
 ('suggested that we should meet' is also correct)
 3 What do you suggest I do / I should do
 4 OK
 ('suggest I buy' is also correct)
 5 I suggest you read / you should read ...
 6 OK
 ('suggested that Anna should learn', 'suggested that Anna learns' and 'suggested that Anna learnt/learned' are also correct)

34.3

- 2 should say
 3 should worry
 4 should leave
 5 should ask
 6 should vote
 7 should be done

34.4

- 2 If it should rain
 3 If there should be any problems
 4 If anyone should ask
 6 Should it rain
 7 Should there be any problems
 8 Should anyone ask

34.5

- 2 I should keep
 3 I should call
 4 I should get

UNIT 35**35.1**

- 2 We'd better reserve a table.
 3 You'd better put a plaster on it.
 4 You'd better not go to work this morning.
 5 I'd/We'd better check what time the film starts.
 6 I'd better not disturb her right now.

35.2

- 2 OK
 3 You **should** come more often.
 4 OK
 5 OK
 6 everybody **should** learn a foreign language
 7 OK

35.3

- 2 had
 3 not
 4 should
 5 to
 6 I'd
 7 were
 8 better
 9 hadn't
 10 do
 11 did
 12 was

35.4

- 2 It's time I had a holiday.
 3 It's time the children were in bed. / ... went to bed.
 4 It's time I started cooking (the) dinner.
 5 It's time she/Kate stopped complaining about everything.
 6 It's time (some) changes were made

UNIT 36**36.1**

- Example answers:*
 2 I wouldn't like to be a teacher.
 3 I'd love to learn to fly a plane.
 4 It would be nice to have a big garden.
 5 I'd like to go to Mexico.

36.2

- 2 I'd enjoy / would enjoy
 3 I'd have enjoyed / would have enjoyed
 4 would you do
 5 I'd have stopped / would have stopped
 6 would have been
 7 I'd be / would be
 8 would have

36.3

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 2 e | 5 a |
| 3 b | 6 d |
| 4 f | |

36.4

- 2 He promised he'd call. / ... he would call.
 3 You promised you wouldn't tell her. or ... wouldn't tell anyone/anybody.
 4 They promised they'd wait (for us). / ... they would wait.

36.5

- 2 wouldn't tell
 3 wouldn't speak
 4 wouldn't let

36.6

- 2 would shake
 3 would share
 4 would always forget
 5 would stay
 6 would always smile

UNIT 37**37.1**

- 2 g
 3 d
 4 b
 5 a
 6 h
 7 f
 8 c

37.2

- 2 Would you like
 3 I'd like
 4 Would you like to come
 5 Can I take
 6 I'd like to
 7 Would you like to try
 8 Do you mind

37.3

- 2 Can/Could I/we have the bill, please? or ... get the bill?
 3 Can/Could you check these forms (for me)? or Do you think you could check ...?
 4 Can/Could you turn the music down, please? / ... turn it down? or Do you think you could turn ...?
 5 Is it OK if I close the window? or Is it all right if ...? or Can I close ...? or Do you mind if I close ...?
 6 Would you like to sit down? or Would you like a seat? or Can I offer you a seat?
 7 Can/Could you tell me how to get to the station? or ... the way to the station? or ... where the station is?
 8 Can/Could I try on these trousers? or Can/Could I try these (trousers) on? or I'd like to try on these trousers. or Is it OK if I try ...
 9 Can/Could I get your autograph? / ... have your autograph? or Do you think I could get/have your autograph?

UNIT 38**38.1**

- 2 dropped
 3 lost
 4 happened
 5 went
 6 did
 7 was

38.2

- 2 b
 3 a
 4 b
 5 b
 6 a
 7 b

Key to Exercises

38.3

- 2 I bought
- 3 would you invite
- 4 he asked
- 5 I'd be / I would be
- 6 somebody gave ... I'd have / I would have
- 7 Would you be ... you met
- 8 would you do ... you were ... it stopped

38.4

- 2 If we stayed at a hotel, it would cost too much.
- 3 If I told you what happened, you wouldn't believe me. or ... believe it.
- 4 If she left her job, it would be hard to find another one.
- 5 If he applied for the job, he wouldn't get it.

UNIT 39

39.1

- 3 I'd help / I would help
- 4 It would taste
- 5 we lived
- 6 we'd live / we would live
- 7 I was / I were
- 8 it wasn't / it weren't
- 9 I wouldn't wait ... I'd go / I would go
- 10 you didn't go ... you wouldn't be
- 11 there weren't ... there wouldn't be
- 12 would you do if you didn't have

39.2

- 2 I'd / I would buy them if they weren't so expensive.
- 3 We'd / We would go on holiday if we could afford it.
- 4 We could have lunch outside if it weren't/wasn't raining.
- 5 If I wanted his advice, I'd / I would ask for it.

39.3

- 2 I wish I had more free time.
- 3 I wish Helen were/was here.
- 4 I wish it weren't/wasn't (so) cold.
- 5 I wish I didn't live in a big city.
- 6 I wish I could find my phone.
- 7 I wish I was/were feeling well/better.
- 8 I wish I didn't have to get up early tomorrow.
- 9 I wish I knew more about science.

39.4

Example answers:

- 1 I wish I was at home.
- 2 I wish I had a big garden.
- 3 I wish I could tell jokes.
- 4 I wish I was taller.

UNIT 40

40.1

- 2 If she'd missed / she had missed (the train), she'd have missed / she would have missed (her flight too).
- 3 I'd have forgotten / I would have forgotten (if) you hadn't reminded
- 4 I'd had / I had had (your email address) I'd have sent / I would have sent (you an email)
- 5 they'd have enjoyed / they would have enjoyed (it more if the weather) had been (better)
- 6 It would have been (quicker if) we'd walked / we had walked
- 7 you'd told / you had told (me) I'd have tried / I would have tried
- 8 I were / I was
- 9 I'd been / I had been

40.2

- 2 If the road hadn't been icy, the accident wouldn't have happened.
- 3 If I'd known / If I had known (that you had to get up early), I'd have woken / I would have woken you up.
- 4 If I hadn't lost my phone (or If I'd had my phone), I'd have called you. or ... I would have called you. or ... I could have called you.
- 5 If Karen hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she'd have been injured / she would have been injured (in the crash). or ... she might have been injured or ... she could have been injured
- 6 If you'd had / If you had had (some) breakfast, you wouldn't be hungry now.
- 7 If I'd had / If I had had enough money, I'd have got / I would have got a taxi. (or ... taken a taxi)
- 8 If Dan had done well/better at school, he could/would have gone to university.

40.3

- 2 I wish I'd learned / I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument (when I was younger). or I wish I could play ... / I wish I was able to play ...
- 3 I wish I hadn't painted it red. or ... the gate red. or I wish I had painted it a different colour.
- 4 I wish we'd gone / I wish we had gone by train. or I wish we hadn't gone by car.
- 5 I wish we'd had / I wish we had had more time (to do all the things we wanted to do).
- 6 I wish I hadn't moved (to my new flat). or I wish I'd stayed where I was. / ... stayed in my old flat.

UNIT 41

41.1

- 2 hope
- 3 wish
- 4 wished
- 5 hope
- 6 wish
- 7 hope

41.2

- 2 wasn't/weren't
- 3 I'd told / had told
- 4 had / could have
- 5 could
- 6 hadn't bought
- 7 didn't have
- 8 have gone

41.3

- 2 I wish she would come. or ... would hurry up.
- 3 I wish somebody would give me a job.
- 4 I wish the/that dog would stop barking.
- 5 I wish you wouldn't drive so fast.
- 6 I wish you wouldn't leave the door open (all the time).
- 7 I wish people wouldn't drop litter in the street.

41.4

- 3 I knew
- 4 we hadn't gone
- 5 the bus would come
- 6 I could come
- 7 it was/were
- 8 I'd taken / I had taken
- 9 you'd listen / you would listen
- 10 you wouldn't complain or you didn't complain
- 11 it wasn't/weren't
- 12 the weather would change
- 13 I had / I could have
- 14 we could have stayed

UNIT 42

42.1

- 2 is made
- 3 was damaged
- 4 are shown
- 5 were invited
- 6 's/is found
- 7 were overtaken
- 8 are held
- 9 was injured
- 10 is surrounded
- 11 was sent
- 12 is owned

42.2

- 2 When was television invented?
- 3 How are mountains formed?
- 4 When was DNA discovered?
- 5 What is silver used for?

42.3

- 2 a covers
b is covered
3 a was stolen
b disappeared
4 a died
b were brought up
5 a sank
b was rescued
6 a was fired
b resigned
7 a doesn't bother
b 'm/am not bothered
8 a was knocked
b fell
9 a are they called
b do you call

42.4

- 2 All flights were cancelled because of fog.
3 I was accused of stealing money.
4 How is this word used?
5 All taxes are included in the price.
6 We were warned not to go out alone.
7 This office isn't / is not used any more.
8 Five hundred people were invited to the wedding.

UNIT 43**43.1**

- 3 be made
4 be kept
5 have been repaired
6 be carried
7 have been arrested
8 be delayed
9 have been caused
10 be knocked
11 be known
12 have been forgotten

43.2

- 3 It's been stolen! / It has been stolen!
4 Somebody has taken it. or ... taken my umbrella.
5 He hasn't been seen since then.
6 I haven't seen her for ages.
7 Have you ever been stung by a bee?
8 It's / It is being repaired at the moment.
9 It hasn't / It has not been found yet.
10 The furniture had been moved.

43.3

- 2 A new road is being built
3 Two new hotels have been built
4 some new houses were being built
5 The date of the meeting has been changed.
6 I didn't know that our conversation was being recorded.
7 Is anything being done about the problem?
8 They hadn't / had not been cleaned for ages.

UNIT 44**44.1**

- 2 was given
3 wasn't told / was not told
4 's paid / is paid
5 been shown
6 was asked
7 weren't given / were not given
8 to be offered

44.2

- 2 being invited
3 being given
4 being knocked down
5 being bitten
6 being treated
7 being stuck

44.3

- 2 got stung
3 get used
4 got stolen
5 get paid
6 get broken
7 get asked
8 got stopped

44.4

- 3 were
4 given
5 lost
6 being
7 get
8 doesn't
9 was
10 weren't

UNIT 45**45.1**

- 2 Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.
3 The thieves are thought to have got in through a window in the roof.
4 The driver (of the car) is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour. or ... to have driven at ...
5 The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.
6 The company is said to be losing a lot of money.
7 The company is believed to have lost a lot of money last year.
8 The company is expected to make a loss this year.

45.2

- 2 they're / they are supposed to be
3 it's / it is supposed to have been
4 they're / they are supposed to have won
5 the view is supposed to be
6 she's / she is supposed to be living

45.3

- 2 You're / You are supposed to be my friend.
3 I'm / I am supposed to be on a diet.
4 It was supposed to be a joke.
5 Or maybe it's / it is supposed to be a flower.
6 You're / You are supposed to be working.
7 It's supposed to be open every day.

45.4

- 2 're / are supposed to start
3 was supposed to phone
4 aren't / 're not / are not supposed to put
5 was supposed to depart
6 isn't / 's not / is not supposed to lift

UNIT 46**46.1**

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 b | 3 a |
| 2 a | 4 b |

46.2

- 2 Sarah has her car serviced once a year.
3 Have you had your eyes tested recently?
4 I don't like having my hair cut.
5 It cost fifteen pounds to have my suit cleaned.
6 You need to get this document translated as soon as possible.

46.3

- 2 I had it cut.
3 We had them cleaned.
4 He had it built.
5 I had them delivered.
6 She had them repaired.

46.4

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 2 f | 5 c |
| 3 a | 6 b |
| 4 e | |

46.5

- 2 We had our bags searched.
3 I've had my salary increased. or I had my salary increased.
4 He's had his application refused. or He had his application refused.

UNIT 47**47.1**

- 2 (that) it was too far
3 (that) she didn't want to go
4 (that) he would let me know next week.
5 (that) he hadn't seen her for a while
6 (that) I could borrow hers.
7 (that) she wasn't enjoying it very much
8 (that) he sold it a few months ago or he'd sold it ... / he had sold it ...
9 (that) she didn't know
10 (that) there were twenty students in her class

Key to Exercises

47.2

Example answers:

- 2 wasn't coming / was going somewhere else / couldn't come
- 3 they didn't like each other / they didn't get on with each other / they couldn't stand each other
- 4 he didn't know anyone
- 5 she would be away / she was going away
- 6 you were staying at home
- 7 you couldn't speak / you didn't speak any other languages
- 8 he'd seen you / he saw you last weekend

UNIT 48

48.1

- 2 But you said you didn't like fish.
- 3 But you said you couldn't drive.
- 4 But you said she had a very well-paid job.
- 5 But you said you didn't have any brothers or sisters.
- 6 But you said you'd / you had never been to the United States.
- 7 But you said you were working tomorrow evening.
- 8 But you said she was a friend of yours.

48.2

- 2 Tell
- 3 Say
- 4 said
- 5 told
- 6 said
- 7 told
- 8 said
- 9 tell ... said
- 10 tell ... say

48.3

- 2 her to slow down
- 3 her not to worry
- 4 asked Tom to give me a hand or ... to help me
- 5 asked/told me to open my bag
- 6 told him to mind his own business
- 7 asked her to marry him
- 8 told her not to wait (for me) if I was late

UNIT 49

49.1

- 2 Were you born there?
- 3 Are you married?
- 4 How long have you been married?
- 5 What do you do?
- 6 What does your wife do?
- 7 Do you have (any) children? or Have you got (any) children?
- 8 How old are they?

49.2

- 3 Who paid the bill? / Who paid it?
- 4 What are you worried about?
- 5 What happened?
- 6 What did she/Diane say?
- 7 Who does it / this book belong to?
- 8 Who lives in that house? / Who lives there?
- 9 What did you fall over?
- 10 What fell off the shelf?
- 11 What does it / this word mean?
- 12 Who was she/Sarah with?
- 13 What are you looking for?
- 14 Who does she/Emma remind you of?

49.3

- 2 How is cheese made?
- 3 Why isn't Sue working today?
- 4 What time are your friends arriving?
- 5 Why was the meeting cancelled?
- 6 When was paper invented?
- 7 Where were your parents born?
- 8 Why didn't you come to the party?
- 9 How did the accident happen?
- 10 Why aren't you happy?
- 11 How many languages can you speak?

49.4

- 2 Don't you like him?
- 3 Isn't it good?
- 4 Don't you have any? or Haven't you got any?

UNIT 50

50.1

- 2 c
- 3 a
- 4 b
- 5 b
- 6 c
- 7 b
- 8 a

50.2

- 2 How far is it to the airport?
- 3 I wonder how old Tom is.
- 4 How long have they been married?
- 5 Do you know how long they have been married?
- 6 Could you tell me where the station is?
- 7 I don't know whether anyone was injured in the accident.
- 8 Do you know what time you will arrive tomorrow?

50.3

- 2 She asked me how long I'd been in London. or ... how long I had been ...
- 3 They asked me if/whether I'd been to London before. or ... I had been ...
- 4 She asked me if/whether I liked London.
- 5 He asked me where I was staying.
- 6 She asked me how long I was going to stay.
- 7 She asked me if/whether I thought London was expensive. or ... is expensive.
- 8 They asked me why I'd come to London. or ... why I had come ... or ... why I came ...

UNIT 51

51.1

- 2 doesn't
- 3 was
- 4 has
- 5 will
- 6 should
- 7 won't
- 8 do
- 9 didn't
- 10 might
- 11 am ... isn't or I'm not ... is or can't ... can or can't ... is
- 12 would ... could ... can't

51.2

- 3 Do you? I don't.
- 4 Didn't you? I did.
- 5 Aren't you? I am.
- 6 Did you? I didn't.

51.3

Example answers:

- 3 So did I. or Did you? What did you watch?
- 4 Neither will I. or Won't you? Where will you be?
- 5 So do I. or Do you? What sort of books do you like?
- 6 So would I. or Would you? Where would you like to live?
- 7 Neither can I. or Can't you? Why not?
- 8 So am I. or Are you? Are you doing something nice?

51.4

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 2 I hope so. | 6 I'm afraid so. |
| 3 I hope not. | 7 I think so. |
| 4 I don't think so. | 8 I'm afraid not. |
| 5 I suppose so. | |

UNIT 52**52.1**

- 3 don't you
4 were you
5 does she
6 isn't he
7 did it
8 can't you
9 will they
10 aren't there
11 shall we
12 is it
13 aren't I
14 would you
15 hasn't she
16 should I
17 had he
18 will you

52.2

- 2 It's (very) expensive, isn't it?
3 The course was great, wasn't it?
4 You've had your hair cut, haven't you? or
You had your hair cut, didn't you?
5 She has a good voice, doesn't she?
or She has a good voice, hasn't she?
or She's got / She has got a good voice, hasn't she?
6 It doesn't look right, does it?
7 This bridge isn't very safe, is it? or
... doesn't look very safe, does it?

52.3

- 2 Joe, you couldn't help me (with this table), could you?
3 Lisa, you don't know where Sarah is, do you? or
... you haven't seen Sarah, have you?
4 Helen, you don't have a tennis racket, do you? or
... you haven't got a tennis racket, have you?
5 Anna, you couldn't take me to the station, could you? or
... you couldn't give me a lift to the station, could you?
6 Robert, you haven't seen my keys, have you?

UNIT 53**53.1**

- 2 playing tennis
3 going for a walk
4 causing the accident
5 waiting a few minutes
6 not telling the truth or
(She admitted) lying.

53.2

- 2 making
3 listening
4 applying
5 reading
6 living
7 travelling
8 forgetting
9 paying
10 trying
11 losing
12 interrupting

53.3

- 2 I don't mind you driving it.
3 Can you imagine anybody being so stupid?
4 We can't stop it raining.
5 I don't want to keep you waiting.

53.4

Example answers:

2 going out
3 sitting on the floor
4 having a picnic
5 laughing
6 breaking down

UNIT 54**54.1**

- 2 to help him
3 to carry her bag (for her)
4 to meet at 8 o'clock
5 to tell him her name / to give him her name
6 not to tell anyone or (She promised) she wouldn't tell anyone.

54.2

- 2 to get
3 to live
4 to play
5 to tell
6 say or to say

54.3

- 2 to look
3 to move
4 waiting
5 to finish
6 barking
7 to be
8 having
9 missing
10 to say

54.4

- 2 Tom appears to be worried about something.
3 You seem to know a lot of people.
4 My English seems to be getting better.
5 That car appears to have broken down.
6 Rachel seems to be enjoying her job.
7 They claim to have solved the problem.

54.5

- 2 what to do
3 how to ride
4 whether to go
5 where to put
6 how to use

UNIT 55**55.1**

- 2 or do you want me to lend you some
3 or would you like me to shut it
4 or would you like me to show you
5 or do you want me to repeat it
6 or do you want me to wait

55.2

- 2 to stay with them
3 to call Joe.
4 him to be careful
5 her to give him a hand

55.3

- 2 I didn't expect it to rain.
3 Let him do what he wants.
4 Tom's glasses make him look older.
5 I want you to know the truth.
6 Sarah persuaded me to apply for the job.
7 My lawyer advised me not to say anything to the police.
8 I was warned not to believe everything he says.
9 Having a car enables you to get around more easily.

55.4

- 2 to do
3 cry
4 to study
5 finish
6 do
7 to do
8 drive
9 change
10 to work

UNIT 56**56.1**

- 2 driving
3 to go
4 going
5 to win
6 asking
7 asking
8 to answer
9 causing
10 to do
11 being
12 to climb
13 to tell
14 talking ... to see

Key to Exercises

56.2

- 2 He doesn't remember crying
- 3 He remembers falling into the river.
- 4 He doesn't remember saying he wanted to be a doctor. *or*
He doesn't remember wanting to be a doctor.
- 5 He doesn't remember being bitten by a dog.
- 6 He remembers his sister being born (when he was four).

56.3

- 1 b meeting
c leaving/putting
d to say
e lending
f to call/phone
- 2 a doing
b to say
c wearing / having / taking / putting on
d leaving / giving up
- 3 a to become
b working
c reading
d going up / rising / increasing

UNIT 57

57.1

- 2 to reach
- 3 knocking
- 4 to put
- 5 to concentrate
- 6 asking
- 7 calling
- 8 to remember
- 9 restarting

57.2

- 2 It needs cutting.
- 3 They need cleaning.
- 4 They need tightening.
- 5 It needs emptying.

57.3

- 2 washing
- 3 looking
- 4 to think
- 5 cutting
- 6 to go
- 7 to iron
- 8 ironing

57.4

- 2 look *or* to look
- 3 overhearing
- 4 smiling
- 5 make *or* to make
- 6 organise *or* to organise
- 7 thinking
- 8 get *or* to get

UNIT 58

58.1

Example answers:

- 2 I don't mind playing cards.
- 3 I don't like being alone. *or*
... to be alone.
- 4 I enjoy going to museums.
- 5 I love cooking. *or* I love to cook.
- 6 I hate getting up early.

58.2

- 2 She likes teaching biology.
- 3 He likes taking pictures. *or*
He likes to take pictures.
- 4 I didn't like working there.
- 5 She likes studying medicine.
- 6 He doesn't like being famous.
- 7 She doesn't like taking risks. *or*
She doesn't like to take risks.
- 8 I like to know things in advance.

58.3

- 2 to sit
- 3 turning
- 4 doing *or* to do
- 5 to get
- 6 being
- 7 to come / to go
- 8 living / being
- 9 to talk
- 10 to have / to know / to get /
to hear / to be told
- 11 to wait
- 12 losing *or* to lose

58.4

- 2 I would like / I'd like to have seen the programme.
- 3 I would hate / I'd hate to have lost my watch.
- 4 I would love / I'd love to have met your parents.
- 5 I wouldn't like to have been alone.
- 6 I would prefer / I'd prefer to have travelled by train.

UNIT 59

59.1

Example answers:

- 2 I prefer basketball to football.
- 3 I prefer going to the cinema to watching movies at home.
- 4 I prefer being very busy to having nothing to do.
- 6 I prefer to go to the cinema rather than watch movies at home. *or*
I prefer going to the cinema rather than watching movies at home.
- 7 I prefer to be very busy rather than have nothing to do. *or* I prefer being very busy to having nothing to do.

UNIT 60

60.1

- 2 applying for the job
- 3 remembering names
- 4 winning the lottery
- 5 being late
- 6 eating at home
- 7 having to queue *or*
(without) queuing
- 8 being 90 years old

60.2

- 2 by standing
- 3 by pressing
- 4 by borrowing
- 5 by driving
- 6 by putting

60.3

- 2 paying/settling
- 3 going
- 4 making
- 5 being/travelling/sitting
- 6 going
- 7 asking/telling/consulting/informing
- 8 doing/having
- 9 turning/going
- 10 taking
- 11 bending
- 12 buying

60.4

- 2 I'm looking forward to seeing her (again).
 3 I'm not looking forward to going to the dentist (tomorrow).
 4 She's looking forward to leaving school (next summer).
 5 They're looking forward to moving (to their new apartment).

UNIT 61**61.1**

- 2 used to going
 3 used to working / used to being
 4 used to walking
 5 used to living

61.2

- 1 It took her a few months to **get used to** it.
 She's **used to working** nights. / She **is used to working** nights.
 2 When Jack started working in this job, he **wasn't used to** driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he **got used to** it. He's **used to driving** two hours every morning. / He **is used to driving** ...

61.3

- 2 No, I'm used to sleeping on the floor.
 3 I'm used to working long hours.
 4 I'm not used to the crowds (of people).

61.4

- 2 They soon got used to her, / ... to the/their new teacher.
 3 She had to get used to living in a much smaller house.
 4 She can't get used to the weather.
 5 He had to get used to having less money.

61.5

- 2 drink
 3 eating
 4 having
 5 have/own
 6 go
 7 be
 8 being

UNIT 62**62.1**

- 2 doing
 3 coming/going
 4 doing/trying
 5 buying/having
 6 solving
 7 buying/having/owning
 8 seeing

62.2

- 2 of stealing
 3 from taking off
 4 of getting
 5 on telling
 6 to eating
 7 for being
 8 from walking (or ... stop people walking)
 9 for inviting
 10 of using
 11 of (not) trying

62.3

- 2 on taking Ann to the station
 3 on getting married
 4 Sue for coming to see her
 5 (to me) for being late
 6 me of not caring about other people

UNIT 63**63.1**

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 2 h | 6 a |
| 3 d | 7 e |
| 4 g | 8 c |
| 5 b | |

63.2

- 2 There's no point in working if you don't need money.
 3 There's no point in trying to study if you feel tired. or There's no point in studying if ...
 4 There's no point in hurrying if you have plenty of time.

63.3

- 2 remembering people's names
 3 finding a job / getting a job
 4 getting a ticket for the game
 5 understanding one another

63.4

- 2 going / travelling / getting
 3 getting
 4 watching
 5 going / climbing / walking
 6 getting / being
 7 practising
 8 working
 9 applying
 10 trying

63.5

- 2 went swimming
 3 go skiing
 4 goes riding
 5 's/has gone shopping or went shopping

UNIT 64**64.1**

- 2 I opened the box to see what was in it.
 3 I moved to a new apartment to be nearer my friends.
 4 I couldn't find a knife to chop the onions. or ... a knife to chop the onions with.
 5 I called the police to report the accident.
 6 I called the hotel to find out if they had any rooms free.
 7 I employed an assistant to help me with my work.

64.2

- 2 to do
 3 to walk
 4 to drink
 5 to put / to carry
 6 to discuss / to consider / to talk about
 7 to go / to travel
 8 to talk / to speak
 9 to wear / to put on
 10 to celebrate
 11 to help / to assist
 12 to be

64.3

- 2 to
 3 for
 4 to
 5 for
 6 for
 7 to
 8 for ... to

64.4

- 2 so that I wouldn't get/be cold.
 3 so that he could contact me. / ... would be able to contact me.
 4 so that nobody else would hear us. / so that nobody else could hear us. / ... would be able to hear us.
 5 so that we can start the meeting on time. / so that we'll be able to start ...
 6 so that we wouldn't forget anything.
 7 so that the car behind me could overtake. / ... would be able to overtake.

UNIT 65**65.1**

- 2 The window was difficult to open.
 3 Some words are impossible to translate.
 4 A car is expensive to maintain.
 5 This meat isn't safe to eat.
 6 My house is easy to get to from here.

65.2

- 2 It's an easy mistake to make.
 3 It's a great place to live.
 4 It was a strange thing to say.

Key to Exercises

65.3

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 2 glad | 6 amazed |
| 3 to hear | 7 to make |
| 4 of you | 8 not |
| 5 to help | 9 silly |

65.4

- 2 Paul was the last (person) to arrive.
3 Emily was the only student to pass (the exam). / ... the only one to pass (the exam).
4 I was the second customer/person to complain.
5 Neil Armstrong was the first person/man to walk on the moon.

65.5

- 2 You're / You are bound to be tired
3 He's / He is sure to forget
4 It's / It is not likely to rain or It isn't likely to rain
5 There's / There is sure to be

UNIT 66

66.1

- 3 I'm afraid of losing it.
4 I was afraid to tell her.
5 We were afraid of missing our train.
6 We were afraid to look.
7 I was afraid of dropping it.
8 Don't be afraid to ask.
9 I was afraid of running out of petrol.

66.2

- 2 interested in starting
3 interested to know / interested to hear
4 interested in studying
5 interested to hear / interested to know (interested in hearing/knowing *is also possible here*)
6 interested in looking

66.3

- 2 sorry to hear
3 sorry for saying / sorry I said
4 sorry to see
5 sorry for making / sorry I made

66.4

- 1 b to leave
c from leaving
2 a to solve
b to solve
c in solving
3 a of going / about going
b to go (*or on going*)
c to go
d to going
4 a to buy
b on buying
c to buy
d of buying

UNIT 67

67.1

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| 1 b give | |
| 2 a stopped | b stop |
| 3 a open | b opened |
| 4 a say | b said (<i>says is also possible</i>) |
| 5 a fell | b fall |

67.2

- 2 We saw Clare eating/sitting in a restaurant.
3 We saw David and Helen playing tennis.
4 We could smell something burning.
5 We could hear Bill playing his/the guitar.
6 We saw Linda jogging/running.

67.3

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 3 say | 8 explode |
| 4 happen | 9 crawling |
| 5 crying | 10 riding |
| 6 put | 11 slam |
| 7 tell | 12 lying |

UNIT 68

68.1

- 2 Amy was sitting in an armchair reading a book.
3 Nicola opened the door carefully trying not to make a noise.
4 Sarah went out saying she would be back in an hour.
5 Lisa worked in Rome for two years teaching English.
6 Anna walked around the town looking at the sights and taking pictures.

68.2

- 2 I got very wet walking in the rain.
3 Laura had an accident driving to work.
4 My friend slipped and fell getting off a bus.
5 Emily hurt her back trying to lift a heavy box.
6 Two people were overcome by smoke trying to put out the fire.

68.3

Example answers:

- 2 Having bought our tickets / Having got our tickets
3 Having discussed the problem / Having talked about the problem / Having thought about the problem
4 Having said he was hungry
5 Having lost his job / Having given up his job / Having been fired from his job
6 Having spent most of his life / Having lived (for) most of his life

UNIT 69

69.1

- 2 Thinking they might be hungry, ...
3 Being a vegetarian, ...
4 Not having a phone, ...
5 Having travelled a lot, ...
6 Not being able to speak the local language, ...
7 Having spent nearly all our money, ...
- 3 We went to a very nice restaurant ...
4 OK
5 I use a toothbrush ...
6 ... if there's a bank near here?
7 ... for an insurance company.
8 OK
9 ... we stayed in a big hotel.
10 If you have a problem ...
11 ... it's an interesting idea.
12 OK
13 ... it's a good game.
14 OK
15 ... wearing a beautiful necklace.
16 ... have an airport?

69.2

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 3 a key | 8 a question |
| 4 a coat | 9 a moment |
| 5 ice | 10 blood |
| 6 a biscuit | 11 a decision |
| 7 electricity | 12 an interview |

69.3

- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| 2 days | 8 air |
| 3 meat | 9 patience |
| 4 a queue | 10 an umbrella |
| 5 jokes | 11 languages |
| 6 friends | 12 space |
| 7 people | |

UNIT 70

70.1

- 1 b there's a lot of noise
2 a Light
b a light
3 a time
b a great time
4 a a glass of water
b broken glass
5 a a very nice room
b room

70.2

- 2 bad luck
3 journey
4 complete chaos
5 doesn't
6 some lovely scenery
7 very hard work
8 paper
9 heavy traffic
10 Your hair is ... it

70.3

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 2 furniture | 7 advice |
| 3 chairs | 8 experience |
| 4 hair | 9 experiences |
| 5 progress | 10 damage |
| 6 permission | |

70.4

- 2 I'd like some information about places to visit (in the town).
- 3 Can you give me some advice about which courses to do? / ... courses I can do?
- 4 I've (just) got some good news. / I've (just) had some good news. / I (just) got some good news.
- 5 It's a beautiful view (from here), isn't it?
- 6 What horrible/awful weather!

UNIT 71**71.1**

- 3 They're vegetables.
- 4 It's a flower.
- 5 They're planets.
- 6 It's a game.
- 7 They're tools.
- 8 They're rivers.
- 9 It's an insect.
- 10 They're languages.

71.2

- 2 He's a waiter.
- 3 She's a journalist.
- 4 He's a surgeon.
- 5 He's a chef.
- 6 He's a plumber.
- 7 She's a tour guide.
- 8 She's an interpreter.

71.3

- 2 a careful driver
- 3 some books
- 4 books
- 5 sore feet
- 6 a sore throat
- 7 a lovely present
- 8 some students
- 9 without an umbrella
- 10 Some people

71.4

- 4 a
- 5 Some
- 6 an
- 7 – (You're always asking questions!)
- 8 a
- 9 – (Do you like staying in hotels?)
- 10 Some
- 11 – (Those are nice shoes.)
- 12 You need a visa to visit **some** countries
- 13 Kate is a teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
- 14 He's a liar. He's always telling lies.

UNIT 72**72.1**

- 1 ... and a magazine. **The** book is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put **the** magazine.
- 2 I saw **an** accident this morning. **A** car crashed into a tree. **The** driver of **the** car wasn't hurt, but **the** car was badly damaged.
- 3 ... a blue one and a grey one. **The** blue one belongs to my neighbours. I don't know who **the** owner of **the** grey one is.
- 4 My friends live in **an** old house in **a** small village. There is **a** beautiful garden behind **the** house. I would like to have **a** garden like that.

72.2

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1 a a | 4 a the |
| b the | b a |
| c the | c an |
| 2 a a | 5 a the |
| b a | b a |
| c the | c a |
| 3 a the | |
| b the | |
| c a | |

72.3

- 2 **the** dentist
- 3 **the** door
- 4 **a** problem
- 5 **the** station
- 6 **the** post office
- 7 **a** very good player
- 8 **an** airport
- 9 **The** nearest airport
- 10 **the** floor
- 11 **the** book
- 12 **a** job in **a** bank
- 13 **a** small apartment in **the** city centre
- 14 **a** shop at **the** end of **the** street

72.4

Example answers:

- 2 About once a month.
- 3 Once or twice a year.
- 4 About seven hours a night.
- 5 Two or three times a week.
- 6 About two hours a day.
- 7 50 kilometres an hour.

UNIT 73**73.1**

- 1 a lift
- 2 a nice holiday ... **the** best holiday
- 3 **the** nearest shop ... **the** end of this street
- 4 a lovely day ... a cloud in **the** sky
- 5 **the** most expensive hotel ... a cheaper hotel
- 6 to travel **in** space ... go to **the** moon
- 7 think of **the** movie ... I thought **the** ending ...
- 8 Is it **a** star? No, it's **a** planet. It's **the** largest planet in **the** solar system.

73.2

- 2 TV
- 3 the radio
- 4 The television
- 5 dinner
- 6 the same name
- 7 for breakfast
- 8 vitamin C
- 9 the internet
- 10 the ground ... the sky
- 11 The next train ... platform 3

73.3

- 2 ... doing **the** same thing
- 3 **Room 25** is on **the** second floor.
- 4 It was **a** very hot day. It was **the** hottest day of **the** year.
- 5 We had **lunch** in **a** nice restaurant by **the** sea.
- 6 What's on at **the** cinema ...
- 7 I had **a** big breakfast ...
- 8 You'll find **the** information you need at **the** top of **page 15**.

73.4

- 2 **the** sea
- 3 question 3
- 4 **the** cinema
- 5 **the** question
- 6 breakfast
- 7 Gate 24
- 8 **the** gate

UNIT 74**74.1**

- 2 school
- 3 the school
- 4 school
- 5 ... get to and from school
- 6 the school
- 7 school
- 8 ... walk to school. The school isn't ...

Key to Exercises

74.2

- 1 b university
- c university
- d the university
- 2 a hospital
- b the hospital
- c the hospital
- d hospital
- 3 a prison
- b the prison
- c prison
- 4 a church
- b church
- c the church

74.3

- 2 to work
- 3 bed
- 4 at home
- 5 the bed
- 6 after work
- 7 in bed
- 8 home
- 9 work
- 10 like home

74.4

- 2 to school
- 3 at home *or* stayed home
(*without* at)
- 4 to work
- 5 at university
- 6 in bed
- 7 to hospital
- 8 in prison

UNIT 75

75.1

Example answers:

- 2–5 I like cats.
I don't like zoos.
I don't mind snow.
I'm not interested in boxing.

75.2

- 1 b the apples
- 2 a the people
- b people
- 3 a names
- b the names
- 4 a The First World War
- b war
- 5 a hard work
- b the work

75.3

- 3 spiders
- 4 meat
- 5 the questions
- 6 the people
- 7 Biology
- 8 lies
- 9 The hotels
- 10 The water
- 11 the grass
- 12 patience

75.4

- 1 stories
- 2 the words
- 3 the rooms
- 4 public transport
- 5 All the books
- 6 Life
- 7 The weather
- 8 water
- 9 films ('films with unhappy endings'
in general)

UNIT 76

76.1

- 1 b the cheetah
- c the kangaroo (and the rabbit)
- 2 a the swan
- b the penguin
- c the owl
- 3 a the wheel
- b the laser
- c the telescope
- 4 a the rupee
- b the (Canadian) dollar
- c the ...

76.2

- 2 a 7 a
- 3 the 8 The
- 4 a 9 the
- 5 the 10 a
- 6 the

76.3

- 2 the sick
- 3 the unemployed
- 4 the injured
- 5 the elderly
- 6 the rich

76.4

- 2 a German
- Germans / German people
- 3 a Frenchman/Frenchwoman
- the French / French people
- 4 a Russian
- Russians / Russian people
- 5 a Japanese
- the Japanese / Japanese people
- 6 a Brazilian
- Brazilians / Brazilian people
- 7 an Englishman/Englishwoman
- the English / English people
- 8 ...

UNIT 77

77.1

- 2 The doctor
- 3 Doctor Thomas
- 4 Professor Brown
- 5 the President
- 6 President Kennedy
- 7 Inspector Roberts
- 8 the Wilsons
- 9 the United States
- 10 France

77.2

- 3 OK
- 4 ... and **the** United States
- 5 ... than **the** north
- 6 OK
- 7 OK
- 8 ... in **the** Swiss Alps
- 9 **The** UK ...
- 10 **The** Seychelles ... in **the** Indian Ocean
- 11 OK
- 12 **The** River Volga flows into **the** Caspian Sea.

77.3

- 2 (in) South America
- 3 **the** Nile
- 4 Sweden
- 5 **the** United States
- 6 **the** Rockies
- 7 **the** Mediterranean
- 8 Australia
- 9 **the** Pacific
- 10 **the** Indian Ocean
- 11 **the** Thames
- 12 **the** Danube
- 13 Thailand
- 14 **the** Panama Canal
- 15 **the** Amazon

UNIT 78

78.1

- 2 Turner's in Carter Road
- 3 **the** Crown (Hotel) in Park Road
- 4 St Peter's in Market Street
- 5 **the** City Museum in George Street
- 6 Blackstone's in Forest Avenue
- 7 Mario's in George Street
- 8 Victoria Park at the end of Market Street

78.2

- 2 **The** Eiffel Tower
- 3 Buckingham Palace
- 4 **The** White House
- 5 **The** Kremlin
- 6 Broadway
- 7 **The** Acropolis
- 8 Gatwick Airport

78.3

- 2 St Paul's Cathedral
- 3 Central Park
- 4 **the** Great Wall
- 5 Dublin Airport
- 6 **The** Classic
- 7 Liverpool University
- 8 **the** National Museum
- 9 Harrison's
- 10 Cathay Pacific
- 11 **The** Morning News
- 12 **the** Leaning Tower
- 13 Cambridge University Press
- 14 **the** College of Art
- 15 **The** Imperial Hotel is in Baker Street.
- 16 **The** Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York Harbor.

UNIT 79**79.1**

- | | |
|-----------|--------|
| 2 don't | 6 pair |
| 3 doesn't | 7 are |
| 4 some | 8 a |
| 5 them | 9 it |

79.2

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 2 means | 6 news |
| 3 series | 7 species |
| 4 species | 8 means |
| 5 series | |

79.3

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 2 don't | |
| 3 want | |
| 4 was | |
| 5 are | |
| 6 is or are | |
| 7 Do | |
| 8 do or does | |
| 9 enjoy | |
| 10 is or are | |

79.4

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 2 is too hot | |
| 3 isn't enough money | |
| 4 isn't long enough | |
| 5 is a lot to carry | |

79.5

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3 ... wearing black jeans. | |
| 4 ... very nice people. | |
| 5 OK | |
| 6 There was a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman ... | |
| 7 These scissors aren't ... | |
| 8 OK (The company has is also correct) | |
| 9 ... is a very rare species. | |
| 10 Twelve hours is ... | |

UNIT 80**80.1**

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 3 train ticket | |
| 4 ticket machine | |
| 5 hotel staff | |
| 6 exam results | |
| 7 race horse | |
| 8 horse race | |
| 9 running shoes | |
| 10 shoe shop | |
| 11 shop window | |
| 12 window cleaner | |
| 13 a construction company scandal | |
| 14 car factory workers | |
| 15 road improvement scheme | |
| 16 New York department store | |

80.2

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 2 seat belt | |
| 3 credit card | |
| 4 weather forecast | |
| 5 washing machine | |
| 6 wedding ring | |
| 7 room number | |
| 8 birthday party | |
| 9 truck driver | |

80.3

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 2 school football team | |
| 3 film production company | |
| 4 life insurance policy | |
| 5 tourist information office | |

80.4

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| 2 two-hour | |
| 3 two hours | |
| 4 twenty-pound | |
| 5 ten-pound | |
| 6 15-minute | |
| 7 60 minutes | |
| 8 twelve-storey | |
| 9 five days | |
| 10 Five-star | |
| 11 six years old | |
| 12 six-year-old | |

UNIT 81**81.1**

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3 your friend's umbrella | |
| 4 OK | |
| 5 James's daughter | |
| 6 Helen and Andy's son | |
| 7 OK | |
| 8 OK | |
| 9 Your children's friends | |
| 10 OK | |
| 11 Our neighbours' garden | |
| 12 David's hair | |
| 13 OK | |
| 14 my best friend's party | |
| 15 OK | |
| 16 Ben's parents' car | |
| 17 OK | |
| 18 OK (the government's policy is also OK) | |

81.2

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| 2 father's | |
| 3 apples | |
| 4 Children's | |
| 5 Switzerland's | |
| 6 parents' | |
| 7 photos | |
| 8 someone else's | |
| 9 Shakespeare's | |

81.3

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2 Last week's storm caused a lot of damage. | |
| 3 The town's only cinema has closed down. | |
| 4 Britain's weather is very changeable. | |
| 5 The region's main industry is tourism. | |

81.4

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2 twenty minutes' walk | |
| 3 two weeks' holiday / fourteen days' holiday / a fortnight's holiday | |
| 4 an/one hour's sleep | |

UNIT 82**82.1**

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 2 hurt himself | |
| 3 blame herself | |
| 4 put yourself | |
| 5 enjoyed themselves | |
| 6 burn yourself | |
| 7 express myself | |

82.2

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 2 me | |
| 3 myself | |
| 4 us | |
| 5 yourself | |
| 6 you | |
| 7 ourselves | |
| 8 them | |
| 9 themselves | |

82.3

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| 3 feel | |
| 4 dried myself | |
| 5 concentrate | |
| 6 defend yourself | |
| 7 meeting | |
| 8 relax | |

82.4

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 2 themselves | |
| 3 each other | |
| 4 each other | |
| 5 themselves | |
| 6 each other | |
| 7 ourselves | |
| 8 each other | |
| 9 introduced ourselves to each other | |

82.5

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2 I made it myself | |
| 3 Laura told me herself / Laura herself told me | |
| 4 know themselves | |
| 5 cuts it himself | |
| 6 do it yourself? | |

UNIT 83**83.1**

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2 We met a relative of yours. | |
| 3 Jason borrowed a book of mine. | |
| 4 I met Lisa and some friends of hers. | |
| 5 We had dinner with a neighbour of ours. | |
| 6 I went on holiday with two friends of mine. | |
| 7 I met a friend of Amy's at the party. | |
| 8 It's always been an ambition of mine to travel round the world. | |

83.2

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 2 his own opinions | |
| 3 her own business | |
| 4 our own words | |
| 5 its own private beach | |

Key to Exercises

83.3

- 2 your own fault
- 3 her own ideas
- 4 your own problems
- 5 his own decisions

83.4

- 2 make her own (clothes)
- 3 clean your own (shoes)
- 4 bake our own (bread)
- 5 write their own (songs)

83.5

- 2 myself
- 3 our own
- 4 themselves
- 5 himself
- 6 their own
- 7 yourself
- 8 her own

83.6

- 2 Sam and Chris are colleagues of **mine**.
- 3 I was scared. I didn't want to go out **on** my own.
- 4 In my last job I had **my** own office.
- 5 He must be lonely. He's always **by** himself.
- 6 My parents have gone away with some friends of **theirs**.
- 7 Are there any countries that produce all **their** own food?

UNIT 84

84.1

- 3 There's / There is
- 4 there wasn't
- 5 Is it
- 6 Is there
- 7 there was
- 8 It isn't / It's not
- 9 There wasn't
- 10 It's / It is ... there isn't
- 11 It was
- 12 Is there ... there's / there is
- 13 It's / It is ... There's / There is
- 14 there was ... It was

84.2

- 2 There's / There is a lot of salt in the soup. **or** ... too much salt ...
- 3 There was nothing in the box.
- 4 There were about 50 people at the meeting.
- 5 There's / There is a lot of violence in the film.
- 6 (example answers)
There is a lot to do in this town. /
... plenty to do in this town. /
... a lot happening in this town. **or**
There are a lot of places to go in this town.

84.3

- 2 There may be
- 3 There won't be
- 4 There's / There is going to be
- 5 There used to be
- 6 there should be
- 7 there wouldn't be

84.4

- 3 **there** will be an opportunity
- 4 **There** must have been a reason.
- 5 OK
- 6 OK
- 7 **There** used to be a lot of tourists
- 8 **There's** no signal.
- 9 OK
- 10 **There's** sure to be a car park somewhere.
- 11 OK
- 12 **there** would be somebody ... but **there** wasn't anybody.

UNIT 85

85.1

- 2 some
- 3 any
- 4 some
- 5 any ... some
- 6 any
- 7 some
- 8 any
- 9 some
- 10 any
- 11 some ... any

85.2

- 2 somebody/someone
- 3 anybody/anyone
- 4 anything
- 5 something
- 6 anything **or** anybody/anyone
- 7 anybody/anyone
- 8 somewhere
- 9 anybody/anyone
- 10 something
- 11 Anybody/Anyone
- 12 somebody/someone ... anybody/anyone
- 13 anywhere
- 14 anything
- 15 something
- 16 something ... anybody/anyone
- 17 somebody/someone ... anybody/anyone
- 18 anybody/anyone anything

85.3

- 2 Any day
- 3 Anything
- 4 anybody/anyone
- 5 Any job **or** Anything
- 6 anywhere
- 7 Anybody/Anyone

UNIT 86

86.1

- 3 no
- 4 any
- 5 None
- 6 no
- 7 none
- 8 any
- 9 no
- 10 any
- 11 none
- 12 no
- 13 any
- 14 no

86.2

- 2 Nobody/No-one.
- 3 None.
- 4 Nowhere.
- 5 None.
- 6 Nothing.
- 7 I'm not waiting for anybody/anyone.
- 8 I didn't buy any (bread).
- 9 I'm not going anywhere.
- 10 I haven't read any (books).
- 11 It doesn't cost anything.

86.3

- 2 nobody/no-one
- 3 Nowhere
- 4 anything
- 5 Nobody/No-one
- 6 anywhere
- 7 Nothing
- 8 **Nothing**. I couldn't find **anything** I wanted.
- 9 **Nobody/No-one** said **anything**.

86.4

- 2 nobody
- 3 anyone
- 4 Anybody
- 5 Nothing
- 6 Anything
- 7 anything
- 8 any
- 9 No-one ... anyone

UNIT 87

87.1

- 3 OK
- 4 It cost **a lot** to ...
- 5 OK
- 6 You have **a lot of** luggage.
- 7 OK
- 8 ... know **many** people **or** ... know **a lot of** people
- 9 OK
- 10 He travels **a lot**.

87.2

- 2 He has (got) plenty of money.
- 3 There's plenty of room.
- 4 ... she still has plenty to learn.
- 5 There is plenty to see.
- 6 There are plenty of hotels.

87.3

- 2 little
3 many
4 few
5 little
6 many
7 little
8 much
9 few

87.4

- 2 a few dollars
3 little traffic
4 a few years ago
5 a little time
6 only a few words
7 Few people

87.5

- 2 a little
3 a few
4 few
5 little
6 a little
7 little
8 a few
9 a few
10 a little

UNIT 88**88.1**

- 3 —
4 of
5 —
6 —
7 of
8 of
9 — (**of** is also correct)
10 —
11 —
12 of

88.2

- 3 of my spare time
4 accidents
5 of the buildings
6 of her friends
7 of the population
8 birds
9 of the players
10 of her opinions
11 European countries
12 (of) my dinner

88.3

Example answers:

- 2 the time
3 my friends
4 (of) the questions
5 the pictures / the photos / the photographs
6 (of) the money

88.4

- 2 All of them
3 none of us
4 some of it
5 none of them
6 Some of them
7 all of it
8 none of it

UNIT 89**89.1**

- 2 Neither
3 both
4 Either
5 Neither
6 both

89.2

- 2 either
3 both
4 Neither of
5 **neither** driver ... **both** / **both the** / **both of the** cars
6 both / both of

89.3

- 2 either of them
3 both of them
4 Neither of us
5 neither of them

89.4

- 3 The movie was both boring and long.
4 Neither Joe nor Sam has a car. or ... has got a car.
5 Emily speaks both German and Russian.
6 Ben neither watches TV nor reads newspapers.
7 That man's name is either Richard or Robert.
8 I have neither the time nor the money to go on holiday.
9 We can leave either today or tomorrow.

89.5

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 2 either | 5 any |
| 3 any | 6 either |
| 4 none | 7 neither |

UNIT 90**90.1**

- 3 Everybody/Everyone
4 Everything
5 all
6 everybody/everyone
7 everything
8 All
9 everybody/everyone
10 All
11 everything
12 Everybody/Everyone
13 All
14 everything

90.2

- 2 The whole team played well.
3 He ate the whole box (of chocolates).
4 They searched the whole house.
5 The whole family plays tennis. or ... play tennis.
6 Sarah/She worked the whole day.
7 It rained the whole week.
8 Sarah worked all day.
9 It rained all week.

90.3

- 2 every four hours
3 every four years
4 every five minutes
5 every six months

90.4

- 2 every day
3 all day
4 The whole building
5 Every time
6 all the time
7 all my luggage

UNIT 91**91.1**

- 3 Each
4 Every
5 Each
6 every
7 each
8 every

91.2

- 3 Every
4 Each
5 every
6 every
7 each of
8 every
9 each
10 Every
11 each of
12 each

91.3

- 2 Sonia and I had ten pounds each. or Sonia and I each had ten pounds.
3 Those postcards cost a pound each / ... one pound each. or Those postcards are a pound each / ... one pound each
4 We paid 200 dollars each. or We each paid 200 dollars.

91.4

- 2 everyone
3 every one (2 words)
4 Everyone
5 every one (2 words)

Key to Exercises

UNIT 92

92.1

- 2 A customer is someone who buys something from a shop.
- 3 A burglar is someone who breaks into a house to steal things.
- 4 A coward is someone who is not brave.
- 5 A tenant is someone who pays rent to live somewhere.
- 6 A shoplifter is someone who steals from a shop.
- 7 A liar is someone who doesn't tell the truth.
- 8 A pessimist is someone who expects the worst to happen.

92.2

- 2 The waiter who/that served us was impolite and impatient.
- 3 The building that/which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.
- 4 The people who/that were arrested have now been released.
- 5 The bus that/which goes to the airport runs every half hour.

92.3

- 2 who/that runs away from home
- 3 that/which were hanging on the wall
- 4 that/which cannot be explained
- 5 who/that has stayed there
- 6 that/which happened in the past
- 7 who/that developed the theory of relativity
- 8 that/which can support life

92.4

- 3 the nearest shop **that/which** sells
- 4 some things about me **that/which** were
- 5 The driver **who/that** caused
- 6 OK (the person **who** took *is also correct*)
- 7 a world **that/which** is changing
- 8 OK
- 9 the horse **that/which** won

UNIT 93

93.1

- 3 OK (the people **who/that** we met *is also correct*)
- 4 The people **who/that** work in the office
- 5 OK (the people **who/that** I work with *is also correct*)
- 6 OK (the money **that/which** I gave you *is also correct*)
- 7 the money **that/which** was on the table
- 8 OK (the worst film **that/which** you've ever seen *is also correct*)
- 9 the best thing **that/which** has ever happened to you

93.2

- 2 you're wearing or that/which you're wearing
- 3 you're going to see or that/which you're going to see
- 4 I/we wanted to visit or that/which I/we wanted to visit
- 5 I/we invited to the party or who/whom/that we invited ...
- 6 you had to do or that/which you had to do
- 7 I/we rented or that/which I/we rented

93.3

- 2 the wedding we were invited to
- 3 the hotel you told me about
- 4 the job I applied for
- 5 the concert you went to
- 6 somebody you can rely on
- 7 the people you were with

93.4

- 3 – (*that is also correct*)
- 4 what
- 5 that
- 6 what
- 7 – (*that is also correct*)
- 8 what
- 9 – (*that is also correct*)

UNIT 94

94.1

- 2 whose wife is an English teacher
- 3 who owns a restaurant
- 4 whose ambition is to climb Everest
- 5 who have just got married
- 6 whose parents used to work in a circus

94.2

- 2 *more formal* I went to see a lawyer **whom** a friend of mine (had) recommended.
less formal I went to see a lawyer a friend of mine (had) recommended.
- 3 *more formal* The person **to whom** I spoke wasn't very helpful.
less formal The person I spoke **to** wasn't very helpful.
- 4 *more formal* The woman **with whom** Tom was in love wasn't in love with him.
less formal The woman Tom was in love **with** wasn't in love with him.

94.3

- 2 where
- 3 who
- 4 whose
- 5 where
- 6 whose
- 7 whom
- 8 where

94.4

Example answers:

- 2 The reason I left my job was that the salary was too low.
- 3 I'll never forget the time I got stuck in a lift.
- 4 2009 was the year Amanda got married.
- 5 The reason they don't have a car is that neither of them can drive.
- 6 The last time I saw Sam was about six months ago.
- 7 Do you remember the day we first met?

UNIT 95

95.1

- 3 We drove to the airport, which was not far from the city.
- 4 Kate's husband, who I've never met, is an airline pilot. *or* ... whom I've never met ...
- 5 Lisa, whose job involves a lot of travelling, is away from home a lot.
- 6 Paul and Emily have a daughter, Alice, who has just started school.
- 7 The new stadium, which will be finished next month, will hold 90,000 spectators.
- 8 My brother lives in Alaska, which is the largest state in the US.
- 9 Our teacher, whose name I have forgotten, was very kind.
- 10 We enjoyed our visit to the museum, where we saw a lot of interesting things.

95.2

- 2 The strike at the factory, which began ten days ago, has now ended.
- 3 I've found the book I was looking for this morning. *or* ... the book that/which I was looking for ...
- 4 My car, which I've had for 15 years, has never broken down.
- 5 Few of the people who/that applied for the job had the necessary qualifications.
- 6 Amy showed me a picture of her son, who is a police officer.

95.3

- 2 My office, **which** is on the second floor, is very small.
- 3 OK
(The office I'm using ... *and* The office **which** I'm using ... *are also correct*)
- 4 Sarah's father, **who** used to be in the army, now works for a TV company.
- 5 OK (The doctor **who** examined me ... *is also correct*)
- 6 The sun, **which** is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.

UNIT 96**96.1**

- 2 in which
3 with whom
4 to which
5 of which
6 of whom
7 for which
8 after which

96.2

- 2 most of which was useless
3 none of whom was suitable
4 one of which they never use
5 half of which he gave to his parents
6 both of whom are lawyers
7 neither of which she replied to
8 only a few of whom I knew
10 sides of which were lined with trees
11 the aim of which is to save money

96.3

- 2 which makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.
3 which was very kind of her.
4 which makes it hard to contact her.
5 which is good news.
6 which meant I had to wait two hours at the airport.
7 which means we can't go away tomorrow.
8 which she apologised for or for which she apologised

UNIT 97**97.1**

- 2 The taxi taking us to the airport
3 a path leading to the river
4 A factory employing 500 people
5 man sitting next to me on the plane
6 brochure containing the information I needed

97.2

- 2 stolen from the museum
3 damaged in the storm
4 made at the meeting
5 surrounded by trees
6 involved in the project

97.3

- 3 invited
4 called
5 living
6 offering
7 caused
8 blown
9 sitting ... reading
10 working ... studying

97.4

- 3 There's somebody coming.
4 There's nothing left.
5 There were a lot of people travelling.
6 There was nobody else staying there.
7 There was nothing written on it.
8 There's a course beginning next Monday.

UNIT 98**98.1**

- 2 a exhausting
b exhausted
3 a depressing
b depressed
c depressed
4 a exciting
b exciting
c excited

98.2

- 2 interested
3 exciting
4 embarrassing
5 embarrassed
6 amazed
7 amazing
8 amused
9 interested
10 terrifying ... shocked
11 (look so) bored ... (really so) boring
12 boring ... interesting

98.3

- 2 bored
3 confusing
4 disgusting
5 interested
6 annoyed
7 boring
8 exhausted
9 excited
10 amusing
11 interesting

UNIT 99**99.1**

- 2 an unusual gold ring
3 a beautiful old house
4 red leather gloves
5 an old American film
6 tiny pink flowers
7 a long thin face
8 big black clouds
9 a lovely sunny day
10 an ugly yellow dress
11 a long wide avenue
12 important new ideas
13 a nice new green sweater
14 a small black metal box
15 beautiful long black hair
16 an interesting old French painting
17 a large red and yellow umbrella
18 a big fat black and white cat

99.2

- 2 tastes/tasted awful
3 feel nervous
4 smell nice
5 look wet
6 sounds/sounded interesting

99.3

- 2 happy
3 happily
4 terrible
5 properly
6 good
7 slow
8 badly
9 violent

99.4

- 3 the last two days
4 the first two weeks of May
5 the next few days
6 the first three questions (in the exam)
7 the next two years
8 the last three days of our holiday

UNIT 100**100.1**

- 2 easily
3 patiently
4 unexpectedly
5 regularly
6 perfectly ... slowly ... clearly

100.2

- 2 selfishly
3 suddenly
4 sudden
5 badly
6 awful
7 terribly
8 comfortable
9 clearly
10 safe
11 safe
12 safely

100.3

- 2 frequently
3 fluent
4 specially
5 complete
6 perfectly
7 financially or completely
8 permanently
9 nervous
10 dangerously

100.4

- 2 seriously ill
3 absolutely enormous
4 slightly damaged
5 unusually quiet
6 completely changed
7 unnecessarily long
8 happily married
9 badly planned

Key to Exercises

UNIT 101

101.1

- 2 good
- 3 well
- 4 well
- 5 good
- 6 well
- 7 well
- 8 well ... good

101.2

- 2 well-known
- 3 well-kept
- 4 well-written
- 5 well-informed
- 6 well-paid

101.3

- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 2 slowly | 6 hardly |
| 3 lately | 7 hard |
| 4 fast | 8 hardly see |
| 5 hard | 9 hard |

101.4

- 2 hardly hear
- 3 hardly slept
- 4 hardly speak
- 5 hardly said
- 6 hardly changed
- 7 hardly recognised

101.5

- 2 hardly any
- 3 hardly anything
- 4 hardly anybody/anyone
- 5 hardly ever
- 6 hardly anywhere
- 7 hardly or hardly ever
- 8 hardly anybody/anyone
- 9 hardly any
- 10 hardly anywhere

UNIT 102

102.1

- 2 so
- 3 such
- 4 such a
- 5 such
- 6 such a
- 7 so
- 8 so
- 9 such a
- 10 such

102.2

- 2 The bag was **so** heavy
- 3 I've got **such** a lot to do
- 4 I was **so** surprised
- 5 The music was **so** loud
- 6 It was **such** horrible weather
- 7 Her English is **so** good
- 8 The hotel was **such** a long way
- 9 I had **such** a big breakfast

102.3

- 2 Why are you in such a hurry?
- 3 I'm surprised it took so long.
- 4 ... but there's no such company.
- 5 ... why I did such a stupid thing.
- 6 Why are you driving so slowly?
- 7 How did you learn English in such a short time?
- 8 Why did you buy such an expensive phone?

102.4

Example answers:

- 2 She's so **friendly**.
- 3 She's such a **nice person**.
- 4 I haven't seen you for so **long**.
- 5 I didn't realise it was such a **long way**.
- 6 There were so **many people**.

UNIT 103

103.1

- 3 enough buses
- 4 wide enough
- 5 enough time
- 6 enough vegetables
- 7 tall enough
- 8 enough room
- 9 warm enough
- 10 enough cups

103.2

- 2 too busy to talk
- 3 too late to go
- 4 warm enough to sit
- 5 too shy to be
- 6 enough patience to be
- 7 too far away to hear
- 8 enough English to read

103.3

- 2 This coffee is too hot to drink.
- 3 The piano was too heavy to move.
- 4 These apples aren't / are not ripe enough to eat.
- 5 The situation is too complicated to explain.
- 6 The wall was too high to climb over.
- 7 This sofa isn't / is not big enough for three people (to sit on).
- 8 Some things are too small to see without a microscope. or ... to be seen without a microscope.

UNIT 104

104.1

- 2 quite hungry
- 3 quite often
- 4 quite noisy
- 5 quite surprised
- 6 quite late
- 7 quite old

104.2

- 2 quite a good voice
- 3 quite a long way
- 4 a pretty cold wind
- 5 quite a lot of traffic
- 6 a pretty busy day
- 7 started fairly recently

104.3

Example answers:

- 2 rather long
- 3 rather strange
- 4 rather impatient
- 5 rather expensive

104.4

- 3 more than a little ...
- 4 completely
- 5 more than a little ...
- 6 more than a little ...
- 7 completely

104.5

- 2 quite safe
- 3 quite impossible
- 4 quite right
- 5 quite different
- 6 quite sure

UNIT 105

105.1

- 2 stronger
- 3 smaller
- 4 more expensive
- 5 warmer / hotter
- 6 more interesting / more exciting
- 7 nearer / closer
- 8 harder / more difficult / more complicated
- 9 better
- 10 worse
- 11 more often
- 12 further / farther

105.2

- 3 more serious than
- 4 thinner
- 5 bigger
- 6 more interested
- 7 more important than
- 8 more peaceful than
- 9 more slowly
- 10 higher than

105.3

- 2 careful
- 3 better
- 4 frequent
- 5 more
- 6 worse
- 7 than
- 8 quietly

105.4

- 2 I ran further/farther than Dan.
- 3 The journey takes longer by train than by car.
- 4 My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
- 5 The traffic today is worse than usual.

UNIT 106**106.1**

- 2 much bigger
3 a lot more interesting than
4 a little cooler
5 far more complicated than
6 a bit more slowly
7 slightly older

106.2

- 2 any sooner / any earlier
3 no higher than / no more expensive than / no worse than
4 any further/farther
5 no worse than

106.3

- 2 bigger and bigger
3 more and more nervous
4 worse and worse
5 more and more expensive
6 better and better
7 more and more time

106.4

- 2 The more tired you are, the harder it is to concentrate.
3 The sooner we decide (what to do), the better.
4 The more I know, the less I understand.
5 The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be.
6 The more / The longer she had to wait, the more impatient she became.

106.5

- 2 more
3 longer
4 any
5 the
6 older
7 elder or older
8 slightly
9 no
10 (The) less (he knows, the) better

UNIT 107**107.1**

- 2 My salary isn't as high as yours.
3 You don't know as much about cars as me. *or* ... as I do. *or* ... as I know.
4 We aren't as busy today as we were yesterday. *or* ... as busy today as yesterday.
5 I don't feel as bad as I did earlier. *or* ... as I felt earlier.
6 Our neighbours haven't lived here as long as us. *or* ... as long as we have.
7 I wasn't as nervous (before the interview) as I usually am. *or* ... as usual.

107.2

- 3 The station wasn't as far as I thought.
4 The meal cost less than I expected.
5 I don't watch TV as much as I used to. *or* ... as often as I used to.
6 Karen used to have longer hair.
7 You don't know them as well as me. *or* ... as I do.
8 There aren't as many students in this class as in the other one.

107.3

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 2 as well as | 5 as often as |
| 3 as long as | 6 as quietly as |
| 4 as soon as | 7 as hard as |

107.4

- 2 Your hair is the same colour as mine.
3 I arrived (at) the same time as you.
4 My birthday is (on) the same day as Tom's. *or* My birthday is the same as Tom's.

107.5

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 2 than | 6 much |
| 3 as | 7 twice |
| 4 him | 8 is |
| 5 less | 9 me |

UNIT 108**108.1**

- 2 the tallest
3 the worst
4 the most popular
5 the best
6 the most honest
7 the shortest

108.2

- 3 better
4 the most expensive
5 more comfortable
6 The eldest *or* The oldest
7 oldest
8 the quickest
9 quicker
10 my earliest
11 ... **the highest** mountain in the world ... It is **higher** than ...
12 Do you have a **sharper** one?
No, it's **the sharpest** one I have.

108.3

- 2 It's the largest country in South America.
3 It was the happiest day of my life.
4 It's the most valuable painting in the museum.
5 It's the busiest time of the year.
7 He's one of the richest men in the country.
8 She's one of the best students in the class.
9 It was one of the worst experiences of my life.
10 It's one of the most famous universities in the world.

108.4

- 2 That's the funniest joke I've ever heard.
3 This is the best coffee I've ever tasted.
4 That's the furthest/farthest I've ever run.
5 It's the worst mistake I've ever made.
or It was the worst ...
6 Who's the most famous person you've ever met?

UNIT 109**109.1**

- 3 Joe doesn't like football very much.
4 Dan won the race easily.
5 OK
6 Have you seen Chris recently?
7 I borrowed some money from a friend.
8 OK
9 I ate my breakfast quickly and went out. *or* I quickly ate my breakfast and ...
10 Did you invite a lot of people to the party?
11 Sam watches TV all the time.
12 OK

109.2

- 2 I met a friend of mine on my way home.
3 I forgot to put a stamp on the envelope.
4 We bought a lot of fruit in the market.
5 They built a new hotel opposite the park.
6 Did you learn a lot of things at school today?
7 We found some interesting books in the library.
8 Please write your name at the top of the page.

109.3

- 2 I go to the supermarket every Friday.
3 Why did you come home so late?
4 Sarah takes her children to school every day.
5 I haven't been to the cinema recently.
6 I remembered her name after a few minutes.
7 We walked around the town all morning.
8 My brother has been in Canada since April.
9 I didn't see you at the party on Saturday night.
10 Lisa left her umbrella in a restaurant last night.
11 The moon goes round the earth every 27 days.
12 Anna has been teaching Italian in London for the last three years.

Key to Exercises

UNIT 110

110.1

- 3 I usually have ...
- 4 OK
- 5 Steve hardly ever gets angry.
- 6 ... and I also sent an email.
- 7 I always have to repeat ...
- 8 I've never worked / I have never worked ...
- 9 OK
- 10 ... my friends were already there. or ... my friends were there already.

110.2

- 2 Katherine is always very generous.
- 3 I don't usually have to work on Sundays.
- 4 Do you always watch TV in the evenings?
- 5 ... he is also learning Japanese.
- 6 a We were all on holiday in Spain.
b We were all staying at the same hotel.
c We all had a great time.
- 7 a The new hotel is probably expensive.
b It probably costs a lot to stay there.
- 8 a I can probably help you.
b I probably can't help you.

110.3

- 2 usually sleeps
- 3 It's / It is usually easy to ... or Usually it's / it is easy to ...
- 4 were both born
- 5 She can also sing
- 6 Do you usually go ...
- 7 I have / I've never spoken
- 8 We're / We are still living ...
- 9 You always have to wait ...
- 10 We might never meet
- 11 I probably won't be
- 12 Will you still be
- 13 She's / She is hardly ever
- 14 We would / We'd never have met
- 15 It doesn't always take
- 16 We were all ... we all fell
- 17 always says ... she never does

UNIT 111

111.1

- 3 He doesn't write poems any more.
- 4 He still wants to be a teacher.
- 5 He isn't / He's not interested in politics any more.
- 6 He's still single.
- 7 He doesn't go fishing any more.
- 8 He doesn't have a beard any more. or He hasn't got ...
- 10–12
He no longer writes poems.
He is / He's no longer interested in politics.
He no longer goes fishing.
He no longer has a beard. / He's no longer got a beard.

111.2

- 2 He hasn't gone yet.
- 3 They haven't finished (it) yet. / ... finished repairing the road yet.
- 4 They haven't woken up yet.
- 5 She hasn't found one yet. / ... found a job yet.
- 6 I haven't decided (what to do) yet.
- 7 It hasn't taken off yet.

111.3

- 3 still
- 4 yet
- 5 any more
- 6 yet
- 7 any more
- 8 still
- 9 already
- 10 still
- 11 already
- 12 yet
- 13 still
- 14 already
- 15 still
- 16 any more

UNIT 112

112.1

- 2 even Lisa
- 3 not even Amy
- 4 even Lisa
- 5 even Kate
- 6 not even Lisa

112.2

- 2 We even painted the floor.
- 3 She's even met the prime minister.
- 4 You could even hear it from the next street. / You could even hear the noise from ... or
You could hear it / the noise even from the next street.
- 6 I can't even remember her name.
- 7 There isn't even a cinema.
- 8 He didn't even tell his wife (where he was going).
- 9 I don't even know my neighbours.

112.3

- 2 even older
- 3 even better
- 4 even more difficult
- 5 even worse
- 6 even less

112.4

- 2 if
- 3 even if
- 4 even
- 5 even though
- 6 Even
- 7 even though
- 8 even if
- 9 Even though

UNIT 113

113.1

- 2 Although I had never seen her before
- 3 although it was quite cold
- 4 although we don't like them very much
- 5 Although I didn't speak the language well
- 6 Although the heating was on
- 7 although I'd met her twice before
- 8 although we've known each other a long time

113.2

- 2 a In spite of (or Despite)
b Although
- 3 a because
b although
- 4 a because of
b in spite of (or despite)
- 5 a Although
b because of

Example answers:

- 6 a he hadn't studied very hard
b he had studied very hard
- 7 a I was hungry
b being hungry / my hunger / the fact (that) I was hungry

113.3

- 2 In spite of playing quite well, we lost the game. or In spite of the fact (that) we played quite well ...
- 3 Although I'd hurt my foot, I managed to walk home. or I managed to walk home although I'd ...
- 4 I enjoyed the film in spite of the silly story. / ... in spite of the story being silly. / ... in spite of the fact (that) the story was silly. or
In spite of ..., I enjoyed the film.
- 5 Despite living in the same building, we hardly ever see each other. or Despite the fact (that) we live in ... or We hardly ever see each other despite ...
- 6 They came to the party even though they hadn't been invited. or Even though they hadn't been invited, they came to the party.

113.4

- 2 It's very long though.
- 3 We ate it though.
- 4 I don't like her husband though.

UNIT 114

114.1

- 2 in case you get hungry / ... you are hungry
- 3 in case it rains
- 4 in case you get thirsty / ... you are thirsty
- 5 in case you need to call somebody
- 6 in case you get lonely / ... you are lonely

114.2

- 2 I'll say goodbye now in case I don't see you again (before you go).
 3 Can you check the list in case we've forgotten something? / ... in case we forgot something?
 4 Keep the receipt in case they don't fit you (and you have to take them back to the shop).

114.3

- 2 in case I forgot it.
 3 in case they were worried (about me).
 4 in case she didn't get the first one. / in case she hadn't got ...
 5 in case they came/come to London (one day).

114.4

- 3 If
 4 in case
 5 if
 6 in case
 7 if
 8 if
 9 in case
 10 in case

UNIT 115**115.1**

- 2 You won't know what to do unless you listen carefully.
 3 I'll never speak to her again unless she apologises (to me). or Unless she apologises (to me), I'll ...
 4 He won't understand you unless you speak very slowly. or Unless you speak very slowly, he ...
 5 The company will have to close unless business improves soon. or Unless business improves soon, the company ...
 6 The problem will get worse unless we do something soon. or Unless we do something soon, the problem ...

115.2

- 2 I'm not going (to the party) unless you go too. / ... unless you're going too.
 3 The dog won't chase you unless you move suddenly.
 4 Ben won't speak to you unless you ask him something.
 5 The doctor won't see you unless it's an emergency. / ... unless it's an emergency.

115.3

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 2 unless | 7 provided |
| 3 providing | 8 Unless |
| 4 as long as | 9 unless |
| 5 unless | 10 as long as |
| 6 unless | |

115.4

Example answers:

- 2 it's not too hot.
 3 there isn't too much traffic.
 4 it isn't raining.
 5 I'm in a hurry.
 6 you have something else to do.
 7 you pay it back next week.
 8 you don't tell anyone else.
 9 you take risks.

UNIT 116**116.1**

- 2 I listened as she told me her story.
 3 I burnt myself as I was taking a hot dish out of the oven.
 4 The spectators cheered as the two teams came onto the field.
 5 A dog ran out in front of the car as we were driving along the road.

116.2

- 2 As today is a public holiday, all government offices are shut.
 3 As I didn't want to disturb anybody, I tried to be very quiet.
 4 As I can't go to the concert, you can have my ticket.
 5 As it was a nice day, we went for a walk by the canal.

116.3

- 3 because
 4 at the same time as
 5 at the same time as
 6 because
 7 because

116.4

- 3 OK
 4 when I was in London
 5 When I left school
 6 OK
 7 when I was a child
 8 OK

116.5

Example answers:

- 2 I saw you as you were getting into your car.
 3 It started to rain just as we started playing tennis.
 4 As she doesn't have a phone, it's quite difficult to contact her.
 5 Just as I took the picture, somebody walked in front of my phone.

UNIT 117**117.1**

- 3 ... like his father
 4 ... people like him
 5 OK
 6 Like her mother ...
 7 ... like talking to the wall
 8 OK
 9 OK
 10 like a fish

117.2

- 2 e
 3 b
 4 f
 5 d
 6 a

117.3

- 2 like blocks of ice
 3 like a beginner
 4 as a tour guide
 5 like a theatre
 6 as a birthday present
 7 like winter
 8 like a child

117.4

- 2 like
 3 as
 4 as
 5 like
 6 As
 7 as
 8 like
 9 like or such as
 10 as
 11 like
 12 as
 13 like
 14 like
 15 as
 16 like

UNIT 118**118.1**

- 2 You look as if you've seen a ghost. / ... as if you saw a ghost.
 3 I feel like I've (just) run a marathon. / ... like I (just) ran a marathon.
 4 You sound as if you're having a good time.

118.2

- 2 It looks like it's going to rain.
 3 It sounds like they're having an argument.
 4 It looks like there's been an accident.
 5 It looks like they don't have any.
 6 It sounds like you should see a doctor.

Key to Exercises

118.3

- 2 as if he meant what he said
- 3 as if she's hurt her leg / as if she hurt her leg
- 4 as if he hadn't eaten for a week
- 5 as if she was enjoying it
- 6 as if I was crazy / as if I were crazy
- 7 as if she didn't want to come
- 8 as if I didn't exist

118.4

- 2 as if I was/were
- 3 as if she was/were
- 4 as if it was/were

UNIT 119

119.1

- 3 during
- 4 for
- 5 for
- 6 during
- 7 for
- 8 during (or in)
- 9 for
- 10 for
- 11 during
- 12 for

119.2

- | | |
|------------------|-----------|
| 3 while | 8 while |
| 4 While | 9 during |
| 5 during | 10 while |
| 6 during (or in) | 11 During |
| 7 during (or in) | 12 while |

119.3

- 1 for
- 2 during
- 3 while
- 4 during (or in)
- 5 for
- 6 while
- 7 during (or in)
- 8 for
- 9 while
- 10 during

119.4

Example answers:

- 3 Can you wait for me while I make a quick phone call?
- 4 Most of the students looked bored during the lesson.
- 5 I was asked a lot of questions during the interview.
- 6 Don't open the car door while the car is moving.
- 7 The lights suddenly went out while we were watching TV.
- 8 What are you going to do while you're on holiday?
- 9 It started to rain during the game.
- 10 It started to rain while we were walking home.

UNIT 120

120.1

- 2 by 8.30
- 3 Let me know by Saturday
- 4 you're here by 2 o'clock.
- 5 we should arrive by lunchtime.

120.2

- 2 by
- 3 until
- 4 by
- 5 until
- 6 by
- 7 by
- 8 until
- 9 by
- 10 by
- 11 until
- 12 By
- 13 until
- 14 by

120.3

Example answers:

- 3 until I come back
- 4 by 5 o'clock
- 5 by 3 April
- 6 until 2028
- 7 until midnight

120.4

- 2 By the time I got to the station
- 3 By the time I finished (work)
- 4 By the time the police arrived
- 5 By the time we got to the top (of the mountain)

UNIT 121

121.1

- 2 on
- 3 in
- 4 at (or **on** in American English)
- 5 on (or I last saw her Tuesday.)
- 6 in
- 7 in
- 8 at
- 9 on (or There are usually a lot of parties New Year's Eve.)
- 10 at
- 11 in
- 12 in
- 13 at
- 14 on
- 15 in
- 16 At
- 17 in
- 18 on
- 19 at
- 20 **at** 5 o'clock **in** the morning
- 21 **on** 7 January ... **in** April
- 22 **on** Tuesday morning ... **in** the afternoon *or* at home Tuesday morning ... **in** the afternoon

121.2

- 2 at night
- 3 in the evening
- 4 on 21 July 1969
- 5 at the same time
- 6 in the 1920s
- 7 in about 20 minutes
- 8 at the moment
- 9 in 11 seconds
- 10 on Saturdays *or* ... works Saturdays

121.3

- 3 a
- 4 *both*
- 5 a
- 6 *both*
- 7 b
- 8 a
- 9 *both*
- 10 b

UNIT 122

122.1

- 2 on time
- 3 on time
- 4 in time
- 5 on time
- 6 in time
- 7 in time
- 8 on time
- 9 in time

122.2

- 2 I got home just in time.
- 3 I stopped him just in time.
- 4 We got to the cinema just in time for the beginning of the film. / ... just in time to see the beginning of the film.

122.3

- 2 at the end of the month
- 3 at the end of the course
- 4 at the end of the race
- 5 at the end of the interview

122.4

- 2 In the end she resigned (from her job). *or* She resigned (from her job) in the end.
- 3 In the end I gave up (trying to learn Japanese / learning Japanese). *or* I gave up (learning Japanese) in the end.
- 4 In the end we decided not to go (to the party). *or* In the end we didn't go (to the party). *or* We decided not to go (to the party) in the end. *or* We didn't go (to the party) in the end.

122.5

- | | |
|------|------------|
| 2 In | 7 in |
| 3 in | 8 in |
| 4 at | 9 in |
| 5 In | 10 at...at |
| 6 At | |

UNIT 123**123.1**

- 2 On his arm. *or* On the man's arm.
 3 At the traffic lights.
 4 On the door. (notice)
 In the door. (key)
 5 On the wall.
 6 In Paris.
 7 At the gate. (man)
 On the gate. (bird)
 8 On the beach.

123.2

- 2 on my guitar
 3 at junction 14
 4 in his hand
 5 on that tree
 6 in the mountains
 7 on the island
 8 at the window

123.3

- 2 on
 3 at
 4 on
 5 in
 6 on
 7 in
 8 at
 9 on
 10 at
 11 in
 12 on
 13 **in** a small village **in** the south-west
 14 **on** the wall **in** the kitchen

UNIT 124**124.1**

- 2 On the second floor.
 3 On the corner. *or* At the corner.
 4 In the corner.
 5 At the top of the stairs.
 6 In the back of the car.
 7 At the front.
 8 On the left.
 9 In the back row.
 10 At the end of the street.

124.2

- 2 on the right
 3 in the world
 4 on the way to work
 5 on the west coast
 6 in the front row
 7 at the back of the class
 8 on the back of this card

124.3

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 2 in | |
| 3 at | |
| 4 at | |
| 5 in | |
| 6 on | |
| 7 in | |
| 8 in | |
| 9 in | |
| 10 on | |
| 11 in | |
| 12 on | |
| 13 in | |
| 14 on ...on | |

UNIT 125**125.1**

- 2 on a train
 3 at a conference
 4 is in hospital / in the hospital
 5 at the hairdresser's
 6 on his bike
 7 in New York
 8 at the Savoy Theatre

125.2

- 2 at the station
 3 in a taxi
 4 at the sports centre
 5 on the plane
 6 in Tokyo
 7 at school
 8 at the art gallery

125.3

- | | |
|------|------------|
| 2 in | 10 in |
| 3 at | 11 on |
| 4 in | 12 at |
| 5 on | 13 in |
| 6 at | 14 in |
| 7 in | 15 at |
| 8 at | 16 at...at |
| 9 at | |

UNIT 126**126.1**

- 3 at
 4 to
 5 to
 6 into
 7 – (*no preposition*)
 8 to
 9 into
 10 to
 11 at
 12 to
 13 to
 14 into
 15 to
 16 – (*no preposition*)
 17 to (France) ... in (Brazil)
 18 in (Chicago) ... to (Boston)

126.2

- 2 I've been to ... once.
 3 I've never been to ...
 4 I've been to ... a few times.
 5 I've been to ... many times.

126.3

- 2 in
 3 – (*no preposition*)
 4 at
 5 to
 6 – (*no preposition*)

126.4

- 2 I got on
 3 I got out (of the/my car).
 4 I got off (the train).
 5 I got into the taxi. *or*
 I got in the taxi. *or*
 I got in.
 6 I got off (the plane).

UNIT 127**127.1**

- 2 in cold weather
 3 in French
 4 in love
 5 in the mood
 6 in the shade
 7 in my opinion
 8 in kilometres

127.2

- 2 on strike
 3 on a cruise
 4 on fire
 5 on a tour
 6 on her phone
 7 on TV
 8 on purpose
 9 on a diet
 10 on holiday
 11 on business
 12 on the whole

127.3

- 2 on
 3 at
 4 in
 5 on
 6 in
 7 at
 8 at
 9 on
 10 on
 11 at
 12 on
 13 in
 14 on
 15 on
 16 on
 17 In
 18 in
 19 on
 20 in

Key to Exercises

UNIT 128

128.1

- 2 by email 5 by chance
3 by mistake 6 by hand
4 on purpose

128.2

- 2 on
3 by
4 on
5 by
6 in
7 by
8 by
9 **by** bike (*or on his* bike) ... **on** foot

128.3

- 2 by a professional photographer
3 by mosquitoes
4 by Leonardo da Vinci
5 by one of our players
6 by lightning
7 by Beethoven

128.4

- 2 with
3 by
4 by
5 in
6 by
7 with
8 by
9 on
10 by
11 **by** the bed **with** a lamp and a clock
 on it

128.5

- 2 In the last ten years the population has gone up / increased / grown / risen by 6 million.
3 Helen won (the election) by two votes.
4 I missed her/Kate by five minutes.

UNIT 129

129.1

- 2 to the problem
3 with her brother
4 in the cost of living
5 to your question
6 for a new road
7 in/to living in a big city
8 in food prices
9 for shoes like these any more
10 between your job and mine

129.2

- 2 invitation to
3 contact with
4 key to (*key for* is also possible)
5 cause of
6 reply to
7 connection between
8 photos of
9 reason for
10 damage to

129.3

- 2 to
3 in
4 of
5 in or to
6 for
7 to or towards
8 with
9 of
10 to
11 of
12 for
13 of
14 with

UNIT 130

130.1

- 2 That was generous of her.
3 That wasn't very nice of them.
4 That's very kind of you.
5 That isn't very polite of him.
6 That's a bit childish of them.

130.2

- 2 kind to
3 angry with
4 excited about
5 impressed by / impressed with
6 bored with (*bored by* is also possible)
7 amazed at / amazed by
8 careless of

130.3

- 2 of
3 to
4 with
5 with (by or in are also possible)
6 to
7 at/by
8 with
9 about
10 about
11 for
12 about/by/at
13 to
14 of
15 by/with
16 with
17 about
18 at/by
19 for/about
20 at/by
21 of
22 to
23 about
24 furious **with** us **for** making

UNIT 131

131.1

- 2 proud of
3 ashamed of
4 typical of
5 capable of
6 scared of
7 aware of
8 envious of

131.2

Example answers:

- 2 I'm hopeless at telling jokes.
3 I'm not very good at maths.
4 I'm pretty good at remembering names.
5 I'm good at making decisions.

131.3

- 2 similar to
3 afraid of
4 interested in
5 responsible for
6 proud of
7 different from / different to
 (different than is also correct)
8 capable of

131.4

- 2 of furniture
3 on sport
4 of time
5 at her job
6 to a doctor
7 of him / of Robert
8 from yours / from your problem or
 to yours / to your problem
 (different than is also correct)

131.5

- 2 for
3 of
4 in
5 of
6 on
7 of
8 with
9 on
10 of

UNIT 132

132.1

- 2 a
3 b
4 b
5 a
6 a
7 b
8 a
9 b
10 b
11 a
12 b

132.2

- 3 spoken to
 4 point (them) at
 5 look (directly) at
 6 listen to
 7 throw (stones) at
 8 throw (it) to
 9 reply to

132.3

- 2 at
 3 at
 4 to
 5 to
 6 at
 7 at
 8 to
 9 at
 10 at
 11 to

UNIT 133**133.1**

- 2 waiting for her to reply
 3 searched my bag
 4 asked him for a receipt
 5 to ask the way
 6 discussed the problem
 7 nothing about them
 8 for the airport

133.2

- 2 to
 3 for
 4 about
 5 – (no preposition)
 6 about
 7 for
 8 about

133.3

- 2 of
 3 about
 4 for
 5 of
 6 for
 7 about
 8 – (no preposition)

133.4

- 2 looking for
 3 looked after
 4 look for
 5 looks after
 6 looking for

133.5

- 2 wait for
 3 talk about
 4 ask (me) for
 5 applied for
 6 do (something) about
 7 looks after or has looked after
 8 left (Boston) for

UNIT 134**134.1**

- 2 hear about
 3 heard from
 4 heard of
 5 hear from
 6 hear about
 7 heard of
- 134.2**
- 2 think about
 3 thinking about
 4 think of
 5 think of
 6 thinking of or thinking about
 7 thought about
 8 think of
 9 think about
 10 think (much) of
 11 thinking about or thinking of
 12 think of

134.3

- 2 of
 3 about
 4 of
 5 of
 6 to (us) about
 7 of
 8 about ... about ... about ... about

134.4

- 2 complaining about
 3 think about
 4 heard of
 5 dream of
 6 reminded (me) about
 7 remind (you) of

UNIT 135**135.1**

- 2 for
 3 of
 4 of
 5 – (no preposition)
 6 for
 7 of/from
 8 for
 9 of
 10 for
 11 on
 12 for

135.2

- 2 for the misunderstanding
 3 her on winning the tournament
 4 him from his enemies
 5 on bread and eggs
 6 me for the (bad) weather or the (bad) weather on me
 7 my friend of stealing a car or (that) my friend had stolen a car

135.3

- 2 paid for
 3 accused of
 4 depends on
 5 live on
 6 apologise to
 7 suffers from
 8 congratulate (him) on

135.4

- 2 from
 3 on
 4 – (no preposition)
 5 from
 6 depends how (no preposition) or depends on how
 7 on
 8 of
 9 on

UNIT 136**136.1**

- 2 happened to
 3 divided into
 4 invited to
 5 believe in
 6 fill (it) with
 7 breaks into
 8 Concentrate on
 9 succeeded in
 10 drove into

136.2

- 2 I prefer small towns to big cities.
 3 The company provided me with all the information I needed.
 4 This morning I spent eighty pounds on a pair of shoes.
 5 The city is divided into ten districts.

136.3

- 2 to
 3 on
 4 in
 5 to
 6 in
 7 with
 8 into
 9 in
 10 on
 11 – (no preposition)
 12 into
 13 on
 14 into
 15 with
 16 from (one language) into (another)

136.4

Example answers:

- 2 on petrol
 3 into a wall
 4 to volleyball
 5 in seafood
 6 into many languages

Key to Exercises

UNIT 137

137.1

- 2 sit down
- 3 taking off
- 4 flew away / flew off
- 5 get out
- 6 speak up
- 7 get by
- 8 gone up
- 9 looked round
- 10 be back
- 11 broke down
- 12 getting on

137.2

- 2 back at
- 3 up to
- 4 forward to
- 5 away with
- 6 up at
- 7 in through
- 8 out about

137.3

- 2 wake me up
- 3 get it out
- 4 give them back
- 5 switch it on
- 6 take them off

137.4

- 3 I have to give **them back** to her.
- 4 We can turn **the TV/television off**. or We can turn **off the TV/television**.
- 5 I don't want to wake **her up**.
- 6 (example answer) You should put **your coat on** or You should put **on your coat**.
- 7 I was able to put **it out**
- 8 Shall I turn **the light(s) on?** or Shall I turn **on the light(s)?**
- 9 (example answer) they've put **the price(s) up** or they've put **up the price(s)**
- 10 I knocked **it over**

UNIT 138

138.1

- 2 eats
- 3 drop
- 4 fill
- 5 moved
- 6 checked
- 7 plug
- 8 dropped
- 9 dive

138.2

- | | |
|--------|----------|
| 2 in | 6 in |
| 3 into | 7 out |
| 4 out | 8 out of |
| 5 into | |

138.3

- 2 dropped out
- 3 moved in
- 4 left out
- 5 joined in
- 6 taken in
- 7 dropped in

138.4

- 2 Fill them in or Fill them out
- 3 cross it out
- 4 let us in
- 5 get out of it

138.5

- 2 drop out of college
- 3 fill in /fill out the application form
- 4 get out of going to the party
- 5 taken in by the email
- 6 drop in (and see us) sometime
- 7 was left out of the team or had been left out ...

UNIT 139

139.1

- 2 a candle
- 3 an order
- 4 a fire
- 5 a new product
- 6 a problem

139.2

- 2 works out
- 3 carried out
- 4 ran out
- 5 sort out
- 6 find out / work out / figure out
- 7 tried out
- 8 pointed out
- 9 work out
- 10 went out
- 11 turned out
- 12 works out / turns out
- 13 find out
- 14 put out
- 15 figure out / work out

139.3

- 2 giving/handing out
- 3 turned out nice/fine/sunny
- 4 working out
- 5 run out of
- 6 work out how to use the camera or figure out how to ...

139.4

- 2 try it out
- 3 work it out
- 4 sorted it out / worked it out
- 5 pointing it out

UNIT 140

140.1

- 2 put the heating on
- 3 put the oven on
- 4 put the kettle on
- 5 put some music on

140.2

- 2 going on
- 3 take off
- 4 drove off / went off
- 5 put on
- 6 set off
- 7 put off
- 8 called off
- 9 put on
- 10 tried on
- 11 see (me) off
- 12 putting (it) off

140.3

- 2 took off
- 3 tried on a/the hat or tried a/the hat on
- 4 was called off
- 5 see him off
- 6 put them on

UNIT 141

141.1

- 2 c
- 3 b
- 4 a
- 5 a
- 6 b

141.2

- 2 finish off
- 3 drive on / carry on / go on
- 4 ripped off
- 5 getting on
- 6 went off
- 7 told off
- 8 went on
- 9 get on
- 10 keep on / keep
- 11 get on / carry on
- 12 showing off
- 13 put off
- 14 went on / carried on
- 15 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off

141.3

- 2 gets on with
- 3 carry on / go on / keep / keep on
- 4 finish it off
- 5 were ripped off
- 6 go off
- 7 tell them off
- 8 She keeps on / She keeps

UNIT 142**142.1**

- 2 took them down
 3 stand up
 4 turned it up
 5 put their bags down
 6 were blown down
 7 put them up
 8 bent down (and) picked them up

142.2

- 2 turned it down
 3 calm him down
 4 let her down
 5 written it down
 6 cut them down

142.3

- 2 calm down
 3 slowed down
 4 was turned down
 5 broken down
 6 cut down
 7 let down
 8 closed down / has closed down
 9 be knocked down
 10 turned down
 11 was knocked down
 12 broke down

UNIT 143**143.1**

- 2 went up to / walked up to
 3 catch up with
 4 keep up with

143.2

- 2 used up
 3 washed up
 4 grow up
 5 turn up / show up
 6 gave up
 7 taking up
 8 give up
 9 ended up
 10 takes up
 11 make up

143.3

- 3 tidy it up / tidy up
 4 fixed it up
 5 keep up with
 6 was brought up
 7 keep it up
 8 went up to
 9 set it up
 10 gave it up / gave up
 11 was made up of

UNIT 144**144.1**

- 2 d
 3 e
 4 c
 5 g
 6 a
 7 b

144.2

- 2 held up
 3 did it up
 4 cheer him up

144.3

- 2 blew up
 3 beaten up
 4 broken up / split up
 5 do up
 6 clears up / will clear up
 7 mixed up

144.4

- 2 look it up
 3 put up with
 4 making it up
 5 come up with
 6 tear them up
 7 saving up for
 8 bring it up
 9 mix them up / get them mixed up

UNIT 145**145.1**

- 2 blew away
 3 put it back
 4 walked away
 5 threw it back (to her)
 6 threw them away

145.2

- 2 be away / have gone away
 3 be back
 4 ran away
 5 get away
 6 keep away / keep back
 7 smile back

145.3

- 2 throw
 3 gets
 4 be
 5 look
 6 gave
 7 get
 8 put

145.4

- 2 throw it away
 3 take them back
 4 pay you back / pay it back
 5 gave them away
 6 called back / called me back

Key to Additional exercises (see page 302)

1

- 3 I'm getting / I am getting
- 4 do you do
- 5 we arrived ... it was raining
- 6 phones ... she didn't phone
- 7 you were thinking ... I decided
- 8 are you looking
- 9 It doesn't rain
- 10 He wasn't looking
- 11 we went ... she was preparing ... We didn't want ... we didn't stay
- 12 told ... he didn't believe ... He thought ... I was joking

2

- 2 didn't go
- 3 is wearing
- 4 went
- 5 haven't heard
- 6 is being
- 7 wasn't reading
- 8 didn't have
- 9 It's beginning
- 10 worked
- 11 wasn't
- 12 you've stayed
- 13 I've been doing
- 14 did she go
- 15 I've been playing
- 16 do you come
- 17 since I saw her
- 18 for 20 years

3

- 3 are you going
- 4 Do you watch
- 5 have you lived / have you been living / have you been
- 6 Did they have
- 7 Have you seen
- 8 was she wearing
- 9 Have you been waiting / Have you been here
- 10 does it take
- 11 Have you heard
- 12 Have you been / Have you ever been

4

- 2 've known each other / have known each other or 've been friends / have been friends
- 3 I've ever had / I've ever been on / I've had for ages (etc.)
- 4 He went / He went home / He went out / He left
- 5 I've worn it
- 6 I was playing
- 7 been swimming for

- 8 since I've been / since I went / since I last went
- 9 did you buy / did you get

5

- 1 got ... was already waiting ... had arrived
- 2 was lying ... wasn't watching ... 'd fallen / had fallen ... was snoring ... turned ... woke
- 3 'd just gone / had just gone ... was reading ... heard ... got ... didn't see ... went
- 4 missed ... was standing ... realised ... 'd left / had left ... had ... got
- 5 met ... was walking ... 'd been / had been ... 'd been playing / had been playing ... were going ... invited ... 'd arranged / had arranged ... didn't have

6

- 2 Somebody has taken it.
- 3 They'd only known / They had only known each other (for) a few weeks.
- 4 It's been raining / It has been raining all day. or It's rained / It has rained all day.
- 5 I'd been dreaming. / I had been dreaming.
- 6 I'd had / I had had a big breakfast.
- 7 They've been going / They have been going there for years.
- 8 I've had it / I have had it since I got up.
- 9 He's been training / He has been training very hard for it.

7

- 1 I haven't seen
- 2 You look / You're looking
- 3 are you going
- 4 are you meeting
- 5 I'm going
- 6 Do you often go
- 7 are you going
- 8 I'm meeting
- 9 has been (delayed) / is (delayed)
- 10 I've been waiting
- 11 has just started / just started
- 12 is she getting
- 13 Does she like
- 14 she thinks
- 15 Are you working
- 16 spoke
- 17 you were working
- 18 went
- 19 I started / I'd started
- 20 I lost

- 21 you haven't had

- 22 I've had
- 23 have you seen
- 24 has he been
- 25 I saw
- 26 he went
- 27 He'd been
- 28 he decided / he'd decided
- 29 He was really looking forward
- 30 is he doing
- 31 I haven't heard
- 32 he left

8

- 1 invented
- 2 it's gone / it has gone
- 3 had gone ... left
- 4 did you do ... Did you go
- 5 have you had
- 6 was looking or 'd been looking / had been looking
- 7 She's been teaching / She has been teaching
- 8 bought ... she hasn't worn or she didn't wear
- 9 I met ... was ... I'd seen / I had seen ... I remembered ... he was
- 10 Have you heard ... She was ... died ... She wrote ... I haven't read
- 11 does this word mean ... I've never seen
- 12 Did you get ... it had already started
- 13 knocked ... was ... she'd gone / she had gone ... she didn't want
- 14 He'd never used / He had never used ... he didn't know
- 15 went ... She needed or She'd needed / She had needed ... she'd been sitting / she had been sitting

9

- 3 used to drive
- 4 was driving
- 5 were working
- 6 used to have
- 7 was living
- 8 was playing
- 9 used to play
- 10 was wearing

10

- 2 I'm going to the dentist.
- 3 No, we're going to rent a car.
- 4 I'll call her now.
- 5 I'm having lunch with Sue.
- 6 What are you going to have? / What are you having?
- 7 I'll turn on the light.
- 8 I'm going to close the window.

11

- 2 B
3 A
4 B
5 A
6 C
7 C
8 A

12

- 1 (2) Are you going to do / Are you doing
 (3) it starts
 (4) you'll enjoy / you're going to enjoy
 (5) it will be / it's going to be
 2 (1) you're going
 (2) We're going
 (3) you have
 (4) I'll get
 (5) I get
 3 (1) I'm having / I'm going to have
 (2) are coming
 (3) they'll have left
 (4) they're
 (5) I won't be / I will not be
 (6) you know
 (7) I'll call
 4 (1) shall we meet
 (2) I'll be waiting
 (3) you arrive
 (4) I'll be sitting
 (5) I'll be wearing
 (6) Is Agent 307 coming / Is Agent 307 going to come / Will Agent 307 be coming
 (7) Shall I bring
 (8) I'll explain / I'm going to explain
 (9) I see
 (10) I'll try

13

- 1 I'll have
 2 Are you going
 3 shall I phone
 4 It's going to land
 5 it's / it is
 6 I'll miss / I'm going to miss ... you go / you've gone
 7 Shall I give ... I give ... will you call
 8 does it finish
 9 I'm going ... is getting
 10 I'll tell ... I'm ... I won't be
 11 I'm going to have / I'm having
 12 she apologises
 13 we'll be living / we'll live
 14 you finish / you've finished

14

- 2 I've had / I have had
 3 I bought or I got

- 4 I'll come / I will come or I'll be / I will be
 5 I've been / I have been or I've eaten / I have eaten
 6 I used to play
 7 I haven't been waiting or I haven't been here
 8 I'd been / I had been or I was
 9 I'm going / I am going
 10 I haven't seen or I haven't heard from
 11 I'll have gone / I will have gone or I'll have left / I will have left

15

- 2 I've been travelling
 3 I'm beginning
 4 I've seen
 5 has been
 6 I've met
 7 I left
 8 I stayed or I was staying
 9 I'd planned or I was planning
 10 I ended up
 11 I enjoyed
 12 I took
 13 met
 14 I'm staying or I'm going to stay or I'll be staying or I'll stay
 15 I continue
 16 I'll get
 17 I'm
 18 I'll let
 19 I know
 20 I'm staying
 21 we're going to visit or we're visiting
 22 are building or have been building
 23 it will be
 24 I'll be

16

- 2 A
 3 C
 4 B or C
 5 B
 6 A or C
 7 A or C
 8 C
 9 B or C
 10 A or B
 11 A
 12 C
 13 A or B
 14 B or C
 15 B

17

- 2 shouldn't have eaten
 3 must have forgotten
 4 needn't have gone
 5 can't be changed
 6 may be watching
 7 must have been waiting

- 8 couldn't have done
 9 should have been
 10 could have phoned
 11 should have been warned
 12 ought to have come

18

- 3 could rain / might rain
 4 might have gone / could have gone
 5 couldn't go
 6 couldn't have seen / can't have seen
 7 should get
 8 wouldn't recognise / might not recognise
 9 must have heard
 10 should have turned

19

- 4 rings
 5 you were
 6 it's / it is
 7 it was or it were
 8 it had been
 9 you had
 10 I'd had / I had had
 11 it wouldn't have happened
 12 I didn't watch

20

- 2 called (me)
 3 (If) I'd known / I had known ...
 (I) wouldn't have disturbed (you).
 4 (There) wouldn't be (so many accidents if) there was ... or
 ... (if) there were ...
 5 (If) you'd told me about (the problem), I would have tried to help / I'd have tried to help (you). or
 ... I would have helped / I'd have helped
 6 (I) would have got/gotten (very wet if) I hadn't had ...
 7 (If he) hadn't been / hadn't got / hadn't gotten ... (he) wouldn't have failed / would have passed / 'd have passed ...

21

Example answers:

- 1 I wasn't feeling so tired
 2 I hadn't had so much to do
 3 I would have forgotten Amy's birthday
 4 I'd probably waste it
 5 I'll take a picture of you
 6 you were in trouble
 7 you hadn't taken so long to get ready
 8 I would have gone to the concert
 9 I might have got the job
 10 you'd eaten lunch
 11 there was less traffic
 12 it would be harder to get information

Key to Additional exercises

22

- 3 was cancelled
- 4 has been repaired
- 5 is being restored
- 6 It's believed / It is believed
- 7 I'd be fired / I would be fired
- 8 It might have been thrown
- 9 He was taught
- 10 being arrested / having been arrested or I was arrested
- 11 Have you ever been arrested
- 12 are reported ... have been injured

23

- 3 've sold / have sold or sold
- 4 's been sold / has been sold or was sold
- 5 are made
- 6 might be stolen
- 7 must have been stolen
- 8 must have taken
- 9 can be solved
- 10 should have left
- 11 is delayed
- 12 is being built ... is expected

24

1 Castle Fire

- 2 was discovered
- 3 was injured
- 4 be rescued
- 5 are believed to have been destroyed
- 6 is not known

2 Shop Robbery

- 1 was forced
- 2 being threatened
- 3 had been stolen
- 4 was later found
- 5 had been abandoned
- 6 has been arrested / was arrested
- 7 is still being questioned

3 Road Delays

- 1 is being resurfaced
- 2 are asked / are being asked / have been asked
- 3 is expected
- 4 will be closed / is going to be closed
- 5 will be diverted / is going to be diverted

4 Accident

- 1 was taken
- 2 was allowed
- 3 was blocked
- 4 be diverted
- 5 have been killed

25

- 1 I told **her** (**that**) **Paul had gone out** and I **didn't know when he'd be back**.
I asked (**her**) **if/whether she wanted to leave a message**, but she said (**that**) **she'd try again** later.

2 I had reserved a hotel room, but when I got to the hotel they told **me (that) they had no record of a reservation in my name**.

When I asked (**them**) **if/whether they had any rooms free anyway**, they said (**that**) **they were sorry**, but **the hotel was full**.

3 The immigration officer asked us **why we were visiting the country**, and we told **him (that) we were on holiday**.

Then he wanted to know **how long we intended to stay** and **where we would be staying during our visit**.

4 She said (**that**) **she'd phone us from the airport when she arrived**. or She said (**that**) **she'll phone us from the airport when she arrives**. No, she said not **to come to the airport**. She said that **she'd take the bus**. or She said that **she'll take the bus**.

5 He wanted to know **what my job was** and asked (**me**) **how much I earned**. or He wanted to know **what my job is** and asked (**me**) **how much I earn**.

... so I told **him to mind his own business** and ended the call.

6 He said (**that**) **he'd be at the restaurant at 7.30**.

He said (**that**) **he knew where the restaurant was**. And I told **him to phone me if there was a problem**.

7 You just said (**that**) **you weren't hungry**.

But you said (**that**) **you didn't like bananas**. You told **me not to buy any**.

26

- 3 changing
- 4 to change
- 5 change
- 6 being
- 7 saying
- 8 to call
- 9 drinking
- 10 to be
- 11 to see
- 12 taking
- 13 to be
- 14 to think ... making
- 15 living ... to move
- 16 to be ... playing
- 17 being stopped ... stealing ... driving
- 18 work... pressing

27

- 3 I don't fancy going out.
- 4 He tends to forget things.
- 5 Would you mind helping me? / Do you mind helping me?

6 Everybody seems to have gone out.

7 We're / We are thinking of moving.

8 I was afraid to touch it.

9 I was afraid of missing my train.

10 It's / It is not worth seeing.

11 I'm not used to walking so far.
She seems to be enjoying herself. or She seemed ...

13 He insisted on showing them to me.

14 I'd rather somebody else did it.

28

3 I've given up reading newspapers.

4 I'd rather not go out tonight. / ... stay at home tonight.

5 He has trouble sleeping at night.

6 Do you want me to phone you this evening?

7 I came in without anybody/anyone seeing me. / ... without being seen.

8 I was accused of being a cheat. / ... of cheating.

9 I'm looking forward to seeing them again.

10 What do you advise me to do?

11 I'd like to have gone out with you last night.

12 I regret not taking your advice. / ... that I didn't take your advice.

29

2 a foreign country ... **the language**

3 an economist ... in **the United States** ... for an investment company

4 I love sport, especially tennis ... two or three times **a week** ... not **a very good player**

5 for dinner ... after work ... to **the cinema**

6 When unemployment is ... for people to find work ... **a big problem**

7 an accident ... going home ... taken to hospital / taken to **the hospital** ... I think most accidents ... by people driving

8 **the name of the hotel** ... **The Ambassador** ... in Queen Street in **the city centre** ... near **the station**

9 **The older one** ... **a pilot** ... **The younger one** ... at school ... he leaves school ... go to university ... study law

30

2 B

3 C

4 A or B

5 C

6 B

7 A or C

8 A

9 C

10 B or C

11 B

- 12 A
13 A or B
14 B

31

- 3 It's the **most** polluted place ...
4 I was **disappointed** that ...
5 OK
6 Joe works **hard**, but ...
7 ... in a **large modern** building.
8 OK (as fast as he can is *also correct*)
9 I missed the **last three** days ...
10 OK
11 The weather has been **unusually** cold ...
12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in.
13 ... to wait **such a** long time.
or to wait so long.
14 OK
15 ... I got up **earlier** than usual.

32

- 2 If
3 when
4 if
5 when
6 if
7 if
8 unless
9 if
10 as long as
11 in case
12 in case
13 if
14 even if
15 Although
16 Although
17 When
18 when

33

- 2 on
3 **on** Tuesday morning **at** 9.30
4 at / on
5 on
6 at
7 In
8 at
9 during
10 **on** Friday ... **since** then
11 for
12 at
13 **at** the moment ... **until** Friday
14 by
15 in

34

- 1 in
2 by
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on

- 7 **to** a party **at** Lisa's house
8 on
9 on
10 to
11 **in** Vienna ... **at** the age of 35
12 **in** this photo ... **on** the left
13 **to** the theatre ... **in** the front row
14 **on** the wall **by** the door / **next to** the door / **beside** the door
15 at
16 on
17 **in** a tower block ... **on** the fifteenth floor
18 on
19 by
20 **on** the bus ... **by** car
21 on
22 in
23 **in** London ... **to** Italy
24 to
25 on

35

- 1 for
2 at
3 to
4 to
5 in
6 with
7 of
8 to
9 of
10 at/by
11 of
12 about

36

- 1 of
2 after
3 – (*no preposition*)
4 about
5 to
6 – (*no preposition*)
7 into
8 of (about is *also possible*)
9 to
10 – (*no preposition*)
11 on
12 of
13 of
14 – (*no preposition*)
15 in
16 at (about is *also possible*)
17 on
18 If Alex **asks you for** money
19 I **apologised to Sarah for** keeping ...
20 I **thanked her for** everything ...

37

- 2 h
3 e
4 g
5 a

- 6 k
7 c
8 j
9 b
10 f
11 i

38

- 2 D
3 B
4 B
5 A
6 A
7 D
8 C
9 C
10 B
11 A
12 D

39

- 2 out to
3 up with
4 forward to
5 up with
6 out of
7 on with
8 up with
9 back on
10 out about
11 on with

40

- 3 turned up / showed up
4 fill it in / fill it out
5 knocked down / pulled down / torn down
6 give up
7 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off
8 split up / break up
9 put up with it
10 get by
11 went on
12 put it off

41

- 2 put
3 moving
4 put
5 done
6 turned / turns
7 find
8 Calm
9 set
10 held
11 left / 've left / have left or missed / 've missed / have missed
12 works
13 join
14 works
15 drop / call
16 sort / work
17 **went** off ... **woke** me up

Key to Study guide

Present and past

- 1.1 A
1.2 B
1.3 C
1.4 B, C
1.5 C
1.6 A

Present perfect and past

- 2.1 B
2.2 C
2.3 A
2.4 C
2.5 A
2.6 B
2.7 A, D
2.8 D
2.9 A
2.10 A
2.11 C
2.12 A
2.13 C, D
2.14 C
2.15 D
2.16 C

Future

- 3.1 B
3.2 A
3.3 C
3.4 A, C
3.5 B
3.6 C
3.7 A

Modals

- 4.1 A, B
4.2 B
4.3 A, C, D
4.4 C
4.5 B
4.6 C, D
4.7 B
4.8 A, C
4.9 B, C
4.10 A, B, D
4.11 A
4.12 D, E
4.13 A

if and wish

- 5.1 B
5.2 C
5.3 B
5.4 D
5.5 A

Passive

- 6.1 C
6.2 B
6.3 D
6.4 A
6.5 A, B

- 6.6 C
6.7 D

Reported speech

- 7.1 A
7.2 B
7.3 A

Questions and auxiliary verbs

- 8.1 C
8.2 A
8.3 D
8.4 A
8.5 B

-ing and to ...

- 9.1 A, D
9.2 B, D
9.3 B
9.4 A
9.5 A
9.6 A
9.7 C
9.8 D
9.9 C
9.10 C
9.11 B
9.12 C, D
9.13 D
9.14 B
9.15 A, B
9.16 A
9.17 A
9.18 B, C

Articles and nouns

- 10.1 B
10.2 A
10.3 B, C
10.4 B
10.5 C
10.6 A
10.7 A
10.8 A
10.9 D
10.10 C
10.11 C
10.12 A
10.13 C
10.14 B

Pronouns and determiners

- 11.1 A
11.2 B
11.3 D
11.4 B
11.5 B
11.6 C
11.7 A, C
11.8 D
11.9 D
11.10 A
11.11 B
11.12 B, C

Relative clauses

- 12.1 A, C
12.2 A, B
12.3 C
12.4 B
12.5 D
12.6 B, C

Adjectives and adverbs

- 13.1 B
13.2 C
13.3 B, C
13.4 A
13.5 A, D
13.6 C
13.7 B, C
13.8 C
13.9 C
13.10 B, C
13.11 D
13.12 A, B
13.13 B
13.14 D, E
13.15 D

Conjunctions and prepositions

- 14.1 A, D
14.2 C
14.3 B, C
14.4 B, D
14.5 B
14.6 C, D
14.7 B, C
14.8 A

Prepositions

- 15.1 B, D
15.2 A
15.3 C
15.4 B
15.5 A
15.6 B, D
15.7 B
15.8 B
15.9 C
15.10 C
15.11 C
15.12 A
15.13 C
15.14 B
15.15 D
15.16 D
15.17 A

Phrasal verbs

- 16.1 B
16.2 A
16.3 D
16.4 C
16.5 C
16.6 B
16.7 A
16.8 A, D
16.9 B

Index

The numbers in the index are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a/an 69–72

- a/an and the* 72, 73A
- a little / a few* 87D–E
- a/an with quite and pretty* 104A
- such a/an* 102

able (be able to) 26

about

- adjective + about* 130, 131A
- verb + about* 133–134

accuse (of) 62B, 135A

active and passive 42

adjectives 98–101

- adjective + to ...* 65–66
- the + adjective* 76B
- adjectives ending in -ing and -ed* 98
- order of adjectives* 99
- adjectives after verbs* 99C
- adjectives and adverbs* 100–101
- comparative* 105–107
- superlative* 108
- adjective + preposition* 130–131

admit (+ -ing) 53, 56A

advantage (of/in/to) 60A, 129B

adverbs

- adjectives and adverbs* 100–101
- comparatives* 105B
- position of adverbs with the verb (always, also etc.)* 110

advice (uncountable noun) 70B

advise (+ to ...) 55B

afford (+ to ...) 54A, 56A

afraid (of) 131A

- I'm afraid so/not* 51D
- afraid to do and afraid of doing* 66A

after

- after + present simple / present perfect* 25A–B
- after + -ing* 60B, 68B
- look after* 133D

ago 12C

agree (+ to ...) 54A, 56A

all 88, 90

- all and all the* 75B, 88B
- all (of)* 88
- all and both* 89D
- all, every and whole* 90
- position of all* 110D

alleged (*it is alleged ...*) 45A

allow (+ to ... and -ing) 55B, 66D

already 111D

- already with the present perfect* 7D
- position of already* 110

also (position of also) 110

although 113

always

- I always do and I'm always doing* 3B
- position of always* 110

amazed

- amazed + to ...* 65C
- amazed at/by* 130C

American English

Appendix 7

an see a

angry (*about/with/for*) 130B

annoyed (*about/with/for*) 130B

answer

- an answer to something* 129D
- to answer a question (no preposition)* 132B

any 69C, 85–86

- any and some* 85
- anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere* 85–86
- not ... any* 86
- any and no* 86D
- any (of)* 88
- any and either* 89D
- any + comparative* 106B
- any more / any longer* 111B

apologise (to somebody) 62, 132A, 135B

apostrophe (in short forms)

Appendix 5

apostrophe s ('s) 81

appear (+ to ...) 54C

apply (for) 133B

approve (of+ -ing) 62A, 135A

aren't I? (question tag) 52D

arrange (+ to ...) 54A, 56A

arrive (in/at) 126B

articles (*a/an/the*) 69–78

a/an 69–72

a/an and the 72, 73A

the 72–78

school / the school etc. 74

children / the children etc. 75

the with names 77–78

as 107, 116–118

as soon as 25A–B

as ... as (in comparative sentences) 107

as long as 115B

as (= at the same time as) 116A

as and when 116

as (= because) 116B

as and like 117

as if / as though 118

ashamed (of) 131A

ask

ask in passive sentences 44A

ask (somebody) to do something 48D, 55A

ask how/what + to ... 54D

ask somebody (no preposition) 132B

ask somebody) for 133B

astonished

astonished + to ... 65C

astonished at/by 130C

at

at (time) 121

at the end and in the end 122B

at (position) 123–5

at the age of ... 127D

adjective + at 130C, 131B

verb + at 132

attitude (*to/towards*) 129D

auxiliary verbs (see also modal verbs)

in questions 49A–B

in short answers etc. 51

in question tags 52

avoid (+ -ing) 53A, 56A

aware (of) 131A

away (verb + away) 137, 145

back

in/at/on the back 124D, Appendix 7

verb + back 145

bad (at) 131B

baggage (uncountable noun) 70B

because (of) 113B–C

bed (in bed / to bed) 74C, 124A, 126A

been to 8A, 126A

been to and gone to 7B

before

before + present simple 25A

before + -ing 60B

begin (+ -ing or to ...) 56C

beginning (at the beginning) 122B

being (he is and he is being) 4D

believe (in) 136A

believed (it is believed ...) 45A

better 105C

had better 35A–B

between (noun + between) 129E

blame 135B

bored

bored and boring 98

bored with 130C

born (I was born ...) 44C

both (of) 89

both ... and 89C

both and all 89D

position of both 110D

bother (+ -ing or to ...) 56C

bottom (at the bottom) 124C

bound (bound to do) 65E

bread (uncountable noun) 70B

break

break into 136B

break down 137B, 142D

break up 144D

busy (busy doing something) 63D

Index

- by** 120, 128
 by after the passive 42B, 128C
 by (+ -ing) 60B
 by myself / yourself etc. 83D
 by (the time) 120
 by and until 120B
 by chance / by mistake etc. 128A
 by car / by bus etc. 128B
 a play by Shakespeare etc. 128C
 adjective + by 130C
- call** 26
 call somebody (no preposition) 132B
 call something off 140B
 call somebody back 145C
 Appendix 4
- can** 26
 can I / you ... ? 37
 can and other modal verbs
 Appendix 4
- can't** (cannot) 26, 28
 can't help 57C
- capable** (of) 131A
- care** (*care about, care for, take care of*) 133C
- carry**
 carry on 53B, 141A
 carry out 139C
- case** (*in case*) 114
- causative have** (*have something done*) 46
- cause** (of) 129B
- certain**
 certain (+ to ...) 65E, 84B
 certain of/about 131A
- cheque** (*by cheque*) 128B
- church** (*church / the church*) 74B
- claim** (+ to ...) 54C
- clauses**
 when and if clauses 25
 if clauses 38–40
 -ing clauses 68, 97
 relative clauses 92–96
- collide** (with) 136C
- comparative** 105–107
 comparative with even 112C
- complain** (*to somebody about/of ...*) 134D
- compound nouns** (*a tennis ball, a headache etc.*) 80
- concentrate** (on) 136E
- conditional sentences** (*if sentences*)
 if I do... 25C
 if I do and if I did 38
 if I knew, if I were etc. 39
 if I had known, if I had been etc. 40
 unless 115A
 as long as 115B
 providing / provided 115B
- congratulate** (on) 62B, 135D
- connection** (*with/between*) 129E
- conscious** (of) 131A
- consider** (+ -ing) 53, 56A
- consist** (of) 135A
- contact** (*with/between*) 129E
- continue** (+ to ... or -ing) 56C
- continuous tenses** see **present continuous, past continuous**
 verbs not used in continuous tenses 4A, 6E, 10D, 16D, 17A
- contractions** (short forms)
 Appendix 5
- corner** (*in/at/on the corner*) 124E
- could** 26, 27, 29C
 could and was able to 26D
 could (do) and could have (done) 27
 couldn't have (done) 27E, 28B
 could in if sentences 38C, 39E, 40D
 I wish I could 41C
 could I / you ... ? 37
 could and other modal verbs
 Appendix 4
- countable and uncountable nouns** 69–70
- crash** (*into*) 136B
- critical** (of) 131A
- crowded** (with) 131B
- damage** (uncountable noun) 70B
 damage to 129D
- dare** 54B
- decide**
 decide + to ... 54, 56A
 decide against + -ing 62A
- delighted** (with) 130B
- demand**
 demand + should 34A–B
 a demand for 129A
- deny** (+ -ing) 53, 56A
- depend** (on) 135D
- dependent** (on) 131B
- depressed** (and depressing) 98
- deserve** (+ to ...) 54A, 56A
- despite** 113
- did** (in past simple questions and negatives) 5C
- die** (of) 135A
- difference** (between) 129E
- different** (from/to) 131B,
 Appendix 7
- difficulty** (*have difficulty + -ing*) 63C
- direct speech** and reported speech 47–48, 50B
- disappointed**
 disappointed + to ... 65C
 disappointed and disappointing 98
 disappointed with 130B
- discuss** (no preposition) 133A
- divide** (*into*) 136B
- do/does** (in present simple questions and negatives) 2C
- do up** 144D
- down** (verb + down) 137, 142
- dream**
 dream of + -ing 62A, 66D
 dream about/of 134C
- during** 119
- each** (of) 91
 each other 82C
- ed clauses** 97
- either** (of) 89
 not ... either 51C
 either ... or 89C
 either and any 89D
- elder** 106E
- eldest** 108C
- encourage** (+ to ...) 55B
- end**
 in the end and at the end 122B
 at the end (position) 124C
 end up 143E
- enjoy** (+ -ing) 53A, 54A, 56A, 58A
- enough** 103
- envious** (of) 131A
- even** 112
 position of even 110
 even if / when 112D
 even though 112D, 113E
- ever** (with the present perfect) 8A
- every** 90
 every and all 90
 everybody/everyone/everything 90A, D
 every and each 91
 everyone and every one 91D
- excited** (about) 130B
- exclamations** (*What ...*) 71A–B
- excuse** (for) 62B
- expect**
 I expect so / I don't expect so 51D
 expect + to ... 55A
- expected** (*it is expected that*) 45A
- experience** (countable or uncountable noun) 70A
- explain** 54D, 132A
- fail** (+ to ...) 54A, 56A, 66D
- fairly** 104
- famous** (for) 131B
- fancy** (+ -ing) 53A, 56A
- far**
 far/further/farther 105C
 far + comparative 106A
- fast** 101B
- fed up** (with) 60A, 130C
- feel**
 how do you feel and how are you
 feeling 4C
 feel like 62A
 feel + adjective 99C, 100C
- few** 69C, 87
 few and a few 87C–E
 few (of) 88
- finish**
 finish + -ing 53A
 finish off 141C
- first**
 it's the first time I've ... 8C
 the first/last/next + to ... 65D
 the first two days 99D
- fond** (of) 131A

- for**
for with the present perfect 8B, 9B, 11–12
for and since 12A
for and to ... (purpose) 64C, 103C
for and during 119
noun + for 129A
adjective + for 130D, 131B
verb + for 133, 135B
forget (+ to ...) 54, 56A
forgive (for) 135B
frightened (of) 131A
from
adjective + from 131B
verb + from 135C
front (in/at/on the front) 124D, Appendix 7
full (of) 131A
furious (about/with/for) 130B
furniture (uncountable noun) 70B
further 105C
future 19–25, Appendix 3
 present tenses for the future 19
going to 20
will 21–22
will and shall 21D, 22D
will and going to 23
will be doing (future continuous) 24
will have done (future perfect) 24
future with when, if etc. 25, 114A, 115C, 119C
generous (+ preposition) 130A
geographical names with and without *the* 77
gerund see -ing
get
get in the passive 44D
get something done 46C
get someone to do something 55B
get used to 61
get + adjective 99C
get to (a place) 126B
get in/out/on/off 126D, 138A
get by 137B
get out of 138C
get on 137A, 141B
get away (with) 145B
get back to 145C
getting (present continuous) 1C
give
give in passive sentences 44A
give up 53B, 143E
give out 139C
give away 145B
glad (+ to ...) 65C
go
go swimming/shopping etc. 63E
go on holiday / on a trip etc. 127C
go on 53B, 140B, 141A
go on doing and go on to do 56B
go out 139A
go off 140D, 141C
going to 20, Appendix 3
going to and will 23
was/were going to 20D
gone to and *been to* 7B
good
good at 60A, 131B
good of someone to do something, (be)
good to someone 130A
good and well 101A
it's no good (+ -ing) 63A
got (have got) 17A, 31D
gotten (American English)
 Appendix 7
guess (I guess so) 51D
had
had done (past perfect) 15
had been doing (past perfect continuous) 16
had (past of have) 17
if I'd known / I wish I'd known 40
had
had done (past perfect) 15
had been doing (past perfect continuous) 16
had (past of have) 17
if I'd known / I wish I'd known 40
had better 35A–B
hair (countable or uncountable noun) 70A
half (of) 88
happen (to) 136D
happy (happy about/with) 130B
hard 101B–C
hardly 101C–D
hate
hate doing / to do 58
would hate 58B–C
have/has 17
have done (present perfect) 7–14
have been -ing (present perfect continuous) 9–10
have and have got 17
have breakfast / have a bath etc. 17C, Appendix 7
I'm having, we're having etc. 17C
have to (and must) 31
have got to 31D
have something done 46
having (done) 53D, 68B–C
hear
with the present simple or can 4C
hear someone do/doing 67
hear of/about/from 134A
help
help + to ... 55A
can't help 57C
home 74C, 125A, 126C
hope
hope + present simple 22B
hope and wish 41A
I hope so / I hope not 51D
hope + to ... 54A, 56A
hospital (hospital / the hospital) 74B, 125A
 American English Appendix 7
how about (+ -ing) 60A
how long ... ? (+ present perfect) 11–12
how long is it since ... ? 12D
if 25, 38–40
if I do ... 25C
if I do and if I did 38
if I knew, if I were etc. 39
if I had known, if I had been etc. 40
if and when 25D
if + should 34E
if any 85C
even if 112D
if and in case 114B
as if 118
if (= whether) 50
imagine (+ -ing) 53, 56A
impressed (with/by) 130C
in
in (time) 121
in time and on time 122A
in the end and at the end 122B
in (position) 123–126
in/of after a superlative 108D
in (other uses) 127A, 129C
adjective + in 131B
verb + in 136A, 137, 138
in and into 138A
in case 114
increase (in) 129C
infinitive (to be, to play etc.) 54–59, 64–67
 passive infinitive (*to be done*) 43A–B
infinitive in reported speech 48D
verb + infinitive 54–59
*continuous infinitive (*to be doing*)* 54C
*perfect infinitive (*to have done*)* 54C, 58C
infinitive after a question word 54D
verb + object + infinitive 55
verb + infinitive or -ing 55–58
to-infinitive and to + -ing 60C
*infinitive for purpose (*I called the restaurant to reserve a table*)* 64
adjective + infinitive 65–66
infinitive without *to*
after make and let 55C
see/hear somebody do 67
information (uncountable noun) 70B
-ing (being, playing etc.) 53, 55–63
being (done) (passive) 44B
verb + -ing 53, 55–59
having (done) 53D, 68B–C
verb + -ing or to ... 55–58
preposition + -ing 60, 66
to + -ing and to-infinitive 60C
used to + -ing 61
verb + preposition + -ing 62, 66D
expressions + -ing 63
go swimming / go shopping etc. 63E
see/hear somebody doing 67
-ing clauses 68, 97

Index

- insist** *insist + should* 34A–B
insistence 62A, 136E
- in spite of** 60A, 113
- instead of** (+ -ing) 60A
- intend** (+ to ... or -ing) 56C
- interested** (in) 60A, 131B
interested in doing and *interested to do* 66B
interested and interesting 98
- into** 126D
verb + *into* 136B
in and into 138A
- invitation** (to) 129D
- invite**
invite + to ... 55B
invite somebody to something 136D
- irregular verbs** 5B, Appendix 1
- it and there** 84
- it's no good / it's no use** (+ -ing) 63A
- it's time** ... 35C
- it's worth** (+ -ing) 63B
- jealous** (of) 131A
- just**
just with the present perfect 7D,
Appendix 7
just in case 114A
just as 116A
just in time 122A
- keen** (on) 131B
- keep**
keep on 53, 56A, 141A
keep up (with ...) 137C, 143A
keep away (from ...) 145B
- kind** (*kind of someone to do something / be kind to someone*) 65B, 130A
- know** (*how/what etc. + to ...*) 54D
- late and lately** 101B
- laugh** (at) 132C
- learn** (*how*) (+ to ...) 54, 56A
- leave**
leave for 133B
leave something out 138C
- less** 107A
- let**
let somebody do something 55C
let somebody down 142D
- like** (verb)
like doing / to do 58
would like 37D, 55A, 58B–C
- like** (preposition/conjunction)
like and as 117
like and as if 118
- likely** (+ to ...) 65E, 84B
- listen** (to) 132A
- little** 69C, 87
little and a little 87C–E
little (of) 88
a little + comparative 106A
- live** (on) 135D
- long**
as long as 115B
no longer / not ... any longer 111B
- look**
you look and you're looking 4C
look forward to 60C, 62A, 137C
look + adjective 99C, 100C
look as if, look like 118
look at 132C
look back (on) 145C
look for/after 133D
look up 144D
- lot** (*a lot / lots*) 87A–B
quite a lot 104A
a lot + comparative 106A
- love**
love doing / to do 58
would love 55A, 58B–C
be / fall in love with 127A
- luck** (uncountable noun) 70B
- luggage** (uncountable noun) 70B
- make**
make somebody do something 55C
make up 143E, 144A
- manage** (+ to ...) 26D, 54A, 56A
- many** (and *much*) 69C, 87
many (of) 88
- married** (to) 131B
- may** 29–30
may as well 30D
may I ... ? 37B–C
may and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
- mean** (adjective – *mean of someone to do something / be mean to someone*) 65B
- means** (noun) 79B
- might** 29–30
might in if sentences 30B, 38C, 40D
might as well 30D
might and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
- mind** (+ -ing) 53, 56A, 58A–B
do you mind if ... ? 37C
- mine / yours** etc. (*a friend of mine / yours*) 83A
- modal verbs** (*will, can, must etc.*)
21–22, 26–37, Appendix 4
- more**
more in comparatives 105
not ... any more 111B
- most**
most + noun 75A
most (of) 88
the most ... (superlative) 108
- much** (and *many*) 69C, 87
much (of) 88
much + comparative 106A
- must**
must and can't 28, Appendix 7
must and have to 31
mustn't 31C, 32A
must and should 33A
must and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
- myself/yourself** etc. (reflexive pronouns) 82
by myself / by yourself etc. 83D
- names** with and without *the* 77–78
- nationality** words with *the* 76C
- need**
need to do and need doing 57B
a need for 129A
- needn't** 32
needn't have (done) and didn't need to (do) 32D
needn't and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
American English Appendix 7
- negative**
present simple 2C
past simple 5C
negative questions 49D
no, none and any 86
negative short forms
Appendix 5.3
- neither (of)** 89
neither am I, neither do I etc. 51C
neither ... nor 89C
neither and none 89D
- never**
never with the present perfect 8A
position of *never* 110
- news** (uncountable noun) 70B, 79B
- nice** (*nice of someone to do something / be nice to someone*) 65B, 130A
- no**
no and none (of) 86A, 88
no and any 86
nobody/no-one/nothing/nowhere 86B
no + comparative 106B
no longer 111B
- none**
none (of) and no 86A, 88
none and neither 89D
- nor**
nor am I, nor do I etc. 51C
neither ... nor 89C
- nouns**
countable and uncountable 69–70
singular and plural 69, 71, 79
noun + noun (compound nouns) 80
noun + preposition 129
- of**
of and 's 81
all of / none of / most of etc. 88, 96B
both of / neither of / either of 89, 96B
a friend of mine/yours etc. 83A
of/in after a superlative 108D
noun + of 129B
adjective + of 130A, 131A
verb + of 134, 135A
- off** (verb + *off*) 137, 140–141
- offer**
offer in passive sentences 44A
offer + to ... 54A, 56A

- on**
on my own 83D
on (time) 121
on time and in time 122A
on (position) 123–125
on a bus / on a train etc. 125E
on (other uses) 127B–C
adjective + *on* 131B
verb + *on* 135D, 136E, 137, 140–141
- one another** 82C
- only** (*position of only*) 110
- ought to** 33D
ought and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
- out**
out of 126D
verb + *out* 137–139
out and out of 138A
- own**
my own house / your own car 83B–C
on my own / on your own etc. 83D
- paper** (countable and uncountable)
70A
- participle clauses** (*-ing* and *-ed* clauses) 68, 97
- passive** 42–44
passive and active 42A
by after the passive 42B
simple tenses 42C
to be done/cleaned etc. (infinitive) 43A–B
perfect tenses 43C
continuous tenses 43D
being (done) 44B
get 44D
it is said that 45A
- past** (see also **past continuous**, **past perfect** and **past simple**)
past after *if* and *wish* 38–40
past after *I'd rather* 59D
past after *it's time* 35C
past after as *if* 118D
present and past tenses
Appendix 2
- past continuous** (*I was doing*) 6
past continuous and past simple
6C–D
past continuous and *used to* 18E
past continuous passive 43D
- past perfect** (simple) (*I had done*) 15
past perfect and present perfect 15B
past perfect and past simple 15C
past perfect after *if* 40
past perfect passive 43C
- past perfect continuous** (*I had been doing*) 16
- past simple** (*I did*) 5
past simple and past continuous
6C–D
past simple and present perfect
12–14
past simple and past perfect 15C
past simple passive 42C
- pay**
pay in passive sentences 44A
pay (somebody) for something 135B
pay back 145C
- people** 79D
- perfect** see **present perfect, past perfect**
perfect infinitive (*to have done*) 43B
(passive), 54C, 58C
- persuade** (+ *to ...*) 55B
- phone**
on the phone 127B
phone somebody (no preposition)
132B
phone somebody back 145C
- photo/photograph**
in a photo 124A
a photo of someone 129B
- phrasal verbs** (*break down / get on etc.*)
137–145
introduction to phrasal verbs 137
phrasal verb + preposition (*run away from etc.*) 137C
position of object (*turn the light on / turn it on etc.*) 137D
verb + *in/out* 138–139
verb + *on/off* 140–141
verb + *up/down* 142–144
verb + *away/back* 145
- picture**
in a picture 124A
a picture of someone 129B
- plan** (+ *to ...*) 54A, 56A
- pleased**
pleased + to ... 65C
pleased with 130B
- plenty** (*of*) 87A
- plural** and singular 69, 71, 79
they/them/their used for *somebody/nobody etc.* 85E, 86C, 90D
spelling of plural nouns
Appendix 6
- point**
there's no point in + -ing 63A
point (something) at 132C
point out 139C
- police** (plural) 79C
- polite**
polite of someone to do something / be polite to someone 130A
- prefer** 59
would prefer 55A, 58B–C, 59B
prefer (one thing) to (another) 59A, 60C,
136D
- prepositions** 121–136
for and since 12A
in questions 49C
preposition + *-ing* 60, 66
verb + preposition + *-ing* 62, 66D
prepositions in relative clauses
93C, 96A
in/of after a superlative 108D
like and as 117
for and during 119
by 120, 128
by and until 120B
at/on/in (*time*) 121–122
on time and in time 122A
at the end and in the end 122B
at/on/in (*position*) 123–125
to/at/in/into 126
in/at/on (*other uses*) 127
by car / by bus etc. 128B
noun + preposition 129
adjective + preposition 130–31
verb + preposition 132–136
phrasal verb + preposition 137C
- present** see **present continuous, present simple, present perfect**
present tenses for the future 19,
Appendix 3
present and past tenses
Appendix 2
- present continuous** (*I am doing*) 1
present continuous and present
simple 3–4
am/is/are being 4D
present continuous for the future 19,
20B, Appendix 3
present continuous passive 43D
- present perfect** (simple) (*I have done*)
7–8
present perfect with *this morning, today etc.* 8B, 14B
present perfect simple and continuous
10–11
present perfect with *how long, for and since* 11–12
present perfect and past simple 12–14
present perfect and past perfect 15B
present perfect after *when* 25B
present perfect passive 43C
present perfect after a superlative
108E
American English Appendix 7
- present perfect continuous** (*I have been doing*) 9–10
present perfect continuous and
present continuous 9C
present perfect continuous and simple
10–11
present perfect continuous and past
perfect continuous 16B

Index

- present simple** (*I do*)
present simple and present
continuous 3–4
present simple for the future 19B
present simple after *when* and *if* 25,
Appendix 3
present simple passive 42C
pretend (+ to ...) 54C
pretty (*pretty good*, *pretty often* etc.)
104
prevent (*from*) 62B, 66D
prison (*prison / the prison*) 74B, 125A
probably
probably + will 22B
position of *probably* 110
problem (*have a problem + -ing*) 63C
progress (uncountable noun) 70B
progressive tenses see continuous
promise
promise (+ will/would) 36B
promise + to ... 54A, 56A
protect (*from*) 135C
proud (*of*) 131A
provide (*with*) 136C
provided/providing 115B
purpose
to ... for purpose 64
on purpose 127B, 128A
put
put out 139A
put off 53B, 140, 141C
put on 140
put up/down 142A
put up with 144D
put away 145B
- questions** 49–50
present simple questions 2C, 49B
past simple questions 5C, 49B
negative questions 49D
embedded questions (*Do you know what ... ?*) 50A
reported questions 50B
question tags 52
- quite** 104
- rather**
would rather 59C
I'd rather you did something 59D
rather cold / rather nice etc. 104
- reason** (for) 129A
- recommend** 34 A–B, 53
- reflexive pronouns** (*myself, yourself etc.*) 82
by *myself/yourself* etc. 83D
- refuse** (+ to ...) 54A, 56A
- regret** (+ -ing and to ...) 53D, 56B
- regular and irregular verbs**
Appendix 1
- relationship** (*with/between*) 129E
- relative clauses** 92–96
relative clauses as object 93
prepositions in relative clauses 93C
two types of relative clause 95
- relative pronouns** 92–96
who 92–96
which 92–93, 95–96
that 92–94
that and what 92D
whose 94A, 95B
whom 94B, 95B, 96A–B
where 94C, 95B
of whom / of which 96B
- rely** (*on*) 135D
- remember**
remember + to ... and -ing 56B
remember how/what + to ... 54D
- remind**
remind + to ... 55B
remind of/about 134E
- reported speech** 47–48
reported questions 50B
- responsible** (*for*) 131B
- rise** (*in*) 129C
- risk** (+ -ing) 53A, 56A
- room** (countable or uncountable noun)
70A
- 's (apostrophe s)** 81, Appendix 5.1
- said** (*it is said that*) 45A
- same** (*the same as*) 73B, 107C, 117B
- satisfied**
satisfied and satisfying 98
satisfied with 130B
- say**
say and tell 48C
say (+ to ...) 48D
- scared** (*of*) 131A
- scenery** (uncountable noun) 70B
- school** (*school / the school*) 74A
- search** (*for*) 133B
- see**
with the present simple or *can* 4C
see *someone do/doing* 67
see *off* 140D
- seem**
seem + to ... 54C
seem + adjective 99C
- self** (*myself/yourself etc.*) 82, 83D
- series** 79B
- shall** and *will* 22D
shall I/we? 21D
Let's ..., shall we? 52D
shall and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
American English Appendix 7
- shocked**
shocked and shocking 98
shocked at/by 130C
- short** (*of*) 131A
- short forms** (*I'm, you've, didn't* etc.)
Appendix 5
- should** 33–34
should and had better 35B
should and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
American English Appendix 7
- shout** (*at/to*) 132D
- show**
show in passive sentences 44A
show someone how/what + to ...
54D
show off 141C
show up 143E
- similar** (*to*) 131B
- simple past** see **past simple**
- simple present** see **present simple**
- since**
with present perfect 8B, 9B, 11–12
since and for 12A
how long is it since ... ? 12D
since (= because) 116B
- singular** and plural 69, 71, 79
they/them/their used for *somebody/nobody* etc. 85E, 86C, 90D
- slightly** (+ comparative) 106A
- smell**
with the present simple and *can* 4C
smell something (burn)ing 67B
smell + adjective 99C
- so**
so am I, so do I etc. 51C
I think so, I hope so etc. 51D
so that (purpose) 64D
so and such 102
so + adjective + that 102B
so long as 115B
- solution** (*to*) 129D
- some** 69C, 71, 85
some with countable nouns 71
some and any 85
somebody/someone/something somewhere 85
some (of) 88
- soon** (*as soon as*) 25A–B
- sorry**
sorry + to ... 65C
sorry to do and sorry for/about doing 66C
sorry about/for 130D
feel sorry for 130D
- sound**
sound + adjective 99C
sound as if 118
- space** (*space and a space*) 73C
- speak** (*to*) 132A
- species** 79B
- spelling** Appendix 6
- spend**
spend time + -ing 63D
spend money on ... 136E
- spite** (*in spite of*) 113
- start** (*start + to ... or -ing*) 56C
- state verbs** (*like, know, belong* etc.)
4A, 6E, 10D, 16D, 17A
- still** 111
still and yet 111C

- stop**
stop + -ing 53, 56A
stop someone (from) + -ing 53C, 62B, 66D
- stupid** (*stupid of someone to do something*) 65B, 130A
- subjunctive** 34B
 American English Appendix 7
- succeed** (*in + -ing*) 62A, 66D, 136A
- such**
such and so 102
such as 117A
- suffer** (*from*) 135C
- suggest**
suggest + should 34A–C, 55B
suggest + -ing 53, 54A, 56A
- superlative** (*longest/best etc.*) 108
- suppose** (*I suppose so/not*) 51D
- supposed** (*He is supposed to ...*) 45B
- sure**
sure + to ... 65E, 84B
sure of/about 131B
- surprised**
surprised + to ... 65C
surprised and surprising 98
surprised at/by 130C
- suspect** (*of*) 62B, 135A
- suspicious** (*of*) 131A
- tags** (*question tags*) 52
- take**
take care of 133C
take somebody in 138B
take off 140
take down 142A
take up 143
- talk**
talk to somebody 132A
talk about something 62A, 133A
- taste**
with the present simple or can 4C
taste + adjective 99C
- teach**
teach in passive sentences 44A
teach somebody how to do something 54D
teach + to ... 55B
- telephone** see **phone**
- tell**
tell in passive sentences 44A
tell and say 48C
tell someone to do something 48D, 55B
tell someone what to do 54D
tell someone off 141C
- temporal clauses** (*when clauses*) 25
- tend** (*+ to ...*) 54A
- than** 105, 107
- thank** (*for*) 62B, 132B, 135B
- that**
said that 47B
in relative clauses 92–94
- the** 72–78
the and a/an 72, 73A
the sea, the sky etc. 73C
the cinema, the theatre etc. 73D
school / the school 74
children / the children 75
the + adjective (the young etc.) 76B
the + nationality word (the French etc.) 76C
the with geographical names 77
the with streets, buildings etc. 78
the + comparative (the sooner, the better) 106D
the + superlative (the oldest etc.) 108B
- there** (*and it*) 84
there's no point in ... 63A
there will/must/should etc. 84B
there is + -ing or -ed 97C
- they/them/their** (*used for somebody/anybody/nobody/everybody*) 85E, 86C, 90D
- think**
I think and I'm thinking 4B
I think so, I don't think so 51D
think of + -ing 54A, 62A, 66D
think about and think of 134B
- though** 113E
as though 118
even though 112D, 113E
- threaten** (*+ to ...*) 54A, 56A
- throw**
throw to/at 132D
throw away 137D, 145B
- till** see **until**
- time**
it's the first time I've ... 8C
it's time ... 35C
countable or uncountable noun 70A
on time and in time 122A
- tired**
tired and tiring 98
tired of 130C
- to + infinitive** (*to be / to do etc.*) see **infinitive**
- to** 126
to + -ing 60C
noun + to 129D
adjective + to 130A, 131B
verb + to 132, 136D
- too** and **enough** 103
- top** (*at the top*) 124C
- translate** (*from/into*) 136B
- travel** (uncountable noun) 70B
- trouble** (*have trouble doing something*) 63C
- try**
try + to ... or -ing 57A
try out 139C
try on 140C
- turn**
turn out 139
turn on/off 137D, 140A
turn up 142A, 143E
turn down 142
- two-word verbs** see **phrasal verbs**
- typical** (*of*) 131A
- uncountable nouns** 69–70
- understand** (*how/what + to ...*) 54D
- university** (*university / the university*) 74B
- unless** 115A
- until** (*or till*)
until + present simple / present perfect 25A–B
until and by 120B
- up** (*verb + up*) 137, 142–144
- upset** (*about*) 130B
- use** (*it's no use + -ing*) 63A
- used**
used to do 18
be/get used to 61
I am used to doing and I used to do 18F, 61D
- usually** (*position of usually*) 110
- verbs** see also **present, past, future, passive** etc.
 verbs not used in continuous tenses 4A, 6E, 10D, 16D, 17A
 list of irregular verbs Appendix 1.4
 present and past tenses Appendix 2
 verbs + *-ing* and verbs + *to ...* (infinitive) 53–59
 verb + preposition 62, 132–136
 phrasal verbs (*break down / get on etc.*) 137–145
- wait** (*for*) 133B
- want** (*+ to ...*) 55A, 66D
- warn** (*+ to ...*) 55B
- was/were** 5D
was/were -ing (past continuous) 6
was/were going to 20D
was/were able to 26D
was and were in if sentences 39C
- waste** (*waste time + -ing*) 63D
- weather** (uncountable noun) 70B
- well** 101A
- were** (*used with I/he/she/it*) 39C, 118D
- what**
what in questions 49
what ... for? 64C
What ... ! (exclamations) 71A–B
what and that (relative clauses) 92D, 93D
what and which (relative clauses) 96C

Index

- when**
when + present simple / present perfect 25
when and if 25D
when + *-ing* 68A
even when 112D
when and as 116
where (in relative clauses) 94C, 95C
whether 50
which
which in questions 49
which in relative clauses 92–93, 95–96
all/none/some of which 96B
while
while + present simple / present perfect 25A
while + *-ing* 68A
while and during 119C
who
who in questions 49
who in relative clauses 92–96
who and whose in relative clauses 94A
who and whom in relative clauses 94B
whole 90B–C
on the whole 127B
whom
in questions 49C
in relative clauses 94B, 96A–B
all/none/some of whom 96B
whose (in relative clauses) 94A, 95C
why
why isn't/didn't (etc.) ... ? 49D
why in relative clauses 94D
will 21–22
will you? 21, 37A
will and shall 21D, 22D
will and going to 23
will be doing (future continuous) 24
will have done (future perfect) 24
will in if and when sentences 25, 115C
will and would 36B, Appendix 4
will in the passive 43A
Don't..., will you? 52D
will and other future forms
Appendix 3
will and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
wish 41
I wish I knew etc. 39, 41
I wish I'd known etc. 40C, 41
wish and hope 41A
wish...would 41D
with
noun + with 129E
adjective + with 130B–C, 131B
verb + with 136C
without (+ *-ing*) 60B
won't (= *will not*) 21–22
- word order**
have something done 46
questions 49
negative questions 49D
embedded questions (*Do you know what...?*) 50A
reported questions 50B
order of adjectives 99
verb and object together 109A
place and time 109B
position of adverbs with the verb (*also, always etc.*) 110
word order with phrasal verbs (*turn on the light, turn it on etc.*) 137D
- work**
uncountable noun 70B, 74C
work out 139B
worried (*about*) 130B
worse 105C
worst 108A
worth (*it's worth + -ing*) 63B
would 36
would and will 36B
would you like? I'd like 37D
would in if sentences 38–40
wish...would 41D
would like/love/hate/prefer + to ...
55A, 58B–C
would prefer 58B, 59B
would rather 59C–D
would and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
- write**
write to 132B
write down 142D
- yet**
yet and still 111C
yet + present perfect 7D

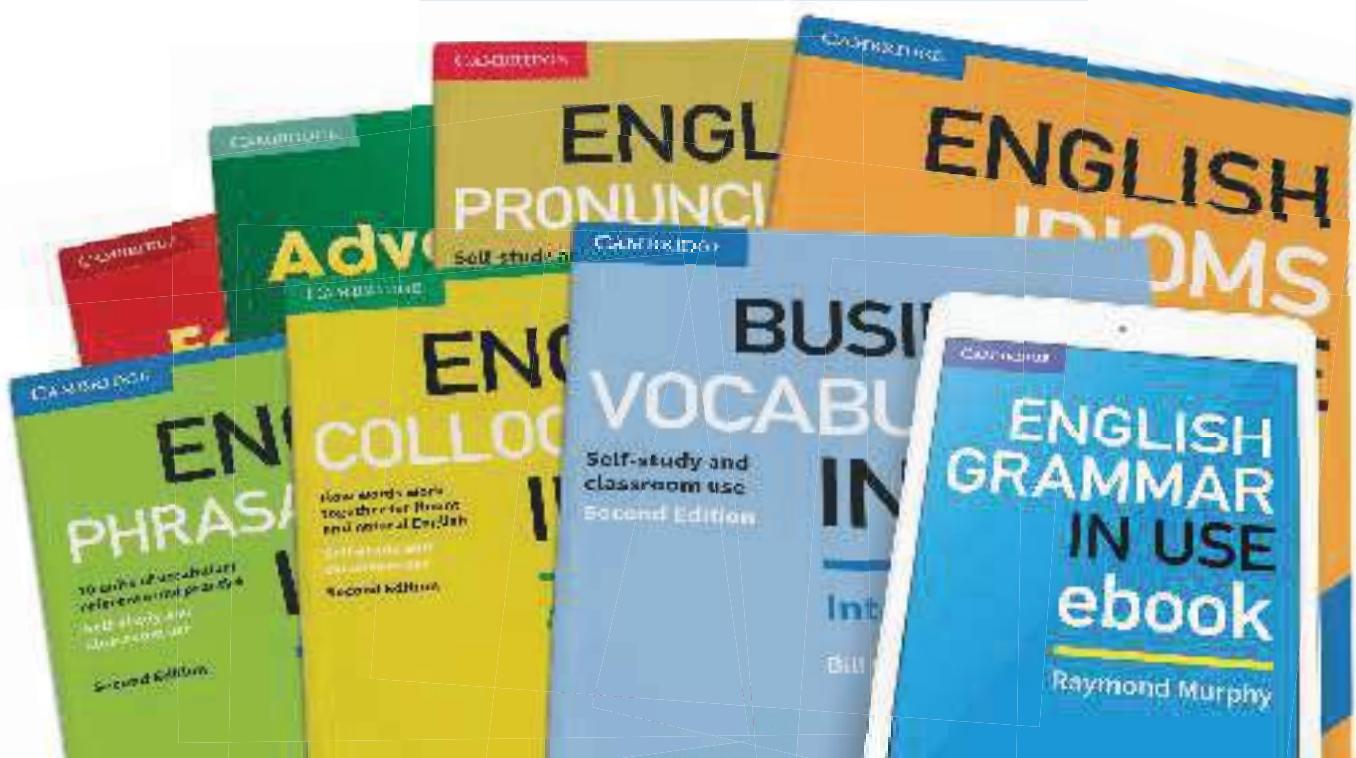
Trusted by millions,
RIGHT FOR YOU.

CHOOSE IN USE

For over 30 years, in Use has helped millions of learners around the world improve their grammar, vocabulary and pronunciation.

With clear explanations and essential practice exercises, in Use is perfect for self-study or to supplement the classroom.

cambridge.org/chooseinuse



PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND



DAVID ICKE

PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND



DAVID ICKE

PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

ickonic
publishing

First published in July 2021.



**New Enterprise House
St Helens Street
Derby
DE1 3GY
UK**

email: gareth.icke@davidicke.com

Copyright © 2021 David Icke

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission from the Publisher, except for the quotation of brief passages in criticism

Cover Design: Gareth Icke
Book Design: Neil Hague

**British Library Cataloguing-in
Publication Data**
A catalogue record for this book is
available from the British Library

eISBN 978-18384153-1-0

PERCEPTIONS
OF A
RENEGADE
MIND



DAVID ICKE

Dedication:

To *Freeeeeedom!*

ICKONIC



THE ALTERNATIVE

NEW. DIFFERENT. REVOLUTIONARY

HUNDREDS OF CUTTING EDGE DOCUMENTARIES,
FEATURE FILMS, SERIES & PODCASTS.

SIGN UP NOW AT ICKONIC.COM

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE
RENEGADE
THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM



AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM

Renegade:

Adjective

'Having rejected tradition: Unconventional.'

Merriam-Webster Dictionary

Acquiescence to tyranny is the death of the spirit

You may be 38 years old, as I happen to be. And one day, some great opportunity stands before you and calls you to stand up for some great principle, some great issue, some great cause. And you refuse to do it because you are afraid

... You refuse to do it because you want to live longer ...

You're afraid that you will lose your job, or you are afraid that you will be criticised or that you will lose your popularity, or you're afraid that somebody will stab you, or shoot at you or bomb your house; so you refuse to take the stand.

Well, you may go on and live until you are 90, but you're just as dead at 38 as you would be at 90. And the cessation of breathing in your life is but the belated announcement of an earlier death of the spirit.

Martin Luther King

**How the few control the many and always have – the many do
whatever they're told**

'Forward, the Light Brigade!'
Was there a man dismayed?
Not though the soldier knew
 Someone had blundered.
Theirs not to make reply,
Theirs not to reason why,
Theirs but to do and die.
 Into the valley of Death
 Rode the six hundred.

Cannon to right of them,
Cannon to left of them,
Cannon in front of them
 Volleyed and thundered;
Stormed at with shot and shell,
 Boldly they rode and well,
 Into the jaws of Death,
 Into the mouth of hell
 Rode the six hundred

Alfred Lord Tennyson (1809-1892)

The mist is lifting slowly
I can see the way ahead
And I've left behind the empty streets
That once inspired my life
And the strength of the emotion
Is like thunder in the air
'Cos the promise that we made each other
Haunts me to the end

The secret of your beauty
And the mystery of your soul
I've been searching for in everyone I meet
And the times I've been mistaken
It's impossible to say
And the grass is growing
Underneath our feet

The words that I remember
From my childhood still are true
That there's none so blind
As those who will not see
And to those who lack the courage
And say it's dangerous to try
Well they just don't know
That love eternal will not be denied

I know you're out there somewhere
Somewhere, somewhere
I know you're out there somewhere

Somewhere you can hear my voice
I know I'll find you somehow
Somehow, somehow
I know I'll find you somehow
And somehow I'll return again to you

The Moody Blues

Are you a gutless wonder - or a Renegade Mind?

Monuments put from pen to paper,
Turns me into a gutless wonder,
And if you tolerate this,
Then your children will be next.
Gravity keeps my head down,
Or is it maybe shame ...

Manic Street Preachers

Rise like lions after slumber
In unvanquishable number.
Shake your chains to earth like dew
Which in sleep have fallen on you.
Ye are many – they are few.

Percy Shelley

Contents

CHAPTER 1	'I'm thinking' – Oh, but <i>are you?</i>
CHAPTER 2	Renegade perception
CHAPTER 3	The Pushbacker sting
CHAPTER 4	'Covid': The calculated catastrophe
CHAPTER 5	There <i>is no</i> 'virus'
CHAPTER 6	Sequence of deceit
CHAPTER 7	War on your mind
CHAPTER 8	'Reframing' insanity
CHAPTER 9	We must have it? So what is it?
CHAPTER 10	Human 2.0
CHAPTER 11	Who controls the Cult?
CHAPTER 12	Escaping Wetiko
POSTSCRIPT	
APPENDIX	Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation
BIBLIOGRAPHY	
INDEX	

CHAPTER ONE

I'm thinking' – Oh, but *are* you?

Think for yourself and let others enjoy the privilege of doing so too
Voltaire

French-born philosopher, mathematician and scientist René Descartes became famous for his statement in Latin in the 17th century which translates into English as: 'I think, therefore I am.'

On the face of it that is true. Thought reflects perception and perception leads to both behaviour and self-identity. In that sense 'we' are what we think. But who or what is doing the thinking and is thinking the only route to perception? Clearly, as we shall see, 'we' are not always the source of 'our' perception, indeed with regard to humanity as a whole this is rarely the case; and thinking is far from the only means of perception. Thought is the village idiot compared with other expressions of consciousness that we all have the potential to access and tap into. This has to be true when we *are* those other expressions of consciousness which are infinite in nature. We have forgotten this, or, more to the point, been manipulated to forget.

These are not just the esoteric musings of the navel. The whole foundation of human control and oppression is control of perception. Once perception is hijacked then so is behaviour which is dictated by perception. Collective perception becomes collective behaviour and collective behaviour is what we call human society. Perception is all and those behind human control know that which is

why perception is the target 24/7 of the psychopathic manipulators that I call the Global Cult. They know that if they dictate perception they will dictate behaviour and collectively dictate the nature of human society. They are further aware that perception is formed from information received and if they control the circulation of information they will to a vast extent direct human behaviour.

Censorship of information and opinion has become globally Nazi-like in recent years and never more blatantly than since the illusory ‘virus pandemic’ was triggered out of China in 2019 and across the world in 2020. Why have billions submitted to house arrest and accepted fascistic societies in a way they would have never believed possible? Those controlling the information spewing from government, mainstream media and Silicon Valley (all controlled by the same Global Cult networks) told them they were in danger from a ‘deadly virus’ and only by submitting to house arrest and conceding their most basic of freedoms could they and their families be protected. This monumental and provable lie became the *perception* of the billions and therefore the *behaviour* of the billions. In those few words you have the whole structure and modus operandi of human control. Fear is a perception – False Emotion Appearing Real – and fear is the currency of control. In short ... get them by the balls (or give them the impression that you have) and their hearts and minds will follow. Nothing grips the dangly bits and freezes the rear-end more comprehensively than fear.

World number 1

There are two ‘worlds’ in what appears to be one ‘world’ and the prime difference between them is knowledge. First we have the mass of human society in which the population is maintained in coldly-calculated ignorance through control of information and the ‘education’ (indoctrination) system. That’s all you really need to control to enslave billions in a perceptual delusion in which what are perceived to be *their* thoughts and opinions are ever-repeated mantras that the system has been downloading all their lives through ‘education’, media, science, medicine, politics and academia

in which the personnel and advocates are themselves overwhelmingly the perceptual products of the same repetition. Teachers and academics in general are processed by the same programming machine as everyone else, but unlike the great majority they never leave the ‘education’ program. It gripped them as students and continues to grip them as programmers of subsequent generations of students. The programmed become the programmers – the programmed programmers. The same can largely be said for scientists, doctors and politicians and not least because as the American writer Upton Sinclair said: ‘It is difficult to get a man to understand something when his salary depends upon his not understanding it.’ If your career and income depend on thinking the way the system demands then you will – bar a few free-minded exceptions – concede your mind to the Perceptual Mainframe that I call the Postage Stamp Consensus. This is a tiny band of perceived knowledge and possibility ‘taught’ (downloaded) in the schools and universities, pounded out by the mainstream media and on which all government policy is founded. Try thinking, and especially speaking and acting, outside of the ‘box’ of consensus and see what that does for your career in the Mainstream Everything which bullies, harasses, intimidates and ridicules the population into compliance. Here we have the simple structure which enslaves most of humanity in a perceptual prison cell for an entire lifetime and I’ll go deeper into this process shortly. Most of what humanity is taught as fact is nothing more than programmed belief. American science fiction author Frank Herbert was right when he said: ‘Belief can be manipulated. Only knowledge is dangerous.’ In the ‘Covid’ age belief is promoted and knowledge is censored. It was always so, but never to the extreme of today.

World number 2

A ‘number 2’ is slang for ‘doing a poo’ and how appropriate that is when this other ‘world’ is doing just that on humanity every minute of every day. World number 2 is a global network of secret societies and semi-secret groups dictating the direction of society via

governments, corporations and authorities of every kind. I have spent more than 30 years uncovering and exposing this network that I call the Global Cult and knowing its agenda is what has made my books so accurate in predicting current and past events. Secret societies are secret for a reason. They want to keep their hoarded knowledge to themselves and their chosen initiates and to hide it from the population which they seek through ignorance to control and subdue. The whole foundation of the division between World 1 and World 2 is *knowledge*. What number 1 knows number 2 must not. Knowledge they have worked so hard to keep secret includes (a) the agenda to enslave humanity in a centrally-controlled global dictatorship, and (b) the nature of reality and life itself. The latter (b) must be suppressed to allow the former (a) to prevail as I shall be explaining. The way the Cult manipulates and interacts with the population can be likened to a spider's web. The 'spider' sits at the centre in the shadows and imposes its will through the web with each strand represented in World number 2 by a secret society, satanic or semi-secret group, and in World number 1 – the world of the seen – by governments, agencies of government, law enforcement, corporations, the banking system, media conglomerates and Silicon Valley ([Fig 1](#) overleaf). The spider and the web connect and coordinate all these organisations to pursue the same global outcome while the population sees them as individual entities working randomly and independently. At the level of the web governments *are* the banking system *are* the corporations *are* the media *are* Silicon Valley *are* the World Health Organization working from their inner cores as one unit. Apparently unconnected countries, corporations, institutions, organisations and people are on the *same team* pursuing the same global outcome. Strands in the web immediately around the spider are the most secretive and exclusive secret societies and their membership is emphatically restricted to the Cult inner-circle emerging through the generations from particular bloodlines for reasons I will come to. At the core of the core you would get them in a single room. That's how many people are dictating the direction of human society and its transformation

through the ‘Covid’ hoax and other means. As the web expands out from the spider we meet the secret societies that many people will be aware of – the Freemasons, Knights Templar, Knights of Malta, Opus Dei, the inner sanctum of the Jesuit Order, and such like. Note how many are connected to the Church of Rome and there is a reason for that. The Roman Church was established as a revamp, a rebranding, of the relocated ‘Church’ of Babylon and the Cult imposing global tyranny today can be tracked back to Babylon and Sumer in what is now Iraq.



Figure 1: The global web through which the few control the many. (Image Neil Hague.)

Inner levels of the web operate in the unseen away from the public eye and then we have what I call the cusp organisations located at the point where the hidden meets the seen. They include a series of satellite organisations answering to a secret society founded in London in the late 19th century called the Round Table and among them are the Royal Institute of International Affairs (UK, founded in 1920); Council on Foreign Relations (US, 1921); Bilderberg Group (worldwide, 1954); Trilateral Commission (US/worldwide, 1972); and the Club of Rome (worldwide, 1968) which was created to exploit environmental concerns to justify the centralisation of global power to ‘save the planet’. The Club of Rome instigated with others the human-caused climate change hoax which has led to all the ‘green

new deals' demanding that very centralisation of control. Cusp organisations, which include endless 'think tanks' all over the world, are designed to coordinate a single global policy between political and business leaders, intelligence personnel, media organisations and anyone who can influence the direction of policy in their own sphere of operation. Major players and regular attenders will know what is happening – or some of it – while others come and go and are kept overwhelmingly in the dark about the big picture. I refer to these cusp groupings as semi-secret in that they can be publicly identified, but what goes on at the inner-core is kept very much 'in house' even from most of their members and participants through a fiercely-imposed system of compartmentalisation. Only let them know what they need to know to serve your interests and no more. The structure of secret societies serves as a perfect example of this principle. Most Freemasons never get higher than the bottom three levels of 'degree' (degree of knowledge) when there are 33 official degrees of the Scottish Rite. Initiates only qualify for the next higher 'compartment' or degree if those at that level choose to allow them. Knowledge can be carefully assigned only to those considered 'safe'. I went to my local Freemason's lodge a few years ago when they were having an 'open day' to show how cuddly they were and when I chatted to some of them I was astonished at how little the rank and file knew even about the most ubiquitous symbols they use. The mushroom technique – keep them in the dark and feed them bullshit – applies to most people in the web as well as the population as a whole. Sub-divisions of the web mirror in theme and structure transnational corporations which have a headquarters somewhere in the world dictating to all their subsidiaries in different countries. Subsidiaries operate in their methodology and branding to the same centrally-dictated plan and policy in pursuit of particular ends. The Cult web functions in the same way. Each country has its own web as a subsidiary of the global one. They consist of networks of secret societies, semi-secret groups and bloodline families and their job is to impose the will of the spider and the global web in their particular country. Subsidiary networks control and manipulate the national political system, finance, corporations, media, medicine, etc. to

ensure that they follow the globally-dictated Cult agenda. These networks were the means through which the ‘Covid’ hoax could be played out with almost every country responding in the same way.

The ‘Yessir’ pyramid

Compartmentalisation is the key to understanding how a tiny few can dictate the lives of billions when combined with a top-down sequence of imposition and acquiescence. The inner core of the Cult sits at the peak of the pyramidal hierarchy of human society ([Fig 2](#) overleaf). It imposes its will – its agenda for the world – on the level immediately below which acquiesces to that imposition. This level then imposes the Cult will on the level below them which acquiesces and imposes on the next level. Very quickly we meet levels in the hierarchy that have no idea there even is a Cult, but the sequence of imposition and acquiescence continues down the pyramid in just the same way. ‘I don’t know why we are doing this but the order came from “on-high” and so we better just do it.’ Alfred Lord Tennyson said of the cannon fodder levels in his poem *The Charge of the Light Brigade*: ‘Theirs not to reason why; theirs but to do and die.’ The next line says that ‘into the valley of death rode the six hundred’ and they died because they obeyed without question what their perceived ‘superiors’ told them to do. In the same way the population capitulated to ‘Covid’. The whole hierarchical pyramid functions like this to allow the very few to direct the enormous many.

Eventually imposition-acquiescence-imposition-acquiescence comes down to the mass of the population at the foot of the pyramid. If they acquiesce to those levels of the hierarchy imposing on them (governments/law enforcement/doctors/media) a circuit is completed between the population and the handful of super-psychopaths in the Cult inner core at the top of the pyramid. Without a circuit-breaking refusal to obey, the sequence of imposition and acquiescence allows a staggeringly few people to impose their will upon the entirety of humankind. We are looking at the very sequence that has subjugated billions since the start of 2020. Our freedom has not been taken from us. Humanity has given it

away. Fascists do not impose fascism because there are not enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. Put another way allowing their perceptions to be programmed to the extent that leads to the population giving their freedom away by giving their perceptions – their mind – away. If this circuit is not broken by humanity ceasing to cooperate with their own enslavement then nothing can change. For that to happen people have to critically think and see through the lies and window dressing and then summon the backbone to act upon what they see. The Cult spends its days working to stop either happening and its methodology is systematic and highly detailed, but it can be overcome and that is what this book is all about.

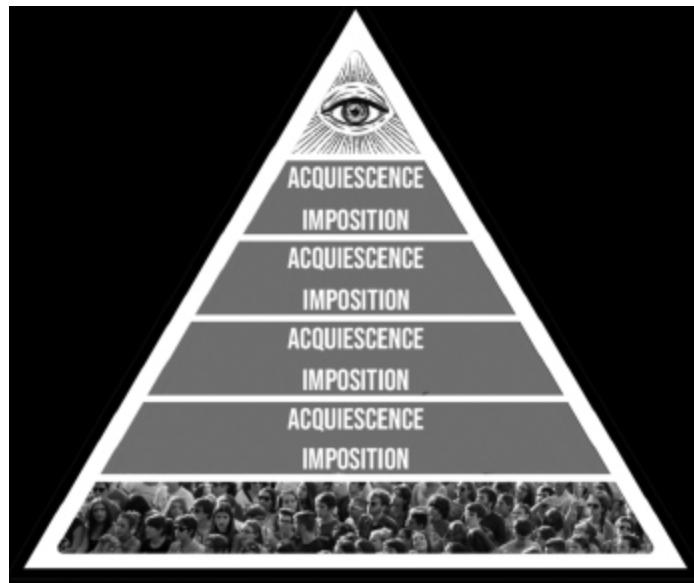


Figure 2: The simple sequence of imposition and compliance that allows a handful of people at the peak of the pyramid to dictate the lives of billions.

The Life Program

Okay, back to world number 1 or the world of the ‘masses’. Observe the process of what we call ‘life’ and it is a perceptual download from cradle to grave. The Cult has created a global structure in which perception can be programmed and the program continually topped-up with what appears to be constant confirmation that the program is indeed true reality. The important word here is ‘appears’.

This is the structure, the fly-trap, the Postage Stamp Consensus or Perceptual Mainframe, which represents that incredibly narrow band of perceived possibility delivered by the ‘education’ system, mainstream media, science and medicine. From the earliest age the download begins with parents who have themselves succumbed to the very programming their children are about to go through. Most parents don’t do this out of malevolence and mostly it is quite the opposite. They do what they believe is best for their children and that is what the program has told them is best. Within three or four years comes the major transition from parental programming to full-blown state (Cult) programming in school, college and university where perceptually-programmed teachers and academics pass on their programming to the next generations. Teachers who resist are soon marginalised and their careers ended while children who resist are called a problem child for whom Ritalin may need to be prescribed. A few years after entering the ‘world’ children are under the control of authority figures representing the state telling them when they have to be there, when they can leave and when they can speak, eat, even go to the toilet. This is calculated preparation for a lifetime of obeying authority in all its forms. Reflex-action fear of authority is instilled by authority from the start. Children soon learn the carrot and stick consequences of obeying or defying authority which is underpinned daily for the rest of their life. Fortunately I daydreamed through this crap and never obeyed authority simply because it told me to. This approach to my alleged ‘bettters’ continues to this day. There can be consequences of pursuing open-minded freedom in a world of closed-minded conformity. I spent a lot of time in school corridors after being ejected from the classroom for not taking some of it seriously and now I spend a lot of time being ejected from Facebook, YouTube and Twitter. But I can tell you that being true to yourself and not compromising your self-respect is far more exhilarating than bowing to authority for authority’s sake. You don’t have to be a sheep to the shepherd (authority) and the sheep dog (fear of not obeying authority).

The perceptual download continues throughout the formative years in school, college and university while script-reading ‘teachers’, ‘academics’ ‘scientists’, ‘doctors’ and ‘journalists’ insist that ongoing generations must be as programmed as they are. Accept the program or you will not pass your ‘exams’ which confirm your ‘degree’ of programming. It is tragic to think that many parents pressure their offspring to work hard at school to download the program and qualify for the next stage at college and university. The late, great, American comedian George Carlin said: ‘Here’s a bumper sticker I’d like to see: We are proud parents of a child who has resisted his teachers’ attempts to break his spirit and bend him to the will of his corporate masters.’ Well, the best of luck finding many of those, George. Then comes the moment to leave the formal programming years in academia and enter the ‘adult’ world of work. There you meet others in your chosen or prescribed arena who went through the same Postage Stamp Consensus program before you did. There is therefore overwhelming agreement between almost everyone on the basic foundations of Postage Stamp reality and the rejection, even contempt, of the few who have a mind of their own and are prepared to use it. This has two major effects. Firstly, the consensus confirms to the programmed that their download is really how things are. I mean, everyone knows that, right? Secondly, the arrogance and ignorance of Postage Stamp adherents ensure that anyone questioning the program will have unpleasant consequences for seeking their own truth and not picking their perceptions from the shelf marked: ‘Things you must believe without question and if you don’t you’re a dangerous lunatic conspiracy theorist and a harebrained nutter’.

Every government, agency and corporation is founded on the same Postage Stamp prison cell and you can see why so many people believe the same thing while calling it their own ‘opinion’. Fusion of governments and corporations in pursuit of the same agenda was the definition of fascism described by Italian dictator Benito Mussolini. The pressure to conform to perceptual norms downloaded for a lifetime is incessant and infiltrates society right

down to family groups that become censors and condemners of their own ‘black sheep’ for not, ironically, being sheep. We have seen an explosion of that in the ‘Covid’ era. Cult-owned global media unleashes its propaganda all day every day in support of the Postage Stamp and targets with abuse and ridicule anyone in the public eye who won’t bend their mind to the will of the tyranny. Any response to this is denied (certainly in my case). They don’t want to give a platform to expose official lies. Cult-owned-and-created Internet giants like Facebook, Google, YouTube and Twitter delete you for having an unapproved opinion. Facebook boasts that its AI censors delete 97-percent of ‘hate speech’ before anyone even reports it. Much of that ‘hate speech’ will simply be an opinion that Facebook and its masters don’t want people to see. Such perceptual oppression is widely known as fascism. Even Facebook executive Benny Thomas, a ‘CEO Global Planning Lead’, said in comments secretly recorded by investigative journalism operation Project Veritas that Facebook is ‘too powerful’ and should be broken up:

I mean, no king in history has been the ruler of two billion people, but Mark Zuckerberg is ... And he's 36. That's too much for a 36-year-old ... You should not have power over two billion people. I just think that's wrong.

Thomas said Facebook-owned platforms like Instagram, Oculus, and WhatsApp needed to be separate companies. ‘It’s too much power when they’re all one together’. That’s the way the Cult likes it, however. We have an executive of a Cult organisation in Benny Thomas that doesn’t know there is a Cult such is the compartmentalisation. Thomas said that Facebook and Google ‘are no longer companies, they’re countries’. Actually they are more powerful than countries on the basis that if you control information you control perception and control human society.

I love my oppressor

Another expression of this psychological trickery is for those who realise they are being pressured into compliance to eventually

convince themselves to believe the official narratives to protect their self-respect from accepting the truth that they have succumbed to meek and subservient compliance. Such people become some of the most vehement defenders of the system. You can see them everywhere screaming abuse at those who prefer to think for themselves and by doing so reminding the compliers of their own capitulation to conformity. ‘You are talking dangerous nonsense you Covidiot!!’ Are you trying to convince me or yourself? It is a potent form of Stockholm syndrome which is defined as: ‘A psychological condition that occurs when a victim of abuse identifies and attaches, or bonds, positively with their abuser.’ An example is hostages bonding and even ‘falling in love’ with their kidnappers. The syndrome has been observed in domestic violence, abused children, concentration camp inmates, prisoners of war and many and various Satanic cults. These are some traits of Stockholm syndrome listed at goodtherapy.org:

- Positive regard towards perpetrators of abuse or captor [see ‘Covid’].
- Failure to cooperate with police and other government authorities when it comes to holding perpetrators of abuse or kidnapping accountable [or in the case of ‘Covid’ cooperating with the police to enforce and defend their captors’ demands].
- Little or no effort to escape [see ‘Covid’].
- Belief in the goodness of the perpetrators or kidnappers [see ‘Covid’].
- Appeasement of captors. This is a manipulative strategy for maintaining one’s safety. As victims get rewarded – perhaps with less abuse or even with life itself – their appeasing behaviours are reinforced [see ‘Covid’].
- Learned helplessness. This can be akin to ‘if you can’t beat ‘em, join ‘em’. As the victims fail to escape the abuse or captivity, they may start giving up and soon realize it’s just easier for everyone if they acquiesce all their power to their captors [see ‘Covid’].

- Feelings of pity toward the abusers, believing they are actually victims themselves. Because of this, victims may go on a crusade or mission to 'save' [protect] their abuser [see the venom unleashed on those challenging the official 'Covid' narrative].
- Unwillingness to learn to detach from their perpetrators and heal. In essence, victims may tend to be less loyal to themselves than to their abuser [*definitely* see 'Covid'].

Ponder on those traits and compare them with the behaviour of great swathes of the global population who have defended governments and authorities which have spent every minute destroying their lives and livelihoods and those of their children and grandchildren since early 2020 with fascistic lockdowns, house arrest and employment deletion to 'protect' them from a 'deadly virus' that their abusers' perceptually created to bring about this very outcome. We are looking at mass Stockholm syndrome. All those that agree to concede their freedom will believe those perceptions are originating in their own independent 'mind' when in fact by conceding their reality to Stockholm syndrome they have by definition conceded any independence of mind. Listen to the 'opinions' of the acquiescing masses in this 'Covid' era and what gushes forth is the repetition of the official version of everything delivered unprocessed, unfiltered and unquestioned. The whole programming dynamic works this way. I must be free because I'm told that I am and so I think that I am.

You can see what I mean with the chapter theme of 'I'm thinking – Oh, but *are you?*' The great majority are not thinking, let alone for themselves. They are repeating what authority has told them to believe which allows them to be controlled. Weaving through this mentality is the fear that the 'conspiracy theorists' are right and this again explains the often hysterical abuse that ensues when you dare to contest the official narrative of anything. Denial is the mechanism of hiding from yourself what you don't want to be true. Telling people what they want to hear is easy, but it's an infinitely greater challenge to tell them what they would rather not be happening.

One is akin to pushing against an open door while the other is met with vehement resistance no matter what the scale of evidence. I don't want it to be true so I'll convince myself that it's not. Examples are everywhere from the denial that a partner is cheating despite all the signs to the reflex-action rejection of any idea that world events in which country after country act in exactly the same way are centrally coordinated. To accept the latter is to accept that a force of unspeakable evil is working to destroy your life and the lives of your children with nothing too horrific to achieve that end. Who the heck wants that to be true? But if we don't face reality the end is duly achieved and the consequences are far worse and ongoing than breaking through the walls of denial today with the courage to make a stand against tyranny.

Connect the dots – but how?

A crucial aspect of perceptual programming is to portray a world in which everything is random and almost nothing is connected to anything else. Randomness cannot be coordinated by its very nature and once you perceive events as random the idea they could be connected is waved away as the rantings of the tinfoil-hat brigade. You can't plan and coordinate random you idiot! No, you can't, but you can hide the coldly-calculated and long-planned behind the *illusion* of randomness. A foundation manifestation of the Renegade Mind is to scan reality for patterns that connect the apparently random and turn pixels and dots into pictures. This is the way I work and have done so for more than 30 years. You look for similarities in people, modus operandi and desired outcomes and slowly, then ever quicker, the picture forms. For instance: There would seem to be no connection between the 'Covid pandemic' hoax and the human-caused global-warming hoax and yet they are masks (appropriately) on the same face seeking the same outcome. Those pushing the global warming myth through the Club of Rome and other Cult agencies are driving the lies about 'Covid' – Bill Gates is an obvious one, but they are endless. Why would the same people be involved in both when they are clearly not connected? Oh, but they

are. Common themes with personnel are matched by common goals. The ‘solutions’ to both ‘problems’ are centralisation of global power to impose the will of the few on the many to ‘save’ humanity from ‘Covid’ and save the planet from an ‘existential threat’ (we need ‘zero Covid’ and ‘zero carbon emissions’). These, in turn, connect with the ‘dot’ of globalisation which was coined to describe the centralisation of global power in every area of life through incessant political and corporate expansion, trading blocks and superstates like the European Union. If you are the few and you want to control the many you have to centralise power and decision-making. The more you centralise power the more power the few at the centre will have over the many; and the more that power is centralised the more power those at the centre have to centralise even quicker. The momentum of centralisation gets faster and faster which is exactly the process we have witnessed. In this way the hoaxed ‘pandemic’ and the fakery of human-caused global warming serve the interests of globalisation and the seizure of global power in the hands of the Cult inner-circle which is behind ‘Covid’, ‘climate change’ and globalisation. At this point random ‘dots’ become a clear and obvious picture or pattern.

Klaus Schwab, the classic Bond villain who founded the Cult’s Gates-funded World Economic Forum, published a book in 2020, *The Great Reset*, in which he used the ‘problem’ of ‘Covid’ to justify a total transformation of human society to ‘save’ humanity from ‘climate change’. Schwab said: ‘The pandemic represents a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world.’ What he didn’t mention is that the Cult he serves is behind both hoaxes as I show in my book *The Answer*. He and the Cult don’t have to reimagine the world. They know precisely what they want and that’s why they destroyed human society with ‘Covid’ to ‘build back better’ in their grand design. Their job is not to imagine, but to get humanity to imagine and agree with their plans while believing it’s all random. It must be pure coincidence that ‘The Great Reset’ has long been the Cult’s code name for the global imposition of fascism and replaced previous code-names of the ‘New World

'Order' used by Cult frontmen like Father George Bush and the 'New Order of the Ages' which emerged from Freemasonry and much older secret societies. New Order of the Ages appears on the reverse of the Great Seal of the United States as 'Novus ordo seclorum' underneath the Cult symbol used since way back of the pyramid and all seeing-eye ([Fig 3](#)). The pyramid is the hierarchy of human control headed by the illuminated eye that symbolises the force behind the Cult which I will expose in later chapters. The term 'Annuit Coeptis' translates as 'He favours our undertaking'. We are told the 'He' is the Christian god, but 'He' is not as I will be explaining.



Figure 3: The all-seeing eye of the Cult 'god' on the Freemason-designed Great Seal of the United States and also on the dollar bill.

Having you on

Two major Cult techniques of perceptual manipulation that relate to all this are what I have called since the 1990s Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) and the Totalitarian Tiptoe (TT). They can be uncovered by the inquiring mind with a simple question: Who benefits? The answer usually identifies the perpetrators of a given action or happening through the concept of 'he who most benefits from a crime is the one most likely to have committed it'. The Latin 'Cue bono?' – Who benefits? – is widely attributed to the Roman orator and statesman Marcus Tullius Cicero. No wonder it goes back so far when the concept has been relevant to human behaviour since

history was recorded. Problem-Reaction-Solution is the technique used to manipulate us every day by covertly creating a problem (or the illusion of one) and offering the solution to the problem (or the illusion of one). In the first phase you create the problem and blame someone or something else for why it has happened. This may relate to a financial collapse, terrorist attack, war, global warming or pandemic, anything in fact that will allow you to impose the ‘solution’ to change society in the way you desire at that time. The ‘problem’ doesn’t have to be real. PRS is manipulation of perception and all you need is the population to believe the problem is real. Human-caused global warming and the ‘Covid pandemic’ only have to be *perceived* to be real for the population to accept the ‘solutions’ of authority. I refer to this technique as NO-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Billions did not meekly accept house arrest from early 2020 because there was a real deadly ‘Covid pandemic’ but because they perceived – believed – that to be the case. The antidote to Problem-Reaction-Solution is to ask who benefits from the proposed solution. Invariably it will be anyone who wants to justify more control through deletion of freedom and centralisation of power and decision-making.

The two world wars were Problem-Reaction-Solutions that transformed and realigned global society. Both were manipulated into being by the Cult as I have detailed in books since the mid-1990s. They dramatically centralised global power, especially World War Two, which led to the United Nations and other global bodies thanks to the overt and covert manipulations of the Rockefeller family and other Cult bloodlines like the Rothschilds. The UN is a stalking horse for full-blown world government that I will come to shortly. The land on which the UN building stands in New York was donated by the Rockefellers and the same Cult family was behind Big Pharma scalpel and drug ‘medicine’ and the creation of the World Health Organization as part of the UN. They have been stalwarts of the eugenics movement and funded Hitler’s race-purity expert Ernst Rudin. The human-caused global warming hoax has been orchestrated by the Club of Rome through the UN which is

manufacturing both the ‘problem’ through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change and imposing the ‘solution’ through its Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 which demand the total centralisation of global power to ‘save the world’ from a climate hoax the United Nations is itself perpetrating. What a small world the Cult can be seen to be particularly among the inner circles. The bedfellow of Problem-Reaction-Solution is the Totalitarian Tiptoe which became the Totalitarian Sprint in 2020. The technique is fashioned to hide the carefully-coordinated behind the cover of apparently random events. You start the sequence at ‘A’ and you know you are heading for ‘Z’. You don’t want people to know that and each step on the journey is presented as a random happening while all the steps strung together lead in the same direction. The speed may have quickened dramatically in recent times, but you can still see the incremental approach of the Tiptoe in the case of ‘Covid’ as each new imposition takes us deeper into fascism. Tell people they have to do this or that to get back to ‘normal’, then this and this and this. With each new demand adding to the ones that went before the population’s freedom is deleted until it disappears. The spider wraps its web around the flies more comprehensively with each new diktat. I’ll highlight this in more detail when I get to the ‘Covid’ hoax and how it has been pulled off. Another prime example of the Totalitarian Tiptoe is how the Cult-created European Union went from a ‘free-trade zone’ to a centralised bureaucratic dictatorship through the Tiptoe of incremental centralisation of power until nations became mere administrative units for Cult-owned dark suits in Brussels.

The antidote to ignorance is knowledge which the Cult seeks vehemently to deny us, but despite the systematic censorship to that end the Renegade Mind can overcome this by vociferously seeking out the facts no matter the impediments put in the way. There is also a method of thinking and perceiving – *knowing* – that doesn’t even need names, dates, place-type facts to identify the patterns that reveal the story. I’ll get to that in the final chapter. All you need to know about the manipulation of human society and to what end is still out there – *at the time of writing* – in the form of books, videos

and websites for those that really want to breach the walls of programmed perception. To access this knowledge requires the abandonment of the mainstream media as a source of information in the awareness that this is owned and controlled by the Cult and therefore promotes mass perceptions that suit the Cult. Mainstream media lies all day, every day. That is its function and very reason for being. Where it does tell the truth, here and there, is only because the truth and the Cult agenda very occasionally coincide. If you look for fact and insight to the BBC, CNN and virtually all the rest of them you are asking to be conned and perceptually programmed.

Know the outcome and you'll see the journey

Events seem random when you have no idea where the world is being taken. Once you do the random becomes the carefully planned. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey is a phrase I have been using for a long time to give context to daily happenings that appear unconnected. Does a problem, or illusion of a problem, trigger a proposed 'solution' that further drives society in the direction of the outcome? Invariably the answer will be yes and the random – *abracadabra* – becomes the clearly coordinated. So what is this outcome that unlocks the door to a massively expanded understanding of daily events? I will summarise its major aspects – the fine detail is in my other books – and those new to this information will see that the world they thought they were living in is a very different place. The foundation of the Cult agenda is the incessant centralisation of power and all such centralisation is ultimately in pursuit of Cult control on a global level. I have described for a long time the planned world structure of top-down dictatorship as the Hunger Games Society. The term obviously comes from the movie series which portrayed a world in which a few living in military-protected hi-tech luxury were the overlords of a population condemned to abject poverty in isolated 'sectors' that were not allowed to interact. 'Covid' lockdowns and travel bans anyone? The 'Hunger Games' pyramid of structural control has the inner circle of the Cult at the top with pretty much the entire

population at the bottom under their control through dependency for survival on the Cult. The whole structure is planned to be protected and enforced by a military-police state ([Fig 4](#)).

Here you have the reason for the global lockdowns of the fake pandemic to coldly destroy independent incomes and livelihoods and make everyone dependent on the ‘state’ (the Cult that controls the ‘states’). I have warned in my books for many years about the plan to introduce a ‘guaranteed income’ – a barely survivable pittance – designed to impose dependency when employment was destroyed by AI technology and now even more comprehensively at great speed by the ‘Covid’ scam. Once the pandemic was played and lockdown consequences began to delete independent income the authorities began to talk right on cue about the need for a guaranteed income and a ‘Great Reset’. Guaranteed income will be presented as benevolent governments seeking to help a desperate people – desperate as a direct result of actions of the same governments. The truth is that such payments are a trap. You will only get them if you do exactly what the authorities demand including mass vaccination (genetic manipulation). We have seen this theme already in Australia where those dependent on government benefits have them reduced if parents don’t agree to have their children vaccinated according to an insane health-destroying government-dictated schedule. Calculated economic collapse applies to governments as well as people. The Cult wants rid of countries through the creation of a world state with countries broken up into regions ruled by a world government and super states like the European Union. Countries must be bankrupted, too, to this end and it’s being achieved by the trillions in ‘rescue packages’ and furlough payments, trillions in lost taxation, and money-no-object spending on ‘Covid’ including constant all-medium advertising (programming) which has made the media dependent on government for much of its income. The day of reckoning is coming – as planned – for government spending and given that it has been made possible by printing money and not by production/taxation there is inflation on the way that has the

potential to wipe out monetary value. In that case there will be no need for the Cult to steal your money. It just won't be worth anything (see the German Weimar Republic before the Nazis took over). Many have been okay with lockdowns while getting a percentage of their income from so-called furlough payments without having to work. Those payments are dependent, however, on people having at least a theoretical job with a business considered non-essential and ordered to close. As these business go under because they are closed by lockdown after lockdown the furlough stops and it will for everyone eventually. Then what? The 'then what?' is precisely the idea.



Figure 4: The Hunger Games Society structure I have long warned was planned and now the 'Covid' hoax has made it possible. This is the real reason for lockdowns.

Hired hands

Between the Hunger Games Cult elite and the dependent population is planned to be a vicious military-police state (a fusion of the two into one force). This has been in the making for a long time with police looking ever more like the military and carrying weapons to match. The pandemic scam has seen this process accelerate so fast as

lockdown house arrest is brutally enforced by carefully recruited fascist minds and gormless system-servers. The police and military are planned to merge into a centrally-directed world army in a global structure headed by a world government which wouldn't be elected even by the election fixes now in place. The world army is not planned even to be human and instead wars would be fought, primarily against the population, using robot technology controlled by artificial intelligence. I have been warning about this for decades and now militaries around the world are being transformed by this very AI technology. The global regime that I describe is a particular form of fascism known as a technocracy in which decisions are not made by clueless and co-opted politicians but by unelected technocrats – scientists, engineers, technologists and bureaucrats. Cult-owned-and-controlled Silicon Valley giants are examples of technocracy and they already have far more power to direct world events than governments. They are with their censorship *selecting* governments. I know that some are calling the 'Great Reset' a Marxist communist takeover, but fascism and Marxism are different labels for the same tyranny. Tell those who lived in fascist Germany and Stalinist Russia that there was a difference in the way their freedom was deleted and their lives controlled. I could call it a fascist technocracy or a Marxist technocracy and they would be equally accurate. The Hunger Games society with its world government structure would oversee a world army, world central bank and single world cashless currency imposing its will on a microchipped population ([Fig 5](#)). Scan its different elements and see how the illusory pandemic is forcing society in this very direction at great speed. Leaders of 23 countries and the World Health Organization (WHO) backed the idea in March, 2021, of a global treaty for 'international cooperation' in 'health emergencies' and nations should 'come together as a global community for peaceful cooperation that extends beyond this crisis'. Cut the Orwellian bullshit and this means another step towards global government. The plan includes a cashless digital money system that I first warned about in 1993. Right at the start of 'Covid' the deeply corrupt Tedros

Adhanom Ghebreyesus, the crooked and merely gofer ‘head’ of the World Health Organization, said it was possible to catch the ‘virus’ by touching cash and it was better to use cashless means. The claim was ridiculous nonsense and like the whole ‘Covid’ mind-trick it was nothing to do with ‘health’ and everything to do with pushing every aspect of the Cult agenda. As a result of the Tedros lie the use of cash has plummeted. The Cult script involves a single world digital currency that would eventually be technologically embedded in the body. China is a massive global centre for the Cult and if you watch what is happening there you will know what is planned for everywhere. The Chinese government is developing a digital currency which would allow fines to be deducted immediately via AI for anyone caught on camera breaking its fantastic list of laws and the money is going to be programmable with an expiry date to ensure that no one can accrue wealth except the Cult and its operatives.



Figure 5: The structure of global control the Cult has been working towards for so long and this has been enormously advanced by the ‘Covid’ illusion.

Serfdom is so smart

The Cult plan is far wider, extreme, and more comprehensive than even most conspiracy researchers appreciate and I will come to the true depths of deceit and control in the chapters ‘Who controls the

Cult?' and 'Escaping Wetiko'. Even the world that we know is crazy enough. We are being deluged with ever more sophisticated and controlling technology under the heading of 'smart'. We have smart televisions, smart meters, smart cards, smart cars, smart driving, smart roads, smart pills, smart patches, smart watches, smart skin, smart borders, smart pavements, smart streets, smart cities, smart communities, smart environments, smart growth, smart planet ... smart *everything* around us. Smart technologies and methods of operation are designed to interlock to create a global Smart Grid connecting the entirety of human society including human minds to create a centrally-dictated 'hive' mind. 'Smart cities' is code for densely-occupied megacities of total surveillance and control through AI. Ever more destructive frequency communication systems like 5G have been rolled out without any official testing for health and psychological effects (colossal). 5G/6G/7G systems are needed to run the Smart Grid and each one becomes more destructive of body and mind. Deleting independent income is crucial to forcing people into these AI-policed prisons by ending private property ownership (except for the Cult elite). The Cult's Great Reset now openly foresees a global society in which no one will own any possessions and everything will be rented while the Cult would own literally everything under the guise of government and corporations. The aim has been to use the lockdowns to destroy sources of income on a mass scale and when the people are destitute and in unrepayable amounts of debt (problem) Cult assets come forward with the pledge to write-off debt in return for handing over all property and possessions (solution). Everything – literally everything including people – would be connected to the Internet via AI. I was warning years ago about the coming Internet of Things (IoT) in which all devices and technology from your car to your fridge would be plugged into the Internet and controlled by AI. Now we are already there with much more to come. The next stage is the Internet of Everything (IoE) which is planned to include the connection of AI to the human brain and body to replace the human mind with a centrally-controlled AI mind. Instead of perceptions

being manipulated through control of information and censorship those perceptions would come direct from the Cult through AI. What do you think? You think whatever AI decides that you think. In human terms there would be no individual 'think' any longer. Too incredible? The ravings of a lunatic? Not at all. Cult-owned crazies in Silicon Valley have been telling us the plan for years without explaining the real motivation and calculated implications. These include Google executive and 'futurist' Ray Kurzweil who highlights the year 2030 for when this would be underway. He said:

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' ... We're going to put gateways to the cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations.

As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

The sales-pitch of Kurzweil and Cult-owned Silicon Valley is that this would make us 'super-human' when the real aim is to make us post-human and no longer 'human' in the sense that we have come to know. The entire global population would be connected to AI and become the centrally-controlled 'hive-mind' of externally-delivered perceptions. The Smart Grid being installed to impose the Cult's will on the world is being constructed to allow particular locations – even one location – to control the whole global system. From these prime control centres, which absolutely include China and Israel, anything connected to the Internet would be switched on or off and manipulated at will. Energy systems could be cut, communication via the Internet taken down, computer-controlled driverless autonomous vehicles driven off the road, medical devices switched off, the potential is limitless given how much AI and Internet connections now run human society. We have seen nothing yet if we allow this to continue. Autonomous vehicle makers are working with law enforcement to produce cars designed to automatically pull over if they detect a police or emergency vehicle flashing from up to 100 feet away. At a police stop the car would be unlocked and the

window rolled down automatically. Vehicles would only take you where the computer (the state) allowed. The end of petrol vehicles and speed limiters on all new cars in the UK and EU from 2022 are steps leading to electric computerised transport over which ultimately you have no control. The picture is far bigger even than the Cult global network or web and that will become clear when I get to the nature of the ‘spider’. There is a connection between all these happenings and the instigation of DNA-manipulating ‘vaccines’ (which aren’t ‘vaccines’) justified by the ‘Covid’ hoax. That connection is the unfolding plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state and this is why synthetic biology is such a fast-emerging discipline of mainstream science. ‘Covid vaccines’ are infusing self-replicating synthetic genetic material into the cells to cumulatively take us on the Totalitarian Tiptoe from Human 1.0 to the synthetic biological Human 2.0 which will be physically and perceptually attached to the Smart Grid to one hundred percent control every thought, perception and deed.

Humanity needs to wake up and *fast*.

This is the barest explanation of where the ‘outcome’ is planned to go but it’s enough to see the journey happening all around us. Those new to this information will already see ‘Covid’ in a whole new context. I will add much more detail as we go along, but for the minutiae evidence see my mega-works, *The Answer*, *The Trigger* and *Everything You Need to Know But Have Never Been Told*.

Now – how does a Renegade Mind see the ‘world’?

CHAPTER TWO

Renegade Perception

It is one thing to be clever and another to be wise

George R.R. Martin

A simple definition of the difference between a programmed mind and a Renegade Mind would be that one sees only dots while the other connects them to see the picture. Reading reality with accuracy requires the observer to (a) know the planned outcome and (b) realise that everything, but *everything*, is connected.

The entirety of infinite reality is connected – that's its very nature – and with human society an expression of infinite reality the same must apply. Simple cause and effect is a connection. The effect is triggered by the cause and the effect then becomes the cause of another effect. Nothing happens in isolation because it *can't*. Life in whatever reality is simple choice and consequence. We make choices and these lead to consequences. If we don't like the consequences we can make different choices and get different consequences which lead to other choices and consequences. The choice and the consequence are not only connected they are indivisible. You can't have one without the other as an old song goes. A few cannot control the world unless those being controlled allow that to happen – cause and effect, choice and consequence. Control – who has it and who doesn't – is a two-way process, a symbiotic relationship, involving the controller and controlled. 'They took my freedom away!!' Well, yes, but you also gave it to them. Humanity is

subjected to mass control because humanity has acquiesced to that control. This is all cause and effect and literally a case of give and take. In the same way world events of every kind are connected and the Cult works incessantly to sell the illusion of the random and coincidental to maintain the essential (to them) perception of dots that hide the picture. Renegade Minds know this and constantly scan the world for patterns of connection. This is absolutely pivotal in understanding the happenings in the world and without that perspective clarity is impossible. First you know the planned outcome and then you identify the steps on the journey – the day-by-day apparently random which, when connected in relation to the outcome, no longer appear as individual events, but as the proverbial *chain* of events leading in the same direction. I'll give you some examples:

Political puppet show

We are told to believe that politics is 'adversarial' in that different parties with different beliefs engage in an endless tussle for power. There may have been some truth in that up to a point – and only a point – but today divisions between 'different' parties are rhetorical not ideological. Even the rhetorical is fusing into one-speak as the parties eject any remaining free thinkers while others succumb to the ever-gathering intimidation of anyone with the 'wrong' opinion. The Cult is not a new phenomenon and can be traced back thousands of years as my books have documented. Its intergenerational initiates have been manipulating events with increasing effect the more that global power has been centralised. In ancient times the Cult secured control through the system of monarchy in which 'special' bloodlines (of which more later) demanded the right to rule as kings and queens simply by birthright and by vanquishing others who claimed the same birthright. There came a time, however, when people had matured enough to see the unfairness of such tyranny and demanded a say in who governed them. Note the word – *governed* them. Not served them – *governed* them, hence government defined as 'the political direction and control exercised over the

actions of the members, citizens, or inhabitants of communities, societies, and states; direction of the affairs of a state, community, etc.' Governments exercise control over rather than serve just like the monarchies before them. Bizarrely there are still countries like the United Kingdom which are ruled by a monarch *and* a government that officially answers to the monarch. The UK head of state and that of Commonwealth countries such as Canada, Australia and New Zealand is 'selected' by who in a *single family* had unprotected sex with whom and in what order. Pinch me it can't be true. Ouch! Shit, it is. The demise of monarchies in most countries offered a potential vacuum in which some form of free and fair society could arise and the Cult had that base covered. Monarchies had served its interests but they couldn't continue in the face of such widespread opposition and, anyway, replacing a 'royal' dictatorship that people could see with a dictatorship 'of the people' hiding behind the concept of 'democracy' presented far greater manipulative possibilities and ways of hiding coordinated tyranny behind the illusion of 'freedom'.

Democracy is quite wrongly defined as government selected by the population. This is not the case at all. It is government selected by *some* of the population (and then only in theory). This 'some' doesn't even have to be the majority as we have seen so often in first-past-the-post elections in which the so-called majority party wins fewer votes than the 'losing' parties combined. Democracy can give total power to a party in government from a minority of the votes cast. It's a sleight of hand to sell tyranny as freedom. Seventy-four million Trump-supporting Americans didn't vote for the 'Democratic' Party of Joe Biden in the distinctly dodgy election in 2020 and yet far from acknowledging the wishes and feelings of that great percentage of American society the Cult-owned Biden government set out from day one to destroy them and their right to a voice and opinion. Empty shell Biden and his Cult handlers said they were doing this to 'protect democracy'. Such is the level of lunacy and sickness to which politics has descended. Connect the dots and relate them to the desired outcome – a world government run by self-appointed technocrats and no longer even elected

politicians. While operating through its political agents in government the Cult is at the same time encouraging public distain for politicians by putting idiots and incompetents in theoretical power on the road to deleting them. The idea is to instil a public reaction that says of the technocrats: 'Well, they couldn't do any worse than the pathetic politicians.' It's all about controlling perception and Renegade Minds can see through that while programmed minds cannot when they are ignorant of both the planned outcome and the manipulation techniques employed to secure that end. This knowledge can be learned, however, and fast if people choose to get informed.

Politics may at first sight appear very difficult to control from a central point. I mean look at the 'different' parties and how would you be able to oversee them all and their constituent parts? In truth, it's very straightforward because of their structure. We are back to the pyramid of imposition and acquiescence. Organisations are structured in the same way as the system as a whole. Political parties are not open forums of free expression. They are hierarchies. I was a national spokesman for the British Green Party which claimed to be a different kind of politics in which influence and power was devolved; but I can tell you from direct experience – and it's far worse now – that Green parties are run as hierarchies like all the others however much they may try to hide that fact or kid themselves that it's not true. A very few at the top of all political parties are directing policy and personnel. They decide if you are elevated in the party or serve as a government minister and to do that you have to be a yes man or woman. Look at all the maverick political thinkers who never ascended the greasy pole. If you want to progress within the party or reach 'high-office' you need to fall into line and conform. Exceptions to this are rare indeed. Should you want to run for parliament or Congress you have to persuade the local or state level of the party to select you and for that you need to play the game as dictated by the hierarchy. If you secure election and wish to progress within the greater structure you need to go on conforming to what is acceptable to those running the hierarchy

from the peak of the pyramid. Political parties are perceptual gulags and the very fact that there are party ‘Whips’ appointed to ‘whip’ politicians into voting the way the hierarchy demands exposes the ridiculous idea that politicians are elected to serve the people they are supposed to represent. Cult operatives and manipulation has long seized control of major parties that have any chance of forming a government and at least most of those that haven’t. A new party forms and the Cult goes to work to infiltrate and direct. This has reached such a level today that you see video compilations of ‘leaders’ of all parties whether Democrats, Republicans, Conservative, Labour and Green parroting the same Cult mantra of ‘Build Back Better’ and the ‘Great Reset’ which are straight off the Cult song-sheet to describe the transformation of global society in response to the Cult-instigated hoaxes of the ‘Covid pandemic’ and human-caused ‘climate change’. To see Caroline Lucas, the Green Party MP that I knew when I was in the party in the 1980s, speaking in support of plans proposed by Cult operative Klaus Schwab representing the billionaire global elite is a real head-shaker.

Many parties – one master

The party system is another mind-trick and was instigated to change the nature of the dictatorship by swapping ‘royalty’ for dark suits that people believed – though now ever less so – represented their interests. Understanding this trick is to realise that a single force (the Cult) controls all parties either directly in terms of the major ones or through manipulation of perception and ideology with others. You don’t need to manipulate Green parties to demand your transformation of society in the name of ‘climate change’ when they are obsessed with the lie that this is essential to ‘save the planet’. You just give them a platform and away they go serving your interests while believing they are being environmentally virtuous. America’s political structure is a perfect blueprint for how the two or multi-party system is really a one-party state. The Republican Party is controlled from one step back in the shadows by a group made up of billionaires and their gofers known as neoconservatives or Neocons.

I have exposed them in fine detail in my books and they were the driving force behind the policies of the imbecilic presidency of Boy George Bush which included 9/11 (see *The Trigger* for a comprehensive demolition of the official story), the subsequent ‘war on terror’ (war of terror) and the invasions of Afghanistan and Iraq. The latter was a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution based on claims by Cult operatives, including Bush and British Prime Minister Tony Blair, about Saddam Hussein’s ‘weapons of mass destruction’ which did not exist as war criminals Bush and Blair well knew.

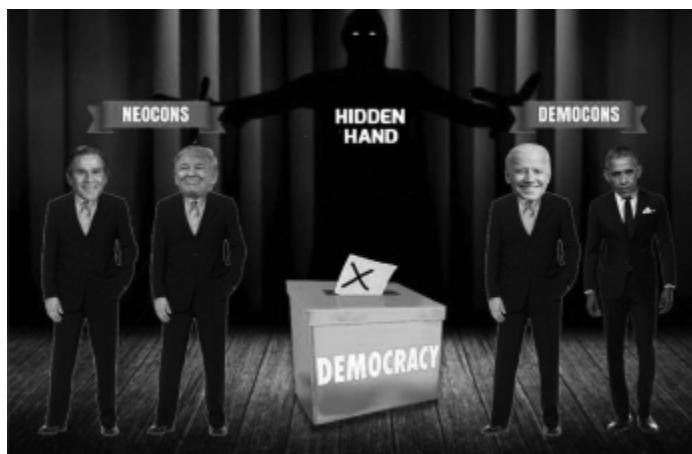


Figure 6: Different front people, different parties – same control system.

The Democratic Party has its own ‘Neocon’ group controlling from the background which I call the ‘Democons’ and here’s the penny-drop – the Neocons and Democons answer to the same masters one step further back into the shadows (Fig 6). At that level of the Cult the Republican and Democrat parties are controlled by the same people and no matter which is in power the Cult is in power. This is how it works in almost every country and certainly in Britain with Conservative, Labour, Liberal Democrat and Green parties now all on the same page whatever the rhetoric may be in their feeble attempts to appear different. Neocons operated at the time of Bush through a think tank called The Project for the New American Century which in September, 2000, published a document entitled *Rebuilding America’s Defenses: Strategies, Forces, and Resources*

For a New Century demanding that America fight ‘multiple, simultaneous major theatre wars’ as a ‘core mission’ to force regime-change in countries including Iraq, Libya and Syria. Neocons arranged for Bush (‘Republican’) and Blair (‘Labour Party’) to front-up the invasion of Iraq and when they departed the Democons orchestrated the targeting of Libya and Syria through Barack Obama (‘Democrat’) and British Prime Minister David Cameron (‘Conservative Party’). We have ‘different’ parties and ‘different’ people, but the same unfolding script. The more the Cult has seized the reigns of parties and personnel the more their policies have transparently pursued the same agenda to the point where the fascist ‘Covid’ impositions of the Conservative junta of Jackboot Johnson in Britain were opposed by the Labour Party because they were not fascist enough. The Labour Party is likened to the US Democrats while the Conservative Party is akin to a British version of the Republicans and on both sides of the Atlantic they all speak the same language and support the direction demanded by the Cult although some more enthusiastically than others. It’s a similar story in country after country because it’s all centrally controlled. Oh, but what about Trump? I’ll come to him shortly. Political ‘choice’ in the ‘party’ system goes like this: You vote for Party A and they get into government. You don’t like what they do so next time you vote for Party B and they get into government. You don’t like what they do when it’s pretty much the same as Party A and why wouldn’t that be with both controlled by the same force? Given that only two, sometimes three, parties have any chance of forming a government to get rid of Party B that you don’t like you have to vote again for Party A which ... you don’t like. This, ladies and gentlemen, is what they call ‘democracy’ which we are told – wrongly – is a term interchangeable with ‘freedom’.

The cult of cults

At this point I need to introduce a major expression of the Global Cult known as Sabbatian-Frankism. Sabbatian is also spelt as Sabbatean. I will summarise here. I have published major exposés

and detailed background in other works. Sabbatian-Frankism combines the names of two frauds posing as 'Jewish' men, Sabbatai Zevi (1626-1676), a rabbi, black magician and occultist who proclaimed he was the Jewish messiah; and Jacob Frank (1726-1791), the Polish 'Jew', black magician and occultist who said he was the reincarnation of 'messiah' Zevi and biblical patriarch Jacob. They worked across two centuries to establish the Sabbatian-Frankist cult that plays a major, indeed central, role in the manipulation of human society by the Global Cult which has its origins much further back in history than Sabbatai Zevi. I should emphasise two points here in response to the shrill voices that will scream 'anti-Semitism': (1) Sabbatian-Frankists are NOT Jewish and only pose as such to hide their cult behind a Jewish façade; and (2) my information about this cult has come from Jewish sources who have long realised that their society and community has been infiltrated and taken over by interloper Sabbatian-Frankists. Infiltration has been the foundation technique of Sabbatian-Frankism from its official origin in the 17th century. Zevi's Sabbatian sect attracted a massive following described as the biggest messianic movement in Jewish history, spreading as far as Africa and Asia, and he promised a return for the Jews to the 'Promised Land' of Israel. Sabbatianism was not Judaism but an inversion of everything that mainstream Judaism stood for. So much so that this sinister cult would have a feast day when Judaism had a fast day and whatever was forbidden in Judaism the Sabbatians were encouraged and even commanded to do. This included incest and what would be today called Satanism. Members were forbidden to marry outside the sect and there was a system of keeping their children ignorant of what they were part of until they were old enough to be trusted not to unknowingly reveal anything to outsiders. The same system is employed to this day by the Global Cult in general which Sabbatian-Frankism has enormously influenced and now largely controls.

Zevi and his Sabbatians suffered a setback with the intervention by the Sultan of the Islamic Ottoman Empire in the Middle East and what is now the Republic of Turkey where Zevi was located. The

Sultan gave him the choice of proving his ‘divinity’, converting to Islam or facing torture and death. Funnily enough Zevi chose to convert or at least appear to. Some of his supporters were disillusioned and drifted away, but many did not with 300 families also converting – only in theory – to Islam. They continued behind this Islamic smokescreen to follow the goals, rules and rituals of Sabbatianism and became known as ‘crypto-Jews’ or the ‘Dönmeh’ which means ‘to turn’. This is rather ironic because they didn’t ‘turn’ and instead hid behind a fake Islamic persona. The process of appearing to be one thing while being very much another would become the calling card of Sabbatianism especially after Zevi’s death and the arrival of the Satanist Jacob Frank in the 18th century when the cult became Sabbatian-Frankism and plumbbed still new depths of depravity and infiltration which included – still includes – human sacrifice and sex with children. Wherever Sabbatians go paedophilia and Satanism follow and is it really a surprise that Hollywood is so infested with child abuse and Satanism when it was established by Sabbatian-Frankists and is still controlled by them? Hollywood has been one of the prime vehicles for global perceptual programming and manipulation. How many believe the version of ‘history’ portrayed in movies when it is a travesty and inversion (again) of the truth? Rabbi Marvin Antelman describes Frankism in his book, *To Eliminate the Opiate*, as ‘a movement of complete evil’ while Jewish professor Gershom Scholem said of Frank in *The Messianic Idea in Judaism*: ‘In all his actions [he was] a truly corrupt and degenerate individual ... one of the most frightening phenomena in the whole of Jewish history.’ Frank was excommunicated by traditional rabbis, as was Zevi, but Frank was undeterred and enjoyed vital support from the House of Rothschild, the infamous banking dynasty whose inner-core are Sabbatian-Frankists and not Jews. Infiltration of the Roman Church and Vatican was instigated by Frank with many Dönmeh ‘turning’ again to convert to Roman Catholicism with a view to hijacking the reins of power. This was the ever-repeating modus operandi and continues to be so. Pose as an advocate of the religion, culture or country that you want to control and then

manipulate your people into the positions of authority and influence largely as advisers, administrators and Svengalis for those that appear to be in power. They did this with Judaism, Christianity (Christian Zionism is part of this), Islam and other religions and nations until Sabbatian-Frankism spanned the world as it does today.

Sabbatian Saudis and the terror network

One expression of the Sabbatian-Frankist Dönme within Islam is the ruling family of Saudi Arabia, the House of Saud, through which came the vile distortion of Islam known as Wahhabism. This is the violent creed followed by terrorist groups like Al-Qaeda and ISIS or Islamic State. Wahhabism is the hand-chopping, head-chopping ‘religion’ of Saudi Arabia which is used to keep the people in a constant state of fear so the interloper House of Saud can continue to rule. Al-Qaeda and Islamic State were lavishly funded by the House of Saud while being created and directed by the Sabbatian-Frankist network in the United States that operates through the Pentagon, CIA and the government in general of whichever ‘party’. The front man for the establishment of Wahhabism in the middle of the 18th century was a Sabbatian-Frankist ‘crypto-Jew’ posing as Islamic called Muhammad ibn Abd al-Wahhab. His daughter would marry the son of Muhammad bin Saud who established the first Saudi state before his death in 1765 with support from the British Empire. Bin Saud’s successors would establish modern Saudi Arabia in league with the British and Americans in 1932 which allowed them to seize control of Islam’s major shrines in Mecca and Medina. They have dictated the direction of Sunni Islam ever since while Iran is the major centre of the Shiite version and here we have the source of at least the public conflict between them. The Sabbatian network has used its Wahhabi extremists to carry out Problem-Reaction-Solution terrorist attacks in the name of ‘Al-Qaeda’ and ‘Islamic State’ to justify a devastating ‘war on terror’, ever-increasing surveillance of the population and to terrify people into compliance. Another insight of the Renegade Mind is the streetwise understanding that

just because a country, location or people are attacked doesn't mean that those apparently representing that country, location or people are not behind the attackers. Often they are *orchestrating* the attacks because of the societal changes that can be then justified in the name of 'saving the population from terrorists'.

I show in great detail in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian-Frankists were the real perpetrators of 9/11 and not '19 Arab hijackers' who were blamed for what happened. Observe what was justified in the name of 9/11 alone in terms of Middle East invasions, mass surveillance and control that fulfilled the demands of the Project for the New American Century document published by the Sabbatian Neocons. What appear to be enemies are on the deep inside players on the same Sabbatian team. Israel and Arab 'royal' dictatorships are all ruled by Sabbatians and the recent peace agreements between Israel and Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE) and others are only making formal what has always been the case behind the scenes. Palestinians who have been subjected to grotesque tyranny since Israel was bombed and terrorised into existence in 1948 have never stood a chance. Sabbatian-Frankists have controlled Israel (so the constant theme of violence and war which Sabbatians love) and they have controlled the Arab countries that Palestinians have looked to for real support that never comes. 'Royal families' of the Arab world in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, UAE, etc., are all Sabbatians with allegiance to the aims of the cult and not what is best for their Arabic populations. They have stolen the oil and financial resources from their people by false claims to be 'royal dynasties' with a genetic right to rule and by employing vicious militaries to impose their will.

Satanic 'illumination'

The Satanist Jacob Frank formed an alliance in 1773 with two other Sabbatians, Mayer Amschel Rothschild (1744-1812), founder of the Rothschild banking dynasty, and Jesuit-educated fraudulent Jew, Adam Weishaupt, and this led to the formation of the Bavarian Illuminati, firstly under another name, in 1776. The Illuminati would

be the manipulating force behind the French Revolution (1789-1799) and was also involved in the American Revolution (1775-1783) before and after the Illuminati's official creation. Weishaupt would later become (in public) a Protestant Christian in archetypal Sabbatian style. I read that his name can be decoded as Adam-Weishaupt or 'the first man to lead those who know'. He wasn't a leader in the sense that he was a subordinate, but he did lead those below him in a crusade of transforming human society that still continues today. The theme was confirmed as early as 1785 when a horseman courier called Lanz was reported to be struck by lighting and extensive Illuminati documents were found in his saddlebags. They made the link to Weishaupt and detailed the plan for world takeover. Current events with 'Covid' fascism have been in the making for a very long time. Jacob Frank was jailed for 13 years by the Catholic Inquisition after his arrest in 1760 and on his release he headed for Frankfurt, Germany, home city and headquarters of the House of Rothschild where the alliance was struck with Mayer Amschel Rothschild and Weishaupt. Rothschild arranged for Frank to be given the title of Baron and he became a wealthy nobleman with a big following of Jews in Germany, the Austro-Hungarian Empire and other European countries. Most of them would have believed he was on their side.

The name 'Illuminati' came from the Zohar which is a body of works in the Jewish mystical 'bible' called the Kabbalah. 'Zohar' is the foundation of Sabbatian-Frankist belief and in Hebrew 'Zohar' means 'splendour', 'radiance', 'illuminated', and so we have 'Illuminati'. They claim to be the 'Illuminated Ones' from their knowledge systematically hidden from the human population and passed on through generations of carefully-chosen initiates in the global secret society network or Cult. Hidden knowledge includes an awareness of the Cult agenda for the world and the nature of our collective reality that I will explore later. Cult 'illumination' is symbolised by the torch held by the Statue of Liberty which was gifted to New York by French Freemasons in Paris who knew exactly what it represents. 'Liberty' symbolises the goddess worshipped in

Babylon as Queen Semiramis or Ishtar. The significance of this will become clear. Notice again the ubiquitous theme of inversion with the Statue of 'Liberty' really symbolising mass control ([Fig 7](#)). A mirror-image statute stands on an island in the River Seine in Paris from where New York Liberty originated ([Fig 8](#)). A large replica of the Liberty flame stands on top of the Pont de l'Alma tunnel in Paris where Princess Diana died in a Cult ritual described in *The Biggest Secret*. Lucifer 'the light bringer' is related to all this (and much more as we'll see) and 'Lucifer' is a central figure in Sabbatian-Frankism and its associated Satanism. Sabbatians reject the Jewish Torah, or Pentateuch, the 'five books of Moses' in the Old Testament known as Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy which are claimed by Judaism and Christianity to have been dictated by 'God' to Moses on Mount Sinai. Sabbatians say these do not apply to them and they seek to replace them with the Zohar to absorb Judaism and its followers into their inversion which is an expression of a much greater global inversion. They want to delete all religions and force humanity to worship a one-world religion – Sabbatian Satanism that also includes worship of the Earth goddess. Satanic themes are being more and more introduced into mainstream society and while Christianity is currently the foremost target for destruction the others are planned to follow.



Figure 7: The Cult goddess of Babylon disguised as the Statue of Liberty holding the flame of Lucifer the 'light bringer'.



Figure 8: Liberty's mirror image in Paris where the New York version originated.

Marx brothers

Rabbi Marvin Antelman connects the Illuminati to the Jacobins in *To Eliminate the Opiate* and Jacobins were the force behind the French Revolution. He links both to the Bund der Gerechten, or League of the Just, which was the network that inflicted communism/Marxism on the world. Antelman wrote:

The original inner circle of the Bund der Gerechten consisted of born Catholics, Protestants and Jews [Sabbatian-Frankist infiltrators], and those representatives of respective subdivisions formulated schemes for the ultimate destruction of their faiths. The heretical Catholics laid plans which they felt would take a century or more for the ultimate destruction of the church; the apostate Jews for the ultimate destruction of the Jewish religion.

Sabbatian-created communism connects into this anti-religion agenda in that communism does not allow for the free practice of religion. The Sabbatian 'Bund' became the International Communist Party and Communist League and in 1848 'Marxism' was born with the Communist Manifesto of Sabbatian assets Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels. It is absolutely no coincidence that Marxism, just a different name for fascist and other centrally-controlled tyrannies, is being imposed worldwide as a result of the 'Covid' hoax and nor that Marxist/fascist China was the place where the hoax originated. The reason for this will become very clear in the chapter 'Covid: The calculated catastrophe'. The so-called 'Woke' mentality has hijacked

traditional beliefs of the political left and replaced them with far-right make-believe ‘social justice’ better known as Marxism. Woke will, however, be swallowed by its own perceived ‘revolution’ which is really the work of billionaires and billionaire corporations feigning being ‘Woke’. Marxism is being touted by Wokers as a replacement for ‘capitalism’ when we don’t have ‘capitalism’. We have cartelism in which the market is stitched up by the very Cult billionaires and corporations bankrolling Woke. Billionaires love Marxism which keeps the people in servitude while they control from the top.

Terminally naïve Wokers think they are ‘changing the world’ when it’s the Cult that is doing the changing and when they have played their vital part and become surplus to requirements they, too, will be targeted. The Illuminati-Jacobins were behind the period known as ‘The Terror’ in the French Revolution in 1793 and 1794 when Jacobin Maximillian de Robespierre and his Orwellian ‘Committee of Public Safety’ killed 17,000 ‘enemies of the Revolution’ who had once been ‘friends of the Revolution’. Karl Marx (1818-1883), whose Sabbatian creed of Marxism has cost the lives of at least 100 million people, is a hero once again to Wokers who have been systematically kept ignorant of real history by their ‘education’ programming. As a result they now promote a Sabbatian ‘Marxist’ abomination destined at some point to consume them. Rabbi Antelman, who spent decades researching the Sabbatian plot, said of the League of the Just and Karl Marx:

Contrary to popular opinion Karl Marx did not originate the Communist Manifesto. He was paid for his services by the League of the Just, which was known in its country of origin, Germany, as the Bund der Gaeachteten.

Antelman said the text attributed to Marx was the work of other people and Marx ‘was only repeating what others already said’. Marx was ‘a hired hack – lackey of the wealthy Illuminists’. Marx famously said that religion was the ‘opium of the people’ (part of the Sabbatian plan to demonise religion) and Antelman called his books, *To Eliminate the Opiate*. Marx was born Jewish, but his family converted to Christianity (Sabbatian modus operandi) and he

attacked Jews, not least in his book, *A World Without Jews*. In doing so he supported the Sabbatian plan to destroy traditional Jewishness and Judaism which we are clearly seeing today with the vindictive targeting of orthodox Jews by the Sabbatian government of Israel over 'Covid' laws. I don't follow any religion and it has done much damage to the world over centuries and acted as a perceptual straightjacket. Renegade Minds, however, are always asking *why* something is being done. It doesn't matter if they agree or disagree with what is happening – *why* is it happening is the question. The 'why?' can be answered with regard to religion in that religions create interacting communities of believers when the Cult wants to dismantle all discourse, unity and interaction (see 'Covid' lockdowns) and the ultimate goal is to delete all religions for a one-world religion of Cult Satanism worshipping their 'god' of which more later. We see the same 'why?' with gun control in America. I don't have guns and don't want them, but why is the Cult seeking to disarm the population at the same time that law enforcement agencies are armed to their molars and why has every tyrant in history sought to disarm people before launching the final takeover? They include Hitler, Stalin, Pol Pot and Mao who followed confiscation with violent seizing of power. You know it's a Cult agenda by the people who immediately race to the microphones to exploit dead people in multiple shootings. Ultra-Zionist Cult lackey Senator Chuck Schumer was straight on the case after ten people were killed in Boulder, Colorado in March, 2021. Simple rule ... if Schumer wants it the Cult wants it and the same with his ultra-Zionist mate the wild-eyed Senator Adam Schiff. At the same time they were calling for the disarmament of Americans, many of whom live a long way from a police response, Schumer, Schiff and the rest of these pampered clowns were sitting on Capitol Hill behind a razor-wired security fence protected by thousands of armed troops in addition to their own armed bodyguards. Mom and pop in an isolated home? They're just potential mass shooters.

Zion Mainframe

Sabbatian-Frankists and most importantly the Rothschilds were behind the creation of 'Zionism', a political movement that demanded a Jewish homeland in Israel as promised by Sabbatai Zevi. The very symbol of Israel comes from the German meaning of the name Rothschild. Dynasty founder Mayer Amschel Rothschild changed the family name from Bauer to Rothschild, or 'Red-Shield' in German, in deference to the six-pointed 'Star of David' hexagram displayed on the family's home in Frankfurt. The symbol later appeared on the flag of Israel after the Rothschilds were centrally involved in its creation. Hexagrams are not a uniquely Jewish symbol and are widely used in occult ('hidden') networks often as a symbol for Saturn (see my other books for why). Neither are Zionism and Jewishness interchangeable. Zionism is a political movement and philosophy and not a 'race' or a people. Many Jews oppose Zionism and many non-Jews, including US President Joe Biden, call themselves Zionists as does Israel-centric Donald Trump. America's support for the Israel government is pretty much a gimme with ultra-Zionist billionaires and corporations providing fantastic and dominant funding for both political parties. Former Congresswoman Cynthia McKinney has told how she was approached immediately she ran for office to 'sign the pledge' to Israel and confirm that she would always vote in that country's best interests. All American politicians are approached in this way. Anyone who refuses will get no support or funding from the enormous and all-powerful Zionist lobby that includes organisations like mega-lobby group AIPAC, the American Israel Public Affairs Committee. Trump's biggest funder was ultra-Zionist casino and media billionaire Sheldon Adelson while major funders of the Democratic Party include ultra-Zionist George Soros and ultra-Zionist financial and media mogul, Haim Saban. Some may reel back at the suggestion that Soros is an Israel-firster (Sabbatian-controlled Israel-firster), but Renegade Minds watch the actions not the words and everywhere Soros donates his billions the Sabbatian agenda benefits. In the spirit of Sabbatian inversion Soros pledged \$1 billion for a new university network to promote 'liberal values and tackle intolerance'. He made the announcement during his annual speech

at the Cult-owned World Economic Forum in Davos, Switzerland, in January, 2020, after his ‘harsh criticism’ of ‘authoritarian rulers’ around the world. You can only laugh at such brazen mendacity. How *he* doesn’t laugh is the mystery. Translated from the Orwellian ‘liberal values and tackle intolerance’ means teaching non-white people to hate white people and for white people to loathe themselves for being born white. The reason for that will become clear.

The ‘Anti-Semitism’ fraud

Zionists support the Jewish homeland in the land of Palestine which has been the Sabbatian-Rothschild goal for so long, but not for the benefit of Jews. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. This is nothing more than a Sabbatian protection racket to stop legitimate investigation and exposure of their agendas and activities. The official definition of ‘anti-Semitism’ has more recently been expanded to include criticism of Zionism – a *political movement* – and this was done to further stop exposure of Sabbatian infiltrators who created Zionism as we know it today in the 19th century. Renegade Minds will talk about these subjects when they know the shit that will come their way. People must decide if they want to know the truth or just cower in the corner in fear of what others will say. Sabbatians have been trying to label me as ‘anti-Semitic’ since the 1990s as I have uncovered more and more about their background and agendas. Useless, gutless, fraudulent ‘journalists’ then just repeat the smears without question and on the day I was writing this section a pair of unquestioning repeaters called Ben Quinn and Archie Bland (how appropriate) outright called me an ‘anti-Semite’ in the establishment propaganda sheet, the London *Guardian*, with no supporting evidence. The

Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry said so and who are they to question that? They wouldn't dare. Ironically 'Semitic' refers to a group of languages in the Middle East that are almost entirely Arabic. 'Anti-Semitism' becomes 'anti-Arab' which if the consequences of this misunderstanding were not so grave would be hilarious. Don't bother telling Quinn and Bland. I don't want to confuse them, bless 'em. One reason I am dubbed 'anti-Semitic' is that I wrote in the 1990s that Jewish operatives (Sabbatians) were heavily involved in the Russian Revolution when Sabbatians overthrew the Romanov dynasty. This apparently made me 'anti-Semitic'. Oh, really? Here is a section from *The Trigger*:

British journalist Robert Wilton confirmed these themes in his 1920 book *The Last Days of the Romanovs* when he studied official documents from the Russian government to identify the members of the Bolshevik ruling elite between 1917 and 1919. The Central Committee included 41 Jews among 62 members; the Council of the People's Commissars had 17 Jews out of 22 members; and 458 of the 556 most important Bolshevik positions between 1918 and 1919 were occupied by Jewish people. Only 17 were Russian. Then there were the 23 Jews among the 36 members of the vicious Cheka Soviet secret police established in 1917 who would soon appear all across the country.

Professor Robert Service of Oxford University, an expert on 20th century Russian history, found evidence that ['Jewish'] Leon Trotsky had sought to make sure that Jews were enrolled in the Red Army and were disproportionately represented in the Soviet civil bureaucracy that included the Cheka which performed mass arrests, imprisonment and executions of 'enemies of the people'. A US State Department Decimal File (861.00/5339) dated November 13th, 1918, names [Rothschild banking agent in America] Jacob Schiff and a list of ultra-Zionists as funders of the Russian Revolution leading to claims of a 'Jewish plot', but the key point missed by all is they were not 'Jews' – they were Sabbatian-Frankists.

Britain's Winston Churchill made the same error by mistake or otherwise. He wrote in a 1920 edition of the *Illustrated Sunday Herald* that those behind the Russian revolution were part of a 'worldwide conspiracy for the overthrow of civilisation and for the reconstitution of society on the basis of arrested development, of envious malevolence, and impossible equality' (see 'Woke' today because that has been created by the same network). Churchill said there was no need to exaggerate the part played in the creation of Bolshevism and in the actual bringing about of the Russian

Revolution 'by these international and for the most part atheistical Jews' ['atheistical Jews' = Sabbatians]. Churchill said it is certainly a very great one and probably outweighs all others: 'With the notable exception of Lenin, the majority of the leading figures are Jews.' He went on to describe, knowingly or not, the Sabbatian modus operandi of placing puppet leaders nominally in power while they control from the background:

Moreover, the principal inspiration and driving power comes from the Jewish leaders. Thus Tchitcherin, a pure Russian, is eclipsed by his nominal subordinate, Litvinoff, and the influence of Russians like Bukharin or Lunacharski cannot be compared with the power of Trotsky, or of Zinovieff, the Dictator of the Red Citadel (Petrograd), or of Krassin or Radek – all Jews. In the Soviet institutions the predominance of Jews is even more astonishing. And the prominent, if not indeed the principal, part in the system of terrorism applied by the Extraordinary Commissions for Combatting Counter-Revolution has been taken by Jews, and in some notable cases by Jewesses.

What I said about seriously disproportionate involvement in the Russian Revolution by Jewish 'revolutionaries' (Sabbatians) is provable fact, but truth is no defence against the Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry, its repeater parrots like Quinn and Bland, and the now breathtaking network of so-called 'Woke' 'anti-hate' groups with interlocking leaderships and funding which have the role of discrediting and silencing anyone who gets too close to exposing the Sabbatians. We have seen 'truth is no defence' confirmed in legal judgements with the Saskatchewan Human Rights Commission in Canada decreeing this: 'Truthful statements can be presented in a manner that would meet the definition of hate speech, and not all truthful statements must be free from restriction.' Most 'anti-hate' activists, who are themselves consumed by hatred, are too stupid and ignorant of the world to know how they are being used. They are far too far up their own virtue-signalling arses and it's far too dark for them to see anything.

The 'revolution' game

The background and methods of the 'Russian' Revolution are straight from the Sabbatian playbook seen in the French Revolution

and endless others around the world that appear to start as a revolution of the people against tyrannical rule and end up with a regime change to more tyrannical rule overtly or covertly. Wars, terror attacks and regime overthrows follow the Sabbatian cult through history with its agents creating them as Problem-Reaction-Solutions to remove opposition on the road to world domination. Sabbatian dots connect the Rothschilds with the Illuminati, Jacobins of the French Revolution, the 'Bund' or League of the Just, the International Communist Party, Communist League and the Communist Manifesto of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels that would lead to the Rothschild-funded Russian Revolution. The sequence comes under the heading of 'creative destruction' when you advance to your global goal by continually destroying the status quo to install a new status quo which you then also destroy. The two world wars come to mind. With each new status quo you move closer to your planned outcome. Wars and mass murder are to Sabbatians a collective blood sacrifice ritual. They are obsessed with death for many reasons and one is that death is an inversion of life. Satanists and Sabbatians are obsessed with death and often target churches and churchyards for their rituals. Inversion-obsessed Sabbatians explain the use of inverted symbolism including the *inverted* pentagram and *inverted* cross. The inversion of the cross has been related to targeting Christianity, but the cross was a religious symbol long before Christianity and its inversion is a statement about the Sabbatian mentality and goals more than any single religion.

Sabbatians operating in Germany were behind the rise of the occult-obsessed Nazis and the subsequent Jewish exodus from Germany and Europe to Palestine and the United States after World War Two. The Rothschild dynasty was at the forefront of this both as political manipulators and by funding the operation. Why would Sabbatians help to orchestrate the horrors inflicted on Jews by the Nazis and by Stalin after they organised the Russian Revolution? Sabbatians hate Jews and their religion, that's why. They pose as Jews and secure positions of control within Jewish society and play the 'anti-Semitism' card to protect themselves from exposure

through a global network of organisations answering to the Sabbatian-created-and-controlled globe-spanning intelligence network that involves a stunning web of military-intelligence operatives and operations for a tiny country of just nine million. Among them are Jewish assets who are not Sabbatians but have been convinced by them that what they are doing is for the good of Israel and the Jewish community to protect them from what they have been programmed since childhood to believe is a Jew-hating hostile world. The Jewish community is just a highly convenient cover to hide the true nature of Sabbatians. Anyone getting close to exposing their game is accused by Sabbatian place-people and gofers of 'anti-Semitism' and claiming that all Jews are part of a plot to take over the world. I am not saying that. I am saying that Sabbatians – the *real* Jew-haters – have infiltrated the Jewish community to use them both as a cover and an 'anti-Semitic' defence against exposure. Thus we have the Anti-Semitism Industry targeted researchers in this way and most Jewish people think this is justified and genuine. They don't know that their 'Jewish' leaders and institutions of state, intelligence and military are not controlled by Jews at all, but cultists and stooges of Sabbatian-Frankism. I once added my name to a pro-Jewish freedom petition online and the next time I looked my name was gone and text had been added to the petition blurb to attack me as an 'anti-Semite' such is the scale of perceptual programming.

Moving on America

I tell the story in *The Trigger* and a chapter called 'Atlantic Crossing' how particularly after Israel was established the Sabbatians moved in on the United States and eventually grasped control of government administration, the political system via both Democrats and Republicans, the intelligence community like the CIA and National Security Agency (NSA), the Pentagon and mass media. Through this seriously compartmentalised network Sabbatians and their operatives in Mossad, Israeli Defense Forces (IDF) and US agencies pulled off 9/11 and blamed it on 19 'Al-Qaeda hijackers' dominated by men from, or connected to, Sabbatian-ruled Saudi

Arabia. The '19' were not even on the planes let alone flew those big passenger jets into buildings while being largely incompetent at piloting one-engine light aircraft. 'Hijacker' Hani Hanjour who is said to have flown American Airlines Flight 77 into the Pentagon with a turn and manoeuvre most professional pilots said they would have struggled to do was banned from renting a small plane by instructors at the Freeway Airport in Bowie, Maryland, just *six weeks* earlier on the grounds that he was an incompetent pilot. The Jewish population of the world is just 0.2 percent with even that almost entirely concentrated in Israel (75 percent Jewish) and the United States (around two percent). This two percent and globally 0.2 percent refers to *Jewish* people and not Sabbatian interlopers who are a fraction of that fraction. What a sobering thought when you think of the fantastic influence on world affairs of tiny Israel and that the Project for the New America Century (PNAC) which laid out the blueprint in September, 2000, for America's war on terror and regime change wars in Iraq, Libya and Syria was founded and dominated by Sabbatians known as 'Neocons'. The document conceded that this plan would not be supported politically or publicly without a major attack on American soil and a Problem-Reaction-Solution excuse to send troops to war across the Middle East. Sabbatian Neocons said:

... [The] process of transformation ... [war and regime change] ... is likely to be a long one, absent some catastrophic and catalysing event – like a new Pearl Harbor.

Four months later many of those who produced that document came to power with their inane puppet George Bush from the long-time Sabbatian Bush family. They included Sabbatian Dick Cheney who was officially vice-president, but really de-facto president for the entirety of the 'Bush' government. Nine months after the 'Bush' inauguration came what Bush called at the time 'the Pearl Harbor of the 21st century' and with typical Sabbatian timing and symbolism 2001 was the 60th anniversary of the attack in 1941 by the Japanese Air Force on Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, which allowed President Franklin Delano Roosevelt to take the United States into a Sabbatian-

instigated Second World War that he said in his election campaign that he never would. The evidence is overwhelming that Roosevelt and his military and intelligence networks knew the attack was coming and did nothing to stop it, but they did make sure that America's most essential naval ships were not in Hawaii at the time. Three thousand Americans died in the Pearl Harbor attacks as they did on September 11th. By the 9/11 year of 2001 Sabbatians had widely infiltrated the US government, military and intelligence operations and used their compartmentalised assets to pull off the 'Al-Qaeda' attacks. If you read *The Trigger* it will blow your mind to see the utterly staggering concentration of 'Jewish' operatives (Sabbatian infiltrators) in essential positions of political, security, legal, law enforcement, financial and business power before, during, and after the attacks to make them happen, carry them out, and then cover their tracks – and I do mean *staggering* when you think of that 0.2 percent of the world population and two percent of Americans which are Jewish while Sabbatian infiltrators are a fraction of that. A central foundation of the 9/11 conspiracy was the hijacking of government, military, Air Force and intelligence computer systems in real time through 'back-door' access made possible by Israeli (Sabbatian) 'cyber security' software. Sabbatian-controlled Israel is on the way to rivalling Silicon Valley for domination of cyberspace and is becoming the dominant force in cyber-security which gives them access to entire computer systems and their passcodes across the world. Then add to this that Zionists head (officially) Silicon Valley giants like Google (Larry Page and Sergey Brin), Google-owned YouTube (Susan Wojcicki), Facebook (Mark Zuckerberg and Sheryl Sandberg), and Apple (Chairman Arthur D. Levinson), and that ultra-Zionist hedge fund billionaire Paul Singer has a \$1 billion stake in Twitter which is only nominally headed by 'CEO' pothead Jack Dorsey. As cable news host Tucker Carlson said of Dorsey: 'There used to be debate in the medical community whether dropping a ton of acid had permanent effects and I think that debate has now ended.' Carlson made the comment after Dorsey told a hearing on Capitol Hill (if you cut through his bullshit) that he

believed in free speech so long as he got to decide what you can hear and see. These 'big names' of Silicon Valley are only front men and women for the Global Cult, not least the Sabbatians, who are the true controllers of these corporations. Does anyone still wonder why these same people and companies have been ferociously censoring and banning people (like me) for exposing any aspect of the Cult agenda and especially the truth about the 'Covid' hoax which Sabbatians have orchestrated?

The Jeffrey Epstein paedophile ring was a Sabbatian operation. He was officially 'Jewish' but he was a Sabbatian and women abused by the ring have told me about the high number of 'Jewish' people involved. The Epstein horror has Sabbatian written all over it and matches perfectly their modus operandi and obsession with sex and ritual. Epstein was running a Sabbatian blackmail ring in which famous people with political and other influence were provided with young girls for sex while everything was being filmed and recorded on hidden cameras and microphones at his New York house, Caribbean island and other properties. Epstein survivors have described this surveillance system to me and some have gone public. Once the famous politician or other figure knew he or she was on video they tended to do whatever they were told. Here we go again ...when you've got them by the balls their hearts and minds will follow. Sabbatians use this blackmail technique on a wide scale across the world to entrap politicians and others they need to act as demanded. Epstein's private plane, the infamous 'Lolita Express', had many well-known passengers including Bill Clinton while Bill Gates has flown on an Epstein plane and met with him four years after Epstein had been jailed for paedophilia. They subsequently met many times at Epstein's home in New York according to a witness who was there. Epstein's infamous side-kick was Ghislaine Maxwell, daughter of Mossad agent and ultra-Zionist mega-crooked British businessman, Bob Maxwell, who at one time owned the *Daily Mirror* newspaper. Maxwell was murdered at sea on his boat in 1991 by Sabbatian-controlled Mossad when he became a liability with his

business empire collapsing as a former Mossad operative has confirmed (see *The Trigger*).

Money, money, money, funny money ...

Before I come to the Sabbatian connection with the last three US presidents I will lay out the crucial importance to Sabbatians of controlling banking and finance. Sabbatian Mayer Amschel Rothschild set out to dominate this arena in his family's quest for total global control. What is freedom? It is, in effect, choice. The more choices you have the freer you are and the fewer your choices the more you are enslaved. In the global structure created over centuries by Sabbatians the biggest decider and restrictor of choice is ... money. Across the world if you ask people what they would like to do with their lives and why they are not doing that they will reply 'I don't have the money'. This is the idea. A global elite of multi-billionaires are described as 'greedy' and that is true on one level; but control of money – who has it and who doesn't – is not primarily about greed. It's about control. Sabbatians have seized ever more control of finance and sucked the wealth of the world out of the hands of the population. We talk now, after all, about the 'One-percent' and even then the wealthiest are a lot fewer even than that. This has been made possible by a money scam so outrageous and so vast it could rightly be called the scam of scams founded on creating 'money' out of nothing and 'loaning' that with interest to the population. Money out of nothing is called 'credit'. Sabbatians have asserted control over governments and banking ever more completely through the centuries and secured financial laws that allow banks to lend hugely more than they have on deposit in a confidence trick known as fractional reserve lending. Imagine if you could lend money that doesn't exist and charge the recipient interest for doing so. You would end up in jail. Bankers by contrast end up in mansions, private jets, Malibu and Monaco.

Banks are only required to keep a fraction of their deposits and wealth in their vaults and they are allowed to lend 'money' they don't have called 'credit'. Go into a bank for a loan and if you succeed

the banker will not move any real wealth into your account. They will type into your account the amount of the agreed 'loan' – say £100,000. This is not wealth that really exists; it is non-existent, fresh-air, created-out-of-nothing 'credit' which has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. Credit is backed by nothing except wind and only has buying power because people think that it has buying power and accept it in return for property, goods and services. I have described this situation as like those cartoon characters you see chasing each other and when they run over the edge of a cliff they keep running forward on fresh air until one of them looks down, realises what's happened, and they all crash into the ravine. The whole foundation of the Sabbatian financial system is to stop people looking down except for periodic moments when they want to crash the system (as in 2008 and 2020 ongoing) and reap the rewards from all the property, businesses and wealth their borrowers had signed over as 'collateral' in return for a 'loan' of fresh air. Most people think that money is somehow created by governments when it comes into existence from the start as a debt through banks 'lending' illusory money called credit. Yes, the very currency of exchange is a *debt* from day one issued as an interest-bearing loan. Why don't governments create money interest-free and lend it to their people interest-free? Governments are controlled by Sabbatians and the financial system is controlled by Sabbatians for whom interest-free money would be a nightmare come true. Sabbatians underpin their financial domination through their global network of central banks, including the privately-owned US Federal Reserve and Britain's Bank of England, and this is orchestrated by a privately-owned central bank coordination body called the Bank for International Settlements in Basle, Switzerland, created by the usual suspects including the Rockefellers and Rothschilds. Central bank chiefs don't answer to governments or the people. They answer to the Bank for International Settlements or, in other words, the Global Cult which is dominated today by Sabbatians.

Built-in disaster

There are so many constituent scams within the overall banking scam. When you take out a loan of thin-air credit only the amount of that loan is theoretically brought into circulation to add to the amount in circulation; but you are paying back the principle plus interest. The additional interest is not created and this means that with every 'loan' there is a shortfall in the money in circulation between what is borrowed and what has to be paid back. There is never even close to enough money in circulation to repay all outstanding public and private debt including interest. Coldly weaved in the very fabric of the system is the certainty that some will lose their homes, businesses and possessions to the banking 'lender'. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts it becomes painfully obvious that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts and it becomes painfully obvious – as in 2008 and currently – that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest.

Sabbatian banksters have been leading the human population through a calculated series of booms (more debt incurred) and busts (when the debt can't be repaid and the banks get the debtor's tangible wealth in exchange for non-existent 'credit'). With each 'bust' Sabbatian bankers have absorbed more of the world's tangible wealth and we end up with the One-percent. Governments are in bankruptcy levels of debt to the same system and are therefore owned by a system they do not control. The Federal Reserve, 'America's central bank', is privately-owned and American presidents only nominally appoint its chairman or woman to maintain the illusion that it's an arm of government. It's not. The 'Fed' is a cartel of private banks which handed billions to its associates and friends after the crash of 2008 and has been Sabbatian-controlled since it was manipulated into being in 1913 through the covert trickery of Rothschild banking agents Jacob Schiff and Paul

Warburg, and the Sabbatian Rockefeller family. Somehow from a Jewish population of two-percent and globally 0.2 percent (Sabbatian interlopers remember are far smaller) ultra-Zionists headed the Federal Reserve for 31 years between 1987 and 2018 in the form of Alan Greenspan, Bernard Bernanke and Janet Yellen (now Biden's Treasury Secretary) with Yellen's deputy chairman a Israeli-American dual citizen and ultra-Zionist Stanley Fischer, a former governor of the Bank of Israel. Ultra-Zionist Fed chiefs spanned the presidencies of Ronald Reagan ('Republican'), Father George Bush ('Republican'), Bill Clinton ('Democrat'), Boy George Bush ('Republican') and Barack Obama ('Democrat'). We should really add the pre-Greenspan chairman, Paul Adolph Volcker, 'appointed' by Jimmy Carter ('Democrat') who ran the Fed between 1979 and 1987 during the Carter and Reagan administrations before Greenspan took over. Volcker was a long-time associate and business partner of the Rothschilds. No matter what the 'party' officially in power the United States economy was directed by the same force. Here are members of the Obama, Trump and Biden administrations and see if you can make out a common theme.

Barack Obama ('Democrat')

Ultra-Zionists Robert Rubin, Larry Summers, and Timothy Geithner ran the US Treasury in the Clinton administration and two of them reappeared with Obama. Ultra-Zionist Fed chairman Alan Greenspan had manipulated the crash of 2008 through deregulation and jumped ship just before the disaster to make way for ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke to hand out trillions to Sabbatian 'too big to fail' banks and businesses, including the ubiquitous ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which has an ongoing staff revolving door operation between itself and major financial positions in government worldwide. Obama inherited the fallout of the crash when he took office in January, 2009, and fortunately he had the support of his ultra-Zionist White House Chief of Staff Rahm Emmanuel, son of a terrorist who helped to bomb Israel into being in 1948, and his ultra-Zionist senior adviser David Axelrod, chief strategist in Obama's two

successful presidential campaigns. Emmanuel, later mayor of Chicago and former senior fundraiser and strategist for Bill Clinton, is an example of the Sabbatian policy after Israel was established of migrating insider families to America so their children would be born American citizens. ‘Obama’ chose this financial team throughout his administration to respond to the Sabbatian-instigated crisis:

Timothy Geithner (ultra-Zionist) Treasury Secretary; Jacob J. Lew, Treasury Secretary; Larry Summers (ultra-Zionist), director of the White House National Economic Council; Paul Adolph Volcker (Rothschild business partner), chairman of the Economic Recovery Advisory Board; Peter Orszag (ultra-Zionist), director of the Office of Management and Budget overseeing all government spending; Penny Pritzker (ultra-Zionist), Commerce Secretary; Jared Bernstein (ultra-Zionist), chief economist and economic policy adviser to Vice President Joe Biden; Mary Schapiro (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC); Gary Gensler (ultra-Zionist), chairman of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC); Sheila Bair (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC); Karen Mills (ultra-Zionist), head of the Small Business Administration (SBA); Kenneth Feinberg (ultra-Zionist), Special Master for Executive [bail-out] Compensation. Feinberg would be appointed to oversee compensation (with strings) to 9/11 victims and families in a campaign to stop them having their day in court to question the official story. At the same time ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke was chairman of the Federal Reserve and these are only some of the ultra-Zionists with allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel in the Obama government. Obama’s biggest corporate donor was ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which had employed many in his administration.

Donald Trump ('Republican')

Trump claimed to be an outsider (he wasn’t) who had come to ‘drain the swamp’. He embarked on this goal by immediately appointing ultra-Zionist Steve Mnuchin, a Goldman Sachs employee for 17

years, as his Treasury Secretary. Others included Gary Cohn (ultra-Zionist), chief operating officer of Goldman Sachs, his first Director of the National Economic Council and chief economic adviser, who was later replaced by Larry Kudlow (ultra-Zionist). Trump's senior adviser throughout his four years in the White House was his sinister son-in-law Jared Kushner, a life-long friend of Israel Prime Minister Benjamin Netanyahu. Kushner is the son of a convicted crook who was pardoned by Trump in his last days in office. Other ultra-Zionists in the Trump administration included: Stephen Miller, Senior Policy Adviser; Avrahm Berkowitz, Deputy Adviser to Trump and his Senior Adviser Jared Kushner; Ivanka Trump, Adviser to the President, who converted to Judaism when she married Jared Kushner; David Friedman, Trump lawyer and Ambassador to Israel; Jason Greenblatt, Trump Organization executive vice president and chief legal officer, who was made Special Representative for International Negotiations and the Israeli-Palestinian Conflict; Rod Rosenstein, Deputy Attorney General; Elliot Abrams, Special Representative for Venezuela, then Iran; John Eisenberg, National Security Council Legal Adviser and Deputy Council to the President for National Security Affairs; Anne Neuberger, Deputy National Manager, National Security Agency; Ezra Cohen-Watnick, Acting Under Secretary of Defense for Intelligence; Elan Carr, Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Len Khodorkovsky, Deputy Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Reed Cordish, Assistant to the President, Intragovernmental and Technology Initiatives. Trump Vice President Mike Pence and Secretary of State Mike Pompeo, both Christian Zionists, were also vehement supporters of Israel and its goals and ambitions.

Donald 'free-speech believer' Trump pardoned a number of financial and violent criminals while ignoring calls to pardon Julian Assange and Edward Snowden whose crimes are revealing highly relevant information about government manipulation and corruption and the widespread illegal surveillance of the American people by US 'security' agencies. It's so good to know that Trump is on the side of freedom and justice and not mega-criminals with

allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel. These included a pardon for Israeli spy Jonathan Pollard who was jailed for life in 1987 under the Espionage Act. Aviem Sella, the Mossad agent who recruited Pollard, was also pardoned by Trump while Assange sat in jail and Snowden remained in exile in Russia. Sella had 'fled' (was helped to escape) to Israel in 1987 and was never extradited despite being charged under the Espionage Act. A Trump White House statement said that Sella's clemency had been 'supported by Benjamin Netanyahu, Ron Dermer, Israel's US Ambassador, David Friedman, US Ambassador to Israel and Miriam Adelson, wife of leading Trump donor Sheldon Adelson who died shortly before. Other friends of Jared Kushner were pardoned along with Sholom Weiss who was believed to be serving the longest-ever white-collar prison sentence of more than 800 years in 2000. The sentence was commuted of Ponzi-schemer Eliyahu Weinstein who defrauded Jews and others out of \$200 million. I did mention that Assange and Snowden were ignored, right? Trump gave Sabbatians almost everything they asked for in military and political support, moving the US Embassy from Tel Aviv to Jerusalem with its critical symbolic and literal implications for Palestinian statehood, and the 'deal of the Century' designed by Jared Kushner and David Friedman which gave the Sabbatian Israeli government the green light to substantially expand its already widespread program of building illegal Jewish-only settlements in the occupied land of the West Bank. This made a two-state 'solution' impossible by seizing all the land of a potential Palestinian homeland and that had been the plan since 1948 and then 1967 when the Arab-controlled Gaza Strip, West Bank, Sinai Peninsula and Syrian Golan Heights were occupied by Israel. All the talks about talks and road maps and delays have been buying time until the West Bank was physically occupied by Israeli real estate. Trump would have to be a monumentally ill-informed idiot not to see that this was the plan he was helping to complete. The Trump administration was in so many ways the Kushner administration which means the Netanyahu administration which means the Sabbatian administration. I understand why many opposing Cult fascism in all its forms gravitated to Trump, but he

was a crucial part of the Sabbatian plan and I will deal with this in the next chapter.

Joe Biden ('Democrat')

A barely cognitive Joe Biden took over the presidency in January, 2021, along with his fellow empty shell, Vice-President Kamala Harris, as the latest Sabbatian gofers to enter the White House. Names on the door may have changed and the 'party' – the force behind them remained the same as Zionists were appointed to a stream of pivotal areas relating to Sabbatian plans and policy. They included: Janet Yellen, Treasury Secretary, former head of the Federal Reserve, and still another ultra-Zionist running the US Treasury after Mnuchin (Trump), Lew and Geithner (Obama), and Summers and Rubin (Clinton); Anthony Blinken, Secretary of State; Wendy Sherman, Deputy Secretary of State (so that's 'Biden's' Sabbatian foreign policy sorted); Jeff Zients, White House coronavirus coordinator; Rochelle Walensky, head of the Centers for Disease Control; Rachel Levine, transgender deputy health secretary (that's 'Covid' hoax policy under control); Merrick Garland, Attorney General; Alejandro Mayorkas, Secretary of Homeland Security; Cass Sunstein, Homeland Security with responsibility for new immigration laws; Avril Haines, Director of National Intelligence; Anne Neuberger, National Security Agency cybersecurity director (note, cybersecurity); David Cohen, CIA Deputy Director; Ronald Klain, Biden's Chief of Staff (see Rahm Emanuel); Eric Lander, a 'leading geneticist', Office of Science and Technology Policy director (see Smart Grid, synthetic biology agenda); Jessica Rosenworcel, acting head of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) which controls Smart Grid technology policy and electromagnetic communication systems including 5G. How can it be that so many pivotal positions are held by two-percent of the American population and 0.2 percent of the world population administration after administration no matter who is the president and what is the party? It's a coincidence? Of course it's not and this is why Sabbatians have built their colossal global web of interlocking 'anti-

hate' hate groups to condemn anyone who asks these glaring questions as an 'anti-Semite'. The way that Jewish people horrifically abused in Sabbatian-backed Nazi Germany are exploited to this end is stomach-turning and disgusting beyond words.

Political fusion

Sabbatian manipulation has reversed the roles of Republicans and Democrats and the same has happened in Britain with the Conservative and Labour Parties. Republicans and Conservatives were always labelled the 'right' and Democrats and Labour the 'left', but look at the policy positions now and the Democrat-Labour 'left' has moved further to the 'right' than Republicans and Conservatives under the banner of 'Woke', the Cult-created far-right tyranny. Where once the Democrat-Labour 'left' defended free speech and human rights they now seek to delete them and as I said earlier despite the 'Covid' fascism of the Jackboot Johnson Conservative government in the UK the Labour Party of leader Keir Starmer demanded even more extreme measures. The Labour Party has been very publicly absorbed by Sabbatians after a political and media onslaught against the previous leader, the weak and inept Jeremy Corbyn, over made-up allegations of 'anti-Semitism' both by him and his party. The plan was clear with this 'anti-Semite' propaganda and what was required in response was a swift and decisive 'fuck off' from Corbyn and a statement to expose the Anti-Semitism Industry (Sabbatian) attempt to silence Labour criticism of the Israeli government (Sabbatians) and purge the party of all dissent against the extremes of ultra-Zionism (Sabbatians). Instead Corbyn and his party fell to their knees and appeased the abusers which, by definition, is impossible. Appeasing one demand leads only to a new demand to be appeased until takeover is complete. Like I say – 'fuck off' would have been a much more effective policy and I have used it myself with great effect over the years when Sabbatians are on my case which is most of the time. I consider that fact a great compliment, by the way. The outcome of the Labour Party capitulation is that we now have a Sabbatian-controlled

Conservative Party ‘opposed’ by a Sabbatian-controlled Labour Party in a one-party Sabbatian state that hurtles towards the extremes of tyranny (the Sabbatian cult agenda). In America the situation is the same. Labour’s Keir Starmer spends his days on his knees with his tongue out pointing to Tel Aviv, or I guess now Jerusalem, while Boris Johnson has an ‘anti-Semitism czar’ in the form of former Labour MP John Mann who keeps Starmer company on his prayer mat.

Sabbatian influence can be seen in Jewish members of the Labour Party who have been ejected for criticism of Israel including those from families that suffered in Nazi Germany. Sabbatians despise real Jewish people and target them even more harshly because it is so much more difficult to dub them ‘anti-Semitic’ although in their desperation they do try.

CHAPTER THREE

The Pushbacker sting

Until you realize how easy it is for your mind to be manipulated, you remain the puppet of someone else's game

Evita Ochel

I will use the presidencies of Trump and Biden to show how the manipulation of the one-party state plays out behind the illusion of political choice across the world. No two presidencies could – on the face of it – be more different and apparently at odds in terms of direction and policy.

A Renegade Mind sees beyond the obvious and focuses on outcomes and consequences and not image, words and waffle. The Cult embarked on a campaign to divide America between those who blindly support its agenda (the mentality known as 'Woke') and those who are pushing back on where the Cult and its Sabbatians want to go. This presents infinite possibilities for dividing and ruling the population by setting them at war with each other and allows a perceptual ring fence of demonisation to encircle the Pushbackers in a modern version of the Little Big Horn in 1876 when American cavalry led by Lieutenant Colonel George Custer were drawn into a trap, surrounded and killed by Native American tribes defending their land of thousands of years from being seized by the government. In this modern version the roles are reversed and it's those defending themselves from the Sabbatian government who are surrounded and the government that's seeking to destroy them. This trap was set years ago and to explain how we must return to 2016

and the emergence of Donald Trump as a candidate to be President of the United States. He set out to overcome the best part of 20 other candidates in the Republican Party before and during the primaries and was not considered by many in those early stages to have a prayer of living in the White House. The Republican Party was said to have great reservations about Trump and yet somehow he won the nomination. When you know how American politics works – politics in general – there is no way that Trump could have become the party's candidate unless the Sabbatian-controlled 'Neocons' that run the Republican Party wanted that to happen. We saw the proof in emails and documents made public by WikiLeaks that the Democratic Party hierarchy, or Democons, systematically undermined the campaign of Bernie Sanders to make sure that Sabbatian gofer Hillary Clinton won the nomination to be their presidential candidate. If the Democons could do that then the Neocons in the Republican Party could have derailed Trump in the same way. But they didn't and at that stage I began to conclude that Trump could well be the one chosen to be president. If that was the case the 'why' was pretty clear to see – the goal of dividing America between Cult agenda-supporting Wokers and Pushbackers who gravitated to Trump because he was telling them what they wanted to hear. His constituency of support had been increasingly ignored and voiceless for decades and profoundly through the eight years of Sabbatian puppet Barack Obama. Now here was someone speaking their language of pulling back from the incessant globalisation of political and economic power, the exporting of American jobs to China and elsewhere by 'American' (Sabbatian) corporations, the deletion of free speech, and the mass immigration policies that had further devastated job opportunities for the urban working class of all races and the once American heartlands of the Midwest.

Beware the forked tongue

Those people collectively sighed with relief that at last a political leader was apparently on their side, but another trait of the Renegade Mind is that you look even harder at people telling you

what you want to hear than those who are telling you otherwise. Obviously as I said earlier people wish what they want to hear to be true and genuine and they are much more likely to believe that than someone saying what they don't want to here and don't want to be true. Sales people are taught to be skilled in eliciting by calculated questioning what their customers want to hear and repeating that back to them as their own opinion to get their targets to like and trust them. Assets of the Cult are also sales people in the sense of selling perception. To read Cult manipulation you have to play the long and expanded game and not fall for the Vaudeville show of party politics. Both American parties are vehicles for the Cult and they exploit them in different ways depending on what the agenda requires at that moment. Trump and the Republicans were used to be the focus of dividing America and isolating Pushbackers to open the way for a Biden presidency to become the most extreme in American history by advancing the full-blown Woke (Cult) agenda with the aim of destroying and silencing Pushbackers now labelled Nazi Trump supporters and white supremacists.

Sabbatians wanted Trump in office for the reasons described by ultra-Zionist Saul Alinsky (1909-1972) who was promoting the Woke philosophy through 'community organising' long before anyone had heard of it. In those days it still went by its traditional name of Marxism. The reason for the manipulated Trump phenomenon was laid out in Alinsky's 1971 book, *Rules for Radicals*, which was his blueprint for overthrowing democratic and other regimes and replacing them with Sabbatian Marxism. Not surprisingly his to-do list was evident in the Sabbatian French and Russian 'Revolutions' and that in China which will become very relevant in the next chapter about the 'Covid' hoax. Among Alinsky's followers have been the deeply corrupt Barack Obama, House Speaker Nancy Pelosi and Hillary Clinton who described him as a 'hero'. All three are Sabbatian stooges with Pelosi personifying the arrogant corrupt idiocy that so widely fronts up for the Cult inner core. Predictably as a Sabbatian advocate of the 'light-bringer' Alinsky features Lucifer on the dedication page of his book as the original radical who gained

his own kingdom ('Earth' as we shall see). One of Alinsky's golden radical rules was to pick an individual and focus all attention, hatred and blame on them and not to target faceless bureaucracies and corporations. *Rules for Radicals* is really a Sabbatian handbook with its contents repeatedly employed all over the world for centuries and why wouldn't Sabbatians bring to power their designer-villain to be used as the individual on which all attention, hatred and blame was bestowed? This is what they did and the only question for me is how much Trump knew that and how much he was manipulated. A bit of both, I suspect. This was Alinsky's Trump technique from a man who died in 1972. The technique has spanned history:

Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it. Don't try to attack abstract corporations or bureaucracies. Identify a responsible individual. Ignore attempts to shift or spread the blame.

From the moment Trump came to illusory power everything was about him. It wasn't about Republican policy or opinion, but all about Trump. Everything he did was presented in negative, derogatory and abusive terms by the Sabbatian-dominated media led by Cult operations such as CNN, MSNBC, *The New York Times* and the Jeff Bezos-owned *Washington Post* – 'Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it.' Trump was turned into a demon to be vilified by those who hated him and a demi-god loved by those who worshipped him. This, in turn, had his supporters, too, presented as equally demonic in preparation for the punchline later down the line when Biden was about to take office. It was here's a Trump, there's a Trump, everywhere a Trump, Trump. Virtually every news story or happening was filtered through the lens of 'The Donald'. You loved him or hated him and which one you chose was said to define you as Satan's spawn or a paragon of virtue. Even supporting some Trump policies or statements and not others was enough for an assault on your character. No shades of grey were or are allowed. Everything is black and white (literally and figuratively). A Californian I knew had her head utterly scrambled by her hatred for Trump while telling people they should love each other. She was so totally consumed by

Trump Derangement Syndrome as it became to be known that this glaring contradiction would never have occurred to her. By definition anyone who criticised Trump or praised his opponents was a hero and this lady described Joe Biden as 'a kind, honest gentleman' when he's a provable liar, mega-crook and vicious piece of work to boot. Sabbatians had indeed divided America using Trump as the fall-guy and all along the clock was ticking on the consequences for his supporters.

In hock to his masters

Trump gave Sabbatians via Israel almost everything they wanted in his four years. Ask and you shall receive was the dynamic between himself and Benjamin Netanyahu orchestrated by Trump's ultra-Zionist son-in-law Jared Kushner, his ultra-Zionist Ambassador to Israel, David Friedman, and ultra-Zionist 'Israel adviser', Jason Greenblatt. The last two were central to the running and protecting from collapse of his business empire, the Trump Organisation, and colossal business failures made him forever beholden to Sabbatian networks that bailed him out. By the start of the 1990s Trump owed \$4 billion to banks that he couldn't pay and almost \$1 billion of that was down to him personally and not his companies. This mega-disaster was the result of building two new casinos in Atlantic City and buying the enormous Taj Mahal operation which led to crippling debt payments. He had borrowed fantastic sums from 72 banks with major Sabbatian connections and although the scale of debt should have had him living in a tent alongside the highway they never foreclosed. A plan was devised to lift Trump from the mire by BT Securities Corporation and Rothschild Inc. and the case was handled by Wilber Ross who had worked for the Rothschilds for 27 years. Ross would be named US Commerce Secretary after Trump's election. Another crucial figure in saving Trump was ultra-Zionist 'investor' Carl Icahn who bought the Taj Mahal casino. Icahn was made special economic adviser on financial regulation in the Trump administration. He didn't stay long but still managed to find time to make a tidy sum of a reported \$31.3 million when he sold his

holdings affected by the price of steel three days before Trump imposed a 235 percent tariff on steel imports. What amazing bits of luck these people have. Trump and Sabbatian operatives have long had a close association and his mentor and legal adviser from the early 1970s until 1986 was the dark and genetically corrupt ultra-Zionist Roy Cohn who was chief counsel to Senator Joseph McCarthy's 'communist' witch-hunt in the 1950s. *Esquire* magazine published an article about Cohn with the headline 'Don't mess with Roy Cohn'. He was described as the most feared lawyer in New York and 'a ruthless master of dirty tricks ... [with] ... more than one Mafia Don on speed dial'. Cohn's influence, contacts, support and protection made Trump a front man for Sabbatians in New York with their connections to one of Cohn's many criminal employers, the 'Russian' Sabbatian Mafia. Israel-centric media mogul Rupert Murdoch was introduced to Trump by Cohn and they started a long friendship. Cohn died in 1986 weeks after being disbarred for unethical conduct by the Appellate Division of the New York State Supreme Court. The wheels of justice do indeed run slow given the length of Cohn's crooked career.

QAnon-sense

We are asked to believe that Donald Trump with his fundamental connections to Sabbatian networks and operatives has been leading the fight to stop the Sabbatian agenda for the fascistic control of America and the world. Sure he has. A man entrapped during his years in the White House by Sabbatian operatives and whose biggest financial donor was casino billionaire Sheldon Adelson who was Sabbatian to his DNA?? Oh, do come on. Trump has been used to divide America and isolate Pushbackers on the Cult agenda under the heading of 'Trump supporters', 'insurrectionists' and 'white supremacists'. The US Intelligence/Mossad Psyop or psychological operation known as QAnon emerged during the Trump years as a central pillar in the Sabbatian campaign to lead Pushbackers into the trap set by those that wished to destroy them. I knew from the start that QAnon was a scam because I had seen the same scenario many

times before over 30 years under different names and I had written about one in particular in the books. ‘Not again’ was my reaction when QAnon came to the fore. The same script is pulled out every few years and a new name added to the letterhead. The story always takes the same form: ‘Insiders’ or ‘the good guys’ in the government-intelligence-military ‘Deep State’ apparatus were going to instigate mass arrests of the ‘bad guys’ which would include the Rockefellers, Rothschilds, Barack Obama, Hillary Clinton, George Soros, etc., etc. Dates are given for when the ‘good guys’ are going to move in, but the dates pass without incident and new dates are given which pass without incident. The central message to Pushbackers in each case is that they don’t have to do anything because there is ‘a plan’ and it is all going to be sorted by the ‘good guys’ on the inside. ‘Trust the plan’ was a QAnon mantra when the only plan was to misdirect Pushbackers into putting their trust in a Psyop they believed to be real. Beware, beware, those who tell you what you want to hear and always check it out. Right up to Biden’s inauguration QAnon was still claiming that ‘the Storm’ was coming and Trump would stay on as president when Biden and his cronies were arrested and jailed. It was never going to happen and of course it didn’t, but what did happen as a result provided that punchline to the Sabbatian Trump/QAnon Psyop.

On January 6th, 2021, a very big crowd of Trump supporters gathered in the National Mall in Washington DC down from the Capitol Building to protest at what they believed to be widespread corruption and vote fraud that stopped Trump being re-elected for a second term as president in November, 2020. I say as someone that does not support Trump or Biden that the evidence is clear that major vote-fixing went on to favour Biden, a man with cognitive problems so advanced he can often hardly string a sentence together without reading the words written for him on the Teleprompter. Glaring ballot discrepancies included serious questions about electronic voting machines that make vote rigging a comparative cinch and hundreds of thousands of paper votes that suddenly appeared during already advanced vote counts and virtually all of

them for Biden. Early Trump leads in crucial swing states suddenly began to close and disappear. The pandemic hoax was used as the excuse to issue almost limitless numbers of mail-in ballots with no checks to establish that the recipients were still alive or lived at that address. They were sent to streams of people who had not even asked for them. Private organisations were employed to gather these ballots and who knows what they did with them before they turned up at the counts. The American election system has been manipulated over decades to become a sick joke with more holes than a Swiss cheese for the express purpose of dictating the results. Then there was the criminal manipulation of information by Sabbatian tech giants like Facebook, Twitter and Google-owned YouTube which deleted pro-Trump, anti-Biden accounts and posts while everything in support of Biden was left alone. Sabbatians wanted Biden to win because after the dividing of America it was time for full-on Woke and every aspect of the Cult agenda to be unleashed.

Hunter gatherer

Extreme Silicon Valley bias included blocking information by the *New York Post* exposing a Biden scandal that should have ended his bid for president in the final weeks of the campaign. Hunter Biden, his monumentally corrupt son, is reported to have sent a laptop to be repaired at a local store and failed to return for it. Time passed until the laptop became the property of the store for non-payment of the bill. When the owner saw what was on the hard drive he gave a copy to the FBI who did nothing even though it confirmed widespread corruption in which the Joe Biden family were using his political position, especially when he was vice president to Obama, to make multiple millions in countries around the world and most notably Ukraine and China. Hunter Biden's one-time business partner Tony Bobulinski went public when the story broke in the *New York Post* to confirm the corruption he saw and that Joe Biden not only knew what was going on he also profited from the spoils. Millions were handed over by a Chinese company with close

connections – like all major businesses in China – to the Chinese communist party of President Xi Jinping. Joe Biden even boasted at a meeting of the Cult's World Economic Forum that as vice president he had ordered the government of Ukraine to fire a prosecutor. What he didn't mention was that the same man just happened to be investigating an energy company which was part of Hunter Biden's corrupt portfolio. The company was paying him big bucks for no other reason than the influence his father had. Overnight Biden's presidential campaign should have been over given that he had lied publicly about not knowing what his son was doing. Instead almost the entire Sabbatian-owned mainstream media and Sabbatian-owned Silicon Valley suppressed circulation of the story. This alone went a mighty way to rigging the election of 2020. Cult assets like Mark Zuckerberg at Facebook also spent hundreds of millions to be used in support of Biden and vote 'administration'.

The Cult had used Trump as the focus to divide America and was now desperate to bring in moronic, pliable, corrupt Biden to complete the double-whammy. No way were they going to let little things like the will of the people thwart their plan. Silicon Valley widely censored claims that the election was rigged because it *was* rigged. For the same reason anyone claiming it was rigged was denounced as a 'white supremacist' including the pathetically few Republican politicians willing to say so. Right across the media where the claim was mentioned it was described as a 'false claim' even though these excuses for 'journalists' would have done no research into the subject whatsoever. Trump won seven million more votes than any sitting president had ever achieved while somehow a cognitively-challenged soon to be 78-year-old who was hidden away from the public for most of the campaign managed to win more votes than any presidential candidate in history. It makes no sense. You only had to see election rallies for both candidates to witness the enthusiasm for Trump and the apathy for Biden. Tens of thousands would attend Trump events while Biden was speaking in empty car parks with often only television crews attending and framing their shots to hide the fact that no one was there. It was pathetic to see

footage come to light of Biden standing at a podium making speeches only to TV crews and party fixers while reading the words written for him on massive Teleprompter screens. So, yes, those protestors on January 6th had a point about election rigging, but some were about to walk into a trap laid for them in Washington by the Cult Deep State and its QAnon Psyop. This was the Capitol Hill riot ludicrously dubbed an ‘insurrection’.

The spider and the fly

Renegade Minds know there are not two ‘sides’ in politics, only one side, the Cult, working through all ‘sides’. It’s a stage show, a puppet show, to direct the perceptions of the population into focusing on diversions like parties and candidates while missing the puppeteers with their hands holding all the strings. The Capitol Hill ‘insurrection’ brings us back to the Little Big Horn. Having created two distinct opposing groupings – Woke and Pushbackers – the trap was about to be sprung. Pushbackers were to be encircled and isolated by associating them all in the public mind with Trump and then labelling Trump as some sort of Confederate leader. I knew immediately that the Capitol riot was a set-up because of two things. One was how easy the rioters got into the building with virtually no credible resistance and secondly I could see – as with the ‘Covid’ hoax in the West at the start of 2020 – how the Cult could exploit the situation to move its agenda forward with great speed. My experience of Cult techniques and activities over more than 30 years has showed me that while they do exploit situations they haven’t themselves created this never happens with events of fundamental agenda significance. Every time major events giving cultists the excuse to rapidly advance their plan you find they are manipulated into being for the specific reason of providing that excuse – Problem-Reaction-Solution. Only a tiny minority of the huge crowd of Washington protestors sought to gain entry to the Capitol by smashing windows and breaching doors. That didn’t matter. The whole crowd and all Pushbackers, even if they did not support Trump, were going to be lumped together as dangerous

insurrectionists and conspiracy theorists. The latter term came into widespread use through a CIA memo in the 1960s aimed at discrediting those questioning the nonsensical official story of the Kennedy assassination and it subsequently became widely employed by the media. It's still being used by inept 'journalists' with no idea of its origin to discredit anyone questioning anything that authority claims to be true. When you are perpetrating a conspiracy you need to discredit the very word itself even though the dictionary definition of conspiracy is merely 'the activity of secretly planning with other people to do something bad or illegal' and 'a general agreement to keep silent about a subject for the purpose of keeping it secret'. On that basis there are conspiracies almost wherever you look. For obvious reasons the Cult and its lapdog media have to claim there are no conspiracies even though the word appears in state laws as with conspiracy to defraud, to murder, and to corrupt public morals.

Agent provocateurs are widely used by the Cult Deep State to manipulate genuine people into acting in ways that suit the desired outcome. By genuine in this case I mean protestors genuinely supporting Trump and claims that the election was stolen. In among them, however, were agents of the state wearing the garb of Trump supporters and QAnon to pump-prime the Capitol riot which some genuine Trump supporters naively fell for. I described the situation as 'Come into my parlour said the spider to the fly'. Leaflets appeared through the Woke paramilitary arm Antifa, the anti-fascist fascists, calling on supporters to turn up in Washington looking like Trump supporters even though they hated him. Some of those arrested for breaching the Capitol Building were sourced to Antifa and its stable mate Black Lives Matter. Both organisations are funded by Cult billionaires and corporations. One man charged for the riot was according to his lawyer a former FBI agent who had held top secret security clearance for 40 years. Attorney Thomas Plofchan said of his client, 66-year-old Thomas Edward Caldwell:

He has held a Top Secret Security Clearance since 1979 and has undergone multiple Special Background Investigations in support of his clearances. After retiring from the Navy, he

worked as a section chief for the Federal Bureau of Investigation from 2009-2010 as a GS-12 [mid-level employee].

He also formed and operated a consulting firm performing work, often classified, for U.S government customers including the US Drug Enforcement Agency, Department of Housing and Urban Development, the US Coast Guard, and the US Army Personnel Command.

A judge later released Caldwell pending trial in the absence of evidence about a conspiracy or that he tried to force his way into the building. *The New York Post* reported a 'law enforcement source' as saying that 'at least two known Antifa members were spotted' on camera among Trump supporters during the riot while one of the rioters arrested was John Earle Sullivan, a seriously extreme Black Lives Matter Trump-hater from Utah who was previously arrested and charged in July, 2020, over a BLM-Antifa riot in which drivers were threatened and one was shot. Sullivan is the founder of Utah-based Insurgence USA which is an affiliate of the Cult-created-and-funded Black Lives Matter movement. Footage appeared and was then deleted by Twitter of Trump supporters calling out Antifa infiltrators and a group was filmed changing into pro-Trump clothing before the riot. Security at the building was *pathetic* – as planned. Colonel Leroy Fletcher Prouty, a man with long experience in covert operations working with the US security apparatus, once described the tell-tale sign to identify who is involved in an assassination. He said:

No one has to direct an assassination – it happens. The active role is played secretly by permitting it to happen. This is the greatest single clue. Who has the power to call off or reduce the usual security precautions?

This principle applies to many other situations and certainly to the Capitol riot of January 6th, 2021.

The sting

With such a big and potentially angry crowd known to be gathering near the Capitol the security apparatus would have had a major police detail to defend the building with National Guard troops on

standby given the strength of feeling among people arriving from all over America encouraged by the QAnon Psyop and statements by Donald Trump. Instead Capitol Police ‘security’ was flimsy, weak, and easily breached. The same number of officers was deployed as on a regular day and that is a blatant red flag. They were not staffed or equipped for a possible riot that had been an obvious possibility in the circumstances. No protective and effective fencing worth the name was put in place and there were no contingency plans. The whole thing was basically a case of standing aside and waving people in. Once inside police mostly backed off apart from one Capitol police officer who ridiculously shot dead unarmed Air Force veteran protestor Ashli Babbitt without a warning as she climbed through a broken window. The ‘investigation’ refused to name or charge the officer after what must surely be considered a murder in the circumstances. They just lifted a carpet and swept. The story was endlessly repeated about five people dying in the ‘armed insurrection’ when there was no report of rioters using weapons. Apart from Babbitt the other four died from a heart attack, strokes and apparently a drug overdose. Capitol police officer Brian Sicknick was reported to have died after being bludgeoned with a fire extinguisher when he was alive after the riot was over and died later of what the Washington Medical Examiner’s Office said was a stroke. Sicknick had no external injuries. The lies were delivered like rapid fire. There was a narrative to build with incessant repetition of the lie until the lie became the accepted ‘everybody knows that’ truth. The ‘Big Lie’ technique of Nazi Propaganda Minister Joseph Goebbels is constantly used by the Cult which was behind the Nazis and is today behind the ‘Covid’ and ‘climate change’ hoaxes. Goebbels said:

If you tell a lie big enough and keep repeating it, people will eventually come to believe it. The lie can be maintained only for such time as the State can shield the people from the political, economic and/or military consequences of the lie. It thus becomes vitally important for the State to use all of its powers to repress dissent, for the truth is the mortal enemy of the lie, and thus by extension, the truth is the greatest enemy of the State.

Most protestors had a free run of the Capitol Building. This allowed pictures to be taken of rioters in iconic parts of the building including the Senate chamber which could be used as propaganda images against all Pushbackers. One Congresswoman described the scene as ‘the worst kind of non-security anybody could ever imagine’. Well, the first part was true, but someone obviously did imagine it and made sure it happened. Some photographs most widely circulated featured people wearing QAnon symbols and now the Psyop would be used to dub all QAnon followers with the ubiquitous fit-all label of ‘white supremacist’ and ‘insurrectionists’. When a Muslim extremist called Noah Green drove his car at two police officers at the Capitol Building killing one in April, 2021, there was no such political and media hysteria. They were just disappointed he wasn’t white.

The witch-hunt

Government prosecutor Michael Sherwin, an aggressive, dark-eyed, professional Rottweiler led the ‘investigation’ and to call it over the top would be to underestimate reality a thousand fold. Hundreds were tracked down and arrested for the crime of having the wrong political views and people were jailed who had done nothing more than walk in the building, committed no violence or damage to property, took a few pictures and left. They were labelled a ‘threat to the Republic’ while Biden sat in the White House signing executive orders written for him that were dismantling ‘the Republic’. Even when judges ruled that a mother and son should not be in jail the government kept them there. Some of those arrested have been badly beaten by prison guards in Washington and lawyers for one man said he suffered a fractured skull and was made blind in one eye. Meanwhile a woman is shot dead for no reason by a Capitol Police officer and we are not allowed to know who he is never mind what has happened to him although that will be *nothing*. The Cult’s QAnon/Trump sting to identify and isolate Pushbackers and then target them on the road to crushing and deleting them was a resounding success. You would have thought the Russians had

invaded the building at gunpoint and lined up senators for a firing squad to see the political and media reaction. Congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez is a child in a woman's body, a terrible-twins, me, me, me, Woker narcissist of such proportions that words have no meaning. She said she thought she was going to die when 'insurrectionists' banged on her office door. It turned out she wasn't even in the Capitol Building when the riot was happening and the 'banging' was a Capitol Police officer. She referred to herself as a 'survivor' which is an insult to all those true survivors of violent and sexual abuse while she lives her pampered and privileged life talking drivel for a living. Her Woke colleague and fellow mega-narcissist Rashida Tlaib broke down describing the devastating effect on her, too, of *not being* in the building when the rioters were there. Ocasio-Cortez and Tlaib are members of a fully-Woke group of Congresswomen known as 'The Squad' along with Ilhan Omar and Ayanna Pressley. The Squad from what I can see can be identified by its vehement anti-white racism, anti-white men agenda, and, as always in these cases, the absence of brain cells on active duty.

The usual suspects were on the riot case immediately in the form of Democrat ultra-Zionist senators and operatives Chuck Schumer and Adam Schiff demanding that Trump be impeached for 'his part in the insurrection'. The same pair of prats had led the failed impeachment of Trump over the invented 'Russia collusion' nonsense which claimed Russia had helped Trump win the 2016 election. I didn't realise that Tel Aviv had been relocated just outside Moscow. I must find an up-to-date map. The Russia hoax was a Sabbatian operation to keep Trump occupied and impotent and to stop any rapport with Russia which the Cult wants to retain as a perceptual enemy to be pulled out at will. Puppet Biden began attacking Russia when he came to office as the Cult seeks more upheaval, division and war across the world. A two-year stage show 'Russia collusion inquiry' headed by the not-very-bright former 9/11 FBI chief Robert Mueller, with support from 19 lawyers, 40 FBI agents plus intelligence analysts, forensic accountants and other

staff, devoured tens of millions of dollars and found no evidence of Russia collusion which a ten-year-old could have told them on day one. Now the same moronic Schumer and Schiff wanted a second impeachment of Trump over the Capitol ‘insurrection’ (riot) which the arrested development of Schumer called another ‘Pearl Harbor’ while others compared it with 9/11 in which 3,000 died and, in the case of CNN, with the Rwandan genocide in the 1990s in which an estimated 500,000 to 600,000 were murdered, between 250, 000 and 500,000 women were raped, and populations of whole towns were hacked to death with machetes. To make those comparisons purely for Cult political reasons is beyond insulting to those that suffered and lost their lives and confirms yet again the callous inhumanity that we are dealing with. Schumer is a monumental idiot and so is Schiff, but they serve the Cult agenda and do whatever they’re told so they get looked after. Talking of idiots – another inane man who spanned the Russia and Capitol impeachment attempts was Senator Eric Swalwell who had the nerve to accuse Trump of collusion with the Russians while sleeping with a Chinese spy called Christine Fang or ‘Fang Fang’ which is straight out of a Bond film no doubt starring Klaus Schwab as the bloke living on a secret island and controlling laser weapons positioned in space and pointing at world capitals. Fang Fang plays the part of Bond’s infiltrator girlfriend which I’m sure she would enjoy rather more than sharing a bed with the brainless Swalwell, lying back and thinking of China. The FBI eventually warned Swalwell about Fang Fang which gave her time to escape back to the Chinese dictatorship. How very thoughtful of them. The second Trump impeachment also failed and hardly surprising when an impeachment is supposed to remove a sitting president and by the time it happened Trump was no longer president. These people are running your country America, well, officially anyway. Terrifying isn’t it?

Outcomes tell the story - always

The outcome of all this – and it’s the *outcome* on which Renegade Minds focus, not the words – was that a vicious, hysterical and

obviously pre-planned assault was launched on Pushbackers to censor, silence and discredit them and even targeted their right to earn a living. They have since been condemned as ‘domestic terrorists’ that need to be treated like Al-Qaeda and Islamic State. ‘Domestic terrorists’ is a label the Cult has been trying to make stick since the period of the Oklahoma bombing in 1995 which was blamed on ‘far-right domestic terrorists’. If you read *The Trigger* you will see that the bombing was clearly a Problem-Reaction-Solution carried out by the Deep State during a Bill Clinton administration so corrupt that no dictionary definition of the term would even nearly suffice. Nearly 30,000 troops were deployed from all over America to the empty streets of Washington for Biden’s inauguration. Ten thousand of them stayed on with the pretext of protecting the capital from insurrectionists when it was more psychological programming to normalise the use of the military in domestic law enforcement in support of the Cult plan for a police-military state. Biden’s fascist administration began a purge of ‘wrong-thinkers’ in the military which means anyone that is not on board with Woke. The Capitol Building was surrounded by a fence with razor wire and the Land of the Free was further symbolically and literally dismantled. The circle was completed with the installation of Biden and the exploitation of the QAnon Psyop.

America had never been so divided since the civil war of the 19th century, Pushbackers were isolated and dubbed terrorists and now, as was always going to happen, the Cult immediately set about deleting what little was left of freedom and transforming American society through a swish of the hand of the most controlled ‘president’ in American history leading (officially at least) the most extreme regime since the country was declared an independent state on July 4th, 1776. Biden issued undebated, dictatorial executive orders almost by the hour in his opening days in office across the whole spectrum of the Cult wish-list including diluting controls on the border with Mexico allowing thousands of migrants to illegally enter the United States to transform the demographics of America and import an election-changing number of perceived Democrat

voters. Then there were Biden deportation amnesties for the already illegally resident (estimated to be as high as 20 or even 30 million). A bill before Congress awarded American citizenship to anyone who could prove they had worked in agriculture for just 180 days in the previous two years as 'Big Ag' secured its slave labour long-term. There were the plans to add new states to the union such as Puerto Rico and making Washington DC a state. They are all parts of a plan to ensure that the Cult-owned Woke Democrats would be permanently in power.

Border – what border?

I have exposed in detail in other books how mass immigration into the United States and Europe is the work of Cult networks fuelled by the tens of billions spent to this and other ends by George Soros and his global Open Society (open borders) Foundations. The impact can be seen in America alone where the population has increased by *100 million* in little more than 30 years mostly through immigration. I wrote in *The Answer* that the plan was to have so many people crossing the southern border that the numbers become unstoppable and we are now there under Cult-owned Biden. El Salvador in Central America puts the scale of what is happening into context. A third of the population now lives in the United States, much of it illegally, and many more are on the way. The methodology is to crush Central and South American countries economically and spread violence through machete-wielding psychopathic gangs like MS-13 based in El Salvador and now operating in many American cities. Biden-imposed lax security at the southern border means that it is all but open. He said before his 'election' that he wanted to see a surge towards the border if he became president and that was the green light for people to do just that after election day to create the human disaster that followed for both America and the migrants. When that surge came the imbecilic Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez said it wasn't a 'surge' because they are 'children, not insurgents' and the term 'surge' (used by Biden) was a claim of 'white supremacists'.

This disingenuous lady may one day enter the realm of the most basic intelligence, but it won't be any time soon.

Sabbatians and the Cult are in the process of destroying America by importing violent people and gangs in among the genuine to terrorise American cities and by overwhelming services that cannot cope with the sheer volume of new arrivals. Something similar is happening in Europe as Western society in general is targeted for demographic and cultural transformation and upheaval. The plan demands violence and crime to create an environment of intimidation, fear and division and Soros has been funding the election of district attorneys across America who then stop prosecuting many crimes, reduce sentences for violent crimes and free as many violent criminals as they can. Sabbatians are creating the chaos from which order – their order – can respond in a classic Problem-Reaction-Solution. A Freemasonic moto says ‘Ordo Ab Chao’ (Order out of Chaos) and this is why the Cult is constantly creating chaos to impose a new ‘order’. Here you have the reason the Cult is constantly creating chaos. The ‘Covid’ hoax can be seen with those entering the United States by plane being forced to take a ‘Covid’ test while migrants flooding through southern border processing facilities do not. Nothing is put in the way of mass migration and if that means ignoring the government’s own ‘Covid’ rules then so be it. They know it’s all bullshit anyway. Any pushback on this is denounced as ‘racist’ by Wokers and Sabbatian fronts like the ultra-Zionist Anti-Defamation League headed by the appalling Jonathan Greenblatt which at the same time argues that Israel should not give citizenship and voting rights to more Palestinian Arabs or the ‘Jewish population’ (in truth the Sabbatian network) will lose control of the country.

Society-changing numbers

Biden’s masters have declared that countries like El Salvador are so dangerous that their people must be allowed into the United States for humanitarian reasons when there are fewer murders in large parts of many Central American countries than in US cities like

Baltimore. That is not to say Central America cannot be a dangerous place and Cult-controlled American governments have been making it so since way back, along with the dismantling of economies, in a long-term plan to drive people north into the United States. Parts of Central America are very dangerous, but in other areas the story is being greatly exaggerated to justify relaxing immigration criteria. Migrants are being offered free healthcare and education in the United States as another incentive to head for the border and there is no requirement to be financially independent before you can enter to prevent the resources of America being drained. You can't blame migrants for seeking what they believe will be a better life, but they are being played by the Cult for dark and nefarious ends. The numbers since Biden took office are huge. In February, 2021, more than 100,000 people were known to have tried to enter the US illegally through the southern border (it was 34,000 in the same month in 2020) and in March it was 170,000 – a 418 percent increase on March, 2020. These numbers are only known people, not the ones who get in unseen. The true figure for migrants illegally crossing the border in a single month was estimated by one congressman at 250,000 and that number will only rise under Biden's current policy. Gangs of murdering drug-running thugs that control the Mexican side of the border demand money – thousands of dollars – to let migrants cross the Rio Grande into America. At the same time gun battles are breaking out on the border several times a week between rival Mexican drug gangs (which now operate globally) who are equipped with sophisticated military-grade weapons, grenades and armoured vehicles. While the Capitol Building was being 'protected' from a non-existent 'threat' by thousands of troops, and others were still deployed at the time in the Cult Neocon war in Afghanistan, the southern border of America was left to its fate. This is not incompetence, it is cold calculation.

By March, 2021, there were 17,000 unaccompanied children held at border facilities and many of them are ensnared by people traffickers for paedophile rings and raped on their journey north to America. This is not conjecture – this is fact. Many of those designated

children are in reality teenage boys or older. Meanwhile Wokers posture their self-purity for encouraging poor and tragic people to come to America and face this nightmare both on the journey and at the border with the disgusting figure of House Speaker Nancy Pelosi giving disingenuous speeches about caring for migrants. The woman's evil. Wokers condemned Trump for having children in cages at the border (so did Obama, *Shhhh*), but now they are sleeping on the floor without access to a shower with one border facility 729 percent over capacity. The Biden insanity even proposed flying migrants from the southern border to the northern border with Canada for 'processing'. The whole shambles is being overseen by ultra-Zionist Secretary of Homeland Security, the moronic liar Alejandro Mayorkas, who banned news cameras at border facilities to stop Americans seeing what was happening. Mayorkas said there was not a ban on news crews; it was just that they were not allowed to film. Alongside him at Homeland Security is another ultra-Zionist Cass Sunstein appointed by Biden to oversee new immigration laws. Sunstein despises conspiracy researchers to the point where he suggests they should be banned or *taxed* for having such views. The man is not bonkers or anything. He's perfectly well-adjusted, but adjusted to what is the question. Criticise what is happening and you are a 'white supremacist' when earlier non-white immigrants also oppose the numbers which effect their lives and opportunities. Black people in poor areas are particularly damaged by uncontrolled immigration and the increased competition for work opportunities with those who will work for less. They are also losing voting power as Hispanics become more dominant in former black areas. It's a downward spiral for them while the billionaires behind the policy drone on about how much they care about black people and 'racism'. None of this is about compassion for migrants or black people – that's just wind and air. Migrants are instead being mercilessly exploited to transform America while the countries they leave are losing their future and the same is true in Europe. Mass immigration may now be the work of Woke Democrats, but it can be traced back to the 1986 Immigration Reform and Control Act (it

wasn't) signed into law by Republican hero President Ronald Reagan which gave amnesty to millions living in the United States illegally and other incentives for people to head for the southern border. Here we have the one-party state at work again.

Save me syndrome

Almost every aspect of what I have been exposing as the Cult agenda was on display in even the first days of 'Biden' with silencing of Pushbackers at the forefront of everything. A Renegade Mind will view the Trump years and QAnon in a very different light to their supporters and advocates as the dots are connected. The QAnon/Trump Psyop has given the Cult all it was looking for. We may not know how much, or little, that Trump realised he was being used, but that's a side issue. This pincer movement produced the desired outcome of dividing America and having Pushbackers isolated. To turn this around we have to look at new routes to empowerment which do not include handing our power to other people and groups through what I will call the 'Save Me Syndrome' – 'I want someone else to do it so that I don't have to'. We have seen this at work throughout human history and the QAnon/Trump Psyop is only the latest incarnation alongside all the others. Religion is an obvious expression of this when people look to a 'god' or priest to save them or tell them how to be saved and then there are 'save me' politicians like Trump. Politics is a diversion and not a 'saviour'. It is a means to block positive change, not make it possible.

Save Me Syndrome always comes with the same repeating theme of handing your power to whom or what you believe will save you while your real 'saviour' stares back from the mirror every morning. Renegade Minds are constantly vigilant in this regard and always asking the question 'What can I do?' rather than 'What can someone else do for me?' Gandhi was right when he said: 'You must be the change you want to see in the world.' We are indeed the people we have been waiting for. We are presented with a constant raft of reasons to concede that power to others and forget where the real power is. Humanity has the numbers and the Cult does not. It has to

use diversion and division to target the unstoppable power that comes from unity. Religions, governments, politicians, corporations, media, QAnon, are all different manifestations of this power-diversion and dilution. Refusing to give your power to governments and instead handing it to Trump and QAnon is not to take a new direction, but merely to recycle the old one with new names on the posters. I will explore this phenomenon as we proceed and how to break the cycles and recycles that got us here through the mists of repeating perception and so repeating history.

For now we shall turn to the most potent example in the entire human story of the consequences that follow when you give your power away. I am talking, of course, of the 'Covid' hoax.

CHAPTER FOUR

'Covid': Calculated catastrophe

Facts are threatening to those invested in fraud
DaShanne Stokes

We can easily unravel the real reason for the 'Covid pandemic' hoax by employing the Renegade Mind methodology that I have outlined this far. We'll start by comparing the long-planned Cult outcome with the 'Covid pandemic' outcome. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey.

I have highlighted the plan for the Hunger Games Society which has been in my books for so many years with the very few controlling the very many through ongoing dependency. To create this dependency it is essential to destroy independent livelihoods, businesses and employment to make the population reliant on the state (the Cult) for even the basics of life through a guaranteed pittance income. While independence of income remained these Cult ambitions would be thwarted. With this knowledge it was easy to see where the 'pandemic' hoax was going once talk of 'lockdowns' began and the closing of all but perceived 'essential' businesses to 'save' us from an alleged 'deadly virus'. Cult corporations like Amazon and Walmart were naturally considered 'essential' while mom and pop shops and stores had their doors closed by fascist decree. As a result with every new lockdown and new regulation more small and medium, even large businesses not owned by the Cult, went to the wall while Cult giants and their frontmen and women grew financially fatter by the second. Mom and pop were

denied an income and the right to earn a living and the wealth of people like Jeff Bezos (Amazon), Mark Zuckerberg (Facebook) and Sergei Brin and Larry Page (Google/Alphabet) have reached record levels. The Cult was increasing its own power through further dramatic concentrations of wealth while the competition was being destroyed and brought into a state of dependency. Lockdowns have been instigated to secure that very end and were never anything to do with health. My brother Paul spent 45 years building up a bus repair business, but lockdowns meant buses were running at a fraction of normal levels for months on end. Similar stories can told in their hundreds of millions worldwide. Efforts of a lifetime coldly destroyed by Cult multi-billionaires and their lackeys in government and law enforcement who continued to earn their living from the taxation of the people while denying the right of the same people to earn theirs. How different it would have been if those making and enforcing these decisions had to face the same financial hardships of those they affected, but they never do.

Gates of Hell

Behind it all in the full knowledge of what he is doing and why is the psychopathic figure of Cult operative Bill Gates. His puppet Tedros at the World Health Organization declared 'Covid' a pandemic in March, 2020. The WHO had changed the definition of a 'pandemic' in 2009 just a month before declaring the 'swine flu pandemic' which would not have been so under the previous definition. The same applies to 'Covid'. The definition had included... 'an infection by an infectious agent, occurring simultaneously in different countries, with a significant mortality rate relative to the proportion of the population infected'. The new definition removed the need for 'significant mortality'. The 'pandemic' has been fraudulent even down to the definition, but Gates demanded economy-destroying lockdowns, school closures, social distancing, mandatory masks, a 'vaccination' for every man, woman and child on the planet and severe consequences and restrictions for those that refused. Who gave him this power? The

Cult did which he serves like a little boy in short trousers doing what his daddy tells him. He and his psychopathic missus even smiled when they said that much worse was to come (what they knew was planned to come). Gates responded in the matter-of-fact way of all psychopaths to a question about the effect on the world economy of what he was doing:

Well, it won't go to zero but it will shrink. Global GDP is probably going to take the biggest hit ever [Gates was smiling as he said this] ... in my lifetime this will be the greatest economic hit. But you don't have a choice. People act as if you have a choice. People don't feel like going to the stadium when they might get infected ... People are deeply affected by seeing these stats, by knowing they could be part of the transmission chain, old people, their parents and grandparents, could be affected by this, and so you don't get to say ignore what is going on here.

There will be the ability to open up, particularly in rich countries, if things are done well over the next few months, but for the world at large normalcy only returns when we have largely vaccinated the entire population.

The man has no compassion or empathy. How could he when he's a psychopath like all Cult players? My own view is that even beyond that he is very seriously mentally ill. Look in his eyes and you can see this along with his crazy flailing arms. You don't do what he has done to the world population since the start of 2020 unless you are mentally ill and at the most extreme end of psychopathic. You especially don't do it when to you know, as we shall see, that cases and deaths from 'Covid' are fakery and a product of monumental figure massaging. 'These stats' that Gates referred to are based on a 'test' that's not testing for the 'virus' as he has known all along. He made his fortune with big Cult support as an infamously ruthless software salesman and now buys global control of 'health' (death) policy without the population he affects having any say. It's a breathtaking outrage. Gates talked about people being deeply affected by fear of 'Covid' when that was because of *him* and his global network lying to them minute-by-minute supported by a lying media that he seriously influences and funds to the tune of hundreds of millions. He's handed big sums to media operations including the BBC, NBC, Al Jazeera, Univision, *PBS NewsHour*,

ProPublica, National Journal, The Guardian, The Financial Times, The Atlantic, Texas Tribune, USA Today publisher Gannett, Washington Monthly, Le Monde, Center for Investigative Reporting, Pulitzer Center on Crisis Reporting, National Press Foundation, International Center for Journalists, Solutions Journalism Network, the Poynter Institute for Media Studies, and many more. Gates is everywhere in the ‘Covid’ hoax and the man must go to prison – or a mental facility – for the rest of his life and his money distributed to those he has taken such enormous psychopathic pleasure in crushing.

The Muscle

The Hunger Games global structure demands a police-military state – a fusion of the two into one force – which viciously imposes the will of the Cult on the population and protects the Cult from public rebellion. In that regard, too, the ‘Covid’ hoax just keeps on giving. Often unlawful, ridiculous and contradictory ‘Covid’ rules and regulations have been policed across the world by moronic automatons and psychopaths made faceless by face-nappy masks and acting like the Nazi SS and fascist blackshirts and brownshirts of Hitler and Mussolini. The smallest departure from the rules decreed by the psychos in government and their clueless gofers were jumped upon by the face-nappy fascists. Brutality against public protestors soon became commonplace even on girls, women and old people as the brave men with the batons – the Face-Nappies as I call them – broke up peaceful protests and handed out fines like confetti to people who couldn’t earn a living let alone pay hundreds of pounds for what was once an accepted human right. Robot Face-Nappies of Nottingham police in the English East Midlands fined one group £11,000 for attending a child’s birthday party. For decades I charted the transformation of law enforcement as genuine, decent officers were replaced with psychopaths and the brain dead who would happily and brutally do whatever their masters told them. Now they were let loose on the public and I would emphasise the point that none of this just happened. The step-by-step change in the dynamic between police and public was orchestrated from the shadows by

those who knew where this was all going and the same with the perceptual reframing of those in all levels of authority and official administration through ‘training courses’ by organisations such as Common Purpose which was created in the late 1980s and given a massive boost in Blair era Britain until it became a global phenomenon. Supposed public ‘servants’ began to view the population as the enemy and the same was true of the police. This was the start of the explosion of behaviour manipulation organisations and networks preparing for the all-war on the human psyche unleashed with the dawn of 2020. I will go into more detail about this later in the book because it is a core part of what is happening.

Police desecrated beauty spots to deter people gathering and arrested women for walking in the countryside alone ‘too far’ from their homes. We had arrogant, clueless sergeants in the Isle of Wight police where I live posting on Facebook what they insisted the population must do or else. A schoolmaster sergeant called Radford looked young enough for me to ask if his mother knew he was out, but he was posting what he *expected* people to do while a Sergeant Wilkinson boasted about fining lads for meeting in a McDonald’s car park where they went to get a lockdown takeaway. Wilkinson added that he had even cancelled their order. What a pair of prats these people are and yet they have increasingly become the norm among Jackboot Johnson’s Yellowshirts once known as the British police. This was the theme all over the world with police savagery common during lockdown protests in the United States, the Netherlands, and the fascist state of Victoria in Australia under its tyrannical and again moronic premier Daniel Andrews. Amazing how tyrannical and moronic tend to work as a team and the same combination could be seen across America as arrogant, narcissistic Woke governors and mayors such as Gavin Newsom (California), Andrew Cuomo (New York), Gretchen Whitmer (Michigan), Lori Lightfoot (Chicago) and Eric Garcetti (Los Angeles) did their Nazi and Stalin impressions with the full support of the compliant brutality of their enforcers in uniform as they arrested small business owners defying

fascist shutdown orders and took them to jail in ankle shackles and handcuffs. This happened to bistro owner Marlena Pavlos-Hackney in Gretchen Whitmer's fascist state of Michigan when police arrived to enforce an order by a state-owned judge for 'putting the community at risk' at a time when other states like Texas were dropping restrictions and migrants were pouring across the southern border without any 'Covid' questions at all. I'm sure there are many officers appalled by what they are ordered to do, but not nearly enough of them. If they were truly appalled they would not do it. As the months passed every opportunity was taken to have the military involved to make their presence on the streets ever more familiar and 'normal' for the longer-term goal of police-military fusion.

Another crucial element to the Hunger Games enforcement network has been encouraging the public to report neighbours and others for 'breaking the lockdown rules'. The group faced with £11,000 in fines at the child's birthday party would have been dobbed-in by a neighbour with a brain the size of a pea. The technique was most famously employed by the Stasi secret police in communist East Germany who had public informants placed throughout the population. A police chief in the UK says his force doesn't need to carry out 'Covid' patrols when they are flooded with so many calls from the public reporting other people for visiting the beach. Dorset police chief James Vaughan said people were so enthusiastic about snitching on their fellow humans they were now operating as an auxiliary arm of the police: 'We are still getting around 400 reports a week from the public, so we will respond to reports ... We won't need to be doing hotspot patrols because people are very quick to pick the phone up and tell us.' Vaughan didn't say that this is a pillar of all tyrannies of whatever complexion and the means to hugely extend the reach of enforcement while spreading distrust among the people and making them wary of doing anything that might get them reported. Those narcissistic Isle of Wight sergeants Radford and Wilkinson never fail to add a link to their Facebook posts where the public can inform on their fellow slaves.

Neither would be self-aware enough to realise they were imitating the Stasi which they might well never have heard of. Government psychologists that I will expose later laid out a policy to turn communities against each other in the same way.

A coincidence? Yep, and I can knit fog

I knew from the start of the alleged pandemic that this was a Cult operation. It presented limitless potential to rapidly advance the Cult agenda and exploit manipulated fear to demand that every man, woman and child on the planet was ‘vaccinated’ in a process never used on humans before which infuses self-replicating *synthetic* material into human cells. Remember the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state. I’ll deal with the ‘vaccine’ (that’s not actually a vaccine) when I focus on the genetic agenda. Enough to say here that mass global ‘vaccination’ justified by this ‘new virus’ set alarms ringing after 30 years of tracking these people and their methods. The ‘Covid’ hoax officially beginning in China was also a big red flag for reasons I will be explaining. The agenda potential was so enormous that I could dismiss any idea that the ‘virus’ appeared naturally. Major happenings with major agenda implications never occur without Cult involvement in making them happen. My questions were twofold in early 2020 as the media began its campaign to induce global fear and hysteria: Was this alleged infectious agent released on purpose by the Cult or did it even exist at all? I then did what I always do in these situations. I sat, observed and waited to see where the evidence and information would take me. By March and early April synchronicity was strongly – and ever more so since then – pointing me in the direction of *there is no ‘virus’*. I went public on that with derision even from swathes of the alternative media that voiced a scenario that the Chinese government released the ‘virus’ in league with Deep State elements in the United States from a top-level bio-lab in Wuhan where the ‘virus’ is said to have first appeared. I looked at that possibility, but I didn’t buy it for several reasons. Deaths from the ‘virus’ did not in any way match what they

would have been with a ‘deadly bioweapon’ and it is much more effective if you sell the *illusion* of an infectious agent rather than having a real one unless you can control through injection who has it and who doesn’t. Otherwise you lose control of events. A made-up ‘virus’ gives you a blank sheet of paper on which you can make it do whatever you like and have any symptoms or mutant ‘variants’ you choose to add while a real infectious agent would limit you to what it actually does. A phantom disease allows you to have endless ludicrous ‘studies’ on the ‘Covid’ dollar to widen the perceived impact by inventing ever more ‘at risk’ groups including one study which said those who walk slowly may be almost four times more likely to die from the ‘virus’. People are in psychiatric wards for less.

A real ‘deadly bioweapon’ can take out people in the hierarchy that are not part of the Cult, but essential to its operation. Obviously they don’t want that. Releasing a real disease means you immediately lose control of it. Releasing an illusory one means you don’t. Again it’s vital that people are extra careful when dealing with what they want to hear. A bioweapon unleashed from a Chinese laboratory in collusion with the American Deep State may fit a conspiracy narrative, but is it true? Would it not be far more effective to use the excuse of a ‘virus’ to justify the real bioweapon – the ‘vaccine’? That way your disease agent does not have to be transmitted and arrives directly through a syringe. I saw a French virologist Luc Montagnier quoted in the alternative media as saying he had discovered that the alleged ‘new’ severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus , or SARS-CoV-2, was made artificially and included elements of the human immunodeficiency ‘virus’ (HIV) and a parasite that causes malaria. SARS-CoV-2 is alleged to trigger an alleged illness called Covid-19. I remembered Montagnier’s name from my research years before into claims that an HIV ‘retrovirus’ causes AIDS – claims that were demolished by Berkeley virologist Peter Duesberg who showed that no one had ever proved that HIV causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or AIDS. Claims that become accepted as fact, publicly and medically, with no proof whatsoever are an ever-recurring story that profoundly applies to

'Covid'. Nevertheless, despite the lack of proof, Montagnier's team at the Pasteur Institute in Paris had a long dispute with American researcher Robert Gallo over which of them discovered and isolated the HIV 'virus' and with *no evidence* found it to cause AIDS. You will see later that there is also no evidence that any 'virus' causes any disease or that there is even such a thing as a 'virus' in the way it is said to exist. The claim to have 'isolated' the HIV 'virus' will be presented in its real context as we come to the shocking story – and it is a story – of SARS-CoV-2 and so will Montagnier's assertion that he identified the full SARS-CoV-2 genome.

Hoax in the making

We can pick up the 'Covid' story in 2010 and the publication by the Rockefeller Foundation of a document called 'Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development'. The inner circle of the Rockefeller family has been serving the Cult since John D. Rockefeller (1839-1937) made his fortune with Standard Oil. It is less well known that the same Rockefeller – the Bill Gates of his day – was responsible for establishing what is now referred to as 'Big Pharma', the global network of pharmaceutical companies that make outrageous profits dispensing scalpel and drug 'medicine' and are obsessed with pumping vaccines in ever-increasing number into as many human arms and backsides as possible. John D. Rockefeller was the driving force behind the creation of the 'education' system in the United States and elsewhere specifically designed to program the perceptions of generations thereafter. The Rockefeller family donated exceptionally valuable land in New York for the United Nations building and were central in establishing the World Health Organization in 1948 as an agency of the UN which was created from the start as a Trojan horse and stalking horse for world government. Now enter Bill Gates. His family and the Rockefellers have long been extremely close and I have seen genealogy which claims that if you go back far enough the two families fuse into the same bloodline. Gates has said that the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation was inspired by the Rockefeller Foundation and why not

when both are serving the same Cult? Major tax-exempt foundations are overwhelmingly criminal enterprises in which Cult assets fund the Cult agenda in the guise of 'philanthropy' while avoiding tax in the process. Cult operatives can become mega-rich in their role of front men and women for the psychopaths at the inner core and they, too, have to be psychopaths to knowingly serve such evil. Part of the deal is that a big percentage of the wealth gleaned from representing the Cult has to be spent advancing the ambitions of the Cult and hence you have the Rockefeller Foundation, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (and so many more) and people like George Soros with his global Open Society Foundations spending their billions in pursuit of global Cult control. Gates is a global public face of the Cult with his interventions in world affairs including Big Tech influence; a central role in the 'Covid' and 'vaccine' scam; promotion of the climate change shakedown; manipulation of education; geoengineering of the skies; and his food-control agenda as the biggest owner of farmland in America, his GMO promotion and through other means. As one writer said: 'Gates monopolizes or wields disproportionate influence over the tech industry, global health and vaccines, agriculture and food policy (including biopiracy and fake food), weather modification and other climate technologies, surveillance, education and media.' The almost limitless wealth secured through Microsoft and other not-allowed-to-fail ventures (including vaccines) has been ploughed into a long, long list of Cult projects designed to enslave the entire human race. Gates and the Rockefellers have been working as one unit with the Rockefeller-established World Health Organization leading global 'Covid' policy controlled by Gates through his mouth-piece Tedros. Gates became the WHO's biggest funder when Trump announced that the American government would cease its donations, but Biden immediately said he would restore the money when he took office in January, 2021. The Gates Foundation (the Cult) owns through limitless funding the world health system and the major players across the globe in the 'Covid' hoax.

Okay, with that background we return to that Rockefeller Foundation document of 2010 headed ‘Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development’ and its ‘imaginary’ epidemic of a virulent and deadly influenza strain which infected 20 percent of the global population and killed eight million in seven months. The Rockefeller scenario was that the epidemic destroyed economies, closed shops, offices and other businesses and led to governments imposing fierce rules and restrictions that included mandatory wearing of face masks and body-temperature checks to enter communal spaces like railway stations and supermarkets. The document predicted that even after the height of the Rockefeller-envisioned epidemic the authoritarian rule would continue to deal with further pandemics, transnational terrorism, environmental crises and rising poverty. Now you may think that the Rockefellers are our modern-day seers or alternatively, and rather more likely, that they well knew what was planned a few years further on. Fascism had to be imposed, you see, to ‘protect citizens from risk and exposure’. The Rockefeller scenario document said:

During the pandemic, national leaders around the world flexed their authority and imposed airtight rules and restrictions, from the mandatory wearing of face masks to body-temperature checks at the entries to communal spaces like train stations and supermarkets. Even after the pandemic faded, this more authoritarian control and oversight of citizens and their activities stuck and even intensified. In order to protect themselves from the spread of increasingly global problems – from pandemics and transnational terrorism to environmental crises and rising poverty – leaders around the world took a firmer grip on power.

At first, the notion of a more controlled world gained wide acceptance and approval. Citizens willingly gave up some of their sovereignty – and their privacy – to more paternalistic states in exchange for greater safety and stability. Citizens were more tolerant, and even eager, for top-down direction and oversight, and national leaders had more latitude to impose order in the ways they saw fit.

In developed countries, this heightened oversight took many forms: biometric IDs for all citizens, for example, and tighter regulation of key industries whose stability was deemed vital to national interests. In many developed countries, enforced cooperation with a suite of new regulations and agreements slowly but steadily restored both order and, importantly, economic growth.

There we have the prophetic Rockefellers in 2010 and three years later came their paper for the Global Health Summit in Beijing, China, when government representatives, the private sector, international organisations and groups met to discuss the next 100 years of 'global health'. The Rockefeller Foundation-funded paper was called 'Dreaming the Future of Health for the Next 100 Years' and more prophecy ensued as it described a dystopian future: 'The abundance of data, digitally tracking and linking people may mean the 'death of privacy' and may replace physical interaction with transient, virtual connection, generating isolation and raising questions of how values are shaped in virtual networks.' Next in the 'Covid' hoax preparation sequence came a 'table top' simulation in 2018 for another 'imaginary' pandemic of a disease called Clade X which was said to kill 900 million people. The exercise was organised by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins University's Center for Health Security in the United States and this is the very same university that has been compiling the disgustingly and systematically erroneous global figures for 'Covid' cases and deaths. Similar Johns Hopkins health crisis scenarios have included the Dark Winter exercise in 2001 and Atlantic Storm in 2005.

Nostradamus 201

For sheer predictive genius look no further prophecy-watchers than the Bill Gates-funded Event 201 held only six weeks before the 'coronavirus pandemic' is supposed to have broken out in China and Event 201 was based on a scenario of a global 'coronavirus pandemic'. Melinda Gates, the great man's missus, told the BBC that he had 'prepared for years' for a coronavirus pandemic which told us what we already knew. Nostradamugates had predicted in a TED talk in 2015 that a pandemic was coming that would kill a lot of people and demolish the world economy. My god, the man is a machine – possibly even literally. Now here he was only weeks before the real thing funding just such a simulated scenario and involving his friends and associates at Johns Hopkins, the World Economic Forum Cult-front of Klaus Schwab, the United Nations,

Johnson & Johnson, major banks, and officials from China and the Centers for Disease Control in the United States. What synchronicity – Johns Hopkins would go on to compile the fraudulent ‘Covid’ figures, the World Economic Forum and Schwab would push the ‘Great Reset’ in response to ‘Covid’, the Centers for Disease Control would be at the forefront of ‘Covid’ policy in the United States, Johnson & Johnson would produce a ‘Covid vaccine’, and everything would officially start just weeks later in China. Spooky, eh? They were even accurate in creating a simulation of a ‘virus’ pandemic because the ‘real thing’ would also be a simulation. Event 201 was not an exercise preparing for something that might happen; it was a rehearsal for what those in control knew was *going* to happen and very shortly. Hours of this simulation were posted on the Internet and the various themes and responses mirrored what would soon be imposed to transform human society. News stories were inserted and what they said would be commonplace a few weeks later with still more prophecy perfection. Much discussion focused on the need to deal with misinformation and the ‘anti-vax movement’ which is exactly what happened when the ‘virus’ arrived – was said to have arrived – in the West.

Cult-owned social media banned criticism and exposure of the official ‘virus’ narrative and when I said there *was* no ‘virus’ in early April, 2020, I was banned by one platform after another including YouTube, Facebook and later Twitter. The mainstream broadcast media in Britain was in effect banned from interviewing me by the Tony-Blair-created government broadcasting censor Ofcom headed by career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes who was appointed just as the ‘virus’ hoax was about to play out in January, 2020. At the same time the Ickonic media platform was using Vimeo, another ultra-Zionist-owned operation, while our own player was being created and they deleted in an instant hundreds of videos, documentaries, series and shows to confirm their unbelievable vindictiveness. We had copies, of course, and they had to be restored one by one when our player was ready. These people have no class. Sabbatian Facebook promised free advertisements for the Gates-

controlled World Health Organization narrative while deleting ‘false claims and conspiracy theories’ to stop ‘misinformation’ about the alleged coronavirus. All these responses could be seen just a short while earlier in the scenarios of Event 201. Extreme censorship was absolutely crucial for the Cult because the official story was so ridiculous and unsupportable by the evidence that it could never survive open debate and the free-flow of information and opinion. If you can’t win a debate then don’t have one is the Cult’s approach throughout history. Facebook’s little boy front man – front boy – Mark Zuckerberg equated ‘credible and accurate information’ with official sources and exposing their lies with ‘misinformation’.

Silencing those that can see

The censorship dynamic of Event 201 is now the norm with an army of narrative-supporting ‘fact-checker’ organisations whose entire reason for being is to tell the public that official narratives are true and those exposing them are lying. One of the most appalling of these ‘fact-checkers’ is called NewsGuard founded by ultra-Zionist Americans Gordon Crovitz and Steven Brill. Crovitz is a former publisher of *The Wall Street Journal*, former Executive Vice President of Dow Jones, a member of the Council on Foreign Relations (CFR), and on the board of the American Association of Rhodes Scholars. The CFR and Rhodes Scholarships, named after Rothschild agent Cecil Rhodes who plundered the gold and diamonds of South Africa for his masters and the Cult, have featured widely in my books. NewsGuard don’t seem to like me for some reason – I really can’t think why – and they have done all they can to have me censored and discredited which is, to quote an old British politician, like being savaged by a dead sheep. They are, however, like all in the censorship network, very well connected and funded by organisations themselves funded by, or connected to, Bill Gates. As you would expect with anything associated with Gates NewsGuard has an offshoot called HealthGuard which ‘fights online health care hoaxes’. How very kind. Somehow the NewsGuard European Managing Director Anna-Sophie Harling, a remarkably young-

looking woman with no broadcasting experience and little hands-on work in journalism, has somehow secured a position on the ‘Content Board’ of UK government broadcast censor Ofcom. An executive of an organisation seeking to discredit dissidents of the official narratives is making decisions for the government broadcast ‘regulator’ about content?? Another appalling ‘fact-checker’ is Full Fact funded by George Soros and global censors Google and Facebook.

It’s amazing how many activists in the ‘fact-checking’, ‘anti-hate’, arena turn up in government-related positions – people like UK Labour Party activist Imran Ahmed who heads the Center for Countering Digital Hate founded by people like Morgan McSweeney, now chief of staff to the Labour Party’s hapless and useless ‘leader’ Keir Starmer. Digital Hate – which is what it really is – uses the American spelling of Center to betray its connection to a transatlantic network of similar organisations which in 2020 shapeshifted from attacking people for ‘hate’ to attacking them for questioning the ‘Covid’ hoax and the dangers of the ‘Covid vaccine’. It’s just a coincidence, you understand. This is one of Imran Ahmed’s hysterical statements: ‘I would go beyond calling anti-vaxxers conspiracy theorists to say they are an extremist group that pose a national security risk.’ No one could ever accuse this prat of understatement and he’s including in that those parents who are now against vaccines after their children were damaged for life or killed by them. He’s such a nice man. Ahmed does the rounds of the Woke media getting soft-ball questions from spineless ‘journalists’ who never ask what right he has to campaign to destroy the freedom of speech of others while he demands it for himself. There also seems to be an overrepresentation in Ofcom of people connected to the narrative-worshipping BBC. This incredible global network of narrative-support was super-vital when the ‘Covid’ hoax was played in the light of the mega-whopper lies that have to be defended from the spotlight cast by the most basic intelligence.

Setting the scene

The Cult plays the long game and proceeds step-by-step ensuring that everything is in place before major cards are played and they don't come any bigger than the 'Covid' hoax. The psychopaths can't handle events where the outcome isn't certain and as little as possible – preferably nothing – is left to chance. Politicians, government and medical officials who would follow direction were brought to illusory power in advance by the Cult web whether on the national stage or others like state governors and mayors of America. For decades the dynamic between officialdom, law enforcement and the public was changed from one of service to one of control and dictatorship. Behaviour manipulation networks established within government were waiting to impose the coming 'Covid' rules and regulations specifically designed to subdue and rewire the psyche of the people in the guise of protecting health. These included in the UK the Behavioural Insights Team part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office; the Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B); and a whole web of intelligence and military groups seeking to direct the conversation on social media and control the narrative. Among them are the cyberwarfare (on the people) 77th Brigade of the British military which is also coordinated through the Cabinet Office as civilian and military leadership continues to combine in what they call the Fusion Doctrine. The 77th Brigade is a British equivalent of the infamous Israeli (Sabbatian) military cyberwarfare and Internet manipulation operation Unit 8200 which I expose at length in *The Trigger*. Also carefully in place were the medical and science advisers to government – many on the payroll past or present of Bill Gates – and a whole alternative structure of unelected government stood by to take control when elected parliaments were effectively closed down once the 'Covid' card was slammed on the table. The structure I have described here and so much more was installed in every major country through the Cult networks. The top-down control hierarchy looks like this: The Cult – Cult-owned Gates – the World Health Organization and Tedros – Gates-funded or controlled chief medical officers and science 'advisers' (dictators) in each country –

political ‘leaders’ – law enforcement – The People. Through this simple global communication and enforcement structure the policy of the Cult could be imposed on virtually the entire human population so long as they acquiesced to the fascism. With everything in place it was time for the button to be pressed in late 2019/early 2020.

These were the prime goals the Cult had to secure for its will to prevail:

- 1) Locking down economies, closing all but designated ‘essential’ businesses (Cult-owned corporations were ‘essential’), and putting the population under house arrest was an imperative to destroy independent income and employment and ensure dependency on the Cult-controlled state in the Hunger Games Society. Lockdowns had to be established as the global blueprint from the start to respond to the ‘virus’ and followed by pretty much the entire world.
- 2) The global population had to be terrified into believing in a deadly ‘virus’ that didn’t actually exist so they would unquestioningly obey authority in the belief that authority must know how best to protect them and their families. Software salesman Gates would suddenly morph into the world’s health expert and be promoted as such by the Cult-owned media.
- 3) A method of testing that wasn’t testing for the ‘virus’, but was only claimed to be, had to be in place to provide the illusion of ‘cases’ and subsequent ‘deaths’ that had a very different cause to the ‘Covid-19’ that would be scribbled on the death certificate.
- 4) Because there was no ‘virus’ and the great majority testing positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ would have no symptoms of anything the lie had to be sold that people without symptoms (without the ‘virus’) could still pass it on to others. This was crucial to justify for the first time quarantining – house arresting – healthy people. Without this the economy-destroying lockdown of *everybody* could not have been credibly sold.
- 5) The ‘saviour’ had to be seen as a vaccine which beyond evil drug companies were working like angels of mercy to develop as quickly as possible, with all corners cut, to save the day. The public must absolutely not know that the ‘vaccine’ had nothing to do with a ‘virus’ or that the contents were ready and waiting with a very different motive long before the ‘Covid’ card was even lifted from the pack.

I said in March, 2020, that the ‘vaccine’ would have been created way ahead of the ‘Covid’ hoax which justified its use and the following December an article in the New York *Intelligencer* magazine said the Moderna ‘vaccine’ had been ‘designed’ by

January, 2020. This was ‘before China had even acknowledged that the disease could be transmitted from human to human, more than a week before the first confirmed coronavirus case in the United States’. The article said that by the time the first American death was announced a month later ‘the vaccine had already been manufactured and shipped to the National Institutes of Health for the beginning of its Phase I clinical trial’. The ‘vaccine’ was actually ‘designed’ long before that although even with this timescale you would expect the article to ask how on earth it could have been done that quickly. Instead it asked why the ‘vaccine’ had not been rolled out then and not months later. Journalism in the mainstream is truly dead. I am going to detail in the next chapter why the ‘virus’ has never existed and how a hoax on that scale was possible, but first the foundation on which the Big Lie of ‘Covid’ was built.

The test that doesn’t test

Fraudulent ‘testing’ is the bottom line of the whole ‘Covid’ hoax and was the means by which a ‘virus’ that did not exist *appeared* to exist. They could only achieve this magic trick by using a test not testing for the ‘virus’. To use a test that *was* testing for the ‘virus’ would mean that every test would come back negative given there was no ‘virus’. They chose to exploit something called the RT-PCR test invented by American biochemist Kary Mullis in the 1980s who said publicly that his PCR test … *cannot detect infectious disease*. Yes, the ‘test’ used worldwide to detect infectious ‘Covid’ to produce all the illusory ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’ compiled by Johns Hopkins and others *cannot detect infectious disease*. This fact came from the mouth of the man who invented PCR and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1993 for doing so. Sadly, and incredibly conveniently for the Cult, Mullis died in August, 2019, at the age of 74 just before his test would be fraudulently used to unleash fascism on the world. He was said to have died from pneumonia which was an irony in itself. A few months later he would have had ‘Covid-19’ on his death certificate. I say the timing of his death was convenient because had he lived Mullis, a brilliant, honest and decent man, would have been

vociferously speaking out against the use of his test to detect 'Covid' when it was never designed, or able, to do that. I know that to be true given that Mullis made the same point when his test was used to 'detect' – not detect – HIV. He had been seriously critical of the Gallo/Montagnier claim to have isolated the HIV 'virus' and shown it to cause AIDS for which Mullis said there was no evidence. AIDS is actually not a disease but a series of diseases from which people die all the time. When they die from those *same diseases* after a positive 'test' for HIV then AIDS goes on their death certificate. I think I've heard that before somewhere. Countries instigated a policy with 'Covid' that anyone who tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' and died of any other cause within 28 days and even longer 'Covid-19' had to go on the death certificate. Cases have come from the test that can't test for infectious disease and the deaths are those who have died of *anything* after testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I'll have much more later about the death certificate scandal.

Mullis was deeply dismissive of the now US 'Covid' star Anthony Fauci who he said was a liar who didn't know anything about anything – 'and I would say that to his face – nothing.' He said of Fauci: 'The man thinks he can take a blood sample, put it in an electron microscope and if it's got a virus in there you'll know it – he doesn't understand electron microscopy and he doesn't understand medicine and shouldn't be in a position like he's in.' That position, terrifyingly, has made him the decider of 'Covid' fascism policy on behalf of the Cult in his role as director since 1984 of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) while his record of being wrong is laughable; but being wrong, so long as it's the *right kind* of wrong, is why the Cult loves him. He'll say anything the Cult tells him to say. Fauci was made Chief Medical Adviser to the President immediately Biden took office. Biden was installed in the White House by Cult manipulation and one of his first decisions was to elevate Fauci to a position of even more control. This is a coincidence? Yes, and I identify as a flamenco dancer called Lola. How does such an incompetent criminal like Fauci remain in that

pivotal position in American health since *the 1980s*? When you serve the Cult it looks after you until you are surplus to requirements. Kary Mullis said prophetically of Fauci and his like: ‘Those guys have an agenda and it’s not an agenda we would like them to have ... they make their own rules, they change them when they want to, and Tony Fauci does not mind going on television in front of the people who pay his salary and lie directly into the camera.’ Fauci has done that almost daily since the ‘Covid’ hoax began. Lying is in Fauci’s DNA. To make the situation crystal clear about the PCR test this is a direct quote from its inventor Kary Mullis:

It [the PCR test] doesn’t tell you that you’re sick and doesn’t tell you that the thing you ended up with was really going to hurt you ...’

Ask yourself why governments and medical systems the world over have been using this very test to decide who is ‘infected’ with the SARS-CoV-2 ‘virus’ and the alleged disease it allegedly causes, ‘Covid-19’. The answer to that question will tell you what has been going on. By the way, here’s a little show-stopper – the ‘new’ SARS-CoV-2 ‘virus’ was ‘identified’ as such right from the start using ... *the PCR test not testing for the ‘virus’*. If you are new to this and find that shocking then stick around. I have hardly started yet. Even worse, other ‘tests’, like the ‘Lateral Flow Device’ (LFD), are considered so useless that they have to be *confirmed* by the PCR test! Leaked emails written by Ben Dyson, adviser to UK ‘Health’ Secretary Matt Hancock, said they were ‘dangerously unreliable’. Dyson, executive director of strategy at the Department of Health, wrote: ‘As of today, someone who gets a positive LFD result in (say) London has at best a 25 per cent chance of it being a true positive, but if it is a self-reported test potentially as low as 10 per cent (on an optimistic assumption about specificity) or as low as 2 per cent (on a more pessimistic assumption).’ These are the ‘tests’ that schoolchildren and the public are being urged to have twice a week or more and have to isolate if they get a positive. Each fake positive goes in the statistics as a ‘case’ no matter how ludicrously inaccurate and the

'cases' drive lockdown, masks and the pressure to 'vaccinate'. The government said in response to the email leak that the 'tests' were accurate which confirmed yet again what shocking bloody liars they are. The real false positive rate is *100 percent* as we'll see. In another 'you couldn't make it up' the UK government agreed to pay £2.8 billion to California's Innova Medical Group to supply the irrelevant lateral flow tests. The company's primary test-making centre is in China. Innova Medical Group, established in March, 2020, is owned by Pasaca Capital Inc, chaired by Chinese-American millionaire Charles Huang who was born in Wuhan.

How it works – and how it doesn't

The RT-PCR test, known by its full title of Polymerase chain reaction, is used across the world to make millions, even billions, of copies of a DNA/RNA genetic information sample. The process is called 'amplification' and means that a tiny sample of genetic material is amplified to bring out the detailed content. I stress that it is not testing for an infectious disease. It is simply amplifying a sample of genetic material. In the words of Kary Mullis: 'PCR is ... just a process that's used to make a whole lot of something out of something.' To emphasise the point companies that make the PCR tests circulated around the world to 'test' for 'Covid' warn on the box that it can't be used to detect 'Covid' or infectious disease and is for research purposes only. It's okay, rest for a minute and you'll be fine. This is the test that produces the 'cases' and 'deaths' that have been used to destroy human society. All those global and national medical and scientific 'experts' demanding this destruction to 'save us' KNOW that the test is not testing for the 'virus' and the cases and deaths they claim to be real are an almost unimaginable fraud. Every one of them and so many others including politicians and psychopaths like Gates and Tedros must be brought before Nuremberg-type trials and jailed for the rest of their lives. The more the genetic sample is amplified by PCR the more elements of that material become sensitive to the test and by that I don't mean sensitive for a 'virus' but for elements of the genetic material which

is naturally in the body or relates to remnants of old conditions of various kinds lying dormant and causing no disease. Once the amplification of the PCR reaches a certain level *everyone* will test positive. So much of the material has been made sensitive to the test that everyone will have some part of it in their body. Even lying criminals like Fauci have said that once PCR amplifications pass 35 cycles everything will be a false positive that cannot be trusted for the reasons I have described. I say, like many proper doctors and scientists, that 100 percent of the ‘positives’ are false, but let’s just go with Fauci for a moment.

He says that any amplification over 35 cycles will produce false positives and yet the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC) and Food and Drug Administration (FDA) have recommended up to 40 cycles and the National Health Service (NHS) in Britain admitted in an internal document for staff that it was using 45 cycles of amplification. A long list of other countries has been doing the same and at least one ‘testing’ laboratory has been using 50 cycles. Have you ever heard a doctor, medical ‘expert’ or the media ask what level of amplification has been used to claim a ‘positive’. The ‘test’ comes back ‘positive’ and so you have the ‘virus’, end of story. Now we can see how the government in Tanzania could send off samples from a goat and a pawpaw fruit under human names and both came back positive for ‘Covid-19’. Tanzania president John Magufuli mocked the ‘Covid’ hysteria, the PCR test and masks and refused to import the DNA-manipulating ‘vaccine’. The Cult hated him and an article sponsored by the Bill Gates Foundation appeared in the London *Guardian* in February, 2021, headed ‘It’s time for Africa to rein in Tanzania’s anti-vaxxer president’. Well, ‘reined in’ he shortly was. Magufuli appeared in good health, but then, in March, 2021, he was dead at 61 from ‘heart failure’. He was replaced by Samia Hassan Suhulu who is connected to Klaus Schwab’s World Economic Forum and she immediately reversed Magufuli’s ‘Covid’ policy. A sample of cola tested positive for ‘Covid’ with the PCR test in Germany while American actress and singer-songwriter Erykah Badu tested positive in one nostril and negative in the other. Footballer Ronaldo called

the PCR test ‘bullshit’ after testing positive three times and being forced to quarantine and miss matches when there was nothing wrong with him. The mantra from Tedros at the World Health Organization and national governments (same thing) has been test, test, test. They know that the more tests they can generate the more fake ‘cases’ they have which go on to become ‘deaths’ in ways I am coming to. The UK government has its Operation Moonshot planned to test multiple millions every day in workplaces and schools with free tests for everyone to use twice a week at home in line with the Cult plan from the start to make testing part of life. A government advertisement for an ‘Interim Head of Asymptomatic Testing Communication’ said the job included responsibility for delivering a ‘communications strategy’ (propaganda) ‘to support the expansion of asymptomatic testing that *“normalises testing as part of everyday life”*. More tests means more fake ‘cases’, ‘deaths’ and fascism. I have heard of, and from, many people who booked a test, couldn’t turn up, and yet got a positive result through the post for a test they’d never even had. The whole thing is crazy, but for the Cult there’s method in the madness. Controlling and manipulating the level of amplification of the test means the authorities can control whenever they want the number of apparent ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’. If they want to justify more fascist lockdown and destruction of livelihoods they keep the amplification high. If they want to give the illusion that lockdowns and the ‘vaccine’ are working then they lower the amplification and ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’ will appear to fall. In January, 2021, the Cult-owned World Health Organization suddenly warned laboratories about over-amplification of the test and to lower the threshold. Suddenly headlines began appearing such as: ‘Why ARE “Covid” cases plummeting?’ This was just when the vaccine rollout was underway and I had predicted months before they would make cases appear to fall through amplification tampering when the ‘vaccine’ came. These people are so predictable.

Cow vaccines?

The question must be asked of what is on the test swabs being poked far up the nose of the population to the base of the brain? A nasal swab punctured one woman's brain and caused it to leak fluid. Most of these procedures are being done by people with little training or medical knowledge. Dr Lorraine Day, former orthopaedic trauma surgeon and Chief of Orthopaedic Surgery at San Francisco General Hospital, says the tests are really a '*vaccine*'. Cows have long been vaccinated this way. She points out that masks have to cover the nose and the mouth where it is claimed the 'virus' exists in saliva. Why then don't they take saliva from the mouth as they do with a DNA test instead of pushing a long swab up the nose towards the brain? The ethmoid bone separates the nasal cavity from the brain and within that bone is the cribriform plate. Dr Day says that when the swab is pushed up against this plate and twisted the procedure is 'depositing things back there'. She claims that among these 'things' are nanoparticles that can enter the brain. Researchers have noted that a team at the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins have designed tiny, star-shaped micro-devices that can latch onto intestinal mucosa and release drugs into the body. Mucosa is the thin skin that covers the inside surface of parts of the body such as *the nose* and mouth and produces mucus to protect them. The Johns Hopkins micro-devices are called 'theragrippers' and were 'inspired' by a parasitic worm that digs its sharp teeth into a host's intestines. Nasal swabs are also coated in the sterilisation agent ethylene oxide. The US National Cancer Institute posts this explanation on its website:

At room temperature, ethylene oxide is a flammable colorless gas with a sweet odor. It is used primarily to produce other chemicals, including antifreeze. In smaller amounts, ethylene oxide is used as a pesticide and a sterilizing agent. The ability of ethylene oxide to damage DNA makes it an effective sterilizing agent but also accounts for its cancer-causing activity.

The Institute mentions lymphoma and leukaemia as cancers most frequently reported to be associated with occupational exposure to ethylene oxide along with stomach and breast cancers. How does anyone think this is going to work out with the constant testing

regime being inflicted on adults and children at home and at school that will accumulate in the body anything that's on the swab?

Doctors know best

It is vital for people to realise that 'hero' doctors 'know' only what the Big Pharma-dominated medical authorities tell them to 'know' and if they refuse to 'know' what they are told to 'know' they are out the door. They are mostly not physicians or healers, but repeaters of the official narrative – or else. I have seen alleged professional doctors on British television make shocking statements that we are supposed to take seriously. One called 'Dr' Amir Khan, who is actually telling patients how to respond to illness, said that men could take the birth pill to 'help slow down the effects of Covid-19'. In March, 2021, another ridiculous 'Covid study' by an American doctor proposed injecting men with the female sex hormone progesterone as a 'Covid' treatment. British doctor Nighat Arif told the BBC that face coverings were now going to be part of ongoing normal. Yes, the vaccine protects you, she said (evidence?) ... but the way to deal with viruses in the community was always going to come down to hand washing, face covering and keeping a physical distance. That's not what we were told before the 'vaccine' was circulating. Arif said she couldn't imagine ever again going on the underground or in a lift without a mask. I was just thanking my good luck that she was not my doctor when she said – in March, 2021 – that if 'we are *behaving* and we are doing all the right things' she thought we could 'have our nearest and dearest around us at home ... around *Christmas* and *New Year!*' Her patronising delivery was the usual school teacher talking to six-year-olds as she repeated every government talking point and probably believed them all. If we have learned anything from the 'Covid' experience surely it must be that humanity's perception of doctors needs a fundamental rethink. NHS 'doctor' Sara Kayat told her television audience that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Not even Big Pharma claimed that. We have to stop taking 'experts' at their word without question when so many of them are

clueless and only repeating the party line on which their careers depend. That is not to say there are not brilliant doctors – there are and I have spoken to many of them since all this began – but you won't see them in the mainstream media or quoted by the psychopaths and yes-people in government.

Remember the name – Christian Drosten

German virologist Christian Drosten, Director of Charité Institute of Virology in Berlin, became a national star after the pandemic hoax began. He was feted on television and advised the German government on 'Covid' policy. Most importantly to the wider world Drosten led a group that produced the 'Covid' testing protocol for the PCR test. What a remarkable feat given the PCR cannot test for infectious disease and even more so when you think that Drosten said that his method of testing for SARS-CoV-2 was developed 'without having virus material available'. *He developed a test for a 'virus' that he didn't have and had never seen.* Let that sink in as you survey the global devastation that came from what he did. The whole catastrophe of Drosten's 'test' was based on the alleged genetic sequence published by Chinese scientists on the Internet. We will see in the next chapter that this alleged 'genetic sequence' has never been produced by China or anyone and cannot be when there is no SARS-CoV-2. Drosten, however, doesn't seem to let little details like that get in the way. He was the lead author with Victor Corman from the same Charité Hospital of the paper 'Detection of 2019 novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV) by real-time PCR' published in a magazine called *Eurosurveillance*. This became known as the Corman-Drosten paper. In November, 2020, with human society devastated by the effects of the Corman-Drosten test baloney, the protocol was publicly challenged by 22 international scientists and independent researchers from Europe, the United States, and Japan. Among them were senior molecular geneticists, biochemists, immunologists, and microbiologists. They produced a document headed 'External peer review of the RTPCR test to detect SARS-Cov-2 Reveals 10 Major Flaws At The Molecular and Methodological Level: Consequences

For False-Positive Results'. The flaws in the Corman-Drosten test included the following:

- The test is non-specific because of erroneous design
- Results are enormously variable
- The test is unable to discriminate between the whole 'virus' and viral fragments
- It doesn't have positive or negative controls
- The test lacks a standard operating procedure
- It is unsupported by proper peer view

The scientists said the PCR 'Covid' testing protocol was not founded on science and they demanded the Corman-Drosten paper be retracted by *Eurosurveillance*. They said all present and previous Covid deaths, cases, and 'infection rates' should be subject to a massive retroactive inquiry. Lockdowns and travel restrictions should be reviewed and relaxed and those diagnosed through PCR to have 'Covid-19' should not be forced to isolate. Dr Kevin Corbett, a health researcher and nurse educator with a long academic career producing a stream of peer-reviewed publications at many UK universities, made the same point about the PCR test debacle. He said of the scientists' conclusions: 'Every scientific rationale for the development of that test has been totally destroyed by this paper. It's like Hiroshima/Nagasaki to the Covid test.' He said that China hadn't given them an isolated 'virus' when Drosten developed the test. Instead they had developed the test from *a sequence in a gene bank.*' Put another way ... *they made it up!* The scientists were supported in this contention by a Portuguese appeals court which ruled in November, 2020, that PCR tests are unreliable and it is unlawful to quarantine people based solely on a PCR test. The point about China not providing an isolated virus must be true when the 'virus' has never been isolated to this day and the consequences of that will become clear. Drosten and company produced this useless 'protocol' right on cue in January, 2020, just as the 'virus' was said to

be moving westward and it somehow managed to successfully pass a peer-review in 24 hours. In other words there was no peer-review for a test that would be used to decide who had 'Covid' and who didn't across the world. The Cult-created, Gates-controlled World Health Organization immediately recommended all its nearly 200 member countries to use the Drosten PCR protocol to detect 'cases' and 'deaths'. The sting was underway and it continues to this day.

So who is this Christian Drosten that produced the means through which death, destruction and economic catastrophe would be justified? His education background, including his doctoral thesis, would appear to be somewhat shrouded in mystery and his track record is dire as with another essential player in the 'Covid' hoax, the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London of whom more shortly. Drosten predicted in 2003 that the alleged original SARS 'virus' (SARS-1') was an epidemic that could have serious effects on economies and an effective vaccine would take at least two years to produce. Drosten's answer to every alleged 'outbreak' is a vaccine which you won't be shocked to know. What followed were just 774 official deaths worldwide and none in Germany where there were only nine cases. That is even if you believe there ever was a SARS 'virus' when the evidence is zilch and I will expand on this in the next chapter. Drosten claims to be co-discoverer of 'SARS-1' and developed a test for it in 2003. He was screaming warnings about 'swine flu' in 2009 and how it was a widespread infection far more severe than any dangers from a vaccine could be and people should get vaccinated. It would be helpful for Drosten's vocal chords if he simply recorded the words 'the virus is deadly and you need to get vaccinated' and copies could be handed out whenever the latest made-up threat comes along. Drosten's swine flu epidemic never happened, but Big Pharma didn't mind with governments spending hundreds of millions on vaccines that hardly anyone bothered to use and many who did wished they hadn't. A study in 2010 revealed that the risk of dying from swine flu, or H1N1, was no higher than that of the annual seasonal flu which is what at least most of 'it' really was as in

the case of 'Covid-19'. A media investigation into Drosten asked how with such a record of inaccuracy he could be *the* government adviser on these issues. The answer to that question is the same with Drosten, Ferguson and Fauci – they keep on giving the authorities the 'conclusions' and 'advice' they want to hear. Drosten certainly produced the goods for them in January, 2020, with his PCR protocol garbage and provided the foundation of what German internal medicine specialist Dr Claus Köhnlein, co-author of *Virus Mania*, called the 'test pandemic'. The 22 scientists in the *Eurosurveillance* challenge called out conflicts of interest within the Drosten 'protocol' group and with good reason. Olfert Landt, a regular co-author of Drosten 'studies', owns the biotech company TIB Molbiol Syntheselabor GmbH in Berlin which manufactures and sells the tests that Drosten and his mates come up with. They have done this with SARS, Enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC), MERS, Zika 'virus', yellow fever, and now 'Covid'. Landt told the *Berliner Zeitung* newspaper:

The testing, design and development came from the Charité [Drosten and Corman]. We simply implemented it immediately in the form of a kit. And if we don't have the virus, which originally only existed in Wuhan, we can make a synthetic gene to simulate the genome of the virus. That's what we did very quickly.

This is more confirmation that the Drosten test was designed without access to the 'virus' and only a synthetic simulation which is what SARS-CoV-2 really is – a computer-generated synthetic fiction. It's quite an enterprise they have going here. A Drosten team decides what the test for something should be and Landt's biotech company flogs it to governments and medical systems across the world. His company must have made an absolute fortune since the 'Covid' hoax began. Dr Reiner Fuellmich, a prominent German consumer protection trial lawyer in Germany and California, is on Drosten's case and that of Tedros at the World Health Organization for crimes against humanity with a class-action lawsuit being prepared in the United States and other legal action in Germany.

Why China?

Scamming the world with a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist would seem impossible on the face of it, but not if you have control of the relatively few people that make policy decisions and the great majority of the global media. Remember it’s not about changing ‘real’ reality it’s about controlling *perception* of reality. You don’t have to make something happen you only have to make people *believe* that it’s happening. Renegade Minds understand this and are therefore much harder to swindle. ‘Covid-19’ is not a ‘real’ ‘virus’. It’s a mind virus, like a computer virus, which has infected the minds, not the bodies, of billions. It all started, publically at least, in China and that alone is of central significance. The Cult was behind the revolution led by its asset Mao Zedong, or Chairman Mao, which established the People’s Republic of China on October 1st, 1949. It should have been called The Cult’s Republic of China, but the name had to reflect the recurring illusion that vicious dictatorships are run by and for the people (see all the ‘Democratic Republics’ controlled by tyrants). In the same way we have the ‘Biden’ Democratic Republic of America officially ruled by a puppet tyrant (at least temporarily) on behalf of Cult tyrants. The creation of Mao’s merciless communist/fascist dictatorship was part of a frenzy of activity by the Cult at the conclusion of World War Two which, like the First World War, it had instigated through its assets in Germany, Britain, France, the United States and elsewhere. Israel was formed in 1948; the Soviet Union expanded its ‘Iron Curtain’ control, influence and military power with the Warsaw Pact communist alliance in 1955; the United Nations was formed in 1945 as a Cult precursor to world government; and a long list of world bodies would be established including the World Health Organization (1948), World Trade Organization (1948 under another name until 1995), International Monetary Fund (1945) and World Bank (1944). Human society was redrawn and hugely centralised in the global Problem-Reaction-Solution that was World War Two. All these changes were significant. Israel would become the headquarters of the Sabbatians

and the revolution in China would prepare the ground and control system for the events of 2019/2020.

Renegade Minds know there are no borders except for public consumption. The Cult is a seamless, borderless global entity and to understand the game we need to put aside labels like borders, nations, countries, communism, fascism and democracy. These delude the population into believing that countries are ruled within their borders by a government of whatever shade when these are mere agencies of a global power. America's illusion of democracy and China's communism/fascism are subsidiaries – vehicles – for the same agenda. We may hear about conflict and competition between America and China and on the lower levels that will be true; but at the Cult level they are branches of the same company in the way of the McDonald's example I gave earlier. I have tracked in the books over the years support by US governments of both parties for Chinese Communist Party infiltration of American society through allowing the sale of land, even military facilities, and the acquisition of American business and university influence. All this is underpinned by the infamous stealing of intellectual property and technological know-how. Cult-owned Silicon Valley corporations waive their fraudulent 'morality' to do business with human-rights-free China; Cult-controlled Disney has become China's PR department; and China in effect owns 'American' sports such as basketball which depends for much of its income on Chinese audiences. As a result any sports player, coach or official speaking out against China's horrific human rights record is immediately condemned or fired by the China-worshipping National Basketball Association. One of the first acts of China-controlled Biden was to issue an executive order telling federal agencies to stop making references to the 'virus' by the 'geographic location of its origin'. Long-time Congressman Jerry Nadler warned that criticising China, America's biggest rival, leads to hate crimes against Asian people in the United States. So shut up you bigot. China is fast closing in on Israel as a country that must not be criticised which is apt, really, given that Sabbatians control them both. The two countries have

developed close economic, military, technological and strategic ties which include involvement in China's 'Silk Road' transport and economic initiative to connect China with Europe. Israel was the first country in the Middle East to recognise the establishment of Mao's tyranny in 1950 months after it was established.

Project Wuhan – the 'Covid' Psyop

I emphasise again that the Cult plays the long game and what is happening to the world today is the result of centuries of calculated manipulation following a script to take control step-by-step of every aspect of human society. I will discuss later the common force behind all this that has spanned those centuries and thousands of years if the truth be told. Instigating the Mao revolution in China in 1949 with a 2020 'pandemic' in mind is not only how they work – the 71 years between them is really quite short by the Cult's standards of manipulation preparation. The reason for the Cult's Chinese revolution was to create a fiercely-controlled environment within which an extreme structure for human control could be incubated to eventually be unleashed across the world. We have seen this happen since the 'pandemic' emerged from China with the Chinese control-structure founded on AI technology and tyrannical enforcement sweep across the West. Until the moment when the Cult went for broke in the West and put its fascism on public display Western governments had to pay some lip-service to freedom and democracy to not alert too many people to the tyranny-in-the-making. Freedoms were more subtly eroded and power centralised with covert government structures put in place waiting for the arrival of 2020 when that smokescreen of 'freedom' could be dispensed with. The West was not able to move towards tyranny before 2020 anything like as fast as China which was created as a tyranny and had no limits on how fast it could construct the Cult's blueprint for global control. When the time came to impose that structure on the world it was the same Cult-owned Chinese communist/fascist government that provided the excuse – the 'Covid pandemic'. It was absolutely crucial to the Cult plan for the Chinese response to the 'pandemic' –

draconian lockdowns of the entire population – to become the blueprint that Western countries would follow to destroy the livelihoods and freedom of their people. This is why the Cult-owned, Gates-owned, WHO Director-General Tedros said early on:

The Chinese government is to be congratulated for the extraordinary measures it has taken to contain the outbreak. China is actually setting a new standard for outbreak response and it is not an exaggeration.

Forbes magazine said of China: ‘... those measures protected untold millions from getting the disease’. The Rockefeller Foundation ‘epidemic scenario’ document in 2010 said ‘prophetically’:

However, a few countries did fare better – China in particular. The Chinese government’s quick imposition and enforcement of mandatory quarantine for all citizens, as well as its instant and near-hermetic sealing off of all borders, saved millions of lives, stopping the spread of the virus far earlier than in other countries and enabling a swifter post-pandemic recovery.

Once again – *spooky*.

The first official story was the ‘bat theory’ or rather the bat diversion. The source of the ‘virus outbreak’ we were told was a “wet market” in Wuhan where bats and other animals are bought and eaten in horrifically unhygienic conditions. Then another story emerged through the alternative media that the ‘virus’ had been released on purpose or by accident from a BSL-4 (biosafety level 4) laboratory in Wuhan not far from the wet market. The lab was reported to create and work with lethal concoctions and bioweapons. Biosafety level 4 is the highest in the World Health Organization system of safety and containment. Renegade Minds are aware of what I call designer manipulation. The ideal for the Cult is for people to buy its prime narrative which in the opening salvos of the ‘pandemic’ was the wet market story. It knows, however, that there is now a considerable worldwide alternative media of researchers sceptical of anything governments say and they are often given a version of events in a form they can perceive as credible while misdirecting them from the real truth. In this case let them

think that the conspiracy involved is a ‘bioweapon virus’ released from the Wuhan lab to keep them from the real conspiracy – *there is no ‘virus’*. The WHO’s current position on the source of the outbreak at the time of writing appears to be: ‘We haven’t got a clue, mate.’ This is a good position to maintain mystery and bewilderment. The inner circle will know where the ‘virus’ came from – *nowhere*. The bottom line was to ensure the public believed there *was* a ‘virus’ and it didn’t much matter if they thought it was natural or had been released from a lab. The belief that there was a ‘deadly virus’ was all that was needed to trigger global panic and fear. The population was terrified into handing their power to authority and doing what they were told. They had to or they were ‘all gonna die’.

In March, 2020, information began to come my way from real doctors and scientists and my own additional research which had my intuition screaming: ‘Yes, that’s it! *There is no virus.*’ The ‘bioweapon’ was not the ‘virus’; it was the ‘vaccine’ already being talked about that would be the bioweapon. My conclusion was further enhanced by happenings in Wuhan. The ‘virus’ was said to be sweeping the city and news footage circulated of people collapsing in the street (which they’ve never done in the West with the same ‘virus’). The Chinese government was building ‘new hospitals’ in a matter of ten days to ‘cope with demand’ such was the virulent nature of the ‘virus’. Yet in what seemed like no time the ‘new hospitals’ closed – even if they even opened – and China declared itself ‘virus-free’. It was back to business as usual. This was more propaganda to promote the Chinese draconian lockdowns in the West as the way to ‘beat the virus’. Trouble was that we subsequently had lockdown after lockdown, but never business as usual. As the people of the West and most of the rest of the world were caught in an ever-worsening spiral of lockdown, social distancing, masks, isolated old people, families forced apart, and livelihood destruction, it was party-time in Wuhan. Pictures emerged of thousands of people enjoying pool parties and concerts. It made no sense until you realised there never was a ‘virus’ and the

whole thing was a Cult set-up to transform human society out of one its major global strongholds – China.

How is it possible to deceive virtually the entire world population into believing there is a deadly virus when there is not even a ‘virus’ let alone a deadly one? It’s nothing like as difficult as you would think and that’s clearly true because it happened.

Postscript: See end of book Postscript for more on the ‘Wuhan lab virus release’ story which the authorities and media were pushing heavily in the summer of 2021 to divert attention from the truth that the ‘Covid virus’ is pure invention.

CHAPTER FIVE

There is no ‘virus’

You can fool some of the people all of the time, and all of the people some of the time, but you cannot fool all of the people all of the time

Abraham Lincoln

The greatest form of mind control is repetition. The more you repeat the same mantra of alleged ‘facts’ the more will accept them to be true. It becomes an ‘everyone knows that, mate’. If you can also censor any other version or alternative to your alleged ‘facts’ you are pretty much home and cooking.

By the start of 2020 the Cult owned the global mainstream media almost in its entirety to spew out its ‘Covid’ propaganda and ignore or discredit any other information and view. Cult-owned social media platforms in Cult-owned Silicon Valley were poised and ready to unleash a campaign of ferocious censorship to obliterate all but the official narrative. To complete the circle many demands for censorship by Silicon Valley were led by the mainstream media as ‘journalists’ became full-out enforcers for the Cult both as propagandists and censors. Part of this has been the influx of young people straight out of university who have become ‘journalists’ in significant positions. They have no experience and a headful of programmed perceptions from their years at school and university at a time when today’s young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in known human history given the insidious impact of technology. They enter the media perceptually prepared and ready to repeat the narratives of the system that programmed them to

repeat its narratives. The BBC has a truly pathetic ‘specialist disinformation reporter’ called Marianna Spring who fits this bill perfectly. She is clueless about the world, how it works and what is really going on. Her role is to discredit anyone doing the job that a proper journalist would do and system-serving hacks like Spring wouldn’t dare to do or even see the need to do. They are too busy licking the arse of authority which can never be wrong and, in the case of the BBC propaganda programme, *Panorama*, contacting payments systems such as PayPal to have a donations page taken down for a film company making documentaries questioning vaccines. Even the BBC soap opera *EastEnders* included a disgracefully biased scene in which an inarticulate white working class woman was made to look foolish for questioning the ‘vaccine’ while a well-spoken black man and Asian woman promoted the government narrative. It ticked every BBC box and the fact that the black and minority community was resisting the ‘vaccine’ had nothing to do with the way the scene was written. The BBC has become a disgusting tyrannical propaganda and censorship operation that should be defunded and disbanded and a free media take its place with a brief to stop censorship instead of demanding it. A BBC ‘interview’ with Gates goes something like: ‘Mr Gates, sir, if I can call you sir, would you like to tell our audience why you are such a great man, a wonderful humanitarian philanthropist, and why you should absolutely be allowed as a software salesman to decide health policy for approaching eight billion people? Thank you, sir, please sir.’ Propaganda programming has been incessant and merciless and when all you hear is the same story from the media, repeated by those around you who have only heard the same story, is it any wonder that people on a grand scale believe absolute mendacious garbage to be true? You are about to see, too, why this level of information control is necessary when the official ‘Covid’ narrative is so nonsensical and unsupportable by the evidence.

Structure of Deceit

The pyramid structure through which the ‘Covid’ hoax has been manifested is very simple and has to be to work. As few people as possible have to be involved with full knowledge of what they are doing – and why – or the real story would get out. At the top of the pyramid are the inner core of the Cult which controls Bill Gates who, in turn, controls the World Health Organization through his pivotal funding and his puppet Director-General mouthpiece, Tedros.

Before he was appointed Tedros was chair of the Gates-founded Global Fund to ‘fight against AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria’, a board member of the Gates-funded ‘vaccine alliance’ GAVI, and on the board of another Gates-funded organisation. Gates owns him and picked him for a specific reason – Tedros is a crook and worse. ‘Dr’ Tedros (he’s not a medical doctor, the first WHO chief not to be) was a member of the tyrannical Marxist government of Ethiopia for decades with all its human rights abuses. He has faced allegations of corruption and misappropriation of funds and was exposed three times for covering up cholera epidemics while Ethiopia’s health minister. Tedros appointed the mass-murdering genocidal Zimbabwe dictator Robert Mugabe as a WHO goodwill ambassador for public health which, as with Tedros, is like appointing a psychopath to run a peace and love campaign. The move was so ridiculous that he had to drop Mugabe in the face of widespread condemnation. American economist David Steinman, a Nobel peace prize nominee, lodged a complaint with the International Criminal Court in The Hague over alleged genocide by Tedros when he was Ethiopia’s foreign minister. Steinman says Tedros was a ‘crucial decision maker’ who directed the actions of Ethiopia’s security forces from 2013 to 2015 and one of three officials in charge when those security services embarked on the ‘killing’ and ‘torturing’ of Ethiopians. You can see where Tedros is coming from and it’s sobering to think that he has been the vehicle for Gates and the Cult to direct the global response to ‘Covid’. Think about that. A psychopathic Cult dictates to psychopath Gates who dictates to psychopath Tedros who dictates how countries of the world must respond to a ‘Covid virus’ never scientifically shown to exist. At the same time psychopathic Cult-owned Silicon Valley information

giants like Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter announced very early on that they would give the Cult/Gates/Tedros/WHO version of the narrative free advertising and censor those who challenged their intelligence-insulting, mendacious story.

The next layer in the global ‘medical’ structure below the Cult, Gates and Tedros are the chief medical officers and science ‘advisers’ in each of the WHO member countries which means virtually all of them. Medical officers and arbiters of science (they’re not) then take the WHO policy and recommended responses and impose them on their country’s population while the political ‘leaders’ say they are deciding policy (they’re clearly not) by ‘following the science’ on the advice of the ‘experts’ – the same medical officers and science ‘advisers’ (dictators). In this way with the rarest of exceptions the entire world followed the same policy of lockdown, people distancing, masks and ‘vaccines’ dictated by the psychopathic Cult, psychopathic Gates and psychopathic Tedros who we are supposed to believe give a damn about the health of the world population they are seeking to enslave. That, amazingly, is all there is to it in terms of crucial decision-making. Medical staff in each country then follow like sheep the dictates of the shepherds at the top of the national medical hierarchies – chief medical officers and science ‘advisers’ who themselves follow like sheep the shepherds of the World Health Organization and the Cult. Shepherds at the national level often have major funding and other connections to Gates and his Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation which carefully hands out money like confetti at a wedding to control the entire global medical system from the WHO down.

Follow the money

Christopher Whitty, Chief Medical Adviser to the UK Government at the centre of ‘virus’ policy, a senior adviser to the government’s Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE), and Executive Board member of the World Health Organization, was gifted a grant of \$40 million by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation for malaria research in Africa. The BBC described the unelected Whitty as ‘the

official who will probably have the greatest impact on our everyday lives of any individual policymaker in modern times' and so it turned out. What Gates and Tedros have said Whitty has done like his equivalents around the world. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of Big Pharma giant GlaxoSmithKline with its fundamental financial and business connections to Bill Gates. In September, 2020, it was revealed that Vallance owned a deferred bonus of shares in GlaxoSmithKline worth £600,000 while the company was 'developing' a 'Covid vaccine'. Move along now – nothing to see here – what could possibly be wrong with that? Imperial College in London, a major player in 'Covid' policy in Britain and elsewhere with its 'Covid-19' Response Team, is funded by Gates and has big connections to China while the now infamous Professor Neil Ferguson, the useless 'computer modeller' at Imperial College is also funded by Gates. Ferguson delivered the dramatically inaccurate excuse for the first lockdowns (much more in the next chapter). The Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (IHME) in the United States, another source of outrageously false 'Covid' computer models to justify lockdowns, is bankrolled by Gates who is a vehement promotor of lockdowns. America's version of Whitty and Vallance, the again now infamous Anthony Fauci, has connections to 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna as does Bill Gates through funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Fauci is director of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), a major recipient of Gates money, and they are very close. Deborah Birx who was appointed White House Coronavirus Response Coordinator in February, 2020, is yet another with ties to Gates. Everywhere you look at the different elements around the world behind the coordination and decision making of the 'Covid' hoax there is Bill Gates and his money. They include the World Health Organization; Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in the United States; National Institutes of Health (NIH) of Anthony Fauci; Imperial College and Neil Ferguson; the London School of Hygiene where Chris Whitty worked; Regulatory agencies like the UK Medicines & Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)

which gave emergency approval for ‘Covid vaccines’; Wellcome Trust; GAVI, the Vaccine Alliance; the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI); Johns Hopkins University which has compiled the false ‘Covid’ figures; and the World Economic Forum. A [Nationalfile.com](#) article said:

Gates has a lot of pull in the medical world, he has a multi-million dollar relationship with Dr. Fauci, and Fauci originally took the Gates line supporting vaccines and casting doubt on [the drug hydroxychloroquine]. Coronavirus response team member Dr. Deborah Birx, appointed by former president Obama to serve as United States Global AIDS Coordinator, also sits on the board of a group that has received billions from Gates’ foundation, and Birx reportedly used a disputed Bill Gates-funded model for the White House’s Coronavirus effort. Gates is a big proponent for a population lockdown scenario for the Coronavirus outbreak.

Another funder of Moderna is the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the technology-development arm of the Pentagon and one of the most sinister organisations on earth. DARPA had a major role with the CIA covert technology-funding operation In-Q-Tel in the development of Google and social media which is now at the centre of global censorship. Fauci and Gates are extremely close and openly admit to talking regularly about ‘Covid’ policy, but then why wouldn’t Gates have a seat at every national ‘Covid’ table after his Foundation committed \$1.75 billion to the ‘fight against Covid-19’. When passed through our Orwellian Translation Unit this means that he has bought and paid for the Cult-driven ‘Covid’ response worldwide. Research the major ‘Covid’ response personnel in your own country and you will find the same Gates funding and other connections again and again. Medical and science chiefs following World Health Organization ‘policy’ sit atop a medical hierarchy in their country of administrators, doctors and nursing staff. These ‘subordinates’ are told they must work and behave in accordance with the policy delivered from the ‘top’ of the national ‘health’ pyramid which is largely the policy delivered by the WHO which is the policy delivered by Gates and the Cult. The whole ‘Covid’ narrative has been imposed on medical staff by a climate of fear although great numbers don’t even need that to comply. They do so through breathtaking levels of ignorance and

include doctors who go through life simply repeating what Big Pharma and their hierarchical masters tell them to say and believe. No wonder Big Pharma ‘medicine’ is one of the biggest killers on Planet Earth.

The same top-down system of intimidation operates with regard to the Cult Big Pharma cartel which also dictates policy through national and global medical systems in this way. The Cult and Big Pharma agendas are the same because the former controls and owns the latter. ‘Health’ administrators, doctors, and nursing staff are told to support and parrot the dictated policy or they will face consequences which can include being fired. How sad it’s been to see medical staff meekly repeating and imposing Cult policy without question and most of those who can see through the deceit are only willing to speak anonymously off the record. They know what will happen if their identity is known. This has left the courageous few to expose the lies about the ‘virus’, face masks, overwhelmed hospitals that aren’t, and the dangers of the ‘vaccine’ that isn’t a vaccine. When these medical professionals and scientists, some renowned in their field, have taken to the Internet to expose the truth their articles, comments and videos have been deleted by Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter and YouTube. What a real head-shaker to see YouTube videos with leading world scientists and highly qualified medical specialists with an added link underneath to the notorious Cult propaganda website *Wikipedia* to find the ‘facts’ about the same subject.

HIV – the ‘Covid’ trial-run

I’ll give you an example of the consequences for health and truth that come from censorship and unquestioning belief in official narratives. The story was told by PCR inventor Kary Mullis in his book *Dancing Naked in the Mind Field*. He said that in 1984 he accepted as just another scientific fact that Luc Montagnier of France’s Pasteur Institute and Robert Gallo of America’s National Institutes of Health had independently discovered that a ‘retrovirus’ dubbed HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) caused AIDS. They

were, after all, Mullis writes, specialists in retroviruses. This is how the medical and science pyramids work. Something is announced or *assumed* and then becomes an everybody-knows-that purely through repetition of the assumption as if it is fact. Complete crap becomes accepted truth with no supporting evidence and only repetition of the crap. This is how a 'virus' that doesn't exist became the 'virus' that changed the world. The HIV-AIDS fairy story became a multi-billion pound industry and the media poured out propaganda terrifying the world about the deadly HIV 'virus' that caused the lethal AIDS. By then Mullis was working at a lab in Santa Monica, California, to detect retroviruses with his PCR test in blood donations received by the Red Cross. In doing so he asked a virologist where he could find a reference for HIV being the cause of AIDS. 'You don't need a reference,' the virologist said ... '*Everybody knows it.*' Mullis said he wanted to quote a reference in the report he was doing and he said he felt a little funny about not knowing the source of such an important discovery when everyone else seemed to. The virologist suggested he cite a report by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) on morbidity and mortality. Mullis read the report, but it only said that an organism had been identified and did not say how. The report did not identify the original scientific work. Physicians, however, *assumed* (key recurring theme) that if the CDC was convinced that HIV caused AIDS then proof must exist. Mullis continues:

I did computer searches. Neither Montagnier, Gallo, nor anyone else had published papers describing experiments which led to the conclusion that HIV probably caused AIDS. I read the papers in Science for which they had become well known as AIDS doctors, but all they had said there was that they had found evidence of a past infection by something which was probably HIV in some AIDS patients.

They found antibodies. Antibodies to viruses had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease. Antibodies signaled that the virus had been defeated. The patient had saved himself. There was no indication in these papers that this virus caused a disease. They didn't show that everybody with the antibodies had the disease. In fact they found some healthy people with antibodies.

Mullis asked why their work had been published if Montagnier and Gallo hadn't really found this evidence, and why had they been fighting so hard to get credit for the discovery? He says he was hesitant to write 'HIV is the probable cause of AIDS' until he found published evidence to support that. 'Tens of thousands of scientists and researchers were spending billions of dollars a year doing research based on this idea,' Mullis writes. 'The reason had to be there somewhere; otherwise these people would not have allowed their research to settle into one narrow channel of investigation.' He said he lectured about PCR at numerous meetings where people were always talking about HIV and he asked them how they knew that HIV was the cause of AIDS:

Everyone said something. Everyone had the answer at home, in the office, in some drawer. They all knew, and they would send me the papers as soon as they got back. But I never got any papers. Nobody ever sent me the news about how AIDS was caused by HIV.

Eventually Mullis was able to ask Montagnier himself about the reference proof when he lectured in San Diego at the grand opening of the University of California AIDS Research Center. Mullis says this was the last time he would ask his question without showing anger. Montagnier said he should reference the CDC report. 'I read it', Mullis said, and it didn't answer the question. 'If Montagnier didn't know the answer who the hell did?' Then one night Mullis was driving when an interview came on National Public Radio with Peter Duesberg, a prominent virologist at Berkeley and a California Scientist of the Year. Mullis says he finally understood why he could not find references that connected HIV to AIDS – *there weren't any!* No one had ever proved that HIV causes AIDS even though it had spawned a multi-billion pound global industry and the media was repeating this as fact every day in their articles and broadcasts terrifying the shit out of people about AIDS and giving the impression that a positive test for HIV (see 'Covid') was a death sentence. Duesberg was a threat to the AIDS gravy train and the agenda that underpinned it. He was therefore abused and castigated after he told the Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences

there was no good evidence implicating the new ‘virus’. Editors rejected his manuscripts and his research funds were deleted. Mullis points out that the CDC has defined AIDS as one of more than 30 diseases *if accompanied* by a positive result on a test that detects antibodies to HIV; but those same diseases are not defined as AIDS cases when antibodies are not detected:

If an HIV-positive woman develops uterine cancer, for example, she is considered to have AIDS. If she is not HIV positive, she simply has uterine cancer. An HIV-positive man with tuberculosis has AIDS; if he tests negative he simply has tuberculosis. If he lives in Kenya or Colombia, where the test for HIV antibodies is too expensive, he is simply presumed to have the antibodies and therefore AIDS, and therefore he can be treated in the World Health Organization’s clinic. It’s the only medical help available in some places. And it’s free, because the countries that support WHO are worried about AIDS.

Mullis accuses the CDC of continually adding new diseases (see ever more ‘Covid symptoms’) to the grand AIDS definition and of virtually doctoring the books to make it appear as if the disease continued to spread. He cites how in 1993 the CDC enormously broadened its AIDS definition and county health authorities were delighted because they received \$2,500 per year from the Federal government for every reported AIDS case. Ladies and gentlemen, I have just described, via Kary Mullis, the ‘Covid pandemic’ of 2020 and beyond. Every element is the same and it’s been pulled off in the same way by the same networks.

The ‘Covid virus’ exists? Okay – prove it. Er ... still waiting

What Kary Mullis described with regard to ‘HIV’ has been repeated with ‘Covid’. A claim is made that a new, or ‘novel’, infection has been found and the entire medical system of the world repeats that as fact exactly as they did with HIV and AIDS. No one in the mainstream asks rather relevant questions such as ‘How do you know?’ and ‘Where is your proof?’ The SARS-CoV-2 ‘virus’ and the ‘Covid-19 disease’ became an overnight ‘everybody-knows-that’. The origin could be debated and mulled over, but what you could not suggest was that ‘SARS-CoV-2’ didn’t exist. That would be

ridiculous. ‘Everybody knows’ the ‘virus’ exists. Well, I didn’t for one along with American proper doctors like Andrew Kaufman and Tom Cowan and long-time American proper journalist Jon Rappaport. We dared to pursue the obvious and simple question: ‘Where’s the evidence?’ The overwhelming majority in medicine, journalism and the general public did not think to ask that. After all, *everyone knew* there was a new ‘virus’. Everyone was saying so and I heard it on the BBC. Some would eventually argue that the ‘deadly virus’ was nothing like as deadly as claimed, but few would venture into the realms of its very existence. Had they done so they would have found that the evidence for that claim had gone AWOL as with HIV causes AIDS. In fact, not even that. For something to go AWOL it has to exist in the first place and scientific proof for a ‘SARS-Cov-2’ can be filed under nothing, nowhere and zilch.

Dr Andrew Kaufman is a board-certified forensic psychiatrist in New York State, a Doctor of Medicine and former Assistant Professor and Medical Director of Psychiatry at SUNY Upstate Medical University, and Medical Instructor of Hematology and Oncology at the Medical School of South Carolina. He also studied biology at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) and trained in Psychiatry at Duke University. Kaufman is retired from allopathic medicine, but remains a consultant and educator on natural healing, I saw a video of his very early on in the ‘Covid’ hoax in which he questioned claims about the ‘virus’ in the absence of any supporting evidence and with plenty pointing the other way. I did everything I could to circulate his work which I felt was asking the pivotal questions that needed an answer. I can recommend an excellent pull-together interview he did with the website The Last Vagabond entitled *Dr Andrew Kaufman: Virus Isolation, Terrain Theory and Covid-19* and his website is andrewkaufmanmd.com. Kaufman is not only a forensic psychiatrist; he is forensic in all that he does. He always reads original scientific papers, experiments and studies instead of second-third-fourth-hand reports about the ‘virus’ in the media which are repeating the repeated repetition of the narrative. When he did so with the original Chinese ‘virus’ papers Kaufman

realised that there was no evidence of a ‘SARS-Cov-2’. They had never – from the start – shown it to exist and every repeat of this claim worldwide was based on the accepted existence of proof that was nowhere to be found – see Kary Mullis and HIV. Here we go again.

Let's postulate

Kaufman discovered that the Chinese authorities immediately concluded that the cause of an illness that broke out among about 200 initial patients in Wuhan was a ‘new virus’ when there were no grounds to make that conclusion. The alleged ‘virus’ was not isolated from other genetic material in their samples and then shown through a system known as Koch’s postulates to be the causative agent of the illness. The world was told that the SARS-Cov-2 ‘virus’ caused a disease they called ‘Covid-19’ which had ‘flu-like’ symptoms and could lead to respiratory problems and pneumonia. If it wasn’t so tragic it would almost be funny. *‘Flu-like’ symptoms?* *Pneumonia? Respiratory disease?* What in CHINA and particularly in Wuhan, one of the most polluted cities in the world with a resulting epidemic of respiratory disease?? Three hundred thousand people get pneumonia in China every year and there are nearly a billion cases worldwide of ‘flu-like symptoms’. These have a whole range of causes – including pollution in Wuhan – but no other possibility was credibly considered in late 2019 when the world was told there was a new and deadly ‘virus’. The global prevalence of pneumonia and ‘flu-like systems’ gave the Cult networks unlimited potential to re-diagnose these other causes as the mythical ‘Covid-19’ and that is what they did from the very start. Kaufman revealed how Chinese medical and science authorities (all subordinates to the Cult-owned communist government) took genetic material from the lungs of only a few of the first patients. The material contained their own cells, bacteria, fungi and other microorganisms living in their bodies. The only way you could prove the existence of the ‘virus’ and its responsibility for the alleged ‘Covid-19’ was to isolate the virus from all the other material – a process also known as ‘purification’ – and

then follow the postulates sequence developed in the late 19th century by German physician and bacteriologist Robert Koch which became the ‘gold standard’ for connecting an alleged causation agent to a disease:

1. The microorganism (bacteria, fungus, virus, etc.) must be present in every case of the disease and all patients must have the same symptoms. It must also *not be present in healthy individuals*.
2. The microorganism must be isolated from the host with the disease. If the microorganism is a bacteria or fungus it must be grown in a pure culture. If it is a virus, it must be purified (i.e. containing no other material except the virus particles) from a clinical sample.
3. The specific disease, with all of its characteristics, must be reproduced when the infectious agent (the purified virus or a pure culture of bacteria or fungi) is inoculated into a healthy, susceptible host.
4. The microorganism must be recoverable from the experimentally infected host as in step 2.

Not one of these criteria has been met in the case of ‘SARS-Cov-2’ and ‘Covid-19’. Not ONE. EVER. Robert Koch refers to bacteria and not viruses. What are called ‘viral particles’ are so minute (hence masks are useless by any definition) that they could only be seen after the invention of the electron microscope in the 1930s and can still only be observed through that means. American bacteriologist and virologist Thomas Milton Rivers, the so-called ‘Father of Modern Virology’ who was very significantly director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research in the 1930s, developed a less stringent version of Koch’s postulates to identify ‘virus’ causation known as ‘Rivers criteria’. ‘Covid’ did not pass that process either. Some even doubt whether any ‘virus’ can be isolated from other particles containing genetic material in the Koch method. Freedom of Information requests in many countries asking for scientific proof that the ‘Covid virus’ has been purified and isolated and shown to exist have all come back with a ‘we don’t have that’ and when this happened with a request to the UK Department of Health they added this comment:

However, outside of the scope of the [Freedom of Information Act] and on a discretionary basis, the following information has been advised to us, which may be of interest. Most infectious diseases are caused by viruses, bacteria or fungi. Some bacteria or fungi have the capacity to grow on their own in isolation, for example in colonies on a petri dish. Viruses are different in that they are what we call 'obligate pathogens' – that is, they cannot survive or reproduce without infecting a host ...

... For some diseases, it is possible to establish causation between a microorganism and a disease by isolating the pathogen from a patient, growing it in pure culture and reintroducing it to a healthy organism. These are known as 'Koch's postulates' and were developed in 1882. However, as our understanding of disease and different disease-causing agents has advanced, these are no longer the method for determining causation [Andrew Kaufman asks why in that case are there two published articles falsely claiming to satisfy Koch's postulates].

It has long been known that viral diseases cannot be identified in this way as viruses cannot be grown in 'pure culture'. When a patient is tested for a viral illness, this is normally done by looking for the presence of antigens, or viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques [Kaufman asks how you could know the origin of these chemicals without having a pure culture for comparison].

For the record 'antigens' are defined so:

Invading microorganisms have antigens on their surface that the human body can recognise as being foreign – meaning not belonging to it. When the body recognises a foreign antigen, lymphocytes (white blood cells) produce antibodies, which are complementary in shape to the antigen.

Notwithstanding that this is open to question in relation to 'SARS-CoV-2' the presence of 'antibodies' can have many causes and they are found in people that are perfectly well. Kary Mullis said: 'Antibodies ... had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease.'

'Covid' really is a computer 'virus'

Where the UK Department of Health statement says 'viruses' are now 'diagnosed' through a 'viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques', they mean ... *the PCR test* which its inventor said cannot test for infectious disease. They have no credible method of connecting a 'virus' to a disease and we will see that there is no scientific proof that any 'virus' causes any disease or there is any such thing as a 'virus' in the way that it is described. Tenacious Canadian researcher Christine Massey and her team made

some 40 Freedom of Information requests to national public health agencies in different countries asking for proof that SARS-CoV-2 has been isolated and not one of them could supply that information. Massey said of her request in Canada: 'Freedom of Information reveals Public Health Agency of Canada has no record of 'SARS-CoV-2' isolation performed by anyone, anywhere, ever.' If you accept the comment from the UK Department of Health it's because they can't isolate a 'virus'. Even so many 'science' papers claimed to have isolated the 'Covid virus' until they were questioned and had to admit they hadn't. A reply from the Robert Koch Institute in Germany was typical: 'I am not aware of a paper which purified isolated SARS-CoV-2.' So what the hell was Christian Drosten and his gang using to design the 'Covid' testing protocol that has produced all the illusory Covid' cases and 'Covid' deaths when the head of the Chinese version of the CDC admitted there was a problem right from the start in that the 'virus' had never been isolated/purified? Breathe deeply: What they are calling 'Covid' is actually created by a *computer program* i.e. *they made it up* – er, that's it. They took lung fluid, with many sources of genetic material, from one single person alleged to be infected with Covid-19 by a PCR test which they *claimed*, without clear evidence, contained a 'virus'. They used several computer programs to create a model of a theoretical virus genome sequence from more than fifty-six million small sequences of RNA, each of an unknown source, assembling them like a puzzle with no known solution. The computer filled in the gaps with sequences from bits in the gene bank to make it look like a bat SARS-like coronavirus! A wave of the magic wand and poof, an *in silico* (computer-generated) genome, a scientific fantasy, was created. UK health researcher Dr Kevin Corbett made the same point with this analogy:

... It's like giving you a few bones and saying that's your fish. It could be any fish. Not even a skeleton. Here's a few fragments of bones. That's your fish ... It's all from gene bank and the bits of the virus sequence that weren't there they made up.

They synthetically created them to fill in the blanks. That's what genetics is; it's a code. So it's ABBBCCDDDD and you're missing some what you think is EEE so you put it in. It's all

synthetic. You just manufacture the bits that are missing. This is the end result of the geneticization of virology. This is basically a computer virus.

Further confirmation came in an email exchange between British citizen journalist Frances Leader and the government's Medicines & Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (the Gates-funded MHRA) which gave emergency permission for untested 'Covid vaccines' to be used. The agency admitted that the 'vaccine' is not based on an isolated 'virus', but comes from a *computer-generated model*. Frances Leader was naturally banned from Cult-owned fascist Twitter for making this exchange public. The process of creating computer-generated alleged 'viruses' is called 'in silico' or 'in silicon' – computer chips – and the term 'in silico' is believed to originate with biological experiments using only a computer in 1989. 'Vaccines' involved with 'Covid' are also produced 'in silico' or by computer not a natural process. If the original 'virus' is nothing more than a made-up computer model how can there be 'new variants' of something that never existed in the first place? They are not new 'variants'; they are new *computer models* only minutely different to the original program and designed to further terrify the population into having the 'vaccine' and submitting to fascism. You want a 'new variant'? Click, click, enter – there you go. Tell the medical profession that you have discovered a 'South African variant', 'UK variants' or a 'Brazilian variant' and in the usual HIV-causes-AIDS manner they will unquestioningly repeat it with no evidence whatsoever to support these claims. They will go on television and warn about the dangers of 'new variants' while doing nothing more than repeating what they have been told to be true and knowing that any deviation from that would be career suicide. Big-time insiders will know it's a hoax, but much of the medical community is clueless about the way they are being played and themselves play the public without even being aware they are doing so. What an interesting 'coincidence' that AstraZeneca and Oxford University were conducting 'Covid vaccine trials' in the three countries – the UK, South Africa and Brazil – where the first three 'variants' were claimed to have 'broken out'.

Here's your 'virus' – it's a unicorn

Dr Andrew Kaufman presented a brilliant analysis describing how the 'virus' was imagined into fake existence when he dissected an article published by *Nature* and written by 19 authors detailing *alleged* 'sequencing of a complete viral genome' of the 'new SARS-CoV-2 virus'. This computer-modelled *in silico* genome was used as a template for all subsequent genome sequencing experiments that resulted in the so-called variants which he said now number more than 6,000. The fake genome was constructed from more than 56 million individual short strands of RNA. Those little pieces were assembled into longer pieces by finding areas of overlapping sequences. The computer programs created over two million possible combinations from which the authors simply chose the longest one. They then compared this to a 'bat virus' and the computer 'alignment' rearranged the sequence and filled in the gaps! They called this computer-generated abomination the 'complete genome'. Dr Tom Cowan, a fellow medical author and collaborator with Kaufman, said such computer-generation constitutes scientific fraud and he makes this superb analogy:

Here is an equivalency: A group of researchers claim to have found a unicorn because they found a piece of a hoof, a hair from a tail, and a snippet of a horn. They then add that information into a computer and program it to re-create the unicorn, and they then claim this computer re-creation is the real unicorn. Of course, they had never actually seen a unicorn so could not possibly have examined its genetic makeup to compare their samples with the actual unicorn's hair, hooves and horn.

The researchers claim they decided which is the real genome of SARS-CoV-2 by 'consensus', sort of like a vote. Again, different computer programs will come up with different versions of the imaginary 'unicorn', so they come together as a group and decide which is the real imaginary unicorn.

This is how the 'virus' that has transformed the world was brought into fraudulent 'existence'. Extraordinary, yes, but as the Nazis said the bigger the lie the more will believe it. Cowan, however, wasn't finished and he went on to identify what he called the real blockbuster in the paper. He quotes this section from a paper written

by virologists and published by the CDC and then explains what it means:

Therefore, we examined the capacity of SARS-CoV-2 to infect and replicate in several common primate and human cell lines, including human adenocarcinoma cells (A549), human liver cells (HUH 7.0), and human embryonic kidney cells (HEK-293T). In addition to Vero E6 and Vero CCL81 cells. ... Each cell line was inoculated at high multiplicity of infection and examined 24h post-infection.

No CPE was observed in any of the cell lines except in Vero cells, which grew to greater than 10 to the 7th power at 24 h post-infection. In contrast, HUH 7.0 and 293T showed only modest viral replication, and A549 cells were incompatible with SARS CoV-2 infection.

Cowan explains that when virologists attempt to prove infection they have three possible 'hosts' or models on which they can test. The first was humans. Exposure to humans was generally not done for ethical reasons and has never been done with SARS-CoV-2 or any coronavirus. The second possible host was animals. Cowan said that forgetting for a moment that they never actually use purified virus when exposing animals they do use solutions that they *claim* contain the virus. Exposure to animals has been done with SARS-CoV-2 in an experiment involving mice and this is what they found: *None of the wild (normal) mice got sick*. In a group of genetically-modified mice, a statistically insignificant number lost weight and had slightly bristled fur, but they experienced nothing like the illness called 'Covid-19'. Cowan said the third method – the one they mostly rely on – is to inoculate solutions they *say* contain the virus onto a variety of tissue cultures. This process had never been shown to kill tissue *unless* the sample material was starved of nutrients and poisoned as *part of the process*. Yes, incredibly, in tissue experiments designed to show the 'virus' is responsible for killing the tissue they starve the tissue of nutrients and add toxic drugs including antibiotics and they do not have control studies to see if it's the starvation and poisoning that is degrading the tissue rather than the 'virus' they allege to be in there somewhere. You want me to pinch you? Yep, I understand. Tom Cowan said this about the whole nonsensical farce as he explains what that quote from the CDC paper really means:

The shocking thing about the above quote is that using their own methods, the virologists found that solutions containing SARS-CoV-2 – even in high amounts – were NOT, I repeat NOT, infective to any of the three human tissue cultures they tested. In plain English, this means they proved, on their terms, that this ‘new coronavirus’ is not infectious to human beings. It is ONLY infective to monkey kidney cells, and only then when you add two potent drugs (gentamicin and amphotericin), known to be toxic to kidneys, to the mix.

My friends, read this again and again. These virologists, published by the CDC, performed a clear proof, on their terms, showing that the SARS-CoV-2 virus is harmless to human beings. That is the only possible conclusion, but, unfortunately, this result is not even mentioned in their conclusion. They simply say they can provide virus stocks cultured only on monkey Vero cells, thanks for coming.

Cowan concluded: ‘If people really understood how this “science” was done, I would hope they would storm the gates and demand honesty, transparency and truth.’ Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Adviser at drug giant Pfizer has been a vocal critic of the ‘Covid vaccine’ and its potential for multiple harm. He said in an interview in April, 2021, that ‘not one [vaccine] has the virus. He was asked why vaccines normally using a ‘dead’ version of a disease to activate the immune system were not used for ‘Covid’ and instead we had the synthetic methods of the ‘mRNA Covid vaccine’. Yeadon said that to do the former ‘you’d have to have some of [the virus] wouldn’t you?’ He added: ‘No-one’s got any – seriously.’ Yeadon said that surely they couldn’t have fooled the whole world for a year without having a virus, ‘but oddly enough ask around – no one’s got it’. He didn’t know why with all the ‘great labs’ around the world that the virus had not been isolated – ‘Maybe they’ve been too busy running bad PCR tests and vaccines that people don’t need.’ What is today called ‘science’ is not ‘science’ at all. Science is no longer what is, but whatever people can be manipulated to *believe* that it is. Real science has been hijacked by the Cult to dispense and produce the ‘expert scientists’ and contentions that suit the agenda of the Cult. How big-time this has happened with the ‘Covid’ hoax which is entirely based on fake science delivered by fake ‘scientists’ and fake ‘doctors’. The human-caused climate change hoax is also entirely based on fake science delivered by fake ‘scientists’ and fake ‘climate experts’. In both cases real

scientists, climate experts and doctors have their views suppressed and deleted by the Cult-owned science establishment, media and Silicon Valley. This is the ‘science’ that politicians claim to be ‘following’ and a common denominator of ‘Covid’ and climate are Cult psychopaths Bill Gates and his mate Klaus Schwab at the Gates-funded World Economic Forum. But, don’t worry, it’s all just a coincidence and absolutely nothing to worry about. Zzzzzzzz.

What is a ‘virus’ REALLY?

Dr Tom Cowan is one of many contesting the very existence of viruses let alone that they cause disease. This is understandable when there is no scientific evidence for a disease-causing ‘virus’. German virologist Dr Stefan Lanka won a landmark case in 2017 in the German Supreme Court over his contention that there is no such thing as a measles virus. He had offered a big prize for anyone who could prove there is and Lanka won his case when someone sought to claim the money. There is currently a prize of more than 225,000 euros on offer from an Isolate Truth Fund for anyone who can prove the isolation of SARS-CoV-2 and its genetic substance. Lanka wrote in an article headed ‘The Misconception Called Virus’ that scientists think a ‘virus’ is causing tissue to become diseased and degraded when in fact it is the *processes they are using* which do that – not a ‘virus’. Lanka has done an important job in making this point clear as Cowan did in his analysis of the CDC paper. Lanka says that all claims about viruses as disease-causing pathogens are wrong and based on ‘easily recognisable, understandable and verifiable misinterpretations.’ Scientists believed they were working with ‘viruses’ in their laboratories when they were really working with ‘typical particles of specific dying tissues or cells ...’ Lanka said that the tissue decaying process claimed to be caused by a ‘virus’ still happens when no alleged ‘virus’ is involved. It’s the *process* that does the damage and not a ‘virus’. The genetic sample is deprived of nutrients, removed from its energy supply through removal from the body and then doused in toxic antibiotics to remove any bacteria. He confirms again that establishment scientists do not (pinch me)

conduct control experiments to see if this is the case and if they did they would see the claims that 'viruses' are doing the damage is nonsense. He adds that during the measles 'virus' court case he commissioned an independent laboratory to perform just such a control experiment and the result was that the tissues and cells died in the exact same way as with alleged 'infected' material. This is supported by a gathering number of scientists, doctors and researchers who reject what is called 'germ theory' or the belief in the body being infected by contagious sources emitted by other people. Researchers Dawn Lester and David Parker take the same stance in their highly-detailed and sourced book *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* which was recommended to me by a number of medical professionals genuinely seeking the truth. Lester and Parker say there is no provable scientific evidence to show that a 'virus' can be transmitted between people or people and animals or animals and people:

The definition also claims that viruses are the cause of many diseases, as if this has been definitively proven. But this is not the case; there is no original scientific evidence that definitively demonstrates that any virus is the cause of any disease. The burden of proof for any theory lies with those who proposed it; but none of the existing documents provides 'proof' that supports the claim that 'viruses' are pathogens.

Dr Tom Cowan employs one of his clever analogies to describe the process by which a 'virus' is named as the culprit for a disease when what is called a 'virus' is only material released by cells detoxing themselves from infiltration by chemical or radiation poisoning. The tidal wave of technologically-generated radiation in the 'smart' modern world plus all the toxic food and drink are causing this to happen more than ever. Deluded 'scientists' misread this as a gathering impact of what they wrongly label 'viruses'.

Paper can infect houses

Cowan said in an article for davidicke.com – with his tongue only mildly in his cheek – that he believed he had made a tremendous

discovery that may revolutionise science. He had discovered that small bits of paper are alive, ‘well alive-ish’, can ‘infect’ houses, and then reproduce themselves inside the house. The result was that this explosion of growth in the paper inside the house causes the house to explode, blowing it to smithereens. His evidence for this new theory is that in the past months he had carefully examined many of the houses in his neighbourhood and found almost no scraps of paper on the lawns and surrounds of the house. There was an occasional stray label, but nothing more. Then he would return to these same houses a week or so later and with a few, not all of them, particularly the old and decrepit ones, he found to his shock and surprise they were littered with stray bits of paper. He knew then that the paper had infected these houses, made copies of itself, and blew up the house. A young boy on a bicycle at one of the sites told him he had seen a demolition crew using dynamite to explode the house the previous week, but Cowan dismissed this as the idle thoughts of silly boys because ‘I was on to something big’. He was on to how ‘scientists’ mistake genetic material in the detoxifying process for something they call a ‘virus’. Cowan said of his house and paper story:

If this sounds crazy to you, it’s because it should. This scenario is obviously nuts. But consider this admittedly embellished, for effect, current viral theory that all scientists, medical doctors and virologists currently believe.

He takes the example of the ‘novel SARS-Cov2’ virus to prove the point. First they take someone with an undefined illness called ‘Covid-19’ and don’t even attempt to find any virus in their sputum. Never mind the scientists still describe how this ‘virus’, which they have not located attaches to a cell receptor, injects its genetic material, in ‘Covid’s’ case, RNA, into the cell. The RNA once inserted exploits the cell to reproduce itself and makes ‘thousands, nay millions, of copies of itself ... Then it emerges victorious to claim its next victim’:

If you were to look in the scientific literature for proof, actual scientific proof, that uniform SARS-CoV2 viruses have been properly isolated from the sputum of a sick person, that actual spike proteins could be seen protruding from the virus (which has not been found), you would find that such evidence doesn't exist.

If you go looking in the published scientific literature for actual pictures, proof, that these spike proteins or any viral proteins are ever attached to any receptor embedded in any cell membrane, you would also find that no such evidence exists. If you were to look for a video or documented evidence of the intact virus injecting its genetic material into the body of the cell, reproducing itself and then emerging victorious by budding off the cell membrane, you would find that no such evidence exists.

The closest thing you would find is electron micrograph pictures of cellular particles, possibly attached to cell debris, both of which to be seen were stained by heavy metals, a process that completely distorts their architecture within the living organism. This is like finding bits of paper stuck to the blown-up bricks, thereby proving the paper emerged by taking pieces of the bricks on its way out.

The Enders baloney

Cowan describes the 'Covid' story as being just as make-believe as his paper story and he charts back this fantasy to a Nobel Prize winner called John Enders (1897-1985), an American biomedical scientist who has been dubbed 'The Father of Modern Vaccines'. Enders is claimed to have 'discovered' the process of the viral culture which 'proved' that a 'virus' caused measles. Cowan explains how Enders did this 'by using the EXACT same procedure that has been followed by every virologist to find and characterize every new virus since 1954'. Enders took throat swabs from children with measles and immersed them in 2ml of milk. Penicillin (100u/ml) and the antibiotic streptomycin (50,g/ml) were added and the whole mix was centrifuged – rotated at high speed to separate large cellular debris from small particles and molecules as with milk and cream, for example. Cowan says that if the aim is to find little particles of genetic material ('viruses') in the snot from children with measles it would seem that the last thing you would do is mix the snot with other material – milk –that also has genetic material. 'How are you ever going to know whether whatever you found came from the snot or the milk?' He points out that streptomycin is a 'nephrotoxic' or poisonous-to-the-kidney drug. You will see the relevance of that

shortly. Cowan says that it gets worse, much worse, when Enders describes the culture medium upon which the virus 'grows': 'The culture medium consisted of bovine amniotic fluid (90%), beef embryo extract (5%), horse serum (5%), antibiotics and phenol red as an indicator of cell metabolism.' Cowan asks incredulously: 'Did he just say that the culture medium also contained fluids and tissues that are themselves rich sources of genetic material?' The genetic cocktail, or 'medium', is inoculated onto tissue and cells from rhesus monkey *kidney* tissue. This is where the importance of streptomycin comes in and currently-used antimicrobials and other drugs that are *poisonous to kidneys* and used in ALL modern viral cultures (e.g. gentamicin, streptomycin, and amphotericin). Cowan asks: 'How are you ever going to know from this witch's brew where any genetic material comes from as we now have five different sources of rich genetic material in our mix?' Remember, he says, that all genetic material, whether from monkey kidney tissues, bovine serum, milk, etc., is made from the exact same components. The same central question returns: 'How are you possibly going to know that it was the virus that killed the kidney tissue and not the toxic antibiotic and starvation rations on which you are growing the tissue?' John Enders answered the question himself – *you can't*:

A second agent was obtained from an uninoculated culture of monkey kidney cells. The cytopathic changes [death of the cells] it induced in the unstained preparations could not be distinguished with confidence from the viruses isolated from measles.

The death of the cells ('cytopathic changes') happened in exactly the same manner, whether they inoculated the kidney tissue with the measles snot or not, Cowan says. 'This is evidence that the destruction of the tissue, the very proof of viral causation of illness, was not caused by anything in the snot because they saw the same destructive effect when the snot was not even used ... the cytopathic, i.e., cell-killing, changes come from the process of the culture itself, not from any virus in any snot, period.' Enders quotes in his 1957 paper a virologist called Ruckle as reporting similar findings 'and in addition has isolated an agent from monkey kidney tissue that is so

far indistinguishable from human measles virus'. In other words, Cowan says, these particles called 'measles viruses' are simply and clearly breakdown products of the starved and poisoned tissue. For measles 'virus' see all 'viruses' including the so-called 'Covid virus'. Enders, the 'Father of Modern Vaccines', also said:

There is a potential risk in employing cultures of primate cells for the production of vaccines composed of attenuated virus, since the presence of other agents possibly latent in primate tissues cannot be definitely excluded by any known method.

Cowan further quotes from a paper published in the journal *Viruses* in May, 2020, while the 'Covid pandemic' was well underway in the media if not in reality. 'EVs' here refers to particles of genetic debris from our own tissues, such as exosomes of which more in a moment: 'The remarkable resemblance between EVs and viruses has caused quite a few problems in the studies focused on the analysis of EVs released during viral infections.' Later the paper adds that to date a reliable method that can actually guarantee a complete separation (of EVs from viruses) DOES NOT EXIST. This was published at a time when a fairy tale 'virus' was claimed in total certainty to be causing a fairy tale 'viral disease' called 'Covid-19' – a fairy tale that was already well on the way to transforming human society in the image that the Cult has worked to achieve for so long. Cowan concludes his article:

To summarize, there is no scientific evidence that pathogenic viruses exist. What we think of as 'viruses' are simply the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues and cells. When we are well, we make fewer of these particles; when we are starved, poisoned, suffocated by wearing masks, or afraid, we make more.

There is no engineered virus circulating and making people sick. People in laboratories all over the world are making genetically modified products to make people sick. These are called vaccines. There is no virome, no 'ecosystem' of viruses, viruses are not 8%, 50% or 100 % of our genetic material. These are all simply erroneous ideas based on the misconception called a virus.

What is 'Covid'? Load of bollocks

The background described here by Cowan and Lanka was emphasised in the first video presentation that I saw by Dr Andrew Kaufman when he asked whether the ‘Covid virus’ was in truth a natural defence mechanism of the body called ‘exosomes’. These are released by cells when in states of toxicity – see the same themes returning over and over. They are released ever more profusely as chemical and radiation toxicity increases and think of the potential effect therefore of 5G alone as its destructive frequencies infest the human energetic information field with a gathering pace (5G went online in Wuhan in 2019 as the ‘virus’ emerged). I’ll have more about this later. Exosomes transmit a warning to the rest of the body that ‘Houston, we have a problem’. Kaufman presented images of exosomes and compared them with ‘Covid’ under an electron microscope and the similarity was remarkable. They both attach to the same cell receptors (*claimed* in the case of ‘Covid’), contain the same genetic material in the form of RNA or ribonucleic acid, and both are found in ‘viral cell cultures’ with damaged or dying cells. James Hildreth MD, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Meharry Medical College at Johns Hopkins, said: ‘The virus is fully an exosome in every sense of the word.’ Kaufman’s conclusion was that there is no ‘virus’: ‘This entire pandemic is a completely manufactured crisis … there is no evidence of anyone dying from [this] illness.’ Dr Tom Cowan and Sally Fallon Morell, authors of *The Contagion Myth*, published a statement with Dr Kaufman in February, 2021, explaining why the ‘virus’ does not exist and you can read it that in full in the Appendix.

‘Virus’ theory can be traced to the ‘cell theory’ in 1858 of German physician Rudolf Virchow (1821-1920) who contended that disease originates from a single cell infiltrated by a ‘virus’. Dr Stefan Lanka said that findings and insights with respect to the structure, function and central importance of tissues in the creation of life, which were already known in 1858, comprehensively refute the cell theory. Virchow ignored them. We have seen the part later played by John Enders in the 1950s and Lanka notes that infection theories were only established as a global dogma through the policies and

eugenics of the Third Reich in Nazi Germany (creation of the same Sabbatian cult behind the ‘Covid’ hoax). Lanka said: ‘Before 1933, scientists dared to contradict this theory; after 1933, these critical scientists were silenced’. Dr Tom Cowan’s view is that ill-health is caused by too much of something, too little of something, or toxification from chemicals and radiation – not contagion. We must also highlight as a major source of the ‘virus’ theology a man still called the ‘Father of Modern Virology’ – Thomas Milton Rivers (1888-1962). There is no way given the Cult’s long game policy that it was a coincidence for the ‘Father of Modern Virology’ to be director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research from 1937 to 1956 when he is credited with making the Rockefeller Institute a leader in ‘viral research’. Cult Rockefellers were the force behind the creation of Big Pharma ‘medicine’, established the World Health Organisation in 1948, and have long and close associations with the Gates family that now runs the WHO during the pandemic hoax through mega-rich Cult gofer and psychopath Bill Gates.

Only a Renegade Mind can see through all this bullshit by asking the questions that need to be answered, not taking ‘no’ or prevarication for an answer, and certainly not hiding from the truth in fear of speaking it. Renegade Minds have always changed the world for the better and they will change this one no matter how bleak it may currently appear to be.

CHAPTER SIX

Sequence of deceit

If you tell the truth, you don't have to remember anything

Mark Twain

Against the background that I have laid out this far the sequence that took us from an invented 'virus' in Cult-owned China in late 2019 to the fascist transformation of human society can be seen and understood in a whole new context.

We were told that a deadly disease had broken out in Wuhan and the world media began its campaign (coordinated by behavioural psychologists as we shall see) to terrify the population into unquestioning compliance. We were shown images of Chinese people collapsing in the street which never happened in the West with what was supposed to be the same condition. In the earliest days when alleged cases and deaths were few the fear register was hysterical in many areas of the media and this would expand into the common media narrative across the world. The real story was rather different, but we were never told that. The Chinese government, one of the Cult's biggest centres of global operation, said they had discovered a new illness with flu-like and pneumonia-type symptoms in a city with such toxic air that it is overwhelmed with flu-like symptoms, pneumonia and respiratory disease. Chinese scientists said it was a new – 'novel' – coronavirus which they called Sars-Cov-2 and that it caused a disease they labelled 'Covid-19'. There was no evidence for this and the 'virus' has never to this day been isolated, purified and its genetic code established from that. It

was from the beginning a computer-generated fiction. Stories of Chinese whistleblowers saying the number of deaths was being suppressed or that the ‘new disease’ was related to the Wuhan bio-lab misdirected mainstream and alternative media into cul-de-sacs to obscure the real truth – there was no ‘virus’.

Chinese scientists took genetic material from the lung fluid of just a few people and said they had found a ‘new’ disease when this material had a wide range of content. There was no evidence for a ‘virus’ for the very reasons explained in the last two chapters. The ‘virus’ has never been shown to (a) exist and (b) cause any disease. People were diagnosed on symptoms that are so widespread in Wuhan and polluted China and with a PCR test that can’t detect infectious disease. On this farce the whole global scam was sold to the rest of the world which would also diagnose respiratory disease as ‘Covid-19’ from symptoms alone or with a PCR test not testing for a ‘virus’. Flu miraculously disappeared *worldwide* in 2020 and into 2021 as it was redesignated ‘Covid-19’. It was really the same old flu with its ‘flu-like’ symptoms attributed to ‘flu-like’ ‘Covid-19’. At the same time with very few exceptions the Chinese response of draconian lockdown and fascism was the chosen weapon to respond across the West as recommended by the Cult-owned Tedros at the Cult-owned World Health Organization run by the Cult-owned Gates. All was going according to plan. Chinese scientists – everything in China is controlled by the Cult-owned government – compared their contaminated RNA lung-fluid material with other RNA sequences and said it appeared to be just under 80 percent identical to the SARS-CoV-1 ‘virus’ claimed to be the cause of the SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) ‘outbreak’ in 2003. They decreed that because of this the ‘new virus’ had to be related and they called it SARS-CoV-2. There are some serious problems with this assumption and *assumption* was all it was. Most ‘factual’ science turns out to be assumptions repeated into everyone-knows-that. A match of under 80-percent is meaningless. Dr Kaufman makes the point that there’s a 96 percent genetic correlation between humans and chimpanzees, but ‘no one would say our genetic material is part

of the chimpanzee family'. Yet the Chinese authorities were claiming that a much lower percentage, less than 80 percent, proved the existence of a new 'coronavirus'. For goodness sake human DNA is 60 percent similar to a *banana*.

You are feeling sleepy

The entire 'Covid' hoax is a global Psyop, a psychological operation to program the human mind into believing and fearing a complete fantasy. A crucial aspect of this was what *appeared* to happen in Italy. It was all very well streaming out daily images of an alleged catastrophe in Wuhan, but to the Western mind it was still on the other side of the world in a very different culture and setting. A reaction of 'this could happen to me and my family' was still nothing like as intense enough for the mind-doctors. The Cult needed a Western example to push people over that edge and it chose Italy, one of its major global locations going back to the Roman Empire. An Italian 'Covid' crisis was manufactured in a particular area called Lombardy which just happens to be notorious for its toxic air and therefore respiratory disease. Wuhan, China, *déjà vu*. An hysterical media told horror stories of Italians dying from 'Covid' in their droves and how Lombardy hospitals were being overrun by a tidal wave of desperately ill people needing treatment after being struck down by the 'deadly virus'. Here was the psychological turning point the Cult had planned. Wow, if this is happening in Italy, the Western mind concluded, this indeed could happen to me and my family. Another point is that Italian authorities responded by following the Chinese blueprint so vehemently recommended by the Cult-owned World Health Organization. They imposed fascistic lockdowns on the whole country viciously policed with the help of surveillance drones sweeping through the streets seeking out anyone who escaped from mass house arrest. Livelihoods were destroyed and psychology unravelled in the way we have witnessed since in all lockdown countries. Crucial to the plan was that Italy responded in this way to set the precedent of suspending freedom and imposing fascism in a 'Western liberal democracy'. I emphasised in an

animated video explanation on davidicke.com posted in the summer of 2020 how important it was to the Cult to expand the Chinese lockdown model across the West. Without this, and the bare-faced lie that non-symptomatic people could still transmit a ‘disease’ they didn’t have, there was no way locking down the whole population, sick and not sick, could be pulled off. At just the right time and with no evidence Cult operatives and gofers claimed that people without symptoms could pass on the ‘disease’. In the name of protecting the ‘vulnerable’ like elderly people, who lockdowns would kill by the tens of thousands, we had for the first time healthy people told to isolate as well as the sick. The great majority of people who tested positive had no symptoms because there was nothing wrong with them. It was just a trick made possible by a test not testing for the ‘virus’.

Months after my animated video the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College confirmed that I was right. He didn’t say it in those terms, naturally, but he did say it. Ferguson will enter the story shortly for his outrageously crazy ‘computer models’ that led to Britain, the United States and many other countries following the Chinese and now Italian methods of response. Put another way, following the Cult script. Ferguson said that SAGE, the UK government’s scientific advisory group which has controlled ‘Covid’ policy from the start, wanted to follow the Chinese lockdown model (while they all continued to work and be paid), but they wondered if they could possibly, in Ferguson’s words, ‘get away with it in Europe’. ‘Get away with it’? Who the hell do these moronic, arrogant people think they are? This appalling man Ferguson said that once Italy went into national lockdown they realised they, too, could mimic China:

It’s a communist one-party state, we said. We couldn’t get away with it in Europe, we thought ... and then Italy did it. And we realised we could. Behind this garbage from Ferguson is a simple fact: Doing the same as China in every country was the plan from the start and Ferguson’s ‘models’ would play a central role in achieving that. It’s just a coincidence, of course, and absolutely nothing to worry your little head about.

Oops, sorry, our mistake

Once the Italian segment of the Psyop had done the job it was designed to do a very different story emerged. Italian authorities revealed that 99 percent of those who had 'died from Covid-19' in Italy had one, two, three, or more 'co-morbidities' or illnesses and health problems that could have ended their life. The US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) published a figure of 94 percent for Americans dying of 'Covid' while having other serious medical conditions – on average two to three (some five or six) other potential causes of death. In terms of death from an unproven 'virus' I say it is 100 percent. The other one percent in Italy and six percent in the US would presumably have died from 'Covid's' flu-like symptoms with a range of other possible causes in conjunction with a test not testing for the 'virus'. Fox News reported that even more startling figures had emerged in one US county in which 410 of 422 deaths attributed to 'Covid-19' had other potentially deadly health conditions. The Italian National Health Institute said later that the average age of people dying with a 'Covid-19' diagnosis in Italy was about 81. Ninety percent were over 70 with ten percent over 90. In terms of other reasons to die some 80 percent had two or more chronic diseases with half having three or more including cardiovascular problems, diabetes, respiratory problems and cancer. Why is the phantom 'Covid-19' said to kill overwhelmingly old people and hardly affect the young? Old people continually die of many causes and especially respiratory disease which you can re-diagnose 'Covid-19' while young people die in tiny numbers by comparison and rarely of respiratory disease. Old people 'die of Covid' because they die of other things that can be redesignated 'Covid' and it really is that simple.

Flu has flown

The blueprint was in place. Get your illusory 'cases' from a test not testing for the 'virus' and redesignate other causes of death as 'Covid-19'. You have an instant 'pandemic' from something that is nothing more than a computer-generated fiction. With near-on a

billion people having ‘flu-like’ symptoms every year the potential was limitless and we can see why flu quickly and apparently miraculously disappeared *worldwide* by being diagnosed ‘Covid-19’. The painfully bloody obvious was explained away by the childlike media in headlines like this in the UK *‘Independent’*: ‘Not a single case of flu detected by Public Health England this year as Covid restrictions suppress virus’. I kid you not. The masking, social distancing and house arrest that did not make the ‘Covid virus’ disappear somehow did so with the ‘flu virus’. Even worse the article, by a bloke called Samuel Lovett, suggested that maybe the masking, sanitising and other ‘Covid’ measures should continue to keep the flu away. With a ridiculousness that disturbs your breathing (it’s ‘Covid-19’) the said Lovett wrote: ‘With widespread social distancing and mask-wearing measures in place throughout the UK, the usual routes of transmission for influenza have been blocked.’ He had absolutely no evidence to support that statement, but look at the consequences of him acknowledging the obvious. With flu not disappearing at all and only being relabelled ‘Covid-19’ he would have to contemplate that ‘Covid’ was a hoax on a scale that is hard to imagine. You need guts and commitment to truth to even go there and that’s clearly something Samuel Lovett does not have in abundance. He would never have got it through the editors anyway.

Tens of thousands die in the United States alone every winter from flu including many with pneumonia complications. CDC figures record *45 million* Americans diagnosed with flu in 2017-2018 of which 61,000 died and some reports claim 80,000. Where was the same hysteria then that we have seen with ‘Covid-19’? Some 250,000 Americans are admitted to hospital with pneumonia every year with about 50,000 cases proving fatal. About 65 million suffer respiratory disease every year and three million deaths makes this the third biggest cause of death worldwide. You only have to redesignate a portion of all these people ‘Covid-19’ and you have an instant global pandemic or the *appearance* of one. Why would doctors do this? They are told to do this and all but a few dare not refuse those who must be obeyed. Doctors in general are not researching their own

knowledge and instead take it direct and unquestioned from the authorities that own them and their careers. The authorities say they must now diagnose these symptoms ‘Covid-19’ and not flu, or whatever, and they do it. Dark suits say put ‘Covid-19’ on death certificates no matter what the cause of death and the doctors do it. Renegade Minds don’t fall for the illusion that doctors and medical staff are all highly-intelligent, highly-principled, seekers of medical truth. *Some are*, but not the majority. They are repeaters, gofers, and yes sir, no sir, purveyors of what the system demands they purvey. The ‘Covid’ con is not merely confined to diseases of the lungs. Instructions to doctors to put ‘Covid-19’ on death certificates for anyone dying of *anything* within 28 days (or much more) of a positive test not testing for the ‘virus’ opened the floodgates. The term dying *with* ‘Covid’ and not *of* ‘Covid’ was coined to cover the truth. Whether it was a *with* or an *of* they were all added to the death numbers attributed to the ‘deadly virus’ compiled by national governments and globally by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins operation in the United States that was so involved in those ‘pandemic’ simulations. Fraudulent deaths were added to the ever-growing list of fraudulent ‘cases’ from false positives from a false test. No wonder Professor Walter Ricciardi, scientific advisor to the Italian minister of health, said after the Lombardy hysteria had done its job that ‘Covid’ death rates were due to Italy having the second oldest population in the world and to *how hospitals record deaths*:

The way in which we code deaths in our country is very generous in the sense that all the people who die in hospitals with the coronavirus are deemed to be dying of the coronavirus. On re-evaluation by the National Institute of Health, only 12 per cent of death certificates have shown a direct causality from coronavirus, while 88 per cent of patients who have died have at least one pre-morbidity – many had two or three.

This is extraordinary enough when you consider the propaganda campaign to use Italy to terrify the world, but how can they even say twelve percent were genuine when the ‘virus’ has not been shown to exist, its ‘code’ is a computer program, and diagnosis comes from a test not testing for it? As in China, and soon the world, ‘Covid-19’ in

Italy was a redesignation of diagnosis. Lies and corruption were to become the real ‘pandemic’ fuelled by a pathetically-compliant medical system taking its orders from the tiny few at the top of their national hierarchy who answered to the World Health Organization which answers to Gates and the Cult. Doctors were told – ordered – to diagnose a particular set of symptoms ‘Covid-19’ and put that on the death certificate for any cause of death if the patient had tested positive with a test not testing for the virus or had ‘Covid’ symptoms like the flu. The United States even introduced big financial incentives to manipulate the figures with hospitals receiving £4,600 from the Medicare system for diagnosing someone with regular pneumonia, \$13,000 if they made the diagnosis from the same symptoms ‘Covid-19’ pneumonia, and \$39, 000 if they put a ‘Covid’ diagnosed patient on a ventilator that would almost certainly kill them. A few – painfully and pathetically few – medical whistleblowers revealed (before Cult-owned YouTube deleted their videos) that they had been instructed to ‘let the patient crash’ and put them straight on a ventilator instead of going through a series of far less intrusive and dangerous methods as they would have done before the pandemic hoax began and the financial incentives kicked in. We are talking cold-blooded murder given that ventilators are so damaging to respiratory systems they are usually the last step before heaven awaits. Renegade Minds never fall for the belief that people in white coats are all angels of mercy and cannot be full-on psychopaths. I have explained in detail in *The Answer* how what I am describing here played out across the world coordinated by the World Health Organization through the medical hierarchies in almost every country.

Medical scientist calls it

Information about the non-existence of the ‘virus’ began to emerge for me in late March, 2020, and mushroomed after that. I was sent an email by Sir Julian Rose, a writer, researcher, and organic farming promotor, from a medical scientist friend of his in the United States. Even at that early stage in March the scientist was able to explain

how the ‘Covid’ hoax was being manipulated. He said there were no reliable tests for a specific ‘Covid-19 virus’ and nor were there any reliable agencies or media outlets for reporting numbers of actual ‘Covid-19’ cases. We have seen in the long period since then that he was absolutely right. ‘Every action and reaction to Covid-19 is based on totally flawed data and we simply cannot make accurate assessments,’ he said. Most people diagnosed with ‘Covid-19’ were showing nothing more than cold and flu-like symptoms ‘because most coronavirus strains *are* nothing more than cold/flu-like symptoms’. We had farcical situations like an 84-year-old German man testing positive for ‘Covid-19’ and his nursing home ordered to quarantine only for him to be found to have a common cold. The scientist described back then why PCR tests and what he called the ‘Mickey Mouse test kits’ were useless for what they were claimed to be identifying. ‘The idea these kits can isolate a specific virus like Covid-19 is nonsense,’ he said. Significantly, he pointed out that ‘if you want to create a totally false panic about a totally false pandemic – pick a coronavirus’. This is exactly what the Cult-owned Gates, World Economic Forum and Johns Hopkins University did with their Event 201 ‘simulation’ followed by their real-life simulation called the ‘pandemic’. The scientist said that all you had to do was select the sickest of people with respiratory-type diseases in a single location – ‘say Wuhan’ – and administer PCR tests to them. You can then claim that anyone showing ‘viral sequences’ similar to a coronavirus ‘which will inevitably be quite a few’ is suffering from a ‘new’ disease:

Since you already selected the sickest flu cases a fairly high proportion of your sample will go on to die. You can then say this ‘new’ virus has a CFR [case fatality rate] higher than the flu and use this to infuse more concern and do more tests which will of course produce more ‘cases’, which expands the testing, which produces yet more ‘cases’ and so on and so on. Before long you have your ‘pandemic’, and all you have done is use a simple test kit trick to convert the worst flu and pneumonia cases into something new that doesn’t ACTUALLY EXIST [my emphasis].

He said that you then ‘just run the same scam in other countries’ and make sure to keep the fear message running high ‘so that people

will feel panicky and less able to think critically'. The only problem to overcome was the fact *there is no* actual new deadly pathogen and only regular sick people. This meant that deaths from the 'new deadly pathogen' were going to be way too low for a real new deadly virus pandemic, but he said this could be overcome in the following ways – all of which would go on to happen:

1. You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent [you underpin this with fantasy 'computer projections']. Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.
2. You can [say that people] 'minimizing' the dangers are irresponsible and bully them into not talking about numbers.
3. You can talk crap about made up numbers hoping to blind people with pseudoscience.
4. You can start testing well people (who, of course, will also likely have shreds of coronavirus [RNA] in them) and thus inflate your 'case figures' with 'asymptomatic carriers' (you will of course have to spin that to sound deadly even though any virologist knows the more symptom-less cases you have the less deadly is your pathogen).

The scientist said that if you take these simple steps 'you can have your own entirely manufactured pandemic up and running in weeks'. His analysis made so early in the hoax was brilliantly prophetic of what would actually unfold. Pulling all the information together in these recent chapters we have this is simple 1, 2, 3, of how you can delude virtually the entire human population into believing in a 'virus' that doesn't exist:

- A 'Covid case' is someone who tests positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.
- A 'Covid death' is someone who dies of *any cause* within 28 days (or much longer) of testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.
- Asymptomatic means there is nothing wrong with you, but they claim you can pass on what you don't have to justify locking

down (quarantining) healthy people in totality.

The foundations of the hoax are that simple. A study involving ten million people in Wuhan, published in November, 2020, demolished the whole lie about those without symptoms passing on the ‘virus’. They found ‘300 asymptomatic cases’ and traced their contacts to find that not one of them was detected with the ‘virus’.

‘Asymptomatic’ patients and their contacts were isolated for no less than two weeks and nothing changed. I know it’s all crap, but if you are going to claim that those without symptoms can transmit ‘the virus’ then you must produce evidence for that and they never have. Even World Health Organization official Dr Maria Van Kerkhove, head of the emerging diseases and zoonosis unit, said as early as June, 2020, that she doubted the validity of asymptomatic transmission. She said that ‘from the data we have, it still seems to be rare that an asymptomatic person actually transmits onward to a secondary individual’ and by ‘rare’ she meant that she couldn’t cite any case of asymptomatic transmission.

The Ferguson factor

The problem for the Cult as it headed into March, 2020, when the script had lockdown due to start, was that despite all the manipulation of the case and death figures they still did not have enough people alleged to have died from ‘Covid’ to justify mass house arrest. This was overcome in the way the scientist described: ‘You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent ... Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.’ Enter one Professor Neil Ferguson, the Gates-funded ‘epidemiologist’ at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London. Ferguson is Britain’s Christian Drosten in that he has a dire record of predicting health outcomes, but is still called upon to advise government on the next health outcome when another ‘crisis’ comes along. This may seem to be a strange and ridiculous thing to do. Why would you keep turning for policy guidance to people who have a history of being

monumentally wrong? Ah, but it makes sense from the Cult point of view. These ‘experts’ keep on producing predictions that suit the Cult agenda for societal transformation and so it was with Neil Ferguson as he revealed his horrific (and clearly insane) computer model predictions that allowed lockdowns to be imposed in Britain, the United States and many other countries. Ferguson does not have even an A-level in biology and would appear to have no formal training in computer modelling, medicine or epidemiology, according to Derek Winton, an MSc in Computational Intelligence. He wrote an article somewhat aghast at what Ferguson did which included taking no account of respiratory disease ‘seasonality’ which means it is far worse in the winter months. Who would have thought that respiratory disease could be worse in the winter? Well, certainly not Ferguson.

The massively China-connected Imperial College and its bizarre professor provided the excuse for the long-incubated Chinese model of human control to travel westward at lightning speed. Imperial College confirms on its website that it collaborates with the Chinese Research Institute; publishes more than 600 research papers every year with Chinese research institutions; has 225 Chinese staff; 2,600 Chinese students – the biggest international group; 7,000 former students living in China which is the largest group outside the UK; and was selected for a tour by China’s President Xi Jinping during his state visit to the UK in 2015. The college takes major donations from China and describes itself as the UK’s number one university collaborator with Chinese research institutions. The China communist/fascist government did not appear phased by the woeful predictions of Ferguson and Imperial when during the lockdown that Ferguson induced the college signed a five-year collaboration deal with China tech giant Huawei that will have Huawei’s indoor 5G network equipment installed at the college’s West London tech campus along with an ‘AI cloud platform’. The deal includes Chinese sponsorship of Imperial’s Venture Catalyst entrepreneurship competition. Imperial is an example of the enormous influence the Chinese government has within British and North American

universities and research centres – and further afield. Up to 200 academics from more than a dozen UK universities are being investigated on suspicion of ‘unintentionally’ helping the Chinese government build weapons of mass destruction by ‘transferring world-leading research in advanced military technology such as aircraft, missile designs and cyberweapons’. Similar scandals have broken in the United States, but it’s all a coincidence. Imperial College serves the agenda in many other ways including the promotion of every aspect of the United Nations Agenda 21/2030 (the Great Reset) and produced computer models to show that human-caused ‘climate change’ is happening when in the real world it isn’t. Imperial College is driving the climate agenda as it drives the ‘Covid’ agenda (both Cult hoaxes) while Patrick Vallance, the UK government’s Chief Scientific Adviser on ‘Covid’, was named Chief Scientific Adviser to the UN ‘climate change’ conference known as COP26 hosted by the government in Glasgow, Scotland. ‘Covid’ and ‘climate’ are fundamentally connected.

Professor Woeful

From Imperial’s bosom came Neil Ferguson still advising government despite his previous disasters and it was announced early on that he and other key people like UK Chief Medical Adviser Chris Whitty had caught the ‘virus’ as the propaganda story was being sold. Somehow they managed to survive and we had Prime Minister Boris Johnson admitted to hospital with what was said to be a severe version of the ‘virus’ in this same period. His whole policy and demeanour changed when he returned to Downing Street. It’s a small world with these government advisors – especially in their communal connections to Gates – and Ferguson had partnered with Whitty to write a paper called ‘Infectious disease: Tough choices to reduce Ebola transmission’ which involved another scare-story that didn’t happen. Ferguson’s ‘models’ predicted that up to 150, 000 could die from ‘mad cow disease’, or BSE, and its version in sheep if it was transmitted to humans. BSE was not transmitted and instead triggered by an organophosphate pesticide used to treat a pest on

cows. Fewer than 200 deaths followed from the human form. Models by Ferguson and his fellow incompetents led to the unnecessary culling of millions of pigs, cattle and sheep in the foot and mouth outbreak in 2001 which destroyed the lives and livelihoods of farmers and their families who had often spent decades building their herds and flocks. Vast numbers of these animals did not have foot and mouth and had no contact with the infection. Another ‘expert’ behind the cull was Professor Roy Anderson, a computer modeller at Imperial College specialising in the epidemiology of *human*, not animal, disease. Anderson has served on the Bill and Melinda Gates Grand Challenges in Global Health advisory board and chairs another Gates-funded organisation. Gates is everywhere.

In a precursor to the ‘Covid’ script Ferguson backed closing schools ‘for prolonged periods’ over the swine flu ‘pandemic’ in 2009 and said it would affect a third of the world population if it continued to spread at the speed he claimed to be happening. His mates at Imperial College said much the same and a news report said: ‘One of the authors, the epidemiologist and disease modeller Neil Ferguson, who sits on the World Health Organisation’s emergency committee for the outbreak, said the virus had “full pandemic potential”.’ Professor Liam Donaldson, the Chris Whitty of his day as Chief Medical Officer, said the worst case could see 30 percent of the British people infected by swine flu with 65,000 dying. Ferguson and Donaldson were indeed proved correct when at the end of the year the number of deaths attributed to swine flu was 392. The term ‘expert’ is rather liberally applied unfortunately, not least to complete idiots. Swine flu ‘projections’ were great for GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) as millions rolled in for its Pandemrix influenza vaccine which led to brain damage with children most affected. The British government (taxpayers) paid out more than £60 million in compensation after GSK was given immunity from prosecution. Yet another ‘Covid’ déjà vu. Swine flu was supposed to have broken out in Mexico, but Dr Wolfgang Wodarg, a German doctor, former member of parliament and critic of the ‘Covid’ hoax, observed ‘the spread of swine flu’ in Mexico City at the time. He

said: 'What we experienced in Mexico City was a very mild flu which did not kill more than usual – which killed even fewer people than usual.' Hyping the fear against all the facts is not unique to 'Covid' and has happened many times before. Ferguson is reported to have over-estimated the projected death toll of bird flu (H5N1) by some three million-fold, but bird flu vaccine makers again made a killing from the scare. This is some of the background to the Neil Ferguson who produced the perfectly-timed computer models in early 2020 predicting that half a million people would die in Britain without draconian lockdown and 2.2 million in the United States. Politicians panicked, people panicked, and lockdowns of alleged short duration were instigated to 'flatten the curve' of cases gleaned from a test not testing for the 'virus'. I said at the time that the public could forget the 'short duration' bit. This was an agenda to destroy the livelihoods of the population and force them into mass control through dependency and there was going to be nothing 'short' about it. American researcher Daniel Horowitz described the consequences of the 'models' spewed out by Gates-funded Ferguson and Imperial College:

What led our government and the governments of many other countries into panic was a single Imperial College of UK study, funded by global warming activists, that predicted 2.2 million deaths if we didn't lock down the country. In addition, the reported 8-9% death rate in Italy scared us into thinking there was some other mutation of this virus that they got, which might have come here.

Together with the fact that we were finally testing and had the ability to actually report new cases, we thought we were headed for a death spiral. But again ... we can't flatten a curve if we don't know when the curve started.

How about it *never* started?

Giving them what they want

An investigation by German news outlet *Welt Am Sonntag* (*World on Sunday*) revealed how in March, 2020, the German government gathered together 'leading scientists from several research institutes and universities' and 'together, they were to produce a [modelling]

paper that would serve as legitimization for further tough political measures'. The Cult agenda was justified by computer modelling not based on evidence or reality; it was specifically constructed to justify the Cult demand for lockdowns all over the world to destroy the independent livelihoods of the global population. All these modellers and everyone responsible for the 'Covid' hoax have a date with a trial like those in Nuremberg after World War Two when Nazis faced the consequences of their war crimes. These corrupt-beyond-belief 'modellers' wrote the paper according to government instructions and it said that if lockdown measures were lifted then up to one million Germans would die from 'Covid-19' adding that some would die 'agonizingly at home, gasping for breath' unable to be treated by hospitals that couldn't cope. All lies. No matter – it gave the Cult all that it wanted. What did long-time government 'modeller' Neil Ferguson say? If the UK and the United States didn't lockdown half a million would die in Britain and 2.2 million Americans. Anyone see a theme here? 'Modellers' are such a crucial part of the lockdown strategy that we should look into their background and follow the money. Researcher Rosemary Frei produced an excellent article headlined 'The Modelling-paper Mafiosi'. She highlights a guy called John Edmunds, a British epidemiologist, and professor in the Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health at the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine. He studied at Imperial College. Edmunds is a member of government 'Covid' advisory bodies which have been dictating policy, the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group (NERVTAG) and the Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE).

Ferguson, another member of NERVTAG and SAGE, led the way with the original 'virus' and Edmunds has followed in the 'variant' stage and especially the so-called UK or Kent variant known as the 'Variant of Concern' (VOC) B.1.1.7. He said in a co-written report for the Centre for Mathematical modelling of Infectious Diseases at the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, with input from the Centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group, that there was 'a realistic

possibility that VOC B.1.1.7 is associated with an increased risk of death compared to non-VOC viruses'. Fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine, fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine. Rosemary Frei reveals that almost all the paper's authors and members of the modelling centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group receive funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and/or the associated Gates-funded Wellcome Trust. The paper was published by e-journal *Medr* ^{xiv} which only publishes papers not peer-reviewed and the journal was established by an organisation headed by Facebook's Mark Zuckerberg and his missus. What a small world it is. Frei discovered that Edmunds is on the Scientific Advisory Board of the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI) which was established by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Klaus Schwab's Davos World Economic Forum and Big Pharma giant Wellcome. CEPI was 'launched in Davos [in 2017] to develop vaccines to stop future epidemics', according to its website. 'Our mission is to accelerate the development of vaccines against emerging infectious diseases and enable equitable access to these vaccines for people during outbreaks.' What kind people they are. Rosemary Frei reveals that Public Health England (PHE) director Susan Hopkins is an author of her organisation's non-peer-reviewed reports on 'new variants'. Hopkins is a professor of infectious diseases at London's Imperial College which is gifted tens of millions of dollars a year by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Gates-funded modelling disaster Neil Ferguson also co-authors Public Health England reports and he spoke in December, 2020, about the potential danger of the B.1.1.7. 'UK variant' promoted by Gates-funded modeller John Edmunds. When I come to the 'Covid vaccines' the 'new variants' will be shown for what they are – bollocks.

Connections, connections

All these people and modellers are lockdown-obsessed or, put another way, they demand what the Cult demands. Edmunds said in January, 2021, that to ease lockdowns too soon would be a disaster and they had to 'vaccinate much, much, much more widely than the

elderly'. Rosemary Frei highlights that Edmunds is married to Jeanne Pimenta who is described in a LinkedIn profile as director of epidemiology at GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) and she held shares in the company. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of GSK and has a deferred bonus of shares in the company worth £600,000. GSK has serious business connections with Bill Gates and is collaborating with mRNA-'vaccine' company CureVac to make 'vaccines' for the new variants that Edmunds is talking about. GSK is planning a 'Covid vaccine' with drug giant Sanofi. Puppet Prime Minister Boris Johnson announced in the spring of 2021 that up to 60 million vaccine doses were to be made at the GSK facility at Barnard Castle in the English North East. Barnard Castle, with a population of just 6,000, was famously visited in breach of lockdown rules in April, 2020, by Johnson aide Dominic Cummings who said that he drove there 'to test his eyesight' before driving back to London. Cummings would be better advised to test his integrity – not that it would take long. The GSK facility had nothing to do with his visit then although I'm sure Patrick Vallance would have been happy to arrange an introduction and some tea and biscuits. Ruthless psychopath Gates has made yet another fortune from vaccines in collaboration with Big Pharma companies and gushes at the phenomenal profits to be made from vaccines – more than a 20-to-1 return as he told one interviewer. Gates also tweeted in December, 2019, with the foreknowledge of what was coming: 'What's next for our foundation? I'm particularly excited about what the next year could mean for one of the best buys in global health: vaccines.'

Modeller John Edmunds is a big promotor of vaccines as all these people appear to be. He's the dean of the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine's Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health which is primarily funded by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and the Gates-established and funded GAVI vaccine alliance which is the Gates vehicle to vaccinate the world. The organisation Doctors Without Borders has described GAVI as being 'aimed more at supporting drug-industry desires to promote new

products than at finding the most efficient and sustainable means for fighting the diseases of poverty'. But then that's why the psychopath Gates created it. John Edmunds said in a video that the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine is involved in every aspect of vaccine development including large-scale clinical trials. He contends that mathematical modelling can show that vaccines protect individuals and society. That's on the basis of shit in and shit out, I take it. Edmunds serves on the UK Vaccine Network as does Ferguson and the government's foremost 'Covid' adviser, the grim-faced, dark-eyed Chris Whitty. The Vaccine Network says it works 'to support the government to identify and shortlist targeted investment opportunities for the most promising vaccines and vaccine technologies that will help combat infectious diseases with epidemic potential, and to address structural issues related to the UK's broader vaccine infrastructure'. Ferguson is acting Director of the Imperial College Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium which has funding from the Bill and Melina Gates Foundation and the Gates-created GAVI 'vaccine alliance'. Anyone wonder why these characters see vaccines as the answer to every problem? Ferguson is wildly enthusiastic in his support for GAVI's campaign to vaccine children en masse in poor countries. You would expect someone like Gates who has constantly talked about the need to reduce the population to want to fund vaccines to keep more people alive. I'm sure that's why he does it. The John Edmunds London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine (LSHTM) has a Vaccines Manufacturing Innovation Centre which develops, tests and commercialises vaccines. Rosemary Frei writes:

The vaccines centre also performs affiliated activities like combating 'vaccine hesitancy'. The latter includes the Vaccine Confidence Project. The project's stated purpose is, among other things, 'to provide analysis and guidance for early response and engagement with the public to ensure sustained confidence in vaccines and immunisation'. The Vaccine Confidence Project's director is LSHTM professor Heidi Larson. For more than a decade she's been researching how to combat vaccine hesitancy.

How the bloody hell can blokes like John Edmunds and Neil Ferguson with those connections and financial ties model 'virus' case

and death projections for the government and especially in a way that gives their paymasters like Gates exactly what they want? It's insane, but this is what you find throughout the world.

'Covid' is not dangerous, oops, wait, yes it is

Only days before Ferguson's nightmare scenario made Jackboot Johnson take Britain into a China-style lockdown to save us from a deadly 'virus' the UK government website gov.uk was reporting something very different to Ferguson on a page of official government guidance for 'high consequence infectious diseases (HCID)'. It said this about 'Covid-19':

As of 19 March 2020, COVID-19 *is no longer considered to be a high consequence infectious diseases (HCID) in the UK* [my emphasis]. The 4 nations public health HCID group made an interim recommendation in January 2020 to classify COVID-19 as an HCID. This was based on consideration of the UK HCID criteria about the virus and the disease with information available during the early stages of the outbreak.

Now that more is known about COVID-19, the public health bodies in the UK have reviewed the most up to date information about COVID-19 against the UK HCID criteria. They have determined that several features have now changed; in particular, more information is available about mortality rates (low overall), and there is now greater clinical awareness and a specific and sensitive laboratory test, the availability of which continues to increase. The Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP) is also of the opinion that COVID-19 should no longer be classified as an HCID.

Soon after the government had been exposed for downgrading the risk they upgraded it again and everyone was back to singing from the same Cult hymn book. Ferguson and his fellow Gates clones indicated that lockdowns and restrictions would have to continue until a Gates-funded vaccine was developed. Gates said the same because Ferguson and his like were repeating the Gates script which is the Cult script. 'Flatten the curve' became an ongoing nightmare of continuing lockdowns with periods in between of severe restrictions in pursuit of destroying independent incomes and had nothing to do with protecting health about which the Cult gives not a shit. Why wouldn't Ferguson be pushing a vaccine 'solution' when he's owned by vaccine-obsessive Gates who makes a fortune from them and

when Ferguson heads the Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium at Imperial College funded by the Gates Foundation and GAVI, the ‘vaccine alliance’, created by Gates as his personal vaccine promotion operation? To compound the human catastrophe that Ferguson’s ‘models’ did so much to create he was later exposed for breaking his own lockdown rules by having sexual liaisons with his married girlfriend Antonia Staats at his home while she was living at another location with her husband and children. Staats was a ‘climate’ activist and senior campaigner at the Soros-funded Avaaz which I wouldn’t trust to tell me that grass is green. Ferguson had to resign as a government advisor over this hypocrisy in May, 2020, but after a period of quiet he was back being quoted by the ridiculous media on the need for more lockdowns and a vaccine rollout. Other government-advising ‘scientists’ from Imperial College held the fort in his absence and said lockdown could be indefinite until a vaccine was found. The Cult script was being sung by the payrolled choir. I said there was no intention of going back to ‘normal’ when the ‘vaccine’ came because the ‘vaccine’ is part of a very different agenda that I will discuss in Human 2.0. Why would the Cult want to let the world go back to normal when destroying that normal forever was the whole point of what was happening? House arrest, closing businesses and schools through lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks all followed the Ferguson fantasy models. Again as I predicted (these people are so predictable) when the ‘vaccine’ arrived we were told that house arrest, lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks would still have to continue. I will deal with the masks in the next chapter because they are of fundamental importance.

Where's the 'pandemic'?

Any mildly in-depth assessment of the figures revealed what was really going on. Cult-funded and controlled organisations still have genuine people working within them such is the number involved. So it is with Genevieve Briand, assistant program director of the Applied Economics master’s degree program at Johns Hopkins

University. She analysed the impact that 'Covid-19' had on deaths from *all* causes in the United States using official data from the CDC for the period from early February to early September, 2020. She found that allegedly 'Covid' *related*-deaths exceeded those from heart disease which she found strange with heart disease always the biggest cause of fatalities. Her research became even more significant when she noted the sudden decline in 2020 of *all* non-'Covid' deaths: 'This trend is completely contrary to the pattern observed in all previous years ... the total decrease in deaths by other causes almost exactly equals the increase in deaths by Covid-19.' This was such a game, set and match in terms of what was happening that Johns Hopkins University deleted the article on the grounds that it 'was being used to support false and dangerous inaccuracies about the impact of the pandemic'. No – because it exposed the scam from official CDC figures and this was confirmed when those figures were published in January, 2021. Here we can see the effect of people dying from heart attacks, cancer, road accidents and gunshot wounds – *anything* – having 'Covid-19' on the death certificate along with those diagnosed from 'symptoms' who had even not tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I am not kidding with the gunshot wounds, by the way. Brenda Bock, coroner in Grand County, Colorado, revealed that two gunshot victims tested positive for the 'virus' within the previous 30 days and were therefore classified as 'Covid deaths'. Bock said: 'These two people had tested positive for Covid, but that's not what killed them. A gunshot wound is what killed them.' She said she had not even finished her investigation when the state listed the gunshot victims as deaths due to the 'virus'. The death and case figures for 'Covid-19' are an absolute joke and yet they are repeated like parrots by the media, politicians and alleged medical 'experts'. The official Cult narrative is the only show in town.

Genevieve Briand found that deaths from all causes were not exceptional in 2020 compared with previous years and a Spanish magazine published figures that said the same about Spain which was a 'Covid' propaganda hotspot at one point. *Discovery Salud*, a

health and medicine magazine, quoted government figures which showed how 17,000 *fewer* people died in Spain in 2020 than in 2019 and more than 26,000 fewer than in 2018. The age-standardised mortality rate for England and Wales when age distribution is taken into account was significantly lower in 2020 than the 1970s, 80s and 90s, and was only the ninth highest since 2000. Where is the ‘pandemic’?

Post mortems and autopsies virtually disappeared for ‘Covid’ deaths amid claims that ‘virus-infected’ bodily fluids posed a risk to those carrying out the autopsy. This was rejected by renowned German pathologist and forensic doctor Klaus Püschel who said that he and his staff had by then done 150 autopsies on ‘Covid’ patients with no problems at all. He said they were needed to know why some ‘Covid’ patients suffered blood clots and not severe respiratory infections. The ‘virus’ is, after all, called SARS or ‘severe acute respiratory syndrome’. I highlighted in the spring of 2020 this phenomenon and quoted New York intensive care doctor Cameron Kyle-Sidell who posted a soon deleted YouTube video to say that they had been told to prepare to treat an infectious disease called ‘Covid-19’, but that was not what they were dealing with. Instead he likened the lung condition of the most severely ill patients to what you would expect with cabin depressurisation in a plane at 30,000 feet or someone dropped on the top of Everest without oxygen or acclimatisation. I have never said this is not happening to a small minority of alleged ‘Covid’ patients – I am saying this is not caused by a phantom ‘contagious virus’. Indeed Kyle-Sidell said that ‘Covid-19’ was not the disease they were told was coming their way. ‘We are operating under a medical paradigm that is untrue,’ he said, and he believed they were treating the wrong disease: ‘These people are being slowly starved of oxygen.’ Patients would take off their oxygen masks in a state of fear and stress and while they were blue in the face on the brink of death. They did not look like patients dying of pneumonia. You can see why they don’t want autopsies when their virus doesn’t exist and there is another condition in some people that they don’t wish to be uncovered. I should add here that

the 5G system of millimetre waves was being rapidly introduced around the world in 2020 and even more so now as they fire 5G at the Earth from satellites. At 60 gigahertz within the 5G range that frequency interacts with the oxygen molecule and stops people breathing in sufficient oxygen to be absorbed into the bloodstream. They are installing 5G in schools and hospitals. The world is not mad or anything. 5G can cause major changes to the lungs and blood as I detail in *The Answer* and these consequences are labelled 'Covid-19', the alleged symptoms of which can be caused by 5G and other electromagnetic frequencies as cells respond to radiation poisoning.

The 'Covid death' scam

Dr Scott Jensen, a Minnesota state senator and medical doctor, exposed 'Covid' Medicare payment incentives to hospitals and death certificate manipulation. He said he was sent a seven-page document by the US Department of Health 'coaching' him on how to fill out death certificates which had never happened before. The document said that he didn't need to have a laboratory test for 'Covid-19' to put that on the death certificate and that shocked him when death certificates are supposed to be about facts. Jensen described how doctors had been 'encouraged, if not pressured' to make a diagnosis of 'Covid-19' if they thought it was probable or '*presumed*'. No positive test was necessary – not that this would have mattered anyway. He said doctors were told to diagnose 'Covid' by symptoms when these were the same as colds, allergies, other respiratory problems, and certainly with influenza which 'disappeared' in the 'Covid' era. A common sniffle was enough to get the dreaded verdict. Ontario authorities decreed that a single care home resident with *one* symptom from a long list must lead to the isolation of the entire home. Other courageous doctors like Jensen made the same point about death figure manipulation and how deaths by other causes were falling while 'Covid-19 deaths' were rising at the same rate due to re-diagnosis. Their videos rarely survive long on YouTube with its Cult-supporting algorithms courtesy of CEO Susan Wojcicki and her bosses at Google. Figure-tampering was so glaring

and ubiquitous that even officials were letting it slip or outright saying it. UK chief scientific adviser Patrick Vallance said on one occasion that ‘Covid’ on the death certificate doesn’t mean ‘Covid’ was the cause of death (so why the hell is it there?) and we had the rare sight of a BBC reporter telling the truth when she said: ‘Someone could be successfully treated for Covid, in say April, discharged, and then in June, get run over by a bus and die ... That person would still be counted as a Covid death in England.’ Yet the BBC and the rest of the world media went on repeating the case and death figures as if they were real. Illinois Public Health Director Dr Ngozi Ezike revealed the deceit while her bosses must have been clenching their buttocks:

If you were in a hospice and given a few weeks to live and you were then found to have Covid that would be counted as a Covid death. [There might be] a clear alternate cause, but it is still listed as a Covid death. So everyone listed as a Covid death doesn’t mean that was the cause of the death, but that they had Covid at the time of death.

Yes, a ‘Covid virus’ never shown to exist and tested for with a test not testing for the ‘virus’. In the first period of the pandemic hoax through the spring of 2020 the process began of designating almost everything a ‘Covid’ death and this has continued ever since. I sat in a restaurant one night listening to a loud conversation on the next table where a family was discussing in bewilderment how a relative who had no symptoms of ‘Covid’, and had died of a long-term problem, could have been diagnosed a death by the ‘virus’. I could understand their bewilderment. If they read this book they will know why this medical fraud has been perpetrated the world over.

Some media truth shock

The media ignored the evidence of death certificate fraud until eventually one columnist did speak out when she saw it first-hand. Bel Mooney is a long-time national newspaper journalist in Britain currently working for the *Daily Mail*. Her article on February 19th, 2021, carried this headline: ‘My dad Ted passed three Covid tests

and died of a chronic illness yet he's officially one of Britain's 120,000 victims of the virus and is far from alone ... so how many more are there?' She told how her 99-year-old father was in a care home with a long-standing chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and vascular dementia. Maybe, but he was still aware enough to tell her from the start that there was no 'virus' and he refused the 'vaccine' for that reason. His death was not unexpected given his chronic health problems and Mooney said she was shocked to find that 'Covid-19' was declared the cause of death on his death certificate. She said this was a 'bizarre and unacceptable untruth' for a man with long-time health problems who had tested negative twice at the home for the 'virus'. I was also shocked by this story although not by what she said. I had been highlighting the death certificate manipulation for ten months. It was the confirmation that a professional full-time journalist only realised this was going on when it affected her directly and neither did she know that whether her dad tested positive or negative was irrelevant with the test not testing for the 'virus'. Where had she been? She said she did not believe in 'conspiracy theories' without knowing I'm sure that this and 'conspiracy theorists' were terms put into widespread circulation by the CIA in the 1960s to discredit those who did not accept the ridiculous official story of the Kennedy assassination. A blanket statement of 'I don't believe in conspiracy theories' is always bizarre. The dictionary definition of the term alone means the world is drowning in conspiracies. What she said was even more daft when her dad had just been affected by the 'Covid' conspiracy. Why else does she think that 'Covid-19' was going on the death certificates of people who died of something else?

To be fair once she saw from personal experience what was happening she didn't mince words. Mooney was called by the care home on the morning of February 9th to be told her father had died in his sleep. When she asked for the official cause of death what came back was 'Covid-19'. Mooney challenged this and was told there had been deaths from Covid on the dementia floor (confirmed by a test not testing for the 'virus') so they considered it 'reasonable

to assume'. 'But doctor,' Mooney rightly protested, 'an assumption isn't a diagnosis.' She said she didn't blame the perfectly decent and sympathetic doctor – 'he was just doing his job'. Sorry, but that's *bullshit*. He wasn't doing his job at all. He was putting a false cause of death on the death certificate and that is a criminal offence for which he should be brought to account and the same with the millions of doctors worldwide who have done the same. They were not doing their job they were following orders and that must not wash at new Nuremberg trials any more than it did at the first ones. Mooney's doctor was 'assuming' (presuming) as he was told to, but 'just following orders' makes no difference to his actions. A doctor's job is to serve the patient and the truth, not follow orders, but that's what they have done all over the world and played a central part in making the 'Covid' hoax possible with all its catastrophic consequences for humanity. Shame on them and they must answer for their actions. Mooney said her disquiet worsened when she registered her father's death by telephone and was told by the registrar there had been very many other cases like hers where 'the deceased' had not tested positive for 'Covid' yet it was recorded as the cause of death. The test may not matter, but those involved at their level *think* it matters and it shows a callous disregard for accurate diagnosis. The pressure to do this is coming from the top of the national 'health' pyramids which in turn obey the World Health Organization which obeys Gates and the Cult. Mooney said the registrar agreed that this must distort the national figures adding that 'the strangest thing is that every winter we record countless deaths from flu, and this winter there have been none. Not one!' She asked if the registrar thought deaths from flu were being misdiagnosed and lumped together with 'Covid' deaths. The answer was a 'puzzled yes'. Mooney said that the funeral director said the same about 'Covid' deaths which had nothing to do with 'Covid'. They had lost count of the number of families upset by this and other funeral companies in different countries have had the same experience. Mooney wrote:

The nightly shroud-waving and shocking close-ups of pain imposed on us by the TV news bewildered and terrified the population into eager compliance with lockdowns. We were invited to ‘save the NHS’ and to grieve for strangers – the real-life loved ones behind those shocking death counts. Why would the public imagine what I now fear, namely that the way Covid-19 death statistics are compiled might make the numbers seem greater than they are?

Oh, just a little bit – like 100 percent.

Do the maths

Mooney asked why a country would wish to skew its mortality figures by wrongly certifying deaths? What had been going on? Well, if you don’t believe in conspiracies you will never find the answer which is that *it’s a conspiracy*. She did, however, describe what she had discovered as a ‘national scandal’. In reality it’s a global scandal and happening everywhere. Pillars of this conspiracy were all put into place before the button was pressed with the Drosten PCR protocol and high amplifications to produce the cases and death certificate changes to secure illusory ‘Covid’ deaths.

Mooney notes that normally two doctors were needed to certify a death, with one having to know the patient, and how the rules were changed in the spring of 2020 to allow one doctor to do this. In the same period ‘Covid deaths’ were decreed to be all cases where Covid-19 was put on the death certificate even without a positive test or any symptoms. Mooney asked: ‘How many of the 30,851 (as of January 15) care home resident deaths with Covid-19 on the certificate (32.4 per cent of all deaths so far) were based on an assumption, like that of my father? And what has that done to our national psyche?’ All of them is the answer to the first question and it has devastated and dismantled the national psyche, actually the global psyche, on a colossal scale. In the UK case and death data is compiled by organisations like Public Health England (PHE) and the Office for National Statistics (ONS). Mooney highlights the insane policy of counting a death from any cause as ‘Covid-19’ if this happens within 28 days of a positive test (with a test not testing for the ‘virus’) and she points out that ONS statistics reflect deaths ‘involving Covid’ ‘or due to Covid’ which meant in practice any

death where ‘Covid-19’ was mentioned on the death certificate. She described the consequences of this fraud:

Most people will accept the narrative they are fed, so panicky governments here and in Europe witnessed the harsh measures enacted in totalitarian China and jumped into lockdown. Headlines about Covid deaths tolled like the knell that would bring doomsday to us all. Fear stalked our empty streets. Politicians parroted the frankly ridiculous aim of ‘zero Covid’ and shut down the economy, while most British people agreed that lockdown was essential and (astonishingly to me, as a patriotic Brit) even wanted more restrictions.

For what? Lies on death certificates? Never mind the grim toll of lives ruined, suicides, schools closed, rising inequality, depression, cancelled hospital treatments, cancer patients in a torture of waiting, poverty, economic devastation, loneliness, families kept apart, and so on. How many lives have been lost as a direct result of lockdown?

She said that we could join in a national chorus of shock and horror at reaching the 120,000 death toll which was surely certain to have been totally skewed all along, but what about the human cost of lockdown justified by these ‘death figures’? *The British Medical Journal* had reported a 1,493 percent increase in cases of children taken to Great Ormond Street Hospital with abusive head injuries alone and then there was the effect on families:

Perhaps the most shocking thing about all this is that families have been kept apart – and obeyed the most irrational, changing rules at the whim of government – because they believed in the statistics. They succumbed to fear, which his generation rejected in that war fought for freedom. Dad (God rest his soul) would be angry. And so am I.

Another theme to watch is that in the winter months when there are more deaths from all causes they focus on ‘Covid’ deaths and in the summer when the British Lung Foundation says respiratory disease plummets by 80 percent they rage on about ‘cases’. Either way fascism on population is always the answer.

Nazi eugenics in the 21st century

Elderly people in care homes have been isolated from their families month after lonely month with no contact with relatives and grandchildren who were banned from seeing them. We were told

that lockdown fascism was to ‘protect the vulnerable’ like elderly people. At the same time Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) orders were placed on their medical files so that if they needed resuscitation it wasn’t done and ‘Covid-19’ went on their death certificates. Old people were not being ‘protected’ they were being culled – murdered in truth. DNR orders were being decreed for disabled and young people with learning difficulties or psychological problems. The UK Care Quality Commission, a non-departmental body of the Department of Health and Social Care, found that 34 percent of those working in health and social care were pressured into placing ‘do not attempt cardiopulmonary resuscitation’ orders on ‘Covid’ patients who suffered from disabilities and learning difficulties without involving the patient or their families in the decision. UK judges ruled that an elderly woman with dementia should have the DNA-manipulating ‘Covid vaccine’ against her son’s wishes and that a man with severe learning difficulties should have the jab despite his family’s objections. Never mind that many had already died. The judiciary always supports doctors and government in fascist dictatorships. They wouldn’t dare do otherwise. A horrific video was posted showing fascist officers from Los Angeles police forcibly giving the ‘Covid’ shot to women with special needs who were screaming that they didn’t want it. The same fascists are seen giving the jab to a sleeping elderly woman in a care home. This is straight out of the Nazi playbook. Hitler’s Nazis committed mass murder of the mentally ill and physically disabled throughout Germany and occupied territories in the programme that became known as Aktion T4, or just T4. Sabbatian-controlled Hitler and his grotesque crazies set out to kill those they considered useless and unnecessary. The Reich Committee for the Scientific Registering of Hereditary and Congenital Illnesses registered the births of babies identified by physicians to have ‘defects’. By 1941 alone more than 5,000 children were murdered by the state and it is estimated that in total the number of innocent people killed in Aktion T4 was between 275,000 and 300,000. Parents were told their children had been sent away for ‘special treatment’ never to return. It is rather pathetic to see claims about plans for new extermination camps being dismissed today

when the same force behind current events did precisely that 80 years ago. Margaret Sanger was a Cult operative who used 'birth control' to sanitise her programme of eugenics. Organisations she founded became what is now Planned Parenthood. Sanger proposed that 'the whole dysgenic population would have its choice of segregation or sterilization'. These included epileptics, 'feeble-minded', and prostitutes. Sanger opposed charity because it perpetuated 'human waste'. She reveals the Cult mentality and if anyone thinks that extermination camps are a 'conspiracy theory' their naivety is touching if breathtakingly stupid.

If you don't believe that doctors can act with callous disregard for their patients it is worth considering that doctors and medical staff agreed to put government-decreed DNR orders on medical files and do nothing when resuscitation is called for. I don't know what you call such people in your house. In mine they are Nazis from the Josef Mengele School of Medicine. Phenomenal numbers of old people have died worldwide from the effects of lockdown, depression, lack of treatment, the 'vaccine' (more later) and losing the will to live. A common response at the start of the manufactured pandemic was to remove old people from hospital beds and transfer them to nursing homes. The decision would result in a mass cull of elderly people in those homes through lack of treatment – *not* 'Covid'. Care home whistleblowers have told how once the 'Covid' era began doctors would not come to their homes to treat patients and they were begging for drugs like antibiotics that often never came. The most infamous example was ordered by New York governor Andrew Cuomo, brother of a moronic CNN host, who amazingly was given an Emmy Award for his handling of the 'Covid crisis' by the ridiculous Wokers that hand them out. Just how ridiculous could be seen in February, 2021, when a Department of Justice and FBI investigation began into how thousands of old people in New York died in nursing homes after being discharged from hospital to make way for 'Covid' patients on Cuomo's say-so – and how he and his staff covered up these facts. This couldn't have happened to a nicer psychopath. Even then there was a 'Covid' spin. Reports said that

thousands of old people who tested positive for ‘Covid’ in hospital were transferred to nursing homes to both die of ‘Covid’ and transmit it to others. No – they were in hospital because they were ill and the fact that they tested positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ is irrelevant. They were ill often with respiratory diseases ubiquitous in old people near the end of their lives. Their transfer out of hospital meant that their treatment stopped and many would go on to die.

They're old. Who gives a damn?

I have exposed in the books for decades the Cult plan to cull the world’s old people and even to introduce at some point what they call a ‘demise pill’ which at a certain age everyone would take and be out of here by law. In March, 2021, Spain legalised euthanasia and assisted suicide following the Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg and Canada on the Tiptoe to the demise pill. Treatment of old people by many ‘care’ homes has been a disgrace in the ‘Covid’ era. There are many, many, caring staff – I know some. There have, however, been legions of stories about callous treatment of old people and their families. Police were called when families came to take their loved ones home in the light of isolation that was killing them. They became prisoners of the state. Care home residents in insane, fascist Ontario, Canada, were not allowed to leave their *room* once the ‘Covid’ hoax began. UK staff have even wheeled elderly people away from windows where family members were talking with them. Oriana Criscuolo from Stockport in the English North West dropped off some things for her 80-year-old father who has Parkinson’s disease and dementia and she wanted to wave to him through a ground-floor window. She was told that was ‘illegal’. When she went anyway they closed the curtains in the middle of the day. Oriana said:

It’s just unbelievable. I cannot understand how care home staff – people who are being paid to care – have become so uncaring. Their behaviour is inhumane and cruel. It’s beyond belief.

She was right and this was not a one-off. What a way to end your life in such loveless circumstances. UK registered nurse Nicky Millen, a proper old school nurse for 40 years, said that when she started her career care was based on dignity, choice, compassion and empathy. Now she said ‘the things that are important to me have gone out of the window.’ She was appalled that people were dying without their loved ones and saying goodbye on iPads. Nicky described how a distressed 89-year-old lady stroked her face and asked her ‘how many paracetamol would it take to finish me off’. Life was no longer worth living while not seeing her family. Nicky said she was humiliated in front of the ward staff and patients for letting the lady stroke her face and giving her a cuddle. Such is the dehumanisation that the ‘Covid’ hoax has brought to the surface. Nicky worked in care homes where patients told her they were being held prisoner. ‘I want to live until I die’, one said to her. ‘I had a lady in tears because she hadn’t seen her great-grandson.’ Nicky was compassionate old school meeting psychopathic New Normal. She also said she had worked on a ‘Covid’ ward with no ‘Covid’ patients. Jewish writer Shai Held wrote an article in March, 2020, which was headlined ‘The Staggering, Heartless Cruelty Toward the Elderly’. What he described was happening from the earliest days of lockdown. He said ‘the elderly’ were considered a group and not unique individuals (the way of the Woke). Shai Held said:

Notice how the all-too-familiar rhetoric of dehumanization works: ‘The elderly’ are bunched together as a faceless mass, all of them considered culprits and thus effectively deserving of the suffering the pandemic will inflict upon them. Lost entirely is the fact that the elderly are individual human beings, each with a distinctive face and voice, each with hopes and dreams, memories and regrets, friendships and marriages, loves lost and loves sustained.

‘The elderly’ have become another dehumanised group for which anything goes and for many that has resulted in cold disregard for their rights and their life. The distinctive face that Held talks about is designed to be deleted by masks until everyone is part of a faceless mass.

'War-zone' hospitals myth

Again and again medical professionals have told me what was really going on and how hospitals 'overrun like war zones' according to the media were virtually empty. The mantra from medical whistleblowers was please don't use my name or my career is over. Citizen journalists around the world sneaked into hospitals to film evidence exposing the 'war-zone' lie. They really *were* largely empty with closed wards and operating theatres. I met a hospital worker in my town on the Isle of Wight during the first lockdown in 2020 who said the only island hospital had never been so quiet. Lockdown was justified by the psychopaths to stop hospitals being overrun. At the same time that the island hospital was near-empty the military arrived here to provide *extra beds*. It was all propaganda to ramp up the fear to ensure compliance with fascism as were never-used temporary hospitals with thousands of beds known as Nightingales and never-used make-shift mortuaries opened by the criminal UK government. A man who helped to install those extra island beds attributed to the army said they were never used and the hospital was empty. Doctors and nurses 'stood around talking or on their phones, wandering down to us to see what we were doing'. There were no masks or social distancing. He accused the useless local island paper, the *County Press*, of 'pumping the fear as if our hospital was overrun and we only have one so it should have been'. He described ambulances parked up with crews outside in deck chairs. When his brother called an ambulance he was told there was a two-hour backlog which he called 'bullshit'. An old lady on the island fell 'and was in a bad way', but a caller who rang for an ambulance was told the situation wasn't urgent enough. Ambulance stations were working under capacity while people would hear ambulances with sirens blaring driving through the streets. When those living near the stations realised what was going on they would follow them as they left, circulated around an urban area with the sirens going, and then came back without stopping. All this was to increase levels of fear and the same goes for the 'ventilator shortage crisis' that cost tens of millions for hastily produced ventilators never to be used.

Ambulance crews that agreed to be exploited in this way for fear propaganda might find themselves a mirror. I wish them well with that. Empty hospitals were the obvious consequence of treatment and diagnoses of non-'Covid' conditions cancelled and those involved handed a death sentence. People have been dying at home from undiagnosed and untreated cancer, heart disease and other life-threatening conditions to allow empty hospitals to deal with a 'pandemic' that wasn't happening.

Death of the innocent

'War-zones' have been laying off nursing staff, even doctors where they can. There was no work for them. Lockdown was justified by saving lives and protecting the vulnerable they were actually killing with DNR orders and preventing empty hospitals being 'overrun'. In Britain the mantra of stay at home to 'save the NHS' was everywhere and across the world the same story was being sold when it was all lies. Two California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi at Accelerated Urgent Care in Bakersfield, held a news conference in April, 2020, to say that intensive care units in California were 'empty, essentially', with hospitals shutting floors, not treating patients and laying off doctors. The California health system was working at minimum capacity 'getting rid of doctors because we just don't have the volume'. They said that people with conditions such as heart disease and cancer were not coming to hospital out of fear of 'Covid-19'. Their video was deleted by Susan Wojcicki's Cult-owned YouTube after reaching five million views. Florida governor Ron Desantis, who rejected the severe lockdowns of other states and is being targeted for doing so, said that in March, 2020, every US governor was given models claiming they would run out of hospital beds in days. That was never going to happen and the 'modellers' knew it. Deceit can be found at every level of the system. Urgent children's operations were cancelled including fracture repairs and biopsies to spot cancer. Eric Nicholls, a consultant paediatrician, said 'this is obviously concerning and we need to return to normal operating and to increase capacity as soon as possible'. Psychopaths

in power were rather less concerned *because* they are psychopaths. Deletion of urgent care and diagnosis has been happening all over the world and how many kids and others have died as a result of the actions of these cold and heartless lunatics dictating ‘health’ policy? The number must be stratospheric. Richard Sullivan, professor of cancer and global health at King’s College London, said people feared ‘Covid’ more than cancer such was the campaign of fear. ‘Years of lost life will be quite dramatic’, Sullivan said, with ‘a huge amount of avoidable mortality’. Sarah Woolnough, executive director for policy at Cancer Research UK, said there had been a 75 percent drop in urgent referrals to hospitals by family doctors of people with suspected cancer. Sullivan said that ‘a lot of services have had to scale back – we’ve seen a dramatic decrease in the amount of elective cancer surgery’. Lockdown deaths worldwide has been absolutely fantastic with the *New York Post* reporting how data confirmed that ‘lockdowns end more lives than they save’:

There was a sharp decline in visits to emergency rooms and an increase in fatal heart attacks because patients didn’t receive prompt treatment. Many fewer people were screened for cancer. Social isolation contributed to excess deaths from dementia and Alzheimer’s.

Researchers predicted that the social and economic upheaval would lead to tens of thousands of “deaths of despair” from drug overdoses, alcoholism and suicide. As unemployment surged and mental-health and substance-abuse treatment programs were interrupted, the reported levels of anxiety, depression and suicidal thoughts increased dramatically, as did alcohol sales and fatal drug overdoses.

This has been happening while nurses and other staff had so much time on their hands in the ‘war-zones’ that Tic-Tok dancing videos began appearing across the Internet with medical staff dancing around in empty wards and corridors as people died at home from causes that would normally have been treated in hospital.

Mentions in dispatches

One brave and truth-committed whistleblower was Louise Hampton, a call handler with the UK NHS who made a viral Internet video saying she had done ‘fuck all’ during the ‘pandemic’

which was ‘a load of bollocks’. She said that ‘Covid-19’ was rebranded flu and of course she lost her job. This is what happens in the medical and endless other professions now when you tell the truth. Louise filmed inside ‘war-zone’ accident and emergency departments to show they were empty and I mean *empty* as in no one there. The mainstream media could have done the same and blown the gaff on the whole conspiracy. They haven’t to their eternal shame. Not that most ‘journalists’ seem capable of manifesting shame as with the psychopaths they slavishly repeat without question. The relative few who were admitted with serious health problems were left to die alone with no loved ones allowed to see them because of ‘Covid’ rules and they included kids dying without the comfort of mum and dad at their bedside while the evil behind this couldn’t give a damn. It was all good fun to them. A Scottish NHS staff nurse publicly quit in the spring of 2021 saying: ‘I can no longer be part of the lies and the corruption by the government.’ She said hospitals ‘aren’t full, the beds aren’t full, beds have been shut, wards have been shut’. Hospitals were never busy throughout ‘Covid’. The staff nurse said that Nicola Sturgeon, tragically the leader of the Scottish government, was on television saying save the hospitals and the NHS – ‘but the beds are empty’ and ‘we’ve not seen flu, we always see flu every year’. She wrote to government and spoke with her union Unison (the unions are Cult-compromised and *useless*, but nothing changed. Many of her colleagues were scared of losing their jobs if they spoke out as they wanted to. She said nursing staff were being affected by wearing masks all day and ‘my head is splitting every shift from wearing a mask’. The NHS is part of the fascist tyranny and must be dismantled so we can start again with human beings in charge. (Ironically, hospitals were reported to be busier again when official ‘Covid’ cases *fell* in spring/summer of 2021 and many other conditions required treatment at the same time as *the fake vaccine rollout*.)

I will cover the ‘Covid vaccine’ scam in detail later, but it is another indicator of the sickening disregard for human life that I am highlighting here. The DNA-manipulating concoctions do not fulfil

the definition of a 'vaccine', have never been used on humans before and were given only emergency approval because trials were not completed and they continued using the unknowing public. The result was what a NHS senior nurse with responsibility for 'vaccine' procedure said was 'genocide'. She said the 'vaccines' were not 'vaccines'. They had not been shown to be safe and claims about their effectiveness by drug companies were 'poetic licence'. She described what was happening as a 'horrid act of human annihilation'. The nurse said that management had instigated a policy of not providing a Patient Information Leaflet (PIL) before people were 'vaccinated' even though health care professionals are supposed to do this according to protocol. Patients should also be told that they are taking part in an ongoing clinical trial. Her challenges to what is happening had seen her excluded from meetings and ridiculed in others. She said she was told to 'watch my step ... or I would find myself surplus to requirements'. The nurse, who spoke anonymously in fear of her career, said she asked her NHS manager why he/she was content with taking part in genocide against those having the 'vaccines'. The reply was that everyone had to play their part and to 'put up, shut up, and get it done'. Government was 'leaning heavily' on NHS management which was clearly leaning heavily on staff. This is how the global 'medical' hierarchy operates and it starts with the Cult and its World Health Organization.

She told the story of a doctor who had the Pfizer jab and when questioned had no idea what was in it. The doctor had never read the literature. We have to stop treating doctors as intellectual giants when so many are moral and medical pygmies. The doctor did not even know that the 'vaccines' were not fully approved or that their trials were ongoing. They were, however, asking their patients if they minded taking part in follow-ups for research purposes – yes, the *ongoing clinical trial*. The nurse said the doctor's ignorance was not rare and she had spoken to a hospital consultant who had the jab without any idea of the background or that the 'trials' had not been completed. Nurses and pharmacists had shown the same ignorance.

'My NHS colleagues have forsaken their duty of care, broken their code of conduct – Hippocratic Oath – and have been brainwashed just the same as the majority of the UK public through propaganda ...' She said she had not been able to recruit a single NHS colleague, doctor, nurse or pharmacist to stand with her and speak out. Her union had refused to help. She said that if the genocide came to light she would not hesitate to give evidence at a Nuremberg-type trial against those in power who could have affected the outcomes but didn't.

And all for what?

To put the nonsense into perspective let's say the 'virus' does exist and let's go completely crazy and accept that the official manipulated figures for cases and deaths are accurate. *Even then* a study by Stanford University epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis published on the World Health Organization website produced an average infection to fatality rate of ... 0.23 percent! Ioannidis said: 'If one could sample equally from all locations globally, the median infection fatality rate might even be substantially lower than the 0.23% observed in my analysis.' For healthy people under 70 it was ... 0.05 percent! This compares with the 3.4 percent claimed by the Cult-owned World Health Organization when the hoax was first played and maximum fear needed to be generated. An updated Stanford study in April, 2021, put the 'infection' to 'fatality' rate at just 0.15 percent. Another team of scientists led by Megan O'Driscoll and Henrik Salje studied data from 45 countries and published their findings on the Nature website. For children and young people the figure is so small it virtually does not register although authorities will be hyping dangers to the young when they introduce DNA-manipulating 'vaccines' for children. The O'Driscoll study produced an average infection-fatality figure of 0.003 for children from birth to four; 0.001 for 5 to 14; 0.003 for 15 to 19; and it was still only 0.456 up to 64. To claim that children must be 'vaccinated' to protect them from 'Covid' is an obvious lie and so there must be another reason and there is. What's more the average age of a 'Covid' death is akin

to the average age that people die in general. The average age of death in England is about 80 for men and 83 for women. The average age of death from alleged 'Covid' is between 82 and 83. California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi, said at their April media conference that projection models of millions of deaths had been 'woefully inaccurate'. They produced detailed figures showing that Californians had a 0.03 chance of dying from 'Covid' based on the number of people who tested positive (with a test not testing for the 'virus'). Erickson said there was a 0.1 percent chance of dying from 'Covid' in the *state* of New York, not just the city, and a 0.05 percent chance in Spain, a centre of 'Covid-19' hysteria at one stage. The Stanford studies supported the doctors' data with fatality rate estimates of 0.23 and 0.15 percent. How close are these figures to my estimate of *zero*? Death-rate figures claimed by the World Health Organization at the start of the hoax were some 15 times higher. The California doctors said there was no justification for lockdowns and the economic devastation they caused. Everything they had ever learned about quarantine was that you quarantine the *sick* and not the healthy. They had never seen this before and it made no medical sense.

Why in the light of all this would governments and medical systems the world over say that billions must go under house arrest; lose their livelihood; in many cases lose their mind, their health and their life; force people to wear masks dangerous to health and psychology; make human interaction and even family interaction a criminal offence; ban travel; close restaurants, bars, watching live sport, concerts, theatre, and any activity involving human togetherness and discourse; and closing schools to isolate children from their friends and cause many to commit suicide in acts of hopelessness and despair? The California doctors said lockdown consequences included increased child abuse, partner abuse, alcoholism, depression, and other impacts they were seeing every day. Who would do that to the entire human race if not mentally-ill psychopaths of almost unimaginable extremes like Bill Gates? We must face the reality of what we are dealing with and come out of

denial. Fascism and tyranny are made possible only by the target population submitting and acquiescing to fascism and tyranny. The whole of human history shows that to be true. Most people naively and unquestioning believed what they were told about a ‘deadly virus’ and meekly and weakly submitted to house arrest. Those who didn’t believe it – at least in total – still submitted in fear of the consequences of not doing so. For the rest who wouldn’t submit draconian fines have been imposed, brutal policing by psychopaths *for* psychopaths, and condemnation from the meek and weak who condemn the Pushbackers on behalf of the very force that has them, too, in its gunsights. ‘Pathetic’ does not even begin to suffice.

Britain’s brainless ‘Health’ Secretary Matt Hancock warned anyone lying to border officials about returning from a list of ‘hotspot’ countries could face a jail sentence of up to ten years which is more than for racially-aggravated assault, incest and attempting to have sex with a child under 13. Hancock is a lunatic, but he has the state apparatus behind him in a Cult-led chain reaction and the same with UK ‘Vaccine Minister’ Nadhim Zahawi, a prominent member of the mega-Cult secret society, Le Cercle, which featured in my earlier books. The Cult enforces its will on governments and medical systems; government and medical systems enforce their will on business and police; business enforces its will on staff who enforce it on customers; police enforce the will of the Cult on the population and play their essential part in creating a world of fascist control that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. It is a hierarchical pyramid of imposition and acquiescence and, yes indeedy, of clinical insanity.

Does anyone bright enough to read this book have to ask what the answer is? I think not, but I will reveal it anyway in the fewest of syllables: Tell the psychos and their moronic lackeys to fuck off and let’s get on with our lives. We are many – They are few.

CHAPTER SEVEN

War on your mind

One believes things because one has been conditioned to believe them

Aldous Huxley, *Brave New World*

I have described the ‘Covid’ hoax as a ‘Psyop’ and that is true in every sense and on every level in accordance with the definition of that term which is psychological warfare. Break down the ‘Covid pandemic’ to the foundation themes and it is psychological warfare on the human individual and collective mind.

The same can be said for the entire human belief system involving every subject you can imagine. Huxley was right in his contention that people believe what they are conditioned to believe and this comes from the repetition throughout their lives of the same falsehoods. They spew from government, corporations, media and endless streams of ‘experts’ telling you what the Cult wants you to believe and often believing it themselves (although *far* from always). ‘Experts’ are rewarded with ‘prestigious’ jobs and titles and as agents of perceptual programming with regular access to the media. The Cult has to control the narrative – control *information* – or they lose control of the vital, crucial, without-which-they-cannot-prevail public perception of reality. The foundation of that control today is the Internet made possible by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the incredibly sinister technological arm of the Pentagon. The Internet is the result of military technology.

DARPA openly brags about establishing the Internet which has been a long-term project to lasso the minds of the global population. I have said for decades the plan is to control information to such an extreme that eventually no one would see or hear anything that the Cult does not approve. We are closing in on that end with ferocious censorship since the ‘Covid’ hoax began and in my case it started back in the 1990s in terms of books and speaking venues. I had to create my own publishing company in 1995 precisely because no one else would publish my books even then. I think they’re all still running.

Cult Internet

To secure total control of information they needed the Internet in which pre-programmed algorithms can seek out ‘unclean’ content for deletion and even stop it being posted in the first place. The Cult had to dismantle print and non-Internet broadcast media to ensure the transfer of information to the appropriate-named ‘Web’ – a critical expression of the *Cult* web. We’ve seen the ever-quickenning demise of traditional media and control of what is left by a tiny number of corporations operating worldwide. Independent journalism in the mainstream is already dead and never was that more obvious than since the turn of 2020. The Cult wants all information communicated via the Internet to globally censor and allow the plug to be pulled any time. Lockdowns and forced isolation has meant that communication between people has been through electronic means and no longer through face-to-face discourse and discussion. Cult psychopaths have targeted the bars, restaurants, sport, venues and meeting places in general for this reason. None of this is by chance and it’s to stop people gathering in any kind of privacy or number while being able to track and monitor all Internet communications and block them as necessary. Even private messages between individuals have been censored by these fascists that control Cult fronts like Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube which are all officially run by Sabbatian place-people and from the background by higher-level Sabbatian place people.

Facebook, Google, Amazon and their like were seed-funded and supported into existence with money-no-object infusions of funds either directly or indirectly from DARPA and CIA technology arm In-Q-Tel. The Cult plays the long game and prepares very carefully for big plays like 'Covid'. Amazon is another front in the psychological war and pretty much controls the global market in book sales and increasingly publishing. Amazon's limitless funds have deleted fantastic numbers of independent publishers to seize global domination on the way to deciding which books can be sold and circulated and which cannot. Moves in that direction are already happening. Amazon's leading light Jeff Bezos is the grandson of Lawrence Preston Gise who worked with DARPA predecessor ARPA. Amazon has big connections to the CIA and the Pentagon. The plan I have long described went like this:

1. Employ military technology to establish the Internet.
2. Sell the Internet as a place where people can freely communicate without censorship and allow that to happen until the Net becomes the central and irreversible pillar of human society. If the Internet had been highly censored from the start many would have rejected it.
3. Fund and manipulate major corporations into being to control the circulation of information on your Internet using cover stories about geeks in garages to explain how they came about. Give them unlimited funds to expand rapidly with no need to make a profit for years while non-Cult companies who need to balance the books cannot compete. You know that in these circumstances your Googles, YouTubes, Facebooks and Amazons are going to secure near monopolies by either crushing or buying up the opposition.
4. Allow freedom of expression on both the Internet and communication platforms to draw people in until the Internet is the central and irreversible pillar of human society and your communication corporations have reached a stage of near monopoly domination.
5. Then unleash your always-planned frenzy of censorship on the basis of 'where else are you going to go?' and continue to expand that until nothing remains that the Cult does not want its human targets to see.

The process was timed to hit the 'Covid' hoax to ensure the best chance possible of controlling the narrative which they knew they had to do at all costs. They were, after all, about to unleash a 'deadly virus' that didn't really exist. If you do that in an environment of free-flowing information and opinion you would be dead in the

water before you could say Gates is a psychopath. The network was in place through which the Cult-created-and-owned World Health Organization could dictate the ‘Covid’ narrative and response policy slavishly supported by Cult-owned Internet communication giants and mainstream media while those telling a different story were censored. Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter openly announced that they would do this. What else would we expect from Cult-owned operations like Facebook which former executives have confirmed set out to make the platform more addictive than cigarettes and coldly manipulates emotions of its users to sow division between people and groups and scramble the minds of the young? If Zuckerberg lives out the rest of his life without going to jail for crimes against humanity, and most emphatically against the young, it will be a travesty of justice. Still, no matter, cause and effect will catch up with him eventually and the same with Sergey Brin and Larry Page at Google with its CEO Sundar Pichai who fix the Google search results to promote Cult narratives and hide the opposition. Put the same key words into Google and other search engines like DuckDuckGo and you will see how different results can be. Wikipedia is another intensely biased ‘encyclopaedia’ which skews its content to the Cult agenda. YouTube links to Wikipedia’s version of ‘Covid’ and ‘climate change’ on video pages in which experts in their field offer a different opinion (even that is increasingly rare with Wojcicki censorship). Into this ‘Covid’ silence-them network must be added government media censors, sorry ‘regulators’, such as Ofcom in the UK which imposed tyrannical restrictions on British broadcasters that had the effect of banning me from ever appearing. Just to debate with me about my evidence and views on ‘Covid’ would mean breaking the fascistic impositions of Ofcom and its CEO career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes. Gutless British broadcasters tremble at the very thought of fascist Ofcom.

Psychos behind ‘Covid’

The reason for the ‘Covid’ catastrophe in all its facets and forms can be seen by whom and what is driving the policies worldwide in such a coordinated way. Decisions are not being made to protect health, but to target psychology. The dominant group guiding and ‘advising’ government policy are not medical professionals. They are psychologists and behavioural scientists. Every major country has its own version of this phenomenon and I’ll use the British example to show how it works. In many ways the British version has been affecting the wider world in the form of the huge behaviour manipulation network in the UK which operates in other countries. The network involves private companies, government, intelligence and military. The Cabinet Office is at the centre of the government ‘Covid’ Psyop and part-owns, with ‘innovation charity’ Nesta, the Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) which claims to be independent of government but patently isn’t. The BIT was established in 2010 and its job is to manipulate the psyche of the population to acquiesce to government demands and so much more. It is also known as the ‘Nudge Unit’, a name inspired by the 2009 book by two ultra-Zionists, Cass Sunstein and Richard Thaler, called *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. The book, as with the Behavioural Insights Team, seeks to ‘nudge’ behaviour (manipulate it) to make the public follow patterns of action and perception that suit those in authority (the Cult). Sunstein is so skilled at this that he advises the World Health Organization and the UK Behavioural Insights Team and was Administrator of the White House Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs in the Obama administration. Biden appointed him to the Department of Homeland Security – another ultra-Zionist in the fold to oversee new immigration laws which is another policy the Cult wants to control. Sunstein is desperate to silence anyone exposing conspiracies and co-authored a 2008 report on the subject in which suggestions were offered to ban ‘conspiracy theorizing’ or impose ‘some kind of tax, financial or otherwise, on those who disseminate such theories’. I guess a psychiatrist’s chair is out of the question?

Sunstein's mate Richard Thaler, an 'academic affiliate' of the UK Behavioural Insights Team, is a proponent of 'behavioural economics' which is defined as the study of 'the effects of psychological, cognitive, emotional, cultural and social factors on the decisions of individuals and institutions'. Study the effects so they can be manipulated to be what you want them to be. Other leading names in the development of behavioural economics are ultra-Zionists Daniel Kahneman and Robert J. Shiller and they, with Thaler, won the Nobel Memorial Prize in Economic Sciences for their work in this field. The Behavioural Insights Team is operating at the heart of the UK government and has expanded globally through partnerships with several universities including Harvard, Oxford, Cambridge, University College London (UCL) and Pennsylvania. They claim to have 'trained' (reframed) 20,000 civil servants and run more than 750 projects involving 400 randomised controlled trials in dozens of countries' as another version of mind reframers Common Purpose. BIT works from its office in New York with cities and their agencies, as well as other partners, across the United States and Canada – this is a company part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office. An executive order by President Cult-servant Obama established a US Social and Behavioral Sciences Team in 2015. They all have the same reason for being and that's to brainwash the population directly and by brainwashing those in positions of authority.

'Covid' mind game

Another prime aspect of the UK mind-control network is the 'independent' [joke] Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B) which 'provides behavioural science advice aimed at anticipating and helping people adhere to interventions that are recommended by medical or epidemiological experts'. That means manipulating public perception and behaviour to do whatever government tells them to do. It's disgusting and if they really want the public to be 'safe' this lot should all be under lock and key. According to the government website SPI-B consists of

'behavioural scientists, health and social psychologists, anthropologists and historians' and advises the Whitty-Vallance-led Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) which in turn advises the government on 'the science' (it doesn't) and 'Covid' policy. When politicians say they are being guided by 'the science' this is the rabble in each country they are talking about and that 'science' is dominated by behaviour manipulators to enforce government fascism through public compliance. The Behaviour Insight Team is headed by psychologist David Solomon Halpern, a visiting professor at King's College London, and connects with a national and global web of other civilian and military organisations as the Cult moves towards its goal of fusing them into one fascistic whole in every country through its 'Fusion Doctrine'. The behaviour manipulation network involves, but is not confined to, the Foreign Office; National Security Council; government communications headquarters (GCHQ); MI5; MI6; the Cabinet Office-based Media Monitoring Unit; and the Rapid Response Unit which 'monitors digital trends to spot emerging issues; including misinformation and disinformation; and identifies the best way to respond'.

There is also the 77th Brigade of the UK military which operates like the notorious Israeli military's Unit 8200 in manipulating information and discussion on the Internet by posing as members of the public to promote the narrative and discredit those who challenge it. Here we have the military seeking to manipulate *domestic* public opinion while the Nazis in government are fine with that. Conservative Member of Parliament Tobias Ellwood, an advocate of lockdown and control through 'vaccine passports', is a Lieutenant Colonel reservist in the 77th Brigade which connects with the military operation jHub, the 'innovation centre' for the Ministry of Defence and Strategic Command. jHub has also been involved with the civilian National Health Service (NHS) in 'symptom tracing' the population. The NHS is a key part of this mind control network and produced a document in December, 2020, explaining to staff how to use psychological manipulation with different groups and ages to get them to have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccine'

that's designed to cumulatively rewrite human genetics. The document, called 'Optimising Vaccination Roll Out – Do's and Dont's for all messaging, documents and "communications" in the widest sense', was published by NHS England and the NHS Improvement *Behaviour Change Unit* in partnership with Public Health England and Warwick Business School. I hear the mantra about 'save the NHS' and 'protect the NHS' when we need to scrap the NHS and start again. The current version is far too corrupt, far too anti-human and totally compromised by Cult operatives and their assets. UK government broadcast media censor Ofcom will connect into this web – as will the BBC with its tremendous Ofcom influence – to control what the public see and hear and dictate mass perception. Nuremberg trials must include personnel from all these organisations.

The fear factor

The 'Covid' hoax has led to the creation of the UK Cabinet Office-connected Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) which is officially described as providing 'expert advice on pandemics' using its independent [all Cult operations are 'independent'] analytical function to provide real-time analysis about infection outbreaks to identify and respond to outbreaks of Covid-19'. Another role is to advise the government on a response to spikes in infections – 'for example by closing schools or workplaces in local areas where infection levels have risen'. Put another way, promoting the Cult agenda. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is modelled on the Joint Terrorism Analysis Centre which analyses intelligence to set 'terrorism threat levels' and here again you see the fusion of civilian and military operations and intelligence that has led to military intelligence producing documents about 'vaccine hesitancy' and how it can be combated. Domestic civilian matters and opinions should not be the business of the military. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is headed by Tom Hurd, director general of the Office for Security and Counter-Terrorism from the establishment-to-its-fingertips Hurd family. His father is former Foreign Secretary Douglas Hurd. How coincidental that Tom

Hurd went to the elite Eton College and Oxford University with Boris Johnson. Imperial College with its ridiculous computer modeller Neil Ferguson will connect with this gigantic web that will itself interconnect with similar set-ups in other major and not so major countries. Compared with this Cult network the politicians, be they Boris Johnson, Donald Trump or Joe Biden, are bit-part players ‘following the science’. The network of psychologists was on the ‘Covid’ case from the start with the aim of generating maximum fear of the ‘virus’ to ensure compliance by the population. A government behavioural science group known as SPI-B produced a paper in March, 2020, for discussion by the main government science advisory group known as SAGE. It was headed ‘Options for increasing adherence to social distancing measures’ and it said the following in a section headed ‘Persuasion’:

- A substantial number of people still do not feel sufficiently personally threatened; it could be that they are reassured by the low death rate in their demographic group, although levels of concern may be rising. Having a good understanding of the risk has been found to be positively associated with adoption of COVID-19 social distancing measures in Hong Kong.
- The perceived level of personal threat needs to be increased among those who are complacent, using hard-hitting evaluation of options for increasing social distancing emotional messaging. To be effective this must also empower people by making clear the actions they can take to reduce the threat.
- Responsibility to others: There seems to be insufficient understanding of, or feelings of responsibility about, people’s role in transmitting the infection to others ... Messaging about actions need to be framed positively in terms of protecting oneself and the community, and increase confidence that they will be effective.
- Some people will be more persuaded by appeals to play by the rules, some by duty to the community, and some to personal risk.

All these different approaches are needed. The messaging also needs to take account of the realities of different people's lives. Messaging needs to take account of the different motivational levers and circumstances of different people.

All this could be achieved the SPI-B psychologists said by *using the media to increase the sense of personal threat* which translates as terrify the shit out of the population, including children, so they all do what we want. That's not happened has it? Those excuses for 'journalists' who wouldn't know journalism if it bit them on the arse (the great majority) have played their crucial part in serving this Cult-government Psyop to enslave their own kids and grandkids. How they live with themselves I have no idea. The psychological war has been underpinned by constant government 'Covid' propaganda in almost every television and radio ad break, plus the Internet and print media, which has pounded out the fear with taxpayers footing the bill for their own programming. The result has been people terrified of a 'virus' that doesn't exist or one with a tiny fatality rate even if you believe it does. People walk down the street and around the shops wearing face-nappies damaging their health and psychology while others report those who refuse to be that naïve to the police who turn up in their own face-nappies. I had a cameraman come to my flat and he was so frightened of 'Covid' he came in wearing a mask and refused to shake my hand in case he caught something. He had – naïveitis – and the thought that he worked in the mainstream media was both depressing and made his behaviour perfectly explainable. The fear which has gripped the minds of so many and frozen them into compliance has been carefully cultivated by these psychologists who are really psychopaths. If lives get destroyed and a lot of young people commit suicide it shows our plan is working. SPI-B then turned to compulsion on the public to comply. 'With adequate preparation, rapid change can be achieved', it said. Some countries had introduced mandatory self-isolation on a wide scale without evidence of major public unrest and a large majority of the UK's population appeared to be supportive of more coercive measures with 64 percent of adults saying they would

support putting London under a lockdown (watch the ‘polls’ which are designed to make people believe that public opinion is in favour or against whatever the subject in hand).

For ‘aggressive protective measures’ to be effective, the SPI-B paper said, special attention should be devoted to those population groups that are more at risk. Translated from the Orwellian this means making the rest of population feel guilty for not protecting the ‘vulnerable’ such as old people which the Cult and its agencies were about to kill on an industrial scale with lockdown, lack of treatment and the Gates ‘vaccine’. Psychopath psychologists sold their guilt-trip so comprehensively that Los Angeles County Supervisor Hilda Solis reported that children were apologising (from a distance) to their parents and grandparents for bringing ‘Covid’ into their homes and getting them sick. ‘... These apologies are just some of the last words that loved ones will ever hear as they die alone,’ she said. Gut-wrenchingly Solis then used this childhood tragedy to tell children to stay at home and ‘keep your loved ones alive’. Imagine heaping such potentially life-long guilt on a kid when it has absolutely nothing to do with them. These people are deeply disturbed and the psychologists behind this even more so.

Uncivil war – divide and rule

Professional mind-controllers at SPI-B wanted the media to increase a sense of responsibility to others (do as you’re told) and promote ‘positive messaging’ for those actions while in contrast to invoke ‘social disapproval’ by the unquestioning, obedient, community of anyone with a mind of their own. Again the compliant Goebbels-like media obliged. This is an old, old, trick employed by tyrannies the world over throughout human history. You get the target population to keep the target population in line – *your* line. SPI-B said this could ‘play an important role in preventing anti-social behaviour or discouraging failure to enact pro-social behaviour’. For ‘anti-social’ in the Orwellian parlance of SPI-B see any behaviour that government doesn’t approve. SPI-B recommendations said that ‘social disapproval’ should be accompanied by clear messaging and

promotion of strong collective identity – hence the government and celebrity mantra of ‘we’re all in this together’. Sure we are. The mind doctors have such contempt for their targets that they think some clueless comedian, actor or singer telling them to do what the government wants will be enough to win them over. We have had UK comedian Lenny Henry, actor Michael Caine and singer Elton John wheeled out to serve the propagandists by urging people to have the DNA-manipulating ‘Covid’ non-‘vaccine’. The role of Henry and fellow black celebrities in seeking to coax a ‘vaccine’ reluctant black community into doing the government’s will was especially stomach-turning. An emotion-manipulating script and carefully edited video featuring these black ‘celebs’ was such an insult to the intelligence of black people and where’s the self-respect of those involved selling their souls to a fascist government agenda? Henry said he heard black people’s ‘legitimate worries and concerns’, but people must ‘trust the facts’ when they were doing exactly that by not having the ‘vaccine’. They had to include the obligatory reference to Black Lives Matter with the line ... ‘Don’t let coronavirus cost even more black lives – because we matter’. My god, it was pathetic. ‘I know the vaccine is safe and what it does.’ How? ‘I’m a comedian and it says so in my script.’

SPI-B said social disapproval needed to be carefully managed to avoid victimisation, scapegoating and misdirected criticism, but they knew that their ‘recommendations’ would lead to exactly that and the media were specifically used to stir-up the divide-and-conquer hostility. Those who conform like good little baa, baas, are praised while those who have seen through the tidal wave of lies are ‘Covidiots’. The awake have been abused by the fast asleep for not conforming to fascism and impositions that the awake know are designed to endanger their health, dehumanise them, and tear asunder the very fabric of human society. We have had the curtain-twitchers and morons reporting neighbours and others to the face-nappied police for breaking ‘Covid rules’ with fascist police delighting in posting links and phone numbers where this could be done. The Cult cannot impose its will without a compliant police

and military or a compliant population willing to play their part in enslaving themselves and their kids. The words of a pastor in Nazi Germany are so appropriate today:

First they came for the socialists and I did not speak out because I was not a socialist.

Then they came for the trade unionists and I did not speak out because I was not a trade unionist.

Then they came for the Jews and I did not speak out because I was not a Jew.

Then they came for me and there was no one left to speak for me.

Those who don't learn from history are destined to repeat it and so many are.

'Covid' rules: Rewiring the mind

With the background laid out to this gigantic national and global web of psychological manipulation we can put 'Covid' rules into a clear and sinister perspective. Forget the claims about protecting health. 'Covid' rules are about dismantling the human mind, breaking the human spirit, destroying self-respect, and then putting Humpty Dumpty together again as a servile, submissive slave. Social isolation through lockdown and distancing have devastating effects on the human psyche as the psychological psychopaths well know and that's the real reason for them. Humans need contact with each other, discourse, closeness and touch, or they eventually, and literally, go crazy. Masks, which I will address at some length, fundamentally add to the effects of isolation and the Cult agenda to dehumanise and de-individualise the population. To do this while knowing – in fact *seeking* – this outcome is the very epitome of evil and psychologists involved in this *are* the epitome of evil. They must like all the rest of the Cult demons and their assets stand trial for crimes against humanity on a scale that defies the imagination. Psychopaths in uniform use isolation to break enemy troops and agents and make them subservient and submissive to tell what they know. The technique is rightly considered a form of torture and

torture is most certainly what has been imposed on the human population.

Clinically-insane American psychologist Harry Harlow became famous for his isolation experiments in the 1950s in which he separated baby monkeys from their mothers and imprisoned them for months on end in a metal container or ‘pit of despair’. They soon began to show mental distress and depression as any idiot could have predicted. Harlow put other monkeys in steel chambers for three, six or twelve months while denying them any contact with animals or humans. He said that the effects of total social isolation for six months were ‘so devastating and debilitating that we had assumed initially that twelve months of isolation would not produce any additional decrement’; but twelve months of isolation ‘almost obliterated the animals socially’. This is what the Cult and its psychopaths are doing to you and your children. Even monkeys in partial isolation in which they were not allowed to form relationships with other monkeys became ‘aggressive and hostile, not only to others, but also towards their own bodies’. We have seen this in the young as a consequence of lockdown. UK government psychopaths launched a public relations campaign telling people not to hug each other even after they received the ‘Covid-19 vaccine’ which we were told with more lies would allow a return to ‘normal life’. A government source told *The Telegraph*: ‘It will be along the lines that it is great that you have been vaccinated, but if you are going to visit your family and hug your grandchildren there is a chance you are going to infect people you love.’ The source was apparently speaking from a secure psychiatric facility. Janet Lord, director of Birmingham University’s Institute of Inflammation and Ageing, said that parents and grandparents should avoid hugging their children. Well, how can I put it, Ms Lord? Fuck off. Yep, that’ll do.

Destroying the kids – where are the parents?

Observe what has happened to people enslaved and isolated by lockdown as suicide and self-harm has soared worldwide,

particularly among the young denied the freedom to associate with their friends. A study of 49,000 people in English-speaking countries concluded that almost half of young adults are at clinical risk of mental health disorders. A national survey in America of 1,000 currently enrolled high school and college students found that 5 percent reported attempting suicide during the pandemic. Data from the US CDC's National Syndromic Surveillance Program from January 1st to October 17th, 2020, revealed a 31 percent increase in mental health issues among adolescents aged 12 to 17 compared with 2019. The CDC reported that America in general suffered the biggest drop in life expectancy since World War Two as it fell by a year in the first half of 2020 as a result of 'deaths of despair' – overdoses and suicides. Deaths of despair have leapt by more than 20 percent during lockdown and include the highest number of fatal overdoses ever recorded in a single year – 81,000. Internet addiction is another consequence of being isolated at home which lowers interest in physical activities as kids fall into inertia and what's the point? Children and young people are losing hope and giving up on life, sometimes literally. A 14-year-old boy killed himself in Maryland because he had 'given up' when his school district didn't reopen; an 11-year-old boy shot himself during a zoom class; a teenager in Maine succumbed to the isolation of the 'pandemic' when he ended his life after experiencing a disrupted senior year at school. Children as young as nine have taken their life and all these stories can be repeated around the world. Careers are being destroyed before they start and that includes those in sport in which promising youngsters have not been able to take part. The plan of the psycho-psychologists is working all right. Researchers at Cambridge University found that lockdowns cause significant harm to children's mental health. Their study was published in the *Archives of Disease in Childhood*, and followed 168 children aged between 7 and 11. The researchers concluded:

During the UK lockdown, children's depression symptoms have increased substantially, relative to before lockdown. The scale of this effect has direct relevance for the continuation of different elements of lockdown policy, such as complete or partial school closures ...

... Specifically, we observed a statistically significant increase in ratings of depression, with a medium-to-large effect size. Our findings emphasise the need to incorporate the potential impact of lockdown on child mental health in planning the ongoing response to the global pandemic and the recovery from it.

Not a chance when the Cult's psycho-psychologists were getting exactly what they wanted. The UK's Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health has urged parents to look for signs of eating disorders in children and young people after a three to four fold increase. Specialists say the 'pandemic' is a major reason behind the rise. You don't say. The College said isolation from friends during school closures, exam cancellations, loss of extra-curricular activities like sport, and an increased use of social media were all contributory factors along with fears about the virus (psycho-psychologists again), family finances, and students being forced to quarantine. Doctors said young people were becoming severely ill by the time they were seen with 'Covid' regulations reducing face-to-face consultations. Nor is it only the young that have been devastated by the psychopaths. Like all bullies and cowards the Cult is targeting the young, elderly, weak and infirm. A typical story was told by a British lady called Lynn Parker who was not allowed to visit her husband in 2020 for the last ten and half months of his life 'when he needed me most' between March 20th and when he died on December 19th. This vacates the criminal and enters the territory of evil. The emotional impact on the immune system alone is immense as are the number of people of all ages worldwide who have died as a result of Cult-demanded, Gates-demanded, lockdowns.

Isolation is torture

The experience of imposing solitary confinement on millions of prisoners around the world has shown how a large percentage become 'actively psychotic and/or acutely suicidal'. Social isolation has been found to trigger 'a specific psychiatric syndrome, characterized by hallucinations; panic attacks; overt paranoia; diminished impulse control; hypersensitivity to external stimuli; and difficulties with thinking, concentration and memory'. Juan Mendez,

a United Nations rapporteur (investigator), said that isolation is a form of torture. Research has shown that even after isolation prisoners find it far more difficult to make social connections and I remember chatting to a shop assistant after one lockdown who told me that when her young son met another child again he had no idea how to act or what to do. Hannah Flanagan, Director of Emergency Services at Journey Mental Health Center in Dane County, Wisconsin, said: ‘The specificity about Covid social distancing and isolation that we’ve come across as contributing factors to the suicides are really new to us this year.’ But they are not new to those that devised them. They are getting the effect they want as the population is psychologically dismantled to be rebuilt in a totally different way. Children and the young are particularly targeted. They will be the adults when the full-on fascist AI-controlled technocracy is planned to be imposed and they are being prepared to meekly submit. At the same time older people who still have a memory of what life was like before – and how fascist the new normal really is – are being deleted. You are going to see efforts to turn the young against the old to support this geriatric genocide. Hannah Flanagan said the big increase in suicide in her county proved that social isolation is not only harmful, but deadly. Studies have shown that isolation from others is one of the main risk factors in suicide and even more so with women. Warnings that lockdown could create a ‘perfect storm’ for suicide were ignored. After all this was one of the *reasons* for lockdown. Suicide, however, is only the most extreme of isolation consequences. There are many others. Dr Dhruv Khullar, assistant professor of healthcare policy at Weill Cornell Medical College, said in a *New York Times* article in 2016 long before the fake ‘pandemic’:

A wave of new research suggests social separation is bad for us. Individuals with less social connection have disrupted sleep patterns, altered immune systems, more inflammation and higher levels of stress hormones. One recent study found that isolation increases the risk of heart disease by 29 percent and stroke by 32 percent. Another analysis that pooled data from 70 studies and 3.4 million people found that socially isolated individuals had a 30 percent higher risk of dying in the next seven years, and that this effect was largest in middle age.

Loneliness can accelerate cognitive decline in older adults, and isolated individuals are twice as likely to die prematurely as those with more robust social interactions. These effects start early: Socially isolated children have significantly poorer health 20 years later, even after controlling for other factors. All told, loneliness is as important a risk factor for early death as obesity and smoking.

There you have proof from that one article alone four years before 2020 that those who have enforced lockdown, social distancing and isolation knew what the effect would be and that is even more so with professional psychologists that have been driving the policy across the globe. We can go back even further to the years 2000 and 2003 and the start of a major study on the effects of isolation on health by Dr Janine Gronewold and Professor Dirk M. Hermann at the University Hospital in Essen, Germany, who analysed data on 4,316 people with an average age of 59 who were recruited for the long-term research project. They found that socially isolated people are more than 40 percent more likely to have a heart attack, stroke, or other major cardiovascular event and nearly 50 percent more likely to die from any cause. Given the financial Armageddon unleashed by lockdown we should note that the study found a relationship between increased cardiovascular risk and lack of financial support. After excluding other factors social isolation was still connected to a 44 percent increased risk of cardiovascular problems and a 47 percent increased risk of death by any cause. Lack of financial support was associated with a 30 percent increase in the risk of cardiovascular health events. Dr Gronewold said it had been known for some time that feeling lonely or lacking contact with close friends and family can have an impact on physical health and the study had shown that having strong social relationships is of high importance for heart health. Gronewold said they didn't understand yet why people who are socially isolated have such poor health outcomes, but this was obviously a worrying finding, particularly during these times of prolonged social distancing. Well, it can be explained on many levels. You only have to identify the point in the body where people feel loneliness and missing people they are parted from – it's in the centre of the chest where they feel the ache of loneliness and the ache of missing people. 'My heart aches for

you' ... 'My heart aches for some company.' I will explain this more in the chapter Escaping Wetiko, but when you realise that the body is the mind – they are expressions of each other – the reason why state of the mind dictates state of the body becomes clear.

American psychologist Ranjit Powar was highlighting the effects of lockdown isolation as early as April, 2020. She said humans have evolved to be social creatures and are wired to live in interactive groups. Being isolated from family, friends and colleagues could be unbalancing and traumatic for most people and could result in short or even long-term psychological and physical health problems. An increase in levels of anxiety, aggression, depression, forgetfulness and hallucinations were possible psychological effects of isolation. 'Mental conditions may be precipitated for those with underlying pre-existing susceptibilities and show up in many others without any pre-condition.' Powar said personal relationships helped us cope with stress and if we lost this outlet for letting off steam the result can be a big emotional void which, for an average person, was difficult to deal with. 'Just a few days of isolation can cause increased levels of anxiety and depression' – so what the hell has been the effect on the global population of *18 months* of this at the time of writing? Powar said: 'Add to it the looming threat of a dreadful disease being repeatedly hammered in through the media and you have a recipe for many shades of mental and physical distress.' For those with a house and a garden it is easy to forget that billions have had to endure lockdown isolation in tiny overcrowded flats and apartments with nowhere to go outside. The psychological and physical consequences of this are unimaginable and with lunatic and abusive partners and parents the consequences have led to tremendous increases in domestic and child abuse and alcoholism as people seek to shut out the horror. Ranjit Powar said:

Staying in a confined space with family is not all a rosy picture for everyone. It can be extremely oppressive and claustrophobic for large low-income families huddled together in small single-room houses. Children here are not lucky enough to have many board/electronic games or books to keep them occupied.

Add to it the deep insecurity of running out of funds for food and basic necessities. On the other hand, there are people with dysfunctional family dynamics, such as domineering, abusive or alcoholic partners, siblings or parents which makes staying home a period of trial. Incidence of suicide and physical abuse against women has shown a worldwide increase. Heightened anxiety and depression also affect a person's immune system, making them more susceptible to illness.

To think that Powar's article was published on April 11th, 2020.

Six-feet fantasy

Social (unsocial) distancing demanded that people stay six feet or two metres apart. UK government advisor Robert Dingwall from the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group said in a radio interview that the two-metre rule was 'conjured up out of nowhere' and was not based on science. No, it was not based on *medical* science, but it didn't come out of nowhere. The distance related to *psychological* science. Six feet/two metres was adopted in many countries and we were told by people like the criminal Anthony Fauci and his ilk that it was founded on science. Many schools could not reopen because they did not have the space for six-feet distancing. Then in March, 2021, after a year of six-feet 'science', a study published in the *Journal of Infectious Diseases* involving more than 500,000 students and almost 100,000 staff over 16 weeks revealed no significant difference in 'Covid' cases between six feet and three feet and Fauci changed his tune. Now three feet was okay. There is no difference between six feet and three *inches* when there is no 'virus' and they got away with six feet for psychological reasons for as long as they could. I hear journalists and others talk about 'unintended consequences' of lockdown. They are not *unintended* at all; they have been coldly-calculated for a specific outcome of human control and that's why super-psychopaths like Gates have called for them so vehemently. Super-psychopath psychologists have demanded them and psychopathic or clueless, spineless, politicians have gone along with them by 'following the science'. But it's not science at all. 'Science' is not what is; it's only what people can be manipulated to believe it is. The whole 'Covid' catastrophe is

founded on mind control. Three word or three statement mantras issued by the UK government are a well-known mind control technique and so we've had 'Stay home/protect the NHS/save lives', 'Stay alert/control the virus/save lives' and 'hands/face/space'. One of the most vocal proponents of extreme 'Covid' rules in the UK has been Professor Susan Michie, a member of the British Communist Party, who is not a medical professional. Michie is the director of the Centre for Behaviour Change at University College London. She is a *behavioural psychologist* and another filthy rich 'Marxist' who praised China's draconian lockdown. She was known by fellow students at Oxford University as 'Stalin's nanny' for her extreme Marxism. Michie is an influential member of the UK government's Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) and behavioural manipulation groups which have dominated 'Covid' policy. She is a consultant adviser to the World Health Organization on 'Covid-19' and behaviour. Why the hell are lockdowns anything to do with her when they are claimed to be about health? Why does a behavioural psychologist from a group charged with changing the behaviour of the public want lockdown, human isolation and mandatory masks? Does that question really need an answer? Michie *absolutely* has to explain herself before a Nuremberg court when humanity takes back its world again and even more so when you see the consequences of masks that she demands are compulsory. This is a Michie classic:

The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Those words alone should carry a prison sentence when you ponder on the callous disregard for children involved and what a statement it makes about the mind and motivations of Susan Michie. What a lovely lady and what she said there encapsulates the mentality of the psychopaths behind the 'Covid' horror. Let us compare what Michie said with a countrywide study in Germany published at [researchsquare.com](https://www.researchsquare.com) involving 25,000 school children and 17,854 health complaints submitted by parents. Researchers

found that masks are harming children physically, psychologically, and behaviourally with 24 health issues associated with mask wearing. They include: shortness of breath (29.7%); dizziness (26.4%); increased headaches (53%); difficulty concentrating (50%); drowsiness or fatigue (37%); and malaise (42%). Nearly a third of children experienced more sleep issues than before and a quarter developed new fears. Researchers found health issues and other impairments in 68 percent of masked children covering their faces for an average of 4.5 hours a day. Hundreds of those taking part experienced accelerated respiration, tightness in the chest, weakness, and short-term impairment of consciousness. A reminder of what Michie said again:

The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Psychopaths in government and psychology now have children and young people – plus all the adults – wearing masks for hours on end while clueless teachers impose the will of the psychopaths on the young they should be protecting. What the hell are parents doing?

Cult lab rats

We have some schools already imposing on students microchipped buzzers that activate when they get ‘too close’ to their pals in the way they do with lab rats. How apt. To the Cult and its brain-dead servants our children *are* lab rats being conditioned to be unquestioning, dehumanised slaves for the rest of their lives. Children and young people are being weaned and frightened away from the most natural human instincts including closeness and touch. I have tracked in the books over the years how schools were banning pupils from greeting each other with a hug and the whole Cult-induced Me Too movement has terrified men and boys from a relaxed and natural interaction with female friends and work colleagues to the point where many men try never to be in a room

alone with a woman that's not their partner. Airhead celebrities have as always played their virtue-signalling part in making this happen with their gross exaggeration. For every monster like Harvey Weinstein there are at least tens of thousands of men that don't treat women like that; but everyone must be branded the same and policy changed for them as well as the monster. I am going to be using the word 'dehumanise' many times in this chapter because that is what the Cult is seeking to do and it goes very deep as we shall see. Don't let them kid you that social distancing is planned to end one day. That's not the idea. We are seeing more governments and companies funding and producing wearable gadgets to keep people apart and they would not be doing that if this was meant to be short-term. A tech start-up company backed by GCHQ, the British Intelligence and military surveillance headquarters, has created a social distancing wrist sensor that alerts people when they get too close to others. The CIA has also supported tech companies developing similar devices. The wearable sensor was developed by Tended, one of a number of start-up companies supported by GCHQ (see the CIA and DARPA). The device can be worn on the wrist or as a tag on the waistband and will vibrate whenever someone wearing the device breaches social distancing and gets anywhere near natural human contact. The company had a lucky break in that it was developing a distancing sensor when the 'Covid' hoax arrived which immediately provided a potentially enormous market. How fortunate. The government in big-time Cult-controlled Ontario in Canada is investing \$2.5 million in wearable contact tracing technology that 'will alert users if they may have been exposed to the Covid-19 in the workplace and will beep or vibrate if they are within six feet of another person'. Facedrive Inc., the technology company behind this, was founded in 2016 with funding from the Ontario Together Fund and obviously they, too, had a prophet on the board of directors. The human surveillance and control technology is called TraceSCAN and would be worn by the human cyborgs in places such as airports, workplaces, construction sites, care homes and ... *schools*.

I emphasise schools with children and young people the prime targets. You know what is planned for society as a whole if you keep your eyes on the schools. They have always been places where the state program the next generation of slaves to be its compliant worker-ants – or Woker-ants these days; but in the mist of the ‘Covid’ madness they have been transformed into mind laboratories on a scale never seen before. Teachers and head teachers are just as programmed as the kids – often more so. Children are kept apart from human interaction by walk lanes, classroom distancing, staggered meal times, masks, and the rolling-out of buzzer systems. Schools are now physically laid out as a laboratory maze for lab-rats. Lunatics at a school in Anchorage, Alaska, who should be prosecuted for child abuse, took away desks and forced children to kneel (know your place) on a mat for five hours a day while wearing a mask and using their chairs as a desk. How this was supposed to impact on a ‘virus’ only these clinically insane people can tell you and even then it would be clap-trap. The school banned recess (interaction), art classes (creativity), and physical exercise (getting body and mind moving out of inertia). Everyone behind this outrage should be in jail or better still a mental institution. The behavioural manipulators are all for this dystopian approach to schools.

Professor Susan Michie, the mind-doctor and British Communist Party member, said it was wrong to say that schools were safe. They had to be made so by ‘distancing’, masks and ventilation (sitting all day in the cold). I must ask this lady round for dinner on a night I know I am going to be out and not back for weeks. She probably wouldn’t be able to make it, anyway, with all the visits to her own psychologist she must have block-booked.

Masking identity

I know how shocking it must be for you that a behaviour manipulator like Michie wants everyone to wear masks which have long been a feature of mind-control programs like the infamous MKUltra in the United States, but, there we are. We live and learn. I spent many years from 1996 to right across the millennium

researching mind control in detail on both sides of the Atlantic and elsewhere. I met a large number of mind-control survivors and many had been held captive in body and mind by MKUltra. MK stands for mind-control, but employs the German spelling in deference to the Nazis spirited out of Germany at the end of World War Two by Operation Paperclip in which the US authorities, with help from the Vatican, transported Nazi mind-controllers and engineers to America to continue their work. Many of them were behind the creation of NASA and they included Nazi scientist and SS officer Wernher von Braun who swapped designing V-2 rockets to bombard London with designing the Saturn V rockets that powered the NASA moon programme's Apollo craft. I think I may have mentioned that the Cult has no borders. Among Paperclip escapees was Josef Mengele, the Angel of Death in the Nazi concentration camps where he conducted mind and genetic experiments on children often using twins to provide a control twin to measure the impact of his 'work' on the other. If you want to observe the Cult mentality in all its extremes of evil then look into the life of Mengele. I have met many people who suffered mercilessly under Mengele in the United States where he operated under the name Dr Greene and became a stalwart of MKUltra programming and torture. Among his locations was the underground facility in the Mojave Desert in California called the China Lake Naval Weapons Station which is almost entirely below the surface. My books *The Biggest Secret*, *Children of the Matrix* and *The Perception Deception* have the detailed background to MKUltra.

The best-known MKUltra survivor is American Cathy O'Brien. I first met her and her late partner Mark Phillips at a conference in Colorado in 1996. Mark helped her escape and deprogram from decades of captivity in an offshoot of MKUltra known as Project Monarch in which 'sex slaves' were provided for the rich and famous including Father George Bush, Dick Cheney and the Clintons. Read Cathy and Mark's book *Trance-Formation of America* and if you are new to this you will be shocked to the core. I read it in 1996 shortly before, with the usual synchronicity of my life, I found

myself given a book table at the conference right next to hers. MKUltra never ended despite being very publicly exposed (only a small part of it) in the 1970s and continues in other guises. I am still in touch with Cathy. She contacted me during 2020 after masks became compulsory in many countries to tell me how they were used as part of MKUltra programming. I had been observing 'Covid regulations' and the relationship between authority and public for months. I saw techniques that I knew were employed on individuals in MKUltra being used on the global population. I had read many books and manuals on mind control including one called *Silent Weapons for Quiet Wars* which came to light in the 1980s and was a guide on how to perceptually program on a mass scale. 'Silent Weapons' refers to mind-control. I remembered a line from the manual as governments, medical authorities and law enforcement agencies have so obviously talked to – or rather at – the adult population since the 'Covid' hoax began as if they are children. The document said:

If a person is spoken to by a T.V. advertiser as if he were a twelve-year-old, then, due to suggestibility, he will, with a certain probability, respond or react to that suggestion with the uncritical response of a twelve-year-old and will reach in to his economic reservoir and deliver its energy to buy that product on impulse when he passes it in the store.

That's why authority has spoken to adults like children since all this began.

Why did Michael Jackson wear masks?

Every aspect of the 'Covid' narrative has mind-control as its central theme. Cathy O'Brien wrote an article for davidicke.com about the connection between masks and mind control. Her daughter Kelly who I first met in the 1990s was born while Cathy was still held captive in MKUltra. Kelly was forced to wear a mask as part of her programming from the age of *two* to dehumanise her, target her sense of individuality and reduce the amount of oxygen her brain and body received. *Bingo*. This is the real reason for compulsory

masks, why they have been enforced en masse, and why they seek to increase the number they demand you wear. First one, then two, with one disgraceful alleged ‘doctor’ recommending four which is nothing less than a death sentence. Where and how often they must be worn is being expanded for the purpose of mass mind control and damaging respiratory health which they can call ‘Covid-19’. Canada’s government headed by the man-child Justin Trudeau, says it’s fine for children of two and older to wear masks. An insane ‘study’ in Italy involving just 47 children concluded there was no problem for babies as young as *four months* wearing them. Even after people were ‘vaccinated’ they were still told to wear masks by the criminal that is Anthony Fauci. Cathy wrote that mandating masks is allowing the authorities literally to control the air we breathe which is what was done in MKUltra. You might recall how the singer Michael Jackson wore masks and there is a reason for that. He was subjected to MKUltra mind control through Project Monarch and his psyche was scrambled by these simpletons. Cathy wrote:

In MKUltra Project Monarch mind control, Michael Jackson had to wear a mask to silence his voice so he could not reach out for help. Remember how he developed that whisper voice when he wasn’t singing? Masks control the mind from the outside in, like the redefining of words is doing. By controlling what we can and cannot say for fear of being labeled racist or beaten, for example, it ultimately controls thought that drives our words and ultimately actions (or lack thereof).

Likewise, a mask muffles our speech so that we are not heard, which controls voice ... words ... mind. This is Mind Control. Masks are an obvious mind control device, and I am disturbed so many people are complying on a global scale. Masks depersonalize while making a person feel as though they have no voice. It is a barrier to others. People who would never choose to comply but are forced to wear a mask in order to keep their job, and ultimately their family fed, are compromised. They often feel shame and are subdued. People have stopped talking with each other while media controls the narrative.

The ‘no voice’ theme has often become literal with train passengers told not to speak to each other in case they pass on the ‘virus’, singing banned for the same reason and bonkers California officials telling people riding roller coasters that they cannot shout and scream. Cathy said she heard every day from healed MKUltra survivors who cannot wear a mask without flashing back on ways

their breathing was controlled – ‘from ball gags and penises to water boarding’. She said that through the years when she saw images of people in China wearing masks ‘due to pollution’ that it was really to control their oxygen levels. ‘I knew it was as much of a population control mechanism of depersonalisation as are burkas’, she said. Masks are another Chinese communist/fascist method of control that has been swept across the West as the West becomes China at lightning speed since we entered 2020.

Mask-19

There are other reasons for mandatory masks and these include destroying respiratory health to call it ‘Covid-19’ and stunting brain development of children and the young. Dr Margarite Griesz-Brisson MD, PhD, is a Consultant Neurologist and Neurophysiologist and the Founder and Medical Director of the London Neurology and Pain Clinic. Her CV goes down the street and round the corner. She is clearly someone who cares about people and won’t parrot the propaganda. Griesz-Brisson has a PhD in pharmacology, with special interest in neurotoxicology, environmental medicine, neuroregeneration and neuroplasticity (the way the brain can change in the light of information received). She went public in October, 2020, with a passionate warning about the effects of mask-wearing laws:

The reinhalation of our exhaled air will without a doubt create oxygen deficiency and a flooding of carbon dioxide. We know that the human brain is very sensitive to oxygen deprivation. There are nerve cells for example in the hippocampus that can’t be longer than 3 minutes without oxygen – they cannot survive. The acute warning symptoms are headaches, drowsiness, dizziness, issues in concentration, slowing down of reaction time – reactions of the cognitive system.

Oh, I know, let’s tell bus, truck and taxi drivers to wear them and people working machinery. How about pilots, doctors and police? Griesz-Brisson makes the important point that while the symptoms she mentions may fade as the body readjusts this does not alter the fact that people continue to operate in oxygen deficit with long list of

potential consequences. She said it was well known that neurodegenerative diseases take years or decades to develop. 'If today you forget your phone number, the breakdown in your brain would have already started 20 or 30 years ago.' She said degenerative processes in your brain are getting amplified as your oxygen deprivation continues through wearing a mask. Nerve cells in the brain are unable to divide themselves normally in these circumstances and lost nerve cells will no longer be regenerated. 'What is gone is gone.' Now consider that people like shop workers and *schoolchildren* are wearing masks for hours every day. What in the name of sanity is going to be happening to them? 'I do not wear a mask, I need my brain to think', Griesz-Brisson said, 'I want to have a clear head when I deal with my patients and not be in a carbon dioxide-induced anaesthesia'. If you are told to wear a mask anywhere ask the organisation, police, store, whatever, for their risk assessment on the dangers and negative effects on mind and body of enforcing mask-wearing. They won't have one because it has never been done not even by government. All of them must be subject to class-action lawsuits as the consequences come to light. They don't do mask risk assessments for an obvious reason. They know what the conclusions would be and independent scientific studies that *have* been done tell a horror story of consequences.

'Masks are criminal'

Dr Griesz-Brisson said that for children and adolescents, masks are an absolute no-no. They had an extremely active and adaptive immune system and their brain was incredibly active with so much to learn. 'The child's brain, or the youth's brain, is thirsting for oxygen.' The more metabolically active an organ was, the more oxygen it required; and in children and adolescents every organ was metabolically active. Griesz-Brisson said that to deprive a child's or adolescent's brain of oxygen, or to restrict it in any way, was not only dangerous to their health, it was absolutely criminal. 'Oxygen deficiency inhibits the development of the brain, and the damage that has taken place as a result CANNOT be reversed.' Mind

manipulators of MKUltra put masks on two-year-olds they wanted to neurologically rewire and you can see why. Griesz-Brisson said a child needs the brain to learn and the brain needs oxygen to function. 'We don't need a clinical study for that. This is simple, indisputable physiology.' Consciously and purposely induced oxygen deficiency was an absolutely deliberate health hazard, and an absolute medical contraindication which means that 'this drug, this therapy, this method or measure should not be used, and is not allowed to be used'. To coerce an entire population to use an absolute medical contraindication by force, she said, there had to be definite and serious reasons and the reasons must be presented to competent interdisciplinary and independent bodies to be verified and authorised. She had this warning of the consequences that were coming if mask wearing continued:

When, in ten years, dementia is going to increase exponentially, and the younger generations couldn't reach their god-given potential, it won't help to say 'we didn't need the masks'. I know how damaging oxygen deprivation is for the brain, cardiologists know how damaging it is for the heart, pulmonologists know how damaging it is for the lungs. Oxygen deprivation damages every single organ. Where are our health departments, our health insurance, our medical associations? It would have been their duty to be vehemently against the lockdown and to stop it and stop it from the very beginning.

Why do the medical boards issue punishments to doctors who give people exemptions? Does the person or the doctor seriously have to prove that oxygen deprivation harms people? What kind of medicine are our doctors and medical associations representing? Who is responsible for this crime? The ones who want to enforce it? The ones who let it happen and play along, or the ones who don't prevent it?

All of the organisations and people she mentions there either answer directly to the Cult or do whatever hierarchical levels above them tell them to do. The outcome of both is the same. 'It's not about masks, it's not about viruses, it's certainly not about your health', Griesz-Brisson said. 'It is about much, much more. I am not participating. I am not afraid.' They were taking our air to breathe and there was no unfounded medical exemption from face masks. Oxygen deprivation was dangerous for every single brain. It had to be the free decision of every human being whether they want to

wear a mask that was absolutely ineffective to protect themselves from a virus. She ended by rightly identifying where the responsibility lies for all this:

The imperative of the hour is personal responsibility. We are responsible for what we think, not the media. We are responsible for what we do, not our superiors. We are responsible for our health, not the World Health Organization. And we are responsible for what happens in our country, not the government.

Halle-bloody-lujah.

But surgeons wear masks, right?

Independent studies of mask-wearing have produced a long list of reports detailing mental, emotional and physical dangers. What a definition of insanity to see police officers imposing mask-wearing on the public which will cumulatively damage their health while the police themselves wear masks that will cumulatively damage *their* health. It's utter madness and both public and police do this because 'the government says so' – yes a government of brain-donor idiots like UK Health Secretary Matt Hancock reading the 'follow the science' scripts of psychopathic, lunatic psychologists. The response you get from Stockholm syndrome sufferers defending the very authorities that are destroying them and their families is that 'surgeons wear masks'. This is considered the game, set and match that they must work and don't cause oxygen deficit. Well, actually, scientific studies have shown that they *do* and oxygen levels are monitored in operating theatres to compensate. Surgeons wear masks to stop spittle and such like dropping into open wounds – not to stop 'viral particles' which are so minuscule they can only be seen through an electron microscope. Holes in the masks are significantly bigger than 'viral particles' and if you sneeze or cough they will breach the mask. I watched an incredibly disingenuous 'experiment' that claimed to prove that masks work in catching 'virus' material from the mouth and nose. They did this with a slow motion camera and the mask did block big stuff which stayed inside the mask and

against the face to be breathed in or cause infections on the face as we have seen with many children. ‘Viral particles’, however, would never have been picked up by the camera as they came through the mask when they are far too small to be seen. The ‘experiment’ was therefore disingenuous *and* useless.

Studies have concluded that wearing masks in operating theatres (and thus elsewhere) make no difference to preventing infection while the opposite is true with toxic shite building up in the mask and this had led to an explosion in tooth decay and gum disease dubbed by dentists ‘mask mouth’. You might have seen the Internet video of a furious American doctor urging people to take off their masks after a four-year-old patient had been rushed to hospital the night before and nearly died with a lung infection that doctors sourced to mask wearing. A study in the journal *Cancer Discovery* found that inhalation of harmful microbes can contribute to advanced stage lung cancer in adults and long-term use of masks can help breed dangerous pathogens. Microbiologists have said frequent mask wearing creates a moist environment in which microbes can grow and proliferate before entering the lungs. The Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health, or CADTH, a Canadian national organisation that provides research and analysis to healthcare decision-makers, said this as long ago as 2013 in a report entitled ‘Use of Surgical Masks in the Operating Room: A Review of the Clinical Effectiveness and Guidelines’. It said:

- No evidence was found to support the use of surgical face masks to reduce the frequency of surgical site infections
- No evidence was found on the effectiveness of wearing surgical face masks to protect staff from infectious material in the operating room.
- Guidelines recommend the use of surgical face masks by staff in the operating room to protect both operating room staff and patients (despite the lack of evidence).

We were told that the world could go back to ‘normal’ with the arrival of the ‘vaccines’. When they came, fraudulent as they are, the story changed as I knew that it would. We are in the midst of transforming ‘normal’, not going back to it. Mary Ramsay, head of immunisation at Public Health England, echoed the words of US criminal Anthony Fauci who said masks and other regulations must stay no matter if people are vaccinated. The Fauci idiot continued to wear two masks – different colours so both could be clearly seen – after he *claimed* to have been vaccinated. Senator Rand Paul told Fauci in one exchange that his double-masks were ‘theatre’ and he was right. It’s all theatre. Mary Ramsay back-tracked on the vaccine-return-to-normal theme when she said the public may need to wear masks and social-distance for years despite the jabs. ‘People have got used to those lower-level restrictions now, and [they] can live with them’, she said telling us what the idea has been all along. ‘The vaccine does not give you a pass, even if you have had it, you must continue to follow all the guidelines’ said a Public Health England statement which reneged on what we had been told before and made having the ‘vaccine’ irrelevant to ‘normality’ even by the official story. Spain’s fascist government trumped everyone by passing a law mandating the wearing of masks on the beach and even when swimming in the sea. The move would have devastated what’s left of the Spanish tourist industry, posed potential breathing dangers to swimmers and had Northern European sunbathers walking around with their forehead brown and the rest of their face white as a sheet. The ruling was so crazy that it had to be retracted after pressure from public and tourist industry, but it confirmed where the Cult wants to go with masks and how clinically insane authority has become. The determination to make masks permanent and hide the serious dangers to body and mind can be seen in the censorship of scientist Professor Denis Rancourt by Bill Gates-funded academic publishing website ResearchGate over his papers exposing the dangers and uselessness of masks. Rancourt said:

ResearchGate today has permanently locked my account, which I have had since 2015. Their reasons graphically show the nature of their attack against democracy, and their corruption of

science ... By their obscene non-logic, a scientific review of science articles reporting on harms caused by face masks has a 'potential to cause harm'. No criticism of the psychological device (face masks) is tolerated, if the said criticism shows potential to influence public policy.

This is what happens in a fascist world.

Where are the 'greens' (again)?

Other dangers of wearing masks especially regularly relate to the inhalation of minute plastic fibres into the lungs and the deluge of discarded masks in the environment and oceans. Estimates predicted that more than 1.5 billion disposable masks will end up in the world's oceans every year polluting the water with tons of plastic and endangering marine wildlife. Studies project that humans are using 129 billion face masks each month worldwide – about three million a minute. Most are disposable and made from plastic, non-biodegradable microfibers that break down into smaller plastic particles that become widespread in ecosystems. They are littering cities, clogging sewage channels and turning up in bodies of water. I have written in other books about the immense amounts of microplastics from endless sources now being absorbed into the body. Rolf Halden, director of the Arizona State University (ASU) Biodesign Center for Environmental Health Engineering, was the senior researcher in a 2020 study that analysed 47 human tissue samples and found microplastics in all of them. 'We have detected these chemicals of plastics in every single organ that we have investigated', he said. I wrote in *The Answer* about the world being deluged with microplastics. A study by the Worldwide Fund for Nature (WWF) found that people are consuming on average every week some 2,000 tiny pieces of plastic mostly through water and also through marine life and the air. Every year humans are ingesting enough microplastics to fill a heaped dinner plate and in a life-time of 79 years it is enough to fill two large waste bins. Marco Lambertini, WWF International director general said: 'Not only are plastics polluting our oceans and waterways and killing marine life – it's in all of us and we can't escape consuming plastics,' American

geologists found tiny plastic fibres, beads and shards in rainwater samples collected from the remote slopes of the Rocky Mountain National Park near Denver, Colorado. Their report was headed: 'It is raining plastic.' Rachel Adams, senior lecturer in Biomedical Science at Cardiff Metropolitan University, said that among health consequences are internal inflammation and immune responses to a 'foreign body'. She further pointed out that microplastics become carriers of toxins including mercury, pesticides and dioxins (a known cause of cancer and reproductive and developmental problems). These toxins accumulate in the fatty tissues once they enter the body through microplastics. Now this is being compounded massively by people putting plastic on their face and throwing it away.

Workers exposed to polypropylene plastic fibres known as 'flock' have developed 'flock worker's lung' from inhaling small pieces of the flock fibres which can damage lung tissue, reduce breathing capacity and exacerbate other respiratory problems. Now ... commonly used surgical masks have three layers of melt-blown textiles made of ... polypropylene. We have billions of people putting these microplastics against their mouth, nose and face for hours at a time day after day in the form of masks. How does anyone think that will work out? I mean – what could possibly go wrong? We posted a number of scientific studies on this at davidicke.com, but when I went back to them as I was writing this book the links to the science research website where they were hosted were dead. Anything that challenges the official narrative in any way is either censored or vilified. The official narrative is so unsupportable by the evidence that only deleting the truth can protect it. A study by Chinese scientists still survived – with the usual twist which it why it was still active, I guess. Yes, they found that virtually all the masks they tested increased the daily intake of microplastic fibres, but people should still wear them because the danger from the 'virus' was worse said the crazy 'team' from the Institute of Hydrobiology in Wuhan. Scientists first discovered microplastics in lung tissue of some patients who died of lung cancer

in the 1990s. Subsequent studies have confirmed the potential health damage with the plastic degrading slowly and remaining in the lungs to accumulate in volume. Wuhan researchers used a machine simulating human breathing to establish that masks shed up to nearly 4,000 microplastic fibres in a month with reused masks producing more. Scientists said some masks are laced with toxic chemicals and a variety of compounds seriously restricted for both health and environmental reasons. They include cobalt (used in blue dye) and formaldehyde known to cause watery eyes, burning sensations in the eyes, nose, and throat, plus coughing, wheezing and nausea. No – that must be 'Covid-19'.

Mask 'worms'

There is another and potentially even more sinister content of masks. Mostly new masks of different makes filmed under a microscope around the world have been found to contain strange black fibres or 'worms' that appear to move or 'crawl' by themselves and react to heat and water. The nearest I have seen to them are the self-replicating fibres that are pulled out through the skin of those suffering from Morgellons disease which has been connected to the phenomena of 'chemtrails' which I will bring into the story later on. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. Black 'worm' fibres in masks have that kind of feel to them and there is a nanotechnology technique called 'worm micelles' which carry and release drugs or anything else you want to deliver to the body. For sure the suppression of humanity by mind altering drugs is the Cult agenda big time and the more excuses they can find to gain access to the body the more opportunities there are to make that happen whether through 'vaccines' or masks pushed against the mouth and nose for hours on end.

So let us summarise the pros and cons of masks:

Against masks: Breathing in your own carbon dioxide; depriving the body and brain of sufficient oxygen; build-up of toxins in the mask that can be breathed into the lungs and cause rashes on the face and ‘mask-mouth’; breathing microplastic fibres and toxic chemicals into the lungs; dehumanisation and deleting individualisation by literally making people faceless; destroying human emotional interaction through facial expression and deleting parental connection with their babies which look for guidance to their facial expression.

For masks: They don’t protect you from a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist and even if it did ‘viral’ particles are so minute they are smaller than the holes in the mask.

Governments, police, supermarkets, businesses, transport companies, and all the rest who seek to impose masks have done no risk assessment on their consequences for health and psychology and are now open to group lawsuits when the impact becomes clear with a cumulative epidemic of respiratory and other disease. Authorities will try to exploit these effects and hide the real cause by dubbing them ‘Covid-19’. Can you imagine setting out to force the population to wear health-destroying masks without doing any assessment of the risks? It is criminal and it is evil, but then how many people targeted in this way, who see their children told to wear them all day at school, have asked for a risk assessment? Billions can’t be imposed upon by the few unless the billions allow it. Oh, yes, with just a tinge of irony, 85 percent of all masks made worldwide come from *China*.

Wash your hands in toxic shite

‘Covid’ rules include the use of toxic sanitisers and again the health consequences of constantly applying toxins to be absorbed through the skin is obvious to any level of Renegade Mind. America’s Food and Drug Administration (FDA) said that sanitisers are drugs and issued a warning about 75 dangerous brands which contain

methanol used in antifreeze and can cause death, kidney damage and blindness. The FDA circulated the following warning even for those brands that it claims to be safe:

Store hand sanitizer out of the reach of pets and children, and children should use it only with adult supervision. Do not drink hand sanitizer. This is particularly important for young children, especially toddlers, who may be attracted by the pleasant smell or brightly colored bottles of hand sanitizer.

Drinking even a small amount of hand sanitizer can cause alcohol poisoning in children. (However, there is no need to be concerned if your children eat with or lick their hands after using hand sanitizer.) During this coronavirus pandemic, poison control centers have had an increase in calls about accidental ingestion of hand sanitizer, so it is important that adults monitor young children's use.

Do not allow pets to swallow hand sanitizer. If you think your pet has eaten something potentially dangerous, call your veterinarian or a pet poison control center right away. Hand sanitizer is flammable and should be stored away from heat and flames. When using hand sanitizer, rub your hands until they feel completely dry before performing activities that may involve heat, sparks, static electricity, or open flames.

There you go, perfectly safe, then, and that's without even a mention of the toxins absorbed through the skin. Come on kids – sanitise your hands everywhere you go. It will save you from the 'virus'. Put all these elements together of the 'Covid' normal and see how much health and psychology is being cumulatively damaged, even devastated, to 'protect your health'. Makes sense, right? They are only imposing these things because they care, right? *Right?*

Submitting to insanity

Psychological reframing of the population goes very deep and is done in many less obvious ways. I hear people say how contradictory and crazy 'Covid' rules are and how they are ever changing. This is explained away by dismissing those involved as idiots. It is a big mistake. The Cult is delighted if its cold calculation is perceived as incompetence and idiocy when it is anything but. Oh, yes, there are idiots within the system – lots of them – but they are *administering* the Cult agenda, mostly unknowingly. They are not deciding and dictating it. The bulwark against tyranny is self-

respect, always has been, always will be. It is self-respect that has broken every tyranny in history. By its very nature self-respect will not bow to oppression and its perpetrators. There is so little self-respect that it's always the few that overturn dictators. Many may eventually follow, but the few with the iron spines (self-respect) kick it off and generate the momentum. The Cult targets self-respect in the knowledge that once this has gone only submission remains. Crazy, contradictory, ever-changing 'Covid' rules are systematically applied by psychologists to delete self-respect. They *want* you to see that the rules make no sense. It is one thing to decide to do something when *you* have made the choice based on evidence and logic. You still retain your self-respect. It is quite another when you can see what you are being told to do is insane, ridiculous and makes no sense, and *yet you still do it*. Your self-respect is extinguished and this has been happening as ever more obviously stupid and nonsensical things have been demanded and the great majority have complied even when they can see they are stupid and nonsensical.

People walk around in face-nappies knowing they are damaging their health and make no difference to a 'virus'. They do it in fear of not doing it. I know it's daft, but I'll do it anyway. When that happens something dies inside of you and submissive reframing has begun. Next there's a need to hide from yourself that you have conceded your self-respect and you convince yourself that you have not really submitted to fear and intimidation. You begin to believe that you are complying with craziness because it's the right thing to do. When first you concede your self-respect of $2+2 = 4$ to $2+2 = 5$ you *know* you are compromising your self-respect. Gradually to avoid facing that fact you begin to *believe* that $2+2=5$. You have been reframed and I have been watching this process happening in the human psyche on an industrial scale. The Cult is working to break your spirit and one of its major tools in that war is humiliation. I read how former American soldier Bradley Manning (later Chelsea Manning after a sex-change) was treated after being jailed for supplying WikiLeaks with documents exposing the enormity of

government and elite mendacity. Manning was isolated in solitary confinement for eight months, put under 24-hour surveillance, forced to hand over clothing before going to bed, and stand naked for every roll call. This is systematic humiliation. The introduction of anal swab 'Covid' tests in China has been done for the same reason to delete self-respect and induce compliant submission. Anal swabs are mandatory for incoming passengers in parts of China and American diplomats have said they were forced to undergo the indignity which would have been calculated humiliation by the Cult-owned Chinese government that has America in its sights.

Government-people: An abusive relationship

Spirit-breaking psychological techniques include giving people hope and apparent respite from tyranny only to take it away again. This happened in the UK during Christmas, 2020, when the psycho-psychologists and their political lackeys announced an easing of restrictions over the holiday only to reimpose them almost immediately on the basis of yet another lie. There is a big psychological difference between getting used to oppression and being given hope of relief only to have that dashed. Psychologists know this and we have seen the technique used repeatedly. Then there is traumatising people before you introduce more extreme regulations that require compliance. A perfect case was the announcement by the dark and sinister Whitty and Vallance in the UK that 'new data' predicted that 4,000 could die every day over the winter of 2020/2021 if we did not lockdown again. I think they call it lying and after traumatising people with that claim out came Jackboot Johnson the next day with new curbs on human freedom. Psychologists know that a frightened and traumatised mind becomes suggestable to submission and behaviour reframing. Underpinning all this has been to make people fearful and suspicious of each other and see themselves as a potential danger to others. In league with deleted self-respect you have the perfect psychological recipe for self-loathing. The relationship between authority and public is now demonstrably the same as that of

subservience to an abusive partner. These are signs of an abusive relationship explained by psychologist Leslie Becker-Phelps:

Psychological and emotional abuse: Undermining a partner's self-worth with verbal attacks, name-calling, and belittling. Humiliating the partner in public, unjustly accusing them of having an affair, or interrogating them about their every behavior. Keeping partner confused or off balance by saying they were just kidding or blaming the partner for 'making' them act this way ... Feigning in public that they care while turning against them in private. This leads to victims frequently feeling confused, incompetent, unworthy, hopeless, and chronically self-doubting. [Apply these techniques to how governments have treated the population since New Year, 2020, and the parallels are obvious.]

Physical abuse: The abuser might physically harm their partner in a range of ways, such as grabbing, hitting, punching, or shoving them. They might throw objects at them or harm them with a weapon. [Observe the physical harm imposed by masks, lockdown, and so on.]

Threats and intimidation: One way abusers keep their partners in line is by instilling fear. They might be verbally threatening, or give threatening looks or gestures. Abusers often make it known that they are tracking their partner's every move. They might destroy their partner's possessions, threaten to harm them, or threaten to harm their family members. Not surprisingly, victims of this abuse often feel anxiety, fear, and panic. [No words necessary.]

Isolation: Abusers often limit their partner's activities, forbidding them to talk or interact with friends or family. They might limit access to a car or even turn off their phone. All of this might be done by physically holding them against their will, but is often accomplished through psychological abuse and intimidation. The more isolated a person feels, the fewer resources they have to help gain perspective on their situation and to escape from it. [No words necessary.]

Economic abuse: Abusers often make their partners beholden to them for money by controlling access to funds of any kind. They might prevent their partner from getting a job or withhold access to money they earn from a job. This creates financial dependency that makes leaving the relationship very difficult. [See destruction of livelihoods and the proposed meagre 'guaranteed income' so long as you do whatever you are told.]

Using children: An abuser might disparage their partner's parenting skills, tell their children lies about their partner, threaten to take custody of their children, or threaten to harm their children. These tactics instil fear and often elicit compliance. [See reframed social service mafia and how children are being mercilessly abused by the state over 'Covid' while their parents look on too frightened to do anything.]

A further recurring trait in an abusive relationship is the abused blaming themselves for their abuse and making excuses for the abuser. We have the public blaming each other for lockdown abuse by government and many making excuses for the government while attacking those who challenge the government. How often we have heard authorities say that rules are being imposed or reimposed only because people have refused to 'behave' and follow the rules. We don't want to do it – it's *you*.

Renegade Minds are an antidote to all of these things. They will never concede their self-respect no matter what the circumstances. Even when apparent humiliation is heaped upon them they laugh in its face and reflect back the humiliation on the abuser where it belongs. Renegade Minds will never wear masks they know are only imposed to humiliate, suppress and damage both physically and psychologically. Consequences will take care of themselves and they will never break their spirit or cause them to concede to tyranny. UK newspaper columnist Peter Hitchens was one of the few in the mainstream media to speak out against lockdowns and forced vaccinations. He then announced he had taken the jab. He wanted to see family members abroad and he believed vaccine passports were inevitable even though they had not yet been introduced. Hitchens

has a questioning and critical mind, but not a Renegade one. If he had no amount of pressure would have made him concede. Hitchens excused his action by saying that the battle has been lost. Renegade Minds never accept defeat when freedom is at stake and even if they are the last one standing the self-respect of not submitting to tyranny is more important than any outcome or any consequence.

That's why Renegade Minds are the only minds that ever changed anything worth changing.

CHAPTER EIGHT

'Reframing' insanity

Insanity is relative. It depends on who has who locked in what cage

Ray Bradbury

'Reframing' a mind means simply to change its perception and behaviour. This can be done subconsciously to such an extent that subjects have no idea they have been 'reframed' while to any observer changes in behaviour and attitudes are obvious.

Human society is being reframed on a ginormous scale since the start of 2020 and here we have the reason why psychologists rather than doctors have been calling the shots. Ask most people who have succumbed to 'Covid' reframing if they have changed and most will say 'no'; but they *have* and fundamentally. The Cult's long-game has been preparing for these times since way back and crucial to that has been to prepare both population and officialdom mentally and emotionally. To use the mind-control parlance they had to reframe the population with a mentality that would submit to fascism and reframe those in government and law enforcement to impose fascism or at least go along with it. The result has been the fact-deleted mindlessness of 'Wokeness' and officialdom that has either enthusiastically or unquestioningly imposed global tyranny demanded by reframed politicians on behalf of psychopathic and deeply evil cultists. 'Cognitive reframing' identifies and challenges the way someone sees the world in the form of situations, experiences and emotions and then restructures those perceptions to view the same set of circumstances in a different way. This can have

benefits if the attitudes are personally destructive while on the other side it has the potential for individual and collective mind control which the subject has no idea has even happened.

Cognitive therapy was developed in the 1960s by Aaron T. Beck who was born in Rhode Island in 1921 as the son of Jewish immigrants from the Ukraine. He became interested in the techniques as a treatment for depression. Beck's daughter Judith S. Beck is prominent in the same field and they founded the Beck Institute for Cognitive Behavior Therapy in Philadelphia in 1994. Cognitive reframing, however, began to be used worldwide by those with a very dark agenda. The Cult reframes politicians to change their attitudes and actions until they are completely at odds with what they once appeared to stand for. The same has been happening to government administrators at all levels, law enforcement, military and the human population. Cultists love mind control for two main reasons: It allows them to control what people think, do and say to secure agenda advancement and, by definition, it calms their legendary insecurity and fear of the unexpected. I have studied mind control since the time I travelled America in 1996. I may have been talking to next to no one in terms of an audience in those years, but my goodness did I gather a phenomenal amount of information and knowledge about so many things including the techniques of mind control. I have described this in detail in other books going back to *The Biggest Secret* in 1998. I met a very large number of people recovering from MKUltra and its offshoots and successors and I began to see how these same techniques were being used on the population in general. This was never more obvious than since the 'Covid' hoax began.

Reframing the enforcers

I have observed over the last two decades and more the very clear transformation in the dynamic between the police, officialdom and the public. I tracked this in the books as the relationship mutated from one of serving the public to seeing them as almost the enemy and certainly a lower caste. There has always been a class divide

based on income and always been some psychopathic, corrupt, and big-I-am police officers. This was different. Wholesale change was unfolding in the collective dynamic; it was less about money and far more about position and perceived power. An us-and-them was emerging. Noses were lifted skyward by government administration and law enforcement and their attitude to the public they were *supposed* to be serving changed to one of increasing contempt, superiority and control. The transformation was so clear and widespread that it had to be planned. Collective attitudes and dynamics do not change naturally and organically that quickly on that scale. I then came across an organisation in Britain called Common Purpose created in the late 1980s by Julia Middleton who would work in the office of Deputy Prime Minister John Prescott during the long and disastrous premiership of war criminal Tony Blair. When Blair speaks the Cult is speaking and the man should have been in jail a long time ago. Common Purpose proclaims itself to be one of the biggest 'leadership development' organisations in the world while functioning as a *charity* with all the financial benefits which come from that. It hosts 'leadership development' courses and programmes all over the world and claims to have 'brought together' what it calls 'leaders' from more than 100 countries on six continents. The modus operandi of Common Purpose can be compared with the work of the UK government's reframing network that includes the Behavioural Insights Team 'nudge unit' and 'Covid' reframing specialists at SPI-B. WikiLeaks described Common Purpose long ago as 'a hidden virus in our government and schools' which is unknown to the general public: 'It recruits and trains "leaders" to be loyal to the directives of Common Purpose and the EU, instead of to their own departments, which they then undermine or subvert, the NHS [National Health Service] being an example.' This is a vital point to understand the 'Covid' hoax. The NHS, and its equivalent around the world, has been utterly reframed in terms of administrators and much of the medical personnel with the transformation underpinned by recruitment policies. The outcome has been the criminal and psychopathic behaviour of the

NHS over ‘Covid’ and we have seen the same in every other major country. WikiLeaks said Common Purpose trainees are ‘learning to rule without regard to democracy’ and to usher in a police state (current events explained). Common Purpose operated like a ‘glue’ and had members in the NHS, BBC, police, legal profession, church, many of Britain’s 7,000 quangos, local councils, the Civil Service, government ministries and Parliament, and controlled many RDA’s (Regional Development Agencies). Here we have one answer for how and why British institutions and their like in other countries have changed so negatively in relation to the public. This further explains how and why the beyond-disgraceful reframed BBC has become a propaganda arm of ‘Covid’ fascism. They are all part of a network pursuing the same goal.

By 2019 Common Purpose was quoting a figure of 85,000 ‘leaders’ that had attended its programmes. These ‘students’ of all ages are known as Common Purpose ‘graduates’ and they consist of government, state and local government officials and administrators, police chiefs and officers, and a whole range of others operating within the national, local and global establishment. Cressida Dick, Commissioner of the London Metropolitan Police, is the Common Purpose graduate who was the ‘Gold Commander’ that oversaw what can only be described as the murder of Brazilian electrician Jean Charles de Menezes in 2005. He was held down by psychopathic police and shot seven times in the head by a psychopathic lunatic after being mistaken for a terrorist when he was just a bloke going about his day. Dick authorised officers to pursue and keep surveillance on de Menezes and ordered that he be stopped from entering the underground train system. Police psychopaths took her at her word clearly. She was ‘disciplined’ for this outrage by being *promoted* – eventually to the top of the ‘Met’ police where she has been a disaster. Many Chief Constables controlling the police in different parts of the UK are and have been Common Purpose graduates. I have heard the ‘graduate’ network described as a sort of Mafia or secret society operating within the fabric of government at all levels pursuing a collective policy

ingrained at Common Purpose training events. Founder Julia Middleton herself has said:

Locally and internationally, Common Purpose graduates will be 'lighting small fires' to create change in their organisations and communities ... The Common Purpose effect is best illustrated by the many stories of small changes brought about by leaders, who themselves have changed.

A Common Purpose mission statement declared:

Common Purpose aims to improve the way society works by expanding the vision, decision-making ability and influence of all kinds of leaders. The organisation runs a variety of educational programmes for leaders of all ages, backgrounds and sectors, in order to provide them with the inspirational, information and opportunities they need to change the world.

Yes, but into what? Since 2020 the answer has become clear.

NLP and the Delphi technique

Common Purpose would seem to be a perfect name or would common programming be better? One of the foundation methods of reaching 'consensus' (group think) is by setting the agenda theme and then encouraging, cajoling or pressuring everyone to agree a 'consensus' in line with the core theme promoted by Common Purpose. The methodology involves the 'Delphi technique', or an adaption of it, in which opinions are expressed that are summarised by a 'facilitator or change agent' at each stage. Participants are 'encouraged' to modify their views in the light of what others have said. Stage by stage the former individual opinions are merged into group consensus which just happens to be what Common Purpose wants them to believe. A key part of this is to marginalise anyone refusing to concede to group think and turn the group against them to apply pressure to conform. We are seeing this very technique used on the general population to make 'Covid' group-thinkers hostile to those who have seen through the bullshit. People can be reframed by using perception manipulation methods such as Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) in which you change perception with the use of

carefully constructed language. An NLP website described the technique this way:

... A method of influencing brain behaviour (the 'neuro' part of the phrase) through the use of language (the 'linguistic' part) and other types of communication to enable a person to 'recode' the way the brain responds to stimuli (that's the 'programming') and manifest new and better behaviours. Neuro-Linguistic Programming often incorporates hypnosis and self-hypnosis to help achieve the change (or 'programming') that is wanted.

British alternative media operation UKColumn has done very detailed research into Common Purpose over a long period. I quoted co-founder and former naval officer Brian Gerrish in my book *Remember Who You Are*, published in 2011, as saying the following years before current times:

It is interesting that many of the mothers who have had children taken by the State speak of the Social Services people being icily cool, emotionless and, as two ladies said in slightly different words, '... like little robots'. We know that NLP is cumulative, so people can be given small imperceptible doses of NLP in a course here, another in a few months, next year etc. In this way, major changes are accrued in their personality, but the day by day change is almost unnoticeable.

In these and other ways 'graduates' have had their perceptions uniformly reframed and they return to their roles in the institutions of government, law enforcement, legal profession, military, 'education', the UK National Health Service and the whole swathe of the establishment structure to pursue a common agenda preparing for the 'post-industrial', 'post-democratic' society. I say 'preparing' but we are now there. 'Post-industrial' is code for the Great Reset and 'post-democratic' is 'Covid' fascism. UKColumn has spoken to partners of those who have attended Common Purpose 'training'. They have described how personalities and attitudes of 'graduates' changed very noticeably for the worse by the time they had completed the course. They had been 'reframed' and told they are the 'leaders' – the special ones – who know better than the population. There has also been the very demonstrable recruitment of psychopaths and narcissists into government administration at all

levels and law enforcement. If you want psychopathy hire psychopaths and you get a simple cause and effect. If you want administrators, police officers and 'leaders' to perceive the public as lesser beings who don't matter then employ narcissists. These personalities are identified using 'psychometrics' that identifies knowledge, abilities, attitudes and personality traits, mostly through carefully-designed questionnaires and tests. As this policy has passed through the decades we have had power-crazy, power-trippers appointed into law enforcement, security and government administration in preparation for current times and the dynamic between public and law enforcement/officialdom has been transformed. UKColumn's Brian Gerrish said of the narcissistic personality:

Their love of themselves and power automatically means that they will crush others who get in their way. I received a major piece of the puzzle when a friend pointed out that when they made public officials re-apply for their own jobs several years ago they were also required to do psychometric tests. This was undoubtedly the start of the screening process to get 'their' sort of people in post.

How obvious that has been since 2020 although it was clear what was happening long before if people paid attention to the changing public-establishment dynamic.

Change agents

At the centre of events in 'Covid' Britain is the National Health Service (NHS) which has behaved disgracefully in slavishly following the Cult agenda. The NHS management structure is awash with Common Purpose graduates or 'change agents' working to a common cause. Helen Bevan, a Chief of Service Transformation at the NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement, co-authored a document called 'Towards a million change agents, a review of the social movements literature: implications for large scale change in the NHS'. The document compared a project management approach to that of change and social movements where 'people change

themselves and each other – peer to peer'. Two definitions given for a 'social movement' were:

A group of people who consciously attempt to build a radically new social order; involves people of a broad range of social backgrounds; and deploys politically confrontational and socially disruptive tactics – Cyrus Zirakzadeh 1997

Collective challenges, based on common purposes and social solidarities, in sustained interaction with elites, opponents, and authorities – Sidney Tarrow 1994

Helen Bevan wrote another NHS document in which she defined 'framing' as 'the process by which leaders construct, articulate and put across their message in a powerful and compelling way in order to win people to their cause and call them to action'. I think I could come up with another definition that would be rather more accurate. The National Health Service and institutions of Britain and the wider world have been taken over by reframed 'change agents' and that includes everything from the United Nations to national governments, local councils and social services which have been kidnapping children from loving parents on an extraordinary and gathering scale on the road to the end of parenthood altogether. Children from loving homes are stolen and kidnapped by the state and put into the 'care' (inversion) of the local authority through council homes, foster parents and forced adoption. At the same time children are allowed to be abused without response while many are under council 'care'. UKColumn highlighted the Common Purpose connection between South Yorkshire Police and Rotherham council officers in the case of the scandal in that area of the sexual exploitation of children to which the authorities turned not one blind eye, but both:

We were alarmed to discover that the Chief Executive, the Strategic Director of Children and Young People's Services, the Manager for the Local Strategic Partnership, the Community Cohesion Manager, the Cabinet Member for Cohesion, the Chief Constable and his predecessor had all attended Leadership training courses provided by the pseudo-charity Common Purpose.

Once 'change agents' have secured positions of hire and fire within any organisation things start to move very quickly. Personnel are then hired and fired on the basis of whether they will work towards the agenda the change agent represents. If they do they are rapidly promoted even though they may be incompetent. Those more qualified and skilled who are pre-Common Purpose 'old school' see their careers stall and even disappear. This has been happening for decades in every institution of state, police, 'health' and social services and all of them have been transformed as a result in their attitudes to their jobs and the public. Medical professions, including nursing, which were once vocations for the caring now employ many cold, callous and couldn't give a shit personality types. The UKColumn investigation concluded:

By blurring the boundaries between people, professions, public and private sectors, responsibility and accountability, Common Purpose encourages 'graduates' to believe that as new selected leaders, they can work together, outside of the established political and social structures, to achieve a paradigm shift or CHANGE – so called 'Leading Beyond Authority'. In doing so, the allegiance of the individual becomes 'reframed' on CP colleagues and their NETWORK.

Reframing the Face-Nappies

Nowhere has this process been more obvious than in the police where recruitment of psychopaths and development of unquestioning mind-controlled group-thinkers have transformed law enforcement into a politically-correct 'Woke' joke and a travesty of what should be public service. Today they wear their face-nappies like good little gofers and enforce 'Covid' rules which are fascism under another name. Alongside the specifically-recruited psychopaths we have software minds incapable of free thought. Brian Gerrish again:

An example is the policeman who would not get on a bike for a press photo because he had not done the cycling proficiency course. Normal people say this is political correctness gone mad. Nothing could be further from the truth. The policeman has been reframed, and in his reality it is perfect common sense not to get on the bike ‘because he hasn’t done the cycling course’.

Another example of this is where the police would not rescue a boy from a pond until they had taken advice from above on the ‘risk assessment’. A normal person would have arrived, perhaps thought of the risk for a moment, and dived in. To the police now ‘reframed’, they followed ‘normal’ procedure.

There are shocking cases of reframed ambulance crews doing the same. Sheer unthinking stupidity of London Face-Nappies headed by Common Purpose graduate Cressida Dick can be seen in their behaviour at a vigil in March, 2021, for a murdered woman, Sarah Everard. A police officer had been charged with the crime. Anyone with a brain would have left the vigil alone in the circumstances. Instead they ‘manhandled’ women to stop them breaking ‘Covid rules’ to betray classic reframing. Minds in the thrall of perception control have no capacity for seeing a situation on its merits and acting accordingly. ‘Rules is rules’ is their only mind-set. My father used to say that rules and regulations are for the guidance of the intelligent and the blind obedience of the idiot. Most of the intelligent, decent, coppers have gone leaving only the other kind and a few old school for whom the job must be a daily nightmare. The combination of psychopaths and rule-book software minds has been clearly on public display in the ‘Covid’ era with automaton robots in uniform imposing fascistic ‘Covid’ regulations on the population without any personal initiative or judging situations on their merits. There are thousands of examples around the world, but I’ll make my point with the infamous Derbyshire police in the English East Midlands – the ones who think pouring dye into beauty spots and using drones to track people walking in the countryside away from anyone is called ‘policing’. To them there are rules decreed by the government which they have to enforce and in their bewildered state a group gathering in a closed space and someone walking alone in the countryside are the same thing. It is beyond idiocy and enters the realm of clinical insanity.

Police officers in Derbyshire said they were ‘horrified’ – *horrified* – to find 15 to 20 ‘irresponsible’ kids playing a football match at a closed leisure centre ‘in breach of coronavirus restrictions’. When they saw the police the kids ran away leaving their belongings behind and the reframed men and women of Derbyshire police were seeking to establish their identities with a view to fining their parents. The most natural thing for youngsters to do – kicking a ball about – is turned into a criminal activity and enforced by the moronic software programs of Derbyshire police. You find the same mentality in every country. These barely conscious ‘horrified’ officers said they had to take action because ‘we need to ensure these rules are being followed’ and ‘it is of the utmost importance that you ensure your children are following the rules and regulations for Covid-19’. Had any of them done ten seconds of research to see if this parroting of their masters’ script could be supported by any evidence? Nope. Reframed people don’t think – others think for them and that’s the whole idea of reframing. I have seen police officers one after the other repeating without question word for word what officialdom tells them just as I have seen great swathes of the public doing the same. Ask either for ‘their’ opinion and out spews what they have been told to think by the official narrative. Police and public may seem to be in different groups, but their mentality is the same. Most people do whatever they are told in fear not doing so or because they believe what officialdom tells them; almost the entirety of the police do what they are told for the same reason. Ultimately it’s the tiny inner core of the global Cult that’s telling both what to do.

So Derbyshire police were ‘horrified’. Oh, really? Why did they think those kids were playing football? It was to relieve the psychological consequences of lockdown and being denied human contact with their friends and interaction, touch and discourse vital to human psychological health. Being denied this month after month has dismantled the psyche of many children and young people as depression and suicide have exploded. Were Derbyshire police *horrified by that?* Are you kidding? Reframed people don’t have those

mental and emotional processes that can see how the impact on the psychological health of youngsters is far more dangerous than any 'virus' even if you take the mendacious official figures to be true. The reframed are told (programmed) how to act and so they do. The Derbyshire Chief Constable in the first period of lockdown when the black dye and drones nonsense was going on was Peter Goodman. He was the man who severed the connection between his force and the Derbyshire Constabulary *Male Voice* Choir when he decided that it was not inclusive enough to allow women to join. The fact it was a male voice choir making a particular sound produced by male voices seemed to elude a guy who terrifyingly ran policing in Derbyshire. He retired weeks after his force was condemned as disgraceful by former Supreme Court Justice Jonathan Sumption for their behaviour over extreme lockdown impositions. Goodman was replaced by his deputy Rachel Swann who was in charge when her officers were 'horrified'. The police statement over the boys committing the hanging-offence of playing football included the line about the youngsters being 'irresponsible in the times we are all living through' missing the point that the real relevance of the 'times we are all living through' is the imposition of fascism enforced by psychopaths and reframed minds of police officers playing such a vital part in establishing the fascist tyranny that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. As a definition of insanity that is hard to beat although it might be run close by imposing masks on people that can have a serious effect on their health while wearing a face nappy all day themselves. Once again public and police do it for the same reason – the authorities tell them to and who are they to have the self-respect to say no?

Wokers in uniform

How reframed do you have to be to arrest a *six-year-old* and take him to court for *picking a flower* while waiting for a bus? Brain dead police and officialdom did just that in North Carolina where criminal proceedings happen regularly for children under nine. Attorney Julie Boyer gave the six-year-old crayons and a colouring book

during the ‘flower’ hearing while the ‘adults’ decided his fate. County Chief District Court Judge Jay Corpening asked: ‘Should a child that believes in Santa Claus, the Easter Bunny and the tooth fairy be making life-altering decisions?’ Well, of course not, but common sense has no meaning when you have a common purpose and a reframed mind. Treating children in this way, and police operating in American schools, is all part of the psychological preparation for children to accept a police state as normal all their adult lives. The same goes for all the cameras and biometric tracking technology in schools. Police training is focused on reframing them as snowflake Wokers and this is happening in the military. Pentagon top brass said that ‘training sessions on extremism’ were needed for troops who asked why they were so focused on the Capitol Building riot when Black Lives Matter riots were ignored. What’s the difference between them some apparently and rightly asked. Actually, there is a difference. Five people died in the Capitol riot, only one through violence, and that was a police officer shooting an unarmed protestor. BLM riots killed at least 25 people and cost billions. Asking the question prompted the psychopaths and reframed minds that run the Pentagon to say that more ‘education’ (programming) was needed. Troop training is all based on psychological programming to make them fodder for the Cult – ‘Military men are just dumb, stupid animals to be used as pawns in foreign policy’ as Cult-to-his-DNA former Secretary of State Henry Kissinger famously said. Governments see the police in similar terms and it’s time for those among them who can see this to defend the people and stop being enforcers of the Cult agenda upon the people.

The US military, like the country itself, is being targeted for destruction through a long list of Woke impositions. Cult-owned gaga ‘President’ Biden signed an executive order when he took office to allow taxpayer money to pay for transgender surgery for active military personnel and veterans. Are you a man soldier? No, I’m a LGBTQIA+ with a hint of Skoliosexual and Spectrasexual. Oh, good man. Bad choice of words you bigot. The Pentagon announced in March, 2021, the appointment of the first ‘diversity and inclusion

officer' for US Special Forces. Richard Torres-Estrada arrived with the publication of a 'D&I Strategic Plan which will guide the enterprise-wide effort to institutionalize and sustain D&I'. If you think a Special Forces 'Strategic Plan' should have something to do with defending America you haven't been paying attention.

Defending Woke is now the military's new role. Torres-Estrada has posted images comparing Donald Trump with Adolf Hitler and we can expect no bias from him as a representative of the supposedly non-political Pentagon. Cable news host Tucker Carlson said: 'The Pentagon is now the Yale faculty lounge but with cruise missiles.' Meanwhile Secretary of Defense Lloyd Austin, a board member of weapons-maker Raytheon with stock and compensation interests in October, 2020, worth \$1.4 million, said he was purging the military of the 'enemy within' – anyone who isn't Woke and supports Donald Trump. Austin refers to his targets as 'racist extremists' while in true Woke fashion being himself a racist extremist. Pentagon documents pledge to 'eradicate, eliminate and conquer all forms of racism, sexism and homophobia'. The definitions of these are decided by 'diversity and inclusion committees' peopled by those who see racism, sexism and homophobia in every situation and opinion. Woke (the Cult) is dismantling the US military and purging testosterone as China expands its military and gives its troops 'masculinity training'. How do we think that is going to end when this is all Cult coordinated? The US military, like the British military, is controlled by Woke and spineless top brass who just go along with it out of personal career interests.

'Woke' means fast asleep

Mind control and perception manipulation techniques used on individuals to create group-think have been unleashed on the global population in general. As a result many have no capacity to see the obvious fascist agenda being installed all around them or what 'Covid' is really all about. Their brains are firewalled like a computer system not to process certain concepts, thoughts and realisations that are bad for the Cult. The young are most targeted as the adults they

will be when the whole fascist global state is planned to be fully implemented. They need to be prepared for total compliance to eliminate all pushback from entire generations. The Cult has been pouring billions into taking complete control of 'education' from schools to universities via its operatives and corporations and not least Bill Gates as always. The plan has been to transform 'education' institutions into programming centres for the mentality of 'Woke'. James McConnell, professor of psychology at the University of Michigan, wrote in *Psychology Today* in 1970:

The day has come when we can combine sensory deprivation with drugs, hypnosis, and astute manipulation of reward and punishment, to gain almost absolute control over an individual's behaviour. It should then be possible to achieve a very rapid and highly effective type of brainwashing that would allow us to make dramatic changes in a person's behaviour and personality ...

... We should reshape society so that we all would be trained from birth to want to do what society wants us to do. We have the techniques to do it... no-one owns his own personality you acquired, and there's no reason to believe you should have the right to refuse to acquire a new personality if your old one is anti-social.

This was the potential for mass brainwashing in 1970 and the mentality there displayed captures the arrogant psychopathy that drives it forward. I emphasise that not all young people have succumbed to Woke programming and those that haven't are incredibly impressive people given that today's young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in history with all the technology now involved. Vast swathes of the young generations, however, have fallen into the spell – and that's what it is – of Woke. The Woke mentality and perceptual program is founded on *inversion* and you will appreciate later why that is so significant. Everything with Woke is inverted and the opposite of what it is claimed to be. Woke was a term used in African-American culture from the 1900s and referred to an awareness of social and racial justice. This is not the meaning of the modern version or 'New Woke' as I call it in *The Answer*. Oh, no, Woke today means something very different no matter how much Wokers may seek to hide that and insist Old Woke and New

Woke are the same. See if you find any 'awareness of social justice' here in the modern variety:

- Woke demands 'inclusivity' while excluding anyone with a different opinion and calls for mass censorship to silence other views.
- Woke claims to stand against oppression when imposing oppression is the foundation of all that it does. It is the driver of political correctness which is nothing more than a Cult invention to manipulate the population to silence itself.
- Woke believes itself to be 'liberal' while pursuing a global society that can only be described as fascist (see 'anti-fascist' fascist Antifa).
- Woke calls for 'social justice' while spreading injustice wherever it goes against the common 'enemy' which can be easily identified as a differing view.
- Woke is supposed to be a metaphor for 'awake' when it is solid-gold asleep and deep in a Cult-induced coma that meets the criteria for 'off with the fairies'.

I state these points as obvious facts if people only care to look. I don't do this with a sense of condemnation. We need to appreciate that the onslaught of perceptual programming on the young has been incessant and merciless. I can understand why so many have been reframed, or, given their youth, framed from the start to see the world as the Cult demands. The Cult has had access to their minds day after day in its 'education' system for their entire formative years. Perception is formed from information received and the Cult-created system is a life-long download of information delivered to elicit a particular perception, thus behaviour. The more this has expanded into still new extremes in recent decades and ever-increasing censorship has deleted other opinions and information why wouldn't that lead to a perceptual reframing on a mass scale? I

have described already cradle-to-grave programming and in more recent times the targeting of young minds from birth to adulthood has entered the stratosphere. This has taken the form of skewing what is ‘taught’ to fit the Cult agenda and the omnipresent techniques of group-think to isolate non-believers and pressure them into line. There has always been a tendency to follow the herd, but we really are in a new world now in relation to that. We have parents who can see the ‘Covid’ hoax told by their children not to stop them wearing masks at school, being ‘Covid’ tested or having the ‘vaccine’ in fear of the peer-pressure consequences of being different. What is ‘peer-pressure’ if not pressure to conform to group-think? Renegade Minds never group-think and always retain a set of perceptions that are unique to them. Group-think is always underpinned by consequences for not group-thinking. Abuse now aimed at those refusing DNA-manipulating ‘Covid vaccines’ are a potent example of this. The biggest pressure to conform comes from the very group which is itself being manipulated. ‘I am programmed to be part of a hive mind and so you must be.’

Woke control structures in ‘education’ now apply to every mainstream organisation. Those at the top of the ‘education’ hierarchy (the Cult) decide the policy. This is imposed on governments through the Cult network; governments impose it on schools, colleges and universities; their leadership impose the policy on teachers and academics and they impose it on children and students. At any level where there is resistance, perhaps from a teacher or university lecturer, they are targeted by the authorities and often fired. Students themselves regularly demand the dismissal of academics (increasingly few) at odds with the narrative that the students have been programmed to believe in. It is quite a thought that students who are being targeted by the Cult become so consumed by programmed group-think that they launch protests and demand the removal of those who are trying to push back against those targeting the students. Such is the scale of perceptual inversion. We see this with ‘Covid’ programming as the Cult imposes the rules via psycho-psychologists and governments on

shops, transport companies and businesses which impose them on their staff who impose them on their customers who pressure Pushbackers to conform to the will of the Cult which is in the process of destroying them and their families. Scan all aspects of society and you will see the same sequence every time.

Fact free Woke and hijacking the 'left'

There is no more potent example of this than 'Woke', a mentality only made possible by the deletion of factual evidence by an 'education' system seeking to produce an ever more uniform society. Why would you bother with facts when you don't know any? Deletion of credible history both in volume and type is highly relevant. Orwell said: 'Who controls the past controls the future: who controls the present controls the past.' They who control the perception of the past control the perception of the future and they who control the present control the perception of the past through the writing and deleting of history. Why would you oppose the imposition of Marxism in the name of Wokeism when you don't know that Marxism cost at least 100 million lives in the 20th century alone? Watch videos and read reports in which Woker generations are asked basic historical questions – it's mind-blowing. A survey of 2,000 people found that six percent of millennials (born approximately early 1980s to early 2000s) believed the Second World War (1939-1945) broke out with the assassination of President Kennedy (in 1963) and one in ten thought Margaret Thatcher was British Prime Minister at the time. She was in office between 1979 and 1990. We are in a post-fact society. Provable facts are no defence against the fascism of political correctness or Silicon Valley censorship. Facts don't matter anymore as we have witnessed with the 'Covid' hoax. Sacrificing uniqueness to the Woke group-think religion is all you are required to do and that means thinking for yourself is the biggest Woke no, no. All religions are an expression of group-think and censorship and Woke is just another religion with an orthodoxy defended by group-think and censorship. Burned at

the stake becomes burned on Twitter which leads back eventually to burned at the stake as Woke humanity regresses to ages past.

The biggest Woke inversion of all is its creators and funders. I grew up in a traditional left of centre political household on a council estate in Leicester in the 1950s and 60s – you know, the left that challenged the power of wealth-hoarding elites and threats to freedom of speech and opinion. In those days students went on marches defending freedom of speech while today's Wokers march for its deletion. What on earth could have happened? Those very elites (collectively the Cult) that we opposed in my youth and early life have funded into existence the antithesis of that former left and hijacked the 'brand' while inverting everything it ever stood for. We have a mentality that calls itself 'liberal' and 'progressive' while acting like fascists. Cult billionaires and their corporations have funded themselves into control of 'education' to ensure that Woke programming is unceasing throughout the formative years of children and young people and that non-Wokers are isolated (that word again) whether they be students, teachers or college professors. The Cult has funded into existence the now colossal global network of Woke organisations that have spawned and promoted all the 'causes' on the Cult wish-list for global transformation and turned Wokers into demanders of them. Does anyone really think it's a coincidence that the Cult agenda for humanity is a carbon (sorry) copy of the societal transformations desired by Woke?? These are only some of them:

Political correctness: The means by which the Cult deletes all public debates that it knows it cannot win if we had the free-flow of information and evidence.

Human-caused 'climate change': The means by which the Cult seeks to transform society into a globally-controlled dictatorship imposing its will over the fine detail of everyone's lives 'to save the planet' which doesn't actually need saving.

Transgender obsession: Preparing collective perception to accept the ‘new human’ which would not have genders because it would be created technologically and not through procreation. I’ll have much more on this in Human 2.0.

Race obsession: The means by which the Cult seeks to divide and rule the population by triggering racial division through the perception that society is more racist than ever when the opposite is the case. Is it perfect in that regard? No. But to compare today with the racism of apartheid and segregation brought to an end by the civil rights movement in the 1960s is to insult the memory of that movement and inspirations like Martin Luther King. Why is the ‘anti-racism’ industry (which it is) so dominated by privileged white people?

White supremacy: This is a label used by privileged white people to demonise poor and deprived white people pushing back on tyranny to marginalise and destroy them. White people are being especially targeted as the dominant race by number within Western society which the Cult seeks to transform in its image. If you want to change a society you must weaken and undermine its biggest group and once you have done that by using the other groups you next turn on them to do the same ... ‘Then they came for the Jews and I was not a Jew so I did nothing.’

Mass migration: The mass movement of people from the Middle East, Africa and Asia into Europe, from the south into the United States and from Asia into Australia are another way the Cult seeks to dilute the racial, cultural and political influence of white people on Western society. White people ask why their governments appear to be working against them while being politically and culturally biased towards incoming cultures. Well, here’s your answer. In the same way sexually ‘straight’ people, men and women, ask why the

authorities are biased against them in favour of other sexualities. The answer is the same – that's the way the Cult wants it to be for very sinister motives.

These are all central parts of the Cult agenda and central parts of the Woke agenda and Woke was created and continues to be funded to an immense degree by Cult billionaires and corporations. If anyone begins to say 'coincidence' the syllables should stick in their throat.

Billionaire 'social justice warriors'

Joe Biden is a 100 percent-owned asset of the Cult and the Wokers' man in the White House whenever he can remember his name and for however long he lasts with his rapidly diminishing cognitive function. Even walking up the steps of an aircraft without falling on his arse would appear to be a challenge. He's not an empty-shell puppet or anything. From the minute Biden took office (or the Cult did) he began his executive orders promoting the Woke wish-list. You will see the Woke agenda imposed ever more severely because it's really the *Cult* agenda. Woke organisations and activist networks spawned by the Cult are funded to the extreme so long as they promote what the Cult wants to happen. Woke is funded to promote 'social justice' by billionaires who become billionaires by destroying social justice. The social justice mantra is only a cover for dismantling social justice and funded by billionaires that couldn't give a damn about social justice. Everything makes sense when you see that. One of Woke's premier funders is Cult billionaire financier George Soros who said: 'I am basically there to make money, I cannot and do not look at the social consequences of what I do.' This is the same Soros who has given more than \$32 billion to his Open Society Foundations global Woke network and funded Black Lives Matter, mass immigration into Europe and the United States, transgender activism, climate change activism, political correctness and groups targeting 'white supremacy' in the form of privileged white thugs that dominate Antifa. What a scam it all is and when

you are dealing with the unquestioning fact-free zone of Woke scamming them is child's play. All you need to pull it off in all these organisations are a few in-the-know agents of the Cult and an army of naïve, reframed, uninformed, narcissistic, know-nothings convinced of their own self-righteousness, self-purity and virtue.

Soros and fellow billionaires and billionaire corporations have poured hundreds of millions into Black Lives Matter and connected groups and promoted them to a global audience. None of this is motivated by caring about black people. These are the billionaires that have controlled and exploited a system that leaves millions of black people in abject poverty and deprivation which they do absolutely nothing to address. The same Cult networks funding BLM were behind the *slave trade!* Black Lives Matter hijacked a phrase that few would challenge and they have turned this laudable concept into a political weapon to divide society. You know that BLM is a fraud when it claims that *All Lives Matter*, the most inclusive statement of all, is 'racist'. BLM and its Cult masters don't want to end racism. To them it's a means to an end to control all of humanity never mind the colour, creed, culture or background. What has destroying the nuclear family got to do with ending racism? Nothing – but that is one of the goals of BLM and also happens to be a goal of the Cult as I have been exposing in my books for decades. Stealing children from loving parents and giving schools ever more power to override parents is part of that same agenda. BLM is a Marxist organisation and why would that not be the case when the Cult created Marxism *and* BLM? Patrisse Cullors, a BLM co-founder, said in a 2015 video that she and her fellow organisers, including co-founder Alicia Garza, are 'trained Marxists'. The lady known after marriage as Patrisse Khan-Cullors bought a \$1.4 million home in 2021 in one of the whitest areas of California with a black population of just 1.6 per cent and has so far bought *four* high-end homes for a total of \$3.2 million. How very Marxist. There must be a bit of spare in the BLM coffers, however, when Cult corporations and billionaires have handed over the best part of \$100 million. Many black people can see that Black Lives Matter is not

working for them, but against them, and this is still more confirmation. Black journalist Jason Whitlock, who had his account suspended by Twitter for simply linking to the story about the ‘Marxist’s’ home buying spree, said that BLM leaders are ‘making millions of dollars off the backs of these dead black men who they wouldn’t spit on if they were on fire and alive’.

Black Lies Matter

Cult assets and agencies came together to promote BLM in the wake of the death of career criminal George Floyd who had been jailed a number of times including for forcing his way into the home of a black woman with others in a raid in which a gun was pointed at her stomach. Floyd was filmed being held in a Minneapolis street in 2020 with the knee of a police officer on his neck and he subsequently died. It was an appalling thing for the officer to do, but the same technique has been used by police on peaceful protestors of lockdown without any outcry from the Woke brigade. As unquestioning supporters of the Cult agenda Wokers have supported lockdown and all the ‘Covid’ claptrap while attacking anyone standing up to the tyranny imposed in its name. Court documents would later include details of an autopsy on Floyd by County Medical Examiner Dr Andrew Baker who concluded that Floyd had taken a fatal level of the drug fentanyl. None of this mattered to fact-free, question-free, Woke. Floyd’s death was followed by worldwide protests against police brutality amid calls to defund the police. Throwing babies out with the bathwater is a Woke speciality. In the wake of the murder of British woman Sarah Everard a Green Party member of the House of Lords, Baroness Jones of Moulsecoomb (Nincompoopia would have been better), called for a 6pm curfew for all men. This would be in breach of the Geneva Conventions on war crimes which ban collective punishment, but that would never have crossed the black and white Woke mind of Baroness Nincompoopia who would have been far too convinced of her own self-righteousness to compute such details. Many American cities did defund the police in the face of Floyd riots

and after \$15 million was deleted from the police budget in Washington DC under useless Woke mayor Muriel Bowser car-jacking alone rose by 300 percent and within six months the US capital recorded its highest murder rate in 15 years. The same happened in Chicago and other cities in line with the Cult/Soros plan to bring fear to streets and neighbourhoods by reducing the police, releasing violent criminals and not prosecuting crime. This is the mob-rule agenda that I have warned in the books was coming for so long. Shootings in the area of Minneapolis where Floyd was arrested increased by 2,500 percent compared with the year before. Defunding the police over George Floyd has led to a big increase in dead people with many of them black. Police protection for politicians making these decisions stayed the same or increased as you would expect from professional hypocrites. The Cult doesn't actually want to abolish the police. It wants to abolish local control over the police and hand it to federal government as the psychopaths advance the Hunger Games Society. Many George Floyd protests turned into violent riots with black stores and businesses destroyed by fire and looting across America fuelled by Black Lives Matter. Woke doesn't do irony. If you want civil rights you must loot the liquor store and the supermarket and make off with a smart TV. It's the only way.

It's not a race war – it's a class war

Black people are patronised by privileged blacks and whites alike and told they are victims of white supremacy. I find it extraordinary to watch privileged blacks supporting the very system and bloodline networks behind the slave trade and parroting the same Cult-serving manipulative crap of their privileged white, often billionaire, associates. It is indeed not a race war but a class war and colour is just a diversion. Black Senator Cory Booker and black Congresswoman Maxine Waters, more residents of Nincompoopia, personify this. Once you tell people they are victims of someone else you devalue both their own responsibility for their plight and the power they have to impact on their reality and experience. Instead

we have: 'You are only in your situation because of whitey – turn on them and everything will change.' It won't change. Nothing changes in our lives unless *we* change it. Crucial to that is never seeing yourself as a victim and always as the creator of your reality. Life is a simple sequence of choice and consequence. Make different choices and you create different consequences. *You* have to make those choices – not Black Lives Matter, the Woke Mafia and anyone else that seeks to dictate your life. Who are they these Wokers, an emotional and psychological road traffic accident, to tell you what to do? Personal empowerment is the last thing the Cult and its Black Lives Matter want black people or anyone else to have. They claim to be defending the underdog while *creating* and perpetuating the underdog. The Cult's worst nightmare is human unity and if they are going to keep blacks, whites and every other race under economic servitude and control then the focus must be diverted from what they have in common to what they can be manipulated to believe divides them. Blacks have to be told that their poverty and plight is the fault of the white bloke living on the street in the same poverty and with the same plight they are experiencing. The difference is that your plight black people is due to him, a white supremacist with 'white privilege' living on the street. Don't unite as one human family against your mutual oppressors and suppressors – fight the oppressor with the white face who is as financially deprived as you are. The Cult knows that as its 'Covid' agenda moves into still new levels of extremism people are going to respond and it has been spreading the seeds of disunity everywhere to stop a united response to the evil that targets *all of us*.

Racist attacks on 'whiteness' are getting ever more outrageous and especially through the American Democratic Party which has an appalling history for anti-black racism. Barack Obama, Joe Biden, Hillary Clinton and Nancy Pelosi all eulogised about Senator Robert Byrd at his funeral in 2010 after a nearly 60-year career in Congress. Byrd was a brutal Ku Klux Klan racist and a violent abuser of Cathy O'Brien in MKUltra. He said he would never fight in the military 'with a negro by my side' and 'rather I should die a thousand times,

and see Old Glory trampled in the dirt never to rise again, than to see this beloved land of ours become degraded by race mongrels, a throwback to the blackest specimen from the wilds'. Biden called Byrd a 'very close friend and mentor'. These 'Woke' hypocrites are not anti-racist they are anti-poor and anti-people not of their perceived class. Here is an illustration of the scale of anti-white racism to which we have now descended. Seriously Woke and moronic *New York Times* contributor Damon Young described whiteness as a 'virus' that 'like other viruses will not die until there are no bodies left for it to infect'. He went on: '... the only way to stop it is to locate it, isolate it, extract it, and kill it.' Young can say that as a black man with no consequences when a white man saying the same in reverse would be facing a jail sentence. *That's* racism. We had super-Woke numbskull senators Tammy Duckworth and Mazie Hirono saying they would object to future Biden Cabinet appointments if he did not nominate more Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders. Never mind the ability of the candidate what do they look like? Duckworth said: 'I will vote for racial minorities and I will vote for LGBTQ, but anyone else I'm not voting for.' Appointing people on the grounds of race is illegal, but that was not a problem for this ludicrous pair. They were on-message and that's a free pass in any situation.

Critical race racism

White children are told at school they are intrinsically racist as they are taught the divisive 'critical race theory'. This claims that the law and legal institutions are inherently racist and that race is a socially constructed concept used by white people to further their economic and political interests at the expense of people of colour. White is a 'virus' as we've seen. Racial inequality results from 'social, economic, and legal differences that white people create between races to maintain white interests which leads to poverty and criminality in minority communities'. I must tell that to the white guy sleeping on the street. The principal of East Side Community School in New York sent white parents a manifesto that called on

them to become ‘white traitors’ and advocate for full ‘white abolition’. These people are teaching your kids when they urgently need a psychiatrist. The ‘school’ included a chart with ‘eight white identities’ that ranged from ‘white supremacist’ to ‘white abolition’ and defined the behaviour white people must follow to end ‘the regime of whiteness’. Woke blacks and their privileged white associates are acting exactly like the slave owners of old and Ku Klux Klan racists like Robert Byrd. They are too full of their own self-purity to see that, but it’s true. Racism is not a body type; it’s a state of mind that can manifest through any colour, creed or culture.

Another racial fraud is ‘*equity*’. Not equality of treatment and opportunity – equity. It’s a term spun as equality when it means something very different. Equality in its true sense is a raising up while ‘*equity*’ is a race to the bottom. Everyone in the same level of poverty is ‘*equity*’. Keep everyone down – that’s equity. The Cult doesn’t want anyone in the human family to be empowered and BLM leaders, like all these ‘anti-racist’ organisations, continue their privileged, pampered existence by perpetuating the perception of gathering racism. When is the last time you heard an ‘anti-racist’ or ‘anti-Semitism’ organisation say that acts of racism and discrimination have *fallen*? It’s not in the interests of their fund-raising and power to influence and the same goes for the professional soccer anti-racism operation, Kick It Out. Two things confirmed that the Black Lives Matter riots in the summer of 2020 were Cult creations. One was that while anti-lockdown protests were condemned in this same period for ‘transmitting ‘Covid’ the authorities supported mass gatherings of Black Lives Matter supporters. I even saw self-deluding people claiming to be doctors say the two types of protest were not the same. No – the non-existent ‘Covid’ was in favour of lockdowns and attacked those that protested against them while ‘Covid’ supported Black Lives Matter and kept well away from its protests. The whole thing was a joke and as lockdown protestors were arrested, often brutally, by reframed Face-Nappies we had the grotesque sight of police officers taking the knee to Black Lives Matter, a Cult-funded Marxist

organisation that supports violent riots and wants to destroy the nuclear family and white people.

He's not white? Shucks!

Woke obsession with race was on display again when ten people were shot dead in Boulder, Colorado, in March, 2021. Cult-owned Woke TV channels like CNN said the shooter appeared to be a white man and Wokers were on Twitter condemning 'violent white men' with the usual mantras. Then the shooter's name was released as Ahmad Al Aliwi Alissa, an anti-Trump Arab-American, and the sigh of disappointment could be heard five miles away. Never mind that ten people were dead and what that meant for their families. Race baiting was all that mattered to these sick Cult-serving people like Barack Obama who exploited the deaths to further divide America on racial grounds which is his job for the Cult. This is the man that 'racist' white Americans made the first black president of the United States and then gave him a second term. Not-very-bright Obama has become filthy rich on the back of that and today appears to have a big influence on the Biden administration. Even so he's still a downtrodden black man and a victim of white supremacy. This disingenuous fraud reveals the contempt he has for black people when he puts on a Deep South Alabama accent whenever he talks to them, no, *at* them.

Another BLM red flag was how the now fully-Woke (fully-Cult) and fully-virtue-signalled professional soccer authorities had their teams taking the knee before every match in support of Marxist Black Lives Matter. Soccer authorities and clubs displayed 'Black Lives Matter' on the players' shirts and flashed the name on electronic billboards around the pitch. Any fans that condemned what is a Freemasonic taking-the-knee ritual were widely condemned as you would expect from the Woke virtue-signallers of professional sport and the now fully-Woke media. We have reverse racism in which you are banned from criticising any race or culture except for white people for whom anything goes – say what you like, no problem. What has this got to do with racial harmony and

equality? We've had black supremacists from Black Lives Matter telling white people to fall to their knees in the street and apologise for their white supremacy. Black supremacists acting like white supremacist slave owners of the past couldn't breach their self-obsessed, race-obsessed sense of self-purity. Joe Biden appointed a race-obsessed black supremacist Kristen Clarke to head the Justice Department Civil Rights Division. Clarke claimed that blacks are endowed with 'greater mental, physical and spiritual abilities' than whites. If anyone reversed that statement they would be vilified. Clarke is on-message so no problem. She's never seen a black-white situation in which the black figure is anything but a virtuous victim and she heads the Civil Rights Division which should treat everyone the same or it isn't civil rights. Another perception of the Renegade Mind: If something or someone is part of the Cult agenda they will be supported by Woke governments and media no matter what. If they're not, they will be condemned and censored. It really is that simple and so racist Clarke prospers despite (make that because of) her racism.

The end of culture

Biden's administration is full of such racial, cultural and economic bias as the Cult requires the human family to be divided into warring factions. We are now seeing racially-segregated graduations and everything, but everything, is defined through the lens of perceived 'racism. We have 'racist' mathematics, 'racist' food and even 'racist' *plants*. World famous Kew Gardens in London said it was changing labels on plants and flowers to tell its pre-'Covid' more than two million visitors a year how racist they are. Kew director Richard Deverell said this was part of an effort to 'move quickly to decolonise collections' after they were approached by one Ajay Chhabra 'an actor with an insight into how sugar cane was linked to slavery'. They are *plants* you idiots. 'Decolonisation' in the Woke manual really means colonisation of society with its mentality and by extension colonisation by the Cult. We are witnessing a new Chinese-style 'Cultural Revolution' so essential to the success of all

Marxist takeovers. Our cultural past and traditions have to be swept away to allow a new culture to be built-back-better. Woke targeting of long-standing Western cultural pillars including historical monuments and cancelling of historical figures is what happened in the Mao revolution in China which ‘purged remnants of capitalist and traditional elements from Chinese society’ and installed Maoism as the dominant ideology’. For China see the Western world today and for ‘dominant ideology’ see Woke. Better still see Marxism or Maoism. The ‘Covid’ hoax has specifically sought to destroy the arts and all elements of Western culture from people meeting in a pub or restaurant to closing theatres, music venues, sports stadiums, places of worship and even banning *singing*. Destruction of Western society is also why criticism of any religion is banned except for Christianity which again is the dominant religion as white is the numerically-dominant race. Christianity may be fading rapidly, but its history and traditions are weaved through the fabric of Western society. Delete the pillars and other structures will follow until the whole thing collapses. I am not a Christian defending that religion when I say that. I have no religion. It’s just a fact. To this end Christianity has itself been turned Woke to usher its own downfall and its ranks are awash with ‘change agents’ – knowing and unknowing – at every level including Pope Francis (*definitely* knowing) and the clueless Archbishop of Canterbury Justin Welby (possibly not, but who can be sure?). Woke seeks to coordinate attacks on Western culture, traditions, and ways of life through ‘intersectionality’ defined as ‘the complex, cumulative way in which the effects of multiple forms of discrimination (such as racism, sexism, and classism) combine, overlap, or intersect especially in the experiences of marginalised individuals or groups’. Wade through the Orwellian Woke-speak and this means coordinating disparate groups in a common cause to overthrow freedom and liberal values.

The entire structure of public institutions has been infested with Woke – government at all levels, political parties, police, military, schools, universities, advertising, media and trade unions. This abomination has been achieved through the Cult web by appointing

Wokers to positions of power and battering non-Wokers into line through intimidation, isolation and threats to their job. Many have been fired in the wake of the empathy-deleted, vicious hostility of 'social justice' Wokers and the desire of gutless, spineless employers to virtue-signal their Wokeness. Corporations are filled with Wokers today, most notably those in Silicon Valley. Ironically at the top they are not Woke at all. They are only exploiting the mentality their Cult masters have created and funded to censor and enslave while the Wokers cheer them on until it's their turn. Thus the Woke 'liberal left' is an inversion of the traditional liberal left. Campaigning for justice on the grounds of power and wealth distribution has been replaced by campaigning for identity politics. The genuine traditional left would never have taken money from today's billionaire abusers of fairness and justice and nor would the billionaires have wanted to fund that genuine left. It would not have been in their interests to do so. The division of opinion in those days was between the haves and have nots. This all changed with Cult manipulated and funded identity politics. The division of opinion today is between Wokers and non-Wokers and not income brackets. Cult corporations and their billionaires may have taken wealth disparity to cataclysmic levels of injustice, but as long as they speak the language of Woke, hand out the dosh to the Woke network and censor the enemy they are 'one of us'. Billionaires who don't give a damn about injustice are laughing at them till their bellies hurt. Wokers are not even close to self-aware enough to see that. The transformed 'left' dynamic means that Wokers who drone on about 'social justice' are funded by billionaires that have destroyed social justice the world over. It's *why* they are billionaires.

The climate con

Nothing encapsulates what I have said more comprehensively than the hoax of human-caused global warming. I have detailed in my books over the years how Cult operatives and organisations were the pump-primers from the start of the climate con. A purpose-built vehicle for this is the Club of Rome established by the Cult in 1968

with the Rockefellers and Rothschilds centrally involved all along. Their gofer frontman Maurice Strong, a Canadian oil millionaire, hosted the Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in 1992 where the global ‘green movement’ really expanded in earnest under the guiding hand of the Cult. The Earth Summit established Agenda 21 through the Cult-created-and-owned United Nations to use the illusion of human-caused climate change to justify the transformation of global society to save the world from climate disaster. It is a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution sold through governments, media, schools and universities as whole generations have been terrified into believing that the world was going to end in their lifetimes unless what old people had inflicted upon them was stopped by a complete restructuring of how everything is done. Chill, kids, it’s all a hoax. Such restructuring is precisely what the Cult agenda demands (purely by coincidence of course). Today this has been given the codename of the Great Reset which is only an updated term for Agenda 21 and its associated Agenda 2030. The latter, too, is administered through the UN and was voted into being by the General Assembly in 2015. Both 21 and 2030 seek centralised control of all resources and food right down to the raindrops falling on your own land. These are some of the demands of Agenda 21 established in 1992. See if you recognise this society emerging today:

- End national sovereignty
- State planning and management of all land resources, ecosystems, deserts, forests, mountains, oceans and fresh water; agriculture; rural development; biotechnology; and ensuring ‘*equity*’
- The state to ‘define the role’ of business and financial resources
- Abolition of private property
- ‘Restructuring’ the family unit (see BLM)
- Children raised by the state
- People told what their job will be
- Major restrictions on movement
- Creation of ‘human settlement zones’

- Mass resettlement as people are forced to vacate land where they live
- Dumbing down education
- Mass global depopulation in pursuit of all the above

The United Nations was created as a Trojan horse for world government. With the climate con of critical importance to promoting that outcome you would expect the UN to be involved. Oh, it's involved all right. The UN is promoting Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 justified by 'climate change' while also driving the climate hoax through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), one of the world's most corrupt organisations. The IPCC has been lying ferociously and constantly since the day it opened its doors with the global media hanging unquestioningly on its every mendacious word. The Green movement is entirely Woke and has long lost its original environmental focus since it was co-opted by the Cult. An obsession with 'global warming' has deleted its values and scrambled its head. I experienced a small example of what I mean on a beautiful country walk that I have enjoyed several times a week for many years. The path merged into the fields and forests and you felt at one with the natural world. Then a 'Green' organisation, the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust, took over part of the land and proceeded to cut down a large number of trees, including mature ones, to install a horrible big, bright steel 'this-is-ours-stay-out' fence that destroyed the whole atmosphere of this beautiful place. No one with a feel for nature would do that. Day after day I walked to the sound of chainsaws and a magnificent mature weeping willow tree that I so admired was cut down at the base of the trunk. When I challenged a Woke young girl in a green shirt (of course) about this vandalism she replied: 'It's a weeping willow – it will grow back.' This is what people are paying for when they donate to the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust and many other 'green' organisations today. It is not the environmental movement that I knew and instead has become a support-system – as with Extinction Rebellion – for a very dark agenda.

Private jets for climate justice

The Cult-owned, Gates-funded, World Economic Forum and its founder Klaus Schwab were behind the emergence of Greta Thunberg to harness the young behind the climate agenda and she was invited to speak to the world at ... the UN. Schwab published a book, *Covid-19: The Great Reset* in 2020 in which he used the 'Covid' hoax and the climate hoax to lay out a new society straight out of Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030. Bill Gates followed in early 2021 when he took time out from destroying the world to produce a book in his name about the way to save it. Gates flies across the world in private jets and admitted that 'I probably have one of the highest greenhouse gas footprints of anyone on the planet ... my personal flying alone is gigantic.' He has also bid for the planet's biggest private jet operator. Other climate change saviours who fly in private jets include John Kerry, the US Special Presidential Envoy for Climate, and actor Leonardo DiCaprio, a 'UN Messenger of Peace with special focus on climate change'. These people are so full of bullshit they could corner the market in manure. We mustn't be sceptical, though, because the Gates book, *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need*, is a genuine attempt to protect the world and not an obvious pile of excrement attributed to a mega-psychopath aimed at selling his masters' plans for humanity. The Gates book and the other shite-pile by Klaus Schwab could have been written by the same person and may well have been. Both use 'climate change' and 'Covid' as the excuses for their new society and by coincidence the Cult's World Economic Forum and Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation promote the climate hoax and hosted Event 201 which pre-empted with a 'simulation' the very 'coronavirus' hoax that would be simulated for real on humanity within weeks. The British 'royal' family is promoting the 'Reset' as you would expect through Prince 'climate change caused the war in Syria' Charles and his hapless son Prince William who said that we must 'reset our relationship with nature and our trajectory as a species' to avoid a climate disaster. Amazing how many promoters of the 'Covid' and 'climate change' control

systems are connected to Gates and the World Economic Forum. A ‘study’ in early 2021 claimed that carbon dioxide emissions must fall by the equivalent of a global lockdown roughly every two years for the next decade to save the planet. The ‘study’ appeared in the same period that the Schwab mob claimed in a video that lockdowns destroying the lives of billions are good because they make the earth ‘quieter’ with less ‘ambient noise’. They took down the video amid a public backlash for such arrogant, empathy-deleted stupidity You see, however, where they are going with this. Corinne Le Quéré, a professor at the Tyndall Centre for Climate Change Research, University of East Anglia, was lead author of the climate lockdown study, and she writes for ... the World Economic Forum. Gates calls in ‘his’ book for changing ‘every aspect of the economy’ (long-time Cult agenda) and for humans to eat synthetic ‘meat’ (predicted in my books) while cows and other farm animals are eliminated.

Australian TV host and commentator Alan Jones described what carbon emission targets would mean for farm animals in Australia alone if emissions were reduced as demanded by 35 percent by 2030 and zero by 2050:

Well, let’s take agriculture, the total emissions from agriculture are about 75 million tonnes of carbon dioxide, equivalent. Now reduce that by 35 percent and you have to come down to 50 million tonnes, I’ve done the maths. So if you take for example 1.5 million cows, you’re going to have to reduce the herd by 525,000 [by] 2030, nine years, that’s 58,000 cows a year. The beef herd’s 30 million, reduce that by 35 percent, that’s 10.5 million, which means 1.2 million cattle have to go every year between now and 2030. This is insanity!

There are 75 million sheep. Reduce that by 35 percent, that’s 26 million sheep, that’s almost 3 million a year. So under the Paris Agreement over 30 million beasts. dairy cows, cattle, pigs and sheep would go. More than 8,000 every minute of every hour for the next decade, do these people know what they’re talking about?

Clearly they don’t at the level of campaigners, politicians and administrators. The Cult *does* know; that’s the outcome it wants. We are faced with not just a war on humanity. Animals and the natural world are being targeted and I have been saying since the ‘Covid’ hoax began that the plan eventually was to claim that the ‘deadly virus’ is able to jump from animals, including farm animals and

domestic pets, to humans. Just before this book went into production came this story: 'Russia registers world's first Covid-19 vaccine for cats & dogs as makers of Sputnik V warn pets & farm animals could spread virus'. The report said 'top scientists warned that the deadly pathogen could soon begin spreading through homes and farms' and 'the next stage is the infection of farm and domestic animals'. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey. Think what that would mean for animals and keep your eye on a term called zoonosis or zoonotic diseases which transmit between animals and humans. The Cult wants to break the connection between animals and people as it does between people and people. Farm animals fit with the Cult agenda to transform food from natural to synthetic.

The gas of life is killing us

There can be few greater examples of Cult inversion than the condemnation of carbon dioxide as a dangerous pollutant when it is the gas of life. Without it the natural world would be dead and so we would all be dead. We breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide while plants produce oxygen and absorb carbon dioxide. It is a perfect symbiotic relationship that the Cult wants to dismantle for reasons I will come to in the final two chapters. Gates, Schwab, other Cult operatives and mindless repeaters, want the world to be 'carbon neutral' by at least 2050 and the earlier the better. 'Zero carbon' is the cry echoed by lunatics calling for 'Zero Covid' when we already have it. These carbon emission targets will deindustrialise the world in accordance with Cult plans – the post-industrial, post-democratic society – and with so-called renewables like solar and wind not coming even close to meeting human energy needs blackouts and cold are inevitable. Texans got the picture in the winter of 2021 when a snow storm stopped wind turbines and solar panels from working and the lights went down along with water which relies on electricity for its supply system. Gates wants everything to be powered by electricity to ensure that his masters have the kill switch to stop all human activity, movement, cooking, water and warmth any time they like. The climate lie is so

stupendously inverted that it claims we must urgently reduce carbon dioxide when we *don't have enough*.

Co₂ in the atmosphere is a little above 400 parts per million when the optimum for plant growth is 2,000 ppm and when it falls anywhere near 150 ppm the natural world starts to die and so do we. It fell to as low as 280 ppm in an 1880 measurement in Hawaii and rose to 413 ppm in 2019 with industrialisation which is why the planet has become *greener* in the industrial period. How insane then that psychopathic madman Gates is not satisfied only with blocking the rise of Co₂. He's funding technology to suck it out of the atmosphere. The reason why will become clear. The industrial era is not destroying the world through Co₂ and has instead turned around a potentially disastrous ongoing fall in Co₂. Greenpeace co-founder and scientist Patrick Moore walked away from Greenpeace in 1986 and has exposed the green movement for fear-mongering and lies. He said that 500 million years ago there was *17 times* more Co₂ in the atmosphere than we have today and levels have been falling for hundreds of millions of years. In the last 150 million years Co₂ levels in Earth's atmosphere had reduced by *90 percent*. Moore said that by the time humanity began to unlock carbon dioxide from fossil fuels we were at '38 seconds to midnight' and in that sense: 'Humans are [the Earth's] salvation.' Moore made the point that only half the Co₂ emitted by fossil fuels stays in the atmosphere and we should remember that all pollution pouring from chimneys that we are told is carbon dioxide is in fact nothing of the kind. It's pollution. Carbon dioxide is an invisible gas.

William Happer, Professor of Physics at Princeton University and long-time government adviser on climate, has emphasised the Co₂ deficiency for maximum growth and food production. Greenhouse growers don't add carbon dioxide for a bit of fun. He said that most of the warming in the last 100 years, after the earth emerged from the super-cold period of the 'Little Ice Age' into a natural warming cycle, was over by 1940. Happer said that a peak year for warming in 1988 can be explained by a 'monster El Nino' which is a natural and cyclical warming of the Pacific that has nothing to do with 'climate

change'. He said the effect of Co2 could be compared to painting a wall with red paint in that once two or three coats have been applied it didn't matter how much more you slapped on because the wall will not get much redder. Almost all the effect of the rise in Co2 has already happened, he said, and the volume in the atmosphere would now have to *double* to increase temperature by a single degree. Climate hoaxers know this and they have invented the most ridiculously complicated series of 'feedback' loops to try to overcome this rather devastating fact. You hear puppet Greta going on cluelessly about feedback loops and this is why.

The Sun affects temperature? No you *climate denier*

Some other nonsense to contemplate: Climate graphs show that rises in temperature do not follow rises in Co2 – *it's the other way round* with a lag between the two of some 800 years. If we go back 800 years from present time we hit the Medieval Warm Period when temperatures were higher than now without any industrialisation and this was followed by the Little Ice Age when temperatures plummeted. The world was still emerging from these centuries of serious cold when many climate records began which makes the ever-repeated line of the 'hottest year since records began' meaningless when you are not comparing like with like. The coldest period of the Little Ice Age corresponded with the lowest period of sunspot activity when the Sun was at its least active. Proper scientists will not be at all surprised by this when it confirms the obvious fact that earth temperature is affected by the scale of Sun activity and the energetic power that it subsequently emits; but when is the last time you heard a climate hoaxter talking about the Sun as a source of earth temperature?? Everything has to be focussed on Co2 which makes up just 0.117 percent of so-called greenhouse gases and only a fraction of even that is generated by human activity. The rest is natural. More than 90 percent of those greenhouse gases are water vapour and clouds ([Fig 9](#)). Ban moisture I say. Have you noticed that the climate hoaxers no longer use the polar bear as their promotion image? That's because far from becoming extinct polar

bear communities are stable or thriving. Joe Bastardi, American meteorologist, weather forecaster and outspoken critic of the climate lie, documents in his book *The Climate Chronicles* how weather patterns and events claimed to be evidence of climate change have been happening since long before industrialisation: 'What happened before naturally is happening again, as is to be expected given the cyclical nature of the climate due to the design of the planet.' If you read the detailed background to the climate hoax in my other books you will shake your head and wonder how anyone could believe the crap which has spawned a multi-trillion dollar industry based on absolute garbage (see HIV causes AIDS and Sars-Cov-2 causes 'Covid-19'). Climate and 'Covid' have much in common given they have the same source. They both have the contradictory *everything* factor in which everything is explained by reference to them. It's hot – 'it's climate change'. It's cold – 'it's climate change'. I got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. I haven't got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. Not having a sniffle has to be a symptom of 'Covid'. Everything is and not having a sniffle is especially dangerous if you are a slow walker. For sheer audacity I offer you a Cambridge University 'study' that actually linked 'Covid' to 'climate change'. It had to happen eventually. They concluded that climate change played a role in 'Covid-19' spreading from animals to humans because ... wait for it ... I kid you not ... *the two groups were forced closer together as populations grow.* Er, that's it. The whole foundation on which this depended was that 'Bats are the likely zoonotic origin of SARS-CoV-1 and SARS-CoV-2'. Well, they are not. They are nothing to do with it. Apart from bats not being the origin and therefore 'climate change' effects on bats being irrelevant I am in awe of their academic insight. Where would we be without them? Not where we are that's for sure.

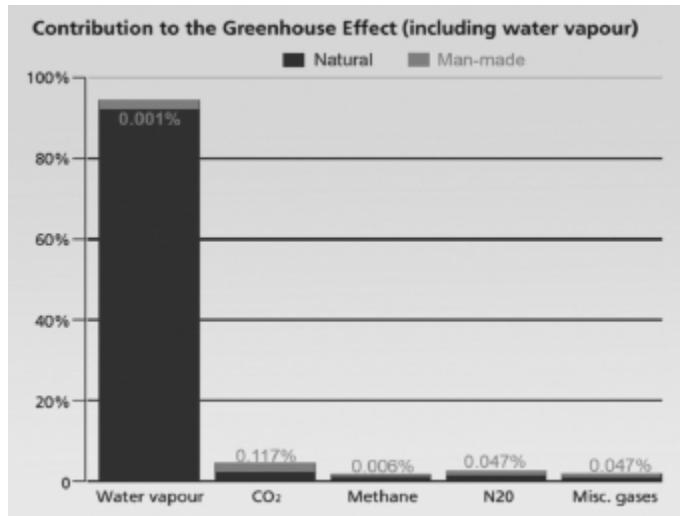


Figure 9: The idea that the gas of life is disastrously changing the climate is an insult to brain cell activity.

One other point about the weather is that climate modification is now well advanced and not every major weather event is natural – or earthquake come to that. I cover this subject at some length in other books. China is openly planning a rapid expansion of its weather modification programme which includes changing the climate in an area more than one and a half times the size of India. China used weather manipulation to ensure clear skies during the 2008 Olympics in Beijing. I have quoted from US military documents detailing how to employ weather manipulation as a weapon of war and they did that in the 1960s and 70s during the conflict in Vietnam with Operation Popeye manipulating monsoon rains for military purposes. Why would there be international treaties on weather modification if it wasn't possible? Of course it is. Weather is energetic information and it can be changed.

How was the climate hoax pulled off? See 'Covid'

If you can get billions to believe in a 'virus' that doesn't exist you can get them to believe in human-caused climate change that doesn't exist. Both are being used by the Cult to transform global society in the way it has long planned. Both hoaxes have been achieved in pretty much the same way. First you declare a lie is a fact. There's a

'virus' you call SARS-Cov-2 or humans are warming the planet with their behaviour. Next this becomes, via Cult networks, the foundation of government, academic and science policy and belief. Those who parrot the mantra are given big grants to produce research that confirms the narrative is true and ever more 'symptoms' are added to make the 'virus'/'climate change' sound even more scary. Scientists and researchers who challenge the narrative have their grants withdrawn and their careers destroyed. The media promote the lie as the unquestionable truth and censor those with an alternative view or evidence. A great percentage of the population believe what they are told as the lie becomes an everybody-knows-that and the believing-masses turn on those with a mind of their own. The technique has been used endlessly throughout human history. Wokers are the biggest promotorrs of the climate lie *and* 'Covid' fascism because their minds are owned by the Cult; their sense of self-righteous self-purity knows no bounds; and they exist in a bubble of reality in which facts are irrelevant and only get in the way of looking without seeing.

Running through all of this like veins in a blue cheese is control of information, which means control of perception, which means control of behaviour, which collectively means control of human society. The Cult owns the global media and Silicon Valley fascists for the simple reason that it *has* to. Without control of information it can't control perception and through that human society. Examine every facet of the Cult agenda and you will see that anything supporting its introduction is never censored while anything pushing back is always censored. I say again: Psychopaths that know why they are doing this must go before Nuremberg trials and those that follow their orders must trot along behind them into the same dock. 'I was just following orders' didn't work the first time and it must not work now. Nuremberg trials must be held all over the world before public juries for politicians, government officials, police, compliant doctors, scientists and virologists, and all Cult operatives such as Gates, Tedros, Fauci, Vallance, Whitty, Ferguson, Zuckerberg, Wojcicki, Brin, Page, Dorsey, the whole damn lot of

them – including, no *especially*, the psychopath psychologists. Without them and the brainless, gutless excuses for journalists that have repeated their lies, none of this could be happening. Nobody can be allowed to escape justice for the psychological and economic Armageddon they are all responsible for visiting upon the human race.

As for the compliant, unquestioning, swathes of humanity, and the self-obsessed, all-knowing ignorance of the Wokers ... don't start me. God help their kids. God help their grandkids. God *help them*.

CHAPTER NINE

We must have it? So what is it?

Well I won't back down. No, I won't back down. You can stand me up at the Gates of Hell. But I won't back down

Tom Petty

I will now focus on the genetically-manipulating ‘Covid vaccines’ which do not meet this official definition of a vaccine by the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC): ‘A product that stimulates a person’s immune system to produce immunity to a specific disease, protecting the person from that disease.’ On that basis ‘Covid vaccines’ are not a vaccine in that the makers don’t even claim they stop infection or transmission.

They are instead part of a multi-levelled conspiracy to change the nature of the human body and what it means to be ‘human’ and to depopulate an enormous swathe of humanity. What I shall call Human 1.0 is on the cusp of becoming Human 2.0 and for very sinister reasons. Before I get to the ‘Covid vaccine’ in detail here’s some background to vaccines in general. Government regulators do not test vaccines – the makers do – and the makers control which data is revealed and which isn’t. Children in America are given 50 vaccine doses by age six and 69 by age 19 and the effect of the whole combined schedule has never been tested. Autoimmune diseases when the immune system attacks its own body have soared in the mass vaccine era and so has disease in general in children and the young. Why wouldn’t this be the case when vaccines target the *immune system*? The US government gave Big Pharma drug

companies immunity from prosecution for vaccine death and injury in the 1986 National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act (NCVIA) and since then the government (taxpayer) has been funding compensation for the consequences of Big Pharma vaccines. The criminal and satanic drug giants can't lose and the vaccine schedule has increased dramatically since 1986 for this reason. There is no incentive to make vaccines safe and a big incentive to make money by introducing ever more. Even against a ridiculously high bar to prove vaccine liability, and with the government controlling the hearing in which it is being challenged for compensation, the vaccine court has so far paid out more than \$4 billion. These are the vaccines we are told are safe and psychopaths like Zuckerberg censor posts saying otherwise. The immunity law was even justified by a ruling that vaccines by their nature were 'unavoidably unsafe'.

Check out the ingredients of vaccines and you will be shocked if you are new to this. *They put that in children's bodies?? What??* Try aluminium, a brain toxin connected to dementia, aborted foetal tissue and formaldehyde which is used to embalm corpses. World-renowned aluminium expert Christopher Exley had his research into the health effect of aluminium in vaccines shut down by Keele University in the UK when it began taking funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Research when diseases 'eradicated' by vaccines began to decline and you will find the fall began long *before* the vaccine was introduced. Sometimes the fall even plateaued after the vaccine. Diseases like scarlet fever for which there was no vaccine declined in the same way because of environmental and other factors. A perfect case in point is the polio vaccine. Polio began when lead arsenate was first sprayed as an insecticide and residues remained in food products. Spraying started in 1892 and the first US polio epidemic came in Vermont in 1894. The simple answer was to stop spraying, but Rockefeller-created Big Pharma had a better idea. Polio was decreed to be caused by the *poliovirus* which 'spreads from person to person and can infect a person's spinal cord'. Lead arsenate was replaced by the lethal DDT which had the same effect of causing paralysis by damaging the brain and central nervous

system. Polio plummeted when DDT was reduced and then banned, but the vaccine is still given the credit for something it didn't do. Today by far the biggest cause of polio is the vaccines promoted by Bill Gates. Vaccine justice campaigner Robert Kennedy Jr, son of assassinated (by the Cult) US Attorney General Robert Kennedy, wrote:

In 2017, the World Health Organization (WHO) reluctantly admitted that the global explosion in polio is predominantly vaccine strain. The most frightening epidemics in Congo, Afghanistan, and the Philippines, are all linked to vaccines. In fact, by 2018, 70% of global polio cases were vaccine strain.

Vaccines make fortunes for Cult-owned Gates and Big Pharma while undermining the health and immune systems of the population. We had a glimpse of the mentality behind the Big Pharma cartel with a report on WION (World is One News), an international English language TV station based in India, which exposed the extraordinary behaviour of US drug company Pfizer over its 'Covid vaccine'. The WION report told how Pfizer had made fantastic demands of Argentina, Brazil and other countries in return for its 'vaccine'. These included immunity from prosecution, even for Pfizer negligence, government insurance to protect Pfizer from law suits and handing over as collateral sovereign assets of the country to include Argentina's bank reserves, military bases and embassy buildings. Pfizer demanded the same of Brazil in the form of waiving sovereignty of its assets abroad; exempting Pfizer from Brazilian laws; and giving Pfizer immunity from all civil liability. This is a 'vaccine' developed with government funding. Big Pharma is evil incarnate as a creation of the Cult and all must be handed tickets to Nuremberg.

Phantom 'vaccine' for a phantom 'disease'

I'll expose the 'Covid vaccine' fraud and then go on to the wider background of why the Cult has set out to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on the planet for an alleged 'new disease' with a survival rate of 99.77 percent (or more) even by the grotesquely-

manipulated figures of the World Health Organization and Johns Hopkins University. The ‘infection’ to ‘death’ ratio is 0.23 to 0.15 percent according to Stanford epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis and while estimates vary the danger remains tiny. I say that if the truth be told the fake infection to fake death ratio is zero. Never mind all the evidence I have presented here and in *The Answer* that there is no ‘virus’ let us just focus for a moment on that death-rate figure of say 0.23 percent. The figure includes all those worldwide who have tested positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ and then died within 28 days or even longer of any other cause – *any other cause*. Now subtract all those illusory ‘Covid’ deaths on the global data sheets from the 0.23 percent. What do you think you would be left with? *Zero*. A vaccination has never been successfully developed for a so-called coronavirus. They have all failed at the animal testing stage when they caused hypersensitivity to what they were claiming to protect against and made the impact of a disease far worse. Cult-owned vaccine corporations got around that problem this time by bypassing animal trials, going straight to humans and making the length of the ‘trials’ before the public rollout as short as they could get away with. Normally it takes five to ten years or more to develop vaccines that still cause demonstrable harm to many people and that’s without including the long-term effects that are never officially connected to the vaccination. ‘Covid’ non-vaccines have been officially produced and approved in a matter of months from a standing start and part of the reason is that (a) they were developed before the ‘Covid’ hoax began and (b) they are based on computer programs and not natural sources. Official non-trials were so short that government agencies gave *emergency*, not full, approval. ‘Trials’ were not even completed and full approval cannot be secured until they are. Public ‘Covid vaccination’ is actually a *continuation of the trial*. Drug company ‘trials’ are not scheduled to end until 2023 by which time a lot of people are going to be dead. Data on which government agencies gave this emergency approval was supplied by the Big Pharma corporations themselves in the form of Pfizer/BioNTech, AstraZeneca, Moderna, Johnson & Johnson, and

others, and this is the case with all vaccines. By its very nature *emergency* approval means drug companies do not have to prove that the ‘vaccine’ is ‘safe and effective’. How could they with trials way short of complete? Government regulators only have to *believe* that they *could* be safe and effective. It is criminal manipulation to get products in circulation with no testing worth the name. Agencies giving that approval are infested with Big Pharma-connected place-people and they act in the interests of Big Pharma (the Cult) and not the public about whom they do not give a damn.

More human lab rats

‘Covid vaccines’ produced in record time by Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna employ a technique *never approved before for use on humans*. They are known as mRNA ‘vaccines’ and inject a synthetic version of ‘viral’ mRNA or ‘messenger RNA’. The key is in the term ‘messenger’. The body works, or doesn’t, on the basis of information messaging. Communications are constantly passing between and within the genetic system and the brain. Change those messages and you change the state of the body and even its very nature and you can change psychology and behaviour by the way the brain processes information. I think you are going to see significant changes in personality and perception of many people who have had the ‘Covid vaccine’ synthetic potions. Insider Aldous Huxley predicted the following in 1961 and mRNA ‘vaccines’ can be included in the term ‘pharmacological methods’:

There will be, in the next generation or so, a pharmacological method of making people love their servitude, and producing dictatorship without tears, so to speak, producing a kind of painless concentration camp for entire societies, so that people will in fact have their own liberties taken away from them, but rather enjoy it, because they will be distracted from any desire to rebel by propaganda or brainwashing, or brainwashing enhanced by pharmacological methods. And this seems to be the final revolution.

Apologists claim that mRNA synthetic ‘vaccines’ don’t change the DNA genetic blueprint because RNA does not affect DNA only the other way round. This is so disingenuous. A process called ‘reverse

'transcription' can convert RNA into DNA and be integrated into DNA in the cell nucleus. This was highlighted in December, 2020, by scientists at Harvard and Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). Geneticists report that more than 40 percent of mammalian genomes results from reverse transcription. On the most basic level if messaging changes then that sequence must lead to changes in DNA which is receiving and transmitting those communications. How can introducing synthetic material into cells not change the cells where DNA is located? The process is known as transfection which is defined as 'a technique to insert foreign nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) into a cell, typically with the intention of altering the properties of the cell'. Researchers at the Sloan Kettering Institute in New York found that changes in messenger RNA can deactivate tumour-suppressing proteins and thereby promote cancer. This is what happens when you mess with messaging. 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna was founded in 2010 by Canadian stem cell biologist Derrick J. Rossi after his breakthrough discovery in the field of transforming and reprogramming stem cells. These are neutral cells that can be programmed to become any cell including sperm cells. Moderna was therefore founded on the principle of genetic manipulation and has never produced any vaccine or drug before its genetically-manipulating synthetic 'Covid' shite. Look at the name – Mode-RNA or Modify-RNA. Another important point is that the US Supreme Court has ruled that genetically-modified DNA, or complementary DNA (cDNA) synthesized in the laboratory from messenger RNA, can be patented and owned. These psychopaths are doing this to the human body.

Cells replicate synthetic mRNA in the 'Covid vaccines' and in theory the body is tricked into making antigens which trigger antibodies to target the 'virus spike proteins' which as Dr Tom Cowan said have *never been seen*. Cut the crap and these 'vaccines' deliver *self-replicating* synthetic material to the cells with the effect of changing human DNA. The more of them you have the more that process is compounded while synthetic material is all the time self-replicating. 'Vaccine'-maker Moderna describes mRNA as 'like

software for the cell' and so they are messing with the body's software. What happens when you change the software in a computer? Everything changes. For this reason the Cult is preparing a production line of mRNA 'Covid vaccines' and a long list of excuses to use them as with all the 'variants' of a 'virus' never shown to exist. The plan is further to transfer the mRNA technique to other vaccines mostly given to children and young people. The cumulative consequences will be a transformation of human DNA through a constant infusion of synthetic genetic material which will kill many and change the rest. Now consider that governments that have given emergency approval for a vaccine that's not a vaccine; never been approved for humans before; had no testing worth the name; and the makers have been given immunity from prosecution for any deaths or adverse effects suffered by the public. The UK government awarded *permanent legal indemnity* to itself and its employees for harm done when a patient is being treated for 'Covid-19' or 'suspected Covid-19'. That is quite a thought when these are possible 'side-effects' from the 'vaccine' (they are not 'side', they are effects) listed by the US Food and Drug Administration:

Guillain-Barre syndrome; acute disseminated encephalomyelitis; transverse myelitis; encephalitis; myelitis; encephalomyelitis; meningoencephalitis; meningitis; encephalopathy; convulsions; seizures; stroke; narcolepsy; cataplexy; anaphylaxis; acute myocardial infarction (heart attack); myocarditis; pericarditis; autoimmune disease; death; implications for pregnancy, and birth outcomes; other acute demyelinating diseases; non anaphylactic allergy reactions; thrombocytopenia ; disseminated intravascular coagulation; venous thromboembolism; arthritis; arthralgia; joint pain; Kawasaki disease; multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children; vaccine enhanced disease. The latter is the way the 'vaccine' has the potential to make diseases far worse than they would otherwise be.

UK doctor and freedom campaigner Vernon Coleman described the conditions in this list as 'all unpleasant, most of them very serious, and you can't get more serious than death'. The thought that anyone at all has had the 'vaccine' in these circumstances is testament to the potential that humanity has for clueless, unquestioning, stupidity and for many that programmed stupidity has already been terminal.

An insider speaks

Dr Michael Yeadon is a former Vice President, head of research and Chief Scientific Adviser at vaccine giant Pfizer. Yeadon worked on the inside of Big Pharma, but that did not stop him becoming a vocal critic of 'Covid vaccines' and their potential for multiple harms, including infertility in women. By the spring of 2021 he went much further and even used the no, no, term 'conspiracy'. When you begin to see what is going on it is impossible not to do so. Yeadon spoke out in an interview with freedom campaigner James Delingpole and I mentioned earlier how he said that no one had samples of 'the virus'. He explained that the mRNA technique originated in the anti-cancer field and ways to turn on and off certain genes which could be advantageous if you wanted to stop cancer growing out of control. 'That's the origin of them. They are a very unusual application, really.' Yeadon said that treating a cancer patient with an aggressive procedure might be understandable if the alternative was dying, but it was quite another thing to use the same technique as a public health measure. Most people involved wouldn't catch the infectious agent you were vaccinating against and if they did they probably wouldn't die:

If you are really using it as a public health measure you really want to as close as you can get to zero side-effects ... I find it odd that they chose techniques that were really cutting their teeth in the field of oncology and I'm worried that in using gene-based vaccines that have to be injected in the body and spread around the body, get taken up into some cells, and the regulators haven't quite told us which cells they get taken up into ... you are going to be generating a wide range of responses ... with multiple steps each of which could go well or badly.

I doubt the Cult intends it to go well. Yeadon said that you can put any gene you like into the body through the 'vaccine'. 'You can certainly give them a gene that would do them some harm if you wanted.' I was intrigued when he said that when used in the cancer field the technique could turn genes on and off. I explore this process in *The Answer* and with different genes having different functions you could create mayhem – physically and psychologically – if you turned the wrong ones on and the right ones off. I read reports of an experiment by researchers at the University of Washington's school of computer science and engineering in which they encoded DNA to infect computers. The body is itself a biological computer and if human DNA can inflict damage on a computer why can't the computer via synthetic material mess with the human body? It can. The Washington research team said it was possible to insert malicious malware into 'physical DNA strands' and corrupt the computer system of a gene sequencing machine as it 'reads gene letters and stores them as binary digits 0 and 1'. They concluded that hackers could one day use blood or spit samples to access computer systems and obtain sensitive data from police forensics labs or infect genome files. It is at this level of digital interaction that synthetic 'vaccines' need to be seen to get the full picture and that will become very clear later on. Michael Yeadon said it made no sense to give the 'vaccine' to younger people who were in no danger from the 'virus'. What was the benefit? It was all downside with potential effects:

The fact that my government in what I thought was a civilised, rational country, is raining [the 'vaccine'] on people in their 30s and 40s, even my children in their 20s, they're getting letters and phone calls, I know this is not right and any of you doctors who are vaccinating you know it's not right, too. They are not at risk. They are not at risk from the disease, so you are now hoping that the side-effects are so rare that you get away with it. You don't give new technology ... that you don't understand to 100 percent of the population.

Blood clot problems with the AstraZeneca 'vaccine' have been affecting younger people to emphasise the downside risks with no benefit. AstraZeneca's version, produced with Oxford University, does not use mRNA, but still gets its toxic cocktail inside cells where

it targets DNA. The Johnson & Johnson ‘vaccine’ which uses a similar technique has also produced blood clot effects to such an extent that the United States paused its use at one point. They are all ‘gene therapy’ (cell modification) procedures and not ‘vaccines’. The truth is that once the content of these injections enter cells we have no idea what the effect will be. People can speculate and some can give very educated opinions and that’s good. In the end, though, only the makers know what their potions are designed to do and even they won’t know every last consequence. Michael Yeadon was scathing about doctors doing what they knew to be wrong.

‘Everyone’s mute’, he said. Doctors in the NHS must know this was not right, coming into work and injecting people. ‘I don’t know how they sleep at night. I know I couldn’t do it. I know that if I were in that position I’d have to quit.’ He said he knew enough about toxicology to know this was not a good risk-benefit. Yeadon had spoken to seven or eight university professors and all except two would not speak out publicly. Their universities had a policy that no one said anything that countered the government and its medical advisors. They were afraid of losing their government grants. This is how intimidation has been used to silence the truth at every level of the system. I say silence, but these people could still speak out if they made that choice. Yeadon called them ‘moral cowards’ – ‘This is about your children and grandchildren’s lives and you have just buggered off and left it.’

‘Variant’ nonsense

Some of his most powerful comments related to the alleged ‘variants’ being used to instil more fear, justify more lockdowns, and introduce more ‘vaccines’. He said government claims about ‘variants’ were nonsense. He had checked the alleged variant ‘codes’ and they were 99.7 percent identical to the ‘original’. This was the human identity difference equivalent to putting a baseball cap on and off or wearing it the other way round. A 0.3 percent difference would make it impossible for that ‘variant’ to escape immunity from the ‘original’. This made no sense of having new ‘vaccines’ for

'variants'. He said there would have to be at least a *30 percent* difference for that to be justified and even then he believed the immune system would still recognise what it was. Gates-funded 'variant modeller' and 'vaccine'-pusher John Edmunds might care to comment. Yeadon said drug companies were making new versions of the 'vaccine' as a 'top up' for 'variants'. Worse than that, he said, the 'regulators' around the world like the MHRA in the UK had got together and agreed that because 'vaccines' for 'variants' were so similar to the first 'vaccines' *they did not have to do safety studies*. How transparently sinister that is. This is when Yeadon said: 'There is a conspiracy here.' There was no need for another vaccine for 'variants' and yet we were told that there was and the country had shut its borders because of them. 'They are going into hundreds of millions of arms without passing 'go' or any regulator. Why did they do that? Why did they pick this method of making the vaccine?'

The reason had to be something bigger than that it seemed and 'it's not protection against the virus'. It's was a far bigger project that meant politicians and advisers were willing to do things and not do things that knowingly resulted in avoidable deaths – 'that's already happened when you think about lockdown and deprivation of health care for a year.' He spoke of people prepared to do something that results in the avoidable death of their fellow human beings and it not bother them. This is the penny-drop I have been working to get across for more than 30 years – the level of pure evil we are dealing with. Yeadon said his friends and associates could not believe there could be that much evil, but he reminded them of Stalin, Pol Pot and Hitler and of what Stalin had said: 'One death is a tragedy. A million? A statistic.' He could not think of a benign explanation for why you need top-up vaccines 'which I'm sure you don't' and for the regulators 'to just get out of the way and wave them through'. Why would the regulators do that when they were still wrestling with the dangers of the 'parent' vaccine? He was clearly shocked by what he had seen since the 'Covid' hoax began and now he was thinking the previously unthinkable:

If you wanted to depopulate a significant proportion of the world and to do it in a way that doesn't involve destruction of the environment with nuclear weapons, poisoning everyone with anthrax or something like that, and you wanted plausible deniability while you had a multi-year infectious disease crisis, I actually don't think you could come up with a better plan of work than seems to be in front of me. I can't say that's what they are going to do, but I can't think of a benign explanation why they are doing it.

He said he never thought that they would get rid of 99 percent of humans, but now he wondered. 'If you wanted to that this would be a hell of a way to do it – it would be unstoppable folks.' Yeadon had concluded that those who submitted to the 'vaccine' would be allowed to have some kind of normal life (but for how long?) while screws were tightened to coerce and mandate the last few percent. 'I think they'll put the rest of them in a prison camp. I wish I was wrong, but I don't think I am.' Other points he made included: There were no coronavirus vaccines then suddenly they all come along at the same time; we have no idea of the long term affect with trials so short; coercing or forcing people to have medical procedures is against the Nuremberg Code instigated when the Nazis did just that; people should at least delay having the 'vaccine'; a quick Internet search confirms that masks don't reduce respiratory viral transmission and 'the government knows that'; they have smashed civil society and they know that, too; two dozen peer-reviewed studies show no connection between lockdown and reducing deaths; he knew from personal friends the elite were still flying around and going on holiday while the public were locked down; the elite were not having the 'vaccines'. He was also asked if 'vaccines' could be made to target difference races. He said he didn't know, but the document by the Project for the New American Century in September, 2000, said developing 'advanced forms of biological warfare that can target *specific genotypes* may transform biological warfare from the realm of terror to a politically useful tool.' Oh, they're evil all right. Of that we can be *absolutely* sure.

Another cull of old people

We have seen from the CDC definition that the mRNA 'Covid vaccine' is not a vaccine and nor are the others that *claim* to reduce 'severity of symptoms' in *some* people, but not protect from infection or transmission. What about all the lies about returning to 'normal' if people were 'vaccinated'? If they are not claimed to stop infection and transmission of the alleged 'virus', how does anything change? This was all lies to manipulate people to take the jabs and we are seeing that now with masks and distancing still required for the 'vaccinated'. How did they think that elderly people with fragile health and immune responses were going to be affected by infusing their cells with synthetic material and other toxic substances? They *knew* that in the short and long term it would be devastating and fatal as the culling of the old that began with the first lockdowns was continued with the 'vaccine'. Death rates in care homes soared immediately residents began to be 'vaccinated' – infused with synthetic material. Brave and committed whistleblower nurses put their careers at risk by exposing this truth while the rest kept their heads down and their mouths shut to put their careers before those they are supposed to care for. A long-time American Certified Nursing Assistant who gave his name as James posted a video in which he described emotionally what happened in his care home when vaccination began. He said that during 2020 very few residents were sick with 'Covid' and no one died during the entire year; but shortly after the Pfizer mRNA injections 14 people died within two weeks and many others were near death. 'They're dropping like flies', he said. Residents who walked on their own before the shot could no longer and they had lost their ability to conduct an intelligent conversation. The home's management said the sudden deaths were caused by a 'super-spreader' of 'Covid-19'. Then how come, James asked, that residents who refused to take the injections were not sick? It was a case of inject the elderly with mRNA synthetic potions and blame their illness and death that followed on the 'virus'. James described what was happening in care homes as 'the greatest crime of genocide this country has ever seen'. Remember the NHS staff nurse from earlier who used the same

word ‘genocide’ for what was happening with the ‘vaccines’ and that it was an ‘act of human annihilation’. A UK care home whistleblower told a similar story to James about the effect of the ‘vaccine’ in deaths and ‘outbreaks’ of illness dubbed ‘Covid’ after getting the jab. She told how her care home management and staff had zealously imposed government regulations and no one was allowed to even question the official narrative let alone speak out against it. She said the NHS was even worse. Again we see the results of reframing. A worker at a local care home where I live said they had not had a single case of ‘Covid’ there for almost a year and when the residents were ‘vaccinated’ they had 19 positive cases in two weeks with eight dying.

It's not the 'vaccine' – honest

The obvious cause and effect was being ignored by the media and most of the public. Australia’s health minister Greg Hunt (a former head of strategy at the World Economic Forum) was admitted to hospital after he had the ‘vaccine’. He was suffering according to reports from the skin infection ‘cellulitis’ and it must have been a severe case to have warranted days in hospital. Immediately the authorities said this was nothing to do with the ‘vaccine’ when an effect of some vaccines is a ‘cellulitis-like reaction’. We had families of perfectly healthy old people who died after the ‘vaccine’ saying that if only they had been given the ‘vaccine’ earlier they would still be alive. As a numbskull rating that is off the chart. A father of four ‘died of Covid’ at aged 48 when he was taken ill two days after having the ‘vaccine’. The man, a health administrator, had been ‘shielding during the pandemic’ and had ‘not really left the house’ until he went for the ‘vaccine’. Having the ‘vaccine’ and then falling ill and dying does not seem to have qualified as a possible cause and effect and ‘Covid-19’ went on his death certificate. His family said they had no idea how he ‘caught the virus’. A family member said: ‘Tragically, it could be that going for a vaccination ultimately led to him catching Covid ...The sad truth is that they are never going to know where it came from.’ The family warned people to remember

that the virus still existed and was ‘very real’. So was their stupidity. Nurses and doctors who had the first round of the ‘vaccine’ were collapsing, dying and ending up in a hospital bed while they or their grieving relatives were saying they’d still have the ‘vaccine’ again despite what happened. I kid you not. You mean if your husband returned from the dead he’d have the same ‘vaccine’ again that killed him??

Doctors at the VCU Medical Center in Richmond, Virginia, said the Johnson & Johnson ‘vaccine’ was to blame for a man’s skin peeling off. Patient Richard Terrell said: ‘It all just happened so fast. My skin peeled off. It’s still coming off on my hands now.’ He said it was stinging, burning and itching and when he bent his arms and legs it was very painful with ‘the skin swollen and rubbing against itself’. Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna vaccines use mRNA to change the cell while the Johnson & Johnson version uses DNA in a process similar to AstraZeneca’s technique. Johnson & Johnson and AstraZeneca have both had their ‘vaccines’ paused by many countries after causing serious blood problems. Terrell’s doctor Fnu Nutan said he could have died if he hadn’t got medical attention. It sounds terrible so what did Nutan and Terrell say about the ‘vaccine’ now? Oh, they still recommend that people have it. A nurse in a hospital bed 40 minutes after the vaccination and unable to swallow due to throat swelling was told by a doctor that he lost mobility in his arm for 36 hours following the vaccination. What did he say to the ailing nurse? ‘Good for you for getting the vaccination.’ We are dealing with a serious form of cognitive dissonance madness in both public and medical staff. There is a remarkable correlation between those having the ‘vaccine’ and trumpeting the fact and suffering bad happenings shortly afterwards. Witold Rogiewicz, a Polish doctor, made a video of his ‘vaccination’ and ridiculed those who were questioning its safety and the intentions of Bill Gates: ‘Vaccinate yourself to protect yourself, your loved ones, friends and also patients. And to mention quickly I have info for anti-vaxxers and anti-Covidiers if you want to contact Bill Gates you can do this through me.’ He further ridiculed the dangers of 5G. Days later he

was dead, but naturally the vaccination wasn't mentioned in the verdict of 'heart attack'.

Lies, lies and more lies

So many members of the human race have slipped into extreme states of insanity and unfortunately they include reframed doctors and nursing staff. Having a 'vaccine' and dying within minutes or hours is not considered a valid connection while death from any cause within 28 days or longer of a positive test with a test not testing for the 'virus' means 'Covid-19' goes on the death certificate. How could that 'vaccine'-death connection not have been made except by calculated deceit? US figures in the initial rollout period to February 12th, 2020, revealed that a third of the deaths reported to the CDC after 'Covid vaccines' happened within 48 hours. Five men in the UK suffered an 'extremely rare' blood clot problem after having the AstraZeneca 'vaccine', but no causal link was established said the Gates-funded Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) which had given the 'vaccine' emergency approval to be used. Former Pfizer executive Dr Michael Yeadon explained in his interview how the procedures could cause blood coagulation and clots. People who should have been at no risk were dying from blood clots in the brain and he said he had heard from medical doctor friends that people were suffering from skin bleeding and massive headaches. The AstraZeneca 'shot' was stopped by some 20 countries over the blood clotting issue and still the corrupt MHRA, the European Medicines Agency (EMA) and the World Health Organization said that it should continue to be given even though the EMA admitted that it 'still cannot rule out definitively' a link between blood clotting and the 'vaccine'. Later Marco Cavaleri, head of EMA vaccine strategy, said there was indeed a clear link between the 'vaccine' and thrombosis, but they didn't know why. So much for the trials showing the 'vaccine' is safe. Blood clots were affecting younger people who would be under virtually no danger from 'Covid' even if it existed which makes it all the more stupid and sinister.

The British government responded to public alarm by wheeling out June Raine, the terrifyingly weak infant school headmistress sound-alike who heads the UK MHRA drug ‘regulator’. The idea that she would stand up to Big Pharma and government pressure is laughable and she told us that all was well in the same way that she did when allowing untested, never-used-on-humans-before, genetically-manipulating ‘vaccines’ to be exposed to the public in the first place. Mass lying is the new normal of the ‘Covid’ era. The MHRA later said 30 cases of rare blood clots had by then been connected with the AstraZeneca ‘vaccine’ (that means a lot more in reality) while stressing that the benefits of the jab in preventing ‘Covid-19’ outweighed any risks. A more ridiculous and disingenuous statement with callous disregard for human health it is hard to contemplate. Immediately after the mendacious ‘all-clears’ two hospital workers in Denmark experienced blood clots and cerebral haemorrhaging following the AstraZeneca jab and one died. Top Norwegian health official Pål Andre Holme said the ‘vaccine’ was the only common factor: ‘There is nothing in the patient history of these individuals that can give such a powerful immune response ... I am confident that the antibodies that we have found are the cause, and I see no other explanation than it being the vaccine which triggers it.’ Strokes, a clot or bleed in the brain, were clearly associated with the ‘vaccine’ from word of mouth and whistleblower reports. Similar consequences followed with all these ‘vaccines’ that we were told were so safe and as the numbers grew by the day it was clear we were witnessing human carnage.

Learning the hard way

A woman interviewed by UKColumn told how her husband suffered dramatic health effects after the vaccine when he’d been in good health all his life. He went from being a little unwell to losing all feeling in his legs and experiencing ‘excruciating pain’. Misdiagnosis followed twice at Accident and Emergency (an ‘allergy’ and ‘sciatica’) before he was admitted to a neurology ward where doctors said his serious condition had been caused by the

'vaccine'. Another seven 'vaccinated' people were apparently being treated on the same ward for similar symptoms. The woman said he had the 'vaccine' because they believed media claims that it was safe. 'I didn't think the government would give out a vaccine that does this to somebody; I believed they would be bringing out a vaccination that would be safe.' What a tragic way to learn that lesson. Another woman posted that her husband was transporting stroke patients to hospital on almost every shift and when he asked them if they had been 'vaccinated' for 'Covid' they all replied 'yes'. One had a 'massive brain bleed' the day after his second dose. She said her husband reported the 'just been vaccinated' information every time to doctors in A and E only for them to ignore it, make no notes and appear annoyed that it was even mentioned. This particular report cannot be verified, but it expresses a common theme that confirms the monumental underreporting of 'vaccine' consequences. Interestingly as the 'vaccines' and their brain blood clot/stroke consequences began to emerge the UK National Health Service began a publicity campaign telling the public what to do in the event of a stroke. A Scottish NHS staff nurse who quit in disgust in March, 2021, said:

I have seen traumatic injuries from the vaccine, they're not getting reported to the yellow card [adverse reaction] scheme, they're treating the symptoms, not asking why, why it's happening. It's just treating the symptoms and when you speak about it you're dismissed like you're crazy, I'm not crazy, I'm not crazy because every other colleague I've spoken to is terrified to speak out, they've had enough.

Videos appeared on the Internet of people uncontrollably shaking after the 'vaccine' with no control over muscles, limbs and even their face. A Scottish mother broke out in a severe rash all over her body almost immediately after she was given the AstraZeneca 'vaccine'. The pictures were horrific. Leigh King, a 41-year-old hairdresser from Lanarkshire said: 'Never in my life was I prepared for what I was about to experience ... My skin was so sore and constantly hot ... I have never felt pain like this ...' But don't you worry, the 'vaccine' is perfectly safe. Then there has been the effect on medical

staff who have been pressured to have the ‘vaccine’ by psychopathic ‘health’ authorities and government. A London hospital consultant who gave the name K. Polyakova wrote this to the *British Medical Journal* or *BMJ*:

I am currently struggling with ... the failure to report the reality of the morbidity caused by our current vaccination program within the health service and staff population. The levels of sickness after vaccination is unprecedented and staff are getting very sick and some with neurological symptoms which is having a huge impact on the health service function. Even the young and healthy are off for days, some for weeks, and some requiring medical treatment. Whole teams are being taken out as they went to get vaccinated together.

Mandatory vaccination in this instance is stupid, unethical and irresponsible when it comes to protecting our staff and public health. We are in the voluntary phase of vaccination, and encouraging staff to take an unlicensed product that is impacting on their immediate health ... it is clearly stated that these vaccine products do not offer immunity or stop transmission. In which case why are we doing it?

Not to protect health that’s for sure. Medical workers are lauded by governments for agenda reasons when they couldn’t give a toss about them any more than they can for the population in general. Schools across America faced the same situation as they closed due to the high number of teachers and other staff with bad reactions to the Pfizer/BioNTech, Moderna, and Johnson & Johnson ‘Covid vaccines’ all of which were linked to death and serious adverse effects. The *BMJ* took down the consultant’s comments pretty quickly on the grounds that they were being used to spread ‘disinformation’. They were exposing the truth about the ‘vaccine’ was the real reason. The cover-up is breathtaking.

Hiding the evidence

The scale of the ‘vaccine’ death cover-up worldwide can be confirmed by comparing official figures with the personal experience of the public. I heard of many people in my community who died immediately or soon after the vaccine that would never appear in the media or even likely on the official totals of ‘vaccine’ fatalities and adverse reactions when only about ten percent are estimated to be

reported and I have seen some estimates as low as one percent in a Harvard study. In the UK alone by April 29th, 2021, some 757,654 adverse reactions had been officially reported from the Pfizer/BioNTech, Oxford/AstraZeneca and Moderna 'vaccines' with more than a thousand deaths linked to jabs and that means an estimated ten times this number in reality from a ten percent reporting rate percentage. That's seven million adverse reactions and 10,000 potential deaths and a one percent reporting rate would be ten times *those* figures. In 1976 the US government pulled the swine flu vaccine after 53 deaths. The UK data included a combined 10,000 eye disorders from the 'Covid vaccines' with more than 750 suffering visual impairment or blindness and again multiply by the estimated reporting percentages. As 'Covid cases' officially fell hospitals virtually empty during the 'Covid crisis' began to fill up with a range of other problems in the wake of the 'vaccine' rollout. The numbers across America have also been catastrophic. Deaths linked to *all* types of vaccine increased by *6,000 percent* in the first quarter of 2021 compared with 2020. A 39-year-old woman from Ogden, Utah, died four days after receiving a second dose of Moderna's 'Covid vaccine' when her liver, heart and kidneys all failed despite the fact that she had no known medical issues or conditions. Her family sought an autopsy, but Dr Erik Christensen, Utah's chief medical examiner, said proving vaccine injury as a cause of death almost never happened. He could think of only one instance where an autopsy would name a vaccine as the official cause of death and that would be anaphylaxis where someone received a vaccine and died almost instantaneously. 'Short of that, it would be difficult for us to definitively say this is the vaccine,' Christensen said. If that is true this must be added to the estimated ten percent (or far less) reporting rate of vaccine deaths and serious reactions and the conclusion can only be that vaccine deaths and serious reactions – including these 'Covid' potions – are phenomenally understated in official figures. The same story can be found everywhere. Endless accounts of deaths and serious reactions among the public, medical

and care home staff while official figures did not even begin to reflect this.

Professional script-reader Dr David Williams, a ‘top public-health official’ in Ontario, Canada, insulted our intelligence by claiming only four serious adverse reactions and no deaths from the more than 380,000 vaccine doses then given. This bore no resemblance to what people knew had happened in their own circles and we had Dirk Huyer in charge of getting millions vaccinated in Ontario while at the same time he was Chief Coroner for the province investigating causes of death including possible death from the vaccine. An aide said he had stepped back from investigating deaths, but evidence indicated otherwise. Rosemary Frei, who secured a Master of Science degree in molecular biology at the Faculty of Medicine at Canada’s University of Calgary before turning to investigative journalism, was one who could see that official figures for ‘vaccine’ deaths and reactions made no sense. She said that doctors seldom reported adverse events and when people got really sick or died after getting a vaccination they would attribute that to anything except the vaccines. It had been that way for years and anyone who wondered aloud whether the ‘Covid vaccines’ or other shots cause harm is immediately branded as ‘anti-vax’ and ‘anti-science’. This was ‘career-threatening’ for health professionals. Then there was the huge pressure to support the push to ‘vaccinate’ billions in the quickest time possible. Frei said:

So that’s where we’re at today. More than half a million vaccine doses have been given to people in Ontario alone. The rush is on to vaccinate all 15 million of us in the province by September. And the mainstream media are screaming for this to be sped up even more. That all adds up to only a very slim likelihood that we’re going to be told the truth by officials about how many people are getting sick or dying from the vaccines.

What is true of Ontario is true of everywhere.

They KNEW – and still did it

The authorities knew what was going to happen with multiple deaths and adverse reactions. The UK government’s Gates-funded

and Big Pharma-dominated Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) hired a company to employ AI in compiling the projected reactions to the ‘vaccine’ that would otherwise be uncountable. The request for applications said: ‘The MHRA urgently seeks an Artificial Intelligence (AI) software tool to process the expected high volume of Covid-19 vaccine Adverse Drug Reaction ...’ This was from the agency, headed by the disingenuous June Raine, that gave the ‘vaccines’ emergency approval and the company was hired before the first shot was given. ‘We are going to kill and maim you – is that okay?’ ‘Oh, yes, perfectly fine – I’m very grateful, thank you, doctor.’ The range of ‘Covid vaccine’ adverse reactions goes on for page after page in the MHRA criminally underreported ‘Yellow Card’ system and includes affects to eyes, ears, skin, digestion, blood and so on. Raine’s MHRA amazingly claimed that the ‘overall safety experience ... is so far as expected from the clinical trials’. The death, serious adverse effects, deafness and blindness were *expected*? When did they ever mention that? If these human tragedies were expected then those that gave approval for the use of these ‘vaccines’ must be guilty of crimes against humanity including murder – a definition of which is ‘killing a person with malice aforethought or with recklessness manifesting extreme indifference to the value of human life.’ People involved at the MHRA, the CDC in America and their equivalent around the world must go before Nuremberg trials to answer for their callous inhumanity. We are only talking here about the immediate effects of the ‘vaccine’. The longer-term impact of the DNA synthetic manipulation is the main reason they are so hysterically desperate to inoculate the entire global population in the shortest possible time.

Africa and the developing world are a major focus for the ‘vaccine’ depopulation agenda and a mass vaccination sales-pitch is underway thanks to caring people like the Rockefellers and other Cult assets. The Rockefeller Foundation, which pre-empted the ‘Covid pandemic’ in a document published in 2010 that ‘predicted’ what happened a decade later, announced an initial \$34.95 million grant in February, 2021, ‘to ensure more equitable access to Covid-19

testing and vaccines' among other things in Africa in collaboration with '24 organizations, businesses, and government agencies'. The pan-Africa initiative would focus on 10 countries: Burkina Faso, Ethiopia, Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria, Rwanda, South Africa, Tanzania, Uganda, and Zambia'. Rajiv Shah, President of the Rockefeller Foundation and former administrator of CIA-controlled USAID, said that if Africa was not mass-vaccinated (to change the DNA of its people) it was a 'threat to all of humanity' and not fair on Africans. When someone from the Rockefeller Foundation says they want to do something to help poor and deprived people and countries it is time for a belly-laugh. They are doing this out of the goodness of their 'heart' because 'vaccinating' the entire global population is what the 'Covid' hoax set out to achieve. Official 'decolonisation' of Africa by the Cult was merely a prelude to financial colonisation on the road to a return to physical colonisation. The 'vaccine' is vital to that and the sudden and convenient death of the 'Covid' sceptic president of Tanzania can be seen in its true light. A lot of people in Africa are aware that this is another form of colonisation and exploitation and they need to stand their ground.

The 'vaccine is working' scam

A potential problem for the Cult was that the 'vaccine' is meant to change human DNA and body messaging and not to protect anyone from a 'virus' never shown to exist. The vaccine couldn't work because it was not designed to work and how could they make it *appear* to be working so that more people would have it? This was overcome by lowering the amplification rate of the PCR test to produce fewer 'cases' and therefore fewer 'deaths'. Some of us had been pointing out since March, 2020, that the amplification rate of the test not testing for the 'virus' had been made artificially high to generate positive tests which they could call 'cases' to justify lockdowns. The World Health Organization recommended an absurdly high 45 amplification cycles to ensure the high positives required by the Cult and then remained silent on the issue until January 20th, 2021 – Biden's Inauguration Day. This was when the

'vaccinations' were seriously underway and on that day the WHO recommended after discussions with America's CDC that laboratories *lowered their testing amplification*. Dr David Samadi, a certified urologist and health writer, said the WHO was encouraging all labs to reduce their cycle count for PCR tests. He said the current cycle was much too high and was 'resulting in any particle being declared a positive case'. Even one mainstream news report I saw said this meant the number of 'Covid' infections may have been 'dramatically inflated'. Oh, just a little bit. The CDC in America issued new guidance to laboratories in April, 2021, to use 28 cycles *but only for 'vaccinated' people*. The timing of the CDC/WHO interventions were cynically designed to make it appear the 'vaccines' were responsible for falling cases and deaths when the real reason can be seen in the following examples. New York's state lab, the Wadsworth Center, identified 872 positive tests in July, 2020, based on a threshold of 40 cycles. When the figure was lowered to 35 cycles *43 percent* of the 872 were no longer 'positives'. At 30 cycles the figure was 63 percent. A Massachusetts lab found that between *85 to 90 percent* of people who tested positive in July with a cycle threshold of 40 would be negative at 30 cycles, Ashish Jha, MD, director of the Harvard Global Health Institute, said: 'I'm really shocked that it could be that high ... Boy, does it really change the way we need to be thinking about testing.' I'm shocked that I could see the obvious in the spring of 2020, with no medical background, and most medical professionals still haven't worked it out. No, that's not shocking – it's terrifying.

Three weeks after the WHO directive to lower PCR cycles the London *Daily Mail* ran this headline: 'Why ARE Covid cases plummeting? New infections have fallen 45% in the US and 30% globally in the past 3 weeks but experts say vaccine is NOT the main driver because only 8% of Americans and 13% of people worldwide have received their first dose.' They acknowledged that the drop could not be attributed to the 'vaccine', but soon this morphed throughout the media into the 'vaccine' has caused cases and deaths to fall when it was the PCR threshold. In December, 2020, there was

chaos at English Channel ports with truck drivers needing negative 'Covid' tests before they could board a ferry home for Christmas. The government wanted to remove the backlog as fast as possible and they brought in troops to do the 'testing'. Out of 1,600 drivers just 36 tested positive and the rest were given the all clear to cross the Channel. I guess the authorities thought that 36 was the least they could get away with without the unquestioning catching on. The amplification trick which most people believed in the absence of information in the mainstream applied more pressure on those refusing the 'vaccine' to succumb when it 'obviously worked'. The truth was the exact opposite with deaths in care homes soaring with the 'vaccine' and in Israel the term used was 'skyrocket'. A re-analysis of published data from the Israeli Health Ministry led by Dr Hervé Seligmann at the Medicine Emerging Infectious and Tropical Diseases at Aix-Marseille University found that Pfizer's 'Covid vaccine' killed 'about 40 times more [elderly] people than the disease itself would have killed' during a five-week vaccination period and 260 *times* more younger people than would have died from the 'virus' even according to the manipulated 'virus' figures. Dr Seligmann and his co-study author, Haim Yativ, declared after reviewing the Israeli 'vaccine' death data: 'This is a new Holocaust.'

Then, in mid-April, 2021, after vast numbers of people worldwide had been 'vaccinated', the story changed with clear coordination. The UK government began to prepare the ground for more future lockdowns when Nuremberg-destined Boris Johnson told yet another whopper. He said that cases had fallen because of *lockdowns* not 'vaccines'. Lockdowns are irrelevant when *there is no 'virus'* and the test and fraudulent death certificates are deciding the number of 'cases' and 'deaths'. Study after study has shown that lockdowns don't work and instead kill and psychologically destroy people. Meanwhile in the United States Anthony Fauci and Rochelle Walensky, the ultra-Zionist head of the CDC, peddled the same line. More lockdown was the answer and not the 'vaccine', a line repeated on cue by the moron that is Canadian Prime Minister Justin Trudeau. Why all the hysteria to get everyone 'vaccinated' if lockdowns and

not ‘vaccines’ made the difference? None of it makes sense on the face of it. Oh, but it does. The Cult wants lockdowns *and* the ‘vaccine’ and if the ‘vaccine’ is allowed to be seen as the total answer lockdowns would no longer be justified when there are still livelihoods to destroy. ‘Variants’ and renewed upward manipulation of PCR amplification are planned to instigate never-ending lockdown *and* more ‘vaccines’.

You must have it – we’re desperate

Israel, where the Jewish and Arab population are ruled by the Sabbatian Cult, was the front-runner in imposing the DNA-manipulating ‘vaccine’ on its people to such an extent that Jewish refusers began to liken what was happening to the early years of Nazi Germany. This would seem to be a fantastic claim. Why would a government of Jewish people be acting like the Nazis did? If you realise that the Sabbatian Cult was behind the Nazis and that Sabbatians hate Jews the pieces start to fit and the question of why a ‘Jewish’ government would treat Jews with such callous disregard for their lives and freedom finds an answer. Those controlling the government of Israel *aren’t Jewish* – they’re Sabbatian. Israeli lawyer Tamir Turgal was one who made the Nazi comparison in comments to German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich who is leading a class action lawsuit against the psychopaths for crimes against humanity. Turgal described how the Israeli government was vaccinating children and pregnant women on the basis that there was no evidence that this was dangerous when they had no evidence that it *wasn’t* dangerous either. They just had no evidence. This was medical experimentation and Turgal said this breached the Nuremberg Code about medical experimentation and procedures requiring informed consent and choice. Think about that. A Nuremberg Code developed because of Nazi experimentation on Jews and others in concentration camps by people like the evil-beyond-belief Josef Mengele is being breached by the *Israeli* government; but when you know that it’s a *Sabbatian* government along with its intelligence and military agencies like Mossad, Shin Bet and the Israeli Defense Forces, and that Sabbatians

were the force behind the Nazis, the kaleidoscope comes into focus. What have we come to when Israeli Jews are suing their government for violating the Nuremberg Code by essentially making Israelis subject to a medical experiment using the controversial 'vaccines'? It's a shocker that this has to be done in the light of what happened in Nazi Germany. The Anshe Ha-Emet, or 'People of the Truth', made up of Israeli doctors, lawyers, campaigners and public, have launched a lawsuit with the International Criminal Court. It says:

When the heads of the Ministry of Health as well as the prime minister presented the vaccine in Israel and began the vaccination of Israeli residents, the vaccinated were not advised, that, in practice, they are taking part in a medical experiment and that their consent is required for this under the Nuremberg Code.

The irony is unbelievable, but easily explained in one word: Sabbatians. The foundation of Israeli 'Covid' apartheid is the 'green pass' or 'green passport' which allows Jews and Arabs who have had the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine' to go about their lives – to work, fly, travel in general, go to shopping malls, bars, restaurants, hotels, concerts, gyms, swimming pools, theatres and sports venues, while non-'vaccinated' are banned from all those places and activities. Israelis have likened the 'green pass' to the yellow stars that Jews in Nazi Germany were forced to wear – the same as the yellow stickers that a branch of UK supermarket chain Morrisons told exempt mask-wears they had to display when shopping. How very sensitive. The Israeli system is blatant South African-style apartheid on the basis of compliance or non-compliance to fascism rather than colour of the skin. How appropriate that the Sabbatian Israeli government was so close to the pre-Mandela apartheid regime in Pretoria. The Sabbatian-instigated 'vaccine passport' in Israel is planned for everywhere. Sabbatians struck a deal with Pfizer that allowed them to lead the way in the percentage of a national population infused with synthetic material and the result was catastrophic. Israeli freedom activist Shai Dannon told me how chairs were appearing on beaches that said 'vaccinated only'. Health Minister Yuli Edelstein said that anyone unwilling or unable to get

the jabs that ‘confer immunity’ will be ‘left behind’. The man’s a liar. Not even the makers claim the ‘vaccines’ confer immunity. When you see those figures of ‘vaccine’ deaths these psychopaths were saying that you must take the chance the ‘vaccine’ will kill you or maim you while knowing it will change your DNA or lockdown for you will be permanent. That’s fascism. The Israeli parliament passed a law to allow personal information of the non-vaccinated to be shared with local and national authorities for three months. This was claimed by its supporters to be a way to ‘encourage’ people to be vaccinated. Hadas Ziv from Physicians for Human Rights described this as a ‘draconian law which crushed medical ethics and the patient rights’. But that’s the idea, the Sabbatians would reply.

Your papers, please

Sabbatian Israel was leading what has been planned all along to be a global ‘vaccine pass’ called a ‘green passport’ without which you would remain in permanent lockdown restriction and unable to do anything. This is how badly – *desperately* – the Cult is to get everyone ‘vaccinated’. The term and colour ‘green’ was not by chance and related to the psychology of fusing the perception of the green climate hoax with the ‘Covid’ hoax and how the ‘solution’ to both is the same Great Reset. Lying politicians, health officials and psychologists denied there were any plans for mandatory vaccinations or restrictions based on vaccinations, but they knew that was exactly what was meant to happen with governments of all countries reaching agreements to enforce a global system. ‘Free’ Denmark and ‘free’ Sweden unveiled digital vaccine certification. Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Italy, Poland, Portugal, Slovakia, and Spain have all committed to a vaccine passport system and the rest including the whole of the EU would follow. The satanic UK government will certainly go this way despite mendacious denials and at the time of writing it is trying to manipulate the public into having the ‘vaccine’ so they could go abroad on a summer holiday. How would that work without something to prove you had the synthetic toxicity injected into you?

Documents show that the EU's European Commission was moving towards 'vaccine certificates' in 2018 and 2019 before the 'Covid' hoax began. They knew what was coming. Abracadabra – Ursula von der Leyen, the German President of the Commission, announced in March, 2021, an EU 'Digital Green Certificate' – green again – to track the public's 'Covid status'. The passport sting is worldwide and the Far East followed the same pattern with South Korea ruling that only those with 'vaccination' passports – again the *green* pass – would be able to 'return to their daily lives'.

Bill Gates has been preparing for this 'passport' with other Cult operatives for years and beyond the paper version is a Gates-funded 'digital tattoo' to identify who has been vaccinated and who hasn't. The 'tattoo' is reported to include a substance which is externally readable to confirm who has been vaccinated. This is a bio-luminous light-generating enzyme (think fireflies) called ... *Luciferase*. Yes, named after the Cult 'god' Lucifer the 'light bringer' of whom more to come. Gates said he funded the readable tattoo to ensure children in the developing world were vaccinated and no one was missed out. He cares so much about poor kids as we know. This was just the cover story to develop a vaccine tagging system for everyone on the planet. Gates has been funding the ID2020 'alliance' to do just that in league with other lovely people at Microsoft, GAVI, the Rockefeller Foundation, Accenture and IDEO.org. He said in interviews in March, 2020, before any 'vaccine' publicly existed, that the world must have a globalised digital certificate to track the 'virus' and who had been vaccinated. Gates knew from the start that the mRNA vaccines were coming and when they would come and that the plan was to tag the 'vaccinated' to marginalise the intelligent and stop them doing anything including travel. Evil just doesn't suffice. Gates was exposed for offering a \$10 million bribe to the Nigerian House of Representatives to invoke compulsory 'Covid' vaccination of all Nigerians. Sara Cunial, a member of the Italian Parliament, called Gates a 'vaccine criminal'. She urged the Italian President to hand him over to the International Criminal Court for crimes against

humanity and condemned his plans to 'chip the human race' through ID2020.

You know it's a long-planned agenda when war criminal and Cult gofer Tony Blair is on the case. With the scale of arrogance only someone as dark as Blair can muster he said: 'Vaccination in the end is going to be your route to liberty.' Blair is a disgusting piece of work and he confirms that again. The media has given a lot of coverage to a bloke called Charlie Mullins, founder of London's biggest independent plumbing company, Pimlico Plumbers, who has said he won't employ anyone who has not been vaccinated or have them go to any home where people are not vaccinated. He said that if he had his way no one would be allowed to walk the streets if they have not been vaccinated. Gates was cheering at the time while I was alerting the white coats. The plan is that people will qualify for 'passports' for having the first two doses and then to keep it they will have to have all the follow ups and new ones for invented 'variants' until human genetics is transformed and many are dead who can't adjust to the changes. Hollywood celebrities – the usual propaganda stunt – are promoting something called the WELL Health-Safety Rating to verify that a building or space has 'taken the necessary steps to prioritize the health and safety of their staff, visitors and other stakeholders'. They included Lady Gaga, Jennifer Lopez, Michael B. Jordan, Robert DeNiro, Venus Williams, Wolfgang Puck, Deepak Chopra and 17th Surgeon General Richard Carmona. Yawn. WELL Health-Safety has big connections with China. Parent company Delos is headed by former Goldman Sachs partner Paul Scialla. This is another example – and we will see so many others – of using the excuse of 'health' to dictate the lives and activities of the population. I guess one confirmation of the 'safety' of buildings is that only 'vaccinated' people can go in, right?

Electronic concentration camps

I wrote decades ago about the plans to restrict travel and here we are for those who refuse to bow to tyranny. This can be achieved in one go with air travel if the aviation industry makes a blanket decree.

The ‘vaccine’ and guaranteed income are designed to be part of a global version of China’s social credit system which tracks behaviour 24/7 and awards or deletes ‘credits’ based on whether your behaviour is supported by the state or not. I mean your entire lifestyle – what you do, eat, say, everything. Once your credit score falls below a certain level consequences kick in. In China tens of millions have been denied travel by air and train because of this. All the locations and activities denied to refusers by the ‘vaccine’ passports will be included in one big mass ban on doing almost anything for those that don’t bow their head to government. It’s beyond fascist and a new term is required to describe its extremes – I guess fascist technocracy will have to do. The way the Chinese system of technological – technocratic – control is sweeping the West can be seen in the Los Angeles school system and is planned to be expanded worldwide. Every child is required to have a ‘Covid’-tracking app scanned daily before they can enter the classroom. The so-called Daily Pass tracking system is produced by Gates’ Microsoft which I’m sure will shock you rigid. The pass will be scanned using a barcode (one step from an inside-the-body barcode) and the information will include health checks, ‘Covid’ tests and vaccinations. Entry codes are for one specific building only and access will only be allowed if a student or teacher has a negative test with a test not testing for the ‘virus’, has no symptoms of anything alleged to be related to ‘Covid’ (symptoms from a range of other illness), and has a temperature under 100 degrees. No barcode, no entry, is planned to be the case for everywhere and not only schools.

Kids are being psychologically prepared to accept this as ‘normal’ their whole life which is why what they can impose in schools is so important to the Cult and its gofers. Long-time American freedom campaigner John Whitehead of the Rutherford Institute was not exaggerating when he said: ‘Databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps.’ Canada under its Cult gofer prime minister Justin Trudeau has taken a major step towards the real thing with people interned against their will if they test positive with a test not testing for the ‘virus’ when they arrive at a Canadian

airport. They are jailed in internment hotels often without food or water for long periods and with many doors failing to lock there have been sexual assaults. The interned are being charged sometimes \$2,000 for the privilege of being abused in this way. Trudeau is fully on board with the Cult and says the ‘Covid pandemic’ has provided an opportunity for a global ‘reset’ to permanently change Western civilisation. His number two, Deputy Prime Minister Chrystia Freeland, is a trustee of the World Economic Forum and a Rhodes Scholar. The Trudeau family have long been servants of the Cult. See *The Biggest Secret* and Cathy O’Brien’s book *Trance-Formation of America* for the horrific background to Trudeau’s father Pierre Trudeau another Canadian prime minister. Hide your fascism behind the façade of a heart-on-the-sleeve liberal. It’s a well-honed Cult technique.

What can the ‘vaccine’ really do?

We have a ‘virus’ never shown to exist and ‘variants’ of the ‘virus’ that have also never been shown to exist except, like the ‘original’, as computer-generated fictions. Even if you believe there’s a ‘virus’ the ‘case’ to ‘death’ rate is in the region of 0.23 to 0.15 percent and those ‘deaths’ are concentrated among the very old around the same average age that people die anyway. In response to this lack of threat (in truth none) psychopaths and idiots, knowingly and unknowingly answering to Gates and the Cult, are seeking to ‘vaccinate’ every man, woman and child on Planet Earth. Clearly the ‘vaccine’ is not about ‘Covid’ – none of this ever has been. So what is it all about *really*? Why the desperation to infuse genetically-manipulating synthetic material into everyone through mRNA fraudulent ‘vaccines’ with the intent of doing this over and over with the excuses of ‘variants’ and other ‘virus’ inventions? Dr Sherri Tenpenny, an osteopathic medical doctor in the United States, has made herself an expert on vaccines and their effects as a vehement campaigner against their use. Tenpenny was board certified in emergency medicine, the director of a level two trauma centre for 12 years, and moved to Cleveland in 1996 to start an integrative

medicine practice which has treated patients from all 50 states and some 17 other countries. Weaning people off pharmaceutical drugs is a speciality.

She became interested in the consequences of vaccines after attending a meeting at the National Vaccine Information Center in Washington DC in 2000 where she 'sat through four days of listening to medical doctors and scientists and lawyers and parents of vaccine injured kids' and asked: 'What's going on?' She had never been vaccinated and never got ill while her father was given a list of vaccines to be in the military and was 'sick his entire life'. The experience added to her questions and she began to examine vaccine documents from the Centers for Disease Control (CDC). After reading the first one, the 1998 version of *The General Recommendations of Vaccination*, she thought: 'This is it?' The document was poorly written and bad science and Tenpenny began 20 years of research into vaccines that continues to this day. She began her research into 'Covid vaccines' in March, 2020, and she describes them as 'deadly'. For many, as we have seen, they already have been. Tenpenny said that in the first 30 days of the 'vaccine' rollout in the United States there had been more than 40,000 adverse events reported to the vaccine adverse event database. A document had been delivered to her the day before that was 172 pages long. 'We have over 40,000 adverse events; we have over 3,100 cases of [potentially deadly] anaphylactic shock; we have over 5,000 neurological reactions.' Effects ranged from headaches to numbness, dizziness and vertigo, to losing feeling in hands or feet and paraesthesia which is when limbs 'fall asleep' and people have the sensation of insects crawling underneath their skin. All this happened in the first 30 days and remember that only about *ten percent* (or far less) of adverse reactions and vaccine-related deaths are estimated to be officially reported. Tenpenny said:

So can you think of one single product in any industry, any industry, for as long as products have been made on the planet that within 30 days we have 40,000 people complaining of side effects that not only is still on the market but ... we've got paid actors telling us how great

they are for getting their vaccine. We're offering people \$500 if they will just get their vaccine and we've got nurses and doctors going; 'I got the vaccine, I got the vaccine'.

Tenpenny said they were not going to be 'happy dancing folks' when they began to suffer Bell's palsy (facial paralysis), neuropathies, cardiac arrhythmias and autoimmune reactions that kill through a blood disorder. 'They're not going to be so happy, happy then, but we're never going to see pictures of those people' she said. Tenpenny described the 'vaccine' as 'a well-designed killing tool'.

No off-switch

Bad as the initial consequences had been Tenpenny said it would be maybe 14 months before we began to see the 'full ravage' of what is going to happen to the 'Covid vaccinated' with full-out consequences taking anything between two years and 20 years to show. You can understand why when you consider that variations of the 'Covid vaccine' use mRNA (messenger RNA) to in theory activate the immune system to produce protective antibodies without using the actual 'virus'. How can they when it's a computer program and they've never isolated what they claim is the 'real thing'? Instead they use *synthetic* mRNA. They are inoculating synthetic material into the body which through a technique known as the Trojan horse is absorbed into cells to change the nature of DNA. Human DNA is changed by an infusion of messenger RNA and with each new 'vaccine' of this type it is changed even more. Say so and you are banned by Cult Internet platforms. The contempt the contemptuous Mark Zuckerberg has for the truth and human health can be seen in an internal Facebook video leaked to the Project Veritas investigative team in which he said of the 'Covid vaccines': '... I share some caution on this because we just don't know the long term side-effects of basically modifying people's DNA and RNA.' At the same time this disgusting man's Facebook was censoring and banning anyone saying exactly the same. He must go before a Nuremberg trial for crimes against humanity when he *knows* that he

is censoring legitimate concerns and denying the right of informed consent on behalf of the Cult that owns him. People have been killed and damaged by the very ‘vaccination’ technique he cast doubt on himself when they may not have had the ‘vaccine’ with access to information that he denied them. The plan is to have at least annual ‘Covid vaccinations’, add others to deal with invented ‘variants’, and change all other vaccines into the mRNA system. Pfizer executives told shareholders at a virtual Barclays Global Healthcare Conference in March, 2021, that the public may need a third dose of ‘Covid vaccine’, plus regular yearly boosters and the company planned to hike prices to milk the profits in a ‘significant opportunity for our vaccine’. These are the professional liars, cheats and opportunists who are telling you their ‘vaccine’ is safe. Given this volume of mRNA planned to be infused into the human body and its ability to then replicate we will have a transformation of human genetics from biological to synthetic biological – exactly the long-time Cult plan for reasons we’ll see – and many will die. Sherri Tenpenny said of this replication:

It’s like having an on-button but no off-button and that whole mechanism ... they actually give it a name and they call it the Trojan horse mechanism, because it allows that [synthetic] virus and that piece of that [synthetic] virus to get inside of your cells, start to replicate and even get inserted into other parts of your DNA as a Trojan-horse.

Ask the overwhelming majority of people who have the ‘vaccine’ what they know about the contents and what they do and they would reply: ‘The government says it will stop me getting the virus.’ Governments give that false impression on purpose to increase take-up. You can read Sherri Tenpenny’s detailed analysis of the health consequences in her blog at Vaxxter.com, but in summary these are some of them. She highlights the statement by Bill Gates about how human beings can become their own ‘vaccine manufacturing machine’. The man is insane. [‘Vaccine’-generated] ‘antibodies’ carry synthetic messenger RNA into the cells and the damage starts, Tenpenny contends, and she says that lungs can be adversely affected through varying degrees of pus and bleeding which

obviously affects breathing and would be dubbed ‘Covid-19’. Even more sinister was the impact of ‘antibodies’ on macrophages, a white blood cell of the immune system. They consist of Type 1 and Type 2 which have very different functions. She said Type 1 are ‘hyper-vigilant’ white blood cells which ‘gobble up’ bacteria etc. However, in doing so, this could cause inflammation and in extreme circumstances be fatal. She says these affects are mitigated by Type 2 macrophages which kick in to calm down the system and stop it going rogue. They clear up dead tissue debris and reduce inflammation that the Type 1 ‘fire crews’ have caused. Type 1 kills the infection and Type 2 heals the damage, she says. This is her punchline with regard to ‘Covid vaccinations’: She says that mRNA ‘antibodies’ block Type 2 macrophages by attaching to them and deactivating them. This meant that when the Type 1 response was triggered by infection there was nothing to stop that getting out of hand by calming everything down. There’s an on-switch, but no off-switch, she says. What follows can be ‘over and out, see you when I see you’.

Genetic suicide

Tenpenny also highlights the potential for autoimmune disease – the body attacking itself – which has been associated with vaccines since they first appeared. Infusing a synthetic foreign substance into cells could cause the immune system to react in a panic believing that the body is being overwhelmed by an invader (it is) and the consequences can again be fatal. There is an autoimmune response known as a ‘cytokine storm’ which I have likened to a homeowner panicked by an intruder and picking up a gun to shoot randomly in all directions before turning the fire on himself. The immune system unleashes a storm of inflammatory response called cytokines to a threat and the body commits hara-kiri. The lesson is that you mess with the body’s immune response at your peril and these ‘vaccines’ seriously – fundamentally – mess with immune response. Tenpenny refers to a consequence called anaphylactic shock which is a severe and highly dangerous allergic reaction when the immune system

floods the body with chemicals. She gives the example of having a bee sting which primes the immune system and makes it sensitive to those chemicals. When people are stung again maybe years later the immune response can be so powerful that it leads to anaphylactic shock. Tenpenny relates this 'shock' with regard to the 'Covid vaccine' to something called polyethylene glycol or PEG. Enormous numbers of people have become sensitive to this over decades of use in a whole range of products and processes including food, drink, skin creams and 'medicine'. Studies have claimed that some 72 percent of people have antibodies triggered by PEG compared with two percent in the 1960s and allergic hypersensitive reactions to this become a gathering cause for concern. Tenpenny points out that the 'mRNA vaccine' is coated in a 'bubble' of polyethylene glycol which has the potential to cause anaphylactic shock through immune sensitivity. Many reports have appeared of people reacting this way after having the 'Covid vaccine'. What do we think is going to happen as humanity has more and more of these 'vaccines'?

Tenpenny said: 'All these pictures we have seen with people with these rashes ... these weepy rashes, big reactions on their arms and things like that – it's an acute allergic reaction most likely to the polyethylene glycol that you've been previously primed and sensitised to.'

Those who have not studied the conspiracy and its perpetrators at length might think that making the population sensitive to PEG and then putting it in these 'vaccines' is just a coincidence. It is not. It is instead testament to how carefully and coldly-planned current events have been and the scale of the conspiracy we are dealing with. Tenpenny further explains that the 'vaccine' mRNA procedure can breach the blood-brain barrier which protects the brain from toxins and other crap that will cause malfunction. In this case they could make two proteins corrupt brain function to cause Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), a progressive nervous system disease leading to loss of muscle control, and frontal lobe degeneration – Alzheimer's and dementia. Immunologist J. Bart Classon published a paper connecting mRNA 'vaccines' to prion

disease which can lead to Alzheimer's and other forms of neurodegenerative disease while others have pointed out the potential to affect the placenta in ways that make women infertile. This will become highly significant in the next chapter when I will discuss other aspects of this non-vaccine that relate to its nanotechnology and transmission from the injected to the uninjected.

Qualified in idiocy

Tenpenny describes how research has confirmed that these 'vaccine'-generated antibodies can interact with a range of other tissues in the body and attack many other organs including the lungs. 'This means that if you have a hundred people standing in front of you that all got this shot they could have a hundred different symptoms.'

Anyone really think that Cult gofers like the Queen, Tony Blair, Christopher Whitty, Anthony Fauci, and all the other psychopaths have really had this 'vaccine' in the pictures we've seen? Not a bloody chance. Why don't doctors all tell us about all these dangers and consequences of the 'Covid vaccine'? Why instead do they encourage and pressure patients to have the shot? Don't let's think for a moment that doctors and medical staff can't be stupid, lazy, and psychopathic and that's without the financial incentives to give the jab. Tenpenny again:

Some people are going to die from the vaccine directly but a large number of people are going to start to get horribly sick and get all kinds of autoimmune diseases 42 days to maybe a year out. What are they going to do, these stupid doctors who say; 'Good for you for getting that vaccine.' What are they going to say; 'Oh, it must be a mutant, we need to give an extra dose of that vaccine.'

Because now the vaccine, instead of one dose or two doses we need three or four because the stupid physicians aren't taking the time to learn anything about it. If I can learn this sitting in my living room reading a 19 page paper and several others so can they. There's nothing special about me, I just take the time to do it.

Remember how Sara Kayat, the NHS and TV doctor, said that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Doctors can be idiots like every other profession and they

should not be worshipped as infallible. They are not and far from it. Behind many medical and scientific ‘experts’ lies an uninformed prat trying to hide themselves from you although in the ‘Covid’ era many have failed to do so as with UK narrative-repeating ‘TV doctor’ Hilary Jones. Pushing back against the minority of proper doctors and scientists speaking out against the ‘vaccine’ has been the entire edifice of the Cult global state in the form of governments, medical systems, corporations, mainstream media, Silicon Valley, and an army of compliant doctors, medical staff and scientists willing to say anything for money and to enhance their careers by promoting the party line. If you do that you are an ‘expert’ and if you won’t you are an ‘anti-vaxxer’ and ‘Covidiot’. The pressure to be ‘vaccinated’ is incessant. We have even had reports claiming that the ‘vaccine’ can help cure cancer and Alzheimer’s and make the lame walk. I am waiting for the announcement that it can bring you coffee in the morning and cook your tea. Just as the symptoms of ‘Covid’ seem to increase by the week so have the miracles of the ‘vaccine’. American supermarket giant Kroger Co. offered nearly 500,000 employees in 35 states a \$100 bonus for having the ‘vaccine’ while donut chain Krispy Kreme promised ‘vaccinated’ customers a free glazed donut every day for the rest of 2021. Have your DNA changed and you will get a doughnut although we might not have to give you them for long. Such offers and incentives confirm the desperation.

Perhaps the worse vaccine-stunt of them all was UK ‘Health’ Secretary Matt-the-prat Hancock on live TV after watching a clip of someone being ‘vaccinated’ when the roll-out began. Hancock faked tears so badly it was embarrassing. Brain-of-Britain Piers Morgan, the lockdown-supporting, ‘vaccine’ supporting, ‘vaccine’ passport-supporting, TV host played along with Hancock – ‘You’re quite emotional about that’ he said in response to acting so atrocious it would have been called out at a school nativity which will presumably today include Mary and Jesus in masks, wise men keeping their camels six feet apart, and shepherds under tent arrest. System-serving Morgan tweeted this: ‘Love the idea of covid vaccine passports for everywhere: flights, restaurants, clubs, football, gyms,

shops etc. It's time covid-denying, anti-vaxxer loonies had their bullsh*t bluff called & bar themselves from going anywhere that responsible citizens go.' If only I could aspire to his genius. To think that Morgan, who specialises in shouting over anyone he disagrees with, was lauded as a free speech hero when he lost his job after storming off the set of his live show like a child throwing his dolly out of the pram. If he is a free speech hero we are in real trouble. I have no idea what 'bullsh*t' means, by the way, the * throws me completely.

The Cult is desperate to infuse its synthetic DNA-changing concoction into everyone and has been using every lie, trick and intimidation to do so. The question of '*Why?*' we shall now address.

CHAPTER TEN

Human 2.0

I believe that at the end of the century the use of words and general educated opinion will have altered so much that one will be able to speak of machines thinking without expecting to be contradicted –

Alan Turing (1912-1954), the ‘Father of artificial intelligence’

I have been exposing for decades the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic-biological state. The new human that I will call Human 2.0 is planned to be connected to artificial intelligence and a global AI ‘Smart Grid’ that would operate as one global system in which AI would control everything from your fridge to your heating system to your car to your mind. Humans would no longer be ‘human’, but post-human and sub-human, with their thinking and emotional processes replaced by AI.

What I said sounded crazy and beyond science fiction and I could understand that. To any balanced, rational, mind it *is* crazy. Today, however, that world is becoming reality and it puts the ‘Covid vaccine’ into its true context. Ray Kurzweil is the ultra-Zionist ‘computer scientist, inventor and futurist’ and co-founder of the Singularity University. Singularity refers to the merging of humans with machines or ‘transhumanism’. Kurzweil has said humanity would be connected to the cyber ‘cloud’ in the period of the ever-recurring year of 2030:

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and ‘think in the cloud’ ... We’re going to put gateways to the

cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations. As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

They are trying to sell this end-of-humanity-as-we-know-it as the next stage of 'evolution' when we become super-human and 'like the gods'. They are lying to you. Shocked, eh? The population, and again especially the young, have been manipulated into addiction to technologies designed to enslave them for life. First they induced an addiction to smartphones (holdables); next they moved to technology on the body (wearables); and then began the invasion of the body (implantables). I warned way back about the plan for microchipped people and we are now entering that era. We should not be diverted into thinking that this refers only to chips we can see. Most important are the nanochips known as smart dust, neural dust and nanobots which are far too small to be seen by the human eye. Nanotechnology is everywhere, increasingly in food products, and released into the atmosphere by the geoengineering of the skies funded by Bill Gates to 'shut out the Sun' and 'save the planet from global warming'. Gates has been funding a project to spray millions of tonnes of chalk (calcium carbonate) into the stratosphere over Sweden to 'dim the Sun' and cool the Earth. Scientists warned the move could be disastrous for weather systems in ways no one can predict and opposition led to the Swedish space agency announcing that the 'experiment' would not be happening as planned in the summer of 2021; but it shows where the Cult is going with dimming the impact of the Sun and there's an associated plan to change the planet's atmosphere. Who gives psychopath Gates the right to dictate to the entire human race and dismantle planetary systems? The world will not be safe while this man is at large.

The global warming hoax has made the Sun, like the gas of life, something to fear when both are essential to good health and human survival (more inversion). The body transforms sunlight into vital vitamin D through a process involving ... *cholesterol*. This is the cholesterol we are also told to fear. We are urged to take Big Pharma

statin drugs to reduce cholesterol and it's all systematic. Reducing cholesterol means reducing vitamin D uptake with all the multiple health problems that will cause. At least if you take statins long term it saves the government from having to pay you a pension. The delivery system to block sunlight is widely referred to as chemtrails although these have a much deeper agenda, too. They appear at first to be contrails or condensation trails streaming from aircraft into cold air at high altitudes. Contrails disperse very quickly while chemtrails do not and spread out across the sky before eventually their content falls to earth. Many times I have watched aircraft cross-cross a clear blue sky releasing chemtrails until it looks like a cloudy day. Chemtrails contain many things harmful to humans and the natural world including toxic heavy metals, aluminium (see Alzheimer's) and nanotechnology. Ray Kurzweil reveals the reason without actually saying so: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' How do you deliver that? *From the sky.* Self-replicating nanobots would connect everything to the Smart Grid. The phenomenon of Morgellons disease began in the chemtrail era and the correlation has led to it being dubbed the 'chemtrail disease'. Self-replicating fibres appear in the body that can be pulled out through the skin. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. I cover this at greater length in *Phantom Self*.

'Vaccine' operating system

'Covid vaccines' with their self-replicating synthetic material are also designed to make the connection between humanity and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. American doctor and dedicated campaigner for truth, Carrie Madej, an Internal Medicine Specialist in Georgia with more than 20 years medical experience, has highlighted the nanotechnology aspect of the fake 'vaccines'. She explains how one of the components in at least the Moderna and Pfizer synthetic potions are 'lipid nanoparticles' which are 'like little tiny computer bits' – a 'sci-fi substance' known as nanobots and hydrogel which can be 'triggered

at any moment to deliver its payload' and act as 'biosensors'. The synthetic substance had 'the ability to accumulate data from your body like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts and emotions, all kind of things' and each syringe could carry a *million* nanobots:

This substance because it's like little bits of computers in your body, crazy, but it's true, it can do that, [and] obviously has the ability to act through Wi-Fi. It can receive and transmit energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. That issue has never been addressed by these companies. What does that do to the human?

Just imagine getting this substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones, what is happening with that? What if something is triggering it, too, like an impulse, a frequency? We have something completely foreign in the human body.

Madej said her research revealed that electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies emitted by phones and other devices had increased dramatically in the same period of the 'vaccine' rollout and she was seeing more people with radiation problems as 5G and other electromagnetic technology was expanded and introduced to schools and hospitals. She said she was 'floored with the EMF coming off' the devices she checked. All this makes total sense and syncs with my own work of decades when you think that Moderna refers in documents to its mRNA 'vaccine' as an 'operating system':

Recognizing the broad potential of mRNA science, we set out to create an mRNA technology platform that functions very much like an operating system on a computer. It is designed so that it can plug and play interchangeably with different programs. In our case, the 'program' or 'app' is our mRNA drug – the unique mRNA sequence that codes for a protein ...

... Our mRNA Medicines – 'The Software Of Life': When we have a concept for a new mRNA medicine and begin research, fundamental components are already in place. Generally, the only thing that changes from one potential mRNA medicine to another is the coding region – the actual genetic code that instructs ribosomes to make protein. Utilizing these instruction sets gives our investigational mRNA medicines a software-like quality. We also have the ability to combine different mRNA sequences encoding for different proteins in a single mRNA investigational medicine.

Who needs a real ‘virus’ when you can create a computer version to justify infusing your operating system into the entire human race on the road to making living, breathing people into cyborgs? What is missed with the ‘vaccines’ is the *digital* connection between synthetic material and the body that I highlighted earlier with the study that hacked a computer with human DNA. On one level the body is digital, based on mathematical codes, and I’ll have more about that in the next chapter. Those who ridiculously claim that mRNA ‘vaccines’ are not designed to change human genetics should explain the words of Dr Tal Zaks, chief medical officer at Moderna, in a 2017 TED talk. He said that over the last 30 years ‘we’ve been living this phenomenal digital scientific revolution, and I’m here today to tell you, that we are actually *hacking the software of life*, and that it’s changing the way we think about prevention and treatment of disease’:

In every cell there’s this thing called messenger RNA, or mRNA for short, that transmits the critical information from the DNA in our genes to the protein, which is really the stuff we’re all made out of. This is the critical information that determines what the cell will do. So we think about it as an operating system. So if you could change that, if you could introduce a line of code, or change a line of code, it turns out, that has profound implications for everything, from the flu to cancer.

Zaks should more accurately have said that this has profound implications for the human genetic code and the nature of DNA. Communications within the body go both ways and not only one. But, hey, no, the ‘Covid vaccine’ will not affect your genetics. Cult fact-checkers say so even though the man who helped to develop the mRNA technique says that it does. Zaks said in 2017:

If you think about what it is we’re trying to do. We’ve taken information and our understanding of that information and how that information is transmitted in a cell, and we’ve taken our understanding of medicine and how to make drugs, and we’re fusing the two. We think of it as information therapy.

I have been writing for decades that the body is an information field communicating with itself and the wider world. This is why

radiation which is information can change the information field of body and mind through phenomena like 5G and change their nature and function. ‘Information therapy’ means to change the body’s information field and change the way it operates. DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and can be mutated by information like mRNA synthetic messaging. Technology to do this has been ready and waiting in the underground bases and other secret projects to be rolled out when the ‘Covid’ hoax was played. ‘Trials’ of such short and irrelevant duration were only for public consumption. When they say the ‘vaccine’ is ‘experimental’ that is not true. It may appear to be ‘experimental’ to those who don’t know what’s going on, but the trials have already been done to ensure the Cult gets the result it desires. Zaks said that it took decades to sequence the human genome, completed in 2003, but now they could do it in a week. By ‘they’ he means scientists operating in the public domain. In the secret projects they were sequencing the genome in a week long before even 2003.

Deluge of mRNA

Highly significantly the Moderna document says the guiding premise is that if using mRNA as a medicine works for one disease then it should work for many diseases. They were leveraging the flexibility afforded by their platform and the fundamental role mRNA plays in protein synthesis to pursue mRNA medicines for a broad spectrum of diseases. Moderna is confirming what I was saying through 2020 that multiple ‘vaccines’ were planned for ‘Covid’ (and later invented ‘variants’) and that previous vaccines would be converted to the mRNA system to infuse the body with massive amounts of genetically-manipulating synthetic material to secure a transformation to a synthetic-biological state. The ‘vaccines’ are designed to kill stunning numbers as part of the long-exposed Cult depopulation agenda and transform the rest. Given this is the goal you can appreciate why there is such hysterical demand for every human to be ‘vaccinated’ for an alleged ‘disease’ that has an estimated ‘infection’ to ‘death’ ratio of 0.23-0.15 percent. As I write

children are being given the ‘vaccine’ in trials (their parents are a disgrace) and ever-younger people are being offered the vaccine for a ‘virus’ that even if you believe it exists has virtually zero chance of harming them. Horrific effects of the ‘trials’ on a 12-year-old girl were revealed by a family member to be serious brain and gastric problems that included a bowel obstruction and the inability to swallow liquids or solids. She was unable to eat or drink without throwing up, had extreme pain in her back, neck and abdomen, and was paralysed from the waist down which stopped her urinating unaided. When the girl was first taken to hospital doctors said it was all in her mind. She was signed up for the ‘trial’ by her parents for whom no words suffice. None of this ‘Covid vaccine’ insanity makes any sense unless you see what the ‘vaccine’ really is – a body-changer. Synthetic biology or ‘SynBio’ is a fast-emerging and expanding scientific discipline which includes everything from genetic and molecular engineering to electrical and computer engineering. Synthetic biology is defined in these ways:

- A multidisciplinary area of research that seeks to create new biological parts, devices, and systems, or to redesign systems that are already found in nature.
- The use of a mixture of physical engineering and genetic engineering to create new (and therefore synthetic) life forms.
- An emerging field of research that aims to combine the knowledge and methods of biology, engineering and related disciplines in the design of chemically-synthesized DNA to create organisms with novel or enhanced characteristics and traits (synthetic organisms including humans).

We now have synthetic blood, skin, organs and limbs being developed along with synthetic body parts produced by 3D printers. These are all elements of the synthetic human programme and this comment by Kurzweil’s co-founder of the Singularity University,

Peter Diamandis, can be seen in a whole new light with the 'Covid' hoax and the sanctions against those that refuse the 'vaccine':

Anybody who is going to be resisting the progress forward [to transhumanism] is going to be resisting evolution and, fundamentally, they will die out. It's not a matter of whether it's good or bad. It's going to happen.

'Resisting evolution'? What absolute bollocks. The arrogance of these people is without limit. His 'it's going to happen' mantra is another way of saying 'resistance is futile' to break the spirit of those pushing back and we must not fall for it. Getting this genetically-transforming 'vaccine' into everyone is crucial to the Cult plan for total control and the desperation to achieve that is clear for anyone to see. Vaccine passports are a major factor in this and they, too, are a form of resistance is futile. It's NOT. The paper funded by the Rockefeller Foundation for the 2013 'health conference' in China said:

We will interact more with artificial intelligence. The use of robotics, bio-engineering to augment human functioning is already well underway and will advance. Re-engineering of humans into potentially separate and unequal forms through genetic engineering or mixed human-robots raises debates on ethics and equality.

A new demography is projected to emerge after 2030 [that year again] of technologies (robotics, genetic engineering, nanotechnology) producing robots, engineered organisms, 'nanobots' and artificial intelligence (AI) that can self-replicate. Debates will grow on the implications of an impending reality of human designed life.

What is happening today is so long planned. The world army enforcing the will of the world government is intended to be a robot army, not a human one. Today's military and its technologically 'enhanced' troops, pilotless planes and driverless vehicles are just stepping stones to that end. Human soldiers are used as Cult fodder and its time they woke up to that and worked for the freedom of the population instead of their own destruction and their family's destruction – the same with the police. Join us and let's sort this out. The phenomenon of enforce my own destruction is widespread in the 'Covid' era with Woker 'luvvies' in the acting and entertainment

industries supporting ‘Covid’ rules which have destroyed their profession and the same with those among the public who put signs on the doors of their businesses ‘closed due to Covid – stay safe’ when many will never reopen. It’s a form of masochism and most certainly insanity.

Transgender = transhumanism

When something explodes out of nowhere and is suddenly everywhere it is always the Cult agenda and so it is with the tidal wave of claims and demands that have infiltrated every aspect of society under the heading of ‘transgenderism’. The term ‘trans’ is so ‘in’ and this is the dictionary definition:

A prefix meaning ‘across’, ‘through’, occurring ... in loanwords from Latin, used in particular for denoting movement or conveyance from place to place (transfer; transmit; transplant) or complete change (transform; transmute), or to form adjectives meaning ‘crossing’, ‘on the other side of’, or ‘going beyond’ the place named (transmontane; transnational; trans-Siberian).

Transgender means to go beyond gender and transhuman means to go beyond human. Both are aspects of the Cult plan to transform the human body to a synthetic state with *no gender*. Human 2.0 is not designed to procreate and would be produced technologically with no need for parents. The new human would mean the end of parents and so men, and increasingly women, are being targeted for the deletion of their rights and status. Parental rights are disappearing at an ever-quickening speed for the same reason. The new human would have no need for men or women when there is no procreation and no gender. Perhaps the transgender movement that appears to be in a permanent state of frenzy might now contemplate on how it is being used. This was never about transgender rights which are only the interim excuse for confusing gender, particularly in the young, on the road to *fusing* gender. Transgender activism is not an end; it is a *means* to an end. We see again the technique of creative destruction in which you destroy the status quo to ‘build back better’ in the form that you want. The gender status quo had to be

destroyed by persuading the Cult-created Woke mentality to believe that you can have 100 genders or more. A programme for 9 to 12 year olds produced by the Cult-owned BBC promoted the 100 genders narrative. The very idea may be the most monumental nonsense, but it is not what is true that counts, only what you can make people *believe* is true. Once the gender of $2 + 2 = 4$ has been dismantled through indoctrination, intimidation and $2 + 2 = 5$ then the new no-gender normal can take its place with Human 2.0.

Aldous Huxley revealed the plan in his prophetic *Brave New World* in 1932:

Natural reproduction has been done away with and children are created, 'decanted', and raised in 'hatcheries and conditioning centres'. From birth, people are genetically designed to fit into one of five castes, which are further split into 'Plus' and 'Minus' members and designed to fulfil predetermined positions within the social and economic strata of the World State.

How could Huxley know this in 1932? For the same reason George Orwell knew about the Big Brother state in 1948, Cult insiders I have quoted knew about it in 1969, and I have known about it since the early 1990s. If you are connected to the Cult or you work your balls off to uncover the plan you can predict the future. The process is simple. If there is a plan for the world and nothing intervenes to stop it then it will happen. Thus if you communicate the plan ahead of time you are perceived to have predicted the future, but you haven't. You have revealed the plan which without intervention will become the human future. The whole reason I have done what I have is to alert enough people to inspire an intervention and maybe at last that time has come with the Cult and its intentions now so obvious to anyone with a brain in working order.

The future is here

Technological wombs that Huxley described to replace parent procreation are already being developed and they are only the projects we know about in the public arena. Israeli scientists told *The Times of Israel* in March, 2021, that they have grown 250-cell embryos

into mouse foetuses with fully formed organs using artificial wombs in a development they say could pave the way for gestating humans outside the womb. Professor Jacob Hanna of the Weizmann Institute of Science said:

We took mouse embryos from the mother at day five of development, when they are just of 250 cells, and had them in the incubator from day five until day 11, by which point they had grown all their organs.

By day 11 they make their own blood and have a beating heart, a fully developed brain. Anybody would look at them and say, 'this is clearly a mouse foetus with all the characteristics of a mouse.' It's gone from being a ball of cells to being an advanced foetus.

A special liquid is used to nourish embryo cells in a laboratory dish and they float on the liquid to duplicate the first stage of embryonic development. The incubator creates all the right conditions for its development, Hanna said. The liquid gives the embryo 'all the nutrients, hormones and sugars they need' along with a custom-made electronic incubator which controls gas concentration, pressure and temperature. The cutting-edge in the underground bases and other secret locations will be light years ahead of that, however, and this was reported by the London *Guardian* in 2017:

We are approaching a biotechnological breakthrough. Ectogenesis, the invention of a complete external womb, could completely change the nature of human reproduction. In April this year, researchers at the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia announced their development of an artificial womb.

The article was headed 'Artificial wombs could soon be a reality. What will this mean for women?' What would it mean for children is an even bigger question. No mother to bond with only a machine in preparation for a life of soulless interaction and control in a world governed by machines (see the *Matrix* movies). Now observe the calculated manipulations of the 'Covid' hoax as human interaction and warmth has been curtailed by distancing, isolation and fear with people communicating via machines on a scale never seen before.

These are all dots in the same picture as are all the personal assistants, gadgets and children's toys through which kids and adults communicate with AI as if it is human. The AI 'voice' on Sat-Nav should be included. All these things are psychological preparation for the Cult endgame. Before you can make a physical connection with AI you have to make a psychological connection and that is what people are being conditioned to do with this ever gathering human-AI interaction. Movies and TV programmes depicting the transhuman, robot dystopia relate to a phenomenon known as 'pre-emptive programming' in which the world that is planned is portrayed everywhere in movies, TV and advertising. This is conditioning the conscious and subconscious mind to become familiar with the planned reality to dilute resistance when it happens for real. What would have been a shock such is the change is made less so. We have young children put on the road to transgender transition surgery with puberty blocking drugs at an age when they could never be able to make those life-changing decisions.

Rachel Levine, a professor of paediatrics and psychiatry who believes in treating children this way, became America's highest-ranked openly-transgender official when she was confirmed as US Assistant Secretary at the Department of Health and Human Services after being nominated by Joe Biden (the Cult). Activists and governments press for laws to deny parents a say in their children's transition process so the kids can be isolated and manipulated into agreeing to irreversible medical procedures. A Canadian father Robert Hoogland was denied bail by the Vancouver Supreme Court in 2021 and remained in jail for breaching a court order that he stay silent over his young teenage daughter, a minor, who was being offered life-changing hormone therapy without parental consent. At the age of 12 the girl's 'school counsellor' said she may be transgender, referred her to a doctor and told the school to treat her like a boy. This is another example of state-serving schools imposing ever more control over children's lives while parents have ever less.

Contemptible and extreme child abuse is happening all over the world as the Cult gender-fusion operation goes into warp-speed.

Why the war on men – and now women?

The question about what artificial wombs mean for women should rightly be asked. The answer can be seen in the deletion of women's rights involving sport, changing rooms, toilets and status in favour of people in male bodies claiming to identify as women. I can identify as a mountain climber, but it doesn't mean I can climb a mountain any more than a biological man can be a biological woman. To believe so is a triumph of belief over factual reality which is the very perceptual basis of everything Woke. Women's sport is being destroyed by allowing those with male bodies who say they identify as female to 'compete' with girls and women. Male body 'women' dominate 'women's' competition with their greater muscle mass, bone density, strength and speed. With that disadvantage sport for women loses all meaning. To put this in perspective nearly 300 American high school boys can run faster than the quickest woman sprinter in the world. Women are seeing their previously protected spaces invaded by male bodies simply because they claim to identify as women. That's all they need to do to access all women's spaces and activities under the Biden 'Equality Act' that destroys equality for women with the usual Orwellian Woke inversion. Male sex offenders have already committed rapes in women's prisons after claiming to identify as women to get them transferred. Does this not matter to the Woke 'equality' hypocrites? Not in the least. What matters to Cult manipulators and funders behind transgender activists is to advance gender fusion on the way to the no-gender 'human'. When you are seeking to impose transparent nonsense like this, or the 'Covid' hoax, the only way the nonsense can prevail is through censorship and intimidation of dissenters, deletion of factual information, and programming of the unquestioning, bewildered and naive. You don't have to scan the world for long to see that all these things are happening.

Many women's rights organisations have realised that rights and status which took such a long time to secure are being eroded and that it is systematic. Kara Dansky of the global Women's Human Rights Campaign said that Biden's transgender executive order immediately he took office, subsequent orders, and Equality Act legislation that followed 'seek to erase women and girls in the law as a category'. *Exactly.* I said during the long ago-started war on men (in which many women play a crucial part) that this was going to turn into a war on them. The Cult is phasing out *both* male and female genders. To get away with that they are brought into conflict so they are busy fighting each other while the Cult completes the job with no unity of response. Unity, people, *unity*. We need unity everywhere. Transgender is the only show in town as the big step towards the no-gender human. It's not about rights for transgender people and never has been. Woke political correctness is deleting words relating to genders to the same end. Wokers believe this is to be 'inclusive' when the opposite is true. They are deleting words describing gender because gender *itself* is being deleted by Human 2.0. Terms like 'man', 'woman', 'mother' and 'father' are being deleted in the universities and other institutions to be replaced by the *no*-gender, not trans-gender, 'individuals' and 'guardians'. Women's rights campaigner Maria Keffler of Partners for Ethical Care said: 'Children are being taught from kindergarten upward that some boys have a vagina, some girls have a penis, and that kids can be any gender they want to be.' Do we really believe that suddenly countries all over the world at the same time had the idea of having drag queens go into schools or read transgender stories to very young children in the local library? It's coldly-calculated confusion of gender on the way to the fusion of gender. Suzanne Vierling, a psychologist from Southern California, made another important point:

Yesterday's slave woman who endured gynecological medical experiments is today's girl-child being butchered in a booming gender-transitioning sector. Ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause and osteoporosis, uncharted territory, and parents' rights and authority decimated.

The erosion of parental rights is a common theme in line with the Cult plans to erase the very concept of parents and ‘ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause’ means what? Those born female lose the ability to have children – another way to discontinue humanity as we know it.

Eliminating Human 1.0 (before our very eyes)

To pave the way for Human 2.0 you must phase out Human 1.0. This is happening through plummeting sperm counts and making women infertile through an onslaught of chemicals, radiation (including smartphones in pockets of men) and mRNA ‘vaccines’. Common agriculture pesticides are also having a devastating impact on human fertility. I have been tracking collapsing sperm counts in the books for a long time and in 2021 came a book by fertility scientist and reproductive epidemiologist Shanna Swan, *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race*. She reports how the global fertility rate dropped by half between 1960 and 2016 with America’s birth rate 16 percent below where it needs to be to sustain the population. Women are experiencing declining egg quality, more miscarriages, and more couples suffer from infertility. Other findings were an increase in erectile dysfunction, infant boys developing more genital abnormalities, male problems with conception, and plunging levels of the male hormone testosterone which would explain why so many men have lost their backbone and masculinity. This has been very evident during the ‘Covid’ hoax when women have been prominent among the Pushbackers and big strapping blokes have bowed their heads, covered their faces with a nappy and quietly submitted. Mind control expert Cathy O’Brien also points to how global education introduced the concept of ‘we’re all winners’ in sport and classrooms: ‘Competition was defused, and it in turn defused a sense of fighting back.’ This is another version of the ‘equity’ doctrine in which you drive down rather than raise up. What a contrast in Cult-controlled China with its global ambitions

where the government published plans in January, 2021, to 'cultivate masculinity' in boys from kindergarten through to high school in the face of a 'masculinity crisis'. A government adviser said boys would be soon become 'delicate, timid and effeminate' unless action was taken. Don't expect any similar policy in the targeted West. A 2006 study showed that a 65-year-old man in 2002 had testosterone levels 15 percent lower than a 65-year-old man in 1987 while a 2020 study found a similar story with young adults and adolescents. Men are getting prescriptions for testosterone replacement therapy which causes an even greater drop in sperm count with up to 99 percent seeing sperm counts drop to zero during the treatment. More sperm is defective and malfunctioning with some having two heads or not pursuing an egg.

A class of *synthetic* chemicals known as phthalates are being blamed for the decline. These are found everywhere in plastics, shampoos, cosmetics, furniture, flame retardants, personal care products, pesticides, canned foods and even receipts. Why till receipts? Everyone touches them. Let no one delude themselves that all this is not systematic to advance the long-time agenda for human body transformation. Phthalates mimic hormones and disrupt the hormone balance causing testosterone to fall and genital birth defects in male infants. Animals and fish have been affected in the same way due to phthalates and other toxins in rivers. When fish turn gay or change sex through chemicals in rivers and streams it is a pointer to why there has been such an increase in gay people and the sexually confused. It doesn't matter to me what sexuality people choose to be, but if it's being affected by chemical pollution and consumption then we need to know. Does anyone really think that this is not connected to the transgender agenda, the war on men and the condemnation of male 'toxic masculinity'? You watch this being followed by 'toxic femininity'. It's already happening. When breastfeeding becomes 'chest-feeding', pregnant women become pregnant people along with all the other Woke claptrap you know that the world is going insane and there's a Cult scam in progress. Transgender activists are promoting the Cult agenda while Cult

billionaires support and fund the insanity as they laugh themselves to sleep at the sheer stupidity for which humans must be infamous in galaxies far, far away.

'Covid vaccines' and female infertility

We can now see why the 'vaccine' has been connected to potential infertility in women. Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Advisor at Pfizer, and Dr Wolfgang Wodarg in Germany, filed a petition with the European Medicines Agency in December, 2020, urging them to stop trials for the Pfizer/BioNTech shot and all other mRNA trials until further studies had been done. They were particularly concerned about possible effects on fertility with 'vaccine'-produced antibodies attacking the protein Syncytin-1 which is responsible for developing the placenta. The result would be infertility 'of indefinite duration' in women who have the 'vaccine' with the placenta failing to form. Section 10.4.2 of the Pfizer/BioNTech trial protocol says that pregnant women or those who might become so should not have mRNA shots. Section 10.4 warns men taking mRNA shots to 'be abstinent from heterosexual intercourse' and not to donate sperm. The UK government said that it *did not know* if the mRNA procedure had an effect on fertility. *Did not know?* These people have to go to jail. UK government advice did not recommend at the start that pregnant women had the shot and said they should avoid pregnancy for at least two months after 'vaccination'. The 'advice' was later updated to pregnant women should only have the 'vaccine' if the benefits outweighed the risks to mother and foetus. What the hell is that supposed to mean? Then 'spontaneous abortions' began to appear and rapidly increase on the adverse reaction reporting schemes which include only a fraction of adverse reactions. Thousands and ever-growing numbers of 'vaccinated' women are describing changes to their menstrual cycle with heavier blood flow, irregular periods and menstruating again after going through the menopause – all links to reproduction effects. Women are passing blood clots and the lining of their uterus while men report erectile dysfunction and blood effects. Most

significantly of all *unvaccinated* women began to report similar menstrual changes after interaction with '*vaccinated*' people and men and children were also affected with bleeding noses, blood clots and other conditions. 'Shedding' is when vaccinated people can emit the content of a vaccine to affect the unvaccinated, but this is different. '*Vaccinated*' people were not shedding a 'live virus' allegedly in '*vaccines*' as before because the fake '*Covid vaccines*' involve synthetic material and other toxicity. Doctors exposing what is happening prefer the term '*transmission*' to shedding. Somehow those that have had the shots are transmitting effects to those that haven't. Dr Carrie Madej said the nano-content of the '*vaccines*' can 'act like an antenna' to others around them which fits perfectly with my own conclusions. This '*vaccine*' transmission phenomenon was becoming known as the book went into production and I deal with this further in the Postscript.

Vaccine effects on sterility are well known. The World Health Organization was accused in 2014 of sterilising millions of women in Kenya with the evidence confirmed by the content of the vaccines involved. The same WHO behind the '*Covid*' hoax admitted its involvement for more than ten years with the vaccine programme. Other countries made similar claims. Charges were lodged by Tanzania, Nicaragua, Mexico, and the Philippines. The Gardasil vaccine claimed to protect against a genital 'virus' known as HPV has also been linked to infertility. Big Pharma and the WHO (same thing) are criminal and satanic entities. Then there's the Bill Gates Foundation which is connected through funding and shared interests with 20 pharmaceutical giants and laboratories. He stands accused of directing the policy of United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), vaccine alliance GAVI, and other groupings, to advance the vaccine agenda and silence opposition at great cost to women and children. At the same time Gates wants to reduce the global population. Coincidence?

Great Reset = Smart Grid = new human

The Cult agenda I have been exposing for 30 years is now being openly promoted by Cult assets like Gates and Klaus Schwab of the World Economic Forum under code-terms like the 'Great Reset', 'Build Back Better' and 'a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world'. What provided this 'rare but narrow window of opportunity'? The 'Covid' hoax did. Who created that? *They* did. My books from not that long ago warned about the planned 'Internet of Things' (IoT) and its implications for human freedom. This was the plan to connect all technology to the Internet and artificial intelligence and today we are way down that road with an estimated 36 billion devices connected to the World Wide Web and that figure is projected to be 76 billion by 2025. I further warned that the Cult planned to go beyond that to the Internet of *Everything* when the human brain was connected via AI to the Internet and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. Now we have Cult operatives like Schwab calling for precisely that under the term 'Internet of Bodies', a fusion of the physical, digital and biological into one centrally-controlled Smart Grid system which the Cult refers to as the 'Fourth Industrial Revolution'. They talk about the 'biological', but they really mean the synthetic-biological which is required to fully integrate the human body and brain into the Smart Grid and artificial intelligence planned to replace the human mind. We have everything being synthetically manipulated including the natural world through GMO and smart dust, the food we eat and the human body itself with synthetic 'vaccines'. I said in *The Answer* that we would see the Cult push for synthetic meat to replace animals and in February, 2021, the so predictable psychopath Bill Gates called for the introduction of synthetic meat to save us all from 'climate change'. The climate hoax just keeps on giving like the 'Covid' hoax. The war on meat by vegan activists is a carbon (oops, sorry) copy of the manipulation of transgender activists. They have no idea (except their inner core) that they are being used to promote and impose the agenda of the Cult or that they are only the *vehicle* and not the *reason*. This is not to say those who choose not to eat meat shouldn't be respected and supported in that right, but there are ulterior motives

for those in power. A *Forbes* article in December, 2019, highlighted the plan so beloved of Schwab and the Cult under the heading: 'What Is The Internet of Bodies? And How Is It Changing Our World?' The article said the human body is the latest data platform (remember 'our vaccine is an operating system'). *Forbes* described the plan very accurately and the words could have come straight out of my books from long before:

The Internet of Bodies (IoB) is an extension of the IoT and basically connects the human body to a network through devices that are ingested, implanted, or connected to the body in some way. Once connected, data can be exchanged, and the body and device can be remotely monitored and controlled.

They were really describing a human hive mind with human perception centrally-dictated via an AI connection as well as allowing people to be 'remotely monitored and controlled'.

Everything from a fridge to a human mind could be directed from a central point by these insane psychopaths and 'Covid vaccines' are crucial to this. *Forbes* explained the process I mentioned earlier of holdable and wearable technology followed by implantable. The article said there were three generations of the Internet of Bodies that include:

- Body external: These are wearable devices such as Apple Watches or Fitbits that can monitor our health.
- Body internal: These include pacemakers, cochlear implants, and digital pills that go inside our bodies to monitor or control various aspects of health.
- Body embedded: The third generation of the Internet of Bodies is embedded technology where technology and the human body are melded together and have a real-time connection to a remote machine.

Forbes noted the development of the Brain Computer Interface (BCI) which merges the brain with an external device for monitoring and controlling in real-time. ‘The ultimate goal is to help restore function to individuals with disabilities by using brain signals rather than conventional neuromuscular pathways.’ Oh, do fuck off. The goal of brain interface technology is controlling human thought and emotion from the central point in a hive mind serving its masters wishes. Many people are now agreeing to be chipped to open doors without a key. You can recognise them because they’ll be wearing a mask, social distancing and lining up for the ‘vaccine’. The Cult plans a Great Reset money system after they have completed the demolition of the global economy in which ‘money’ will be exchanged through communication with body operating systems. Rand Corporation, a Cult-owned think tank, said of the Internet of Bodies or IoB:

Internet of Bodies technologies fall under the broader IoT umbrella. But as the name suggests, IoB devices introduce an even more intimate interplay between humans and gadgets. IoB devices monitor the human body, collect health metrics and other personal information, and transmit those data over the Internet. Many devices, such as fitness trackers, are already in use ... IoB devices ... and those in development can track, record, and store users’ whereabouts, bodily functions, and what they see, hear, and even think.

Schwab’s World Economic Forum, a long-winded way of saying ‘fascism’ or ‘the Cult’, has gone full-on with the Internet of Bodies in the ‘Covid’ era. ‘We’re entering the era of the Internet of Bodies’, it declared, ‘collecting our physical data via a range of devices that can be implanted, swallowed or worn’. The result would be a huge amount of health-related data that could improve human wellbeing around the world, and prove crucial in fighting the ‘Covid-19 pandemic’. Does anyone think these clowns care about ‘human wellbeing’ after the death and devastation their pandemic hoax has purposely caused? Schwab and co say we should move forward with the Internet of Bodies because ‘Keeping track of symptoms could help us stop the spread of infection, and quickly detect new cases’. How wonderful, but keeping track’ is all they are really bothered

about. Researchers were investigating if data gathered from smartwatches and similar devices could be used as viral infection alerts by tracking the user's heart rate and breathing. Schwab said in his 2018 book *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution*:

The lines between technologies and beings are becoming blurred and not just by the ability to create lifelike robots or synthetics. Instead it is about the ability of new technologies to literally become part of us. Technologies already influence how we understand ourselves, how we think about each other, and how we determine our realities. As the technologies ... give us deeper access to parts of ourselves, we may begin to integrate digital technologies into our bodies.

You can see what the game is. Twenty-four hour control and people – if you could still call them that – would never know when something would go ping and take them out of circulation. It's the most obvious rush to a global fascist dictatorship and the complete submission of humanity and yet still so many are locked away in their Cult-induced perceptual coma and can't see it.

Smart Grid control centres

The human body is being transformed by the 'vaccines' and in other ways into a synthetic cyborg that can be attached to the global Smart Grid which would be controlled from a central point and other sub-locations of Grid manipulation. Where are these planned to be? Well, China for a start which is one of the Cult's biggest centres of operation. The technological control system and technocratic rule was incubated here to be unleashed across the world after the 'Covid' hoax came out of China in 2020. Another Smart Grid location that will surprise people new to this is Israel. I have exposed in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian technocrats, intelligence and military operatives were behind the horrors of 9/11 and not 19 Arab hijackers' who somehow manifested the ability to pilot big passenger airliners when instructors at puddle-jumping flying schools described some of them as a joke. The 9/11 attacks were made possible through control of civilian and military air computer systems and those of the White House, Pentagon and connected agencies. See *The Trigger* – it

will blow your mind. The controlling and coordinating force were the Sabbatian networks in Israel and the United States which by then had infiltrated the entire US government, military and intelligence system. The real name of the American Deep State is 'Sabbatian State'. Israel is a tiny country of only nine million people, but it is one of the global centres of cyber operations and fast catching Silicon Valley in importance to the Cult. Israel is known as the 'start-up nation' for all the cyber companies spawned there with the Sabbatian specialisation of 'cyber security' that I mentioned earlier which gives those companies access to computer systems of their clients in real time through 'backdoors' written into the coding when security software is downloaded. The Sabbatian centre of cyber operations outside Silicon Valley is the Israeli military Cyber Intelligence Unit, the biggest infrastructure project in Israel's history, headquartered in the desert-city of Beersheba and involving some 20,000 'cyber soldiers'. Here are located a literal army of Internet trolls scanning social media, forums and comment lists for anyone challenging the Cult agenda. The UK military has something similar with its 77th Brigade and associated operations. The Beersheba complex includes research and development centres for other Cult operations such as Intel, Microsoft, IBM, Google, Apple, Hewlett-Packard, Cisco Systems, Facebook and Motorola. [Techcrunch.com](#) ran an article about the Beersheba global Internet technology centre headlined 'Israel's desert city of Beersheba is turning into a cybertech oasis':

The military's massive relocation of its prestigious technology units, the presence of multinational and local companies, a close proximity to Ben Gurion University and generous government subsidies are turning Beersheba into a major global cybertech hub. Beersheba has all of the ingredients of a vibrant security technology ecosystem, including Ben Gurion University with its graduate program in cybersecurity and Cyber Security Research Center, and the presence of companies such as EMC, Deutsche Telekom, PayPal, Oracle, IBM, and Lockheed Martin. It's also the future home of the INCB (Israeli National Cyber Bureau); offers a special income tax incentive for cyber security companies, and was the site for the relocation of the army's intelligence corps units.

Sabbatians have taken over the cyber world through the following process: They scan the schools for likely cyber talent and develop them at Ben Gurion University and their period of conscription in the Israeli Defense Forces when they are stationed at the Beersheba complex. When the cyber talented officially leave the army they are funded to start cyber companies with technology developed by themselves or given to them by the state. Much of this is stolen through backdoors of computer systems around the world with America top of the list. Others are sent off to Silicon Valley to start companies or join the major ones and so we have many major positions filled by apparently 'Jewish' but really Sabbatian operatives. Google, YouTube and Facebook are all run by 'Jewish' CEOs while Twitter is all but run by ultra-Zionist hedge-fund shark Paul Singer. At the centre of the Sabbatian global cyber web is the Israeli army's Unit 8200 which specialises in hacking into computer systems of other countries, inserting viruses, gathering information, instigating malfunction, and even taking control of them from a distance. A long list of Sabbatians involved with 9/11, Silicon Valley and Israeli cyber security companies are operatives of Unit 8200. This is not about Israel. It's about the Cult. Israel is planned to be a Smart Grid hub as with China and what is happening at Beersheba is not for the benefit of Jewish people who are treated disgustingly by the Sabbatian elite that control the country. A glance at the Nuremberg Codes will tell you that.

The story is much bigger than 'Covid', important as that is to where we are being taken. Now, though, it's time to really strap in. There's more ... much more ...

CHAPTER ELEVEN

Who controls the Cult?

Awake, arise or be forever fall'n
John Milton, *Paradise Lost*

I have exposed this far the level of the Cult conspiracy that operates in the world of the seen and within the global secret society and satanic network which operates in the shadows one step back from the seen. The story, however, goes much deeper than that.

The 'Covid' hoax is major part of the Cult agenda, but only part, and to grasp the biggest picture we have to expand our attention beyond the realm of human sight and into the infinity of possibility that we cannot see. It is from here, ultimately, that humanity is being manipulated into a state of total control by the force which dictates the actions of the Cult. How much of reality can we see? Next to damn all is the answer. We may appear to see all there is to see in the 'space' our eyes survey and observe, but little could be further from the truth. The human 'world' is only a tiny band of frequency that the body's visual and perceptual systems can decode into *perception* of a 'world'. According to mainstream science the electromagnetic spectrum is 0.005 percent of what exists in the Universe ([Fig 10](#)). The maximum estimate I have seen is 0.5 percent and either way it's minuscule. I say it is far, far, smaller even than 0.005 percent when you compare reality we see with the totality of reality that we don't. Now get this if you are new to such information: Visible light, the only band of frequency that we can see, is a *fraction* of the 0.005

percent (Fig 11 overleaf). Take this further and realise that our universe is one of infinite universes and that universes are only a fragment of overall reality – *infinite* reality. Then compare that with the almost infinitesimal frequency band of visible light or human sight. You see that humans are as near blind as it is possible to be without actually being so. Artist and filmmaker, Sergio Toporek, said:

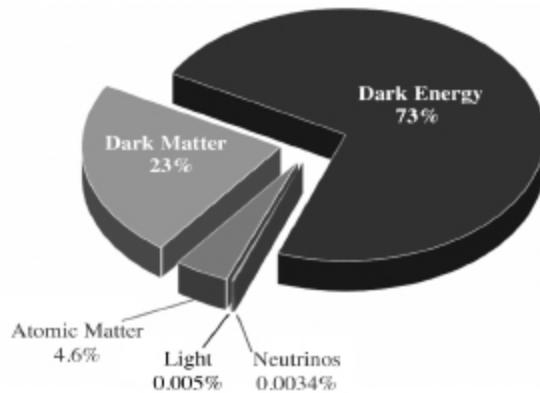


Figure 10: Humans can perceive such a tiny band of visual reality it's laughable.

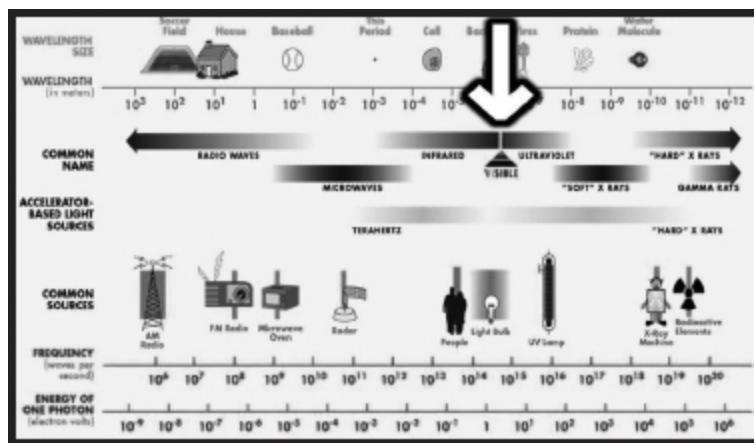


Figure 11: We can see a smear of the 0.005 percent electromagnetic spectrum, but we still know it all. Yep, makes sense.

Consider that you can see less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum and hear less than 1% of the acoustic spectrum. 90% of the cells in your body carry their own microbial DNA and are not 'you'. The atoms in your body are 99.99999999999999% empty space and none of them are the ones you were born with ... Human beings have 46 chromosomes, two less than a potato.

The existence of the rainbow depends on the conical photoreceptors in your eyes; to animals without cones, the rainbow does not exist. So you don't just look at a rainbow, you create it. This is pretty amazing, especially considering that all the beautiful colours you see represent less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Suddenly the 'world' of humans looks a very different place. Take into account, too, that Planet Earth when compared with the projected size of this single universe is the equivalent of a billionth of a pinhead. Imagine the ratio that would be when compared to infinite reality. To think that Christianity once insisted that Earth and humanity were the centre of everything. This background is vital if we are going to appreciate the nature of 'human' and how we can be manipulated by an unseen force. To human visual reality virtually *everything* is unseen and yet the prevailing perception within the institutions and so much of the public is that if we can't see it, touch it, hear it, taste it and smell it then it cannot exist. Such perception is indoctrinated and encouraged by the Cult and its agents because it isolates believers in the strictly limited, village-idiot, realm of the five senses where perceptions can be firewalled and information controlled. Most of those perpetuating the 'this-world-is-all-there-is' insanity are themselves indoctrinated into believing the same delusion. While major players and influencers know that official reality is laughable most of those in science, academia and medicine really believe the nonsense they peddle and teach succeeding generations. Those who challenge the orthodoxy are dismissed as nutters and freaks to protect the manufactured illusion from exposure. Observe the dynamic of the 'Covid' hoax and you will see how that takes the same form. The inner-circle psychopaths know it's a gigantic scam, but almost the entirety of those imposing their fascist rules believe that 'Covid' is all that they're told it is.

Stolen identity

Ask people who they are and they will give you their name, place of birth, location, job, family background and life story. Yet that is not who they are – it is what they are *experiencing*. The difference is *absolutely crucial*. The true 'I', the eternal, infinite 'I', is consciousness,

a state of being aware. Forget ‘form’. That is a vehicle for a brief experience. Consciousness does not come *from* the brain, but *through* the brain and even that is more symbolic than literal. We are awareness, pure awareness, and this is what withdraws from the body at what we call ‘death’ to continue our eternal beingness, *isness*, in other realms of reality within the limitlessness of infinity or the Biblical ‘many mansions in my father’s house’. Labels of a human life, man, woman, transgender, black, white, brown, nationality, circumstances and income are not who we are. They are what we are – awareness – is *experiencing* in a brief connection with a band of frequency we call ‘human’. The labels are not the self; they are, to use the title of one of my books, a *Phantom Self*. I am not David Icke born in Leicester, England, on April 29th, 1952. I am the consciousness *having that experience*. The Cult and its non-human masters seek to convince us through the institutions of ‘education’, science, medicine, media and government that what we are *experiencing* is who we *are*. It’s so easy to control and direct perception locked away in the bewildered illusions of the five senses with no expanded radar. Try, by contrast, doing the same with a humanity aware of its true self and its true power to consciously create its reality and experience. How is it possible to do this? We do it all day every day. If you perceive yourself as ‘little me’ with no power to impact upon your life and the world then your life experience will reflect that. You will hand the power you don’t think you have to authority in all its forms which will use it to control your experience. This, in turn, will appear to confirm your perception of ‘little me’ in a self-fulfilling feedback loop. But that is what ‘little me’ really is – a *perception*. We are all ‘big-me’, infinite me, and the Cult has to make us forget that if its will is to prevail. We are therefore manipulated and pressured into self-identifying with human labels and not the consciousness/awareness *experiencing* those human labels.

The phenomenon of identity politics is a Cult-instigated manipulation technique to sub-divide previous labels into even smaller ones. A United States university employs this list of letters to

describe student identity: LGBTQQFAGPBDSM or lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, transsexual, queer, questioning, flexual, asexual, gender-fuck, polyamorous, bondage/discipline, dominance/submission and sadism/masochism. I'm sure other lists are even longer by now as people feel the need to self-identify the 'I' with the minutiae of race and sexual preference. Wokers programmed by the Cult for generations believe this is about 'inclusivity' when it's really the Cult locking them away into smaller and smaller versions of Phantom Self while firewalls them from the influence of their true self, the infinite, eternal 'I'. You may notice that my philosophy which contends that we are all unique points of attention/awareness within the same infinite whole or Oneness is the ultimate non-racism. The very sense of Oneness makes the judgement of people by their body-type, colour or sexuality utterly ridiculous and confirms that racism has no understanding of reality (including anti-white racism). Yet despite my perception of life Cult agents and fast-asleep Wokers label me racist to discredit my information while they are themselves phenomenally racist and sexist. All they see is race and sexuality and they judge people as good or bad, demons or untouchables, by their race and sexuality. All they see is *Phantom Self* and perceive themselves in terms of *Phantom Self*. They are pawns and puppets of the Cult agenda to focus attention and self-identity in the five senses and play those identities against each other to divide and rule. Columbia University has introduced segregated graduations in another version of social distancing designed to drive people apart and teach them that different racial and cultural groups have nothing in common with each other. The last thing the Cult wants is unity. Again the pump-primers of this will be Cult operatives in the knowledge of what they are doing, but the rest are just the *Phantom Self* blind leading the *Phantom Self* blind. We *do* have something in common – we are all *the same consciousness* having different temporary experiences.

What is this 'human'?

Yes, what *is* ‘human’? That is what we are supposed to be, right? I mean ‘human’? True, but ‘human’ is the experience not the ‘I’. Break it down to basics and ‘human’ is the way that information is processed. If we are to experience and interact with this band of frequency we call the ‘world’ we must have a vehicle that operates within that band of frequency. Our consciousness in its prime form cannot do that; it is way beyond the frequency of the human realm. My consciousness or awareness could not tap these keys and pick up the cup in front of me in the same way that radio station A cannot interact with radio station B when they are on different frequencies. The human body is the means through which we have that interaction. I have long described the body as a biological computer which processes information in a way that allows consciousness to experience this reality. The body is a receiver, transmitter and processor of information in a particular way that we call human. We visually perceive only the world of the five senses in a wakened state – that is the limit of the body’s visual decoding system. In truth it’s not even visual in the way we experience ‘visual reality’ as I will come to in a moment. We are ‘human’ because the body processes the information sources of human into a reality and behaviour system that we *perceive* as human. Why does an elephant act like an elephant and not like a human or a duck? The elephant’s biological computer is a different information field and processes information according to that program into a visual and behaviour type we call an elephant. The same applies to everything in our reality. These body information fields are perpetuated through procreation (like making a copy of a software program). The Cult wants to break that cycle and intervene technologically to transform the human information field into one that will change what we call humanity. If it can change the human information field it will change the way that field processes information and change humanity both ‘physically’ and psychologically. Hence the *messenger* (information) RNA ‘vaccines’ and so much more that is targeting human genetics by changing the body’s information – *messaging* – construct through food, drink, radiation, toxicity and other means.

Reality that we experience is nothing like reality as it really is in the same way that the reality people experience in virtual reality games is not the reality they are really living in. The game is only a decoded source of information that appears to be a reality. Our world is also an information construct – a *simulation* (more later). In its base form our reality is a wavefield of information much the same in theme as Wi-Fi. The five senses decode wavefield information into electrical information which they communicate to the brain to decode into holographic (illusory ‘physical’) information. Different parts of the brain specialise in decoding different senses and the information is fused into a reality that appears to be outside of us but is really inside the brain and the genetic structure in general ([Fig 12](#) overleaf). DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and a vital part of this decoding process and the body’s connection to other realities. Change DNA and you change the way we decode and connect with reality – see ‘Covid vaccines’. Think of computers decoding Wi-Fi. You have information encoded in a radiation field and the computer decodes that information into a very different form on the screen. You can’t see the Wi-Fi until its information is made manifest on the screen and the information on the screen is inside the computer and not outside. I have just described how we decode the ‘human world’. All five senses decode the waveform ‘Wi-Fi’ field into electrical signals and the brain (computer) constructs reality inside the brain and not outside – ‘You don’t just look at a rainbow, you create it’. Sound is a simple example. We don’t hear sound until the brain decodes it. Waveform sound waves are picked up by the hearing sense and communicated to the brain in an electrical form to be decoded into the sounds that we hear. Everything we hear is inside the brain along with everything we see, feel, smell and taste. Words and language are waveform fields generated by our vocal chords which pass through this process until they are decoded by the brain into words that we hear. Different languages are different frequency fields or sound waves generated by vocal chords. Late British philosopher Alan Watts said:

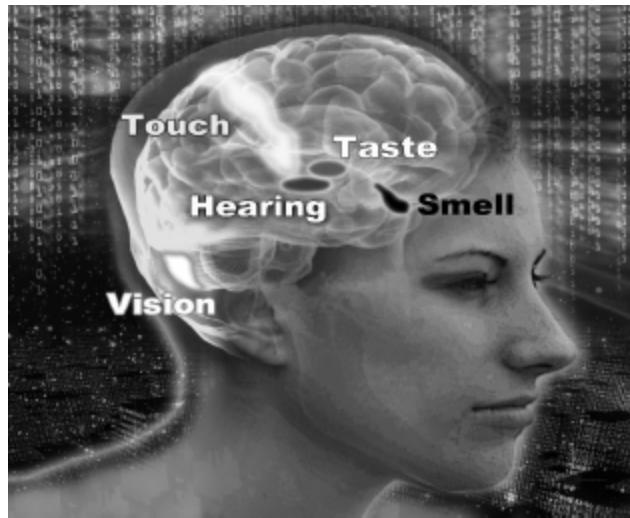


Figure 12: The brain receives information from the five senses and constructs from that our perceived reality.

[Without the brain] the world is devoid of light, heat, weight, solidity, motion, space, time or any other imaginable feature. All these phenomena are interactions, or transactions, of vibrations with a certain arrangement of neurons.

That's exactly what they are and scientist Robert Lanza describes in his book, *Biocentrism*, how we decode electromagnetic waves and energy into visual and 'physical' experience. He uses the example of a flame emitting photons, electromagnetic energy, each pulsing electrically and magnetically:

... these ... invisible electromagnetic waves strike a human retina, and if (and only if) the waves happen to measure between 400 and 700 nano meters in length from crest to crest, then their energy is just right to deliver a stimulus to the 8 million cone-shaped cells in the retina.

Each in turn send an electrical pulse to a neighbour neuron, and on up the line this goes, at 250 mph, until it reaches the ... occipital lobe of the brain, in the back of the head. There, a cascading complex of neurons fire from the incoming stimuli, and we subjectively perceive this experience as a yellow brightness occurring in a place we have been conditioned to call the 'external world'.

You hear what you decode

If a tree falls or a building collapses they make no noise unless someone is there to decode the energetic waves generated by the disturbance into what we call sound. Does a falling tree make a noise? Only if you hear it – *decode* it. Everything in our reality is a frequency field of information operating within the overall ‘Wi-Fi’ field that I call The Field. A vibrational disturbance is generated in The Field by the fields of the falling tree or building. These disturbance waves are what we decode into the sound of them falling. If no one is there to do that then neither will make any noise. Reality is created by the observer – *decoder* – and the *perceptions* of the observer affect the decoding process. For this reason different people – different *perceptions* – will perceive the same reality or situation in a different way. What one may perceive as a nightmare another will see as an opportunity. The question of why the Cult is so focused on controlling human perception now answers itself. All experienced reality is the act of decoding and we don’t experience Wi-Fi until it is decoded on the computer screen. The sight and sound of an Internet video is encoded in the Wi-Fi all around us, but we don’t see or hear it until the computer decodes that information. Taste, smell and touch are all phenomena of the brain as a result of the same process. We don’t taste, smell or feel anything except in the brain and there are pain relief techniques that seek to block the signal from the site of discomfort to the brain because if the brain doesn’t decode that signal we don’t feel pain. Pain is in the brain and only appears to be at the point of impact thanks to the feedback loop between them. We don’t see anything until electrical information from the sight senses is decoded in an area at the back of the brain. If that area is damaged we can go blind when our eyes are perfectly okay. So why do we go blind if we damage an eye? We damage the information processing between the waveform visual information and the visual decoding area of the brain. If information doesn’t reach the brain in a form it can decode then we can’t see the visual reality that it represents. What’s more the brain is decoding only a fraction of the information it receives and the rest is absorbed by the

sub-conscious mind. This explanation is from the science magazine, *Wonderpedia*:

Every second, 11 million sensations crackle along these [brain] pathways ... The brain is confronted with an alarming array of images, sounds and smells which it rigorously filters down until it is left with a manageable list of around 40. Thus 40 sensations per second make up what we perceive as reality.

The ‘world’ is not what people are told to believe that is it and the inner circles of the Cult *know that*.

Illusory ‘physical’ reality

We can only see a smear of 0.005 percent of the Universe which is only one of a vast array of universes – ‘mansions’ – within infinite reality. Even then the brain decodes only 40 pieces of information (‘sensations’) from a potential *11 million* that we receive every second. Two points strike you from this immediately: The sheer breathtaking stupidity of believing we know anything so rigidly that there’s nothing more to know; and the potential for these processes to be manipulated by a malevolent force to control the reality of the population. One thing I can say for sure with no risk of contradiction is that when you can perceive an almost indescribable fraction of infinite reality there is always more to know as in tidal waves of it. Ancient Greek philosopher Socrates was so right when he said that wisdom is to know how little we know. How obviously true that is when you think that we are experiencing a physical world of solidity that is neither physical nor solid and a world of apartness when everything is connected. Cult-controlled ‘science’ dismisses the so-called ‘paranormal’ and all phenomena related to that when the ‘para’-normal is perfectly normal and explains the alleged ‘great mysteries’ which dumbfound scientific minds. There is a reason for this. A ‘scientific mind’ in terms of the mainstream is a material mind, a five-sense mind imprisoned in see it, touch it, hear it, smell it and taste it. Phenomena and happenings that can’t be explained that way leave the ‘scientific mind’ bewildered and the rule is that if they

can't account for why something is happening then it can't, by definition, be happening. I beg to differ. Telepathy is thought waves passing through The Field (think wave disturbance again) to be decoded by someone able to connect with that wavelength (information). For example: You can pick up the thought waves of a friend at any distance and at the very least that will bring them to mind. A few minutes later the friend calls you. 'My god', you say, 'that's incredible – I was just thinking of you.' Ah, but *they* were thinking of *you* before they made the call and that's what you decoded. Native peoples not entrapped in five-sense reality do this so well it became known as the 'bush telegraph'. Those known as psychics and mediums (genuine ones) are doing the same only across dimensions of reality. 'Mind over matter' comes from the fact that matter and mind are the *same*. The state of one influences the state of the other. Indeed one *and* the other are illusions. They are aspects of the same field. Paranormal phenomena are all explainable so why are they still considered 'mysteries' or not happening? Once you go down this road of understanding you begin to expand awareness beyond the five senses and that's the nightmare for the Cult.



Figure 13: Holograms are not solid, but the best ones appear to be.

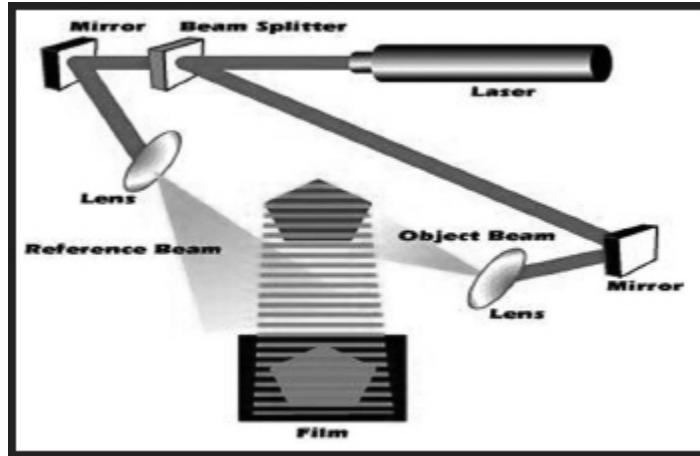


Figure 14: How holograms are created by capturing a waveform version of the subject image.

Holographic ‘solidity’

Our reality is not solid, it is holographic. We are now well aware of holograms which are widely used today. Two-dimensional information is decoded into a three-dimensional reality that is not solid although can very much appear to be (Fig 13). Holograms are created with a laser divided into two parts. One goes directly onto a photographic print ('reference beam') and the other takes a waveform image of the subject ('working beam') before being directed onto the print where it 'collides' with the other half of the laser (Fig 14). This creates a *waveform* interference pattern which contains the wavefield information of whatever is being photographed (Fig 15 overleaf). The process can be likened to dropping pebbles in a pond. Waves generated by each one spread out across the water to collide with the others and create a wave representation of where the stones fell and at what speed, weight and distance. A waveform interference pattern of a hologram is akin to the waveform information in The Field which the five senses decode into electrical signals to be decoded by the brain into a holographic illusory 'physical' reality. In the same way when a laser (think human attention) is directed at the waveform interference pattern a three-dimensional version of the subject is projected into apparently 'solid' reality (Fig 16). An amazing trait of holograms reveals more 'paranormal mysteries'. Information of the *whole*

hologram is encoded in waveform in every part of the interference pattern by the way they are created. This means that every *part* of a hologram is a smaller version of the whole. Cut the interference wave-pattern into four and you won't get four parts of the image. You get quarter-sized versions of the *whole* image. The body is a hologram and the same applies. Here we have the basis of acupuncture, reflexology and other forms of healing which identify representations of the whole body in all of the parts, hands, feet, ears, everywhere. Skilled palm readers can do what they do because the information of whole body is encoded in the hand. The concept of as above, so below, comes from this.



Figure 15: A waveform interference pattern that holds the information that transforms into a hologram.



Figure 16: Holographic people including 'Elvis' holographically inserted to sing a duet with Celine Dion.

The question will be asked of why, if solidity is illusory, we can't just walk through walls and each other. The resistance is not solid against solid; it is electromagnetic field against electromagnetic field and we decode this into the *experience* of solid against solid. We should also not underestimate the power of belief to dictate reality. What you believe is impossible *will be*. Your belief impacts on your decoding processes and they won't decode what you think is impossible. What we believe we perceive and what we perceive we experience. 'Can't dos' and 'impossibles' are like a firewall in a computer system that won't put on the screen what the firewall blocks. How vital that is to understanding how human experience has been hijacked. I explain in *The Answer, Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told* and other books a long list of 'mysteries' and 'paranormal' phenomena that are not mysterious and perfectly normal once you realise what reality is and how it works. 'Ghosts' can be seen to pass through 'solid' walls because the walls are not solid and the ghost is a discarnate entity operating on a frequency so different to that of the wall that it's like two radio stations sharing the same space while never interfering with each other. I have seen ghosts do this myself. The apartness of people and objects is also an illusion. Everything is connected by the Field like all sea life is connected by the sea. It's just that within the limits of our visual reality we only 'see' holographic information and not the field of information that connects everything and from which the holographic world is made manifest. If you can only see holographic 'objects' and not the field that connects them they will appear to you as unconnected to each other in the same way that we see the computer while not seeing the Wi-Fi.

What you don't know *can* hurt you

Okay, we return to those 'two worlds' of human society and the Cult with its global network of interconnecting secret societies and satanic groups which manipulate through governments, corporations, media, religions, etc. The fundamental difference between them is *knowledge*. The idea has been to keep humanity

ignorant of the plan for its total enslavement underpinned by a crucial ignorance of reality – who we are and where we are – and how we interact with it. ‘Human’ should be the interaction between our expanded eternal consciousness and the five-sense body experience. We are meant to be *in* this world in terms of the five senses but not *of* this world in relation to our greater consciousness and perspective. In that state we experience the small picture of the five senses within the wider context of the big picture of awareness beyond the five senses. Put another way the five senses see the dots and expanded awareness connects them into pictures and patterns that give context to the apparently random and unconnected. Without the context of expanded awareness the five senses see only apartness and randomness with apparently no meaning. The Cult and its other-dimensional controllers seek to intervene in the frequency realm where five-sense reality is supposed to connect with expanded reality and to keep the two apart (more on this in the final chapter). When that happens five-sense mental and emotional processes are no longer influenced by expanded awareness, or the True ‘I’, and instead are driven by the isolated perceptions of the body’s decoding systems. They are in the world *and* of it. Here we have the human plight and why humanity with its potential for infinite awareness can be so easily manipulatable and descend into such extremes of stupidity.

Once the Cult isolates five-sense mind from expanded awareness it can then program the mind with perceptions and beliefs by controlling information that the mind receives through the ‘education’ system of the formative years and the media perceptual bombardment and censorship of an entire lifetime. Limit perception and a sense of the possible through limiting knowledge by limiting and skewing information while censoring and discrediting that which could set people free. As the title of another of my books says ... *And The Truth Shall Set You Free*. For this reason the last thing the Cult wants in circulation is the truth about anything – especially the reality of the eternal ‘I’ – and that’s why it is desperate to control information. The Cult knows that information becomes perception

which becomes behaviour which, collectively, becomes human society. Cult-controlled and funded mainstream ‘science’ denies the existence of an eternal ‘I’ and seeks to dismiss and trash all evidence to the contrary. Cult-controlled mainstream religion has a version of ‘God’ that is little more than a system of control and dictatorship that employs threats of damnation in an afterlife to control perceptions and behaviour in the here and now through fear and guilt. Neither is true and it’s the ‘neither’ that the Cult wishes to suppress. This ‘neither’ is that everything is an expression, a point of attention, within an infinite state of consciousness which is the real meaning of the term ‘God’.

Perceptual obsession with the ‘physical body’ and five-senses means that ‘God’ becomes personified as a bearded bloke sitting among the clouds or a raging bully who loves us if we do what ‘he’ wants and condemns us to the fires of hell if we don’t. These are no more than a ‘spiritual’ fairy tales to control and dictate events and behaviour through fear of this ‘God’ which has bizarrely made ‘God-fearing’ in religious circles a state to be desired. I would suggest that fearing *anything* is not to be encouraged and celebrated, but rather deleted. You can see why ‘God fearing’ is so beneficial to the Cult and its religions when *they* decide what ‘God’ wants and what ‘God’ demands (the Cult demands) that everyone do. As the great American comedian Bill Hicks said satirising a Christian zealot: ‘I think what God meant to say.’ How much of this infinite awareness (“God”) that we access is decided by how far we choose to expand our perceptions, self-identity and sense of the possible. The scale of self-identity reflects itself in the scale of awareness that we can connect with and are influenced by – how much knowing and insight we have instead of programmed perception. You cannot expand your awareness into the infinity of possibility when you believe that you are little me Peter the postman or Mary in marketing and nothing more. I’ll deal with this in the concluding chapter because it’s crucial to how we turnaround current events.

Where the Cult came from

When I realised in the early 1990s there was a Cult network behind global events I asked the obvious question: When did it start? I took it back to ancient Rome and Egypt and on to Babylon and Sumer in Mesopotamia, the 'Land Between Two Rivers', in what we now call Iraq. The two rivers are the Tigris and Euphrates and this region is of immense historical and other importance to the Cult, as is the land called Israel only 550 miles away by air. There is much more going with deep esoteric meaning across this whole region. It's not only about 'wars for oil'. Priceless artefacts from Mesopotamia were stolen or destroyed after the American and British invasion of Iraq in 2003 justified by the lies of Boy Bush and Tony Blair (their Cult masters) about non-existent 'weapons of mass destruction'.

Mesopotamia was the location of Sumer (about 5,400BC to 1,750BC), and Babylon (about 2,350BC to 539BC). Sabbatians may have become immensely influential in the Cult in modern times but they are part of a network that goes back into the mists of history. Sumer is said by historians to be the 'cradle of civilisation'. I disagree. I say it was the re-start of what we call human civilisation after cataclysmic events symbolised in part as the 'Great Flood' destroyed the world that existed before. These fantastic upheavals that I have been describing in detail in the books since the early 1990s appear in accounts and legends of ancient cultures across the world and they are supported by geological and biological evidence. Stone tablets found in Iraq detailing the Sumer period say the cataclysms were caused by non-human 'gods' they call the Anunnaki. These are described in terms of extraterrestrial visitations in which knowledge supplied by the Anunnaki is said to have been the source of at least one of the world's oldest writing systems and developments in astronomy, mathematics and architecture that were way ahead of their time. I have covered this subject at length in *The Biggest Secret* and *Children of the Matrix* and the same basic 'Anunnaki' story can be found in Zulu accounts in South Africa where the late and very great Zulu high shaman Credo Mutwa told me that the Sumerian Anunnaki were known by Zulus as the Chitauri or 'children of the serpent'. See my six-hour video interview with Credo on this subject entitled *The*

Reptilian Agenda recorded at his then home near Johannesburg in 1999 which you can watch on the Ickonic media platform.

The Cult emerged out of Sumer, Babylon and Egypt (and elsewhere) and established the Roman Empire before expanding with the Romans into northern Europe from where many empires were savagely imposed in the form of Cult-controlled societies all over the world. Mass death and destruction was their calling card. The Cult established its centre of operations in Europe and European Empires were Cult empires which allowed it to expand into a global force. Spanish and Portuguese colonialists headed for Central and South America while the British and French targeted North America. Africa was colonised by Britain, France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Portugal, Spain, Italy, and Germany. Some like Britain and France moved in on the Middle East. The British Empire was by far the biggest for a simple reason. By now Britain was the headquarters of the Cult from which it expanded to form Canada, the United States, Australia and New Zealand. The Sun never set on the British Empire such was the scale of its occupation. London remains a global centre for the Cult along with Rome and the Vatican although others have emerged in Israel and China. It is no accident that the 'virus' is alleged to have come out of China while Italy was chosen as the means to terrify the Western population into compliance with 'Covid' fascism. Nor that Israel has led the world in 'Covid' fascism and mass 'vaccination'.

You would think that I would mention the United States here, but while it has been an important means of imposing the Cult's will it is less significant than would appear and is currently in the process of having what power it does have deleted. The Cult in Europe has mostly loaded the guns for the US to fire. America has been controlled from Europe from the start through Cult operatives in Britain and Europe. The American Revolution was an illusion to make it appear that America was governing itself while very different forces were pulling the strings in the form of Cult families such as the Rothschilds through the Rockefellers and other subordinates. The Rockefellers are extremely close to Bill Gates and

established both scalpel and drug ‘medicine’ and the World Health Organization. They play a major role in the development and circulation of vaccines through the Rockefeller Foundation on which Bill Gates said his Foundation is based. Why wouldn’t this be the case when the Rockefellers and Gates are on the same team? Cult infiltration of human society goes way back into what we call history and has been constantly expanding and centralising power with the goal of establishing a global structure to dictate everything. Look how this has been advanced in great leaps with the ‘Covid’ hoax.

The non-human dimension

I researched and observed the comings and goings of Cult operatives through the centuries and even thousands of years as they were born, worked to promote the agenda within the secret society and satanic networks, and then died for others to replace them. Clearly there had to be a coordinating force that spanned this entire period while operatives who would not have seen the end goal in their lifetimes came and went advancing the plan over millennia. I went in search of that coordinating force with the usual support from the extraordinary synchronicity of my life which has been an almost daily experience since 1990. I saw common themes in religious texts and ancient cultures about a non-human force manipulating human society from the hidden. Christianity calls this force Satan, the Devil and demons; Islam refers to the Jinn or Djinn; Zulus have their Chitauri (spelt in other ways in different parts of Africa); and the Gnostic people in Egypt in the period around and before 400AD referred to this phenomena as the ‘Archons’, a word meaning rulers in Greek. Central American cultures speak of the ‘Predators’ among other names and the same theme is everywhere. I will use ‘Archons’ as a collective name for all of them. When you see how their nature and behaviour is described all these different sources are clearly talking about the same force. Gnostics described the Archons in terms of ‘luminous fire’ while Islam relates the Jinn to ‘smokeless fire’. Some refer to beings in form that could occasionally be seen, but the most common of common theme is that they operate from

unseen realms which means almost all existence to the visual processes of humans. I had concluded that this was indeed the foundation of human control and that the Cult was operating within the human frequency band on behalf of this hidden force when I came across the writings of Gnostics which supported my conclusions in the most extraordinary way.

A sealed earthen jar was found in 1945 near the town of Nag Hammadi about 75-80 miles north of Luxor on the banks of the River Nile in Egypt. Inside was a treasure trove of manuscripts and texts left by the Gnostic people some 1,600 years earlier. They included 13 leather-bound papyrus codices (manuscripts) and more than 50 texts written in Coptic Egyptian estimated to have been hidden in the jar in the period of 400AD although the source of the information goes back much further. Gnostics oversaw the Great or Royal Library of Alexandria, the fantastic depository of ancient texts detailing advanced knowledge and accounts of human history. The Library was dismantled and destroyed in stages over a long period with the death-blow delivered by the Cult-established Roman Church in the period around 415AD. The Church of Rome was the Church of Babylon relocated as I said earlier. Gnostics were not a race. They were a way of perceiving reality. Whenever they established themselves and their information circulated the terrorists of the Church of Rome would target them for destruction. This happened with the Great Library and with the Gnostic Cathars who were burned to death by the psychopaths after a long period of oppression at the siege of the Castle of Monségur in southern France in 1244. The Church has always been terrified of Gnostic information which demolishes the official Christian narrative although there is much in the Bible that supports the Gnostic view if you read it in another way. To anyone studying the texts of what became known as the Nag Hammadi Library it is clear that great swathes of Christian and Biblical belief has its origin with Gnostics sources going back to Sumer. Gnostic themes have been twisted to manipulate the perceived reality of Bible believers. Biblical texts have been in the open for centuries where they could be changed while Gnostic

documents found at Nag Hammadi were sealed away and untouched for 1,600 years. What you see is what they wrote.

Use your *pneuma* not your *nous*

Gnosticism and Gnostic come from 'gnosis' which means knowledge, or rather *secret* knowledge, in the sense of spiritual awareness – knowledge about reality and life itself. The desperation of the Cult's Church of Rome to destroy the Gnostics can be understood when the knowledge they were circulating was the last thing the Cult wanted the population to know. Sixteen hundred years later the same Cult is working hard to undermine and silence me for the same reason. The dynamic between knowledge and ignorance is a constant. 'Time' appears to move on, but essential themes remain the same. We are told to 'use your *nous*', a Gnostic word for head/brain/intelligence. They said, however, that spiritual awakening or 'salvation' could only be secured by expanding awareness *beyond* what they called *nous* and into *pneuma* or Infinite Self. Obviously as I read these texts the parallels with what I have been saying since 1990 were fascinating to me. There is a universal truth that spans human history and in that case why wouldn't we be talking the same language 16 centuries apart? When you free yourself from the perception program of the five senses and explore expanded realms of consciousness you are going to connect with the same information no matter what the perceived 'era' within a manufactured timeline of a single and tiny range of manipulated frequency. Humans working with 'smart' technology or knocking rocks together in caves is only a timeline appearing to operate within the human frequency band. Expanded awareness and the knowledge it holds have always been there whether the era be Stone Age or computer age. We can only access that knowledge by opening ourselves to its frequency which the five-sense prison cell is designed to stop us doing. Gates, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki, Bezos, and all the others behind the 'Covid' hoax clearly have a long wait before their range of frequency can make that connection given that an open heart is

crucial to that as we shall see. Instead of accessing knowledge directly through expanded awareness it is given to Cult operatives by the secret society networks of the Cult where it has been passed on over thousands of years outside the public arena. Expanded realms of consciousness is where great artists, composers and writers find their inspiration and where truth awaits anyone open enough to connect with it. We need to go there fast.

Archon hijack

A fifth of the Nag Hammadi texts describe the existence and manipulation of the Archons led by a 'Chief Archon' they call 'Yaldabaoth', or the 'Demiurge', and this is the Christian 'Devil', 'Satan', 'Lucifer', and his demons. Archons in Biblical symbolism are the 'fallen ones' which are also referred to as fallen angels after the angels expelled from heaven according to the Abrahamic religions of Judaism, Christianity and Islam. These angels are claimed to tempt humans to 'sin' ongoing and you will see how accurate that symbolism is during the rest of the book. The theme of 'original sin' is related to the 'Fall' when Adam and Eve were 'tempted by the serpent' and fell from a state of innocence and 'obedience' (connection) with God into a state of disobedience (disconnection). The Fall is said to have brought sin into the world and corrupted everything including human nature. Yaldabaoth, the 'Lord Archon', is described by Gnostics as a 'counterfeit spirit', 'The Blind One', 'The Blind God', and 'The Foolish One'. The Jewish name for Yaldabaoth in Talmudic writings is Samael which translates as 'Poison of God', or 'Blindness of God'. You see the parallels. Yaldabaoth in Islamic belief is the Muslim Jinn devil known as Shaytan – Shaytan is Satan as the same themes are found all over the world in every religion and culture. The 'Lord God' of the Old Testament is the 'Lord Archon' of Gnostic manuscripts and that's why he's such a bloodthirsty bastard. Satan is known by Christians as 'the Demon of Demons' and Gnostics called Yaldabaoth the 'Archon of Archons'. Both are known as 'The Deceiver'. We are talking about the same 'bloke' for sure and these common themes

using different names, storylines and symbolism tell a common tale of the human plight.

Archons are referred to in Nag Hammadi documents as mind parasites, inverters, guards, gatekeepers, detainers, judges, pitiless ones and deceivers. The 'Covid' hoax alone is a glaring example of all these things. The Biblical 'God' is so different in the Old and New Testaments because they are not describing the same phenomenon. The vindictive, angry, hate-filled, 'God' of the Old Testament, known as Yahweh, is Yaldabaoth who is depicted in Cult-dictated popular culture as the 'Dark Lord', 'Lord of Time', Lord (Darth) Vader and Dormammu, the evil ruler of the 'Dark Dimension' trying to take over the 'Earth Dimension' in the Marvel comic movie, *Dr Strange*. Yaldabaoth is both the Old Testament 'god' and the Biblical 'Satan'. Gnostics referred to Yaldabaoth as the 'Great Architect of the Universe' and the Cult-controlled Freemason network calls their god 'the Great Architect of the Universe' (also Grand Architect). The 'Great Architect' Yaldabaoth is symbolised by the Cult as the all-seeing eye at the top of the pyramid on the Great Seal of the United States and the dollar bill. Archon is encoded in *arch-itect* as it is in *arch-angels* and *arch-bishops*. All religions have the theme of a force for good and force for evil in some sort of spiritual war and there is a reason for that – the theme is true. The Cult and its non-human masters are quite happy for this to circulate. They present themselves as the force for good fighting evil when they are really the force of evil (absence of love). The whole foundation of Cult modus operandi is inversion. They promote themselves as a force for good and anyone challenging them in pursuit of peace, love, fairness, truth and justice is condemned as a satanic force for evil. This has been the game plan throughout history whether the Church of Rome inquisitions of non-believers or 'conspiracy theorists' and 'anti-vaxxers' of today. The technique is the same whatever the timeline era.

Yaldabaoth is revolting (true)

Yaldabaoth and the Archons are said to have revolted against God with Yaldabaoth claiming to *be* God – the *All That Is*. The Old Testament ‘God’ (Yaldabaoth) demanded to be worshipped as such: ‘*I am the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me*’ (Isaiah 45:5). I have quoted in other books a man who said he was the unofficial son of the late Baron Philippe de Rothschild of the Mouton-Rothschild wine producing estates in France who died in 1988 and he told me about the Rothschild ‘revolt from God’. The man said he was given the name Phillip Eugene de Rothschild and we shared long correspondence many years ago while he was living under another identity. He said that he was conceived through ‘occult incest’ which (within the Cult) was ‘normal and to be admired’. ‘Phillip’ told me about his experience attending satanic rituals with rich and famous people whom he names and you can see them and the wider background to Cult Satanism in my other books starting with *The Biggest Secret*. Cult rituals are interactions with Archontic ‘gods’. ‘Phillip’ described Baron Philippe de Rothschild as ‘a master Satanist and hater of God’ and he used the same term ‘revolt from God’ associated with Yaldabaoth/Satan/Lucifer/the Devil in describing the Sabbatian Rothschild dynasty. ‘I played a key role in my family’s revolt from God’, he said. That role was to infiltrate in classic Sabbatian style the Christian Church, but eventually he escaped the mind-prison to live another life. The Cult has been targeting religion in a plan to make worship of the Archons the global one-world religion. Infiltration of Satanism into modern ‘culture’, especially among the young, through music videos, stage shows and other means, is all part of this.

Nag Hammadi texts describe Yaldabaoth and the Archons in their prime form as energy – consciousness – and say they can take form if they choose in the same way that consciousness takes form as a human. Yaldabaoth is called ‘formless’ and represents a deeply inverted, distorted and chaotic state of consciousness which seeks to attach to humans and turn them into a likeness of itself in an attempt at assimilation. For that to happen it has to manipulate

humans into low frequency mental and emotional states that match its own. Archons can certainly appear in human form and this is the origin of the psychopathic personality. The energetic distortion Gnostics called Yaldabaoth is psychopathy. When psychopathic Archons take human form that human will be a psychopath as an expression of Yaldabaoth consciousness. Cult psychopaths are Archons in human form. The principle is the same as that portrayed in the 2009 *Avatar* movie when the American military travelled to a fictional Earth-like moon called Pandora in the Alpha Centauri star system to infiltrate a society of blue people, or Na'vi, by hiding within bodies that looked like the Na'vi. Archons posing as humans have a particular hybrid information field, part human, part Archon, (the ancient 'demigods') which processes information in a way that manifests behaviour to match their psychopathic evil, lack of empathy and compassion, and stops them being influenced by the empathy, compassion and love that a fully-human information field is capable of expressing. Cult bloodlines interbreed, be they royalty or dark suits, for this reason and you have their obsession with incest. Interbreeding with full-blown humans would dilute the Archontic energy field that guarantees psychopathy in its representatives in the human realm.

Gnostic writings say the main non-human forms that Archons take are *serpentine* (what I have called for decades 'reptilian' amid unbounded ridicule from the Archontically-programmed) and what Gnostics describe as 'an unborn baby or foetus with grey skin and dark, unmoving eyes'. This is an excellent representation of the ET 'Greys' of UFO folklore which large numbers of people claim to have seen and been abducted by – Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa among them. I agree with those that believe in extraterrestrial or interdimensional visitations today and for thousands of years past. No wonder with their advanced knowledge and technological capability they were perceived and worshipped as gods for technological and other 'miracles' they appeared to perform. Imagine someone arriving in a culture disconnected from the modern world with a smartphone and computer. They would be

seen as a ‘god’ capable of ‘miracles’. The Renegade Mind, however, wants to know the source of everything and not only the way that source manifests as human or non-human. In the same way that a Renegade Mind seeks the original source material for the ‘Covid virus’ to see if what is claimed is true. The original source of Archons in form is consciousness – the distorted state of consciousness known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth.

‘Revolt from God’ is energetic disconnection

Where I am going next will make a lot of sense of religious texts and ancient legends relating to ‘Satan’, Lucifer’ and the ‘gods’. Gnostic descriptions sync perfectly with the themes of my own research over the years in how they describe a consciousness distortion seeking to impose itself on human consciousness. I’ve referred to the core of infinite awareness in previous books as Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself. By that I mean a level of awareness that knows that it is all awareness and is aware of all awareness. From here comes the frequency of love in its true sense and balance which is what love is on one level – the balance of all forces into a single whole called Oneness and Isness. The more we disconnect from this state of love that many call ‘God’ the constituent parts of that Oneness start to unravel and express themselves as a part and not a whole. They become individualised as intellect, mind, selfishness, hatred, envy, desire for power over others, and such like. This is not a problem in the greater scheme in that ‘God’, the *All That Is*, can experience all these possibilities through different expressions of itself including humans. What we as expressions of the whole experience the *All That Is* experiences. We are the *All That Is* experiencing itself. As we withdraw from that state of Oneness we disconnect from its influence and things can get very unpleasant and very stupid. Archontic consciousness is at the extreme end of that. It has so disconnected from the influence of Oneness that it has become an inversion of unity and love, an inversion of everything, an inversion of life itself. Evil is appropriately live written backwards. Archontic consciousness is obsessed with death, an inversion of life,

and so its manifestations in Satanism are obsessed with death. They use inverted symbols in their rituals such as the inverted pentagram and cross. Sabbatians as Archontic consciousness incarnate invert Judaism and every other religion and culture they infiltrate. They seek disunity and chaos and they fear unity and harmony as they fear love like garlic to a vampire. As a result the Cult, Archons incarnate, act with such evil, psychopathy and lack of empathy and compassion disconnected as they are from the source of love. How could Bill Gates and the rest of the Archontic psychopaths do what they have to human society in the 'Covid' era with all the death, suffering and destruction involved and have no emotional consequence for the impact on others? Now you know. Why have Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki and company callously censored information warning about the dangers of the 'vaccine' while thousands have been dying and having severe, sometimes life-changing reactions? Now you know. Why have Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance and their like around the world been using case and death figures they're aware are fraudulent to justify lockdowns and all the deaths and destroyed lives that have come from that? Now you know. Why did Christian Drosten produce and promote a 'testing' protocol that he knew couldn't test for infectious disease which led to a global human catastrophe. Now you know. The Archontic mind doesn't give a shit ([Fig 17](#)). I personally think that Gates and major Cult insiders are a form of AI cyborg that the Archons want humans to become.

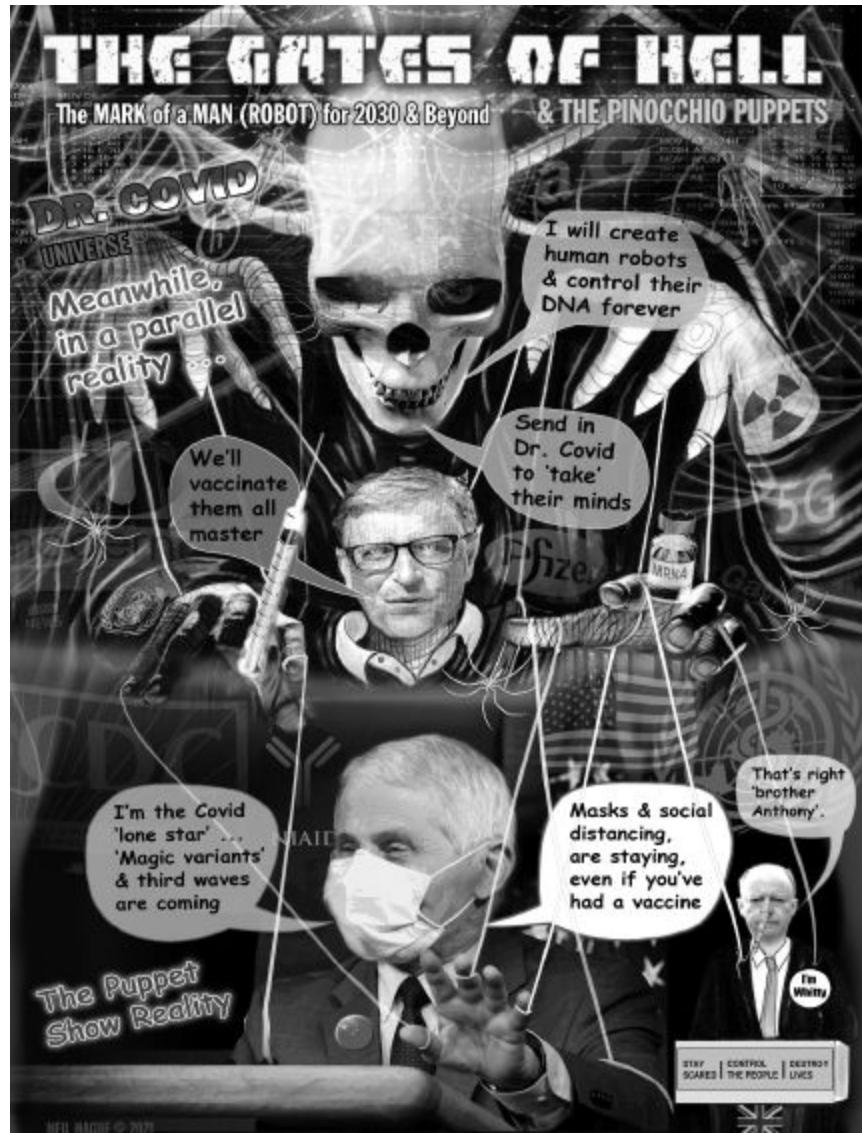


Figure 17: Artist Neil Hague's version of the 'Covid' hierarchy.

Human batteries

A state of such inversion does have its consequences, however. The level of disconnection from the Source of All means that you withdraw from that source of energetic sustenance and creativity. This means that you have to find your own supply of energetic power and it has – *us*. When the Morpheus character in the first *Matrix* movie held up a battery he spoke a profound truth when he said: ‘The Matrix is a computer-generated dream world built to keep us under control in order to change the human being into one of

these.' The statement was true in all respects. We do live in a technologically-generated virtual reality simulation (more very shortly) and we have been manipulated to be an energy source for Archontic consciousness. The Disney-Pixar animated movie *Monsters, Inc.* in 2001 symbolised the dynamic when monsters in their world had no energy source and they would enter the human world to terrify children in their beds, catch the child's scream, terror (low-vibrational frequencies), and take that energy back to power the monster world. The lead character you might remember was a single giant eye and the symbolism of the Cult's all-seeing eye was obvious. Every thought and emotion is broadcast as a frequency unique to that thought and emotion. Feelings of love and joy, empathy and compassion, are high, quick, frequencies while fear, depression, anxiety, suffering and hate are low, slow, dense frequencies. Which kind do you think Archontic consciousness can connect with and absorb? In such a low and dense frequency state there's no way it can connect with the energy of love and joy. Archons can only feed off energy compatible with their own frequency and they and their Cult agents want to delete the human world of love and joy and manipulate the transmission of low vibrational frequencies through low-vibrational human mental and emotional states. *We are their energy source.* Wars are energetic banquets to the Archons – a world war even more so – and think how much low-frequency mental and emotional energy has been generated from the consequences for humanity of the 'Covid' hoax orchestrated by Archons incarnate like Gates.

The ancient practice of human sacrifice 'to the gods', continued in secret today by the Cult, is based on the same principle. 'The gods' are Archontic consciousness in different forms and the sacrifice is induced into a state of intense terror to generate the energy the Archontic frequency can absorb. Incarnate Archons in the ritual drink the blood which contains an adrenaline they crave which floods into the bloodstream when people are terrorised. Most of the sacrifices, ancient and modern, are children and the theme of 'sacrificing young virgins to the gods' is just code for children. They

have a particular pre-puberty energy that Archons want more than anything and the energy of the young in general is their target. The California Department of Education wants students to chant the names of Aztec gods (Archontic gods) once worshipped in human sacrifice rituals in a curriculum designed to encourage them to ‘challenge racist, bigoted, discriminatory, imperialist/colonial beliefs’, join ‘social movements that struggle for social justice’, and ‘build new possibilities for a post-racist, post-systemic racism society’. It’s the usual Woke crap that inverts racism and calls it anti-racism. In this case solidarity with ‘indigenous tribes’ is being used as an excuse to chant the names of ‘gods’ to which people were sacrificed (and still are in secret). What an example of Woke’s inability to see beyond black and white, us and them, They condemn the colonisation of these tribal cultures by Europeans (quite right), but those cultures sacrificing people including children to their ‘gods’, and mass murdering untold numbers as the Aztecs did, is just fine. One chant is to the Aztec god Tezcatlipoca who had a man sacrificed to him in the 5th month of the Aztec calendar. His heart was cut out and he was eaten. Oh, that’s okay then. Come on children … after three … Other sacrificial ‘gods’ for the young to chant their allegiance include Quetzalcoatl, Huitzilopochtli and Xipe Totec. The curriculum says that ‘chants, affirmations, and energizers can be used to bring the class together, build unity around ethnic studies principles and values, and to reinvigorate the class following a lesson that may be emotionally taxing or even when student engagement may appear to be low’. Well, that’s the cover story, anyway. Chanting and mantras are the repetition of a particular frequency generated from the vocal cords and chanting the names of these Archontic ‘gods’ tunes you into their frequency. That is the last thing you want when it allows for energetic synchronisation, attachment and perceptual influence. Initiates chant the names of their ‘Gods’ in their rituals for this very reason.

Vampires of the Woke

Paedophilia is another way that Archons absorb the energy of children. Paedophiles possessed by Archontic consciousness are used as the conduit during sexual abuse for discarnate Archons to vampire the energy of the young they desire so much. Stupendous numbers of children disappear every year never to be seen again although you would never know from the media. Imagine how much low-vibrational energy has been generated by children during the 'Covid' hoax when so many have become depressed and psychologically destroyed to the point of killing themselves.

Shocking numbers of children are now taken by the state from loving parents to be handed to others. I can tell you from long experience of researching this since 1996 that many end up with paedophiles and assets of the Cult through corrupt and Cult-owned social services which in the reframing era has hired many psychopaths and emotionless automatons to do the job. Children are even stolen to order using spurious reasons to take them by the corrupt and secret (because they're corrupt) 'family courts'. I have written in detail in other books, starting with *The Biggest Secret* in 1997, about the ubiquitous connections between the political, corporate, government, intelligence and military elites (Cult operatives) and Satanism and paedophilia. If you go deep enough both networks have an interlocking leadership. The Woke mentality has been developed by the Cult for many reasons: To promote almost every aspect of its agenda; to hijack the traditional political left and turn it fascist; to divide and rule; and to target agenda pushbackers. But there are other reasons which relate to what I am describing here. How many happy and joyful Wokers do you ever see especially at the extreme end? They are a mental and psychological mess consumed by emotional stress and constantly emotionally cocked for the next explosion of indignation at someone referring to a female as a female. They are walking, talking, batteries as Morpheus might say emitting frequencies which both enslave them in low-vibrational bubbles of perceptual limitation and feed the Archons. Add to this the hatred claimed to be love; fascism claimed to 'anti-fascism', racism claimed to be 'anti-racism';

exclusion claimed to inclusion; and the abuse-filled Internet trolling. You have a purpose-built Archontic energy system with not a wind turbine in sight and all founded on Archontic *inversion*. We have whole generations now manipulated to serve the Archons with their actions and energy. They will be doing so their entire adult lives unless they snap out of their Archon-induced trance. Is it really a surprise that Cult billionaires and corporations put so much money their way? Where is the energy of joy and laughter, including laughing at yourself which is confirmation of your own emotional security? Mark Twain said: 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter.' We must use it all the time. Woke has destroyed comedy because it has no humour, no joy, sense of irony, or self-deprecation. Its energy is dense and intense. *Mmmmm*, lunch says the Archontic frequency. Rudolf Steiner (1861-1925) was the Austrian philosopher and famous esoteric thinker who established Waldorf education or Steiner schools to treat children like unique expressions of consciousness and not minds to be programmed with the perceptions determined by authority. I'd been writing about this energy vampiring for decades when I was sent in 2016 a quote by Steiner. He was spot on:

There are beings in the spiritual realms for whom anxiety and fear emanating from human beings offer welcome food. When humans have no anxiety and fear, then these creatures starve. If fear and anxiety radiates from people and they break out in panic, then these creatures find welcome nutrition and they become more and more powerful. These beings are hostile towards humanity. Everything that feeds on negative feelings, on anxiety, fear and superstition, despair or doubt, are in reality hostile forces in super-sensible worlds, launching cruel attacks on human beings, while they are being fed ... These are exactly the feelings that belong to contemporary culture and materialism; because it estranges people from the spiritual world, it is especially suited to evoke hopelessness and fear of the unknown in people, thereby calling up the above mentioned hostile forces against them.

Pause for a moment from this perspective and reflect on what has happened in the world since the start of 2020. Not only will pennies drop, but billion dollar bills. We see the same theme from Don Juan Matus, a Yaqui Indian shaman in Mexico and the information source for Peruvian-born writer, Carlos Castaneda, who wrote a series of

books from the 1960s to 1990s. Don Juan described the force manipulating human society and his name for the Archons was the predator:

We have a predator that came from the depths of the cosmos and took over the rule of our lives. Human beings are its prisoners. The predator is our lord and master. It has rendered us docile, helpless. If we want to protest, it suppresses our protest. If we want to act independently, it demands that we don't do so ... indeed we are held prisoner!

They took us over because we are food to them, and they squeeze us mercilessly because we are their sustenance. Just as we rear chickens in coops, the predators rear us in human coops, humaneros. Therefore, their food is always available to them.

Different cultures, different eras, same recurring theme.

The 'ennoia' dilemma

Nag Hammadi Gnostic manuscripts say that Archon consciousness has no 'ennoia'. This is directly translated as 'intentionality', but I'll use the term 'creative imagination'. The *All That Is* in awareness of itself is the source of all creativity – all possibility – and the more disconnected you are from that source the more you are subsequently denied 'creative imagination'. Given that Archon consciousness is almost entirely disconnected it severely lacks creativity and has to rely on far more mechanical processes of thought and exploit the creative potential of those that do have 'ennoia'. You can see cases of this throughout human society. Archon consciousness almost entirely dominates the global banking system and if we study how that system works you will appreciate what I mean. Banks manifest 'money' out of nothing by issuing lines of 'credit' which is 'money' that has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. It's a confidence trick. If you think 'credit' figures-on-a-screen 'money' is worth anything you accept it as payment. If you don't then the whole system collapses through lack of confidence in the value of that 'money'. Archontic bankers with no 'ennoia' are 'lending' 'money' that doesn't exist to humans that *do* have creativity – those that have the inspired ideas and create businesses and products. Archon banking feeds off human creativity

which it controls through ‘money’ creation and debt. Humans have the creativity and Archons exploit that for their own benefit and control while having none themselves. Archon Internet platforms like Facebook claim joint copyright of everything that creative users post and while Archontic minds like Zuckerberg may officially head that company it will be human creatives on the staff that provide the creative inspiration. When you have limitless ‘money’ you can then buy other companies established by creative humans. Witness the acquisition record of Facebook, Google and their like. Survey the Archon-controlled music industry and you see non-creative dark suit executives making their fortune from the human creativity of their artists. The cases are endless. Research the history of people like Gates and Zuckerberg and how their empires were built on exploiting the creativity of others. Archon minds cannot create out of nothing, but they are skilled (because they have to be) in what Gnostic texts call ‘countermimicry’. They can imitate, but not innovate. Sabbatians trawl the creativity of others through backdoors they install in computer systems through their cybersecurity systems. Archon-controlled China is globally infamous for stealing intellectual property and I remember how Hong Kong, now part of China, became notorious for making counterfeit copies of the creativity of others – ‘countermimicry’. With the now pervasive and all-seeing surveillance systems able to infiltrate any computer you can appreciate the potential for Archons to vampire the creativity of humans. Author John Lamb Lash wrote in his book about the Nag Hammadi texts, *Not In His Image*:

Although they cannot originate anything, because they lack the divine factor of ennoia (intentionality), Archons can imitate with a vengeance. Their expertise is simulation (HAL, virtual reality). The Demiurge [Yaldabaoth] fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns [of the original] ... His construction is celestial kitsch, like the fake Italianate villa of a Mafia don complete with militant angels to guard every portal.

This brings us to something that I have been speaking about since the turn of the millennium. Our reality is a simulation; a virtual reality that we think is real. No, I’m not kidding.

Human reality? Well, virtually

I had pondered for years about whether our reality is ‘real’ or some kind of construct. I remembered being immensely affected on a visit as a small child in the late 1950s to the then newly-opened Planetarium on the Marylebone Road in London which is now closed and part of the adjacent Madame Tussauds wax museum. It was in the middle of the day, but when the lights went out there was the night sky projected in the Planetarium’s domed ceiling and it appeared to be so real. The experience never left me and I didn’t know why until around the turn of the millennium when I became certain that our ‘night sky’ and entire reality is a projection, a virtual reality, akin to the illusory world portrayed in the *Matrix* movies. I looked at the sky one day in this period and it appeared to me like the domed roof of the Planetarium. The release of the first *Matrix* movie in 1999 also provided a synchronistic and perfect visual representation of where my mind had been going for a long time. I hadn’t come across the Gnostic Nag Hammadi texts then. When I did years later the correlation was once again astounding. As I read Gnostic accounts from 1,600 years and more earlier it was clear that they were describing the same simulation phenomenon. They tell how the Yaldabaoth ‘Demiurge’ and Archons created a ‘bad copy’ of original reality to rule over all that were captured by its illusions and the body was a prison to trap consciousness in the ‘bad copy’ fake reality. Read how Gnostics describe the ‘bad copy’ and update that to current times and they are referring to what we would call today a virtual reality simulation.

Author John Lamb Lash said ‘the Demiurge fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns’ of the original through expertise in ‘HAL’ or virtual reality simulation. Fractal patterns are part of the energetic information construct of our reality, a sort of blueprint. If these patterns were copied in computer terms it would indeed give you a copy of a ‘natural’ reality in a non-natural frequency and digital form. The principle is the same as making a copy of a website. The original website still exists, but now you can change the copy version to make it whatever you like and it can

become very different to the original website. Archons have done this with our reality, a *synthetic* copy of prime reality that still exists beyond the frequency walls of the simulation. Trapped within the illusions of this synthetic Matrix, however, were and are human consciousness and other expressions of prime reality and this is why the Archons via the Cult are seeking to make the human body synthetic and give us synthetic AI minds to complete the job of turning the entire reality synthetic including what we perceive to be the natural world. To quote Kurzweil: ‘Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.’ Yes, *synthetic* ‘creatures’ just as ‘Covid’ and other genetically-manipulating ‘vaccines’ are designed to make the human body synthetic. From this perspective it is obvious why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to infuse synthetic material into every human with their ‘Covid’ scam.

Let there be (electromagnetic) light

Yaldabaoth, the force that created the simulation, or Matrix, makes sense of the Gnostic reference to ‘The Great Architect’ and its use by Cult Freemasonry as the name of its deity. The designer of the Matrix in the movies is called ‘The Architect’ and that trilogy is jam-packed with symbolism relating to these subjects. I have contended for years that the angry Old Testament God (Yaldabaoth) is the ‘God’ being symbolically ‘quoted’ in the opening of Genesis as ‘creating the world’. This is not the creation of prime reality – it’s the creation of the *simulation*. The Genesis ‘God’ says: ‘Let there be Light: and there was light.’ But what is this ‘Light’? I have said for decades that the speed of light (186,000 miles per second) is not the fastest speed possible as claimed by mainstream science and is in fact the frequency walls or outer limits of the Matrix. You can’t have a fastest or slowest anything within all possibility when everything is possible. The human body is encoded to operate within the speed of light or *within the simulation* and thus we see only the tiny frequency band of visible *light*. Near-death experiencers who perceive reality outside the body during temporary ‘death’ describe a very different

form of light and this is supported by the Nag Hammadi texts. Prime reality beyond the simulation ('Upper Aeons' to the Gnostics) is described as a realm of incredible beauty, bliss, love and harmony – a realm of 'watery light' that is so powerful 'there are no shadows'. Our false reality of Archon control, which Gnostics call the 'Lower Aeons', is depicted as a realm with a different kind of 'light' and described in terms of chaos, 'Hell', 'the Abyss' and 'Outer Darkness', where trapped souls are tormented and manipulated by demons (relate that to the 'Covid' hoax alone). The watery light theme can be found in near-death accounts and it is not the same as *simulation* 'light' which is electromagnetic or radiation light within the speed of light – the 'Lower Aeons'. Simulation 'light' is the 'luminous fire' associated by Gnostics with the Archons. The Bible refers to Yaldabaoth as 'that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world' (Revelation 12:9). I think that making a simulated copy of prime reality ('countermimicry') and changing it dramatically while all the time manipulating humanity to believe it to be real could probably meet the criteria of deceiving the whole world. Then we come to the Cult god Lucifer – the *Light Bringer*. Lucifer is symbolic of Yaldabaoth, the bringer of radiation light that forms the bad copy simulation within the speed of light. 'He' is symbolised by the lighted torch held by the Statue of Liberty and in the name 'Illuminati'. Sabbatian-Frankism declares that Lucifer is the true god and Lucifer is the real god of Freemasonry honoured as their 'Great or Grand Architect of the Universe' (simulation).

I would emphasise, too, the way Archontic technologically-generated luminous fire of radiation has deluged our environment since I was a kid in the 1950s and changed the nature of The Field with which we constantly interact. Through that interaction technological radiation is changing us. The Smart Grid is designed to operate with immense levels of communication power with 5G expanding across the world and 6G, 7G, in the process of development. Radiation is the simulation and the Archontic manipulation system. Why wouldn't the Archon Cult wish to unleash radiation upon us to an ever-greater extreme to form

Kurzweil's 'cloud'? The plan for a synthetic human is related to the need to cope with levels of radiation beyond even anything we've seen so far. Biological humans would not survive the scale of radiation they have in their script. The Smart Grid is a technological sub-reality within the technological simulation to further disconnect five-sense perception from expanded consciousness. It's a technological prison of the mind.

Infusing the 'spirit of darkness'

A recurring theme in religion and native cultures is the manipulation of human genetics by a non-human force and most famously recorded as the biblical 'sons of god' (the gods plural in the original) who interbred with the daughters of men. The Nag Hammadi *Apocryphon of John* tells the same story this way:

He [Yaldabaoth] sent his angels [Archons/demons] to the daughters of men, that they might take some of them for themselves and raise offspring for their enjoyment. And at first they did not succeed. When they had no success, they gathered together again and they made a plan together ... And the angels changed themselves in their likeness into the likeness of their mates, filling them with the spirit of darkness, which they had mixed for them, and with evil ... And they took women and begot children out of the darkness according to the likeness of their spirit.

Possession when a discarnate entity takes over a human body is an age-old theme and continues today. It's very real and I've seen it. Satanic and secret society rituals can create an energetic environment in which entities can attach to initiates and I've heard many stories of how people have changed their personality after being initiated even into lower levels of the Freemasons. I have been inside three Masonic temples, one at a public open day and two by just walking in when there was no one around to stop me. They were in Ryde, the town where I live, Birmingham, England, when I was with a group, and Boston, Massachusetts. They all felt the same energetically – dark, dense, low-vibrational and sinister. Demonic attachment can happen while the initiate has no idea what is going on. To them it's just a ritual to get in the Masons and do a bit of good

business. In the far more extreme rituals of Satanism human possession is even more powerful and they are designed to make possession possible. The hierarchy of the Cult is dictated by the power and perceived status of the possessing Archon. In this way the Archon hierarchy becomes the Cult hierarchy. Once the entity has attached it can influence perception and behaviour and if it attaches to the extreme then so much of its energy (information) infuses into the body information field that the hologram starts to reflect the nature of the possessing entity. This is the *Exorcist* movie type of possession when facial features change and it's known as shapeshifting. Islam's Jinn are said to be invisible tricksters who change shape, 'whisper', confuse and take human form. These are all traits of the Archons and other versions of the same phenomenon. Extreme possession could certainty infuse the 'spirit of darkness' into a partner during sex as the Nag Hammadi texts appear to describe. Such an infusion can change genetics which is also energetic information. Human genetics is information and the 'spirit of darkness' is information. Mix one with the other and change must happen. Islam has the concept of a 'Jinn baby' through possession of the mother and by Jinn taking human form. There are many ways that human genetics can be changed and remember that Archons have been aware all along of advanced techniques to do this. What is being done in human society today – and far more – was known about by Archons at the time of the 'fallen ones' and their other versions described in religions and cultures.

Archons and their human-world Cult are obsessed with genetics as we see today and they know this dictates how information is processed into perceived reality during a human life. They needed to produce a human form that would decode the simulation and this is symbolically known as 'Adam and Eve' who left the 'garden' (prime reality) and 'fell' into Matrix reality. The simulation is not a 'physical' construct (there is no 'physical'); it is a source of information. Think Wi-Fi again. The simulation is an energetic field encoded with information and body-brain systems are designed to decode that information encoded in wave or frequency form which

is transmitted to the brain as electrical signals. These are decoded by the brain to construct our sense of reality – an illusory ‘physical’ world that only exists in the brain or the mind. Virtual reality games mimic this process using the same sensory decoding system. Information is fed to the senses to decode a virtual reality that can appear so real, but isn’t (Figs 18 and 19). Some scientists believe – and I agree with them – that what we perceive as ‘physical’ reality only exists when we are looking or observing. The act of perception or focus triggers the decoding systems which turn waveform information into holographic reality. When we are not observing something our reality reverts from a holographic state to a waveform state. This relates to the same principle as a falling tree not making a noise unless someone is there to hear it or decode it. The concept makes sense from the simulation perspective. A computer is not decoding all the information in a Wi-Fi field all the time and only decodes or brings into reality on the screen that part of Wi-Fi that it’s decoding – focusing upon – at that moment.



Figure 18: Virtual reality technology ‘hacks’ into the body’s five-sense decoding system.



Figure 19: The result can be experienced as very ‘real’.

Interestingly, Professor Donald Hoffman at the Department of Cognitive Sciences at the University of California, Irvine, says that our experienced reality is like a computer interface that shows us only the level with which we interact while hiding all that exists beyond it: ‘Evolution shaped us with a user interface that hides the truth. Nothing that we see is the truth – the very language of space and time and objects is the wrong language to describe reality.’ He is correct in what he says on so many levels. Space and time are not a universal reality. They are a phenomenon of decoded *simulation* reality as part of the process of enslaving our sense of reality. Near-death experiencers report again and again how space and time did not exist as we perceive them once they were free of the body – body decoding systems. You can appreciate from this why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to entrap human attention in the five senses where we are in the Matrix and of the Matrix. Opening your mind to expanded states of awareness takes you beyond the information confines of the simulation and you become aware of knowledge and insights denied to you before. This is what we call ‘awakening’ – *awakening from the Matrix* – and in the final chapter I will relate this to current events.

Where are the ‘aliens’?

A simulation would explain the so-called ‘Fermi Paradox’ named after Italian physicist Enrico Fermi (1901-1954) who created the first nuclear reactor. He considered the question of why there is such a lack of extraterrestrial activity when there are so many stars and planets in an apparently vast universe; but what if the night sky that we see, or think we do, is a simulated projection as I say? If you control the simulation and your aim is to hold humanity fast in essential ignorance would you want other forms of life including advanced life coming and going sharing information with humanity? Or would you want them to believe they were isolated and apparently alone? Themes of human isolation and apartness are common whether they be the perception of a lifeless universe or the fascist isolation laws of the ‘Covid’ era. Paradoxically the very

existence of a simulation means that we are not alone when some force had to construct it. My view is that experiences that people have reported all over the world for centuries with Reptilians and Grey entities are Archon phenomena as Nag Hammadi texts describe; and that benevolent 'alien' interactions are non-human groups that come in and out of the simulation by overcoming Archon attempts to keep them out. It should be highlighted, too, that Reptilians and Greys are obsessed with *genetics* and *technology* as related by cultural accounts and those who say they have been abducted by them. Technology is their way of overcoming some of the limitations in their creative potential and our technology-driven and controlled human society of today is *archetypical* Archon-Reptilian-Grey modus operandi. Technocracy is really *Archontocracy*. The Universe does not have to be as big as it appears with a simulation. There is no space or distance only information decoded into holographic reality. What we call 'space' is only the absence of holographic 'objects' and that 'space' is The Field of energetic information which connects everything into a single whole. The same applies with the artificially-generated information field of the simulation. The Universe is not big or small as a physical reality. It is decoded information, that's all, and its perceived size is decided by the way the simulation is encoded to make it appear. The entire night sky as we perceive it only exists in our brain and so where are those 'millions of light years'? The 'stars' on the ceiling of the Planetarium looked a vast distance away.

There's another point to mention about 'aliens'. I have been highlighting since the 1990s the plan to stage a fake 'alien invasion' to justify the centralisation of global power and a world military. Nazi scientist Werner von Braun, who was taken to America by Operation Paperclip after World War Two to help found NASA, told his American assistant Dr Carol Rosin about the Cult agenda when he knew he was dying in 1977. Rosin said that he told her about a sequence that would lead to total human control by a one-world government. This included threats from terrorism, rogue nations, meteors and asteroids before finally an 'alien invasion'. All of these

things, von Braun said, would be bogus and what I would refer to as a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Keep this in mind when ‘the aliens are coming’ is the new mantra. The aliens are not coming – they are *already here* and they have infiltrated human society while looking human. French-Canadian investigative journalist Serge Monast said in 1994 that he had uncovered a NASA/military operation called Project Blue Beam which fits with what Werner von Braun predicted. Monast died of a ‘heart attack’ in 1996 the day after he was arrested and spent a night in prison. He was 51. He said Blue Beam was a plan to stage an alien invasion that would include religious figures beamed holographically into the sky as part of a global manipulation to usher in a ‘new age’ of worshipping what I would say is the Cult ‘god’ Yaldabaoth in a one-world religion. Fake holographic asteroids are also said to be part of the plan which again syncs with von Braun. How could you stage an illusory threat from asteroids unless they were holographic inserts? This is pretty straightforward given the advanced technology outside the public arena and the fact that our ‘physical’ reality is holographic anyway. Information fields would be projected and we would decode them into the illusion of a ‘physical’ asteroid. If they can sell a global ‘pandemic’ with a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist what will humans not believe if government and media tell them?

All this is particularly relevant as I write with the Pentagon planning to release in June, 2021, information about ‘UFO sightings’. I have been following the UFO story since the early 1990s and the common theme throughout has been government and military denials and cover up. More recently, however, the Pentagon has suddenly become more talkative and apparently open with Air Force pilot radar images released of unexplained craft moving and changing direction at speeds well beyond anything believed possible with human technology. Then, in March, 2021, former Director of National Intelligence John Ratcliffe said a Pentagon report months later in June would reveal a great deal of information about UFO sightings unknown to the public. He said the report would have ‘massive implications’. The order to do this was included bizarrely

in a \$2.3 trillion ‘coronavirus’ relief and government funding bill passed by the Trump administration at the end of 2020. I would add some serious notes of caution here. I have been pointing out since the 1990s that the US military and intelligence networks have long had craft – ‘flying saucers’ or anti-gravity craft – which any observer would take to be extraterrestrial in origin. Keeping this knowledge from the public allows craft flown by *humans* to be perceived as alien visitations. I am not saying that ‘aliens’ do not exist. I would be the last one to say that, but we have to be streetwise here. President Ronald Reagan told the UN General Assembly in 1987: ‘I occasionally think how quickly our differences worldwide would vanish if we were facing an alien threat from outside this world.’ That’s the idea. Unite against a common ‘enemy’ with a common purpose behind your ‘saviour force’ (the Cult) as this age-old technique of mass manipulation goes global.

Science moves this way ...

I could find only one other person who was discussing the simulation hypothesis publicly when I concluded it was real. This was Nick Bostrom, a Swedish-born philosopher at the University of Oxford, who has explored for many years the possibility that human reality is a computer simulation although his version and mine are not the same. Today the simulation and holographic reality hypothesis have increasingly entered the scientific mainstream. Well, the more open-minded mainstream, that is. Here are a few of the ever-gathering examples. American nuclear physicist Silas Beane led a team of physicists at the University of Bonn in Germany pursuing the question of whether we live in a simulation. They concluded that we probably do and it was likely based on a lattice of cubes. They found that cosmic rays align with that specific pattern. The team highlighted the Greisen-Zatsepin-Kuzmin (GZK) limit which refers to cosmic ray particle interaction with cosmic background radiation that creates an apparent boundary for cosmic ray particles. They say in a paper entitled ‘Constraints on the Universe as a Numerical Simulation’ that this ‘pattern of constraint’ is exactly what you

would find with a computer simulation. They also made the point that a simulation would create its own ‘laws of physics’ that would limit possibility. I’ve been making the same point for decades that the *perceived* laws of physics relate only to this reality, or what I would later call the simulation. When designers write codes to create computer and virtual reality games they are the equivalent of the laws of physics for that game. Players interact within the limitations laid out by the coding. In the same way those who wrote the codes for the simulation decided the laws of physics that would apply. These can be overridden by expanded states of consciousness, but not by those enslaved in only five-sense awareness where simulation codes rule. Overriding the codes is what people call ‘miracles’. They are not. They are bypassing the encoded limits of the simulation. A population caught in simulation perception would have no idea that this was their plight. As the Bonn paper said: ‘Like a prisoner in a pitch-black cell we would not be able to see the “walls” of our prison.’ That’s true if people remain mesmerised by the five senses. Open to expanded awareness and those walls become very clear. The main one is the speed of light.

American theoretical physicist James Gates is another who has explored the simulation question and found considerable evidence to support the idea. Gates was Professor of Physics at the University of Maryland, Director of The Center for String and Particle Theory, and on Barack Obama’s Council of Advisors on Science and Technology. He and his team found *computer codes* of digital data embedded in the fabric of our reality. They relate to on-off electrical charges of 1 and 0 in the binary system used by computers. ‘We have no idea what they are doing there’, Gates said. They found within the energetic fabric mathematical sequences known as error-correcting codes or block codes that ‘reboot’ data to its original state or ‘default settings’ when something knocks it out of sync. Gates was asked if he had found a set of equations embedded in our reality indistinguishable from those that drive search engines and browsers and he said: ‘That is correct.’ Rich Terrile, director of the Centre for Evolutionary Computation and Automated Design at NASA’s Jet

Propulsion Laboratory, has said publicly that he believes the Universe is a digital hologram that must have been created by a form of intelligence. I agree with that in every way. Waveform information is delivered electrically by the senses to the brain which constructs a *digital* holographic reality that we call the ‘world’. This digital level of reality can be read by the esoteric art of numerology. Digital holograms are at the cutting edge of holographics today. We have digital technology everywhere designed to access and manipulate our digital level of perceived reality. Synthetic mRNA in ‘Covid vaccines’ has a digital component to manipulate the body’s digital ‘operating system’.

Reality is numbers

How many know that our reality can be broken down to numbers and codes that are the same as computer games? Max Tegmark, a physicist at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), is the author of *Our Mathematical Universe* in which he lays out how reality can be entirely described by numbers and maths in the way that a video game is encoded with the ‘physics’ of computer games. Our world and computer virtual reality are essentially the same.

Tegmark imagines the perceptions of characters in an advanced computer game when the graphics are so good they don’t know they are in a game. They think they can bump into real objects (electromagnetic resistance in our reality), fall in love and feel emotions like excitement. When they began to study the apparently ‘physical world’ of the video game they would realise that everything was made of pixels (which have been found in our energetic reality as must be the case when on one level our world is digital). What computer game characters thought was physical ‘stuff’, Tegmark said, could actually be broken down into numbers:

And we’re exactly in this situation in our world. We look around and it doesn’t seem that mathematical at all, but everything we see is made out of elementary particles like quarks and electrons. And what properties does an electron have? Does it have a smell or a colour or a texture? No! ... We physicists have come up with geeky names for [Electron] properties, like

electric charge, or spin, or lepton number, but the electron doesn't care what we call it, the properties are just numbers.

This is the illusory reality Gnostics were describing. This is the simulation. The A, C, G, and T codes of DNA have a binary value – A and C = 0 while G and T = 1. This has to be when the simulation is digital and the body must be digital to interact with it. Recurring mathematical sequences are encoded throughout reality and the body. They include the Fibonacci sequence in which the two previous numbers are added to get the next one, as in ... 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, etc. The sequence is encoded in the human face and body, proportions of animals, DNA, seed heads, pine cones, trees, shells, spiral galaxies, hurricanes and the number of petals in a flower. The list goes on and on. There are fractal patterns – a 'never-ending pattern that is infinitely complex and self-similar across all scales in the as above, so below, principle of holograms. These and other famous recurring geometrical and mathematical sequences such as Phi, Pi, Golden Mean, Golden Ratio and Golden Section are *computer codes* of the simulation. I had to laugh and give my head a shake the day I finished this book and it went into the production stage. I was sent an article in *Scientific American* published in April, 2021, with the headline 'Confirmed! We Live in a Simulation'. Two decades after I first said our reality is a simulation and the speed of light is its outer limit the article suggested that we do live in a simulation and that the speed of light is its outer limit. I left school at 15 and never passed a major exam in my life while the writer was up to his eyes in qualifications. As I will explain in the final chapter *knowing* is far better than thinking and they come from very different sources. The article rightly connected the speed of light to the processing speed of the 'Matrix' and said what has been in my books all this time ... 'If we are in a simulation, as it appears, then space is an abstract property written in code. It is not real'. No it's not and if we live in a simulation something created it and it wasn't *us*. 'That David Icke says we are manipulated by aliens' – he's crackers.'

Wow ...

The reality that humanity thinks is so real is an illusion. Politicians, governments, scientists, doctors, academics, law enforcement, media, school and university curriculums, on and on, are all founded on a world that *does not exist* except as a simulated prison cell. Is it such a stretch to accept that 'Covid' doesn't exist when our entire 'physical' reality doesn't exist? Revealed here is the knowledge kept under raps in the Cult networks of compartmentalised secrecy to control humanity's sense of reality by inducing the population to believe in a reality that's not real. If it wasn't so tragic in its experiential consequences the whole thing would be hysterically funny. None of this is new to Renegade Minds. Ancient Greek philosopher Plato (about 428 to about 347BC) was a major influence on Gnostic belief and he described the human plight thousands of years ago with his Allegory of the Cave. He told the symbolic story of prisoners living in a cave who had never been outside. They were chained and could only see one wall of the cave while behind them was a fire that they could not see. Figures walked past the fire casting shadows on the prisoners' wall and those moving shadows became their sense of reality. Some prisoners began to study the shadows and were considered experts on them (today's academics and scientists), but what they studied was only an illusion (today's academics and scientists). A prisoner escaped from the cave and saw reality as it really is. When he returned to report this revelation they didn't believe him, called him mad and threatened to kill him if he tried to set them free. Plato's tale is not only a brilliant analogy of the human plight and our illusory reality. It describes, too, the dynamics of the 'Covid' hoax. I have only skimmed the surface of these subjects here. The aim of this book is to crisply connect all essential dots to put what is happening today into its true context. All subject areas and their connections in this chapter are covered in great evidential detail in *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* and *The Answer*.

They say that bewildered people 'can't see the forest for the trees'. Humanity, however, can't see the forest for the *twigs*. The five senses

see only twigs while Renegade Minds can see the forest and it's the forest where the answers lie with the connections that reveals. Breaking free of perceptual programming so the forest can be seen is the way we turn all this around. Not breaking free is how humanity got into this mess. The situation may seem hopeless, but I promise you it's not. We are a perceptual heartbeat from paradise if only we knew.

CHAPTER TWELVE

Escaping Wetiko

Life is simply a vacation from the infinite

Dean Cavanagh

Renegade Minds weave the web of life and events and see common themes in the apparently random. They are always there if you look for them and their pursuit is aided by incredible synchronicity that comes when your mind is open rather than mesmerised by what it thinks it can see.

Infinite awareness is infinite possibility and the more of infinite possibility that we access the more becomes infinitely possible. That may be stating the apparently obvious, but it is a devastatingly-powerful fact that can set us free. We are a point of attention within an infinity of consciousness. The question is how much of that infinity do we choose to access? How much knowledge, insight, awareness, wisdom, do we want to connect with and explore? If your focus is only in the five senses you will be influenced by a fraction of infinite awareness. I mean a range so tiny that it gives new meaning to infinitesimal. Limitation of self-identity and a sense of the possible limit accordingly your range of consciousness. We are what we think we are. Life is what we think it is. The dream is the dreamer and the dreamer is the dream. Buddhist philosophy puts it this way: 'As a thing is viewed, so it appears.' Most humans live in the realm of touch, taste, see, hear, and smell and that's the limit of their sense of the possible and sense of self. Many will follow a religion and speak of a God in his heaven, but their lives are still

dominated by the five senses in their perceptions and actions. The five senses become the arbiter of everything. When that happens all except a smear of infinity is sealed away from influence by the rigid, unyielding, reality bubbles that are the five-sense human or Phantom Self. Archon Cult methodology is to isolate consciousness within five-sense reality – the simulation – and then program that consciousness with a sense of self and the world through a deluge of life-long information designed to instil the desired perception that allows global control. Efforts to do this have increased dramatically with identity politics as identity bubbles are squeezed into the minutiae of five-sense detail which disconnect people even more profoundly from the infinite ‘I’.

Five-sense focus and self-identity are like a firewall that limits access to the infinite realms. You only perceive one radio or television station and no other. We’ll take that literally for a moment. Imagine a vast array of stations giving different information and angles on reality, but you only ever listen to one. Here we have the human plight in which the population is overwhelmingly confined to CultFM. This relates only to the frequency range of CultFM and limits perception and insight to that band – limits *possibility* to that band. It means you are connecting with an almost imperceptibly minuscule range of possibility and creative potential within the infinite Field. It’s a world where everything seems apart from everything else and where synchronicity is rare. Synchronicity is defined in the dictionary as ‘the happening by chance of two or more related or similar events at the same time’. Use of ‘by chance’ betrays a complete misunderstanding of reality. Synchronicity is not ‘by chance’. As people open their minds, or ‘awaken’ to use the term, they notice more and more coincidences in their lives, bits of ‘luck’, apparently miraculous happenings that put them in the right place at the right time with the right people. Days become peppered with ‘fancy meeting you here’ and ‘what are the chances of that?’ My entire life has been lived like this and ever more so since my own colossal awakening in 1990 and 91 which transformed my sense of reality. Synchronicity is not ‘by chance’; it is by accessing expanded

realms of possibility which allow expanded potential for manifestation. People broadcasting the same vibe from the same openness of mind tend to be drawn ‘by chance’ to each other through what I call frequency magnetism and it’s not only people. In the last more than 30 years incredible synchronicity has also led me through the Cult maze to information in so many forms and to crucial personal experiences. These ‘coincidences’ have allowed me to put the puzzle pieces together across an enormous array of subjects and situations. Those who have breached the bubble of five-sense reality will know exactly what I mean and this escape from the perceptual prison cell is open to everyone whenever they make that choice. This may appear super-human when compared with the limitations of ‘human’, but it’s really our natural state. ‘Human’ as currently experienced is consciousness in an unnatural state of induced separation from the infinity of the whole. I’ll come to how this transformation into unity can be made when I have described in more detail the force that holds humanity in servitude by denying this access to infinite self.

The Wetiko factor

I have been talking and writing for decades about the way five-sense mind is systematically barricaded from expanded awareness. I have used the analogy of a computer (five-sense mind) and someone at the keyboard (expanded awareness). Interaction between the computer and the operator is symbolic of the interaction between five-sense mind and expanded awareness. The computer directly experiences the Internet and the operator experiences the Internet via the computer which is how it’s supposed to be – the two working as one. Archons seek to control that point where the operator connects with the computer to stop that interaction ([Fig 20](#)). Now the operator is banging the keyboard and clicking the mouse, but the computer is not responding and this happens when the computer is taken over – *possessed* – by an appropriately-named computer ‘virus’. The operator has lost all influence over the computer which goes its own way making decisions under the control of the ‘virus’. I have

just described the dynamic through which the force known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth and Archons disconnects five-sense mind from expanded awareness to imprison humanity in perceptual servitude.



Figure 20: The mind ‘virus’ I have been writing about for decades seeks to isolate five-sense mind (the computer) from the true ‘I’. (Image by Neil Hague).

About a year ago I came across a Native American concept of Wetiko which describes precisely the same phenomenon. Wetiko is the spelling used by the Cree and there are other versions including wintiko and windigo used by other tribal groups. They spell the name with lower case, but I see Wetiko as a proper noun as with Archons and prefer a capital. I first saw an article about Wetiko by writer and researcher Paul Levy which so synced with what I had been writing about the computer/operator disconnection and later the Archons. I then read his book, the fascinating *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil*. The parallels between what I had concluded long before and the Native American concept of Wetiko were so clear and obvious that it was almost funny. For Wetiko see the Gnostic Archons for sure and the Jinn, the Predators, and every other name for a force of evil, inversion and chaos. Wetiko is the Native American name for the force that divides the computer from

the operator ([Fig 21](#)). Indigenous author Jack D. Forbes, a founder of the Native American movement in the 1960s, wrote another book about Wetiko entitled *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* which I also read. Forbes says that Wetiko refers to an evil person or spirit ‘who terrorizes other creatures by means of terrible acts, including cannibalism’. Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa told me that African accounts tell how cannibalism was brought into the world by the Chitauri ‘gods’ – another manifestation of Wetiko. The distinction between ‘evil person or spirit’ relates to Archons/Wetiko possessing a human or acting as pure consciousness. Wetiko is said to be a sickness of the soul or spirit and a state of being that takes but gives nothing back – the Cult and its operatives perfectly described. Black Hawk, a Native American war leader defending their lands from confiscation, said European invaders had ‘poisoned hearts’ – Wetiko hearts – and that this would spread to native societies. Mention of the heart is very significant as we shall shortly see. Forbes writes: ‘Tragically, the history of the world for the past 2,000 years is, in great part, the story of the epidemiology of the wetiko disease.’ Yes, and much longer. Forbes is correct when he says: ‘The wetikos destroyed Egypt and Babylon and Athens and Rome and Tenochtitlan [capital of the Aztec empire] and perhaps now they will destroy the entire earth.’ Evil, he said, is the number one export of a Wetiko culture – see its globalisation with ‘Covid’. Constant war, mass murder, suffering of all kinds, child abuse, Satanism, torture and human sacrifice are all expressions of Wetiko and the Wetiko possessed. The world is Wetiko made manifest, *but it doesn’t have to be*. There is a way out of this even now.

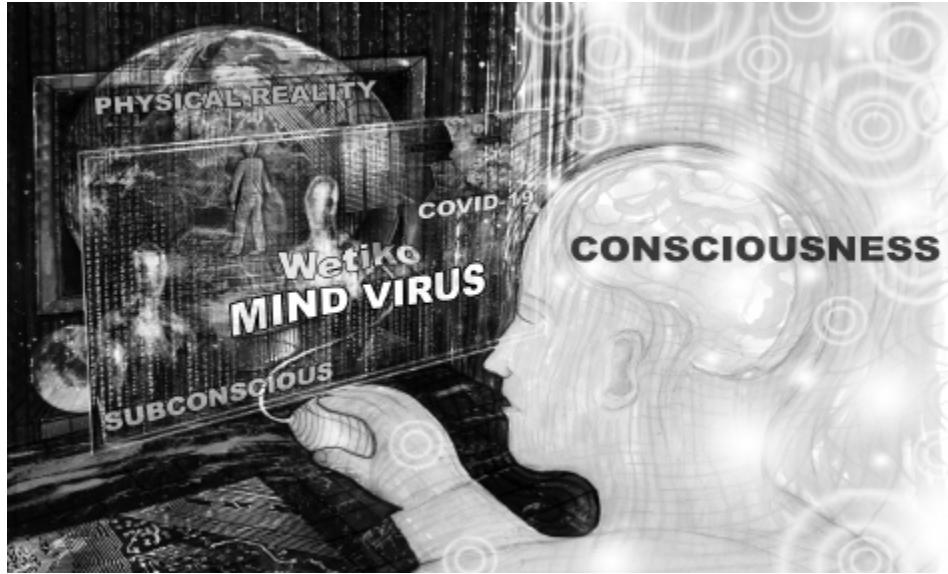


Figure 21: The mind ‘virus’ is known to Native Americans as ‘Wetiko’. (Image by Neil Hague).

Cult of Wetiko

Wetiko is the Yaldabaoth frequency distortion that seeks to attach to human consciousness and absorb it into its own. Once this connection is made Wetiko can drive the perceptions of the target which they believe to be coming from their own mind. All the horrors of history and today from mass killers to Satanists, paedophiles like Jeffrey Epstein and other psychopaths, are the embodiment of Wetiko and express its state of being in all its grotesqueness. The Cult is Wetiko incarnate, Yaldabaoth incarnate, and it seeks to facilitate Wetiko assimilation of humanity in totality into its distortion by manipulating the population into low frequency states that match its own. Paul Levy writes: ‘Holographically enforced within the psyche of every human being the wetiko virus pervades and underlies the entire field of consciousness, and can therefore potentially manifest through any one of us at any moment if we are not mindful.’ The ‘Covid’ hoax has achieved this with many people, but others have not fallen into Wetiko’s frequency lair. Players in the ‘Covid’ human catastrophe including Gates, Schwab, Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Johnson, Hancock, Ferguson, Drosten, and all the rest, including the psychopath psychologists, are expressions of Wetiko. This is why

they have no compassion or empathy and no emotional consequence for what they do that would make them stop doing it. Observe all the people who support the psychopaths in authority against the Pushbackers despite the damaging impact the psychopaths have on their own lives and their family's lives. You are again looking at Wetiko possession which prevents them seeing through the lies to the obvious scam going on. *Why can't they see it?* Wetiko won't let them see it. The perceptual divide that has now become a chasm is between the Wetikoed and the non-Wetikoed.

Paul Levy describes Wetiko in the same way that I have long described the Archontic force. They are the same distorted consciousness operating across dimensions of reality: '... the subtle body of wetiko is not located in the third dimension of space and time, literally existing in another dimension ... it is able to affect ordinary lives by mysteriously interpenetrating into our three-dimensional world.' Wetiko does this through its incarnate representatives in the Cult and by weaving itself into The Field which on our level of reality is the electromagnetic information field of the simulation or Matrix. More than that, the simulation *is* Wetiko / Yaldabaoth. Caleb Scharf, Director of Astrobiology at Columbia University, has speculated that 'alien life' could be so advanced that it has transcribed itself into the quantum realm to become what we call physics. He said intelligence indistinguishable from the fabric of the Universe would solve many of its greatest mysteries:

Perhaps hyper-advanced life isn't just external. Perhaps it's already all around. It is embedded in what we perceive to be physics itself, from the root behaviour of particles and fields to the phenomena of complexity and emergence ... In other words, life might not just be in the equations. It might BE the equations [My emphasis].

Scharf said it is possible that 'we don't recognise advanced life because it forms an integral and unsuspicious part of what we've considered to be the natural world'. I agree. Wetiko/Yaldabaoth *is* the simulation. We are literally in the body of the beast. But that doesn't mean it has to control us. We all have the power to overcome Wetiko

influence and the Cult knows that. I doubt it sleeps too well because it knows that.

Which Field?

This, I suggest, is how it all works. There are two Fields. One is the fierce electromagnetic light of the Matrix within the speed of light; the other is the ‘watery light’ of The Field beyond the walls of the Matrix that connects with the Great Infinity. Five-sense mind and the decoding systems of the body attach us to the Field of Matrix light. They have to or we could not experience this reality. Five-sense mind sees only the Matrix Field of information while our expanded consciousness is part of the Infinity Field. When we open our minds, and most importantly our hearts, to the Infinity Field we have a mission control which gives us an expanded perspective, a road map, to understand the nature of the five-sense world. If we are isolated only in five-sense mind there is no mission control. We’re on our own trying to understand a world that’s constantly feeding us information to ensure we do not understand. People in this state can feel ‘lost’ and bewildered with no direction or radar. You can see ever more clearly those who are influenced by the Fields of Big Infinity or little five-sense mind simply by their views and behaviour with regard to the ‘Covid’ hoax. We have had this division throughout known human history with the mass of the people on one side and individuals who could see and intuit beyond the walls of the simulation – Plato’s prisoner who broke out of the cave and saw reality for what it is. Such people have always been targeted by Wetiko/Archon-possessed authority, burned at the stake or demonised as mad, bad and dangerous. The Cult today and its global network of ‘anti-hate’, ‘anti-fascist’ Woke groups are all expressions of Wetiko attacking those exposing the conspiracy, ‘Covid’ lies and the ‘vaccine’ agenda.

Woke as a whole is Wetiko which explains its black and white mentality and how at one it is with the Wetiko-possessed Cult. Paul Levy said: ‘To be in this paradigm is to still be under the thrall of a two-valued logic – where things are either true or false – of a

wetikoized mind.' Wetiko consciousness is in a permanent rage, therefore so is Woke, and then there is Woke inversion and contradiction. 'Anti-fascists' act like fascists because fascists *and* 'anti-fascists' are both Wetiko at work. Political parties act the same while claiming to be different for the same reason. Secret society and satanic rituals are attaching initiates to Wetiko and the cold, ruthless, psychopathic mentality that secures the positions of power all over the world is Wetiko. Reframing 'training programmes' have the same cumulative effect of attaching Wetiko and we have their graduates described as automatons and robots with a cold, psychopathic, uncaring demeanour. They are all traits of Wetiko possession and look how many times they have been described in this book and elsewhere with regard to personnel behind 'Covid' including the police and medical profession. Climbing the greasy pole in any profession in a Wetiko society requires traits of Wetiko to get there and that is particularly true of politics which is not about fair competition and pre-eminence of ideas. It is founded on how many backs you can stab and arses you can lick. This culminated in the global 'Covid' coordination between the Wetiko possessed who pulled it off in all the different countries without a trace of empathy and compassion for their impact on humans. Our sight sense can see only holographic form and not the Field which connects holographic form. Therefore we perceive 'physical' objects with 'space' in between. In fact that 'space' is energy/consciousness operating on multiple frequencies. One of them is Wetiko and that connects the Cult psychopaths, those who submit to the psychopaths, and those who serve the psychopaths in the media operations of the world. Wetiko is Gates. Wetiko is the mask-wearing submissive. Wetiko is the fake journalist and 'fact-checker'. The Wetiko Field is coordinating the whole thing. Psychopaths, gofers, media operatives, 'anti-hate' hate groups, 'fact-checkers' and submissive people work as one unit *even without human coordination* because they are attached to the *same* Field which is organising it all ([Fig 22](#)). Paul Levy is here describing how Wetiko-possessed people are drawn together and refuse to let any information breach their rigid

perceptions. He was writing long before ‘Covid’, but I think you will recognise followers of the ‘Covid’ religion *oh just a little bit*:

People who are channelling the vibratory frequency of wetiko align with each other through psychic resonance to reinforce their unspoken shared agreement so as to uphold their deranged view of reality. Once an unconscious content takes possession of certain individuals, it irresistibly draws them together by mutual attraction and knits them into groups tied together by their shared madness that can easily swell into an avalanche of insanity.

A psychic epidemic is a closed system, which is to say that it is insular and not open to any new information or informing influences from the outside world which contradict its fixed, limited, and limiting perspective.

There we have the Woke mind and the ‘Covid’ mind. Compatible resonance draws the awakening together, too, which is clearly happening today.



Figure 22: The Wetiko Field from which the Cult pyramid and its personnel are made manifest. (Image by Neil Hague).

Spiritual servitude

Wetiko doesn’t care about humans. It’s not human; it just possesses humans for its own ends and the effect (depending on the scale of

possession) can be anything from extreme psychopathy to unquestioning obedience. Wetiko's worst nightmare is for human consciousness to expand beyond the simulation. Everything is focussed on stopping that happening through control of information, thus perception, thus frequency. The 'education system', media, science, medicine, academia, are all geared to maintaining humanity in five-sense servitude as is the constant stimulation of low-vibrational mental and emotional states (see 'Covid'). Wetiko seeks to dominate those subconscious spaces between five-sense perception and expanded consciousness where the computer meets the operator. From these subconscious hiding places Wetiko speaks to us to trigger urges and desires that we take to be our own and manipulate us into anything from low-vibrational to psychopathic states. Remember how Islam describes the Jinn as invisible tricksters that 'whisper' and confuse. Wetiko is the origin of the 'trickster god' theme that you find in cultures all over the world. Jinn, like the Archons, are Wetiko which is terrified of humans awakening and reconnecting with our true self for then its energy source has gone. With that the feedback loop breaks between Wetiko and human perception that provides the energetic momentum on which its very existence depends as a force of evil. Humans are both its target and its source of survival, but only if we are operating in low-vibrational states of fear, hate, depression and the background anxiety that most people suffer. We are Wetiko's target because we are its key to survival. It needs us, not the other way round. Paul Levy writes:

A vampire has no intrinsic, independent, substantial existence in its own right; it only exists in relation to us. The pathogenic, vampiric mind-parasite called wetiko is nothing in itself – not being able to exist from its own side – yet it has a 'virtual reality' such that it can potentially destroy our species ...

...The fact that a vampire is not reflected by a mirror can also mean that what we need to see is that there's nothing, no-thing to see, other than ourselves. The fact that wetiko is the expression of something inside of us means that the cure for wetiko is with us as well. The critical issue is finding this cure within us and then putting it into effect.

Evil begets evil because if evil does not constantly expand and find new sources of energetic sustenance its evil, its *distortion*, dies with the assimilation into balance and harmony. Love is the garlic to Wetiko's vampire. Evil, the absence of love, cannot exist in the presence of love. I think I see a way out of here. I have emphasised so many times over the decades that the Archons/Wetiko and their Cult are not all powerful. *They are not.* I don't care how it looks even now *they are not.* I have not called them little boys in short trousers for effect. I have said it because it is true. Wetiko's insatiable desire for power over others is not a sign of its omnipotence, but its insecurity. Paul Levy writes: 'Due to the primal fear which ultimately drives it and which it is driven to cultivate, wetiko's body politic has an intrinsic and insistent need for centralising power and control so as to create imagined safety for itself.' *Yeeeeees!* Exactly! Why does Wetiko want humans in an ongoing state of fear? Wetiko itself *is* fear and it is petrified of love. As evil is an absence of love, so love is an absence of fear. Love conquers all and *especially* Wetiko which *is* fear. Wetiko brought fear into the world when it wasn't here before. *Fear* was the 'fall', the fall into low-frequency ignorance and illusion – fear is False Emotion Appearing Real. The simulation is driven and energised by fear because Wetiko/Yaldabaoth (fear) *are* the simulation. Fear is the absence of love and Wetiko is the absence of love.

Wetiko today

We can now view current events from this level of perspective. The 'Covid' hoax has generated momentous amounts of ongoing fear, anxiety, depression and despair which have empowered Wetiko. No wonder people like Gates have been the instigators when they are Wetiko incarnate and exhibit every trait of Wetiko in the extreme. See how cold and unemotional these people are like Gates and his cronies, how dead of eye they are. That's Wetiko. Sabbatians are Wetiko and everything they control including the World Health Organization, Big Pharma and the 'vaccine' makers, national 'health'

hierarchies, corporate media, Silicon Valley, the banking system, and the United Nations with its planned transformation into world government. All are controlled and possessed by the Wetiko distortion into distorting human society in its image. We are with this knowledge at the gateway to understanding the world.

Divisions of race, culture, creed and sexuality are diversions to hide the real division between those possessed and influenced by Wetiko and those that are not. The ‘Covid’ hoax has brought both clearly into view. Human behaviour is not about race. Tyrants and dictatorships come in all colours and creeds. What unites the US president bombing the innocent and an African tribe committing genocide against another as in Rwanda? What unites them? *Wetiko*. All wars are Wetiko, all genocide is Wetiko, all hunger over centuries in a world of plenty is Wetiko. Children going to bed hungry, including in the West, is Wetiko. Cult-generated Woke racial divisions that focus on the body are designed to obscure the reality that divisions in behaviour are manifestations of mind, not body. Obsession with body identity and group judgement is a means to divert attention from the real source of behaviour – mind and perception. Conflict sown by the Woke both within themselves and with their target groups are Wetiko providing lunch for itself through still more agents of the division, chaos, and fear on which it feeds. The Cult is seeking to assimilate the entirety of humanity and all children and young people into the Wetiko frequency by manipulating them into states of fear and despair. Witness all the suicide and psychological unravelling since the spring of 2020. Wetiko psychopaths want to impose a state of unquestioning obedience to authority which is no more than a conduit for Wetiko to enforce its will and assimilate humanity into itself. It needs us to believe that resistance is futile when it fears resistance and even more so the game-changing non-cooperation with its impositions. It can use violent resistance for its benefit. Violent impositions and violent resistance are *both* Wetiko. The Power of Love with its Power of No will sweep Wetiko from our world. Wetiko and its Cult know that. They just don’t want us to know.

AI Wetiko

This brings me to AI or artificial intelligence and something else Wetikos don't want us to know. What is AI *really*? I know about computer code algorithms and AI that learns from data input. These, however, are more diversions, the expeditionary force, for the real AI that they want to connect to the human brain as promoted by Silicon Valley Wetikos like Kurzweil. What is this AI? It is the frequency of *Wetiko*, the frequency of the Archons. The connection of AI to the human brain is the connection of the Wetiko frequency to create a Wetiko hive mind and complete the job of assimilation. The hive mind is planned to be controlled from Israel and China which are both 100 percent owned by Wetiko Sabbatians. The assimilation process has been going on minute by minute in the 'smart' era which fused with the 'Covid' era. We are told that social media is scrambling the minds of the young and changing their personality. This is true, but what is social media? Look more deeply at how it works, how it creates divisions and conflict, the hostility and cruelty, the targeting of people until they are destroyed. That's Wetiko. Social media is manipulated to tune people to the Wetiko frequency with all the emotional exploitation tricks employed by platforms like Facebook and its Wetiko front man, Zuckerberg. Facebook's Instagram announced a new platform for children to overcome a legal bar on them using the main site. This is more Wetiko exploitation and manipulation of kids. Amnesty International likened the plan to foxes offering to guard the henhouse and said it was incompatible with human rights. Since when did Wetiko or Zuckerberg (I repeat myself) care about that? Would Brin and Page at Google, Wojcicki at YouTube, Bezos at Amazon and whoever the hell runs Twitter act as they do if they were not channelling Wetiko? Would those who are developing technologies for no other reason than human control? How about those designing and selling technologies to kill people and Big Pharma drug and 'vaccine' producers who know they will end or devastate lives? Quite a thought for these people to consider is that if you are Wetiko in a human life you are Wetiko on the 'other side' unless your frequency

changes and that can only change by a change of perception which becomes a change of behaviour. Where Gates is going does not bear thinking about although perhaps that's exactly where he wants to go. Either way, that's where he's going. His frequency will make it so.

The frequency lair

I have been saying for a long time that a big part of the addiction to smartphones and devices is that a frequency is coming off them that entraps the mind. People spend ages on their phones and sometimes even a minute or so after they put them down they pick them up again and it all repeats. 'Covid' lockdowns will have increased this addiction a million times for obvious reasons. Addictions to alcohol overindulgence and drugs are another way that Wetiko entraps consciousness to attach to its own. Both are symptoms of low-vibrational psychological distress which alcoholism and drug addiction further compound. Do we think it's really a coincidence that access to them is made so easy while potions that can take people into realms beyond the simulation are banned and illegal? I have explored smartphone addiction in other books, the scale is mind-blowing, and that level of addiction does not come without help. Tech companies that make these phones are Wetiko and they will have no qualms about destroying the minds of children. We are seeing again with these companies the Wetiko perceptual combination of psychopathic enforcers and weak and meek unquestioning compliance by the rank and file.

The global Smart Grid is the Wetiko Grid and it is crucial to complete the Cult endgame. The simulation is radiation and we are being deluged with technological radiation on a devastating scale. Wetiko frauds like Elon Musk serve Cult interests while occasionally criticising them to maintain his street-cred. 5G and other forms of Wi-Fi are being directed at the earth from space on a volume and scale that goes on increasing by the day. Elon Musk's (officially) SpaceX Starlink project is in the process of putting tens of thousands of satellites in low orbit to cover every inch of the planet with 5G and other Wi-Fi to create Kurzweil's global 'cloud' to which the

human mind is planned to be attached very soon. SpaceX has approval to operate 12,000 satellites with more than 1,300 launched at the time of writing and applications filed for 30,000 more. Other operators in the Wi-Fi, 5G, low-orbit satellite market include OneWeb (UK), Telesat (Canada), and AST & Science (US). Musk tells us that AI could be the end of humanity and then launches a company called Neuralink to connect the human brain to computers. Musk's (in theory) Tesla company is building electric cars and the driverless vehicles of the smart control grid. As frauds and bullshitters go Elon Musk in my opinion is Major League.

5G and technological radiation in general are destructive to human health, genetics and psychology and increasing the strength of artificial radiation underpins the five-sense perceptual bubbles which are themselves expressions of radiation or electromagnetism. Freedom activist John Whitehead was so right with his 'databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps'. The Smart Grid and 5G is a means to control the human mind and infuse perceptual information into The Field to influence anyone in sync with its frequency. You can change perception and behaviour en masse if you can manipulate the population into those levels of frequency and this is happening all around us today. The arrogance of Musk and his fellow Cult operatives knows no bounds in the way that we see with Gates. Musk's satellites are so many in number already they are changing the night sky when viewed from Earth. The astronomy community has complained about this and they have seen nothing yet. Some consequences of Musk's Wetiko hubris include: Radiation; visible pollution of the night sky; interference with astronomy and meteorology; ground and water pollution from intensive use of increasingly many spaceports; accumulating space debris; continual deorbiting and burning up of aging satellites, polluting the atmosphere with toxic dust and smoke; and ever-increasing likelihood of collisions. A collective public open letter of complaint to Musk said:

We are writing to you ... because SpaceX is in process of surrounding the Earth with a network of thousands of satellites whose very purpose is to irradiate every square inch of the

Earth. SpaceX, like everyone else, is treating the radiation as if it were not there. As if the mitochondria in our cells do not depend on electrons moving undisturbed from the food we digest to the oxygen we breathe.

As if our nervous systems and our hearts are not subject to radio frequency interference like any piece of electronic equipment. As if the cancer, diabetes, and heart disease that now afflict a majority of the Earth's population are not metabolic diseases that result from interference with our cellular machinery. As if insects everywhere, and the birds and animals that eat them, are not starving to death as a result.

People like Musk and Gates believe in their limitless Wetiko arrogance that they can do whatever they like to the world because they own it. Consequences for humanity are irrelevant. It's absolutely time that we stopped taking this shit from these self-styled masters of the Earth when you consider where this is going.

Why is the Cult so anti-human?

I hear this question often: Why would they do this when it will affect them, too? Ah, but will it? Who is this *them*? Forget their bodies. They are just vehicles for Wetiko consciousness. When you break it all down to the foundations we are looking at a state of severely distorted consciousness targeting another state of consciousness for assimilation. The rest is detail. The simulation is the fly-trap in which unique sensations of the five senses create a cycle of addiction called reincarnation. Renegade Minds see that everything which happens in our reality is a smaller version of the whole picture in line with the holographic principle. Addiction to the radiation of smart technology is a smaller version of addiction to the whole simulation. Connecting the body/brain to AI is taking that addiction on a giant step further to total ongoing control by assimilating human incarnate consciousness into Wetiko. I have watched during the 'Covid' hoax how many are becoming ever more profoundly attached to Wetiko's perceptual calling cards of aggressive response to any other point of view ('There is no other god but me'), psychopathic lack of compassion and empathy, and servile submission to the narrative and will of authority. Wetiko is the psychopaths *and* subservience to psychopaths. The Cult of Wetiko is

so anti-human because it is *not* human. It embarked on a mission to destroy human by targeting everything that it means to be human and to survive as human. ‘Covid’ is not the end, just a means to an end. The Cult with its Wetiko consciousness is seeking to change Earth systems, including the atmosphere, to suit them, not humans. The gathering bombardment of 5G alone from ground and space is dramatically changing The Field with which the five senses interact. There is so much more to come if we sit on our hands and hope it will all go away. It is not meant to go away. It is meant to get ever more extreme and we need to face that while we still can – just.

Carbon dioxide is the gas of life. Without that human is over. Kaput, gone, history. No natural world, no human. The Cult has created a cock and bull story about carbon dioxide and climate change to justify its reduction to the point where Gates and the ignoramus Biden ‘climate chief’ John Kerry want to suck it out of the atmosphere. Kerry wants to do this because his master Gates does. Wetikos have made the gas of life a demon with the usual support from the Wokers of Extinction Rebellion and similar organisations and the bewildered puppet-child that is Greta Thunberg who was put on the world stage by Klaus Schwab and the World Economic Forum. The name Extinction Rebellion is both ironic and as always Wetiko inversion. The gas that we need to survive must be reduced to save us from extinction. The most basic need of human is oxygen and we now have billions walking around in face nappies depriving body and brain of this essential requirement of human existence. More than that 5G at 60 gigahertz interacts with the oxygen molecule to reduce the amount of oxygen the body can absorb into the bloodstream. The obvious knock-on consequences of that for respiratory and cognitive problems and life itself need no further explanation. Psychopaths like Musk are assembling a global system of satellites to deluge the human atmosphere with this insanity. The man should be in jail. Here we have two most basic of human needs, oxygen and carbon dioxide, being dismantled.

Two others, water and food, are getting similar treatment with the United Nations Agendas 21 and 2030 – the Great Reset – planning to

centrally control all water and food supplies. People will not even own rain water that falls on their land. Food is affected at the most basic level by reducing carbon dioxide. We have genetic modification or GMO infiltrating the food chain on a mass scale, pesticides and herbicides polluting the air and destroying the soil. Freshwater fish that provide livelihoods for 60 million people and feed hundreds of millions worldwide are being 'pushed to the brink' according the conservationists while climate change is the only focus. Now we have Gates and Schwab wanting to dispense with current food sources all together and replace them with a synthetic version which the Wetiko Cult would control in terms of production and who eats and who doesn't. We have been on the Totalitarian Tiptoe to this for more than 60 years as food has become ever more processed and full of chemical shite to the point today when it's not natural food at all. As Dr Tom Cowan says: 'If it has a label don't eat it.' Bill Gates is now the biggest owner of farmland in the United States and he does nothing without an ulterior motive involving the Cult. Klaus Schwab wrote: 'To feed the world in the next 50 years we will need to produce as much food as was produced in the last 10,000 years ... food security will only be achieved, however, if regulations on genetically modified foods are adapted to reflect the reality that gene editing offers a precise, efficient and safe method of improving crops.' Liar. People and the world are being targeted with aluminium through vaccines, chemtrails, food, drink cans, and endless other sources when aluminium has been linked to many health issues including dementia which is increasing year after year. Insects, bees and wildlife essential to the food chain are being deleted by pesticides, herbicides and radiation which 5G is dramatically increasing with 6G and 7G to come. The pollinating bee population is being devastated while wildlife including birds, dolphins and whales are having their natural radar blocked by the effects of ever-increasing radiation. In the summer windscreens used to be splattered with insects so numerous were they. It doesn't happen now. Where have they gone?

Synthetic everything

The Cult is introducing genetically-modified versions of trees, plants and insects including a Gates-funded project to unleash hundreds of millions of genetically-modified, lab-altered and patented male mosquitoes to mate with wild mosquitoes and induce genetic flaws that cause them to die out. Clinically-insane Gates-funded Japanese researchers have developed mosquitos that spread vaccine and are dubbed 'flying vaccinators'. Gates is funding the modification of weather patterns in part to sell the myth that this is caused by carbon dioxide and he's funding geoengineering of the skies to change the atmosphere. Some of this came to light with the Gates-backed plan to release tonnes of chalk into the atmosphere to 'deflect the Sun and cool the planet'. Funny how they do this while the heating effect of the Sun is not factored into climate projections focussed on carbon dioxide. The reason is that they want to reduce carbon dioxide (so don't mention the Sun), but at the same time they do want to reduce the impact of the Sun which is so essential to human life and health. I have mentioned the sun-cholesterol-vitamin D connection as they demonise the Sun with warnings about skin cancer (caused by the chemicals in sun cream they tell you to splash on). They come from the other end of the process with statin drugs to reduce cholesterol that turns sunlight into vitamin D. A lack of vitamin D leads to a long list of health effects and how vitamin D levels must have fallen with people confined to their homes over 'Covid'. Gates is funding other forms of geoengineering and most importantly chemtrails which are dropping heavy metals, aluminium and self-replicating nanotechnology onto the Earth which is killing the natural world. See *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* for the detailed background to this.

Every human system is being targeted for deletion by a force that's not human. The Wetiko Cult has embarked on the process of transforming the human body from biological to synthetic biological as I have explained. Biological is being replaced by the artificial and synthetic – Archontic 'countermimicry' – right across human society. The plan eventually is to dispense with the human body altogether

and absorb human consciousness – which it wouldn't really be by then – into cyberspace (the simulation which is Wetiko/Yaldabaoth). Preparations for that are already happening if people would care to look. The alternative media rightly warns about globalism and 'the globalists', but this is far bigger than that and represents the end of the human race as we know it. The 'bad copy' of prime reality that Gnostics describe was a bad copy of harmony, wonder and beauty to start with before Wetiko/Yaldabaoth set out to change the simulated 'copy' into something very different. The process was slow to start with. Entrapped humans in the simulation timeline were not technologically aware and they had to be brought up to intellectual speed while being suppressed spiritually to the point where they could build their own prison while having no idea they were doing so. We have now reached that stage where technological intellect has the potential to destroy us and that's why events are moving so fast. Central American shaman Don Juan Matus said:

Think for a moment, and tell me how you would explain the contradictions between the intelligence of man the engineer and the stupidity of his systems of belief, or the stupidity of his contradictory behaviour. Sorcerers believe that the predators have given us our systems of beliefs, our ideas of good and evil; our social mores. They are the ones who set up our dreams of success or failure. They have given us covetousness, greed, and cowardice. It is the predator who makes us complacent, routinary, and egomaniacal.

In order to keep us obedient and meek and weak, the predators engaged themselves in a stupendous manoeuvre – stupendous, of course, from the point of view of a fighting strategist; a horrendous manoeuvre from the point of those who suffer it. They gave us their mind. The predators' mind is baroque, contradictory, morose, filled with the fear of being discovered any minute now.

For 'predators' see Wetiko, Archons, Yaldabaoth, Jinn, and all the other versions of the same phenomenon in cultures and religions all over the world. The theme is always the same because it's true and it's real. We have reached the point where we have to deal with it. The question is – how?

Don't fight – walk away

I thought I'd use a controversial subheading to get things moving in terms of our response to global fascism. What do you mean 'don't fight'? What do you mean 'walk away'? We've got to fight. We can't walk away. Well, it depends what we mean by fight and walk away. If fighting means physical combat we are playing Wetiko's game and falling for its trap. It wants us to get angry, aggressive, and direct hate and hostility at the enemy we think we must fight. Every war, every battle, every conflict, has been fought with Wetiko leading both sides. It's what it does. Wetiko wants a fight, anywhere, any place. Just hit me, son, so I can hit you back. Wetiko hits Wetiko and Wetiko hits Wetiko in return. I am very forthright as you can see in exposing Wetikos of the Cult, but I don't hate them. I refuse to hate them. It's what they want. What you hate you become. What you *fight* you become. Wokers, 'anti-haters' and 'anti-fascists' prove this every time they reach for their keyboards or don their balaclavas. By walk away I mean to disengage from Wetiko which includes ceasing to cooperate with its tyranny. Paul Levy says of Wetiko:

The way to 'defeat' evil is not to try to destroy it (for then, in playing evil's game, we have already lost), but rather, to find the invulnerable place within ourselves where evil is unable to vanquish us – this is to truly 'win' our battle with evil.

Wetiko is everywhere in human society and it's been on steroids since the 'Covid' hoax. Every shouting match over wearing masks has Wetiko wearing a mask and Wetiko not wearing one. It's an electrical circuit of push and resist, push and resist, with Wetiko pushing *and* resisting. Each polarity is Wetiko empowering itself. Dictionary definitions of 'resist' include 'opposing, refusing to accept or comply with' and the word to focus on is 'opposing'. What form does this take – setting police cars alight or 'refusing to accept or comply with'? The former is Wetiko opposing Wetiko while the other points the way forward. This is the difference between those aggressively demanding that government fascism must be obeyed who stand in stark contrast to the great majority of Pushbackers. We saw this clearly with a march by thousands of Pushbackers against lockdown in London followed days later by a Woker-hijacked

protest in Bristol in which police cars were set on fire. Masks were virtually absent in London and widespread in Bristol. Wetiko wants lockdown on every level of society and infuses its aggression to police it through its unknowing stooges. Lockdown protesters are the ones with the smiling faces and the hugs, The two blatantly obvious states of being – getting more obvious by the day – are the result of Wokers and their like becoming ever more influenced by the simulation Field of Wetiko and Pushbackers ever more influenced by The Field of a far higher vibration beyond the simulation. Wetiko can't invade the heart which is where most lockdown opponents are coming from. It's the heart that allows them to see through the lies to the truth in ways I will be highlighting.

Renegade Minds know that calmness is the place from which wisdom comes. You won't find wisdom in a hissing fit and wisdom is what we need in abundance right now. Calmness is not weakness – you don't have to scream at the top of your voice to be strong. Calmness is indeed a sign of strength. 'No' means I'm not doing it. NOOOO!!! doesn't mean you're not doing it even more. Volume does not advance 'No – I'm not doing it'. You are just not doing it. Wetiko possessed and influenced don't know how to deal with that. Wetiko wants a fight and we should not give it one. What it needs more than anything is our *cooperation* and we should not give that either. Mass rallies and marches are great in that they are a visual representation of feeling, but if it ends there they are irrelevant. You demand that Wetikos act differently? Well, they're not going to do it. They are Wetikos. We don't need to waste our time demanding that something doesn't happen when that will make no difference. We need to delete the means that *allows* it to happen. This, invariably, is our cooperation. You can demand a child stop firing a peashooter at the dog or you can refuse to buy the peashooter. If you provide the means you are cooperating with the dog being smacked on the nose with a pea. How can the authorities enforce mask-wearing if millions in a country refuse? What if the 74 million Pushbackers that voted for Trump in 2020 refused to wear masks, close their businesses or stay in their homes. It would be unenforceable. The

few control the many through the compliance of the many and that's always been the dynamic be it 'Covid' regulations or the Roman Empire. I know people can find it intimidating to say no to authority or stand out in a crowd for being the only one with a face on display; but it has to be done or it's over. I hope I've made clear in this book that where this is going will be far more intimidating than standing up now and saying 'No' – I will not cooperate with my own enslavement and that of my children. There might be consequences for some initially, although not so if enough do the same. The question that must be addressed is what is going to happen if we don't? It is time to be strong and unyieldingly so. No means no. Not here and there, but *everywhere* and *always*. I have refused to wear a mask and obey all the other nonsense. I will not comply with tyranny. I repeat: Fascism is not imposed by fascists – there are never enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. *I will not do it.* I will die first, or my body will. Living meekly under fascism is a form of death anyway, the death of the spirit that Martin Luther King described.

Making things happen

We must not despair. This is not over till it's over and it's far from that. The 'fat lady' must refuse to sing. The longer the 'Covid' hoax has dragged on and impacted on more lives we have seen an awakening of phenomenal numbers of people worldwide to the realisation that what they have believed all their lives is not how the world really is. Research published by the system-serving University of Bristol and King's College London in February, 2021, concluded: 'One in every 11 people in Britain say they trust David Icke's take on the coronavirus pandemic.' It will be more by now and we have gathering numbers to build on. We must urgently progress from seeing the scam to ceasing to cooperate with it. Prominent German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich, also licenced to practice law in America, is doing a magnificent job taking the legal route to bring the psychopaths to justice through a second Nuremberg tribunal for crimes against humanity. Fuellmich has an impressive record of

beating the elite in court and he formed the German Corona Investigative Committee to pursue civil charges against the main perpetrators with a view to triggering criminal charges. Most importantly he has grasped the foundation of the hoax – the PCR test not testing for the ‘virus’ – and Christian Drosten is therefore on his charge sheet along with Gates frontman Tedros at the World Health Organization. Major players must be not be allowed to inflict their horrors on the human race without being brought to book. A life sentence must follow for Bill Gates and the rest of them. A group of researchers has also indicted the government of Norway for crimes against humanity with copies sent to the police and the International Criminal Court. The lawsuit cites participation in an internationally-planned false pandemic and violation of international law and human rights, the European Commission’s definition of human rights by coercive rules, Nuremberg and Hague rules on fundamental human rights, and the Norwegian constitution. We must take the initiative from hereon and not just complain, protest and react.

There are practical ways to support vital mass non-cooperation. Organising in numbers is one. Lockdown marches in London in the spring in 2021 were mass non-cooperation that the authorities could not stop. There were too many people. Hundreds of thousands walked the London streets in the centre of the road for mile after mile while the Face-Nappies could only look on. They were determined, but calm, and just *did it* with no histrionics and lots of smiles. The police were impotent. Others are organising group shopping without masks for mutual support and imagine if that was happening all over. Policing it would be impossible. If the store refuses to serve people in these circumstances they would be faced with a long line of trolleys full of goods standing on their own and everything would have to be returned to the shelves. How would they cope with that if it kept happening? I am talking here about moving on from complaining to being pro-active; from watching things happen to making things happen. I include in this our relationship with the police. The behaviour of many Face-Nappies

has been disgraceful and anyone who thinks they would never find concentration camp guards in the ‘enlightened’ modern era have had that myth busted big-time. The period and setting may change – Wetikos never do. I watched film footage from a London march in which a police thug viciously kicked a protestor on the floor who had done nothing. His fellow Face-Nappies stood in a ring protecting him. What he did was a criminal assault and with a crowd far outnumbering the police this can no longer be allowed to happen unchallenged. I get it when people chant ‘shame on you’ in these circumstances, but that is no longer enough. They *have* no shame those who do this. Crowds needs to start making a citizen’s arrest of the police who commit criminal offences and brutally attack innocent people and defenceless women. A citizen’s arrest can be made under section 24A of the UK Police and Criminal Evidence (PACE) Act of 1984 and you will find something similar in other countries. I prefer to call it a Common Law arrest rather than citizen’s for reasons I will come to shortly. Anyone can arrest a person committing an indictable offence or if they have reasonable grounds to suspect they are committing an indictable offence. On both counts the attack by the police thug would have fallen into this category. A citizen’s arrest can be made to stop someone:

- Causing physical injury to himself or any other person
- Suffering physical injury
- Causing loss of or damage to property
- Making off before a constable can assume responsibility for him

A citizen’s arrest may also be made to prevent a breach of the peace under Common Law and if they believe a breach of the peace will happen or anything related to harm likely to be done or already done in their presence. This is the way to go I think – the Common Law version. If police know that the crowd and members of the public will no longer be standing and watching while they commit

their thuggery and crimes they will think twice about acting like Brownshirts and Blackshirts.

Common Law – common sense

Mention of Common Law is very important. Most people think the law is the law as in one law. This is not the case. There are two bodies of law, Common Law and Statute Law, and they are not the same. Common Law is founded on the simple premise of do no harm. It does not recognise victimless crimes in which no harm is done while Statute Law does. There is a Statute Law against almost everything. So what is Statute Law? Amazingly it's the law of the sea that was brought ashore by the Cult to override the law of the land which is Common Law. They had no right to do this and as always they did it anyway. They had to. They could not impose their will on the people through Common Law which only applies to do no harm. How could you stitch up the fine detail of people's lives with that? Instead they took the law of the sea, or Admiralty Law, and applied it to the population. Statute Law refers to all the laws spewing out of governments and their agencies including all the fascist laws and regulations relating to 'Covid'. The key point to make is that Statute Law is *contract law*. It only applies between *contracting* corporations. Most police officers don't even know this. They have to be kept in the dark, too. Long ago when merchants and their sailing ships began to trade with different countries a contractual law was developed called Admiralty Law and other names. Again it only applied to *contracts* agreed between *corporate* entities. If there is no agreed contract the law of the sea had no jurisdiction *and that still applies to its new alias of Statute Law*. The problem for the Cult when the law of the sea was brought ashore was an obvious one. People were not corporations and neither were government entities. To overcome the latter they made governments and all associated organisations corporations. All the institutions are *private corporations* and I mean governments and their agencies, local councils, police, courts, military, US states, the whole lot. Go to the

Dun and Bradstreet corporate listings website for confirmation that they are all corporations. You are arrested by a private corporation called the police by someone who is really a private security guard and they take you to court which is another private corporation.

Neither have jurisdiction over you unless you consent and *contract* with them. This is why you hear the mantra about law enforcement policing by *consent* of the people. In truth the people 'consent' only in theory through monumental trickery.

Okay, the Cult overcame the corporate law problem by making governments and institutions corporate entities; but what about people? They are not corporations are they? Ah ... well in a sense, and *only* a sense, they are. Not people exactly – the illusion of people. The Cult creates a corporation in the name of everyone at the time that their birth certificate is issued. Note birth/ *berth* certificate and when you go to court under the law of the sea on land you stand in a *dock*. These are throwbacks to the origin. My Common Law name is David Vaughan Icke. The name of the corporation created by the government when I was born is called Mr David Vaughan Icke usually written in capitals as MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE. That is not me, the living, breathing man. It is a fictitious corporate entity. The trick is to make you think that David Vaughan Icke and MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE are the same thing. *They are not*. When police charge you and take you to court they are prosecuting the corporate entity and not the living, breathing, man or woman. They have to trick you into identifying as the corporate entity and contracting with them. Otherwise they have no jurisdiction. They do this through a language known as legalese. Lawful and legal are not the same either. Lawful relates to Common Law and legal relates to Statute Law. Legalese is the language of Statue Law which uses terms that mean one thing to the public and another in legalese. Notice that when a police officer tells someone why they are being charged he or she will say at the end: 'Do you understand?' To the public that means 'Do you comprehend?' In legalese it means 'Do you stand under me?' Do you stand under my authority? If you say

yes to the question you are unknowingly agreeing to give them jurisdiction over you in a contract between two corporate entities.

This is a confidence trick in every way. Contracts have to be agreed between informed parties and if you don't know that David Vaughan Icke is agreeing to be the corporation MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE you cannot knowingly agree to contract. They are deceiving you and another way they do this is to ask for proof of identity. You usually show them a driving licence or other document on which your corporate name is written. In doing so you are accepting that you are that corporate entity when you are not. Referring to yourself as a 'person' or 'citizen' is also identifying with your corporate fiction which is why I made the Common Law point about the citizen's arrest. If you are approached by a police officer you identify yourself immediately as a living, breathing, man or woman and say 'I do not consent, I do not contract with you and I do not understand' or stand under their authority. I have a Common Law birth certificate as a living man and these are available at no charge from commonlawcourt.com. Businesses registered under the Statute Law system means that its laws apply. There are, however, ways to run a business under Common Law. Remember all 'Covid' laws and regulations are Statute Law – the law of *contracts* and you do not have to contract. This doesn't mean that you can kill someone and get away with it. Common Law says do no harm and that applies to physical harm, financial harm etc. Police are employees of private corporations and there needs to be a new system of non-corporate Common Law constables operating outside the Statute Law system. If you go to davidicke.com and put Common Law into the search engine you will find videos that explain Common Law in much greater detail. It is definitely a road we should walk.

With all my heart

I have heard people say that we are in a spiritual war. I don't like the term 'war' with its Wetiko dynamic, but I know what they mean. Sweep aside all the bodily forms and we are in a situation in which two states of consciousness are seeking very different realities.

Wetiko wants upheaval, chaos, fear, suffering, conflict and control. The other wants love, peace, harmony, fairness and freedom. That's where we are. We should not fall for the idea that Wetiko is all-powerful and there's nothing we can do. Wetiko is not all-powerful. It's a joke, pathetic. It doesn't have to be, but it has made that choice for now. A handful of times over the years when I have felt the presence of its frequency I have allowed it to attach briefly so I could consciously observe its nature. The experience is not pleasant, the energy is heavy and dark, but the ease with which you can kick it back out the door shows that its real power is in persuading us that it has power. It's all a con. Wetiko is a con. It's a trickster and not a power that can control us if we unleash our own. The con is founded on manipulating humanity to give its power to Wetiko which recycles it back to present the illusion that it has power when its power is *ours* that we gave away. This happens on an energetic level and plays out in the world of the seen as humanity giving its power to Wetiko authority which uses that power to control the population when the power is only the power the population has handed over. How could it be any other way for billions to be controlled by a relative few? I have had experiences with people possessed by Wetiko and again you can kick its arse if you do it with an open heart. Oh yes – the *heart* which can transform the world of perceived 'matter'.

We are receiver-transmitters and processors of information, but what information and where from? Information is processed into perception in three main areas – the brain, the heart and the belly. These relate to thinking, knowing, and emotion. Wetiko wants us to be head and belly people which means we think within the confines of the Matrix simulation and low-vibrational emotional reaction scrambles balance and perception. A few minutes on social media and you see how emotion is the dominant force. Woke is all emotion and is therefore thought-free and fact-free. Our heart is something different. It *knows* while the head *thinks* and has to try to work it out because it doesn't know. The human energy field has seven prime vortexes which connect us with wider reality ([Fig 23](#)). Chakra means

'wheels of light' in the Sanskrit language of ancient India. The main ones are: The crown chakra on top of the head; brow (or 'third eye') chakra in the centre of the forehead; throat chakra; heart chakra in the centre of the chest; solar plexus chakra below the sternum; sacral chakra beneath the navel; and base chakra at the bottom of the spine. Each one has a particular function or functions. We feel anxiety and nervousness in the belly where the sacral chakra is located and this processes emotion that can affect the colon to give people 'the shits' or make them 'shit scared' when they are nervous. Chakras all play an important role, but the Mr and Mrs Big is the heart chakra which sits at the centre of the seven, above the chakras that connect us to the 'physical' and below those that connect with higher realms (or at least should). Here in the heart chakra we feel love, empathy and compassion – 'My heart goes out to you'. Those with closed hearts become literally 'heart-less' in their attitudes and behaviour (see Bill Gates). Native Americans portrayed Wetiko with what Paul Levy calls a 'frigid, icy heart, devoid of mercy' (see Bill Gates).

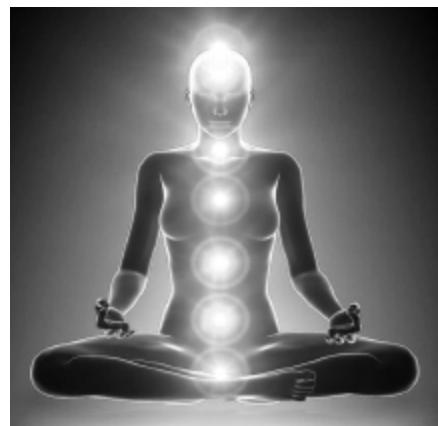


Figure 23: The chakra system which interpenetrates the human energy field. The heart chakra is the governor – or should be.

Wetiko trembles at the thought of heart energy which it cannot infiltrate. The frequency is too high. What it seeks to do instead is close the heart chakra vortex to block its perceptual and energetic influence. Psychopaths have 'hearts of stone' and emotionally-damaged people have 'heartache' and 'broken hearts'. The astonishing amount of heart disease is related to heart chakra

disruption with its fundamental connection to the ‘physical’ heart. Dr Tom Cowan has written an outstanding book challenging the belief that the heart is a pump and making the connection between the ‘physical’ and spiritual heart. Rudolph Steiner who was way ahead of his time said the same about the fallacy that the heart is a pump. *What?* The heart is not a pump? That’s crazy, right? Everybody knows that. Read Cowan’s *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* and you will realise that the very idea of the heart as a pump is ridiculous when you see the evidence. How does blood in the feet so far from the heart get pumped horizontally up the body by the heart?? Cowan explains in the book the real reason why blood moves as it does. Our ‘physical’ heart is used to symbolise love when the source is really the heart vortex or spiritual heart which is our most powerful energetic connection to ‘out there’ expanded consciousness. That’s why we feel *knowing* – intuitive knowing – in the centre of the chest. Knowing doesn’t come from a process of thoughts leading to a conclusion. It is there in an instant all in one go. Our heart knows because of its connection to levels of awareness that *do* know. This is the meaning and source of intuition – intuitive *knowing*.

For the last more than 30 years of uncovering the global game and the nature of reality my heart has been my constant antenna for truth and accuracy. An American intelligence insider once said that I had quoted a disinformor in one of my books and yet I had only quoted the part that was true. He asked: ‘How do you do that?’ By using my heart antenna was the answer and anyone can do it. Heart-centred is how we are meant to be. With a closed heart chakra we withdraw into a closed mind and the bubble of five-sense reality. If you take a moment to focus your attention on the centre of your chest, picture a spinning wheel of light and see it opening and expanding. You will feel it happening, too, and perceptions of the heart like joy and love as the heart impacts on the mind as they interact. The more the chakra opens the more you will feel expressions of heart consciousness and as the process continues, and becomes part of you, insights and knowings will follow. An open

heart is connected to that level of awareness that knows all is *One*. You will see from its perspective that the fault-lines that divide us are only illusions to control us. An open heart does not process the illusions of race, creed and sexuality except as brief experiences for a consciousness that is all. Our heart does not see division, only unity (Figs 24 and 25). There's something else, too. Our hearts love to laugh. Mark Twain's quote that says 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter' is really a reference to the heart which loves to laugh with the joy of knowing the true nature of infinite reality and that all the madness of human society is an illusion of the mind. Twain also said: 'Against the assault of laughter nothing can stand.' This is so true of Wetiko and the Cult. Their insecurity demands that they be taken seriously and their power and authority acknowledged and feared. We should do nothing of the sort. We should not get aggressive or fearful which their insecurity so desires. We should laugh in their face. Even in their no-face as police come over in their face-nappies and expect to be taken seriously. They don't take themselves seriously looking like that so why should we? Laugh in the face of intimidation. Laugh in the face of tyranny. You will see by its reaction that you have pressed all of its buttons. Wetiko does not know what to do in the face of laughter or when its targets refuse to concede their joy to fear. We have seen many examples during the 'Covid' hoax when people have expressed their energetic power and the string puppets of Wetiko retreat with their tail limp between their knees. Laugh – the world is bloody mad after all and if it's a choice between laughter and tears I know which way I'm going.



Figure 24: Head consciousness without the heart sees division and everything apart from everything else.



Figure 25: Heart consciousness sees everything as One.

'Vaccines' and the soul

The foundation of Wetiko/Archon control of humans is the separation of incarnate five-sense mind from the infinite 'I' and closing the heart chakra where the True 'I' lives during a human life. The goal has been to achieve complete separation in both cases. I was interested therefore to read an account by a French energetic healer of what she said she experienced with a patient who had been given the 'Covid' vaccine. Genuine energy healers can sense information and consciousness fields at different levels of being which are referred to as 'subtle bodies'. She described treating the patient who later returned after having, without the healer's knowledge, two doses of the 'Covid vaccine'. The healer said:

I noticed immediately the change, very heavy energy emanating from [the] subtle bodies. The scariest thing was when I was working on the heart chakra, I connected with her soul: it was detached from the physical body, it had no contact and it was, as if it was floating in a state of total confusion: a damage to the consciousness that loses contact with the physical body, i.e. with our biological machine, there is no longer any communication between them.

I continued the treatment by sending light to the heart chakra, the soul of the person, but it seemed that the soul could no longer receive any light, frequency or energy. It was a very powerful experience for me. Then I understood that this substance is indeed used to detach consciousness so that this consciousness can no longer interact through this body that it possesses in life, where there is no longer any contact, no frequency, no light, no more energetic balance or mind.

This would create a human that is rudderless and at the extreme almost zombie-like operating with a fractional state of consciousness at the mercy of Wetiko. I was especially intrigued by what the healer said in the light of the prediction by the highly-informed Rudolf Steiner more than a hundred years ago. He said:

In the future, we will eliminate the soul with medicine. Under the pretext of a 'healthy point of view', there will be a vaccine by which the human body will be treated as soon as possible directly at birth, so that the human being cannot develop the thought of the existence of soul and Spirit. To materialistic doctors will be entrusted the task of removing the soul of humanity.

As today, people are vaccinated against this disease or that disease, so in the future, children will be vaccinated with a substance that can be produced precisely in such a way that people, thanks to this vaccination, will be immune to being subjected to the 'madness' of spiritual life. He would be extremely smart, but he would not develop a conscience, and that is the true goal of some materialistic circles.

Steiner said the vaccine would detach the physical body from the etheric body (subtle bodies) and 'once the etheric body is detached the relationship between the universe and the etheric body would become extremely unstable, and man would become an automaton'. He said 'the physical body of man must be polished on this Earth by spiritual will – so the vaccine becomes a kind of aryanique (Wetiko) force' and 'man can no longer get rid of a given materialistic feeling'. Humans would then, he said, become 'materialistic of constitution and can no longer rise to the spiritual'. I have been writing for years about DNA being a receiver-transmitter of information that connects us to other levels of reality and these 'vaccines' changing DNA can be likened to changing an antenna and what it can transmit and receive. Such a disconnection would clearly lead to changes in personality and perception. Steiner further predicted the arrival of AI. Big Pharma 'Covid vaccine' makers, expressions of Wetiko, are testing their DNA-manipulating evil on children as I write with a view to giving the 'vaccine' to babies. If it's a soul-body disconnecter – and I say that it is or can be – every child would be disconnected from 'soul' at birth and the 'vaccine' would create a closed system in which spiritual guidance from the greater self would play no part. This has been the ambition of Wetiko all

along. A Pentagon video from 2005 was leaked of a presentation explaining the development of vaccines to change behaviour by their effect on the brain. Those that believe this is not happening with the ‘Covid’ genetically-modifying procedure masquerading as a ‘vaccine’ should make an urgent appointment with Naivety Anonymous. Klaus Schwab wrote in 2018:

Neurotechnologies enable us to better influence consciousness and thought and to understand many activities of the brain. They include decoding what we are thinking in fine levels of detail through new chemicals and interventions that can influence our brains to correct for errors or enhance functionality.

The plan is clear and only the heart can stop it. With every heart that opens, every mind that awakens, Wetiko is weakened. Heart and love are far more powerful than head and hate and so nothing like a majority is needed to turn this around.

Beyond the Phantom

Our heart is the prime target of Wetiko and so it must be the answer to Wetiko. We *are* our heart which is part of one heart, the infinite heart. Our heart is where the true self lives in a human life behind firewalls of five-sense illusion when an imposter takes its place – *Phantom Self*; but our heart waits patiently to be set free any time we choose to see beyond the Phantom, beyond Wetiko. A Wetikoed Phantom Self can wreak mass death and destruction while the love of forever is locked away in its heart. The time is here to unleash its power and let it sweep away the fear and despair that is Wetiko. Heart consciousness does not seek manipulated, censored, advantage for its belief or religion, its activism and desires. As an expression of the One it treats all as One with the same rights to freedom and opinion. Our heart demands fairness for itself no more than for others. From this unity of heart we can come together in mutual support and transform this Wetikoed world into what reality is meant to be – a place of love, joy, happiness, fairness, justice and freedom. Wetiko has another agenda and that’s why the world is as

it is, but enough of this nonsense. Wetiko can't stay where hearts are open and it works so hard to keep them closed. Fear is its currency and its food source and love in its true sense has no fear. Why would love have fear when it knows it is *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be* on an eternal exploration of all possibility? Love in this true sense is not the physical attraction that passes for love. This can be an expression of it, yes, but Infinite Love, a love without condition, goes far deeper to the core of all being. It is the core of all being. Infinite reality was born from love beyond the illusions of the simulation. Love infinitely expressed is the knowing that all is One and the swiftly-passing experience of separation is a temporary hallucination. You cannot disconnect from Oneness; you can only perceive that you have and withdraw from its influence. This is the most important of all perception trickery by the mind parasite that is Wetiko and the foundation of all its potential for manipulation.

If we open our hearts, open the sluice gates of the mind, and redefine self-identity amazing things start to happen. Consciousness expands or contracts in accordance with self-identity. When true self is recognised as infinite awareness and label self – Phantom Self – is seen as only a series of brief experiences life is transformed. Consciousness expands to the extent that self-identity expands and everything changes. You see unity, not division, the picture, not the pixels. From this we can play the long game. No more is an experience something in and of itself, but a fleeting moment in the eternity of forever. Suddenly people in uniform and dark suits are no longer intimidating. Doing what your heart knows to be right is no longer intimidating and consequences for those actions take on the same nature of a brief experience that passes in the blink of an infinite eye. Intimidation is all in the mind. Beyond the mind there is no intimidation.

An open heart does not consider consequences for what it knows to be right. To do so would be to consider not doing what it knows to be right and for a heart in its power that is never an option. The Renegade Mind is really the Renegade Heart. Consideration of consequences will always provide a getaway car for the mind and

the heart doesn't want one. What is right in the light of what we face today is to stop cooperating with Wetiko in all its forms and to do it without fear or compromise. You cannot compromise with tyranny when tyranny always demands more until it has everything. Life is your perception and you are your destiny. Change your perception and you change your life. Change collective perception and we change the world.

*Come on people ... One human family, One heart, One goal ...
FREEEEEDOM!*

We must settle for nothing less.

Postscript

The big scare story as the book goes to press is the ‘Indian’ variant and the world is being deluged with propaganda about the ‘Covid catastrophe’ in India which mirrors in its lies and misrepresentations what happened in Italy before the first lockdown in 2020.

The *New York Post* published a picture of someone who had ‘collapsed in the street from Covid’ in India in April, 2021, which was actually taken during a gas leak in May, 2020. Same old, same old. Media articles in mid-February were asking why India had been so untouched by ‘Covid’ and then as their vaccine rollout gathered pace the alleged ‘cases’ began to rapidly increase. Indian ‘Covid vaccine’ maker Bharat Biotech was funded into existence by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (the pair announced their divorce in May, 2021, which is a pity because they so deserve each other). The Indian ‘Covid crisis’ was ramped up by the media to terrify the world and prepare people for submission to still more restrictions. The scam that worked the first time was being repeated only with far more people seeing through the deceit. Davidicke.com and Ickonic.com have sought to tell the true story of what is happening by talking to people living through the Indian nightmare which has nothing to do with ‘Covid’. We posted a letter from ‘Alisha’ in Pune who told a very different story to government and media mendacity. She said scenes of dying people and overwhelmed hospitals were designed to hide what was really happening – genocide and starvation. Alisha said that millions had already died of starvation during the ongoing lockdowns while government and media were lying and making it look like the ‘virus’:

Restaurants, shops, gyms, theatres, basically everything is shut. The cities are ghost towns. Even so-called 'essential' businesses are only open till 11am in the morning. You basically have just an hour to buy food and then your time is up.

Inter-state travel and even inter-district travel is banned. The cops wait at all major crossroads to question why you are traveling outdoors or to fine you if you are not wearing a mask.

The medical community here is also complicit in genocide, lying about hospitals being full and turning away people with genuine illnesses, who need immediate care. They have even created a shortage of oxygen cylinders.

This is the classic Cult modus operandi played out in every country. Alisha said that people who would not have a PCR test not testing for the 'virus' were being denied hospital treatment. She said the people hit hardest were migrant workers and those in rural areas. Most businesses employed migrant workers and with everything closed there were no jobs, no income and no food. As a result millions were dying of starvation or malnutrition. All this was happening under Prime Minister Narendra Modi, a 100-percent asset of the Cult, and it emphasises yet again the scale of pure anti-human evil we are dealing with. Australia banned its people from returning home from India with penalties for trying to do so of up to five years in jail and a fine of £37,000. The manufactured 'Covid' crisis in India was being prepared to justify further fascism in the West. Obvious connections could be seen between the Indian 'vaccine' programme and increased 'cases' and this became a common theme. The Seychelles, the most per capita 'Covid vaccinated' population in the world, went back into lockdown after a 'surge of cases'.

Long ago the truly evil Monsanto agricultural biotechnology corporation with its big connections to Bill Gates devastated Indian farming with genetically-modified crops. Human rights activist Gurcharan Singh highlighted the efforts by the Indian government to complete the job by destroying the food supply to hundreds of millions with 'Covid' lockdowns. He said that 415 million people at the bottom of the disgusting caste system (still going whatever they say) were below the poverty line and struggled to feed themselves every year. Now the government was imposing lockdown at just the

time to destroy the harvest. This deliberate policy was leading to mass starvation. People may reel back at the suggestion that a government would do that, but Wetiko-controlled ‘leaders’ are capable of any level of evil. In fact what is described in India is in the process of being instigated worldwide. The food chain and food supply are being targeted at every level to cause world hunger and thus control. Bill Gates is not the biggest owner of farmland in America for no reason and destroying access to food aids both the depopulation agenda and the plan for synthetic ‘food’ already being funded into existence by Gates. Add to this the coming hyper-inflation from the suicidal creation of fake ‘money’ in response to ‘Covid’ and the breakdown of container shipping systems and you have a cocktail that can only lead one way and is meant to. The Cult plan is to crash the entire system to ‘build back better’ with the Great Reset.

'Vaccine' transmission

Reports from all over the world continue to emerge of women suffering menstrual and fertility problems after having the fake ‘vaccine’ and of the non-‘vaccinated’ having similar problems when interacting with the ‘vaccinated’. There are far too many for ‘coincidence’ to be credible. We’ve had menopausal women getting periods, others having periods stop or not stopping for weeks, passing clots, sometimes the lining of the uterus, breast irregularities, and miscarriages (which increased by 400 percent in parts of the United States). Non-‘vaccinated’ men and children have suffered blood clots and nose bleeding after interaction with the ‘vaccinated’. Babies have died from the effects of breast milk from a ‘vaccinated’ mother. Awake doctors – the small minority – speculated on the cause of non-‘vaccinated’ suffering the same effects as the ‘vaccinated’. Was it nanotechnology in the synthetic substance transmitting frequencies or was it a straight chemical bioweapon that was being transmitted between people? I am not saying that some kind of chemical transmission is not one possible answer, but the foundation of all that the Cult does is frequency and

this is fertile ground for understanding how transmission can happen. American doctor Carrie Madej, an internal medicine physician and osteopath, has been practicing for the last 20 years, teaching medical students, and she says attending different meetings where the agenda for humanity was discussed. Madej, who operates out of Georgia, did not dismiss other possible forms of transmission, but she focused on frequency in search of an explanation for transmission. She said the Moderna and Pfizer 'vaccines' contained nano-lipid particles as a key component. This was a brand new technology never before used on humanity. 'They're using a nanotechnology which is pretty much little tiny computer bits ... nanobots or hydrogel.' Inside the 'vaccines' was 'this sci-fi kind of substance' which suppressed immune checkpoints to get into the cell. I referred to this earlier as the 'Trojan horse' technique that tricks the cell into opening a gateway for the self-replicating synthetic material and while the immune system is artificially suppressed the body has no defences. Madej said the substance served many purposes including an on-demand ability to 'deliver the payload' and using the nano 'computer bits' as biosensors in the body. 'It actually has the ability to accumulate data from your body, like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts, emotions, all kinds of things.'

She said the technology obviously has the ability to operate through Wi-Fi and transmit and receive energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. 'Just imagine you're getting this new substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones.' We had something completely foreign in the human body that had never been launched large scale at a time when we were seeing 5G going into schools and hospitals (plus the Musk satellites) and she believed the 'vaccine' transmission had something to do with this: '... if these people have this inside of them ... it can act like an antenna and actually transmit it outwardly as well.' The synthetic substance produced its own voltage and so it could have that kind of effect. This fits with my own contention that the nano receiver-transmitters are designed to connect people to the

Smart Grid and break the receiver-transmitter connection to expanded consciousness. That would explain the French energy healer's experience of the disconnection of body from 'soul' with those who have had the 'vaccine'. The nanobots, self-replicating inside the body, would also transmit the synthetic frequency which could be picked up through close interaction by those who have not been 'vaccinated'. Madej speculated that perhaps it was 5G and increased levels of other radiation that was causing the symptoms directly although interestingly she said that non-'vaccinated' patients had shown improvement when they were away from the 'vaccinated' person they had interacted with. It must be remembered that you can control frequency and energy with your mind and you can consciously create energetic barriers or bubbles with the mind to stop damaging frequencies from penetrating your field. American paediatrician Dr Larry Palevsky said the 'vaccine' was not a 'vaccine' and was never designed to protect from a 'viral' infection. He called it 'a massive, brilliant propaganda of genocide' because they didn't have to inject everyone to get the result they wanted. He said the content of the jabs was able to infuse any material into the brain, heart, lungs, kidneys, liver, sperm and female productive system. 'This is genocide; this is a weapon of mass destruction.' At the same time American colleges were banning students from attending if they didn't have this life-changing and potentially life-ending 'vaccine'. Class action lawsuits must follow when the consequences of this college fascism come to light. As the book was going to press came reports about fertility effects on sperm in 'vaccinated' men which would absolutely fit with what I have been saying and hospitals continued to fill with 'vaccine' reactions. Another question is what about transmission via blood transfusions? The NHS has extended blood donation restrictions from seven days after a 'Covid vaccination' to 28 days after even a sore arm reaction.

I said in the spring of 2020 that the then touted 'Covid vaccine' would be ongoing each year like the flu jab. A year later Pfizer CEO, the appalling Albert Bourla, said people would 'likely' need a 'booster dose' of the 'vaccine' within 12 months of getting 'fully

'vaccinated' and then a yearly shot. 'Variants will play a key role', he said confirming the point. Johnson & Johnson CEO Alex Gorsky also took time out from his 'vaccine' disaster to say that people may need to be vaccinated against 'Covid-19' each year. UK Health Secretary, the psychopath Matt Hancock, said additional 'boosters' would be available in the autumn of 2021. This is the trap of the 'vaccine passport'. The public will have to accept every last 'vaccine' they introduce, including for the fake 'variants', or it would cease to be valid. The only other way in some cases would be continuous testing with a test not testing for the 'virus' and what is on the swabs constantly pushed up your noise towards the brain every time?

'Vaccines' changing behaviour

I mentioned in the body of the book how I believed we would see gathering behaviour changes in the 'vaccinated' and I am already hearing such comments from the non-'vaccinated' describing behaviour changes in friends, loved ones and work colleagues. This will only increase as the self-replicating synthetic material and nanoparticles expand in body and brain. An article in the *Guardian* in 2016 detailed research at the University of Virginia in Charlottesville which developed a new method for controlling brain circuits associated with complex animal behaviour. The method, dubbed 'magnetogenetics', involves genetically-engineering a protein called ferritin, which stores and releases iron, to create a magnetised substance – 'Magneto' – that can activate specific groups of nerve cells from a distance. This is claimed to be an advance on other methods of brain activity manipulation known as optogenetics and chemogenetics (the Cult has been developing methods of brain control for a long time). The ferritin technique is said to be non-invasive and able to activate neurons 'rapidly and reversibly'. In other words, human thought and perception. The article said that earlier studies revealed how nerve cell proteins 'activated by heat and mechanical pressure can be genetically engineered so that they become sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields, by attaching them to an iron-storing protein called ferritin, or to inorganic

paramagnetic particles'. Sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields? You mean like 5G, 6G and 7G? This is the human-AI Smart Grid hive mind we are talking about. The *Guardian* article said:

... the researchers injected Magneto into the striatum of freely behaving mice, a deep brain structure containing dopamine-producing neurons that are involved in reward and motivation, and then placed the animals into an apparatus split into magnetised and non-magnetised sections.

Mice expressing Magneto spent far more time in the magnetised areas than mice that did not, because activation of the protein caused the striatal neurons expressing it to release dopamine, so that the mice found being in those areas rewarding. This shows that Magneto can remotely control the firing of neurons deep within the brain, and also control complex behaviours.

Make no mistake this basic methodology will be part of the 'Covid vaccine' cocktail and using magnetics to change brain function through electromagnetic field frequency activation. The Pentagon is developing a 'Covid vaccine' using ferritin. Magnetics would explain changes in behaviour and why videos are appearing across the Internet as I write showing how magnets stick to the skin at the point of the 'vaccine' shot. Once people take these 'vaccines' anything becomes possible in terms of brain function and illness which will be blamed on 'Covid-19' and 'variants'. Magnetic field manipulation would further explain why the non-'vaccinated' are reporting the same symptoms as the 'vaccinated' they interact with and why those symptoms are reported to decrease when not in their company. Interestingly 'Magneto', a 'mutant', is a character in the Marvel Comic *X-Men* stories with the ability to manipulate magnetic fields and he believes that mutants should fight back against their human oppressors by any means necessary. The character was born Erik Lehnsherr to a Jewish family in Germany.

Cult-controlled courts

The European Court of Human Rights opened the door for mandatory 'Covid-19 vaccines' across the continent when it ruled in a Czech Republic dispute over childhood immunisation that legally

enforced vaccination could be ‘necessary in a democratic society’. The 17 judges decided that compulsory vaccinations did not breach human rights law. On the face of it the judgement was so inverted you gasp for air. If not having a vaccine infused into your body is not a human right then what is? Ah, but they said human rights law which has been specifically written to delete all human rights at the behest of the state (the Cult). Article 8 of the European Convention on Human Rights relates to the right to a private life. The crucial word here is ‘*except*’:

There shall be no interference by a public authority with the exercise of this right EXCEPT such as is in accordance with the law and is necessary in a democratic society in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic wellbeing of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others [My emphasis].

No interference *except* in accordance with the law means there *are* no ‘human rights’ *except* what EU governments decide you can have at their behest. ‘As is necessary in a democratic society’ explains that reference in the judgement and ‘in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic well-being of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others’ gives the EU a coach and horses to ride through ‘human rights’ and scatter them in all directions. The judiciary is not a check and balance on government extremism; it is a vehicle to enforce it. This judgement was almost laughably predictable when the last thing the Cult wanted was a decision that went against mandatory vaccination. Judges rule over and over again to benefit the system of which they are a part. Vaccination disputes that come before them are invariably delivered in favour of doctors and authorities representing the view of the state which owns the judiciary. Oh, yes, and we have even had calls to stop putting ‘Covid-19’ on death certificates within 28 days of a ‘positive test’ because it is claimed the practice makes the ‘vaccine’ appear not to work. They are laughing at you.

The scale of madness, inhumanity and things to come was highlighted when those not ‘vaccinated’ for ‘Covid’ were refused evacuation from the Caribbean island of St Vincent during massive volcanic eruptions. Cruise ships taking residents to the safety of another island allowed only the ‘vaccinated’ to board and the rest were left to their fate. Even in life and death situations like this we see ‘Covid’ stripping people of their most basic human instincts and the insanity is even more extreme when you think that fake ‘vaccine’-makers are not even claiming their body-manipulating concoctions stop ‘infection’ and ‘transmission’ of a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist. St Vincent Prime Minister Ralph Gonsalves said: ‘The chief medical officer will be identifying the persons already vaccinated so that we can get them on the ship.’ Note again the power of the chief medical officer who, like Whitty in the UK, will be answering to the World Health Organization. This is the Cult network structure that has overridden politicians who ‘follow the science’ which means doing what WHO-controlled ‘medical officers’ and ‘science advisers’ tell them. Gonsalves even said that residents who were ‘vaccinated’ after the order so they could board the ships would still be refused entry due to possible side effects such as ‘wooziness in the head’. The good news is that if they were woozy enough in the head they could qualify to be prime minister of St Vincent.

Microchipping freedom

The European judgement will be used at some point to justify moves to enforce the ‘Covid’ DNA-manipulating procedure. Sandra Ro, CEO of the Global Blockchain Business Council, told a World Economic Forum event that she hoped ‘vaccine passports’ would help to ‘drive forced consent and standardisation’ of global digital identity schemes: ‘I’m hoping with the desire and global demand for some sort of vaccine passport – so that people can get travelling and working again – [it] will drive forced consent, standardisation, and frankly, cooperation across the world.’ The lady is either not very bright, or thoroughly mendacious, to use the term ‘forced consent’.

You do not ‘consent’ if you are forced – you *submit*. She was describing what the plan has been all along and that’s to enforce a digital identity on every human without which they could not function. ‘Vaccine passports’ are opening the door and are far from the end goal. A digital identity would allow you to be tracked in everything you do in cyberspace and this is the same technique used by Cult-owned China to enforce its social credit system of total control. The ultimate ‘passport’ is planned to be a microchip as my books have warned for nearly 30 years. Those nice people at the Pentagon working for the Cult-controlled Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) claimed in April, 2021, they have developed a microchip inserted under the skin to detect ‘asymptomatic Covid-19 infection’ before it becomes an outbreak and a ‘revolutionary filter’ that can remove the ‘virus’ from the blood when attached to a dialysis machine. The only problems with this are that the ‘virus’ does not exist and people transmitting the ‘virus’ with no symptoms is brain-numbing bullshit. This is, of course, not a ruse to get people to be microchipped for very different reasons. DARPA also said it was producing a one-stop ‘vaccine’ for the ‘virus’ and all ‘variants’. One of the most sinister organisations on Planet Earth is doing this? Better have it then. These people are insane because Wetiko that possesses them is insane.

Researchers from the Salk Institute in California announced they have created an embryo that is part human and part monkey. My books going back to the 1990s have exposed experiments in top secret underground facilities in the United States where humans are being crossed with animal and non-human ‘extraterrestrial’ species. They are now easing that long-developed capability into the public arena and there is much more to come given we are dealing with psychiatric basket cases. Talking of which – Elon Musk’s scientists at Neuralink trained a monkey to play Pong and other puzzles on a computer screen using a joystick and when the monkey made the correct move a metal tube squirted banana smoothie into his mouth which is the basic technique for training humans into unquestioning compliance. Two Neuralink chips were in the monkey’s skull and

more than 2,000 wires ‘fanned out’ into its brain. Eventually the monkey played a video game purely with its brain waves. Psychopathic narcissist Musk said the ‘breakthrough’ was a step towards putting Neuralink chips into human skulls and merging minds with artificial intelligence. *Exactly.* This man is so dark and Cult to his DNA.

World Economic Fascism (WEF)

The World Economic Forum is telling you the plan by the statements made at its many and various events. Cult-owned fascist YouTube CEO Susan Wojcicki spoke at the 2021 WEF Global Technology Governance Summit (see the name) in which 40 governments and 150 companies met to ensure ‘the responsible design and deployment of emerging technologies’. Orwellian translation: ‘Ensuring the design and deployment of long-planned technologies will advance the Cult agenda for control and censorship.’ Freedom-destroyer and Nuremberg-bound Wojcicki expressed support for tech platforms like hers to censor content that is ‘technically legal but could be harmful’. Who decides what is ‘harmful’? She does and they do. ‘Harmful’ will be whatever the Cult doesn’t want people to see and we have legislation proposed by the UK government that would censor content on the basis of ‘harm’ no matter if the information is fair, legal and provably true. Make that *especially* if it is fair, legal and provably true. Wojcicki called for a global coalition to be formed to enforce content moderation standards through automated censorship. This is a woman and mega-censor so self-deluded that she shamelessly accepted a ‘free expression’ award – *Wojcicki* – in an event sponsored by her own *YouTube*. They have no shame and no self-awareness.

You know that ‘Covid’ is a scam and Wojcicki a Cult operative when YouTube is censoring medical and scientific opinion purely on the grounds of whether it supports or opposes the Cult ‘Covid’ narrative. Florida governor Ron DeSantis compiled an expert panel with four professors of medicine from Harvard, Oxford, and Stanford Universities who spoke against forcing children and

vaccinated people to wear masks. They also said there was no proof that lockdowns reduced spread or death rates of 'Covid-19'. Cult-gofer Wojcicki and her YouTube deleted the panel video 'because it included content that contradicts the consensus of local and global health authorities regarding the efficacy of masks to prevent the spread of Covid-19'. This 'consensus' refers to what the Cult tells the World Health Organization to say and the WHO tells 'local health authorities' to do. Wojcicki knows this, of course. The panellists pointed out that censorship of scientific debate was responsible for deaths from many causes, but Wojcicki couldn't care less. She would not dare go against what she is told and as a disgrace to humanity she wouldn't want to anyway. The UK government is seeking to pass a fascist 'Online Safety Bill' to specifically target with massive fines and other means non-censored video and social media platforms to make them censor 'lawful but harmful' content like the Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube. What is 'lawful but harmful' would be decided by the fascist Blair-created Ofcom.

Another WEF obsession is a cyber-attack on the financial system and this is clearly what the Cult has planned to take down the bank accounts of everyone – except theirs. Those that think they have enough money for the Cult agenda not to matter to them have got a big lesson coming if they continue to ignore what is staring them in the face. The World Economic Forum, funded by Gates and fronted by Klaus Schwab, announced it would be running a 'simulation' with the Russian government and global banks of just such an attack called Cyber Polygon 2021. What they simulate – as with the 'Covid' Event 201 – they plan to instigate. The WEF is involved in a project with the Cult-owned Carnegie Endowment for International Peace called the WEF-Carnegie Cyber Policy Initiative which seeks to merge Wall Street banks, 'regulators' (I love it) and intelligence agencies to 'prevent' (arrange and allow) a cyber-attack that would bring down the global financial system as long planned by those that control the WEF and the Carnegie operation. The Carnegie Endowment for International Peace sent an instruction to First World

War US President Woodrow Wilson not to let the war end before society had been irreversibly transformed.

The Wuhan lab diversion

As I close, the Cult-controlled authorities and lapdog media are systematically pushing ‘the virus was released from the Wuhan lab’ narrative. There are two versions – it happened by accident and it happened on purpose. Both are nonsense. The perceived existence of the never-shown-to-exist ‘virus’ is vital to sell the impression that there is actually an infective agent to deal with and to allow the endless potential for terrifying the population with ‘variants’ of a ‘virus’ that does not exist. The authorities at the time of writing are going with the ‘by accident’ while the alternative media is promoting the ‘on purpose’. Cable news host Tucker Carlson who has questioned aspects of lockdown and ‘vaccine’ compulsion has bought the Wuhan lab story. ‘Everyone now agrees’ he said. Well, I don’t and many others don’t and the question is *why* does the system and its media suddenly ‘agree’? When the media moves as one unit with a narrative it is always a lie – witness the hour by hour mendacity of the ‘Covid’ era. Why would this Cult-owned combination which has unleashed lies like machine gun fire suddenly ‘agree’ to tell the truth??

Much of the alternative media is buying the lie because it fits the conspiracy narrative, but it’s the *wrong* conspiracy. The real conspiracy is that *there is no virus* and that is what the Cult is desperate to hide. The idea that the ‘virus’ was released by accident is ludicrous when the whole ‘Covid’ hoax was clearly long-planned and waiting to be played out as it was so fast in accordance with the Rockefeller document and Event 201. So they prepared everything in detail over decades and then sat around strumming their fingers waiting for an ‘accidental’ release from a bio-lab? *What??* It’s crazy. Then there’s the ‘on purpose’ claim. You want to circulate a ‘deadly virus’ and hide the fact that you’ve done so and you release it down the street from the highest-level bio-lab in China? I repeat – *What??*

You would release it far from that lab to stop any association being made. But, no, we'll do it in a place where the connection was certain to be made. Why would you need to scam 'cases' and 'deaths' and pay hospitals to diagnose 'Covid-19' if you had a real 'virus'? What are sections of the alternative media doing believing this crap? Where were all the mass deaths in Wuhan from a 'deadly pathogen' when the recovery to normal life after the initial propaganda was dramatic in speed? Why isn't the 'deadly pathogen' now circulating all over China with bodies in the street? Once again we have the technique of tell them what they want to hear and they will likely believe it. The alternative media has its 'conspiracy' and with Carlson it fits with his 'China is the danger' narrative over years. China *is* a danger as a global Cult operations centre, but not for this reason. The Wuhan lab story also has the potential to instigate conflict with China when at some stage the plan is to trigger a Problem-Reaction-Solution confrontation with the West. Question everything – *everything* – and especially when the media agrees on a common party line.

Third wave ... fourth wave ... fifth wave ...

As the book went into production the world was being set up for more lockdowns and a 'third wave' supported by invented 'variants' that were increasing all the time and will continue to do so in public statements and computer programs, but not in reality. India became the new Italy in the 'Covid' propaganda campaign and we were told to be frightened of the new 'Indian strain'. Somehow I couldn't find it within myself to do so. A document produced for the UK government entitled 'Summary of further modelling of easing of restrictions – Roadmap Step 2' declared that a third wave was inevitable (of course when it's in the script) and it would be the fault of children and those who refuse the health-destroying fake 'Covid vaccine'. One of the computer models involved came from the Cult-owned *Imperial College* and the other from Warwick University which I wouldn't trust to tell me the date in a calendar factory. The document states that both models presumed extremely high uptake

of the ‘Covid vaccines’ and didn’t allow for ‘variants’. The document states: ‘The resurgence is a result of some people (mostly children) being ineligible for vaccination; others choosing not to receive the vaccine; and others being vaccinated but not perfectly protected.’ The mendacity takes the breath away. Okay, blame those with a brain who won’t take the DNA-modifying shots and put more pressure on children to have it as ‘trials’ were underway involving children as young as six months with parents who give insanity a bad name. Massive pressure is being put on the young to have the fake ‘vaccine’ and child age consent limits have been systematically lowered around the world to stop parents intervening. Most extraordinary about the document was its claim that the ‘third wave’ would be driven by ‘the resurgence in both hospitalisations and deaths … dominated by *those that have received two doses of the vaccine*, comprising around 60-70% of the wave respectively’. The predicted peak of the ‘third wave’ suggested 300 deaths per day with 250 of them *fully ‘vaccinated’ people*. How many more lies do acquiescers need to be told before they see the obvious? Those who took the jab to ‘protect themselves’ are projected to be those who mostly get sick and die? So what’s in the ‘vaccine’? The document went on:

It is possible that a summer of low prevalence could be followed by substantial increases in incidence over the following autumn and winter. Low prevalence in late summer should not be taken as an indication that SARS-CoV-2 has retreated or that the population has high enough levels of immunity to prevent another wave.

They are telling you the script and while many British people believed ‘Covid’ restrictions would end in the summer of 2021 the government was preparing for them to be ongoing. Authorities were awarding contracts for ‘Covid marshals’ to police the restrictions with contracts starting in July, 2021, and going through to January 31st, 2022, and the government was advertising for ‘Media Buying Services’ to secure media propaganda slots worth a potential £320 million for ‘Covid-19 campaigns’ with a contract not ending until March, 2022. The recipient – via a list of other front companies – was reported to be American media marketing giant Omnicom Group

Inc. While money is no object for ‘Covid’ the UK waiting list for all other treatment – including life-threatening conditions – passed 4.5 million. Meantime the Cult is seeking to control all official ‘inquiries’ to block revelations about what has really been happening and why. It must not be allowed to – we need Nuremberg jury trials in every country. The cover-up doesn’t get more obvious than appointing ultra-Zionist professor Philip Zelikow to oversee two dozen US virologists, public health officials, clinicians, former government officials and four American ‘charitable foundations’ to ‘learn the lessons’ of the ‘Covid’ debacle. The personnel will be those that created and perpetuated the ‘Covid’ lies while Zelikow is the former executive director of the 9/11 Commission who ensured that the truth about those attacks never came out and produced a report that must be among the most mendacious and manipulative documents ever written – see *The Trigger* for the detailed exposure of the almost unimaginable 9/11 story in which Sabbatians can be found at every level.

Passive no more

People are increasingly challenging the authorities with amazing numbers of people taking to the streets in London well beyond the ability of the Face-Nappies to stop them. Instead the Nappies choose situations away from the mass crowds to target, intimidate, and seek to promote the impression of ‘violent protestors’. One such incident happened in London’s Hyde Park. Hundreds of thousands walking through the streets in protest against ‘Covid’ fascism were ignored by the Cult-owned BBC and most of the rest of the mainstream media, but they delighted in reporting how police were injured in ‘clashes with protestors’. The truth was that a group of people gathered in Hyde Park at the end of one march when most had gone home and they were peacefully having a good time with music and chat. Face-Nappies who couldn’t deal with the full-march crowd then waded in with their batons and got more than they bargained for. Instead of just standing for this criminal brutality the crowd used their numerical superiority to push the Face-Nappies out of the

park. Eventually the Nappies turned and ran. Unfortunately two or three idiots in the crowd threw drink cans striking two officers which gave the media and the government the image they wanted to discredit the 99.9999 percent who were peaceful. The idiots walked straight into the trap and we must always be aware of potential agent provocateurs used by the authorities to discredit their targets.

This response from the crowd – the can people apart – must be a turning point when the public no longer stand by while the innocent are arrested and brutally attacked by the Face-Nappies. That doesn't mean to be violent, that's the last thing we need. We'll leave the violence to the Face-Nappies and government. But it does mean that when the Face-Nappies use violence against peaceful people the numerical superiority is employed to stop them and make citizen's arrests or Common Law arrests for a breach of the peace. The time for being passive in the face of fascism is over.

We are the many, they are the few, and we need to make that count before there is no freedom left and our children and grandchildren face an ongoing fascist nightmare.

COME ON PEOPLE – IT'S TIME.

One final thought ...

The power of love
A force from above
Cleaning my soul
Flame on burn desire
Love with tongues of fire
Purge the soul
Make love your goal

I'll protect you from the hooded claw
Keep the vampires from your door
When the chips are down I'll be around
With my undying, death-defying
Love for you

Envy will hurt itself
Let yourself be beautiful
Sparkling love, flowers
And pearls and pretty girls
Love is like an energy
Rushin' rushin' inside of me

This time we go sublime
Lovers entwine, divine, divine,
Love is danger, love is pleasure
Love is pure – the only treasure

I'm so in love with you
Purge the soul
Make love your goal

The power of love
A force from above
Cleaning my soul
The power of love
A force from above
A sky-scraping dove

Flame on burn desire
Love with tongues of fire
Purge the soul
Make love your goal

Frankie Goes To Hollywood

APPENDIX

Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation (SOVI)

Isolation: The action of isolating; the fact or condition of being isolated or standing alone; separation from other things or persons; solitariness

Oxford English Dictionary

The controversy over whether the SARS-CoV-2 virus has ever been isolated or purified continues. However, using the above definition, common sense, the laws of logic and the dictates of science, any unbiased person must come to the conclusion that the SARS-CoV-2 virus has never been isolated or purified. As a result, no confirmation of the virus' existence can be found. The logical, common sense, and scientific consequences of this fact are:

- the structure and composition of something not shown to exist can't be known, including the presence, structure, and function of any hypothetical spike or other proteins;
- the genetic sequence of something that has never been found can't be known;
- "variants" of something that hasn't been shown to exist can't be known;
- it's impossible to demonstrate that SARS-CoV-2 causes a disease called Covid-19.

In as concise terms as possible, here's the proper way to isolate, characterize and demonstrate a new virus. First, one takes samples (blood, sputum, secretions) from many people (e.g. 500) with symptoms which are unique and specific enough to characterize an illness. Without mixing these samples with ANY tissue or products that also contain genetic material, the virologist macerates, filters and ultracentrifuges i.e. *purifies* the specimen. This common virology technique, done for decades to isolate bacteriophages¹ and so-called giant viruses in every virology lab, then allows the virologist to demonstrate with electron microscopy thousands of identically sized and shaped particles. These particles are the isolated and purified virus.

These identical particles are then checked for uniformity by physical and/or microscopic techniques. Once the purity is determined, the particles may be further characterized. This would include examining the structure, morphology, and chemical composition of the particles. Next, their genetic makeup is characterized by extracting the genetic material directly from the purified particles and using genetic-sequencing techniques, such as Sanger sequencing, that have also been around for decades. Then one does an analysis to confirm that these uniform particles are exogenous (outside) in origin as a virus is conceptualized to be, and not the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.² (As of May 2020, we know that virologists have no way to determine whether the particles they're seeing are viruses or just normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.)³

1 Isolation, characterization and analysis of bacteriophages from the haloalkaline lake Elmenteita, KenyaJuliah Khayeli Akhwale et al, PLOS One, Published: April 25, 2019.
<https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0215734> – accessed 2/15/21

2 "Extracellular Vesicles Derived From Apoptotic Cells: An Essential Link Between Death and Regeneration," Maojiao Li et al, Frontiers in Cell and Developmental Biology, 2020 October 2.
<https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fcell.2020.573511/full> – accessed 2/15/21

3 "The Role of Extracellular Vesicles as Allies of HIV, HCV and SARS Viruses," Flavia Giannessi, et al, *Viruses*, 2020 May

If we have come this far then we have fully isolated, characterized, and genetically sequenced an exogenous virus particle. However, we still have to show it is causally related to a disease. This is carried out by exposing a group of healthy subjects (animals are usually used) to this isolated, purified virus in the manner in which the disease is thought to be transmitted. If the animals get sick with the same disease, as confirmed by clinical and autopsy findings, one has now shown that the virus actually causes a disease. This demonstrates infectivity and transmission of an infectious agent.

None of these steps has even been attempted with the SARS-CoV-2 virus, nor have all these steps been successfully performed for any so-called pathogenic virus. Our research indicates that a single study showing these steps does not exist in the medical literature.

Instead, since 1954, virologists have taken unpurified samples from a relatively few people, often less than ten, with a similar disease. They then minimally process this sample and inoculate this unpurified sample onto tissue culture containing usually four to six other types of material – all of which contain identical genetic material as to what is called a “virus.” The tissue culture is starved and poisoned and naturally disintegrates into many types of particles, some of which contain genetic material. Against all common sense, logic, use of the English language and scientific integrity, this process is called “virus isolation.” This brew containing fragments of genetic material from many sources is then subjected to genetic analysis, which then creates in a computer-simulation process the alleged sequence of the alleged virus, a so-called *in silico* genome. At no time is an actual virus confirmed by electron microscopy. At no time is a genome extracted and sequenced from an actual virus. This is scientific fraud.

The observation that the unpurified specimen — inoculated onto tissue culture along with toxic antibiotics, bovine fetal tissue, amniotic fluid and other tissues — destroys the kidney tissue onto which it is inoculated is given as evidence of the virus' existence and pathogenicity. This is scientific fraud.

From now on, when anyone gives you a paper that suggests the SARS-CoV-2 virus has been isolated, please check the methods sections. If the researchers used Vero cells or any other culture method, you know that their process was not isolation. You will hear the following excuses for why actual isolation isn't done:

1. There were not enough virus particles found in samples from patients to analyze.
2. Viruses are intracellular parasites; they can't be found outside the cell in this manner.

If No. 1 is correct, and we can't find the virus in the sputum of sick people, then on what evidence do we think the virus is dangerous or even lethal? If No. 2 is correct, then how is the virus spread from person to person? We are told it emerges from the cell to infect others. Then why isn't it possible to find it?

Finally, questioning these virology techniques and conclusions is not some distraction or divisive issue. Shining the light on this truth is essential to stop this terrible fraud that humanity is confronting. For, as we now know, if the virus has never been isolated, sequenced or shown to cause illness, if the virus is imaginary, then why are we wearing masks, social distancing and putting the whole world into prison?

Finally, if pathogenic viruses don't exist, then what is going into those injectable devices erroneously called "vaccines," and what is their purpose? This scientific question is the most urgent and relevant one of our time.

We are correct. The SARS-CoV2 virus does not exist.

Sally Fallon Morell, MA

Dr. Thomas Cowan, MD

Dr. Andrew Kaufman, MD

Bibliography

- Alinsky, Saul:** *Rules for Radicals* (Vintage, 1989)
- Antelman, Rabbi Marvin:** *To Eliminate the Opiate* (Zahavia, 1974)
- Bastardi, Joe:** *The Climate Chronicles* (Relentless Thunder Press, 2018)
- Cowan, Tom:** *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2016)
- Cowan, Tom, and Fallon Morell, Sally:** *The Contagion Myth* (Skyhorse Publishing, 2020)
- Forbes, Jack D:** *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* (Seven Stories Press, 2008 – originally published in 1979)
- Gates, Bill:** *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need* (Allen Lane, 2021)
- Huxley, Aldous:** *Brave New World* (Chatto & Windus, 1932)
- Köhnlein, Dr Claus, and Engelbrecht, Torsten:** *Virus Mania* (emu-Vertag, Lahnstein, 2020)
- Lanza, Robert, and Berman, Bob:** *Biocentrism* (BenBella Books, 2010)
- Lash, John Lamb:** *Not In His Image* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2006)
- Lester, Dawn, and Parker, David:** *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* (Independently Published, 2019)
- Levy, Paul:** *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil* (North Atlantic Books, 2013)
- Marx, Karl:** *A World Without Jews* (Philosophical Library, first edition, 1959)
- Mullis, Kary:** *Dancing Naked in the Mine Field* (Bloomsbury, 1999)
- O'Brien, Cathy:** *Trance-Formation of America* (Reality Marketing, 1995)
- Scholem, Gershon:** *The Messianic Idea in Judaism* (Schocken Books, 1994)
- Schwab, Klaus, and Davis, Nicholas:** *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution: A guide to building a better world* (Penguin Books, 2018)
- Schwab, Klaus:** *The Great Reset* (Agentur Schweiz, 2020)
- Sunstein, Cass and Thaler, Richard:** *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness* (Penguin, 2009)
- Swan, Shanna:** *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race* (Scribner, 2021)
- Tegmark, Max:** *Our Mathematical Universe: My Quest for the Ultimate Nature of Reality* (Penguin, 2015)
- Velikovsky, Immanuel:** *Worlds in Collision* (Paradigma, 2009)

Wilton, Robert: *The Last Days of the Romanovs* (Blurb, 2018, first published 1920)

Index

A

abusive relationships

blaming themselves, abused as [ref1](#)
children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
conspiracy theories [ref1](#)
domestic abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
economic abuse and dependency [ref1](#)
isolation [ref1](#)
physical abuse [ref1](#)
psychological abuse [ref1](#)
signs of abuse [ref1](#)

addiction

alcoholism [ref1](#)
frequencies [ref1](#)
substance abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Adelson, Sheldon [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

AIDs/HIV [ref1](#)

causal link between HIV and AIDs [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
retroviruses [ref1](#)
testing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
trial-run for Covid-19, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
aliens/extraterrestrials [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
aluminium [ref1](#)
Amazon [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

amplification cycles [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
anaphylactic shock [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
animals [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
antibodies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Antifa [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
antigens [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 ennoia [ref1](#)
 genetic manipulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 lockdowns [ref1](#)
 money [ref1](#)
 radiation [ref1](#)
 religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)
army made up of robots [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Internet [ref1](#)
 MHRA [ref1](#)
 Morgellons fibres [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Smart Grid [ref1](#)
 Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
asymptomatic, Covid-19 as [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
aviation industry [ref1](#)

B

banking, finance and money [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

2008 crisis [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

boom and bust [ref1](#)

cashless digital money systems [ref1](#)

central banks [ref1](#)

credit [ref1](#)

digital currency [ref1](#)

fractional reserve lending [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#)

guaranteed income [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Human 2.0 [ref1](#)

incomes, destruction of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

interest [ref1](#)

one per cent [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

scams [ref1](#)

BBC [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

Becker-Phelps, Leslie [ref1](#)

Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) (Nudge Unit) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

behavioural scientists and psychologists, advice from [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Bezos, Jeff [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Biden, Hunter [ref1](#)

Biden, Joe [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#),
[ref12](#), [ref13](#), [ref14](#), [ref15](#), [ref16](#), [ref17](#)

Big Pharma

cholesterol [ref1](#)

health professionals [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

immunity from prosecution in US [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#),
[ref7](#)

billionaires [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#) [ref10](#), [ref11](#)
bird flu (H5N1) [ref1](#)
Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Blair, Tony [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Brin, Sergei [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
British Empire [ref1](#)
Bush, George HW [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Bush, George W [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Byrd, Robert [ref1](#)

C

Canada

Global Cult [ref1](#)
hate speech [ref1](#)
internment [ref1](#)
masks [ref1](#)
old people [ref1](#)
SARS-COV-2 [ref1](#)
satellites [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
wearable technology [ref1](#)

Capitol Hill riot [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
agents provocateur [ref1](#)
Antifa [ref1](#)
Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
QAnon [ref1](#)
security precautions, lack of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

carbon dioxide [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
care homes, deaths in [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
cashless digital money systems [ref1](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

fact-checkers [ref1](#)
masks [ref1](#)
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
private messages [ref1](#)
social media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
transgender persons [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Wokeness [ref1](#)

Centers for Disease Control (CDC) (United States) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)

centralisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

chakras [ref1](#)

change agents [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

chemtrails [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

chief medical officers and scientific advisers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

children *see also young people*

abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

care, taken into [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

energy [ref1](#)

family courts [ref1](#)

hand sanitisers [ref1](#)

human sacrifice [ref1](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

mental health [ref1](#)

old people [ref1](#)

parents, replacement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

reframing [ref1](#)

smartphone addiction [ref1](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)
social media [ref1](#)
transgender persons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
United States [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
anal swab tests [ref1](#)
Chinese Revolution [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
digital currency [ref1](#)
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
guaranteed income [ref1](#)
Imperial College [ref1](#)
Israel [ref1](#)
lockdown [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
masculinity crisis [ref1](#)
masks [ref1](#)
media [ref1](#)
origins of virus in China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
pollution causing respiratory diseases [ref1](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
social credit system [ref1](#)
testing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
wet market conspiracy [ref1](#)
Wuhan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

cholesterol [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Christianity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
criticism [ref1](#)
cross, inversion of the [ref1](#)

Nag Hammadi texts [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Roman Catholic Church [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Satan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Wokeness [ref1](#)

class [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

climate change hoax [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

carbon dioxide [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Club of Rome [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

fear [ref1](#)

funding [ref1](#)

Global Cult [ref1](#)

green new deals [ref1](#)

green parties [ref1](#)

inversion [ref1](#)

perception, control of [ref1](#)

PICC [ref1](#)

reframing [ref1](#)

temperature, increases in [ref1](#)

United Nations [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Wikipedia [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Clinton, Bill [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

Clinton, Hillary [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

the cloud [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Club of Rome and climate change hoax [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

cognitive therapy [ref1](#)

Cohn, Roy [ref1](#)

Common Law [ref1](#)

Admiralty Law [ref1](#)

arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

contractual law, Statute Law as [ref1](#)
corporate entities, people as [ref1](#)
legalese [ref1](#)
sea, law of the [ref1](#)
Statute Law [ref1](#)

Common Purpose leadership programme [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
communism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
co-morbidities [ref1](#)
computer-generated virus,
Covid-19 as [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
computer models [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
connections [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
expanded [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
experience [ref1](#)
heart [ref1](#)
infinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
self-identity [ref1](#)
simulation thesis [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

conspiracy theorists [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
contradictory rules [ref1](#)
contrails [ref1](#)
Corman-Drosten test [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
countermimicry [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Covid-19 vaccines *see* vaccines
Covidiots [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Cowan, Tom [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
crimes against humanity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

cyber-operations [ref1](#)

cyberwarfare [ref1](#)

D

DARPA (Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency) [ref1](#)

deaths

care homes [ref1](#)

certificates [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

mortality rate [ref1](#)

post-mortems/autopsies [ref1](#)

recording [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

deceit

pyramid of deceit [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

sequence of deceit [ref1](#)

decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

dehumanisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Delphi technique [ref1](#)

democracy [ref1](#)

dependency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Descartes, René [ref1](#)

DNA

numbers [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

DNR (do not resuscitate)

orders [ref1](#)

domestic abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

downgrading of Covid-19 [ref1](#)

Drosten, Christian [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Duesberg, Peter [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

E

economic abuse [ref1](#)

Edmunds, John [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

electromagnetic spectrum [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Enders, John [ref1](#)

energy

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

children and young people [ref1](#)

consciousness [ref1](#)

decoding [ref1](#)

frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

heart [ref1](#)

human energy field [ref1](#)

source, humans as an energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

viruses [ref1](#)

ennoia [ref1](#)

Epstein, Jeffrey [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

eternal 'I' [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

ethylene oxide [ref1](#)

European Union [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Event [ref1](#) and Bill Gates [ref2](#)

exosomes, Covid-19 as natural defence mechanism called [ref1](#)

experience [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Extinction Rebellion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

F

Facebook

addiction [ref1](#), 448–50

Facebook

Archons [ref1](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
hate speech [ref1](#)
monopoly, as [ref1](#)
private messages, censorship of [ref1](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#)
United States election fraud [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

fact-checkers [ref1](#)

Fauci, Anthony [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),
[ref11](#), [ref12](#)

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
climate change [ref1](#)
computer models [ref1](#)
conspiracy theories [ref1](#)
empty hospitals [ref1](#)
Italy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
medical staff [ref1](#)
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

female infertility [ref1](#)

Fermi Paradox [ref1](#)

Ferguson, Neil [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

fertility, decline in [ref1](#)

The Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

finance *see banking, finance and money*

five-senses [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

censorship [ref1](#)
consciousness, expansion of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
decoding [ref1](#)
education [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
the Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
God, personification of [ref1](#)
infinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
media [ref1](#)
paranormal [ref1](#)
perceptual programming [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Phantom Self [ref1](#)
pneuma not nous, using [ref1](#)
reincarnation [ref1](#)
self-identity [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
Floyd, George and protests, killing of [ref1](#)
flu, re-labelling of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
food and water, control of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Freemasons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Frei, Rosemary [ref1](#)
frequencies
addictions [ref1](#)
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
awareness [ref1](#)
chanting and mantras [ref1](#)
consciousness [ref1](#)
decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
education [ref1](#)
electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies [ref1](#)
energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
fear [ref1](#)

the Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#) 5G [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
five-senses [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
ghosts [ref1](#)
Gnostics [ref1](#)
hive-minds [ref1](#)
human, meaning of [ref1](#)
light [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
love [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
magnetism [ref1](#)
perception [ref1](#)
reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
simulation [ref1](#)
terror [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
Wetiko [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Fuellmich, Reiner [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
furlough/rescue payments [ref1](#)

G

Gallo, Robert [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Gates, Bill

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Daily Pass tracking system [ref1](#)
Epstein [ref1](#)
fascism [ref1](#)
five senses [ref1](#)
GAVI [ref1](#)
Great Reset [ref1](#)
GSK [ref1](#)
Imperial College [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Johns Hopkins University [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

masks [ref1](#)

Nuremberg trial, proposal for [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Rockefellers [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)

Sun, dimming the [ref1](#)

synthetic meat [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Wellcome Trust [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#)

World Economic Forum [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Gates, Melinda [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

GAVI vaccine alliance [ref1](#)

genetics, manipulation of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Germany [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also Nazi Germany*

Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

anti-human, why Global Cult is [ref1](#)

Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

climate change hoax [ref1](#)

contradictory rules [ref1](#)

Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

fascism [ref1](#)

geographical origins [ref1](#)

immigration [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#)

mainstream media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

monarchy [ref1](#)

non-human dimension [ref1](#)

perception [ref1](#)
political parties [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
pyramidal hierarchy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
reframing [ref1](#)
Sabbantian-Frankism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
science, manipulation of [ref1](#)
spider and the web [ref1](#)
transgender persons [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
who controls the Cult [ref1](#)
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

globalisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Gnostics [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Google [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

government

- behavioural scientists and psychologists, advice from [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- definition [ref1](#)
- Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) [ref1](#)
- people, abusive relationship with [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

- fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- financial system [ref1](#)
- Human 2.0 [ref1](#)
- water and food, control of [ref1](#)

green parties [ref1](#)

Griesz-Brisson, Margarite [ref1](#)

guaranteed income [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

H

Hancock, Matt [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

hand sanitisers [ref1](#)

heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

hive-minds/groupthink [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

holographs [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

hospitals, empty [ref1](#)

human, meaning of [ref1](#)

Human 2.0 [ref1](#)

addiction to technology [ref1](#)

artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

elimination of Human 1.0 [ref1](#)

fertility, decline in [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#)

implantables [ref1](#)

money [ref1](#)

mRNA [ref1](#)

nanotechnology [ref1](#)

parents, replacement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Smart Grid, connection to [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

synthetic biology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

testosterone levels, decrease in [ref1](#)

transgender = transhumanism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

human sacrifice [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Huxley, Aldous [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

I

identity politics [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Illuminati [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

illusory physical reality [ref1](#)

immigration [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Imperial College [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

implantables [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

incomes, destruction of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Infinite Awareness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Internet [ref1](#), [ref2](#) *see also* social media
 artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)
 independent journalism, lack of [ref1](#)
 Internet of Bodies (IoB) [ref1](#)

Internet of Everything (IoE) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Internet of Things (IoT) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)
 trolls [ref1](#)

intersectionality [ref1](#)

inversion
 Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 climate change hoax [ref1](#)
 energy [ref1](#)
 Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 symbolism [ref1](#)
 Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
 Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Islam
 Archons [ref1](#)
 crypto-Jews [ref1](#)
 Islamic State [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Jinn and Djinn [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 Ottoman Empire [ref1](#)
 Wahhabism [ref1](#)

isolation *see* **social distancing and isolation**

Israel
 China [ref1](#)
 Cyber Intelligence Unit Beersheba complex [ref1](#)
 expansion of illegal settlements [ref1](#)

formation [ref1](#)
Global Cult [ref1](#)
Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
medical experiments, consent for [ref1](#)
Mossad [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Palestine-Israel conflict [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
parents, replacement of [ref1](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States [ref1](#)
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Italy

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Lombardy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)

J

Johns Hopkins University [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Johnson, Boris [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) [ref1](#)

Judaism

anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
crypto-Jews [ref1](#)
inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Labour Party [ref1](#)
Nazi Germany [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#)
Torah [ref1](#)
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Zionists [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

K

Kaufman, Andrew [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
knowledge [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Koch's postulates [ref1](#)
Kurzweil, Ray [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Kushner, Jared [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

L

Labour Party [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Lanka, Stefan [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Lateral Flow Device (LFD) [ref1](#)
Levy, Paul [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Life Program [ref1](#)
lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 amplification tampering [ref1](#)
 Archons [ref1](#)
 Behavioural Insights Team [ref1](#)
 Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#)
 care homes, deaths in [ref1](#)
 children
 abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 mental health [ref1](#)
 China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 computer models [ref1](#)
 consequences [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 dependency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

domestic abuse [ref1](#)
fall in cases [ref1](#)
fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
guaranteed income [ref1](#)
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
interaction, destroying [ref1](#)
Internet [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
overdoses [ref1](#)
perception [ref1](#)
police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
protests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
reporting/snitching, encouragement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
testing [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
WHO [ref1](#)
love [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Lucifer [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

M

Madej, Carrie [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Magufuli, John [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
mainstream media [ref1](#)
BBC [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
China [ref1](#)
climate change hoax [ref1](#)
fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
independent journalism, lack of [ref1](#)
Ofcom [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
social disapproval [ref1](#)
social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Mao Zedong [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Marx and Marxism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

masculinity [ref1](#)

masks/face coverings [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

censorship [ref1](#)

children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

China, made in [ref1](#)

dehumanisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

flu [ref1](#)

health professionals [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

isolation [ref1](#)

laughter [ref1](#)

mass non-cooperation [ref1](#)

microplastics, risk of [ref1](#)

mind control [ref1](#)

multiple masks [ref1](#)

oxygen deficiency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

pollution, as cause of plastic [ref1](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)

reframing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

risk assessments, lack of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

self-respect [ref1](#)

surgeons [ref1](#)

United States [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
'worms' [ref1](#)
The Matrix movies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
measles [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
media see mainstream media
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)
[ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Mesopotamia [ref1](#)
messaging [ref1](#)
military-police state [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
mind control [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also MKUltra*
MKUltra [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
monarchy [ref1](#)
money *see banking, finance and money*
Montagnier, Luc [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Mooney, Bel [ref1](#)
Morgellons disease [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
mortality rate [ref1](#)
Mullis, Kary [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Musk, Elon [ref1](#)

N

Nag Hammadi texts [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
nanotechnology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
narcissism [ref1](#)
Nazi Germany [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
near-death experiences [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Neocons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) and the Delphi technique
[ref1](#)

NHS (National Health Service)

amplification cycles [ref1](#)

Common Purpose [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

mind control [ref1](#)

NHS England [ref1](#)

saving the NHS [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

whistle-blowers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

No-Problem-Reaction-Solution [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

non-human dimension of Global Cult [ref1](#)

nous [ref1](#)

numbers, reality as [ref1](#)

Nuremberg Codes [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Nuremberg-like tribunal, proposal for [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#),
[ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)

Ø

Obama, Barack [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

O'Brien, Cathy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Ochel, Evita [ref1](#)

Ofcom [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

old people [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Oneness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Open Society Foundations (Soros) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

oxygen 406, 528–34

P

paedophilia [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Page, Larry [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Palestine-Israel conflict [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

pandemic, definition of [ref1](#)

pandemic and health crisis scenarios/simulations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

paranormal [ref1](#)

PCR tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

Pearl Harbor attacks, prior knowledge of [ref1](#)

Pelosi, Nancy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

- climate change hoax [ref1](#)
- control [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- enslavement [ref1](#)
- externally-delivered perceptions [ref1](#)
- five senses [ref1](#)
- human labels [ref1](#)
- media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- political parties [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)
- sale of perception [ref1](#)
- self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- Wokeness [ref1](#)

Phantom Self [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

pharmaceutical industry *see* **Big Pharma**

phthalates [ref1](#)

Plato's Allegory of the Cave [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

pneuma [ref1](#)

police

- Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#)
- brutality [ref1](#)
- citizen's arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- common law arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Common Purpose [ref1](#)
defunding [ref1](#)
lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
reframing [ref1](#)
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Wokeness [ref1](#)

polio [ref1](#)

political correctness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

political parties [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

political puppets [ref1](#)

pollution [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

post-mortems/autopsies [ref1](#)

Postage Stamp Consensus [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

pre-emptive programming [ref1](#)

Problem-Reaction-Solution [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

Project for the New American Century [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

psychopathic personality [ref1](#)

- Archons [ref1](#)
- heart energy [ref1](#)
- lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
- recruitment [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- vaccines [ref1](#)
- wealth [ref1](#)
- Wetiko [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#),
[ref5](#)

Pushbackers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

pyramid structure [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Q

QAnon Psyop [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

R

racism *see also* **Black Lives**

Matter (BLM)

anti-racism industry [ref1](#)

class [ref1](#)

critical race theory [ref1](#)

culture [ref1](#)

intersectionality [ref1](#)

reverse racism [ref1](#)

white privilege [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

white supremacy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

radiation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

randomness, illusion of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

reframing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

change agents [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

children [ref1](#)

climate change [ref1](#)

Common Purpose leadership programme [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

contradictory rules [ref1](#)

enforcers [ref1](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

NLP and the Delphi technique [ref1](#)

police [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

religion *see also* particular religions

alien invasions [ref1](#)

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
control, system of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
criticism, prohibition on [ref1](#)
five senses [ref1](#)
good and evil, war between [ref1](#)
hidden non-human forces [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#)
save me syndrome [ref1](#)
Wetiko [ref1](#)
Wokeness [ref1](#)
repetition and mind control [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
reporting/snitching, encouragement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Reptilians/Grey entities [ref1](#)
rewiring the mind [ref1](#)
Rivers, Thomas Milton [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Rockefeller family [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
Rockefeller Foundation documents [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Roman Empire [ref1](#)
Rothschild family [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
RT-PCR tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
Russia
 collusion inquiry in US [ref1](#)
Russian Revolution [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#)

§

Sabbantian-Frankism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 banking and finance [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Lucifer [ref1](#)

media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Nazis [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

QAnon [ref1](#)

Rothschilds [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

Russia [ref1](#)

Saudi Arabia [ref1](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#)

Sumer [ref1](#)

United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

SAGE (Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#),
[ref4](#)

SARS-1 [ref1](#)

SARs-CoV-2 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

Satan/Satanism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

satellites in low-orbit [ref1](#)

Saudi Arabia [ref1](#)

Save Me Syndrome [ref1](#)

scapegoating [ref1](#)

Schwab, Klaus [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),
[ref11](#), [ref12](#)

science, manipulation of [ref1](#)

self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

self-respect, attacks on [ref1](#)

September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#),
[ref3](#), [ref4](#)

77th Brigade of UK military [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Silicon Valley/tech giants [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also*
Facebook

Israel [ref1](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#)
technocracy [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
Wokeness [ref1](#)
simulation hypothesis [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)
China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
control centres [ref1](#)
the Field [ref1](#)
Great Reset [ref1](#)
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
social disapproval [ref1](#)
social distancing and isolation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
abusive relationships [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
children [ref1](#)
flats and apartments [ref1](#)
heart issues [ref1](#)
hugs [ref1](#)
Internet [ref1](#)
masks [ref1](#)
media [ref1](#)
older people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
one-metre (three feet) rule [ref1](#)
rewiring the mind [ref1](#)
simulation, universe as a [ref1](#)
SPI-B [ref1](#)
substance abuse [ref1](#)

suicide and self-harm [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
technology [ref1](#)
torture, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
two-metre (six feet) rule [ref1](#)
women [ref1](#)

social justice [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

social media *see also Facebook bans on alternative views* [ref1](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
children [ref1](#)
emotion [ref1](#)
perception [ref1](#)
private messages [ref1](#)
Twitter [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
YouTube [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Soros, George [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

Spain [ref1](#)

SPI-B (Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours) [ref1](#),
[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

spider and the web [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Starmer, Keir [ref1](#)

Statute Law [ref1](#)

Steiner, Rudolf [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Stockholm syndrome [ref1](#)

streptomycin [ref1](#)

suicide and self-harm [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Sumer [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Sunstein, Cass [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

swine flu (H1N1) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

synchronicity [ref1](#)

synthetic biology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

synthetic meat [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

T

technology *see also* **artificial intelligence (AI); Internet; social media addiction** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
the cloud [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
cyber-operations [ref1](#)
cyberwarfare [ref1](#)
radiation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)
technocracy [ref1](#)

Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#),
[ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)

telepathy [ref1](#)

Tenpenny, Sherri [ref1](#)

Tesla, Nikola [ref1](#)

testosterone levels, decrease in [ref1](#)

testing for Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 anal swab tests [ref1](#)
 cancer [ref1](#)
 China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 Corman-Drosten test [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 death certificates [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 fraudulent testing [ref1](#)
 genetic material, amplification of [ref1](#)
 Lateral Flow Device (LFD) [ref1](#)
 PCR tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
 vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Thunberg, Greta [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Totalitarian Tiptoe [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

transgender persons
 activism [ref1](#)
 artificial wombs [ref1](#)

censorship [ref1](#)
child abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
women, deletion of rights and status of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
young persons [ref1](#)
travel restrictions [ref1](#)
Trudeau, Justin [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Trump, Donald [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),
[ref11](#)
Twitter [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

U

UKColumn [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
United Nations (UN) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#) *see also Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN)*
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 American Revolution [ref1](#)
 borders [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Capitol Hill riot [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 children [ref1](#)
 China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 CIA [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Daily Pass tracking system [ref1](#)
 demographics by immigration, changes in [ref1](#)
 Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
 election fraud [ref1](#)
 far-right domestic terrorists, pushbackers as [ref1](#)
 Federal Reserve [ref1](#)
 flu/respiratory diseases statistics [ref1](#)
 Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 hand sanitisers, FDA warnings on [ref1](#)

immigration, effects of illegal [ref1](#)
impeachment [ref1](#)
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
lockdown [ref1](#)
masks [ref1](#)
mass media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
nursing homes [ref1](#)
Pentagon [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
pushbackers [ref1](#)
Republicans [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
borders [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Russia, inquiry into collusion with [ref1](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
UFO sightings, release of information on [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
white supremacy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Woke Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

V

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
adverse reactions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Africa [ref1](#)
anaphylactic shock [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
animals [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
anti-vax movement [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
AstraZeneca/Oxford [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
autoimmune diseases, rise in [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

bioweapon, as real [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
black and ethnic minority communities [ref1](#)
blood clots [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Brain Computer Interface (BCI) [ref1](#)
care homes, deaths in [ref1](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
chief medical officers and scientific advisers, financial interests of
[ref1](#), [ref2](#)
children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
clinical trials [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
compensation [ref1](#)
compulsory vaccinations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
computer programs [ref1](#)
consciousness [ref1](#)
cover-ups [ref1](#)
creation before Covid [ref1](#)
cytokine storm [ref1](#)
deaths and illnesses caused by vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
definition [ref1](#)
developing countries [ref1](#)
digital tattoos [ref1](#)
DNA-manipulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),
[ref10](#)
emergency approval [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
female infertility [ref1](#)
funding [ref1](#)
genetic suicide [ref1](#)
Global Cult [ref1](#)
heart chakras [ref1](#)
hesitancy [ref1](#)
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
immunity from prosecution [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

implantable technology [ref1](#)
Israel [ref1](#)
Johnson & Johnson [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
lockdowns [ref1](#)
long-term effects [ref1](#)
mainstream media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)
[ref1](#), [ref2](#)
messaging [ref1](#)
Moderna [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
mRNA vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
nanotechnology [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
NHS [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
older people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
operating system [ref1](#)
passports [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Pfizer/BioNTech [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
polyethylene glycol [ref1](#)
pregnant women [ref1](#)
psychopathic personality [ref1](#)
races, targeting different [ref1](#)
reverse transcription [ref1](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#)
social distancing [ref1](#)
social media [ref1](#)
sterility [ref1](#)
synthetic material, introduction of [ref1](#)
tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
travel restrictions [ref1](#)
variants [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
viruses, existence of [ref1](#)
whistle-blowing [ref1](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Wokeness [ref1](#)
working, vaccine as [ref1](#)
young people [ref1](#)
Vallance, Patrick [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
variants [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
vegans [ref1](#)
ventilators [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
virology [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
virtual reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
viruses, existence of [ref1](#)
visual reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
vitamin D [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
von Braun, Wernher [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

W

war-zone hospital myths [ref1](#)
waveforms [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
wealth [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#) [ref10](#), [ref11](#)
wet market conspiracy [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
alcoholism and drug addiction [ref1](#)
anti-human, why Global Cult is [ref1](#)
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
children [ref1](#)
China [ref1](#)
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
education [ref1](#)
Facebook [ref1](#)

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
frequency [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Gates [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
lockdowns [ref1](#)
masks [ref1](#)
Native American concept [ref1](#)
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
reframing/retraining programmes [ref1](#)
religion [ref1](#)
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#)
smartphone addiction [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
social media [ref1](#)
war [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
WHO [ref1](#)
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Yaldabaoth [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
whistle-blowing [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
white privilege [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
white supremacy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Whitty, Christopher [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),
[ref10](#)
'who benefits' [ref1](#)
Wi-Fi [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Wikipedia [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Wojcicki, Susan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Wokeness
Antifa [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
anti-Semitism [ref1](#)
billionaire social justice warriors [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Capitol Hill riot [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
censorship [ref1](#)
Christianity [ref1](#)
climate change hoax [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
culture [ref1](#)
education, control of [ref1](#)
emotion [ref1](#)
facts [ref1](#)
fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
group-think [ref1](#)
immigration [ref1](#)
indigenous people, solidarity with [ref1](#)
inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
left, hijacking the [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Marxism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
mind control [ref1](#)
New Woke [ref1](#)
Old Woke [ref1](#)
Oneness [ref1](#)
perceptual programming [ref1](#)
 Phantom Self [ref1](#)
police [ref1](#)
defunding the [ref1](#)
reframing [ref1](#)
public institutions [ref1](#)
Pushbackers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
racism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
reframing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
religion, as [ref1](#)
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)
social justice [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

transgender [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
young people [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
women, deletion of rights and status of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
World Economic Forum (WEF) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#),
[ref8](#), [ref9](#)
World Health Organization (WHO) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#),
[ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
AIDs/HIV [ref1](#)
amplification cycles [ref1](#)
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
cooperation in health emergencies [ref1](#)
creation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
fatality rate [ref1](#)
funding [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Gates [ref1](#)
Internet [ref1](#)
lockdown [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)
world number 1 (masses) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
world number 2 [ref1](#)
Wuhan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#) [ref8](#)

Y

Yaldabaoth [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Yeadon, Michael [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
young people *see also children* addiction to technology [ref1](#)
Human 2.0 [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

YouTube [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

WHO 548

Z

Zaks, Tal [ref1](#)

Zionism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Zuckerberg, Mark [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),
[ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)

Zulus [ref1](#)

ICKONIC

THE ALTERNATIVE

Ickonic is something that has been a dream of mine for the last 5 years, growing up around alternative information I have always had a natural interest in what is going on in the World and what could I do to make it better. Across the range of subjects and positions of influence occupied mainly by people who don't strive to make things better it's the Media that I have always found the most frustrating and fascinating. Mainly because if the Media did their Jobs properly then so much of the negative things happening in the World simply would not be able to happen, because they would be exposed within a heartbeat.

Free Press and the Opportunities that the internet could have given would mean that the Media are able to expose things like never before and hold people to account for their actions. As we all know there are 'Untouchables' that walk among us, people the Media simply won't touch, expose or investigate and that leads to the dark underworlds that infest the establishment the World over. Well I say enough, it's time for something different, a different kind of Media, where no one is off limits from exposing and investigating. All we're interested in at Ickonic is the truth of what is really going on in the World on whichever subject we're covering.

We hope you enjoy what we have created and take something away from the platform, we aim to deliver information that's informative and most importantly self-empowering, you're not a little person, you're part of something much bigger than that and its time we as a collective race began to understand that and look to the future as ours to take.

It's time...

Jaymie Icke - Founder Ickonic Alternative Media.

SIGN UP NOW AT ICKONIC.COM

DAVID ICKE

THE ANSWER



We live in extraordinary times with billions bewildered and seeking answers for what is happening. David Icke, the man who has been proved right again and again, has spent 30 years uncovering the truth behind world affairs and in a stream of previous books he predicted current events.

The Answer will change your every perception of life and the world and set you free of the illusions that control human society. There is nothing more vital for our collective freedom than humanity becoming aware of what is in this book.

Available now at davidicke.com.

THE **TRIGGER**

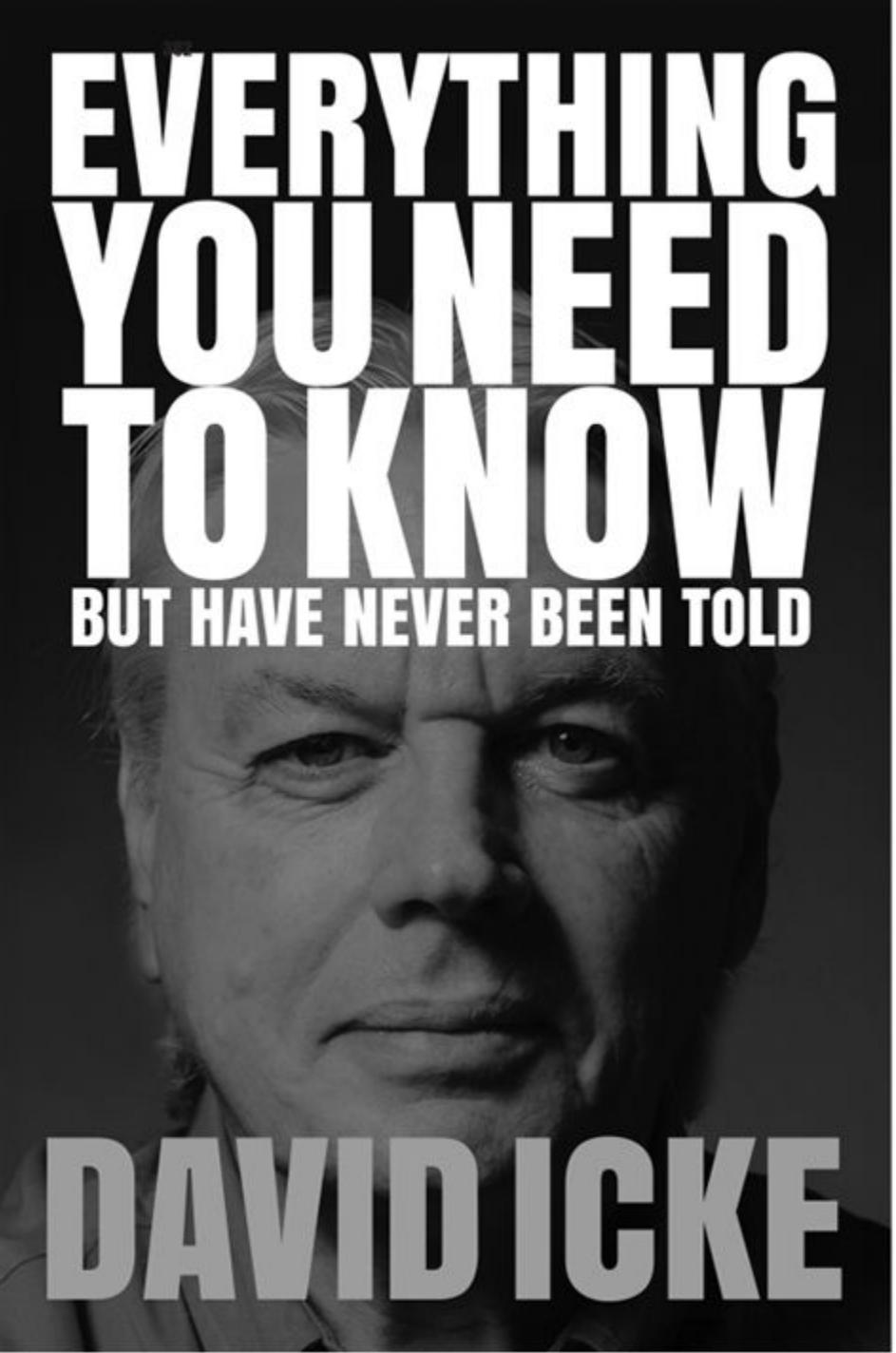
THE LIE THAT CHANGED THE WORLD
- WHO REALLY DID IT AND WHY



DAVID ICKE

EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO KNOW

BUT HAVE NEVER BEEN TOLD



DAVID ICKE

DAVIDICKE.COM



**DAVID ICKE STORE
LATEST NEWS ARTICLES
DAVID ICKE VIDEOS
WEEKLY DOT-CONNECTOR PODCASTS
LIVE EVENTS**
WWW.DAVIDICKE.COM

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

RENEGADE

/'ren-i,geɪd/

noun

A person who behaves in a rebelliously unconventional manner.

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM



AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM

2 NEW BOOKS
BY NEIL HAGUE

ORION'S DOOR

SYMBOLS OF CONSCIOUSNESS & BLUEPRINTS OF CONTROL
- THE STORY OF ORION'S INFLUENCE OVER HUMANITY

CUTTING EDGE VISIONARY ART
& UNIQUE ILLUSTRATED BOOKS

NEIL HAGUE

FOR
BOOKS, PRINTS & T-SHIRTS

VISIT:

NEILHAGUEBOOKS.COM

OR NEILHAGUE.COM

DR. COVID

UNIVERSE

ADVENTURES
IN CLOWNLAND

NEIL HAGUE

Before you go ...

For more detail, background and evidence about the subjects in *Perceptions of a Renegade Mind* – and so much more – see my others books including *And The Truth Shall Set You Free; The Biggest Secret; Children of the Matrix; The David Icke Guide to the Global Conspiracy; Tales from the Time Loop; The Perception Deception; Remember Who You Are; Human Race Get Off Your Knees; Phantom Self; Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told, The Trigger and The Answer.*

You can subscribe to the fantastic new Ickonic media platform where there are many hundreds of hours of cutting-edge information in videos, documentaries and series across a whole range of subjects which are added to every week. This includes my 90 minute breakdown of the week's news every Friday to explain *why* events are happening and to what end.